

**THE BOOK OF
MORMON**

**TAHITIAN – ENGLISH
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to ben.crowder@gmail.com.

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

Te Buka a Moromona

Te 'ā'amu i pāpa'ihia e te rima o Moromona i ni'a i te mau 'api i ravehia mai nō roto mai i te mau 'api a Nephi

Nō reira, e pāpa'a parau ha'apotohia teie nō te pāpa'a parau nō te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ho'i—Pāpa'ihia i te mau 'āti Lamana, e toe'a ho'i rātou nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e 'oia ato'a i te 'āti Iuda 'e te 'Ētene—Pāpa'ihia nā roto i te fa'auera'a, 'e nā roto ato'a i te vārua nō te tohu 'e te heheura'a —Pāpa'ihia 'e tāpirihia, 'e hunahia i te Fatu ra 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia mou—'ia tae mai nā roto i te hōro'a 'e te mana o te Atua, 'e 'ia 'iritihia te reira—Tāpirihia e te rima o Moroni, e hunahia i te Fatu ra, 'ia tae mai i te tau mau ra nā roto i te mau 'Ētene ra—Te 'iritira'a nō te reira nā roto ia i te hōro'a a te Atua.

E pāpa'a parau ha'apotohia i ravehia nō roto ato'a mai i te Buka a Etera, 'oia ho'i te pāpa'a parau nō te mau ta'ata o Iareda, 'o tei ha'apurarahia i te tau i fa'ahuru 'ē ai te Fatu i te reo o te mau ta'ata, 'a hāmani ai rātou i te pare 'ia tae atu i te ra'i—Nō te fa'a'ite i te toe'a o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela i te mau mea rahi tā te Fatu i rave nō tō rātou ra mau metua tāne ; 'e 'ia 'ite rātou i te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou e fa'aru'ehia ē a muri noa atu—'E 'oia ato'a 'ei fa'a'ite pāpū i te 'āti Iuda 'e te 'Ētene ē 'o IESU te MESIA, te ATUA MURE 'ORE, 'o tē fa'a'ite iāna iho i te mau nūna'a ato'a—'E i teienei, mai te mea ē tē vai ra te mau hape, e mau hape ia nā te ta'ata nei ; nō reira, 'eiaha e fa'ahapa i te mau mea a te Atua, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia riro 'ei mea pōra'o 'ore i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Mesia.

*TE 'IRITIRA'A MĀTĀMUA NŌ ROTO MAI I
TE MAU 'API I ROTO I TE REO BARATĀNE
NĀ IOSEPHA SEMITA, TAMAITI*

The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.

Te 'itera'a pāpū o nā 'ite to'otoru

'Ia 'ite tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a e taehia e teie nei buka ē : 'Ua 'ite mata mātou, nā roto i te maita'i o te Atua te Metua, 'e o tō tātou Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia, i te mau 'api nō reira mai teie nei pāpa'a parau, 'oia te pāpa'a parau nō te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e 'oia ato'a nō te mau 'āti Lamana, tō rātou mau taea'e, 'e 'oia ato'a nō te mau ta'ata o Iareda, 'o tei haere mai mai te pare mai ra 'o tei parauhia ra. 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i mātou ē, 'ua 'iritihia te reira nā roto i te hōro'a 'e te mana o te Atua, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite mai tōna reo i te reira ia mātou ; nō reira 'ua 'ite pāpū mātou ē, e parau mau ia tā teie nei buka. 'E tē fa'a'ite pāpū ato'a nei mātou ē, 'ua 'ite mātou i te mau parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a iho i te mau 'api ; 'e 'ua fa'a'itehia mai te reira ia mātou e te mana o te Atua, 'e e 'ere i tō te ta'ata nei. 'E tē fa'a'ite atu nei mātou ma te parau mau ē, 'ua pou mai te hō'ē melahi a te Atua nō te ra'i mai, 'e 'ua hōpoi mai ra 'e 'ua tu'u mai ra ho'i 'oia i taua mau 'api ra i mua i tō mātou mata, 'e 'ua hi'o atu ra 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra mātou i te mau 'api, 'e te mau parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a ihora ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i mātou ē, nā roto i te maita'i o te Atua te Metua, 'e o tō tātou Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia, i 'ite ai mātou 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei ho'i mātou ē, e parau mau ia teie mau mea. 'E e mea māere roa ho'i ia mātou nei. 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'auē mai te reo o te Fatu ia mātou 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū atu mātou i teie nei parau ; nō reira, nō tō mātou hina'aro 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei mātou i tō mātou 'itera'a pāpū nō ni'a i teie mau mea. 'E 'ua 'ite mātou ē, mai te mea e ha'apa'o maita'i mātou i tā te Mesia ra, e mā'ia tō mātou mau 'ahu i te toto o te mau ta'ata ato'a ra, 'e e ti'a atu ho'i i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Mesia ma te pōra'o 'ore, 'e e pārahi ho'i i pīha'i iho iāna ē a muri noa atu i roto i te mau ra'i. 'E 'ia fa'ahanahanahia te Metua, 'e te Tamaiti, 'e te Vārua Maita'i, 'oia te Atua hō'ē roa ra. 'Āmene.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

The Testimony of Three Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

Te 'itera'a pāpū o nā 'ite to'ova'u

'Ia 'ite tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a e taehia e teie nei buka : Nā Iosepha Semita, tamaiti, 'o tei 'iriti i teie nei buka, i fa'a'ite mai ia mātou i te mau 'api i parauhia a'enei, e mai te 'auro ĩa te huru ; 'e 'ua fāfā ho'i tō mātou rima i te mau 'api ato'a i 'iritihia e taua ta'ata ra 'o Semita ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i mātou i te mau parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a iho, 'e 'ua au te reira i te 'ohipa tahito 'e te huru 'ē ho'i. 'E tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei ho'i mātou ma te parau mau ē, e nā te ta'ata ra 'o Semita i fa'a'ite mai ia mātou, 'e 'ua 'ite mata 'e 'ua fāito rima mātou i te teiahara'a, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū ho'i mātou ē, tei taua ta'ata ra ia Semita te mau 'api tā mātou i parau a'enei. 'E tē hōro'a atu nei mātou i tō mātou mau i'oa i tō te ao nei, nō te fa'a'ite pāpū i tō te ao nei i tā mātou i hi'o. E 'aore roa mātou e ha'avare nei, 'o te Atua ho'i tei 'ite.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, TAMAITI

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

IOSEPHA SEMITA, METUA

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, JUN.

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

Te Buka Mātāmua a Nephi Tāna fa'aterera'a hau 'e tāna 'ohipa mo'a

E fa'ati'ara'a nō te 'ā'amu nō Lebi 'e nō tāna ra vabine, 'o Saria, 'e nō tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa to'omaba, i ma'iribia tō rātou ra i'oa, (ma te ha'amata i te matabiapo) Lamana, Lemuela, Samu, 'e Nephi. 'Ua fa'aara te Fatu ia Lebi 'ia reva 'ē atu i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem, nō te mea 'ua tobu atu 'oia i te mau ta'ata nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia ha'apobe iāna. 'Ua haere atu 'oia 'e tōna 'utuāfare nō nā mahana e toru i roto i te mēdēbara. 'Ua rave Nephi i tōna mau taea'e 'e 'ua ho'i atu i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem nō te rave mai i te pāpa'a parau a te mau 'āti Iuda. Tē 'ā'amu nō tō rātou mau 'ati. 'Ua rave rātou i te mau tamābine a Isema'ela 'ei vabine nā rātou. 'Ua rave rātou i tō rātou mau 'utuāfare 'e 'ua reva atu ra i roto i te mēdēbara. Tō rātou mau 'oto 'e tō rātou mau 'ati i roto i te mēdēbara. Tē tupura'a tō rātou tere. 'Ua tae rātou i te mau pape rarahi. 'Ua mārō te mau tua'ana o Nephi iāna. 'Ua ha'amāmū 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua hāmani 'oia i te hō'ē pabī. 'Ua ma'iri rātou i te i'oa o taua vābi ra 'o 'Aubune. 'Ua tere atu rātou nā ni'a i te mau pape rarahi i te fenua i fafaubia ra, 'e te vai atu ra. 'Ua au ho'i teie i te 'ā'amu a Nephi ; 'oia ho'i, 'ua pāpa'i au, 'o Nephi, i teie nei pāpa'a parau.

1 Nephi 1

- 1 'Ua fānauhia vau, 'o Nephi, e nā metua maitata'i, nō reira 'ua ha'api'ihia vau i te tahi tufa'a nō te 'ite pā'āto'a o tō'u ra metua tāne ; 'e 'ua 'ite au i te mau 'ati e rave rahi i tō'u ra pu'e mahana, 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'ahereherehia vau e te Fatu i tō'u mau mahana ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua noa'a iā'u te 'ite rahi i te maita'i 'e te mau parau 'aro a te Atua ra, nō reira e pāpa'i au i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau nō te mau mea tā'u i rave i tō'u ra mau mahana.
- 2 'Oia ia, tē pāpa'i nei au i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau i te reo o tō'u ra metua tāne, 'e nō ni'a te reira i te 'ite o te mau 'āti Iuda 'e te reo o tō 'Aiphiti.

The First Book of Nephi His Reign and Ministry

An account of Lebi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lebi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

1 Nephi 1

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

3 'E 'ua 'ite au ē, e pāpa'a parau mau teie tā'u e pāpa'i nei ; 'e tē pāpa'i nei au i te reira i tō'u iho rima ; 'e tē pāpa'i nei au i te reira mai te au i tō'u iho 'ite.

4 I te mea ē, i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te matahiti mātāmua nō te fa'aterera'a a Zedekia, te ari'i nō Iuda, (i noho tō'u ra metua tāne, 'o Lehi, i Ierusalemā i tōna ra pu'e mahana ato'a) ; 'e i taua matahiti ihora i haere mai ai te mau peropheta e rave rahi, i te tohura'a i te mau ta'ata ē, 'ia tātarahapa rātou e ti'a ai, 'e 'aore rā e ha'amouhia te 'oire rahi ra o Ierusalemā.

5 Nō reira, i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra tō'u metua tāne, 'o Lehi, pure atu ra i te Fatu, 'oia ia, ma tōna 'ā'au ato'a, nō tōna ra mau ta'ata.

6 'E i muri a'era, 'a pure atu ai 'oia i te Fatu, 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē pou auahi e pārahi a'era i ni'a iho i te hō'ē mato i mua iāna ra ; e rave rahi te mea tāna i hi'o 'e i fa'aro'o ; 'e nō te mau mea tāna i hi'o 'e i fa'aro'o ra, 'ua 'āueue ihora 'oia ma te rurutaina rahi.

7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i atu ra 'oia i tōna iho fare i Ierusalemā ; 'e 'ua ta'oto ihora 'oia i ni'a i tōna ra ro'i, nō te mea i paruparu 'oia i te Vārua 'e i te mau mea tāna i hi'o ra.

8 'E nō te mea ho'i i paruparu 'oia i te Vārua, 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu 'oia i roto i te hō'ē 'ōrama, 'oia ia 'ua 'ite a'era ho'i 'oia i te mau ra'i i te vēteara'a, 'e 'ua mana'o ihora 'oia ē, 'ua 'ite atu 'oia i te Atua i te pārahira'a i ni'a iho i tōna ra terōno, ma te ha'a'atihia e te mau pupu melahi e'ita e hope 'ia tai'o, i te hīmenera'a 'e te 'āruera'a i tō rātou ra Atua.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia i te Hō'ē i te poura'a mai mai rōpū mai i te ra'i, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia ē 'ua hau atu tōna 'ana'ana i tō te mahana i te avatea ra.

10 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a atu ra 'oia hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti atu ā mau ta'ata i te pe'era'a mai iāna ra, 'e 'ua hau atu tō rātou 'ana'ana i tō te mau feti'a i te ra'i ra.

11 'E 'ua pou mai ra rātou i raro 'e 'ua haere atu ra nā ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra te ta'ata mātāmua 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra i mua i tō'u metua tāne, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai ra i te hō'ē buka iāna, 'e 'ua fa'auē mai ra iāna 'ia tai'o.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'a tai'o ai 'oia, 'ua 'ī a'era 'oia i te Vārua o te Fatu.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

- 13 'E 'ua tai'o 'oia, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Auē ho'i ē, 'auē ho'i ē, e Ierusalemā ē, 'ua 'ite ho'i au i tā 'oe ra mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ! 'Oia ia, e rave rahi te mau mea tā tō'u metua tāne i tai'o nō ni'a ia Ierusalemā—e ha'amouhia ia 'e tae noa atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a i reira ; e rave rahi tē pohe i te 'o'e, 'e e rave rahi tē hōpoi-tītī-hia i Babulonia ra.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tai'o 'e 'ia hi'o ho'i tō'u metua tāne i te mau mea faufa'a rahi e rave rahi 'e te māere ho'i, 'ua fa'ahiti pūai atu ra 'oia i te mau mea e rave rahi i te Fatu, mai teie te huru : E mea faufa'a rahi 'e te māere tā 'oe ra mau 'ohipa, 'e te Fatu te Atua Manahope ! E mea teitei tō 'oe terōno i roto i te mau ra'i, 'e tei ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te fenua nei tō 'oe mana, 'e tō 'oe maita'i, 'e tō 'oe aroha ; ē, nō tō 'oe aroha, e'ita roa 'oe e fa'ati'a 'ia pohe rātou 'o tē haere mai ia 'oe na !
- 15 E mai teie te huru o te reo o tō'u metua tāne i te 'āruera'a i tōna Atua ; 'e 'ua 'oa'oa ho'i tōna vārua, 'e 'ua fa'a'ihia tōna 'ā'au ato'a, nō te mau mea tāna i hi'o, 'oia ia, nō tā te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai iāna ra.
- 16 'E i teienei, e'ita vau, 'o Nephi, e pāpa'i i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ā'amu o te mau mea tā tō'u metua tāne i pāpa'i, 'ua pāpa'i ho'i 'oia i te mau mea e rave rahi tāna i 'ite i roto i te mau 'ōrama 'e i roto i te mau moemoeā ; 'e 'ua pāpa'i ato'a ho'i 'oia i te mau mea e rave rahi tāna i tohu 'e tāna i parau atu i tāna ra mau tamari'i, 'e 'aita ho'i au e pāpa'i i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ā'amu.
- 17 E pāpa'i rā vau i te hō'ē 'ā'amu nō te mau mea tā'u i rave i tō'u ra pu'e mahana. Inaha, e ha'apoto vau i te pāpa'a parau a tō'u ra metua tāne i ni'a i te mau 'api tā tō'u iho nā rima i hāmani ; nō reira, i muri iho i tō'u ha'apotorā'a i te pāpa'a parau a tō'u ra metua tāne, 'ei reira vau e pāpa'i ai i te hō'ē 'ā'amu nō tō'u iho orara'a.
- 18 Nō reira, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, i muri iho i tō te Fatu fa'a'itera'a i te mau mea māere e rave rahi i tō'u ra metua tāne, ia Lehi, 'oia ia, nō ni'a i te ha'amoura'a o Ierusalemā, inaha, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te tohu 'e i te fa'a'ite ia rātou nō ni'a i te mau mea tāna i 'ite 'e i fa'aro'o.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāhitohito mai ra te mau 'āti Iuda iāna nō te mau mea tāna i fa'a'ite atu nō ni'a ia rātou ra ; i fa'a'ite pāpū atu ho'i 'oia nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ho'i 'oia ē, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai te mau mea tāna i 'ite 'e i fa'aro'o, 'e te mau mea ho'i tāna i tai'o i roto i taua buka ra, i te taera'a mai o te hō'ē Mesia, 'e te fa'aorara'a ho'i o tō te ao nei.

20 'E i te fa'aro'ora'a te mau 'āti Iuda i teie nei mau mea, 'ua riri ihora rātou iāna ; 'oia ia, mai te mau peropheta i tahito ra, 'o tā rātou i ti'avaru 'ē atu, 'e i pēhi i te 'ōfa'i, 'e i taparahi ; 'e 'ua tītau ato'a ho'i rātou i tōna ora, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave 'ē atu i te reira. Inaha rā, e fa'a'ite atu vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia 'outou ē, tei ni'a iho tō te Fatu aroha ia rātou ato'a 'o tāna i mā'iti, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'ia ha'apūai ia rātou i te mana nō te fa'aorara'a.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

1 Nephi 2

- 1 Inaha ho'i, i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu i tō'u metua tāne, 'oia ia, i roto i te hō'ē moemoeā, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra iāna : E ao tō 'oe, e Lehi, nō te mau mea tā 'oe i rave ra ; 'e nō te mea ho'i ē, 'ua itoito 'oe 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu i teie nei nūna'a i te mau mea tā'u i fa'aue atu ia 'oe ra, inaha, tē tītau nei rātou 'ia taparahi ia 'oe.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue mai ra te Fatu i tō'u metua tāne, 'oia ia i roto i te hō'ē moemoeā, 'ia rave 'oia i tōna 'utuāfare 'e 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i 'oia i te parau a te Fatu, nō reira 'ua rave 'oia mai tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai iāna ra.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i roto i te mēdēbara. 'E 'ua fa'aru'e ihora 'oia i tōna fare, 'e tōna ra fenua 'āi'a, 'e tāna 'auro, 'e tāna 'ārio, 'e tāna mau tao'a faufa'a rahi, 'e 'aore e mea tāna i hōpoi atu, maori rā tōna 'utuāfare, 'e tāna mau mā'a, 'e tōna mau ti'ahapa, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 5 'E 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i raro i te mau hiti fenua i fātata i te miti 'Ute'ute ra ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i roto i te mēdēbara nā te mau hiti fenua piri a'e i te miti 'Ute'ute ra ; 'e 'ua haere atu 'oia i roto i te mēdēbara 'e tōna 'utuāfare, 'oia ho'i tō'u ra metua vahine, 'o Saria, 'e tō'u mau tua'ana, 'o Lamana, 'o Lemuela, 'e 'o Samu.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, e tae a'era i te toru o te mahana nō tōna terera'a nā te mēdēbara ra, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora 'oia i tōna ti'ahapa i roto i te hō'ē peho i te pae o te hō'ē 'ānāvai pape ra.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua patu ihora 'oia i te hō'ē fata 'ōfa'i, 'e 'ua pūpū ihora 'oia i te hō'ē tusia i te Fatu, 'e 'ua ha'amāuruuru atu ra ho'i 'oia i te Fatu i tō tātou ra Atua.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ma'iri ihora 'oia i te i'oa o taua 'ānāvai ra, 'o Lamana, 'e tē tahe roa atu ra taua 'ānāvai ra i roto i te miti 'Ute'ute ; 'e tei pīha'i iho ho'i te peho i te mau hiti fenua o te muriāvai ra.

1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

- 9 'E 'ia 'ite a'era tō'u metua tāne ē, tē tahe noa ra te mau pape o taua 'ānāvai ra i roto i te vai piha'a o te miti 'Ute'ute, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia Lamana, nā 'ō atu ra : 'Auē, 'āhiri 'oe i riro mai teie nei 'ānāvai te huru, i te tahe-noa-ra'a atu i roto i te vai piha'a o te mau parauti'a ato'a ra !
- 10 'E 'ua parau ato'a atu ra ho'i 'oia ia Lemuela : 'Auē, 'āhiri 'oe i riro mai teie nei peho te huru, i te mau māite 'e te itoito, 'e te 'āueue 'ore i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu !
- 11 I teienei, nō te 'ā'au 'eta'eta o Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela i parau ai 'oia i taua parau ra ; inaha ho'i, 'ua amuamu rāua i tō rāua metua tāne i te mau mea e rave rahi, nō te mea e ta'ata 'ite 'ōrama 'oia, 'e 'ua arata'i 'oia ia rātou i rāpae i te fenua nō Ierusalem, nō te fa'aru'e i tō rātou fenua 'āi'a, 'e tā rātou 'auro, 'e tā rātou 'ārio, 'e tā rātou mau tao'a faufa'a rahi, 'ia pohe i roto i te mēdēbara. 'E 'ua parau mai ra rāua ē, nō te mau mana'o ma'ama'a o tōna ra 'ā'au i nā reira ai 'oia.
- 12 'E nō reira 'ua amuamu 'o Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela, nā tamaiti pa'ari a'e, i tō rāua metua tāne. 'E 'ua amuamu rāua nō te mea 'aore rāua i 'ite i te mau 'ohipa a taua Atua ra 'o tei hāmani ia rāua.
- 13 'Aore ato'a rāua i ti'aturi ē, e ha'amouhia taua 'oire rahi ra, 'o Ierusalem, mai te au i te mau parau a te mau peropheta. 'E 'ua riro ho'i rāua mai te mau 'āti Iuda i pārahi i Ierusalem ra, 'o tei tūtau 'ia taparahi i tō'u metua tāne.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'o atu tō'u metua tāne ia rāua i roto i te peho nō Lemuela, ma te mana, 'ua 'i ho'i 'oia i te Vārua, ē tae noa atu 'ua rurutaina tō rāua tino i mua iāna. 'E 'ua ha'amāmū 'oia ia rāua, 'e 'aore atu ra i ti'a ia rāua 'ia pāto'i mai iāna ; nō reira, 'ua ha'apa'o rāua mai tāna i fa'aue atu ia rāua.
- 15 'E 'ua pārahi ihora tō'u metua tāne i roto i te hō'ē ti'ahapa.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, e ta'ata 'āpī roa vau, 'o Nephi, 'āre'a rā e tino rahi tō'u, 'e te hina'aro rahi ho'i i te 'ite i te mau parau 'aro a te Atua, nō reira 'ua ti'aoro atu vau i te Fatu ; 'E inaha, 'ua fā mai ra 'oia iā'u, 'e 'ua ha'amarū ho'i i tō'u 'ā'au 'e 'ua ti'aturi ihora vau i te mau parau ato'a i parahia e tō'u ra metua tāne ; nō reira, 'aore atu ra vau i mārō iāna mai tā tō'u ra nā tua'ana.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

- 17 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia Samu, ma te fa'a'ite atu iāna i te mau mea tā te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai iā'u i tōna ra Vārua Mo'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aturi ihora 'oia i tā'u mau parau.
- 18 'Āre'a rā, inaha, 'aore Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela e fa'aro'o i tā'u ra mau parau ; 'e nō te 'eta'eta o tō rāua 'ā'au 'ua tupu tō'u 'oto 'e 'ua ti'aoro māite atu vau i te Fatu nō rāua.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : E ao tō 'oe, e Nephi, nō tō 'oe na fa'aro'o, 'e 'ua 'imi māite mai ho'i 'oe iā'u nei ma te 'ā'au ha'eha'a.
- 20 'E mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u nei mau fa'auera'a, e manuia ia 'outou, 'e e arata'ihia ho'i 'outou i te hō'ē fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'oia ia, i te hō'ē fenua tā'u i fa'aineine nō 'outou ; 'oia ia, i te hō'ē fenua maita'i a'e i te mau fenua 'ē ato'a ra.
- 21 E mai te mea e mārō mai tō 'oe nā tua'ana ia 'oe na, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia rāua i te aro o te Fatu.
- 22 E mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'oe i tā'u ra mau fa'auera'a, e fa'arirohia ia 'oe 'ei tāvana 'e 'ei 'orometua i ni'a i tō 'oe mau tua'ana.
- 23 Inaha ho'i, i taua mahana ra 'a mārō mai ai rāua iā'u nei, e 'anatema ia vau ia rāua i te 'anatema rahi, 'e e 'ore roa e roa'a ia rāua te mana i ni'a i tō 'oe ra hua'ai, maori rā 'ia mārō ato'a mai ho'i rāua iā'u nei.
- 24 'E 'ia mārō mai ho'i rāua iā'u ra, e riro ia rāua 'ei mea tā'iri nā tō 'oe hua'ai, nō te fa'aaraa i te ha'amana'o i roto ia rāua ra.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

1 Nephi 3

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i mai ra vau, 'o Nephi, i muri iho i te paraparaura'a i te Fatu, i te ti'ahapa o tō'u ra metua tāne.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : Inaha, 'ua moemoeāhia vau i te hō'ē moemoeā, 'e i roto i te reira 'ua fa'ue mai te Fatu iā'u, 'ia ho'i atu 'oe 'e tō 'oe mau tua'ana i Ierusalem.
- 3 Inaha ho'i, tei ia Labana ra te pāpa'a parau nō te mau 'āti Iuda 'e te tuatāpapara'a ato'a nō tō'u ra mau hui tupuna, 'e 'ua 'ō'otihia te reira i ni'a i te mau 'api veo.
- 4 Nō reira, 'ua fa'ue mai ra te Fatu iā'u, 'ia haere atu 'oe 'e tō 'oe mau tua'ana i te fare o Labana, 'ia tītau i te mau pāpa'a parau, 'e 'ia 'āfa'i mai i te reira i'ō nei i te mēdēbara.
- 5 'E i teiēnei, inaha, tē amuamu nei tō 'oe nā tua'ana, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē, e mea rave 'atā te mea tā'u i ani ia rāua ; inaha rā 'aore au i ani i te reira ia rāua, 'āre'a rā, e fa'auera'a te reira nā te Fatu.
- 6 Nō reira, 'a haere, e tā'u tamaiti, 'e e fa'ahereherehia 'oe e te Fatu, nō te mea 'aore 'oe i amuamu mai.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i tō'u metua tāne : E haere au e rave i te mau mea tā te Fatu i fa'ue mai, 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'aore roa te Fatu e hōro'a mai i te mau fa'auera'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, maori rā e fa'aineine 'oia i te hō'ē rāve'a nō rātou, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave fa'aoti i te mea tāna i fa'ue mai ia rātou ra.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, i te fa'aro'ora'a tō'u metua tāne i teie nei mau parau, 'ua 'oa'oa roa ihora 'oia, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, 'ua ha'amaita'ihia vau e te Fatu.
- 9 'E 'ua haere atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, 'e tō'u mau tua'ana i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e tō mātou mau ti'ahapa, nō te haere atu i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, i tō mātou taera'a atu i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem, 'ua paraparau ihora vau 'e tō'u mau tua'ana te tahi i te tahi.

1 Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

- 11 'E 'ua tufa kelero ihora mātou—'ia 'itea ē 'o vai tō mātou e haere atu i roto i te fare o Labana. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riro atu ra te kelero ia Lamana ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra Lamana i roto i te fare o Labana, 'e 'ua paraparau atu 'oia iāna 'a pārahi ai 'oia i roto i tōna ra fare.
- 12 'E 'ua tītau atu ra 'oia ia Labana i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ra, 'e tei roto ho'i i te reira te tuatāpapara'a tupuna o tō'u ra metua tāne.
- 13 'E inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua riri roa a'era o Labana, 'e 'ua ti'avaru 'ē atu ra iāna mai mua atu i tōna ra aro ; e 'aore 'oia i hina'aro 'ia noa'a te mau pāpa'a parau iāna. Nō reira, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia iāna : Inaha, e ta'ata 'eiā 'oe, 'e e taparahi au ia 'oe.
- 14 'Āre'a rā 'ua horo 'ē atu ra 'o Lamana mai mua atu i tōna aro, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra ia mātou i te mau mea tā Labana i rave. 'E 'ua 'oto roa ihora mātou i reira, 'e 'ua fātata roa tō'u mau tua'ana i te ho'i atu i tō'u metua tāne i te mēdēbara.
- 15 Inaha rā, 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rātou : Mai te Fatu e ora ra, e mai ia tātou ho'i e ora nei, 'eiaha roa tātou e haere atu i raro i tō tātou metua tāne i te mēdēbara, ē tae noa atu 'ua rave fa'aoti tātou i te mea tā te Fatu i fa'ae mai ia tātou ra.
- 16 Nō reira, 'ia itoito tātou i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu ; 'e teienei, 'ia haere tātou i raro i te fenua 'āi'a o tō tātou metua tāne, inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'aru'e 'oia i te 'auro 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau huru tao'a ato'a i reira. 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia nō te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu.
- 17 'Ua 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, e ha'amouhia Ierusalem, nō te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore a te mau ta'ata.
- 18 Inaha ho'i, 'ua pāto'i rātou i te mau parau a te mau peropheta. Nō reira, 'āhiri tō'u metua tāne i pārahi noa i te fenua i muri a'e i tōna ra fa'auera'ahia mai 'ia haere 'ē atu i rāpae i te fenua, inaha, 'ua pohe ato'a ia 'oia. Nō reira, e mea ti'a roa iāna 'ia haere 'ē atu i rāpae i te fenua.
- 19 'E inaha, tei roto i te Atua te pa'ari 'ia noa'a teie nei mau pāpa'a parau ia tātou nei, 'ia ti'a ia tātou 'ia fa'aherehere i te reo o tō tātou mau metua nā tā tātou mau tamari'i.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

20 'E 'ia ti'a ho'i ia tātou 'ia fa'aherehere nā rātou te mau parau i parauhia mai e te vaha o te mau peropheta mo'a ato'a ra, 'o tei hōro'ahia mai ia rātou e te Vārua 'e te mana o te Atua, mai te ha'amatarā'a o te ao nei ē tae roa mai i teie nei 'anotau.

21 'E i muri a'era, i nā reira ho'i au i te a'o atu i tō'u ra mau tua'ana, 'ia itoito rātou i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra mātou i raro i tō mātou fenua 'āi'a, 'e 'ua ha'apu'e mai ra mātou i tā mātou 'auro, 'e tā mātou 'ārio, 'e tā mātou mau tao'a faufa'a rahi.

23 'E oti a'era teie mau mea i te ha'apu'ehia e mātou, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra mātou i te fare o Labana.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra mātou i roto e fārerei ia Labana, 'e 'ua tītau atu ra mātou iāna 'ia hōro'a mai ia mātou i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ra, 'e 'ia nā reira 'oia, e hōro'a iā mātou i tā mātou 'auro, 'e tā mātou 'ārio, 'e tā mātou mau tao'a faufa'a rahi ato'a nāna.

25 'E i muri a'era, i tō Labana 'itera'a mai i tā mātou mau tao'a, 'oia ho'i, i te rahi nō te reira, 'ua nounou ihora 'oia i te reira, 'e 'ua ti'avaru ihora 'oia ia mātou i rāpae, 'e 'ua tononā mai ra i tōna mau tāvini nō te taparahi ia mātou, 'ia noa'a tā mātou mau tao'a iāna ra.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra mātou mai mua atu i te mau tāvini o Labana, 'e 'ua ti'a roa ia mātou 'ia fa'aru'e atu i tā mātou mau tao'a, 'e 'ua riro atu ra te reira i roto i te rima o Labana.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra mātou i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'aore atu ra mātou i ro'ohia mai e te mau tāvini o Labana, 'e 'ua tāpuni ihora mātou i roto i te hō'ē ana mato.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri mai ra Lamana iā'u, 'e i tō'u ato'a ho'i metua tāne ; 'e 'ua riri ato'a mai 'o Lemuela, nō te mea 'ua ha'apa'o 'oia i te parau a Lamana. Nō reira 'ua parau mai Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela e rave rahi mau parau fa'a'ino i ni'a ia māua, i tō rāua nā teina, 'oia iā 'ua tā'iri rāua ia māua i te rā'au.

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'a tā'iri mai ai rāua ia māua i te rā'au, inaha, 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē melahi a te Fatu e ti'a mai ra i mua ia rāua, 'e 'ua parau mai ra 'oia ia rāua, nā 'ō mai ra : Nō te aha 'ōrua i tā'iri ai i tō 'ōrua teina i te rā'au ? 'Aita ānei 'ōrua i 'ite ē, nō tā 'ōrua mau 'ohipa 'īino 'ua mā'iti te Fatu iāna 'ia riro 'ei fa'atere nō 'ōrua ? Inaha, 'a haere fa'ahou atu 'outou i Ierusalem, 'e e tu'u mai te Fatu ia Labana i roto i tō 'outou rima.

30 'E i muri iho i tō te melahi paraparaura'a mai ia mātou, 'ua reva 'ē atu ra 'oia.

31 'E i muri iho i tō te melahi reva-'ē-ra'a atu, 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela i te amuamu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Nāhea e ti'a ai i te Fatu 'ia tu'u mai ia Labana i roto i tō tātou rima ? Inaha, e ta'ata mana 'oia, 'e e ti'a iāna 'ia fa'ae e pae 'ahuru ta'ata, 'oia ia, e ti'a ho'i iāna 'ia taparahi e pae 'ahuru ta'ata ; e aha ia e 'ore ai e ti'a iāna 'ia nā reira ia tātou ?

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

1 Nephi 4

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau i tō'u mau tua'ana, nā 'ō atu ra : Mai e haere fa'ahou tātou i ni'a, i Ieruselema ra, 'e 'ia itoito ho'i tātou i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu ; inaha ho'i, 'ua hau atu tōna pūai i tō te ao ato'a nei, 'e nō te aha ho'i tōna pūai i 'ore ai i hau atu i tō Labana 'e i tō tōna mau ta'ata e pae 'ahuru, 'oia ia, 'e i tō tōna mau 'ahurura'a ho'i i te tauatini ?
- 2 Nō reira e haere tātou i ni'a ; 'e 'ia itoito tātou mai ia Mose ra ; 'oia mau, nāna ho'i i parau atu i te mau pape nō te miti 'Ute'ute, 'e 'ua ta'a 'ē atu ra rātou i terā pae 'e i terā pae, 'e 'ua haere mai ra tō tātou mau metua nā roto mai, mai te tīūra'a mai, nā ni'a i te repo marō ra, 'e 'ua pe'e mai ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Phara'o ia rātou 'e 'ua paremo ihora rātou i roto i te mau pape nō te miti 'Ute'ute ra.
- 3 I teienei inaha, 'ua 'ite 'ōrua ē, e parau mau ana'e te reira ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i 'ōrua ē, 'ua paraparau mai te hō'ē melahi ia 'ōrua na ; nō reira e ti'a ānei ia 'ōrua 'ia fē'a'a ? Mai e haere tātou i ni'a ; e ti'a ho'i i te Fatu 'ia fa'aora ia tātou, mai tāna i fa'aora i tō tātou mau metua, 'e 'ia ha'amou ho'i ia Labana, mai tāna i ha'amou i tō 'Aiphiti ra.
- 4 I teienei, i muri iho i tō'u paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, tē riri noa ra ā rāua, 'e 'ua amuamu noa mai ā ; 'ua pe'e mai rā rāua iā'u ē tae noa atu i rāpae'au i te 'āua i Ieruselema ra.
- 5 E ru'i ihora ; 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra vau 'ia fa'atāpuni rātou ia rātou iho i rāpae'au i te 'āua. E i muri iho i tō rātou fa'atāpunira'a ia rātou iho, 'ua haere huna atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i roto i te 'oire, e haere ti'a atu ra i te fare o Labana ra.
- 6 'E 'ua arata'ihia vau e te Vārua, 'e 'aore au i 'ite nā mua roa i te mau mea tā'u e ti'a 'ia rave.
- 7 'Āre'a rā 'ua haere atu vau, 'e 'ia fātata atu vau i te fare o Labana, 'ua 'ite ihora vau i te hō'ē ta'ata, 'e i ma'iri 'oia i raro i te repo i mua iho iā'u ra, nō te mea 'ua ta'ero 'oia i te uaina.
- 8 'E 'ia tae atu vau iāna ra, 'ua 'ite ihora vau ē, 'o Labana ia.

1 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

- 9 'E 'ua hi'o ihora vau i tāna 'o'e, 'e 'ua unuhi a'era vau i te reira mai tōna vaira'a ; e 'auro mau te tāpe'ara'a o taua 'o'e ra, 'e e mea maita'i roa ho'i te hāmanira'a, 'e 'ua 'ite ihora ho'i au i te tipi o taua 'o'e ra, e mea hāmanihia ia i te 'āuri tao'a rahi.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ahopo mai ra te Vārua iā'u 'ia taparahi ia Labana ; 'ua parau ihora rā vau i roto i tō'u 'ā'au ē : 'aore roa ā vau i ha'amani'i i te toto o te ta'ata. 'E 'ua 'ōtohe ihora vau 'e 'aore ho'i au i hina'aro i te taparahi iāna.
- 11 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te Vārua iā'u : Inaha, 'ua tu'u mai te Fatu iāna i roto i tō 'oe nā rima. 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i au ē, 'e 'ua tītau 'oia 'ia rave 'ē atu i tō'u nei ora ; 'oia ia, 'e 'aore 'oia i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu ; 'e 'ua haru ato'a ho'i 'oia i tā mātou tao'a.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te Vārua iā'u : 'A taparahi iāna, 'ua tu'u mai ho'i te Fatu iāna i roto i tō 'oe nā rima ;
- 13 Inaha, e ha'apohe te Fatu i te feiā parauti'a 'ore nō te fa'atupu i tāna ra mau 'ōpuara'a parauti'a. E mea maita'i a'e 'ia pohe te hō'ē ta'ata, 'eiaha rā te hō'ē nūna'a 'ia haere paruparu 'e 'ia pohe i roto i te ti'aturi 'ore.
- 14 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era vau, 'o Nephi, i taua mau parau ra, 'ua ha'amana'o ihora vau i te mau parau tā te Fatu i parau mai iā'u i roto i te mēdēbara, i te nā-ō-ra'a mai ē : Mai te mea e ha'apa'o tō 'oe ra hua'ai i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, e manuia rātou i ni'a i te fenua i fafauhia ra.
- 15 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua mana'o ato'a ihora ho'i au ē, e'ita e ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu mai te au i te ture a Mose ra, maori rā 'ua roa'a ia rātou te ture.
- 16 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i au ē, 'ua 'ō'otihia te ture i ni'a i te mau 'api veo.
- 17 'E 'oia ato'a, 'ua 'ite au ē 'o teie te tumu te Fatu i tu'u mai ai ia Labana i roto i tō'u rima—'ia roa'a mai iā'u te mau pāpa'a parau mai te au i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a.
- 18 Nō reira, 'ua ha'apa'o vau i te reo o te Vārua, 'e 'ua rave ihora vau ia Labana nā te rouru o te upo'o ra, 'e 'ua tāpū 'ē atu ra vau i tōna upo'o i tāna ihora 'o'e.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

19 'E oti a'era tōna upo'o i te tāpū-'ē-hia atu e au i tāna ihora 'o'e, 'ua rave ihora vau i te mau 'ahu o Labana 'e 'ua tu'u ihora i te reira i ni'a i tō'u iho tino ; 'oia ia i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ahu ; 'e 'ua tātua ihora ho'i au i tōna 'ahu tama'i i tō'u tau'upu.

20 'E oti a'era te reira i te ravehia e au, 'ua haere atu ra vau i te fare vaira'a tao'a a Labana. 'E i tō'u haerera'a atu i te fare vaira'a tao'a a Labana ra, inaha, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te tāvini o Labana e tei iāna ra te mau tāviri nō te fare vaira'a tao'a. 'E 'ua fa'ae atu ra vau iāna ma te reo o Labana, 'ia haere māua i roto i te fare vaira'a tao'a.

21 'E 'ua mana'o ihora 'oia ē, 'o vau tōna fatu ra, 'o Labana, nō te mea 'ua 'ite mai 'oia i te mau 'ahu 'e te 'o'e ho'i tei tātuahia i tō'u ra tau'upu.

22 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u nō ni'a i te feiā pa'ari o te 'āti Iuda, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, i haere nā tōna fatu ra, 'o Labana, i rotopū ia rātou i te ru'i.

23 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna mai te mea ra ē 'o Labana iho.

24 'E 'ua parau ato'a atu ra ho'i au iāna, e hōpoi atu vau i te mau parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo i tō'u mau tua'ana i rāpae'au mai i te 'āua.

25 'E 'ua fa'ae ato'a atu ho'i au iāna 'ia pe'e mai iā'u.

26 'E nō te mea 'ua mana'o 'oia ē tē parau ra vau nō ni'a i te mau taea'e o te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'o vau iho ā 'o Labana 'o tā'u i taparahi ra, nō reira 'ua pe'e mai 'oia iā'u.

27 'E 'ua parau pinepine mai 'oia iā'u nō ni'a i te feiā pa'ari o te 'āti Iuda ra, 'a haere atu ai au i tō'u ra mau tua'ana i rāpae'au mai i te 'āua ra.

28 'E i muri a'era, i tō Lamana 'itera'a mai iā'u, 'ua mata'u roa ihora 'oia, 'e 'o Lemuela, 'e 'o Samu ato'a ho'i. 'E 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou mai mua atu iā'u ra ; i mana'o ho'i rātou ē, 'o Labana iā, 'e 'ua taparahi 'oia iā'u, 'e tē tītau ato'a ra 'oia 'ia rave 'ē atu i tō rātou ato'a ra ora.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pi'i atu ra vau ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o mai ra rātou iā'u ; nō reira 'ua fa'aea rātou i te horo 'ē atu mai mua atu i tō'u aro.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite atu te tāvini o Labana i tō'u ra mau tua'ana, 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te rurutaina, 'e 'ua fātata ho'i 'oia i te horo 'ē atu mai mua atu iā'u, 'e 'ia ho'i atu i te 'oire ra nō Ierusalem.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

31 'E i teienei, e ta'ata tino rahi ho'i au, 'o Nephi, 'e 'ua roa'a ato'a ho'i iā'u te pūai rahi o te Fatu, nō reira 'ua haru vau i te tāvini o Labana, 'e 'ua tāpe'a ihora iāna, 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia horo 'ē atu.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna, mai te mea e ha'apa'o maita'i 'oia i tā'u mau parau, mai te Fatu e ora nei, 'e mai iā'u ho'i e ora nei, e fa'aora iā mātou iāna mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'oia i tā mātou mau parau.

33 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna ma te tapu ē, 'eiaha 'oia e mata'u ; 'e e riro ho'i 'oia 'ei ta'ata ti'amā mai ia mātou ato'a te huru, mai te mea e haere atu 'oia i raro i te mēdēbara nā muri ia mātou.

34 'E 'ua parau ato'a atu ra vau iāna, nā 'ō atu ra : 'Oia mau, 'ua fa'aue mai te Atua ia mātou 'ia rave i teie nei 'ohipa ; 'e e'ita ānei i te mea ti'a ia tātou 'ia fa'aitoito i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu ? Nō reira, mai te mea e haere ato'a mai 'oe i raro, i te mēdēbara i tō'u ra metua tāne, e vāhi iā tō 'oe i pīha'i iho ia mātou ra.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ua itoito mai Zorama nō te fāri'i i te mau parau tā'u i parau. 'O Zorama ho'i te i'oa o taua tāvini ra ; 'e 'ua fafau mai 'oia ē e haere ato'a mai 'oia i raro i te mēdēbara i tō mātou ra metua tāne. 'Oia iā, 'e 'ua parau mai ra 'oia ma te tapu ia mātou ē, e pārahi 'oia i pīha'i iho ia mātou mai te reira atu taime.

36 I teienei, 'ua hina'aro mātou 'ia pārahi mai 'oia i pīha'i iho ia mātou nō teie tumu, 'ia 'ore te 'āti Iuda 'ia 'ite i tō mātou haerera'a i te mēdēbara ra, 'o te a'ua'u mai rātou ia mātou nō te ha'amou roa ia mātou.

37 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tō Zorama tapura'a ia mātou ra, 'ua 'ore ihora tō mātou horuhoru iāna.

38 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora mātou i te mau 'api veo 'e te tāvini o Labana, e haere atu ra i te mēdēbara, 'e tae atu ra i te ti'ahapa o tō mātou ra metua tāne.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

1 Nephi 5

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae atu ra mātou i raro i roto i te mēdēbara i tō mātou ra metua tāne, inaha, 'ua 'ī roa ihora 'oia i te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa roa ato'a ho'i tō'u metua vahine ra 'o Saria, i 'oto na ho'i 'oia nō mātou.
- 2 I mana'o na ho'i 'oia ē 'ua pohe mātou i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua amuamu ato'a atu ho'i 'oia i tō'u metua tāne, i te paraura'a atu iāna ē, e ta'ata 'ite 'ōrama 'oia ; i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Inaha, 'ua arata'i mai 'oe ia mātou mai te fenua o tō tātou 'āi'a ra, 'e 'ua pohe tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e e pohe ho'i tātou i te mēdēbara nei.
- 3 'E i nā reira ho'i tō'u metua vahine i te amuamu atu i tō'u ra metua tāne.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra tō'u metua tāne iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e ta'ata 'ite 'ōrama vau ; 'āhiri 'aita vau i 'ite na i te mau mea a te Atua nā roto i te 'ōrama ra, 'aita ia vau e 'ite i te maita'i o te Atua, 'āre'a rā 'ua pārahi ia vau i Ierusalemā, 'e 'ua pohe ia vau 'e tō'u ra mau taea'e ato'a.
- 5 Inaha rā, 'ua roa'a iā'u te hō'ē fenua i fafauhia ra, 'e tē 'oa'oa nei au i te reira ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e fa'aora te Fatu i tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa i te rima o Labana ra, 'e e arata'i fa'ahou mai 'oia ia rātou i raro ia taua i te mēdēbara nei.
- 6 'E i nā reira ho'i tō'u metua tāne ra 'o Lehi i te tāmāhanahana atu i tō'u ra metua vahine ia Saria, nō ni'a ia mātou, 'a haere ai mātou nā te mēdēbara i ni'a, i te fenua nō Ierusalemā, 'ia roa'a mai te pāpā'a parau nō te mau 'āti Iuda.
- 7 'E i tō mātou ho'ira'a atu i te ti'ahapa o tō'u ra metua tāne, inaha 'ua 'ī ihora rāua i te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ua tāmāhanahanahia tō'u metua vahine.
- 8 'E 'ua parau ihora 'oia, nā 'ō ihora : I teienei, 'ua 'ite pāpū vau ē, 'ua fa'aue mai te Fatu i tā'u tāne 'ia haere 'ē atu i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū ato'a ho'i au ē, 'ua pāroru mai te Fatu i tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e 'ua fa'aora ho'i ia rātou i te rima o Labana ra, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai ho'i i te mana ia rātou, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave i te mea tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai ia rātou ra. 'E i nā reira ho'i 'oia i te paraura'a.

1 Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'oa'oa roa rāua, 'e 'ua pūpū atu ra ho'i rāua i te tusia 'e te mau tusia tāauahi i te Fatu ra ; 'e 'ua ha'amāuruuru atu ra ho'i rāua i te Atua nō 'Īserā'ela.
- 10 'E i muri iho i tō rāua ha'amāuruurura'a i te Atua nō 'Īserā'ela, 'ua rave ihora tō'u metua tāne ra, 'o Lehi, i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ra, 'e 'ua tai'o māite ihora 'oia mai te ha'amatarara'a mai.
- 11 'E 'ua 'ite a'era 'oia ē, tei roto i te reira te mau buka e pae a Mose, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te 'ā'amu nō te hāmanira'ahia o te ao nei, 'e 'oia ato'a o Adamu 'e Eva, tō tātou nā metua mātāmua.
- 12 'E 'oia ato'a te pāpa'a parau nō te mau 'āti Iuda mai te mātāmua mai ā, ē tae roa mai i te ha'amatarara'a nō te fa'aterera'a a Zedekia, te ari'i nō Iuda.
- 13 'E 'oia ato'a te mau tohura'a a te mau peropheta mo'a, mai te mātāmua mai ā, ē tae roa mai i te ha'amatarara'a nō te fa'aterera'a a Zedekia ; 'e 'oia ato'a e rave rahi mau tohura'a 'o tei parauhia e te vaha o Ieremia.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite ato'a atu ra tō'u metua tāne o Lehi ē, tei ni'a iho i te mau 'api veo te tuatāpapara'a tupuna o tōna ra mau metua ; nō reira 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, e hua'ai 'oia nō Iosepha ; 'oia ho'i, 'o Iosepha te tamaiti a Iakoba, 'o tei ho'ohia i 'Aiphiti ra, 'e 'o tei fa'aorahia e te rima o te Fatu, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'aora i tōna ra metua tāne ia Iakoba, 'e tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a i te pohe o'e ra.
- 15 'E 'ua arata'i-ato'a-hia rātou i rāpae i te tītira'a 'e i rāpae i te fenua nō 'Aiphiti, e taua iho Atua ra 'o tei fa'aora ia rātou.
- 16 E mea nā reira i 'itehia mai ai i tō'u metua tāne, ia Lehi, te tuatāpapara'a tupuna o tōna ra mau metua. E hua'ai ato'a Labana nō Iosepha, nō reira ho'i 'oia 'e tōna mau metua i tāpe'a ai i taua mau pāpa'a parau ra.
- 17 'E i teienei, i te 'itera'a tō'u metua tāne i teie mau mea ato'a, 'ua 'i ihora 'oia i te Vārua, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te tohu nō ni'a i tōna hua'ai, i te nā-ō-ra'a ē—
- 18 E tae ho'i teie mau 'api veo i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a nō tōna ra hua'ai.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

19 Nō reira, 'ua parau 'oia ē, e 'ore roa teie mau 'api veo e mou ; 'e e 'ore ho'i e mohimohi nō te maoro o te vaira'a. 'E 'ua tohu 'oia e rave rahi atu ā mau mea nō ni'a i tōna hua'ai.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'apa'o vau e tō'u metua tāne i te mau fa'auera'a tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai ia māua ē tae roa mai i taua taime ra.

21 'E 'ua roa'a mai ia mātou te mau pāpa'a parau tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai ia mātou ; 'e 'ua tai'o ihora mātou i te reira 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i mātou ē, e mea hina'aro-rahi-hia te reira ; 'oia ia, e mea faufa'a rahi ho'i te reira ia mātou, 'e nō reira ho'i i ti'a ai ia mātou 'ia fa'aherehere i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu nō tā mātou mau tamari'i.

22 Nō reira, 'ia au i tō te Fatu ra pa'ari, e mea ti'a roa ia mātou 'ia hōpoi atu i te reira nā muri ia mātou, 'a tere ai mātou nā roto i te mēdēbara e tae atu ai i te fenua i fafauhia ra.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

1 Nephi 6

- 1 'E i teienei, 'aita vau, 'o Nephi, e pāpa'i i te tuatāpapara'a tupuna o tō'u mau metua i roto i teie tufa'a nō tā'u pāpa'a parau ; 'aita ato'a vau e hōro'a atu i te reira i te tahi noa atu taime i ni'a i teie mau 'api 'o tā'u e pāpa'i nei ; nō te mea 'ua hōro'ahia atu te reira i roto i te pāpa'a parau i pāpa'ihia e tō'u ra metua tāne ; nō reira, 'aita vau e pāpa'i i te reira i roto i teie nei buka.
- 2 'Ua nava'i ho'i iā'u'ia parau ē, e hua'ai mātou nō Iosepha.
- 3 'E e'ita ho'i i te mea faufa'a rahi roa iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ā'amu nō te mau mea ato'a nō ni'a i tō'u ra metua tāne, e 'ore ho'i te reira e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api, 'e 'ua hina'aro ho'i au i te vāhi 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te mau mea a te Atua.
- 4 'E te 'īra'a ho'i o tō'u nei hina'aro, 'ia tītau atu 'ia vau i te mau ta'ata 'ia haere mai i te Atua nō Aberahama, 'e te Atua nō Isaaka, 'e te Atua nō Iakoba, 'e 'ia fa'aorahia rātou.
- 5 Nō reira, 'aita vau e pāpa'i i te mau mea 'ia auhia e tō te ao nei ; te mau mea rā e auhia e te Atua 'e i te mau ta'ata e 'ere i tō teie nei ao.
- 6 Nō reira, e hōro'a atu vau i te hō'ē fa'auera'a i tō'u hua'ai, 'eiaha rātou e fa'a'i i teie nei mau 'api i te mau mea e 'ere i te mea faufa'a rahi i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

1 Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

1 Nephi 7

- 1 'E i teienei 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, 'ia fa'aoti a'era tō'u metua tāne, 'o Lehi, i te tohu nō ni'a i tōna hua'ai, i muri a'era 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te Fatu iāna, nā 'ō mai ra, e 'ere i te mea ti'a iāna, 'ia Lehi, 'ia 'āfa'i atu i tōna ana'e iho 'utuāfare i roto i te mēdēbara ; e mea ti'a rā i tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa 'ia rave i te mau tamāhine 'ei vahine nā rātou, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'atupu i te hua'ai nō te Fatu i te fenua i fafauhia ra.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue mai ra te Fatu iāna, 'ia ho'i fa'ahou atu vau, 'o Nephi, 'e tō'u mau tua'ana i te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā, 'e 'ia arata'i mai ia Isema'ela 'e tōna 'utuāfare i te mēdēbara.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, 'e tō'u mau tua'ana i roto i te mēdēbara, e haere atu ra ho'i i ni'a, i Ierusalemā.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra mātou i ni'a, i te fare o Isema'ela, 'e 'ua fāri'i maita'i mai Isema'ela ia mātou, 'e nō reira 'ua parau atu ra mātou i te mau parau a te Fatu iāna ra.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tamarū ihora te Fatu i te 'ā'au o Isema'ela 'e tō tōna 'utuāfare ato'a, 'e nō reira 'ua haere mai rātou nā muri ia mātou i raro i roto i te mēdēbara i te ti'ahapa o tō mātou ra metua tāne.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'a tere atu ai mātou i roto i te mēdēbara, inaha, 'ua mārō mai ra Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela, 'e e to'opiti nō te mau tamāhine a Isema'ela, 'e nā tamari'i tamāroa to'opiti a Isema'ela 'e tō rātou mau 'utuāfare ia mātou ; 'oia ia, iā'u, ia Nephi, 'e ia Samu, 'e i tō rātou metua tāne, ia Isema'ela, 'e i tāna vahine, 'e i tāna atu ā mau tamāhine e to'otoru ra.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, i roto i taua mārōra'a ra, 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia ho'i atu i te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā.
- 8 'E i teienei, nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au i 'oto ai au, 'o Nephi, 'e i parau atu ai ho'i au ia rāua, 'oia ia, ia Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Inaha, e nā tua'ana 'ōrua nō'u, 'e nō te aha ho'i i 'eta'eta ai tō 'ōrua 'ā'au, 'e i pōiri ai tō 'ōrua mana'o, 'e nō reira i tītauhia ai iā'u, tō 'ōrua teina, 'ia paraparau atu ia 'ōrua, 'oia ia, 'e 'ia riro ho'i 'ei hi'ora'a nō 'ōrua ?
- 9 Nō te aha ho'i 'ōrua i 'ore ai i fa'aro'o i te parau a te Fatu ?

1 Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

- 10 Nō te aha ho'i i mo'e ai ia 'ōrua ē 'ua 'ite na 'ōrua i te hō'ē melahi a te Fatu ?
- 11 'Oia ia, nō te aha ho'i i mo'e ai ia 'ōrua te mau mea rahi tā te Fatu i rave nō tātou, i te fa'aorara'a ia tātou mai roto mai i te rima o Labana, 'e 'ia noa'a ho'i ia tātou te pāpa'a parau ?
- 12 'Oia ia, nō te aha ho'i i mo'e ai ia 'ōrua ē, e ti'a i te Fatu 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a, mai te au i tōna hina'aro, nō te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, mai te mea e fa'a'ohipa rātou i te fa'aro'o iāna ? Nō reira, 'a ha'apa'o tātou i tōna hina'aro.
- 13 'E mai te mea e ha'apa'o maita'i tātou i tōna hina'aro, e noa'a ia tātou te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e tē vai ra te tau e 'ite ai 'ōrua ē, e fa'atupuhia te parau a te Fatu nō te ha'amoura'a o Ierusalem ; nō te mea e tupu te mau mea ato'a tā te Fatu i parau nō ni'a i te ha'amoura'a o Ierusalem.
- 14 Inaha ho'i, e fa'aea vave te Vārua o te Fatu i te mārō ia rātou ; inaha ho'i, 'ua pāto'i rātou i te mau peropheta, 'e 'ua tu'u ho'i rātou ia Ieremia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a. 'E 'ua tītau ho'i rātou 'ia taparahi i tō'u metua tāne, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ti'avaru 'ē atu rātou iāna i rāpae i te fenua.
- 15 I teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'ōrua, mai te mea e ho'i atu 'ōrua i Ierusalem, e pohe ato'a ia 'ōrua i pīha'i iho ia rātou. 'E i teienei, mai te mea ē 'ua hina'aro 'ōrua, 'a ho'i i ni'a, i te fenua, 'e 'a ha'amana'o i te mau parau tā'u e parau atu ia 'ōrua na, mai te mea e haere 'ōrua, e pohe ato'a ia 'ōrua ; 'e teie ho'i tā te Vārua o te Fatu i fa'aue mai iā'u 'ia parau atu ia 'ōrua.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, i te paraura'a atu vau, 'o Nephi, i teie nei mau parau i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'ua riri ihora rāua iā'u. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atae mai rāua i tō rāua rima i ni'a iā'u, inaha ho'i, 'ua riri roa rāua, 'e 'ua ru'uru'u ihora rāua iā'u i te taura, 'e 'ua hina'aro ho'i rāua 'ia rave 'ē atu i tō'u ora, 'e 'ia vaiho iā'u i roto i te mēdēbara 'ia 'amuhia e te mau 'ānimara taehae ra.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pure atu ra vau i te Fatu, nā 'ō atu ra : E te Fatu ē, mai te au i tō'u fa'aro'o ia 'oe na, 'a fa'aora mai na iā'u i te rima o tō'u nā tua'ana ; 'oia ia, 'a hōro'a mai na i te pūai iā'u 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia tātara i teie nei mau taura i ru'uru'uhia ai au nei ra.

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

- 18 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō'u paraura'a atu i teie nei mau parau, inaha, 'ua matara ihora te mau taura i tō'u nā rima 'e tō'u nā 'āvae ho'i, 'e 'ua ti'a a'era vau i mua i tō'u nā tua'ana, 'e 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra vau ia rāua.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri fa'ahou ihora rāua iā'u, 'e 'ua hina'aro a'era rāua 'ia fa'atae mai i tō rāua rima i ni'a iā'u ; inaha rā, 'ua tāparu mai ra te hō'ē o te mau tamāhine a Isema'ela, 'oia ia, 'e tōna metua vahine ato'a, 'e te hō'ē o te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Isema'ela, i tō'u nā tua'ana, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tāmārū rātou i tō rāua 'ā'au ; 'e 'ua fa'aea rāua i te tāmata i te rave 'ē atu i tō'u ora.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'oto ihora rāua, nō tā rāua mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tāhopu ihora rāua i mua iā'u, 'e 'ua ani mai ra rāua iā'u 'ia fa'a'ore au i te mea tā rāua i rave i ni'a iā'u.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'ore mau vau i te mau mea ato'a tā rāua i rave, 'e 'ua a'o atu vau ia rāua 'ia pure i te Fatu tō rāua ra Atua, 'ia fa'a'ore i te reira. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira rāua. 'E i muri iho i tō rāua fa'aotira'a i tā rāua pure i te Fatu, 'ua tere fa'ahou atu ra mātou i te ti'ahapa o tō mātou ra metua tāne.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae atu ra mātou i raro, i te ti'ahapa o tō mātou ra metua tāne. 'E 'ia tae atu vau, 'e tō'u mau tua'ana, 'e te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o Isema'ela i raro, i te ti'ahapa o tō'u ra metua tāne, 'ua ha'amāuruuru atu ra rātou i te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'e 'ua pūpū atu ra rātou i te tusia 'e te mau tusia tāauahi iāna ra.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

1 Nephi 8

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu mātou i te mau huru huero ato'a, te mau huru huero sītona ato'a, 'e te mau huru huero ato'a o te mā'a hotu.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'a pārahi noa ai tō'u metua tāne i te mēdēbara ra, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia ia mātou, nā 'ō mai ra : Inaha, 'ua moemoeāhia vau i te hō'ē moemoeā ; 'oia ho'i, 'ua 'ite au i te hō'ē 'ōrama.
- 3 'E inaha, nō te mau mea tā'u i 'ite, e ti'a ai iā'u 'ia 'oa'oa i te Fatu nō Nephi 'e nō Samu ato'a ; nō te mea tē vai mau ra te tumu i mana'o ai au ē, e fa'aorahia rāua 'e te tahi pae rahi ato'a ho'i o tō rāua hua'ai.
- 4 Inaha rā, e pe'ape'a rahi tō'u ia 'ōrua na, e Lamana 'e e Lemuela ; inaha ho'i, 'ua mana'o vau ē, 'ua 'ite au i roto i tā'u moemoeā, i te hō'ē mēdēbara pōiri 'e te ano roa.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'a'ahuhia 'oia i te hō'ē 'ahu teatea ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra 'oia 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra i mua iā'u.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua paraparau mai ra 'oia iā'u, 'e 'ua fa'aue mai ra iā'u 'ia pe'e atu iāna.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'a pe'e ai au iāna ra, 'ua 'ite a'era vau ē tei roto vau i te hō'ē vāhi pōiri 'e te ano roa.
- 8 'E i muri iho i tō'u haerera'a nō te ārea e rave rahi hora te maoro i roto i te pōiri, 'ua ha'amata ihora vau i te pure i te Fatu 'ia fa'atae mai i tōna aroha i ni'a iā'u, 'ia au i te rahi o tōna ra aroha iti.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō'u purera'a i te Fatu, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē 'āua rahi 'e te 'ā'ano.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē tumu rā'au, 'e e mea hina'arohia ho'i tōna hotu nō te fa'a'oa'oa i te ta'ata.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'amu ihora i te hotu nō ni'a mai ra, 'e 'ua 'ite ihora vau ē, e mea monamona roa te reira i tō te mau mea ato'a tā'u i tāmata na. 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua 'ite au ē, e mea teatea tōna hotu, hau atu i te teatea i tō te mau mea ato'a tā'u i 'ite na.
- 12 'E 'a 'amu ai au i taua hotu ra, 'ua 'ī ihora tō'u vārua i te 'oa'oa rahi roa ; nō reira, 'ua tupu ihora tō'u hina'aro 'ia 'amu ato'a tō'u 'utuāfare i te reira ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite au ē, e mea hina'aro-roa-hia a'e te reira i tō te mau hotu 'ē ato'a.

1 Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

13 'E 'ia hi'o a'era tō'u mata ē 'ati noa a'e, penei a'e 'o te 'ite ato'a atu vau i tō'u ra 'utuāfare, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē 'ānāvai pape ; 'e tē tahe ra te reira nā pīha'i iho i te tumu rā'au nō reira mai te hotu tā'u i 'amu ra.

14 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau nō te 'ite ē nō hea mai te reira i te haerera'a mai ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra ho'i au i te tumu nō te reira i te ātea iti a'e ; 'e i te tumu nō te reira 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i tō 'ōrua metua vahine ra ia Saria, 'e ia Samu, 'e ia Nephi ; 'e tē ti'a ra rātou mai te mea ra ē, 'aita rātou i 'ite i te vāhi tā rātou e haere ra.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tārape atu ra vau ia rātou ; 'e 'ua parau ato'a atu ra vau ia rātou ma te reo pūai 'ia haere mai rātou iā'u ra, 'e 'ia 'amu i te hotu, 'o tei hina'aro-roa-hia a'e i tō te mau hotu 'e'ē ato'a ra.

16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra rātou iā'u, 'e 'ua 'amu ato'a ihora i taua hotu ra.

17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hina'aro ato'a ho'i au 'ia haere ato'a mai Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela e 'amu i taua hotu ra ; nō reira, 'ua hi'o atu ra tō'u mata i te ha'amatarā'a o taua 'ānāvai ra, penei a'e 'o te 'ite atu vau ia rāua.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau ia rāua, 'aita rā rāua e haere mai iā'u nō te 'amu i taua hotu ra.

19 'E 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē 'āuri tāpe'ara'a, 'e nā te pae 'ānāvai tōna torora'a, 'e 'ua tae roa mai i te tumu rā'au tei reira vau i te ti'ara'a.

20 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a atu ra vau i te hō'ē 'ē'a piriha'o 'e te oaoa, 'e 'ua tae roa mai te reira nā pīha'i iho i taua 'āuri tāpe'ara'a ra, 'e i te tumu rā'au tei reira vau i te ti'ara'a ; 'e 'ua toro ato'a atu te reira i te ha'amatarā'a o te pape piha'a, i roto i te hō'ē 'āua rahi 'e te 'ā'ano, mai te mea ra ē, 'o te hō'ē ao te reira.

21 'E 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau pupu ta'ata e rave rahi e'ita e hope 'ia tai'o, 'e tē haere ti'a mai ra rātou e rave rahi 'ia noa'a ia rātou te 'ē'a 'o tē arata'i ti'a atu i te tumu rā'au tei reira vau i te ti'ara'a.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te haere nā te 'ē'a 'o tē arata'i ti'a atu i taua tumu rā'au ra.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu a'era te māhu pōiri ; 'oia ia, e māhu pōiri ta'ota'o roa, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua mo'e roa te 'ē'a o te mau ta'ata i ha'amata i te haere nā te 'ē'a ra, 'e 'ua haere 'ē noa atu ra rātou 'e mo'e roa atu ra.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te tahi atu ā mau ta'ata i te haere-ti'a-ra'a mai, 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou 'e 'ua mau ihora i te hope'ara'a o taua 'āuri tāpe'ara'a ra ; 'e 'ua haere ti'a mai ra rātou nā roto i te māhu pōiri, ma te mau pāpū i taua 'āuri tāpe'ara'a ra, e tae roa mai ra rātou i taua tumu rā'au ra 'e 'amu ihora i te hotu o te tumu rā'au.

25 'E i muri iho i tō rātou 'amura'a i te hotu nō taua tumu rā'au ra, 'ua hi'o noa a'era tō rātou mata ē 'ati noa a'e, mai te mea ra ē, 'ua ha'amā rātou.

26 'E 'ua hi'o noa ato'a a'era tō'u mata ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē fare rahi 'e te 'ā'ano i te tahi pae mai o te 'ānāvai pape, 'e tē ti'a ra te reira mai te mea ra ē, tei roto ia i te reva, i ni'a roa a'e i te fenua.

27 'E 'ua 'i roa ho'i te reira i te ta'ata, te feiā pa'ari 'e te feiā 'āpī, te tāne 'e te vahine ; e mea maita'i roa ho'i tō rātou 'ahu ; 'e tē tāhitohito mai ra 'e tē fa'atoro mai ra ho'i rātou i tō rātou mau manimani rima i te mau ta'ata i haere mai i reira 'e 'o tē 'amu ra i taua hotu ra.

28 'E i muri iho i tō rātou 'amura'a i taua hotu ra, 'ua ha'amā ihora rātou, nō te mau ta'ata i tāhitohito mai ia rātou ra ; 'e 'ua tāiva ihora rātou i roto i te mau 'ē'a i rāhuihia 'e mo'e atu ra.

29 'E i teienei, 'aita vau, 'o Nephi, e parau i te mau parau ato'a a tō'u ra metua tāne.

30 'Āre'a rā, nō te ha'apoto noa i te pāpa'ira'a, inaha, 'ua 'ite 'oia i te tahi atu ā mau pupu ta'ata i te haere-ti'a-ra'a mai ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou 'e 'ua mau ihora i te hope'ara'a o taua 'āuritāpe'ara'a ra ; 'e 'ua haere ti'a noa mai rātou i mua, ma te mau māite noa i taua 'āuri tāpe'ara'a ra, 'e tae roa mai ra rātou i reira, 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i raro 'e 'amu ihora i te hotu o taua tumu rā'au ra.

31 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a atu 'oia i te tahi atu ā mau pupu ta'ata i te 'imira'a i tō rātou 'ē'a 'e tae atu ai i taua fare rahi 'e te 'ā'ano ra.

32 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tei paremo i roto i te mau hōhonura'a nō te pape piha'a ; 'e e rave rahi ho'i tei mo'e 'ē atu i tōna ra mata, i te haerera'a atu nā te mau 'ē'a 'e'ē ra.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

33 E pupu ta'ata rahi ho'i tei tomo atu i roto i taua fare huru 'ē ra. 'E i muri iho i tō rātou tomora'a atu i roto i taua fare ra, 'ua fa'atoro mai ra rātou i tō rātou manimani rima nō te tāhitohito iā'u 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i e 'amu ra i taua hotu ra ; 'aore rā mātou i ha'apa'o noa atu ia rātou.

34 Teie te mau parau a tō'u metua tāne : Te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i i ha'apa'o atu ia rātou ra, 'ua tāiva 'ē atu ia rātou.

35 E 'aita Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela i 'amu i taua hotu ra, 'ua nā reira mai tō'u metua tāne.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era tō'u metua tāne i te fa'a'ite mai i te mau parau ato'a nō tāna ra moemoeā 'e 'aore rā 'ōrama, 'e e rave rahi ho'i te reira, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia ia mātou, nō te mau mea tāna i 'ite i roto i taua 'ōrama ra, 'ua pe'ape'a roa 'oia nō Lamana 'e Lemuela ; 'oia ia, 'ua pe'ape'a 'oia 'o te ti'avaruhia rāua mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu.

37 'E 'ua a'o atu 'oia ia rāua ma te aroha ato'a o te hō'ē metua here, 'ia ha'apa'o rāua i tāna mau parau, penei a'e 'o te aroha mai te Fatu ia rāua, ma te 'ore e fa'aru'e ia rāua ; 'oia ia, 'ua a'o atu tō'u metua tāne ia rāua.

38 'E i muri iho i tōna a'ora'a atu ia rāua, 'e te tohura'a ho'i ia rāua i te mau mea e rave rahi ra, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia ia rāua 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu ; 'e 'ua fa'aea ihora 'oia i reira i te parau atu ia rāua.

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

1 Nephi 9

- 1 'E 'o te mau mea ato'a teie tā tō'u metua tāne i 'ite mata, 'e i fa'aro'o, 'e i parau, 'a pārahi ai 'oia i roto i te hō'ē ti'ahapa, i te peho ra nō Lemuela, 'e te mau mea e rave rahi atu ā ho'i, 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api.
- 2 'E i teienei, mai tā'u i parau na nō ni'a i teie nei mau 'api, inaha, e 'ere teie i te mau 'api tā'u e 'ō'oti i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te 'ā'amu o tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; te mau 'api rā 'o tā'u e 'ō'oti i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te 'ā'amu o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'ua ma'iri ia vau i tō te reira i'oa 'o Nephi ; nō reira, 'ua parauhia te reira te mau 'api a Nephi, i tō'u iho i'oa ; 'e 'ua ma'iri-ato'a-hia tō teie nei mau 'api i'oa, 'o te mau 'api a Nephi.
- 3 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fāri'i au i te hō'ē fa'auera'a nō 'ō mai i te Fatu 'ia hāmani i teie nei mau 'api, nō te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a ta'a 'ē ia 'ō'otihia te hō'ē 'ā'amu nō te 'ohipa tāvinira'a a tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 4 'E i ni'a i te tahi atu mau 'api ra, e 'ō'otihia te hō'ē 'ā'amu nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ari'i, 'e te mau tama'i, 'e te mau mārōra'a a tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; nō reira, nō te 'ohipa tāvinira'a te pae rahi o teie nei mau 'api ; 'e te pae rahi o te tahi atu mau 'api ra nō te fa'aterera'a hau ia a te mau ari'i, 'e te mau tama'i, 'e te mau mārōra'a a tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 5 Nō reira, 'ua fa'auē mai te Fatu iā'u 'ia hāmani i teie nei mau 'api nō te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a pa'ari iāna ra, 'āita ho'i au i 'ite i taua 'ōpuara'a ra.
- 6 'Āre'a rā 'ua ite te Fatu i te mau mea ato'a mai te mātāmua mai ā ; nō reira, 'ua fa'aineine 'oia i te hō'ē rāve'a nō te fa'atupu i tāna ra mau 'ohipa ato'a i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; inaha ho'i, tei iāna pā'āto'a ra te mana nō te fa'atupura'a i tāna ra mau parau ato'a. 'E 'oia mau roa ia. 'Āmene.

1 Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nephi 10

- 1 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i au, 'o Nephi, i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api, i te 'ā'amu nō tā'u ra mau 'ohipa, 'e tā'u ra fa'aterera'a, 'e tā'u ra 'ohipa tāvinira'a ; nō reira, nō te pāpa'ira'a i tā'u ra 'ā'amu, e mea ti'a iā'u 'ia paraparau ato'a i te mau mea nō ni'a i tō'u metua tāne, 'e nō ni'a ato'a i tō'u ra mau tua'ana.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era tō'u metua tāne i te parau mai i te mau parau nō ni'a i tāna ra moemoeā, 'e i te fa'aitoitōra'a ho'i ia rāua 'ia rahi tō rāua ha'apa'o maita'i, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rāua nō ni'a i te mau 'āti Iuda—
- 3 'Oia ho'i, i muri iho i tō rātou ha'amoura'ahia, 'oia ho'i tō taua 'oire rahi ra o Ieruselema, 'e te hōpoi-tītira'a-hia e rave rahi i Babulonia ra, 'ia au i te tau mau o te Fatu ra, e ho'i fa'ahou mai rātou, 'oia ia, e fa'aho'ihia mai i rāpae i te tītira'a ; 'e i muri iho i tō rātou fa'aho'ira'ahia mai i rāpae i te tītira'a, e fāri'i fa'ahou rātou i te fenua nō tō rātou ra 'āi'a.
- 4 'Oia ia, 'ia tae i te ono hānere matahiti i muri a'e i te taime i fa'aru'e ai tō'u metua tāne i Ieruselema, e fa'ati'a ai te Fatu te Atua i te hō'ē peropheta i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda—'oia ia, i te hō'ē Mesia, 'oia ho'i, i te hō'ē Fa'aora nō tō te ao nei.
- 5 'E 'ua parau ato'a 'oia nō ni'a i te mau peropheta, 'e te pae rahi 'o tei fa'a'ite pāpū mai i teie mau mea nō ni'a i teie Mesia, i parauhia e ana ra, 'oia ho'i teie Tāra'ehara nō tō te ao nei.
- 6 Nō reira, i mo'e na 'e i hi'a na te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e e vai noa rātou mai te reira te huru ē a muri noa atu, maori rā 'ia ti'aturi rātou i teie nei Tāra'ehara.
- 7 'E 'ua parau ato'a 'oia nō ni'a i te hō'ē peropheta 'o tē haere mai nā mua i te Mesia, nō te fa'aineine i te 'ē'a o te Fatu—
- 8 'Oia ia, e haere ato'a 'oia nā roto i te mēdēbara, i te pi'ira'a atu ē : 'A fa'aineine 'outou i te 'ē'a o te Fatu, 'e 'a fa'atiti'aifaro i tōna mau haere'a ; tē ti'a nei ho'i te hō'ē i rotopū ia 'outou na, e 'aore 'outou i 'ite iāna ; 'e e mana rahi a'e tōna i to'u, e 'aore ho'i e au iā'u 'ia tātara i te tāpe'a nō tōna ra tāma'a. E rave rahi ho'i te parau tā tō'u metua tāne i parau nō ni'a i teie nei mea.

1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

- 9 'E 'ua parau mai tō'u metua tāne ē, e bāpetizo 'oia i Betebara, i terā pae mai i Ioridana ; 'e 'ua parau ato'a mai ho'i 'oia ē, e bāpetizo 'oia i te pape ; 'e nāna ho'i te Mesia e bāpetizo i te pape.
- 10 'E i muri iho i tōna bāpetizora'a i te Mesia i te pape, e 'ite 'oia ē e fa'a'ite atu ho'i 'oia ē, 'ua bāpetizo 'oia i te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'o tē hōpoi 'ē atu i te mau hara a tō te ao nei.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i te paraura'a 'o tō'u metua tāne i taua mau parau ra, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i tō'u mau tua'ana nō ni'a i te 'evanelia 'o tē 'o'hia atu i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda, 'e nō ni'a ato'a i tō te mau 'āti Iuda topara'a i roto i te ti'aturi 'ore. 'E i muri iho i tō rātou taparahira'a i te Mesia, 'o tē tae mai, 'e i muri iho i tōna taparahira'ahia, e ti'afa'ahou mai ai 'oia mai te pohe mai ra, 'e e fa'a'ite atu 'oia iāna iho nā roto i te Vārua Maita'i i te mau 'Ētene.
- 12 'Oia ia, 'ua parau tō'u metua tāne e rave rahi mau parau nō ni'a i te mau 'Ētene, 'e nō ni'a ato'a i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e e fa'aaunia rātou i te hō'ē tumu rā'au 'ōlive, 'o tē tāpū-'ē-hia tōna mau 'āma'a 'e 'o tē ha'apurarahia nā roto i te ao ato'a nei.
- 13 Nō reira, 'ua parau 'oia ē, e mea ti'a roa ia tātou pā'āto'a 'ia arata'ihia ma te 'ā'au hō'ē i te fenua i fafauhia ra, 'ia tupu te parau a te Fatu ē, e ha'apurarahia tātou nā roto i te ao ato'a nei.
- 14 'E i muri iho i te ha'apurarahia te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, e ha'aputupu-fa'ahou-hia mai rātou ; 'oia ia, i muri iho i tō te mau 'Ētene fāri'ira'a i te 'ira'a nō te 'Evanelia, e poihiā te mau 'āma'a mau o te tumu rā'au 'ōlive, 'oia ho'i te mau toe'a o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'oia ia, e fāri'i rātou i te 'ite nō ni'a i te Mesia mau ra, tō rātou Fatu 'e tō rātou Tāra'ehara.
- 15 'E i nā reira ho'i tō'u metua tāne i te tohu 'e i te parau atu i tō'u nā tua'ana ; 'e e rave rahi atu ā ho'i mau mea o tā'u i 'ore i pāpa'i i roto i teie nei buka ; nō te mea 'ua pāpa'i au e rave rahi 'o tē ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i roto i te tahi buka nā'u ra.
- 16 'E teie mau mea ato'a 'o tā'u i parau, 'ua ravehia ia 'a pārahi ai tō'u metua tāne i roto i te ti'ahapa, i te peho nō Lemuela.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

- 17 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō'u, 'o Nephi, fa'aro'ora'a i te mau parau ato'a a tō'u ra metua tāne, nō ni'a i te mau mea tāna i 'ite i roto i te hō'ē 'ōrama, 'e te mau mea ho'i tāna i parau nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i; 'oia te mana i roa'a iāna nā roto i te fa'aro'o i te Tamaiti a te Atua—e te Tamaiti a te Atua ra, 'o te Mesia iā 'o tē tae mai—'Ua hina'aro ato'a vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia 'ite mata, 'e 'ia fa'aro'o, 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i i taua mau mea ra, nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i, 'oia ho'i te hōro'a a te Atua i te feiā pā'āto'a e 'imi māite iāna, mai tei te mau tau tahito ra, 'e mai tei te tau ato'a e fa'a'ite mai ai 'oia iāna iho i te tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 18 Hō'ē ā ho'i tōna huru i nanahi, i teie nei mahana, ē a muri noa atu; 'e 'ua fa'a'ineinehia te 'ē'a nō te mau ta'ata ato'a mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei, mai te mea e tātarahapa 'e e haere mai rātou iāna ra.
- 19 'O 'oia ho'i tē 'imi māite ra, e 'itea iā; 'e e fa'a'itehia te mau parau 'aro a te Atua iā rātou, nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i, i teie nei mau tau, mai tei te mau tau tahito ato'a ra ho'i; 'e mai tō te mau tau tahito ra, 'oia ato'a tō te mau tau e haere mai nei; nō reira, te 'ē'a o te Fatu 'o te hō'ē iā haere'a mure 'ore.
- 20 Nō reira, 'a ha'amana'o, e te ta'ata ē, e ha'avāhia 'oe i te mau mea ato'a tā 'oe e rave ra.
- 21 Nō reira, mai te mea i 'imi 'oe i te rave i te parauti'a 'ore i te mau mahana nō tō 'oe tau tāmatara'a, 'ua vi'ivi'i iā 'oe i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Atua; 'e 'aita ho'i e mea vi'ivi'i e ti'a 'ia pārahi i pīha'i iho i te Atua; nō reira, 'ia ti'avaruhia 'oe ē a muri noa atu e ti'a ai.
- 22 'E nā te Vārua Maita'i ho'i i hōro'a mai i te mana iā'u 'ia parau atu i teie nei mau mea ma te huna 'ore.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

1 Nephi 11

- 1 I te mea ē, i muri a'era, 'ua tupu ihora tō'u hina'aro 'ia 'ite i te mau mea tā tō'u metua tāne i hi'o na ; tē pārahi ra vau ma te feruri hōhonu i roto i tō'u 'ā'au 'e ma te ti'aturi ē e ti'a i te Fatu 'ia fa'a'ite mai i te reira iā'u, 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu ra vau e te Vārua o te Fatu, 'oia ia, i ni'a i te hō'ē mou'a teitei roa, 'e 'aita ā vau i 'ite i te reira, 'e 'aita ato'a tō'u 'āvae i ta'ahi i reira i te mātāmua.
- 2 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Vārua iā'u : Inaha, e aha tā 'oe e hina'aro ?
- 3 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau : 'Ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite i te mau mea tā tō'u metua tāne i 'ite na.
- 4 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Vārua iā'u : 'Ua ti'aturi ānei 'oe ē, 'ua 'ite tō 'oe metua tāne i te tumu rā'au 'o tāna i parau na ?
- 5 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau : 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite 'oe ē, 'ua ti'aturi au i te mau parau ato'a a tō'u ra metua tāne.
- 6 'E i muri iho i tō'u fa'ahitira'a i teie mau parau, 'ua pi'i mai ra te Vārua ma te reo pūai, nā 'ō mai ra, Hosana i te Fatu, i te Atua teitei roa ; 'o 'oia te Atua i ni'a i te ao ato'a nei, 'oia ia, i ni'a i te mau mea ato'a. E ao tō 'oe, e Nephi, nō te mea 'ua ti'aturi 'oe i te Tamaiti a te Atua teitei roa ; nō reira, e 'ite 'oe i te mau mea tā 'oe i hina'aro.
- 7 'E inaha, e fa'a'itehia teie mea ia 'oe 'ei tāpa'o ; 'e i muri iho i tō 'oe hi'ora'a i te tumu rā'au 'o tei fa'ahotu mai i te hotu tā tō 'oe metua tāne i 'amu ra, e 'ite ato'a 'oe i te hō'ē ta'ata i te poua'a mai mai te ra'i mai, 'e e 'ite ho'i 'oe iāna ; 'e i muri iho i tō 'oe 'itera'a iāna, e fa'a'ite pāpū 'oe ē, e Tamaiti 'oia nā te Atua.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Vārua iā'u : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē tumu rā'au ; 'e 'ua au te reira i te tumu rā'au tā tō'u metua tāne i 'ite ; 'e 'ua hau roa tōna nehenehe, 'oia ia, 'ua hau roa i tō te mau mea nehenehe ato'a ra ; 'e tōna teatea 'ua hau roa ia i te teatea o te hiona puehu ra.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō'u 'itera'a i taua tumu rā'au ra, 'ua parau atu ra vau i te Vārua : 'Ua 'ite au ē, 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oe iā'u i te tumu rā'au maita'i roa a'e i te mau tumu rā'au ato'a.
- 10 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : E aha tā 'oe e hina'aro nei ?

1 Nephi 11

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

11 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : 'Ia 'ite i te aura'a nō te reira—e 'ua paraparau atu vau iāna mai tā te ta'ata e paraparau nei ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau ē mai tō te ta'ata nei tōna ra huru ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'o te Vārua te reira o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua paraparau mai 'oia iā'u mai tā te hō'ē ta'ata e paraparau i te tahi atu.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau mai te mea ra ē tē hi'o atu ra vau iāna, 'e 'aita roa vau i 'ite atu iāna ; i reva atu ho'i 'oia mai mua atu i tō'u aro.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ite atu ra i te 'oire rahi nō Ierusalem, 'e te tahi atu ho'i mau 'oire. 'E 'ua 'ite atu ho'i au i te 'oire nō Nazareta ; 'e i roto i te 'oire nō Nazareta, 'ua 'ite au i te hō'ē pāretenia, 'e e mea purotu roa 'e e mea 'uo'uo roa 'oia.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau i te mau ra'i i te vētēara'a, 'e 'ua pou mai ra te hō'ē melahi 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra i mua iā'u ; 'e 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : E Nephi, e aha tā 'oe e hi'o na ?

15 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : Te hō'ē pāretenia nehenehe 'e te purotu ho'i i te mau pāretenia ato'a ra.

16 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : 'Ua 'ite ānei 'oe i te fa'aha'eha'ara'a a te Atua iāna iho ?

17 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : 'Ua 'ite au ē 'ua aroha 'oia i tāna mau tamari'i ; 'āre'a rā, 'aita vau i 'ite i te aura'a nō te mau mea ato'a.

18 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : Inaha, te pāretenia tā 'oe e 'ite nei, 'o te metua vahine ia o te Tamaiti a te Atua, i te tino nei.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu vau ē 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu 'oia e te Vārua ; 'e i muri iho i tōna 'āfa'i-'ē-ra'a-hia atu e te Vārua nō te tahi ārea taime te maoro 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na !

20 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite fa'ahou atu ra vau i taua pāretenia ra, i te amora'a i te hō'ē tamari'i i roto i tōna nā rima.

21 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o na i te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'oia ia, te Tamaiti a te Metua mure 'ore ! 'Ua 'ite ānei 'oe i te aura'a nō te tumu rā'au tā tō 'oe metua tāne i 'ite ?

22 'E 'ua pāhono atu ra vau iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Oia ia, 'o te aroha ia o te Atua, 'o tei nīni'ihia mai i te mau vāhi ato'a i roto i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; nō reira, e mea hina'aro-roa-hia ia i ni'a a'e i te mau mea ato'a ra.

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

23 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
'Oia ia, 'e te mea 'oa'oa roa a'e nō te vārua.

24 'E i muri iho i tōna paraura'a mai i teie mau parau,
'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia iā'u : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra
vau, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te Tamaiti a te Atua i te
haerera'a atu i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ;
'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tei ūpapa i
raro i tōna 'āvae 'e 'ua ha'amori atu iāna.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite au ē, te 'āuri tāpe'ara'a tā
tō'u metua tāne i 'ite 'o te parau ia a te Atua, tei tae
atu i te piha'a o te mau pape ora, 'oia ho'i, i te tumu
rā'au nō te ora ; 'e teie nei mau pape, 'ua fa'aauhia i te
aroha o te Atua ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i au ē, te tumu
rā'au nō te ora, 'ua fa'aauhia i te aroha o te Atua.

26 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o
na, 'e 'a 'ite i te fa'aha'eha'ara'a a te Atua iāna iho !

27 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e ite atu ra i te Tāra'ehara o te
ao nei, 'o tā tō'u metua tāne i parau na ; 'e 'ua 'ite
ato'a atu ra ho'i au i te peropheta 'o tē fa'aineine i te
'ē'a nā mua iāna. 'E 'ua haere atu ra te 'Ārenio a te
Atua 'e 'ua bāpetizohia e ana ; 'e i muri iho i tōna
bāpetizora'ahia, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau ra'i i te
vēteara'a, 'e 'ua pou mai ra te Vārua Maita'i mai te
ra'i mai 'e tau mai ra i ni'a iho iāna, mai te 'ū'upa ra.

28 'E 'ua 'ite atu vau ē 'ua haere atu 'oia ma te tāvini i
te mau ta'ata, nā roto i te mana 'e te hanahana rahi ;
'e 'ua ha'aputuputu 'āmui mai te mau pupu ta'ata nō
te fa'aro'o iāna ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau ē 'ua ti'avaru 'ē atu
rātou iāna mai rotopū atu ia rātou.

29 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a atu ho'i au i te mau ta'ata hō'ē
'ahuru 'e ma piti i te pe'era'a atu iāna. 'E i muri a'era,
'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu ra rātou e te Vārua mai mua atu i
tō'u mata, 'e 'aita atu ra vau i 'ite fa'ahou ia rātou.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te melahi
iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e
'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau ra'i i te vetea-fa'ahou-ra'a,
'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau melahi i te poua'a mai i
ni'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata ; 'e 'ua poihere atu ra
ia rātou ra.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most
joyous to the soul.

And after he had said these words, he said unto
me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God
going forth among the children of men; and I saw
many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of
iron, which my father had seen, was the word of
God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to
the tree of life; which waters are a representation of
the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life
was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and be-
hold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the
world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also be-
held the prophet who should prepare the way before
him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was bap-
tized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the
heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of
heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto
the people, in power and great glory; and the multi-
tudes were gathered together to hear him; and I be-
held that they cast him out from among them.

And I also beheld twelve others following him.
And it came to pass that they were carried away in
the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me
again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the
heavens open again, and I saw angels descending
upon the children of men; and they did minister
unto them.

31 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra 'oia iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau, 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te 'Ārenio a te Atua i te haerera'a atu i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei. 'E 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau pupu ta'ata 'o tei tupuhia i te ma'i, 'e tei fāri'i i te mau huru ma'i ato'a, 'e tei uruhia i te mau diabolo 'e i te mau vārua vi'ivi'i ho'i ; 'e 'ua parau mai ra te melahi, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai i teie mau mea ato'a iā'u. 'E 'ua fa'aorahia rātou e te mana o te 'Ārenio a te Atua ; 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia atu ra te mau diabolo 'e te mau vārua vi'ivi'i ho'i i rāpae.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'e 'ua ravehia 'oia e te mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, 'ua ha'avāhia te Tamaiti a te Atua mure 'ore ra e tō te ao nei ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau 'e te fa'a'ite pāpū nei au i te reira.

33 'E 'ua 'ite au, 'o Nephi ē, 'ua fa'ateiteihia 'oia i ni'a i te sātāuro 'e 'ua taparahihia nō te mau hara a tō te ao nei.

34 'E i muri iho i tōna taparahira'ahia, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau pupu ta'ata o te ao nei, 'e 'ua ha'aputuputu-'āmui-hia mai rātou nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio ; 'e 'o te reira ho'i te i'oa tā te melahi a te Fatu i ma'iri i ni'a i taua pupu tino 'ahuru 'e ma piti ra.

35 'E 'ua ha'aputuputuhia mai te pupu ta'ata o te ao nei ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau ē tei roto rātou i te hō'ē fare rahi 'e te 'ā'ano, mai te fare tā tō'u metua tāne i 'ite. 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te melahi a te Fatu iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : Inaha, 'o te ao ia 'e tōna pa'ari ho'i ; 'oia ia, inaha, 'ua ha'aputuputu 'āmui mai te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela nō te 'aro atu i te tino 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei au ē, taua fare rahi 'e te 'ā'ano ra, 'o te te'ote'o ia o tō te ao nei ; 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora te reira ; 'e e mea rahi roa tōna ma'irira'a. 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te melahi a te Fatu iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : E mai te reira ia te ha'amoura'a o te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē 'aro atu i te tino 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

1 Nephi 12

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o na, 'a hi'o na i tō 'oe hua'ai, 'e i te hua'ai ato'a o tō 'oe nā tua'ana. 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au i te mau pupu ta'ata, 'oia ia, mai te one tahatai rātou i te rahi 'ia tai'ohia.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau i te mau pupu ta'ata i ha'aputuputu 'āmui nō te 'aro te tahi i te tahi ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau tama'i, 'e te mau parau tama'i, 'e te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i pohe i te 'o'e i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau u'i e rave rahi i ma'iri, 'a vai noa ai te mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau 'oire e rave rahi, 'oia ia, 'aore i ti'a iā'u 'ia tai'o i te reira.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te hō'ē māhu pōiri i ni'a iho i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau uira, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o vau i te mau pātiri, 'e te mau 'āueuera'a fenua, 'e te mau huru haruru pūai ato'a ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te fenua 'e te mau mato, 'e 'ua 'amaha rātou ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau mou'a i te ma'irira'a mai ē hu'ahu'a roa ihora ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau fenua pāpū o te ao nei, 'e 'ua 'āmahamaha te reira ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau 'oire e rave rahi, 'e 'ua horomi'ihia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau e rave rahi tei pa'apa'a i te auahi ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau e rave rahi tei ma'iri i ni'a i te fenua, nō te 'āueuera'a o te fenua.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō'u 'itera'a i teie mau mea, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te māhu pōiri, 'e 'ua pe'e ē atu ra te reira mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei ; 'e inaha, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau pupu ta'ata 'o tei 'ore i ha'amouhia nō te mau ha'avāra'a rahi 'e te ri'ari'a a te Fatu ra.
- 6 'E 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau ra'i i te vēteara'a, 'e 'ua pou mai ra te 'Ārenio a te Atua mai ni'a mai i te ra'i, 'e 'ua pou mai ra 'oia i raro 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra iāna iho ia rātou.
- 7 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a vau 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei ho'i au ē, 'ua tae mai te Vārua Maita'i i ni'a iho i te tahi atu ā mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti ; 'e 'ua fa'atōro'ahia rātou e te Atua, 'e 'ua mā'itihia.

1 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

- 8 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na i te mau pipi hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti a te 'Ārenio 'o tei mā'itihia nō te aupuru i tō 'oe ra hua'ai.
- 9 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : Tē ha'amana'o ra ānei 'oe i te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio ? Inaha, 'o rātou ia tē ha'avā i nā 'ōpū tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti nō 'Īserā'ela ; nō reira, e ha'avāhia nā 'orometua hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti nō tō 'oe hua'ai e rātou ra ; nō te mea nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela 'outou.
- 10 'E nā teie tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'orometua tā 'oe e hi'o na, e ha'avā i tō 'oe ra hua'ai. "E, inaha, e mea parauti'a rātou ē a muri noa atu ; nō tō rātou fa'aro'o i te 'Ārenio a te Atua e teatea ai tō rātou mau 'ahu i tōna ra toto.
- 11 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau u'i e toru i pohe i roto i te parauti'a ; 'e 'ua teatea tō rātou mau 'ahu mai tō te 'Ārenio a te Atua ra. 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'Ua teatea tō rātou mau 'ahu i te toto o te 'Ārenio nō tō rātou ra fa'aro'o iāna.
- 12 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a vau, 'o Nephi, i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi nō te u'i maha i pohe i roto i te parauti'a.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau pupu ta'ata o te fenua nei i te ha'aputupu-'āmui-ra'a.
- 14 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o na i tō 'oe hua'ai, 'e i te hua'ai ato'a o tō 'oe na mau tua'ana.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te mau ta'ata o tō'u ra hua'ai 'o tei ha'aputupu 'āmui 'ei mau pupu ta'ata nō te 'aro atu i te hua'ai o tō'u ra mau tua'ana ; 'e 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui rātou nō te 'aro.
- 16 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na i te pape piha'a vi'ivi'i tā tō 'oe metua tāne i hi'o ; 'oia ia, i te 'ānāvai tāna i parau mai ra ; 'e te mau hōhonura'a nō te reira ra, 'o te mau hōhonura'a ia nō hade.
- 17 'E te mau māhu pōiri ra, 'o te mau fa'ahemara'a ia a te diablo, 'o tei ha'apōiri i te mata 'e tei fa'a'eta'eta ho'i i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e tei arata'i 'ē atu ia rātou i roto i te mau 'ē'a 'ā'ano, 'ia pohe rātou 'e 'ia mo'e roa atu.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

18 'E te fare rahi 'e te 'ā'ano tā tō 'oe metua tāne i hi'o ra, 'o te mau mana'o faufa'a 'ore ia 'e te te'ote'o o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei. 'E 'ua fa'ata'a-'ē-hia rātou e te hō'ē ārea rahi 'e te ri'ari'a ra ; 'oia ia, te parau nō te parauti'a a te Atua mure 'ore, 'e te Mesia ho'i, 'oia te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'o tā te Vārua Maita'i e fa'a'ite pāpū mai, mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o teie nei ao ē tae roa mai i teienei, 'e mai teienei atu, ē a muri noa atu.

19 'E 'a parau ai te melahi i teie nei mau parau, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'e tē 'aro ra rātou i tō'u hua'ai, mai te au i te parau a te melahi ; 'e nō te te'ote'o o tō'u ra hua'ai 'e te mau fa'ahemara'a a te diabolō, 'ua 'ite au ē 'ua ha'avīhia te mau ta'ata o tō'u ra hua'ai e te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau ta'ata nō te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'e 'ua ha'avī rātou i tō'u ra hua'ai ; 'e 'ua haere noa rātou 'ei mau pupu ta'ata nā ni'a i te fenua nei.

21 'E 'ua 'ite atu vau ia rātou i te ha'aputuputu-'āmui-ra'a i roto i te mau pupu ta'ata ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau tama'i 'e te mau parau tama'i i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te mau tau e rave rahi i te ma'irira'a 'a vai noa ai te mau tama'i 'e te mau parau tama'i.

22 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : Inaha, e paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite au ē i muri iho i te paruparura'a tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā huru 'ere'ere 'e te peu hā'iri'iri, 'e 'ei feiā vi'ivi'i, 'o tei 'ī i te fa'atau 'e te mau huru 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

1 Nephi 13

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na ! 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau nūna'a 'e te mau bāsileia e rave rahi.
- 2 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : E aha tā 'oe e 'ite ra ? 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau : Tē 'ite ra vau i te mau nūna'a 'e te mau bāsileia e rave rahi.
- 3 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : Teie ia te mau nūna'a 'e te mau bāsileia o te mau 'Ētene.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te fa'ati'ara'ahia o te hō'ē 'ēkālesia rahi i rotopū i te mau nūna'a o te mau 'Ētene ra.
- 5 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o na i te fa'ati'ara'ahia o te hō'ē 'ēkālesia vi'ivi'i roa i te tahi atu mau 'ēkālesia ato'a, 'o tē taparahi i te feiā mo'a o te Atua, 'oia ia, tē ha'amāmae ia rātou 'e tē ru'uru'u ia rātou i raro, 'e tē fa'azugo ia rātou i te hō'ē zugo 'āuri, 'e tē arata'i ia rātou i raro i roto i te fa'atītira'a.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i teie 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te diabolo, 'o 'oia ho'i te fa'atere nō te reira.
- 7 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a atu ra vau i te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau tīrita, 'e te mau 'ahu 'ute'ute, 'e te 'ahu paruai maita'i roa, 'e te mau huru 'ahu maitata'i ato'a ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a atu vau i te mau vahine tai'ata e rave rahi.
- 8 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na i te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau tīrita, 'e te mau 'ahu 'ute'ute, 'e te 'ahu paruai maita'i roa, 'e te mau 'ahu maitata'i ato'a, 'e te mau vahine tai'ata, 'o te mau hina'aro ia teie o taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i.
- 9 'E nō te ha'apoupoura'a ato'a a tō te ao nei, e ha'amou ai rātou i te feiā mo'a o te Atua, 'e e arata'i ai ia rātou i raro i roto i te fa'atītira'a.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te mau pape e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua fa'ata'a 'ē atu te reira i te mau 'Ētene 'e te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o na tei ni'a te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra nā tua'ana.

1 Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

12 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū i te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'ua fa'ata'a-'ē-hia 'oia i te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana 'e te mau pape e rave rahi ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te Vārua o te Atua i te poua'a mai i raro 'e te fa'aurura'a i taua ta'ata ra ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia nā ni'a i te mau pape e rave rahi, 'e tae atu ra i te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana i te fenua i fafauhia ra.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te Vārua o te Atua i te fa'aurura'a i te tahi atu mau 'Ētene ; 'e 'ua haere atu rātou mai roto atu i te fa'atītira'a, nā ni'a i te mau pape e rave rahi ra.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te mau pupu ta'ata e rave rahi o te mau 'Ētene i ni'a i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua, 'e tei ni'a iho te reira i te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana ; 'e 'ua ha'apurarahia rātou nā mua i te mau 'Ētene 'e 'ua tā'irihia.

15 'E 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te Vārua o te Fatu i ni'a iho i te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'ua manuia rātou 'e 'ua noa'a ia rātou te fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō rātou ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau ē e mea 'uo'uo rātou, 'e te purotu rahi 'e te nehenehe ho'i, mai tō'u iho mau ta'ata nā mua a'e i tō rātou ra taparahira'ahia.

16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i te mau 'Ētene 'o tei haere atu mai roto atu i te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a rātou ia rātou iho i mua i te Fatu ; 'e tei ni'a ia rātou te mana o te Fatu.

17 'E 'ua 'ite atu ra vau ē, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui tō rātou metua vahine nō te mau 'Ētene i ni'a i te mau pape, 'e i ni'a ato'a i te fenua nō te 'aro ia rātou.

18 'E 'ua 'ite atu ra vau ē tei ni'a ia rātou te mana o te Atua, 'e tei ni'a ato'a ho'i te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua ia rātou ato'a 'o tei ha'aputupu'āmui nō te 'aro atu ia rātou.

19 'E 'ua 'ite atu vau, 'o Nephi ē, te mau 'Ētene i haere atu mai roto atu i te fa'atītira'a ra, 'ua fa'aorahia ia rātou e te mana o te Atua i te rima o te mau nūna'a ato'a.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau, 'o Nephi ē, 'ua manuia rātou i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te hō'ē buka, 'e 'ua hōpoi-noa-hia te reira i rotopū ia rātou.

21 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'Ua 'ite ānei 'oe i te aura'a nō taua buka ra ?

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

- 22 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : 'Aita vau i 'ite.
- 23 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'A hi'o na, tē tae mai nei te reira mai roto mai i te vaha o te 'āti Iuda. 'E 'ua 'ite atu vau, 'o Nephi, i te reira ; 'e 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : Te buka tā 'oe e hi'o nei, 'o te pāpa'a parau ia o te mau 'āti Iuda, tei roto i te reira te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'o tāna i parau i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e tei roto ato'a i te reira te mau tohura'a e rave rahi a te mau peropheta mo'a ; 'e e pāpa'a parau ia mai tei 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ra, 'e e'ita ho'i i te mea rahi roa ; 'āre'a rā tei roto i te reira te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'o tāna i fafau atu i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; nō reira, e mea faufa'a rahi roa te reira nō te mau 'Ētene.
- 24 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi a te Fatu iā'u : 'Ua 'ite 'oe ē i tae mai taua buka ra mai roto mai i te vaha o te 'āti Iuda ; 'e 'ia tae mai te reira mai roto mai i te vaha o te 'āti Iuda ra, tei roto ia i te reira te 'ira'a nō te 'evanelia a te Fatu, 'o tā te mau 'āpōsetolo tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti i fa'a'ite pāpū mai ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai te reira mai te au i te parau mau i roto i te 'Ārenio a te Atua.
- 25 Nō reira, e tae mai teie mau mea mai te mau 'āti Iuda mai i te mau 'Ētene ma te vi'ivi'i 'ore, mai te au i te parau mau i roto i te Atua.
- 26 'E 'ia tae mai te reira mai roto mai i te rima o te mau 'āti Iuda i te mau 'Ētene, nā roto mai i te rima o te mau 'āpōsetolo tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti a te 'Ārenio, e 'ite atu 'oe i te fa'ati'ara'ahia o te hō'ē 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i ; 'e 'ua hau tōna vi'ivi'i i tō te mau 'ēkālesia ato'a ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'iriti 'ē atu rātou i te mau tufa'a pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi e rave rahi nō roto mai i te 'evanelia a te 'Ārenio ; 'e 'ua 'iriti 'ē ato'a atu ho'i rātou i te mau fafaura'a e rave rahi a te Fatu.
- 27 'E 'ua rave rātou i teie mau mea ato'a 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'api'o i te mau 'ē'a ti'a o te Fatu ; 'e 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'amatapō 'e 'ia fa'a'eta'eta i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata.
- 28 Nō reira, e 'ite 'oe ē 'ia tae taua buka ra i roto i te rima o taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i ra, 'ua 'iriti-'ē-hia atu te mau mea pāpū 'e te faufa'a e rave rahi nō roto mai i taua buka ra ; 'o teie ia te buka a te 'Ārenio a te Atua.

And I said unto him: I know not.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

29 'E i muri iho i te 'iriti-'ē-ra'a-hia atu teie mau mea pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi, 'ua tae atu ra taua buka ra i te mau nūna'a ato'a o te mau 'Ētene ; 'e i muri iho i tōna taera'a atu i te mau nūna'a ato'a o te mau 'Ētene, 'oia ia, i terā pae mai i te mau pape e rave rahi tā 'oe i hi'o na ē tei te mau 'Ētene ra ho'i te reira 'o tei haere atu mai roto atu i te fa'atītira'a ra ; 'ua 'ite atu 'oe ē—no te mau mea pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi e rave rahi tei 'iriti-'ē-hia atu nō roto mai i taua buka ra, 'o tei riro 'ei mea pāpū i te māramarama i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, mai te au i te pāpūra'a tei roto i te 'Ārenio a te Atua—nō teie mau mea i 'iriti-'ē-hia atu nō roto mai i te 'evanelia a te 'Ārenio ra, i turori ai te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua noa'a te mana rahi ia Sātane i ni'a ia rātou.

30 'Āre'a rā, tē 'ite ra 'oe ē, te mau 'Ētene i haere atu mai roto atu i te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'o tei fa'ateiteihia i ni'a e te mana o te Atua i ni'a a'e i te tahi atu mau nūna'a ato'a i ni'a i te fenua 'e tei hau tōna maita'i i tō te mau fenua ato'a ra, 'o te fenua ia tā te Fatu te Atua i fafau atu i tō 'oe metua tāne, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē, e noa'a i tōna hua'ai teie fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō rātou ; nō reira, tē 'ite ra 'oe ē, e 'ore roa te Fatu te Atua e fa'ati'a 'ia ha'amou te mau 'Ētene i tō 'oe hua'ai 'o tei 'āno'ihia, 'e 'o tē pārahi nei i rotopū i tō 'oe ra nā tua'ana.

31 E 'ore ato'a 'oia e fa'ati'a 'ia ha'amou te mau 'Ētene i te hua'ai o tō 'oe nā tua'ana.

32 E 'ore ato'a te Fatu te Atua e fa'ati'a 'ia pārahi noa te mau 'Ētene i roto i taua huru matapō rahi ra, 'o tā 'oe e 'ite nei ia rātou, nō te mau tufa'a pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi o te 'evanelia a te 'Ārenio 'o tei hunahia e taua 'ēkālesia vi'ivi'i ra, 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe i tōna fa'ati'ara'ahia.

33 Nō reira, tē parau mai ra te 'Ārenio a te Atua : E aroha vau i te mau 'Ētene, 'a tāho'o ai i te toe'a o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela nā roto i te ha'avāra'a rahi.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te melahi a te Fatu iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : Inaha, tē parau mai ra te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'e i muri a'e i tō'u tāho'ora'a i te toe'a o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela—'o tā'u e parau nei, 'o te hua'ai ia o tō 'oe ra metua tāne—nō reira, i muri a'e i tō'u tāho'ora'a ia rātou nā roto i te ha'avāra'a, 'e te tā'irira'a ho'i ia rātou nā roto i te rima o te mau 'Ētene, 'e i muri a'e i tō te mau 'Ētene turorira'a rahi nō te mau tufa'a pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi nō te 'evanelia a te 'Ārenio 'o tei hunahia e taua 'ēkālesia vi'ivi'i ra, te metua vahine nō te mau vahine tai'ata, tē nā reira mai ra te 'Ārenio—e aroha vau i te mau 'Ētene i taua mahana ra, 'e nō reira e hōpoi mai au, nā roto i tō'u iho mana, i te mau vāhi e rave rahi nō tā'u 'evanelia ia rātou ra, e mea pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi ho'i, tē nā reira mai ra te 'Ārenio.

35 Inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō mai ra te 'Ārenio : E fa'a'ite au iā'u iho i tō 'oe hua'ai, 'ia pāpa'i rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi tā'u e ha'api'i ia rātou ra, 'e e riro ia 'ei mea pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi ; 'e 'ia ha'amouhia tō 'oe ra hua'ai e te hua'ai ho'i o tō 'oe nā tua'ana, 'e e paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o ; inaha, e hunahia teie mau mea, 'ia ti'a i te reira 'ia tae mai i te mau 'Ētene, nā roto i te hōro'a 'e te mana ho'i o te 'Ārenio.

36 'E i roto i te reira e pāpa'ihia tā'u 'evanelia, 'e tā'u papa, 'e tā'u fa'aorara'a, tē nā reira mai ra te 'Ārenio.

37 E ao tō rātou tei tītau 'ia fa'atupu i tō'u Ziona i taua mahana ra, nō te mea e noa'a te hōro'a 'e te mana o te Vārua Maita'i ia rātou ra ; 'e mai te mea e fa'aitoito noa rātou ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e fa'ateiteihia rātou i te mahana hope'a ra, 'e e fa'aorahia i roto i te bāsileia mure 'ore o te 'Ārenio ; 'auē tō rātou nehenehe i ni'a i te mau mou'a, rātou 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te parau hau, 'oia ia, te mau parau 'oa'oa rahi.

38 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te toe'a o te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'e te buka ato'a a te 'Ārenio a te Atua, tei tae mai nā roto i te vaha o te 'āti Iuda, 'e 'ua tae mai ra te reira mai te mau 'Ētene mai i te toe'a o te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

39 'E i muri iho i te taera'a mai te reira ia rātou, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te tahi atu ā mau buka, tei tae mai nā roto i te mana o te 'Ārenio, mai te mau 'Ētene mai ia rātou ra, nō te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a i te mau 'Ētene 'e te toe'a ho'i o te hua'ai o tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'e i te 'āti Iuda ato'a i ha'apurarahia nā roto i te ao ato'a nei ē, e parau mau te mau pāpa'a parau a te mau peropheta 'e te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio ra.

40 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : Teie mau pāpa'a parau hope'a tā 'oe i 'ite i rotopū i te mau 'Ētene ra, e ha'apāpū te reira i te parau mau nō te mau pāpa'a parau mātāmua ra, 'o tā te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio, 'e e fa'a'ite ho'i te reira i te mau mea pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi, 'o tei 'iriti-ē-hia mai roto i te reira ; 'e e fa'a'ite atu i te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ē, te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'o te Tamaiti iā a te Metua mure 'ore, 'e te Fa'aora ho'i o te ao nei ; 'e 'ia haere mai te mau ta'ata ato'a iāna ra e ti'a ai, 'ia 'ore rā, e'ita iā rātou e fa'aorahia.

41 'E e haere mai rātou mai te au i te mau parau i ha'amauhia e te vaha o te 'Ārenio ra e ti'a ai ; 'e e fa'a'itehia mai te mau parau a te 'Ārenio nā roto i te pāpa'a parau a tō 'oe hua'ai, 'e nā roto ato'a i te mau pāpa'a parau a te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio, nō reira, e fa'ati'ahia ai te reira 'ei hō'ē ; hō'ē ho'i Atua, 'e hō'ē Tia'i māmoe i ni'a i te ao ato'a nei.

42 'E e tae mai te tau e fa'a'ite mai ai 'oia iāna iho i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, i te mau 'āti Iuda 'e i te mau 'Ētene ato'a ho'i ; 'e i muri iho i tōna fa'a'itera'a mai iāna iho i te mau 'āti Iuda 'e i te mau 'Ētene ato'a ho'i ; 'ei reira e fa'a'ite mai 'oia iāna iho i te mau 'Ētene 'e i te mau 'āti Iuda ato'a ho'i, 'e e riro te hope'a 'ei mātāmeha'i, 'e te mātāmeha'i 'ei hope'a.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

1 Nephi 14

- 1 'E a muri a'era, mai te mea e fa'aro'o te mau 'Ētene i te 'Ārenio a te Atua i taua mahana ra, e fa'a'ite mai ai 'oia iāna iho ia rātou nā roto i te parau, 'e nā roto ato'a i te mana, 'e te 'ohipa, nō te fa'a'orera'a i tō rātou ra mau turorira'a—
- 2 'E 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au i te 'Ārenio a te Atua, e tai'ohia rātou i rotopū i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra metua tāne, 'oia iā, e tai'ohia rātou i rotopū i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e e riro rātou 'ei nūna'a ha'amaita'ihia i ni'a i te fenua i fafauhia ra ē a muri noa atu ; e 'ore rātou e tu'u-fa'ahou-hia i raro i te fa'atītira'a ; 'e e 'ore ho'i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela e 'āno'i-haere-hia.
- 3 'E taua 'āpo'o rahi ra i 'ōhia nō rātou e taua 'ēkālesia rahi ra 'e te vi'ivi'i, 'e 'o tei fa'ati'ahia e te diabolō 'e tāna ra mau tamari'i, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia arata'i 'ē atu i te mau vārua o te ta'ata i raro i hade—'oia iā, taua 'āpo'o rahi ra i 'ōhia nō te ha'amou i te mau ta'ata, e fa'a'ihia iā i te mau ta'ata i'ō i te reira ; 'e e ha'amou-roa-hia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te 'Ārenio a te Atua ; e 'ere i te ha'amoura'a o te vārua, maori rā 'o te hurira'a iā i roto i taua hade hope 'ore ra.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, e au te reira i te fa'atītira'a a te diabolō ra, 'e e au ato'a ho'i i te parauti'a a te Atua ra i ni'a i te feiā ato'a e rave i te 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i mua iāna ra.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, 'ia Nephi, nā 'ō mai ra : 'Ua 'ite 'oe ē, mai te mea e tātarahapa te mau 'Ētene, e maīta'i rātou ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a 'oe i te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e 'ua fa'aro'o ato'a ho'i 'oe ē, 'o tē 'ore e tātarahapa, e pohe iā 'oia.
- 6 Nō reira, 'auē ho'i te mau 'Ētene ē, mai te mea e fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i te 'Ārenio a te Atua.
- 7 E tae mai ho'i te tau, tē nā reira mai ra te 'Ārenio a te Atua, e rave ai au i te hō'ē 'ohipa rahi 'e te māere i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; te hō'ē 'ohipa 'o tē riro 'ei mea mure 'ore, i te hō'ē pae 'e 'aore rā i te tahi—nō te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a ia rātou 'ia mā'iti i te hau 'e te ora mure 'ore, 'e 'aore rā i te vaiihora'a ia rātou i te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au 'e te pōiri ho'i o tō rātou mau mana'o ē tae roa atu i te fa'atītira'a, 'e te ha'amoura'a i te pae tino 'e te pae vārua ato'a ho'i, 'ia au i te fa'atītira'a a te diabolō 'o tā'u i parau ra.

1 Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā te melahi paraura'a mai i teie mau parau ra, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia iā'u : Tē ha'amana'o ra ānei 'oe i te mau fafau'a a te Metua i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ra ? 'Ua parau atu ra vau iāna, 'Ē.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : 'A hi'o na, 'a hi'o na i taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i, 'oia te metua vahine nō te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e 'o te diabolo ho'i tōna fa'atere.
- 10 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : Inaha, tē vai nei e piti noa iho 'ēkālesia ; te hō'ē ra, 'o te 'ēkālesia ia a te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'e te tahi ra, 'o te 'ēkālesia ia a te diabolo ; nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e fāri'i i te 'ēkālesia a te 'Ārenio a te Atua, nō taua 'ēkālesia rahi ra ia 'oia, 'oia te metua vahine nō te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'o te vahine tai'ata ho'i 'oia o te ao ato'a nei.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te vahine tai'ata o te ao ato'a nei, 'e tē pārahi ra 'oia i ni'a i te mau pape e rave rahi ; 'e e mana tōna i ni'a iho i te fenua ato'a nei, i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a, te mau 'ōpū ato'a, te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te 'ēkālesia a te 'Ārenio a te Atua, e mea iti roa ho'i tōna mau melo, nō te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a te vahine tai'ata i pārahi i ni'a i te mau pape e rave rahi ra ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te 'ēkālesia a te 'Ārenio, 'oia ho'i te feiā mo'a o te Atua, i ni'a ato'a rātou i te ao ato'a nei ; 'e e mea iti roa tō rātou mau mana i ni'a i te fenua nei, nō te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore a te vahine tai'ata rahi 'o tā'u i 'ite.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te metua vahine rahi nō te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i te ha'aputuputura'a mai i te mau pupu ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua ato'a ra, i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a o te mau 'Ētene, nō te tama'i mai i te 'Ārenio a te Atua ra.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i te mana o te 'Ārenio a te Atua i te poua'a mai i ni'a iho i te feiā mo'a o te 'ēkālesia a te 'Ārenio ra, 'e i ni'a iho ho'i i te feiā i fafau atu i te Fatu, 'o tei ha'apurarahia nā roto i te ao ato'a nei ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ahuhia rātou i te parauti'a 'e te mana o te Atua ma te hanahana rahi.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i te nīni'ira'ahia mai i ni'a iho i taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i ra, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tupu a'era te mau tama'i 'e te mau parau tama'i i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a o te ao nei.

16 'E 'a tupu ai te mau tama'i 'e te mau parau tama'i i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a o te metua vahine nō te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ra, 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : Inaha, tei ni'a iho te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i te metua vahine o te mau vahine tai'ata ; 'E inaha, 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe i taua mau mea nei—

17 'E 'ia tae mai te mahana e nīni'ihia mai ai te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i ni'a iho i te metua vahine o te mau vahine tai'ata, 'oia ho'i te 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i o te ao ato'a nei, 'e 'o te diabolō ho'i tōna fa'atere, 'e i taua mahana ra e ha'amatahia ai te 'ohipa a te Metua, i te fa'aainera'a i te 'ē'a nō te fa'atupura'a i tāna mau fafaura'a, 'o tāna i fa'aau i tōna ra mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A hi'o na !

19 'E 'ua hi'o atu ra vau 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te hō'ē ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'a'ahuhia 'oia i te 'ahu teatea.

20 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u : 'A hi'o na i te hō'ē o te tino 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio.

21 Inaha, e 'ite 'oia 'e e pāpa'i ho'i 'oia i te toe'a o teie mau mea ; 'oia ia, 'e te tahi atu ā mau mea i tupu 'ē na.

22 'E e pāpa'i ato'a ho'i 'oia nō ni'a i te hope'a o te ao nei.

23 Nō reira, e mea tano 'e e parau mau ho'i te mau mea tāna e pāpa'i ; 'E inaha, 'ua pāpa'ihia ia i roto i te buka tā 'oe i hi'o i te taera'a mai nā roto mai i te vaha o te 'āti Iuda ra ; 'e i te tau i tae mai ai te reira nā roto mai i te vaha o te 'āti Iuda ra, 'oia ho'i, i te tau i tae mai ai taua buka ra nā roto mai i te vaha o te 'āti Iuda ra, e mea pāpū 'e te ti'a, 'e te faufa'a rahi 'e te 'ite-'ōhie-hia e te mau ta'ata ato'a te mau mea i pāpa'ihia ra.

24 'E inaha, te mau mea tā teie 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio e pāpa'i, 'o te mau mea ia e rave rahi tā 'oe i 'ite ; 'e inaha, e 'ite ato'a 'oe i te toe'a ra.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

- 25 'Āre'a rā te mau mea tā 'oe e 'ite a muri a'e, 'eiaha 'oe e pāpa'i ; nō te mea 'ua fa'atōro'a te Fatu te Atua i te 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio a te Atua 'ia pāpa'i 'oia i te reira.
- 26 'Ua fa'a'ite ato'a na 'oia i te mau mea ato'a ia vetahi 'ē mau ta'ata i muta'a ihora, 'e nā rātou ho'i i pāpa'i i te reira ; 'e 'ua tā'atihia te reira 'ia fa'aho'ihia mai, ma te ruri-'ē-'ore-hia, 'e mai te au i te parau mau i roto i te 'Ārenio ra, 'e i te tau mau o te Fatu ra, i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ra.
- 27 'E 'ua fa'aro'o vau, 'o Nephi, 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei ho'i au ē, 'o Ioane te i'oa o taua 'āpōsetolo a te 'Ārenio ra, 'o tei fa'a'itehia mai e te melahi ra.
- 28 'E inaha, 'ua 'ōpanihia vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia pāpa'i i te toe'a o te mau mea tā'u i 'ite 'e i fa'aro'o ; nō reira 'ua nava'i ĩa te mau mea i oti i te pāpa'ihia e au ra ; 'e 'ua pāpa'i ho'i au i te hō'ē pae iti nō te mau mea tā'u i 'ite ra.
- 29 'E tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei au ē, 'ua 'ite ato'a vau i te mau mea tā tō'u metua tāne i 'ite ra, 'e nā te melahi a te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai i te reira iā'u.
- 30 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au i te parau i te mau mea tā'u i 'ite, 'a vai noa ai au i raro a'e i te fa'aurura'a a te Vārua ; 'e noa atu ā 'aita i hope te mau mea ato'a tā'u i 'ite i te pāpa'ihia, e parau mau roa ĩa te mau mea ato'a tā'u i pāpa'i. 'E 'oia mau roa. 'Āmene.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nephi 15

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i to'u, 'o Nephi, 'āfa'i-'ē-
ra'a-hia atu e te Vārua, 'e tō'u 'itera'a i teie mau mea
ato'a ra, 'ua ho'i atu ra vau i te ti'ahapa o tō'u ra
metua tāne.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau i tō'u nā tua'ana,
'e tē mārō ra rāua te tahi i te tahi nō ni'a i te mau mea
tā tō'u metua tāne i parau atu ia rāua.
- 3 'Oia mau ho'i, e rave rahi te mau mea rahi tāna i
parau atu ia rāua, 'aore e 'itea-pāpū-hia maori rā 'ia
ani atu te ta'ata i te Fatu ; 'e nō te 'eta'eta o tō rāua
'ā'au, nō reira 'aita rāua i ani atu i te Fatu mai tei ti'a
ia rāua.
- 4 'E i teienei, 'ua 'oto vau, 'o Nephi, nō te 'eta'eta o tō
rāua 'ā'au, 'e nō te mau mea ho'i tā'u i 'ite ra, 'e 'ua
'ite ho'i au ē, e tupu mau ā taua mau mea ra nō te
mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore rahi ho'i a te mau tamari'i a
te ta'ata nei.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua paruparu ihora vau nō tō'u mau
'ati, 'e 'ua mana'o vau ē, 'ua hau atu tō'u mau 'ati i tō
te mau ta'ata ato'a, nō te ha'amoura'ahia tō'u ra mau
ta'ata, nō te mea 'ua 'ite au i tō rātou pau.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fāri'i au i te pūai, 'ua paraparau
atu ra vau i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, nō te hina'aro 'ia 'ite i
te tumu nō tā rāua mau mārōra'a.
- 7 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra rāua : Inaha, 'aore roa māua i
māramarama i te mau parau tā tō tātou metua tāne i
parau mai nō ni'a i te mau 'āma'a mau o te tumu
rā'au 'ōlive ra, 'e nō ni'a ato'a i te mau 'Ētene.
- 8 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua : 'Ua ani ānei 'ōrua i
te Fatu ?
- 9 'E 'ua parau mai ra rāua iā'u : 'Aita māua i ani, nō
te mea 'aita roa te Fatu e fa'a'ite mai i te hō'ē mea mai
te reira te huru ia māua.
- 10 Inaha, 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua : Nō te aha ho'i
'aita 'ōrua e ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu ? Nō
te aha ho'i 'ōrua i hina'aro ai 'ia pohe, nō te 'eta'eta o
tō 'ōrua 'ā'au ?
- 11 'Aita ānei 'ōrua e ha'amana'o ra i te mau mea tā te
Fatu i parau mai ?—'ia 'ore 'ōrua 'ia fa'a'eta'eta i tō
'ōrua 'ā'au, 'e 'ia ani mai iā'u ma te fa'aro'o, ma te
ti'aturi ē, e roa'a mai tā 'ōrua, 'e ma te ha'apa'o māite
ho'i i tā'u ra mau fa'auera'a, e fa'a'ite-mau-hia ia taua
mau mea ra ia 'ōrua.

1 Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

- 12 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'ōrua, 'ua fa'aauhia te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela i te hō'ē tumu rā'au 'ōlive e te Vārua o te Fatu, tei roto i tō tātou metua tāne ; 'e inaha, 'aita ānei tātou i tāpū-'ē-hia mai i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'ere ānei ho'i tātou i te tahi 'āma'a nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ra ?
- 13 'E i teieni, 'o te aura'a teie nō te mau mea tā tō tātou metua tāne i parau mai nō te poira'a i te mau 'āma'a mau nā roto i te 'īra'a nō te mau 'Ētene ra, 'oia ho'i, 'ia tae i te mau mahana hope'a, 'a paruparu ai te fa'aro'o o tō tātou hua'ai, 'oia ia, nō te ārea e rave rahi matahiti te maoro, 'e e rave rahi ho'i u'i i muri a'e i tō te Mesia fa'a'ite-tino-ra'a mai iāna i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'ei reira e tae mai ai te 'īra'a nō te 'evanelia a te Mesia i te mau 'Ētene ra, e mai te mau 'Ētene ra i te toe'a o tō tātou hua'ai—
- 14 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e 'ite ai te toe'a o tō tātou hua'ai ē, nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela rātou, 'e e feiā rātou 'o tei fafau atu i te Fatu ; 'e i reira rātou e 'ite ai 'e e māmarama ai nō ni'a i tō rātou mau hui tupuna, 'e e māmarama ato'a ai nō ni'a i te 'evanelia a tō rātou Tāra'ehara, 'o tāna i ha'api'i atu i tō rātou mau metua ; nō reira, e māmarama rātou nō ni'a i tō rātou Tāra'ehara 'e te mau parau tumu ho'i nō tāna ra mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, 'ia 'ite rātou i te rāve'a nō te haere mai iāna ra 'e 'ia fa'aorahia.
- 15 'E i taua mahana ra, e'ita ānei rātou e 'oa'oa 'e e ha'amaita'i i tō rātou Atua mure 'ore, tō rātou papa 'e tō rātou fa'aorara'a ? 'Oia ia, i taua mahana ra, e'ita ānei rātou, e fāri'i i te pūai 'e te itoito nō te vine mau ra ? 'Oia ia, e'ita ānei rātou e haere mai i te nana mau a te Atua ra ?
- 16 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'ōrua, 'Oia ia, e ha'amana'o-fa'ahou-hia rātou i rotopū i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ra ; 'e e poiha rātou i roto i te tumu rā'au 'ōlive mau ra, nō te mea e 'āma'a mau rātou nō te tumu rā'au 'ōlive ra.
- 17 'O te reira ia tei mana'ohia e tō tātou ra metua tāne ; 'e tē mana'o ra ho'i 'oia ē, e'ita te reira e tupu ē tae noa atu i te tau e ha'apurarahia ai rātou e te mau 'Ētene ; 'e tē mana'o ra ho'i 'oia e tae mai te reira nā roto mai i te mau 'Ētene, 'ia ti'a i te Fatu 'ia fa'a'ite mai i tōna ra mana i te mau 'Ētene, nō te mea e pāto'ihia 'oia 'e te mau 'āti Iuda, 'oia ho'i, te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

- 18 Nō reira, 'aita tō tātou metua tāne i parau nō ni'a i tō tātou ana'e hua'ai, i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a rā o 'Īserā'ela, i te fa'a'itera'a mai i te fafaura'a e fa'atupuhia i te mau mahana hope'a ra ; 'oia ho'i te fafaura'a tā te Fatu i fafau i tō tātou metua tāne ra ia Aberahama, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : nā roto i tō 'oe ra hua'ai e ha'amaita'ihia ai te mau 'ōpū ato'a o te ao nei.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi te parau ta'u, tā Nephi, i parau atu ia rāua nō ni'a i taua mau mea ra ; 'oia ia, 'ua parau atu vau ia rāua nō ni'a i te fa'aho'ira'ahia o te mau 'āti Iuda i te mau mahana hope'a ra ;
- 20 'E 'ua ha'apāpū vau ia rāua i te mau parau a Isaia, 'o tei parau nō ni'a i te fa'aho'ira'ahia o te mau 'āti Iuda, 'oia ho'i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e 'ia fa'aho'ihia mai rātou, 'aita rātou e 'āno'i-haere-fa'ahou-hia, 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i e ha'apurara-fa'ahou-hia. 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi mau parau tā'u i parau atu i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'e 'ua hau rāua 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a ihora ia rāua iho i mua i te Fatu ra.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra rāua iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : E aha te aura'a o teie mea tā tō tātou metua tāne i 'ite i roto i te moemoeā ? E aha ho'i te aura'a nō teie tumu rā'au tāna i 'ite ra ?
- 22 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua : E fa'aura'a te reira i te tumu rā'au nō te ora.
- 23 'E 'ua parau mai ra rāua iā'u : E aha te aura'a nō te 'āuri tāpe'ara'a tā tō tātou metua tāne i 'ite, 'o tē tae atu i te tumu rā'au ra ?
- 24 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, 'o te parau ia a te Atua ; 'e te ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ha'apa'o i te parau a te Atua 'e 'o tē mau māite i te reira, e 'ore ia rātou e pohe, e 'ore ho'i te mau fa'ahemara'a 'e te mau ihe auahi a te enemi ra e ha'apōiri ia rātou, nō te arata'i ia rātou i te pohe.
- 25 Nō reira, 'ua a'o atu vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia rāua 'ia ha'apa'o i te parau a te Fatu ; 'oia ia, 'ua a'o atu vau ia rāua ma te pūai ato'a o tō'u vārua, 'e ma te pa'ari ato'a i roto iā'u nei, 'ia ha'apa'o rāua i te parau a te Atua 'e 'ia ha'amana'o ho'i i te ha'apa'o i tāna mau fa'auera'a i te mau mea ato'a ma te tu'utu'u 'ore.
- 26 'E 'ua parau mai ra rāua iā'u : E aha te aura'a nō te 'ānāvai pape tā tō tātou metua tāne i 'ite atu ?

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

- 27 'Ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, 'o te pape tā tō'u metua tāne i 'ite ra, 'o te vi'ivi'i ia ; 'e nō te mea tei ni'a tōna mana'o i te tahi atu mau mea 'ē, i 'ore ai 'oia i 'ite i te vi'ivi'i o taua pape ra.
- 28 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, 'o te ārea rahi ia, 'o tei fa'ata'a 'ē atu i te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te tumu rā'au nō te ora 'e i te feiā mo'a ato'a ho'i o te Atua ra.
- 29 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, 'ua fa'aauhia te reira i taua hade ri'ari'a ra 'o tā te melahi i parau mai iā'u ē 'ua ha'apa'ohia ia nō te feiā parauti'a 'ore.
- 30 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a tō mātou metua tāne i te parauti'a o te Atua, tei fa'ata'a 'ē i te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te feiā parauti'a ; 'e 'ua au ho'i te hanahana o te reira i te auahi ura ra, 'o tē tae roa atu i ni'a i te Atua ra ē a muri ē a muri noa atu, 'aore ho'i e hope'a tō reira.
- 31 'E 'ua parau mai ra rāua iā'u : 'Ua fa'aauhia ānei te reira i te mamae rahi o te tino i te mau mahana 'a ora ai te ta'ata i ni'a i teie nei ao, 'e 'aore rā 'ua fa'aauhia ānei te reira i te orara'a hope'a o te vārua i muri a'e i te pohera'a o te tino ta'ata nei, 'e 'aore rā e parau ana'e ānei te reira nō te mau mea o te tino nei ?
- 32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, e fa'aura'a te reira i te mau mea nō te pae tino nei 'e te pae vārua ho'i ; e tae mai ho'i te mahana 'ia ha'avāhia rātou i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa e ti'a ai, 'oia ia, i te mau 'ohipa tā rātou i rave i te tino nei i te mau mahana 'a pārahi ai rātou i te ao nei.
- 33 Nō reira, mai te mea e pohe rātou i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore, e fa'a'erehia rātou i te mau mea pae vārua, 'oia ho'i i te mau mea parauti'a ; nō reira, 'ia ti'a rātou i mua i te Atua e ti'a ai, 'ia ha'avāhia nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa ; 'e mai te mea e mea vi'ivi'i tā rātou mau 'ohipa, tē vi'ivi'i noa ra ia rātou ; 'e mai te mea tē vi'ivi'i noa ra rātou, e 'ore roa ia rātou e pārahi i te bāsileia o te Atua ; 'āhiri rātou e pārahi i roto i te reira e vi'ivi'i ato'a ia te bāsileia o te Atua.
- 34 Inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'ōrua, e 'ere te bāsileia o te Atua i te mea vi'ivi'i, 'e 'aita ho'i te hō'ē mea vi'ivi'i e o atu i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ; nō reira e mea ti'a roa ia 'ia fa'aineinehia te hō'ē vāhi vi'ivi'i nō te mau mea vi'ivi'i.

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

35 'E 'ua ha'apa'ohia ho'i te tahi vāhi, 'oia ia, taua hade ri'ari'a tā'u i parau ra, 'e nā te diabolō ho'i i fa'aineine i te reira ; nō reira, 'ei te hope'a ra, e pārāhi ai te vārua o te ta'ata i te bāsileia o te Atua ra, 'e 'aore rā, e hurihia ia rātou i rāpae nō te parauti'a ho'i 'o tā'u i parau ra.

36 Nō reira, e fa'ata'ahia ai te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te feiā parauti'a, 'e i taua tumu rā'au nō te ora ato'a ho'i, 'e 'ua hau 'ē tōna hotu i te maita'i 'e te hina'arohia i tō te mau hotu ato'a, 'oia ia, 'o te hōro'a rahi roa a'e ia nō te mau hōro'a ato'a a te Atua. 'Ua nā reira vau i te parau atu i tō'u ra nā tua'ana. 'Āmene.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

1 Nephi 16

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era vau, 'o Nephi, i tā'u mau parau i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, inaha, 'ua parau mai ra rāua iā'u : 'Ua fa'a'ite mai 'oe ia māua i te mau mea teimaha, hau atu i tei ti'a ia māua 'ia fa'a'oroma'i.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua parau atu vau i te mau mea teimaha i te feiā parauti'a 'ore, mai te au i te parau mau ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'a rā vau i te feiā parauti'a, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu ho'i au ē, e fa'ateiteihia rātou i te mahana hope'a ra ; nō reira, tē mana'o ra te feiā hara ē, e mea teimaha te parau mau, nō te mea nā te reira e ha'aputapū ia rātou i roto roa i tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 3 'E i teienei e tō'u nā tua'ana, 'āhiri ē mea parauti'a 'ōrua 'e 'ua hina'aro 'ōrua 'ia fa'aro'o i te parau mau, 'e 'ia ha'apa'o i te reira, 'ia ti'a ia 'ōrua 'ia haere ma te parauti'a i mua i te Atua, e 'ore iā 'ōrua e amuamu nō te parau mau, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ua parau mai 'oe i te mau mea teimaha ia māua nei.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'o atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, ma te itoito rahi, 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aha'eha'a rāua ia rāua iho i mua i te Fatu ; 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fāri'i ihora vau i te 'oa'oa 'e te ti'aturira'a rahi nō rāua, penei a'e 'o te haere rāua nā te 'ē'a o te parauti'a.
- 6 I teienei, 'ua parauhia 'e 'ua ravehia ho'i teie mau mea ato'a 'a pārahi ai tō'u metua tāne i te ti'ahapa i te peho 'o tāna i ma'iri i te i'ora 'o Lemuela.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te hō'ē o te mau tamāhine a Isema'ela 'ei vahine fa'aipoipo nā'u ; 'e 'ua rave ato'a tō'u mau taea'e i te mau tamāhine a Isema'ela 'ei vahine fa'aipoipo nā rātou, 'e 'ua rave ato'a Zorama i te tamāhine matahiapo a Isema'ela 'ei vahine fa'aipoipo nāna.
- 8 'E 'ua nā reira tō'u metua tāne i te fa'atupu i te mau fa'auera'a ato'a a te Fatu 'o tei hōro'ahia mai iāna ra. 'E 'oia ato'a, 'ua ha'amaita'i-roa-hia vau, 'o Nephi, e te Fatu.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te reo o te Fatu i tō'u metua tāne i te ru'i, 'e 'ua fa'aue mai ra iāna, 'ia reva 'oia i te mēdēbara 'ia ao a'era.

1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'a ti'a ai tō'u metua tāne i ni'a i te po'ipo'i 'e 'a haere atu ai 'oia i te 'ūputa o te ti'ahapa, 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia ma te māere rahi i te hō'ē pōpō menemene i ni'a i te repo ; e mea fa'ahiahia roa tōna hāmanira'a, 'e 'ua hāmanihia ho'i i te veo maita'i roa. 'E i roto i taua pōpō ra tē vai ra e piti nira, 'ua fa'a'ite mai te hō'ē i te 'ē'a e ti'a 'ia haerehia e mātou i roto i te mēdēbara ra.

11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu i hora mātou i te mau mea ato'a tā mātou e hōpoi i te mēdēbara ra, 'e te toe'a ho'i o tā mātou mau mā'a, 'o tā te Fatu i hōro'a mai ia mātou ra ; 'e 'ua rave ato'a ho'i mātou i te mau huru huero ato'a 'o tē ti'a ia mātou 'ia hōpoi atu i te mēdēbara.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave i hora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te mēdēbara, i terā pae mai o te 'ānāvai ra o Lamana.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra mātou nō te ārea e maha mahana te maoro i te pae 'apato'a-'apato'a hiti'a o te rā, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a fa'ahou i hora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa ; 'e 'ua ma'iri i hora mātou i te i'oa o taua vāhi ra 'o Sahazera.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave i hora mātou i tā mātou mau fana 'e tā mātou mau te'a, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te mēdēbara nō te taparahi i te 'ānimara 'ei mā'a nā tō mātou mau 'utuāfare ; 'e i muri iho i tō mātou taparahira'a i te 'ānimara 'ei mā'a nā tō mātou mau 'utuāfare, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra mātou i tō mātou mau 'utuāfare i roto i te mēdēbara, i te vāhi nō Sahazera. 'E 'ua haere fa'ahou atu mātou i roto i te mēdēbara, ma te pe'e fa'ahou i taua iho 'ē'a ra, 'e ma te haere nā te mau vāhi hotu rahi o te mēdēbara, nā te mau hiti fenua tāpiri i te miti 'Ute'ute ra.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tere atu ra mātou nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro, ma te taparahi i te 'ānimara nā te pae 'ē'a 'ei mā'a, 'e 'ua fa'a'ohipa mātou i tā mātou ra mau fana, 'e tā mātou mau te'a, 'e tā mātou mau 'ōfa'i, 'e tā mātou mau ma'a.

16 'E 'ua pe'e mātou i te mau arata'ira'a a te pōpō, 'o tei arata'i ia mātou nā te vāhi hotu rahi o te mēdēbara ra.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

- 17 'E i muri iho i tō mātou terera'a nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa nō te hō'ē area taime te maoro, 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia ha'amāha i tō mātou rohirohi 'e 'ia 'imi i te mā'a nā tō mātou mau 'utuāfare.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, e taparahi i te 'ānimara 'ei mā'a, inaha, 'ua fati ihora tā'u fana tei hāmanihia i te 'āuri maita'i roa ; 'e i muri iho i te fatira'a tā'u fana, inaha, 'ua riri ihora tō'u nā tua'ana iā'u, nō te mea 'ua 'ino tā'u fana, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'aore i roa'a tā mātou mā'a.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i mai ra mātou i tō mātou mau 'utuāfare ma te mā'a 'ore, 'e nō te rohirohi i tō rātou tere i pohe ai rātou i te po'ia.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua amuamu rahi roa ihora Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela 'e te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Isema'ela, nō tō rātou mau 'ati 'e tō rātou mau 'oto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ato'a tō'u metua tāne i te amuamu i te Fatu i tōna Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'oto rahi rātou ato'a, 'oia 'ua amuamu rātou i te Fatu.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ati-ato'a-hia vau, 'o Nephi, 'e tō'u nā tua'ana ato'a nō te fatira'a o tā'u fana, 'e nō te paraparura'a o tā rāua fana, e 'ati rahi tō mātou, 'oia ia, 'aita tā mātou mā'a e noa'a.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i te mau parau e rave rahi i tō'u nā tua'ana, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'eta'eta fa'ahou rāua i tō rāua 'ā'au, 'e 'ua amuamu ho'i rāua i te Fatu tō rāua ra Atua.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hāmani ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te tahi fana rā'au, 'e te tahi te'a nō roto i te hō'ē rā'au 'āfaro ; 'e 'ua rave ihora vau i te fana, 'e te te'a, 'e te mā'a 'e te mau 'ōfa'i. 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau i tō'u metua tāne : E haere au i hea 'ia roa'a mai te mā'a ?
- 24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ani atu ra 'oia i te Fatu, 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a ho'i rātou ia rātou iho nō tā'u ra mau parau ; nō te mea e rave rahi te mau mea tā'u i parau atu ia rātou ma te pūai o tō'u ra vārua.
- 25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu i tō'u metua tāne ; 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a-mau-hia 'oia nō tōna ra amuamura'a i te Fatu, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'aha'eha'ahia 'oia i raro ma te 'oto rahi.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te reo o te Fatu iāna : 'A hi'o na i te pōpō, 'e 'a hi'o na i te mau mea i pāpa'ihia ra.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'a 'ite ai tō'u metua tāne i te mau mea i pāpa'ihia i ni'a iho i te pōpō, 'ua mata'u ihora 'oia 'e 'ua rurutaina rahi ihora, 'e tō'u ato'a nā tua'ana 'e te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Isema'ela 'e tā mātou mau vahine ato'a ho'i.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i nā nira fa'atoro i roto i te pōpō, 'e 'ua tere te reira mai te au i tō mātou fa'aro'o 'e te itoito, 'e te ti'aturi i te reira.

29 'E 'ua pāpa'i-ato'a-hia te tahi pāpa'ira'a 'āpī i ni'a iho, e mea 'ōhie roa 'ia tai'ohia, 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū ra te reira ia mātou i te mau 'ē'a o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia 'e 'ua tauihia ho'i te reira i terā taime 'e i terā taime, mai te au i tō mātou fa'aro'o 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i i te reira. 'E nō reira e 'ite ai tātou ē nā roto i te mau rāve'a iti e fa'atupu ai te Fatu i te mau mea rahi.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i ni'a i te tupua'i mou'a, mai te au i te mau arata'ira'a i fa'a'itehia i ni'a iho i te pōpō ra.

31 'E i muri a'era, 'ua taparahi ihora vau i te mau 'ānimara taehae, 'e 'ua roa'a mai iā'u te mā'a nā tō mātou mau 'utuāfare.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i atu ra vau i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa, ma te hōpoi atu i te mau 'ānimara tā'u i taparahi ; 'e i teienei, i tō rātou 'itera'a mai ē 'ua roa'a iā'u te mā'a, 'ua rahi roa tō rātou 'oa'oa ! 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aha'eha'a rātou ia rātou iho i mua i te Fatu, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i atu ra iāna.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra mātou i tō mātou tere, e haere atu ra mātou fātata roa mai te 'ē'a i haerehia i te mātāmua ra ; 'e i muri iho i tō mātou haerera'a nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro, 'ua fa'ati'a fa'ahou ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa, 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia pārahi ri'i nō te hō'ē ārea taime te maoro.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ihora Isema'ela, 'e 'ua tanuhia ihora 'oia i te vāhi i parauhia 'o Nahoma.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, inasmuch that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'oto rahi ihora te mau tamāhine a Isema'ela nō te pohera'a tō rātou metua tāne, 'e nō tō rātou mau 'ati ho'i i te mēdēbara ra, 'e 'ua amuamu mai ra rātou i tō'u metua tāne nō te mea 'ua arata'i 'oia ia rātou i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ua pohe tō mātou metua tāne ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua rahi ho'i tō mātou haere-'ē-noa-ra'a i te mēdēbara nei, 'e 'ua rahi ho'i tō mātou mau 'ati, te po'ia, te po'ihā, 'e te rohirohi ; 'e 'ia oti teie mau 'ati ato'a ra, e pohe roa mātou i te mēdēbara nei nō te po'ia.

36 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te amuamu mai i tō'u metua tāne 'e iā'u ato'a nei ho'i ; 'e 'ua hina'aro rātou i te ho'i fa'ahou atu i Ierusalemā.

37 'E 'ua parau atu ra Lamana ia Lemuela 'e i te mau tamari'i tamāroa ato'a a Isema'ela : Inaha, e taparahi tātou i tō māua metua tāne, 'e tō māua teina ia Nephi, 'o 'oia i rave noa i te mana 'ia riro 'ei fa'atere 'e 'ei 'orometua nō mātou nei, 'oia ho'i, tōna nā tua'ana.

38 I teienei, tē parau ra 'oia ē, 'ua paraparau mai te Fatu iāna, 'e 'ua ha'api'i ato'a mai te mau melahi iāna. Inaha rā, 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua ha'avare mai 'oia ia tātou ; tē parau mai nei 'oia i taua mau mea ra, 'e nā roto i tāna mau rāve'a ha'avare i rave ai 'oia i te mau mea e rave rahi nō te ha'avare ia tātou, i te mana'ora'a ē, e arata'i paha 'oia ia tātou i te hō'ē mēdēbara ta'a 'ē ; 'e i muri iho i tōna arata'i-'ē-ra'a atu ia tātou, 'ua mana'o 'oia 'ia fa'ariro iāna iho 'ei ari'i 'e 'ei tāvana i ni'a ia tātou, 'ia rave mai 'oia ia tātou mai te au i tōna iho hina'aro 'e tōna iho mana'o. 'E i nā reira tō'u tua'ana ra 'o Lamana i te fa'ati'arepu i tō rātou 'ā'au 'ia riri.

39 'E i muri a'era, tei pīha'i iho te Fatu ia māua, 'oia ia, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu 'e 'ua parau mai ho'i i te mau parau e rave rahi ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'avau pūai mai ra ho'i ia rātou ; 'e i muri a'e i tō rātou 'avaura'ahia mai e te reo o te Fatu ra, 'ua fa'a'ore ihora rātou i tō rātou riri, 'e 'ua tātarahapa ihora i tā rātou mau hara, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amaita'i fa'ahou mai ra te Fatu ia mātou i te mā'a, 'ia 'ore mātou 'ia pohe.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

1 Nephi 17

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra mātou i tō mātou tere i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua rātere atu mātou i te pae i te hiti'a o te rā mai taua taime ra. 'E 'ua rātere 'e 'ua haere mātou nā roto i te mau 'ati e rave rahi i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua fānau tā mātou mau vahine i te tamari'i i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 2 'E 'ua rahi roa te mau ha'amaita'ira'a a te Fatu i ni'a ia mātou, nō reira 'a 'amu noa ai mātou i te pua'a ota i te mēdēbara ra, 'ua rahi roa te ū a tā mātou mau vahine nā tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua itoito ho'i rātou mai te tāne te huru ; 'e 'ua haere rātou i tō rātou tere ma te amuamu 'ore.
- 3 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ia tupu te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua e ti'a ai. 'E mai te mea e ha'apa'o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e fa'a'amu ia 'oia ia rātou, e fa'aitoito ia rātou, 'e e fa'atupu ho'i 'oia i te rāve'a e ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia rave i te mea tāna i fa'aue mai ia rātou ; nō reira, 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te rāve'a nō mātou 'a tere ai mātou i roto i te mēdēbara ra.
- 4 'E 'ua tere mātou nō te ārea e rave rahi matahiti te maoro, 'oia ia, e va'u matahiti i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 5 'E 'ua tae atu ra mātou i te fenua i parauhia 'o 'Auhune, nō te rahi o tōna hotu 'e te meli 'ōviri ; 'e 'ua fa'aineinēhia taua mau mea ato'a ra e te Fatu 'ia 'ore mātou 'ia pohe. 'E 'ua 'ite atu mātou i te miti tā mātou i ma'iri i te i'oa o Ireanetuma, te aura'a, 'oia ho'i, te mau pape e rave rahi.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa i te pae tahatai ; 'e noa atu 'ua fāri'i mātou i te mau 'ati e rave rahi 'e te pe'ape'a rahi, 'oia ia, noa atu 'aore e ti'a ia mātou 'ia pāpa'i i te tā'āto'ara'a o te mau mea ato'a, 'ua 'oa'oa rahi mātou 'ia tae atu mātou i te pae tahatai ; 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora mātou i te i'oa o taua fenua ra 'o 'Auhune, nō te rahi o tōna ra hotu.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro i tō'u, 'o Nephi, pārahira'a i te fenua nō 'Auhune, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A ti'a i ni'a, 'e 'a haere i ni'a i te mou'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a a'era vau i ni'a, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i ni'a i te mou'a, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra i te Fatu.

1 Nephi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra : E hāmani 'oe i te hō'ē pahī 'ia au i te hōho'a 'o tā'u e fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe na, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'auta atu i tō 'oe ra mau ta'ata i terā pae mai i teie nei mau pape.
- 9 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau : E te Fatu, e haere au i hea 'ia roa'a mai iā'u te 'ōfa'i metalo nō te fa'atahe, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia hāmani i te mau mauha'a nō te hāmani i te pahī mai te au i te hōho'a tā 'oe i fa'a'ite mai iā'u ?
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra te Fatu iā'u i te vāhi tā'u e haere nō te 'imi i te 'ōfa'i metalo, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'atō i te mau mauha'a.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hāmani ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te puhipuhi mata'i nō roto mai i te mau 'iri 'ānimara, nō te ha'apūai i te auahi ; 'e i muri iho i tō'u hāmanira'a i te puhipuhi mata'i nō te puhipuhi i te auahi, 'ua tūpa'i ihora vau i nā 'ōfa'i e piti te tahi i te tahi, nō te fa'a'ama i te auahi.
- 12 'Aore ho'i te Fatu i fa'ati'a ia mātou 'ia fa'a'ama rahi i te auahi i te mātāmua 'a haere ai mātou nā roto i te mēdēbara ; nō te mea i parau mai 'oia ē : E ha'amonamona vau i tā 'outou mā'a, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tunu i te reira.
- 13 'E e riro ato'a vau 'ei māramarama nō 'outou i roto i te mēdēbara ra ; 'e e fa'aineine au i te 'ē'a i mua ia 'outou, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a ; nō reira, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, e arata'ihia 'outou i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e e ite ho'i 'outou ē, nā'u 'outou i arata'i.
- 14 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua parau ato'a mai ra te Fatu ē : 'Ia tae atu 'outou i te fenua i fafauhia ra, e ite 'outou ē, 'o vau nei, 'o te Fatu, 'o te Atua ia ; 'e nā'u, nā te Fatu, 'outou i fa'aora i te pohe ; 'e nā'u ho'i 'outou i arata'i mai mai te fenua nō Ieruselema mai.
- 15 Nō reira, 'ua tāmata noa ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu, 'e 'ua a'o atu ho'i au i tō'u nā tua'ana 'ia ha'apa'o maita'i 'e 'ia fa'aitoito noa.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hāmani ihora vau i te mau mauha'a nō roto mai i te 'ōfa'i metalo 'o tā'u i fa'atahe nō roto i te mato ra.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

17 'E 'ia 'ite mai ra tō'u nā tua'ana ē, 'ua fātata vau i te hāmani i te pahī, 'ua ha'amata ihora rāua i te amuamu mai iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E ta'ata ma'ama'a tō taua teina, nō te mea 'ua mana'o 'oia ē, e ti'a iāna 'ia hāmani i te pahī ; 'oia ia, 'ua mana'o ato'a 'oia ē, e tae atu 'oia i terā pae mai i teie nei mau pape rahi.

18 'Ua nā reira tō'u nā tua'ana i te amuamu mai iā'u, 'e 'aore ho'i rāua i hina'aro 'ia rave i te 'ohipa, nō te mea 'ua mana'o rāua ē, 'aita e ti'a iā'u i te hāmani i te pahī ; 'e 'aita ato'a rāua i ti'aturi ē 'ua ha'api'ihia mai au e te Fatu.

19 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua 'oto rahi ihora vau, 'o Nephi, nō te 'eta'eta o tō rāua 'ā'au ; 'e i teienei 'ia 'ite mai rāua ē 'ua ha'amata vau i te 'oto, 'ua 'oa'oa ihora tō rāua 'ā'au, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa ihora rāua iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ua 'ite māua ē, 'aore roa e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia hāmani i te pahī, nō te mea 'ua 'ite māua i tō 'oe pa'ari 'ore, nō reira, 'aita roa e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia rave i te hō'ē 'ohipa rahi mai te reira.

20 'E mai tō tātou metua tāne ho'i tō 'oe huru i te arata'ira'ahia e te mau mana'o ma'ama'a o tōna ra 'ā'au, 'oia ia, 'ua arata'i mai 'oia ia tātou i rāpae i te fenua nō Ierusalem, 'e 'ua haere noa tātou nā roto i te mēdēbara nō teie mau matahiti e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua 'ohipa rahi noa tā tātou mau vahine 'a fātata ai rātou i te fānau ; 'e 'ua fānau ho'i rātou i te tamari'i i roto i te mēdēbara 'e 'ua fāri'i i te mau 'ati rahi 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i pohe ; 'e e mea maita'i a'e paha 'āhiri rātou i pohe atu 'a pārahi ai rātou i Ierusalem, i te ro'ohia i teie nei mau 'ati.

21 Inaha, i roto i teie mau matahiti e rave rahi 'ua fāri'i tātou i te 'ati i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e i taua taimera 'ua ti'a roa ho'i ia tātou 'ia 'oa'oa i tā tātou mau tao'a 'e i te fenua o tō tātou ra 'āi'a ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa ho'i tātou i reira.

22 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i māua ē, e feiā parauti'a te feiā i pārahi i te fenua nō Ierusalem ; nō te mea 'ua ha'apa'o rātou i te mau ture 'e te mau parau a te Fatu, 'e tāna mau fa'auera'a ato'a, mai te au i te ture a Mose ra ; nō reira, 'ua 'ite māua ē, e feiā parauti'a rātou ; 'e 'ua ha'avā rā tō tātou metua tāne ia rātou, 'e 'ua arata'i mai 'oia ia tātou i'ō nei, nō te mea e fa'aro'o tātou i tāna ra mau parau ; 'oia ia, e mai iāna ato'a ho'i tō taua teina. 'Ua nā reira tō'u ra nā tua'ana i te amuamu 'e te 'ōhumu mai ia māua ra.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia rāua, nā 'ō atu ra : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'ōrua ē, 'ua arata'ihia mai tō tātou mau metua, 'oia ho'i te mau tamari'i nō 'Īserā'ela, mai te rima mai o te mau 'Aiphiti, 'āhiri 'aita rātou i ha'apa'o i te mau parau a te Fatu ?

24 'Oia ia, tē mana'o ra ānei 'ōrua ē, 'ua arata'ihia rātou mai roto mai i te fa'atītira'a, 'āhiri 'aita te Fatu i fa'aue mai ia Mose 'ia arata'i mai ia rātou i rāpae i te fa'atītira'a ?

25 I teienei 'ua 'ite 'ōrua ē, tei roto te mau tamari'i o 'Īserā'ela i te fa'atītira'a ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'ōrua ē, 'ua fa'arave-rahi-hia rātou i te 'ohipa, i te mau 'ohipa teiaha roa 'ia rave ; nō reira, 'ua 'ite 'ōrua ē, e mea ti'a roa ia rātou 'ia arata'ihia mai i rāpae i te fa'atītira'a.

26 I teienei, 'ua 'ite 'ōrua ē 'ua fa'auehia Mose e te Fatu 'ia rave i taua 'ohipa rahi ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'ōrua ē, nā tāna parau i fa'ata'a 'ē i te mau pape nō te miti 'Ute'ute i terā pae 'e i terā pae, 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou nā ni'a i te fenua marō ra.

27 'Āre'a rā 'ua 'ite 'ōrua ē, 'ua paremo tō 'Aiphiti, 'oia ho'i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Phara'o, i roto i te miti 'Ute'ute.

28 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a 'ōrua ē, 'ua fa'a'amuhia rātou i te māna i roto i te mēdēbara.

29 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite ato'a 'ōrua ē, nā te parau a Mose, 'o tei au i te mana o te Atua i roto iāna ra, 'ua tā'iri 'oia i te mato, 'e 'ua tahe noa mai ra te pape 'ia ti'a i te mau tamari'i nō 'Īserā'ela 'ia ha'amāha i tō rātou po'ihā.

30 'E noa atu ā te arata'ihia ra rātou, 'e tei mua ia rātou te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e tō rātou Tāra'ehara, i te arata'ira'a ia rātou i te ao, 'e i te ha'amāramaramara'a mai ia rātou i te ru'i, 'e i te ravera'a i te mau mea ato'a nō rātou, 'o tē ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia fāri'i, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta noa rātou i tō rātou mau 'ā'au, 'e 'ua ha'apōiri ho'i i tō rātou mau mana'o, 'e 'ua fa'a'ino rātou ia Mose 'e i te Atua parau mau 'e te ora.

31 'E i muri a'era, mai tāna i parau ra 'ua ha'amou a'era 'oia ia rātou ; 'e mai tāna i parau ra, 'ua arata'i 'oia ia rātou ; 'e mai tāna ho'i i parau ra, 'ua rave 'oia i te mau mea ato'a nō rātou ra ; 'e 'aita ho'i te hō'ē mea i ravehia maori rā nā roto i tāna ra parau.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

32 'E 'ia tae a'era rātou i terā pae mai i te 'ānāvai Ioridana, 'ua fa'ariro ihora 'oia ia rātou 'ei feiā pūai i te ti'avarura'a atu i te mau tamari'i o te fenua i rāpae'au ra, 'oia ia, i te ha'apurarara'a ia rātou nō te ha'amoura'a.

33 'E i teienei, tē mana'o ra ānei 'ōrua ē, e feiā parauti'a te mau tamari'i o teie nei fenua, 'o tei pārahi i te fenua i fafauhia ra, 'e tei ti'avaruhia ho'i e tō tātou ra mau metua ; tē mana'o ra ānei 'ōrua ē, e mea parauti'a rātou ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'ōrua, 'Aita roa.

34 Tē mana'o ra ānei 'ōrua ē, e hau atu te maita'i o tō tātou mau metua i tō rātou 'āhiri e feiā parauti'a rātou ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'ōrua, 'Aita roa.

35 Inaha, hō'ē ā huru tō te Fatu hi'ora'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'e tei parauti'a ra, 'o tā te Atua ia e here roa atu. Inaha rā, 'ua pāto'i teie feiā i te mau parau ato'a a te Atua, 'e 'ua 'i rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; 'e tei ni'a ho'i ia rātou te 'ira'a o te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua ; 'e 'ua 'anatema ihora te Fatu i te fenua nō rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ihora i te reira nō tō tātou mau metua ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'anatema 'oia i te reira nō rātou 'ia ha'amouhia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ho'i i te reira nō tō tātou mau metua 'ia roa'a ia rātou te mana i ni'a i te reira.

36 Inaha, 'ua hāmani te Fatu i te fenua 'ia ta'atahia ; 'e 'ua hāmani ho'i 'oia i tāna mau tamari'i 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te reira.

37 'E tē fa'atupu nei 'oia i te nūna'a parauti'a, 'e tē ha'amou nei i te mau nūna'a o te feiā parauti'a 'ore.

38 'E tē arata'i nei 'oia i te feiā parauti'a i te mau fenua maitata'i roa, 'e tē ha'amou noa nei 'oia i te feiā parauti'a 'ore, 'e tē 'anatema nei ho'i 'oia i te fenua nō rātou nō tā rātou hape.

39 Tē fa'atere nei 'oia i ni'a roa i roto i te mau ra'i, nō te mea, 'o tōna ia terōno, 'e teie nei ao, 'o tōna ia ta'ahira'a 'āvae.

40 'E tē here nei 'oia i te mau ta'ata 'o tei hina'aro iāna 'ei Atua nō rātou. Inaha, 'ua here 'oia i tō tātou mau metua, 'e 'ua fafau atu 'oia ia rātou, 'oia ia, ia Aberahama, 'e ia Isaaka, 'e ia Iakoba ; 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ho'i 'oia i tāna ra mau fafaura'a ia rātou ; nō reira, 'ua 'āfa'i mai 'oia ia rātou i rāpae i te fenua nō "Aiphiti.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

41 'E 'ua papa'i 'oia ia rātou i roto i te mēdēbara i tāna ra rā'au ; nō te mea 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au, mai ia 'ōrua ato'a na ; 'e 'ua papa'i te Fatu ia rātou nō tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino. 'Ua tu'u mai 'oia i te 'ōphī auahi pererau i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e 'ia hohonihia a'era rātou, 'ua fa'a'ineine ihora 'oia i te rāve'a 'ia fa'aorahia rātou ; 'e te 'ohipa i tītauhia ia rātou 'ia rave, 'o tē hī'o noa ia ; 'e nō te 'ohipa 'ore o te rāve'a, 'e 'aore rā nō te 'ōhie o te reira, e rave rahi tei pohe.

42 'E 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i terā taime 'e i terā taime, 'e 'ua fa'a'ino atu rātou ia Mose, 'e i te Atua ato'a ho'i ; 'āre'a rā 'ua 'ite 'ōrua ē, 'ua arata'ihia rātou e tōna mana fāito 'ore i te fenua i fafauhia ra.

43 'E i teienei, i muri a'e i taua mau mea ato'a ra, 'ua tae mai te tau i riro ai rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua fātata rātou i te 'ino roa ; 'e 'aore au i 'ite, 'ua fātata rā rātou i teie mahana i te ha'amouhia ; 'e 'ua 'ite rā vau ē, e tae mai te mahana e ha'amouhia ai rātou ra e ti'a ai, maori rā te tahi pae iti ana'e, 'o tē arata'ihia i roto i te fa'atītira'a.

44 Nō reira, 'ua fa'auē mai te Fatu i tō'u ra metua tāne 'ia haere atu i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua tītau ato'a te mau 'āti Iuda 'ia taparahi iāna ; 'oia ia, 'ua tītau ato'a ho'i 'ōrua 'ia taparahi iāna ; nō reira, e taparahi ta'ata 'ōrua i roto i tō 'ōrua 'ā'au, e mai ia rātou ato'a ho'i 'ōrua.

45 'Ua 'oi'oi 'ōrua i te rave i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e 'ua tāere rā i te ha'amana'o i te Fatu i tō 'ōrua Atua. 'Ua 'ite 'ōrua i te hō'ē melahi, 'e 'ua paraparau mai 'oia ia 'ōrua, 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aro'o 'ōrua i tōna reo i terā taime 'e i terā taime ; 'e 'ua paraparau mai ho'i 'oia ia 'ōrua nā roto i te hō'ē reo iti ha'ihā'i, 'aore rā tō 'ōrua fa'aro'o e ti'a ai i tō 'ōrua 'ā'au 'ia putapū i tāna mau parau ; nō reira, 'ua paraparau mai 'oia ia 'ōrua mai te reo o te pātiri, 'e 'ua fa'a'āueue te reira i te fenua mai te mea ra ē, e 'āfāfā.

46 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a 'ōrua ē, nā roto i te mana o tāna ra parau mana hope, e ti'a iāna 'ia ha'amou i te fenua nei ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite ato'a 'ōrua ē, nā roto i tāna ra parau e ti'a iāna ia ha'amānina i te mau vāhi pu'upu'u, 'e 'ia ha'apararī i te mau vāhi mānina. E teienei, e aha te mea i 'eta'eta ai tō 'ōrua 'ā'au ?

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simple-ness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

47 Inaha, 'ua 'oto roa tō'u nei vārua i te māuiui rahi ia 'ōrua, 'e 'ua mamae tō'u 'ā'au ; tē mata'u nei au 'o te fa'aru'ehia 'ōrua ē a muri noa atu. Inaha, 'ua 'ī roa vau i te Vārua o te Atua, 'e nō reira 'ua 'ore roa tō'u pūai i te tino nei.

48 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti ihora iā'u te parau i taua mau parau ra, 'ua riri roa mai ra rāua iā'u, 'e 'ua hina'aro rāua i te huri iā'u i roto i te moana hōhonu ra ; 'e i tō rāua haerera'a mai nō te haru iā'u, 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua, nā 'ō atu ra : nā roto i te 'īoa o te Atua Manahope, tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'ōrua 'eiaha roa 'ōrua e tāpe'a mai iā'u nei, nō te mea 'ua 'ī au i te mana o te Atua, 'e 'ua 'ama roa tō'u nei tino ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'atae mai i tōna rima i ni'a iā'u nei, e 'ōriorio ia 'oia mai te 'ā'eho e 'ōriorio ra ; 'e e 'ore roa ia tōna pūai i mua i te mana o te Atua, 'e e tā'iri ho'i te Atua iāna.

49 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia rāua ē, 'eiaha roa rāua e amuamu fa'ahou i tō rāua metua tāne ; 'e 'eiaha ho'i rāua e fa'aea i te tauturu mai iā'u nei, nō te mea 'ua fa'aue mai te Atua iā'u 'ia hāmani i te pahī.

50 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rāua : 'Āhiri e fa'aue mai te Atua iā'u 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a, e ti'a ia iā'u 'ia rave i te reira. 'E 'āhiri e fa'aue mai 'oia iā'u 'ia parau atu i teie nei pape 'ia riro 'ei fenua, 'ua riro iho ā ia 'ie fenua ; 'e 'āhiri e parau vau i te reira, e tupu iho ā ia.

51 'E i teienei, mai te mea e mana rahi tō te Fatu mai te reira te huru, 'e 'ua rave ho'i 'oia i te mau semeio e rave rahi i rotopū i te tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, e aha ia te mea 'aita e ti'a iāna 'ia ha'api'i mai iā'u, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia hāmani i te pahī ?

52 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi te mau mea ta'u, tā Nephi, i parau atu i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'e nō reira 'ua ha'amāmūhia ihora rāua, 'e 'aore atu ra i ti'a ia rāua 'ia mārō mai iā'u ; 'e 'aore ato'a e ti'a 'ia fa'atae mai i tō rāua rima i ni'a iā'u 'e 'aore rā 'ia tāpe'a mai iā'u i tō rāua mau manimani rima, 'oia mau, nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro. I teienei, 'aita roa rāua i hina'aro 'ia nā reira, 'o te 'ōriorio rāua i mua iā'u, nō te pūai o te Vārua o te Atua ; 'e nō reira 'ua nā-reira-hia rāua.

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

- 53 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u : 'A fa'atoro fa'ahou atu na i tō rima i ni'a i tō 'oe ra nā tua'ana, 'e 'aita rāua e 'ōriorio i mua ia 'oe, e fa'a'āueue rā vau ia rāua, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, 'e e nā reira vau 'ia 'ite rāua ē, 'o vau nei ho'i te Fatu tō rāua ra Atua.
- 54 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atoro atu ra vau i tō'u rima i ni'a i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'e 'aita rāua i 'ōriorio i mua iā'u ; 'ua fa'a'āueue rā te Fatu ia rāua mai te au i te parau tāna i parau mai ra.
- 55 'E i teienei, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra rāua : 'Ua 'ite pāpū māua ē, tei pīha'i iho te Fatu ia 'oe na, nō te mea 'ua 'ite māua ē, 'o te mana o te Atua tei fa'a'āueue mai ia māua. 'E 'ua tīpapa ihora rāua i raro i mua iā'u, 'e 'ua fātata roa i te ha'amori mai iā'u, 'āre'a rā 'aita vau i fa'ati'a ia rāua, ma te parau atu ē : 'O vau nei tō 'ōrua taea'e, 'oia ia, tō 'ōrua teina ; nō reira, 'a ha'amori i te Fatu i tō 'ōrua Atua, 'e 'a fa'atura ho'i i tō 'ōrua metua tāne 'e tō 'ōrua metua vahine, 'ia ha'amaorohia tō 'ōrua pu'e mahana i ni'a i te fenua nei 'o tā te Fatu ra tā tō 'ōrua Atua e hōro'a mai nō 'ōrua.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

1 Nephi 18

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amori rāua i te Fatu, 'e 'ua pe'e mai rāua iā'u, 'e 'ua tarai ihora mātou i te mau rā'au, nā roto i te hāmanira'a ta'a 'ē roa. 'E 'ua fa'a'ite pinepine mai te Fatu iā'u i te huru nō te taraira'a i te mau rā'au o te pahī.
- 2 I teienei, 'aita vau, 'o Nephi, i tarai i te mau rā'au i tā te ta'ata nei huru ravera'a, 'e 'aita ho'i au i hāmani i te pahī mai tā te ta'ata nei huru hāmanira'a ; 'ua hāmani rā vau i te reira mai tā te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai iā'u ; nō reira, 'aita te reira i au i tā te ta'ata nei huru ravera'a.
- 3 'E 'ua haere pinepine atu vau, 'o Nephi, i ni'a i te mou'a, 'e 'ua pure pinepine au i te Fatu ; nō reira, 'ua fa'a'ite mai te Fatu iā'u i te mau mea rahi.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era vau i te pahī, mai te au i te parau a te Fatu, 'ua 'ite mai ra tō'u nā taea'e ē, e mea maita'i ia, 'e e mea nehenehe roa ho'i te hāmanira'a ; nō reira, 'ua fa'aha'eha'a fa'ahou rāua ia rāua iho i mua i te Fatu.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu i tō'u metua tāne, 'e e mea ti'a ia mātou 'ia haere i raro i roto i te pahī.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia po'ipo'i a'era, i muri iho i tō mātou fa'aineinera'a i te mau mea ato'a, i te mau mā'a hotu e rave rahi, 'e te 'īna'i nō te mēdēbara mai, 'e te meli e rave rahi, 'e te mau mā'a ho'i mai te au i tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai ia mātou ra, 'ua haere atu mātou i raro i roto i te pahī 'e tā mātou mau tao'a ato'a 'e tā mātou mau huero, 'e te mau mea ato'a ho'i tā mātou i 'āfa'i mai nā muri ia mātou, te ta'ata ho'i mai te au i tōna matahiti ; nō reira, 'ua haere mātou 'e tā mātou mau vahine 'e tā mātou mau tamari'i ho'i i raro i roto i te pahī.
- 7 'E i teienei, 'ua fānau tā tō'u metua tāne e to'opiti pu'e tamari'i tamāroa i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'ua ma'irihia tō te tamaiti pa'ari a'e i'oa 'o Iakoba, 'e tō te tamaiti 'āpī iho i'oa 'o Iosepha.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō mātou tomora'a i roto i te pahī, 'e te 'āfa'ira'a atu i tā mātou mau mā'a 'e te mau mea i fa'auehia mai ia mātou ra, 'ua tere atu ra mātou nā ni'a i te moana 'e 'ua puhi-noa-hia mātou e te mata'i i te pae'au e tae atu ai i te fenua i fafauhia ra.

1 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

9 'E i muri iho i tō mātou tūra'ira'ahia i mua i te mata'i nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro, inaha, 'ua ha'amata ihora tō'u nā tua'ana 'e te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Isema'ela 'e tā rātou ato'a mau vahine i te fa'a'ārearea ia rātou iho, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te 'ori, i te hīmene, 'e i te parau i te parau ha'uti tano 'ore, 'oia ia, 'ua mo'e ia rātou te mana i tae ai rātou i reira ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'ateiteihia rātou i te peu ha'uti tano 'ore roa.

10 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te mata'u rahi 'o te riri mai te Fatu ia mātou, 'e 'o te tā'iri mai ia mātou nō tā mātou mau 'ohīpa 'T'ino, 'e 'o te horomi'ihia mātou i roto i te hōhonura'a o te moana ; nō reira, 'ua ha'amata ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te parau atu ia rātou ma te 'ā'au marū ; inaha rā, 'ua riri mai rātou iā'u, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : 'Aita roa mātou e fa'ati'a i tō mātou teina 'ia riro 'ei fa'atere i ni'a a'e ia mātou.

11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave mai ra Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela iā'u 'e 'ua ru'uru'u ihora iā'u i te taura, 'e 'ua hāmani 'ino mai ra iā'u ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua fa'ati'a te Fatu i te reira, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite mai i tōna mana, i te fa'ati'ara'a i tāna parau 'o tāna i parau mai nō ni'a i te feiā parauti'a 'ore.

12 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rāua ru'uru'ura'a iā'u 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita i ti'a iā'u 'ia hā'uti'uti, 'ua pohe ihora te 'avei'a 'o tā te Fatu i fa'aineine.

13 Nō reira, 'aita rāua i 'ite i te vāhi nō te fa'ahaere i te pahī, nō te mea 'ua tupu mai te hō'ē vero rahi, 'oia ia, te hō'ē verohuri rahi 'e te ri'ari'a, 'e 'ua tūra'i-noa-hia mātou i muri nā ni'a i te mau pape nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro ; 'e 'ua tupu ihora tō rāua mata'u rahi 'o te paremo rātou i te miti ; 'āre'a rā 'aita roa rāua i tātara iā'u.

14 'E i te maha o te mahana, 'a tūra'i-noa-hia ai mātou i muri, 'ua pūai roa mai te verohuri.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fātata roa mātou i te horomi'ihia i roto i te hōhonura'a o te moana. 'E i muri iho i tō mātou tūra'ira'ahia i muri nā ni'a i te mau pape nō te ārea e maha mahana te maoro, 'ua 'ite ihora tō'u nā tua'ana ē, tei ni'a ia rāua te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua, 'e 'ia pohe rāua e ti'a ai, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rāua i tā rāua mau 'ohipa 'I'ino ; nō reira, 'ua haere mai ra rāua iā'u, 'e 'ua tātara ihora i te taura i ni'a i tō'u rima, 'e inaha 'ua 'oru'oru roa te reira, 'e 'ua 'oru'oru ato'a ho'i tō'u mōmoa 'āvae, 'e 'ua māuiui roa ho'i.
- 16 'Āre'a rā, 'ua ti'aturi noa vau i tō'u Atua, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i noa vau iāna i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te mahana ; 'e 'aita vau i amuamu i te Fatu nō tō'u ra mau 'ati.
- 17 I teienei, i parau na ho'i tō'u metua tāne, 'o Lehi, 'ia rāua 'e i te mau tamari'i tamāroa ato'a a Isema'ela ; inaha rā, 'ua fa'ahiti rāua i te mau parau ha'amata'u rahi i te feiā i parau i te mea maita'i nō ni'a iā'u ; 'e 'ua ro'ohia tō'u nā metua i te ma'i i ni'a i tō rāua ro'i nō tō rāua ruhiruhiāra'a, 'e nō te 'oto ho'i nō tā rāua mau tamari'i.
- 18 Nō tō rāua 'oto 'e tō rāua mihi rahi, 'e nō te mau 'ohipa 'I'ino ho'i a tō'u nā tua'ana, i fātata ai rāua i te pohe roa 'e i te fa'aru'e mai i teie orara'a nō te fārerei atu i tō rāua Atua ; 'oia ia, i fātata ai tō rāua rouru hinahina i te ta'oto i raro a'e i te repo ; 'oia ia, i fātata ai ho'i rāua i te hurihia i raro i te mēnema nō te miti ra.
- 19 'E nō te mau 'ati o tō rāua metua vahine i 'oto ai Iakoba rāua 'o Iosepha, nō te mea e mea 'āpī rāua 'e 'ua tītauhia 'ia fa'a'amu pinepine ia rāua i te mā'a ; 'e 'aita ho'i i ti'a i tā'u vahine ma tōna roimata 'oto, 'e tāna ho'i mau pure, 'e i tā'u ato'a ho'i mau tamari'i, 'ia tāmarū i te 'ā'au o tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'ia tātara rātou iā'u.
- 20 'Aita roa ho'i i ti'a i te hō'ē mea 'ia tāmarū i tō rāua 'ā'au, maori rā, te mana o te Atua tei ha'amata'u ia rāua i te pohe ; nō reira, 'ia 'ite a'era rāua ē, 'ua fātata rāua i te horomi'ihia i roto i te hōhonura'a o te moana, 'ua tātarahapa ihora rāua i te mea tā rāua i rave, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tātara ihora rāua iā'u.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

21 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rāua tātarara'a iā'u, inaha, 'ua rave ihora vau i te 'avei'a 'e 'ua tere ihora te reira mai te au i tā'u i hina'aro ra. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pure atu ra vau i te Fatu ; 'e 'ia oti a'era tā'u pure, 'ua fa'aea ihora te mau mata'i, 'e 'ua fa'aea ihora te vero, 'e 'ua mania ihora.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atere atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i te pahī, 'e 'ua tere fa'ahou atu ra mātou i te pae e tae atu ai i te fenua i fafauhia ra.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'a tere atu ai mātou nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro, 'ua tae atu ra mātou i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra mātou i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ihora i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa ; 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora mātou i tō te reira i'oa, te fenua i fafauhia ra.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata a'era mātou i te fa'a'apu i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata ato'a mātou i te tanu i te mau huero ; 'oia ia, 'ua tanu ihora mātou i tā mātou mau huero ato'a 'o tā mātou i 'āfa'i mai mai te fenua nō Ieruselema mai. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu roa atu ra te reira ; 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia mātou.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'itea ia mātou i ni'a i te fenua i fafauhia ra, 'a tere ai mātou i roto i te mēdēbara ē, tē vai ra te mau huru 'ānimara ato'a i roto i te uru rā'au, te pua'atoro ufa 'e te pua'atoro oni, te 'āsini 'e te pua'ahorofenua, te pua'aniho, te pua'aniho 'ōviri, 'e te mau huru 'ānimara 'ōviri ato'a, tei fa'ata'ahia nō te ta'ata. 'E 'ua 'itea mai ia mātou te mau huru 'ōfa'i metalo ato'a, 'e te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te veo.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

1 Nephi 19

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'auae mai ra te Fatu iā'u, 'e nō reira 'ua hāmani ihora vau i te mau 'api i te 'ōfa'i metalo ra, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te pāpa'a parau o tō'u ra mau ta'ata. 'E i ni'a iho i te mau 'api 'o tā'u i hāmani 'ua 'ō'oti ihora vau i te pāpa'a parau o tō'u ra metua tāne, 'e tō mātou mau tere i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e te mau tohura'a a tō'u ra metua tāne ; 'e 'ua 'ō'oti ato'a vau i tā'u ihora mau tohura'a e rave rahi i ni'a ihora.
- 2 'E 'aita vau i 'ite i te tau vau i hāmani ai i teie mau 'api ē, e fa'auehia vau e te Fatu 'ia hāmani i te reira ; nō reira, 'ua 'ō'otihia i ni'a i teie mau 'api mātāmua 'o tā'u i parau iho nei, te pāpa'a parau o tō'u ra metua tāne, 'e te tuatāpapara'a tupuna o tōna ra mau metua, 'e te tahi pae rahi nō te tā'āto'ara'a ia o tō mātou mau tere i roto i te mēdēbara ; nō reira, te mau mea i tupu hou vau i hāmani ai i teie nei mau 'api, 'ua fa'ahiti-pāpū-roa-hia ia i ni'a iho i te mau 'api mātāmua.
- 3 'E i muri iho i tō'u hāmanira'a i teie nei mau 'api nā roto i te fa'auera'a, 'ua fāri'i ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te hō'ē fa'auera'a 'ia pāpa'i i te mau 'ohipa mo'a 'e te mau tohura'a pāpū 'e te faufa'a rahi i ni'a iho i teie nei mau 'api ; 'e 'ia fa'ahereherehia teie mau mea i pāpa'ihia nō te ha'api'ira'a i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'o tē pārahi i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'e nō te tahi atu ā mau 'ōpuara'a pa'ari, te mau 'ōpuara'a i 'itea i te Fatu ra.
- 4 Nō reira, 'ua pāpa'i au, 'o Nephi, i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau i ni'a iho i te tahi atu mau 'api, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te 'ā'amu, 'oia ho'i, te hō'ē 'ā'amu rahi atu nō ni'a i te mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a 'e te pau rahi ho'i o tō'u ra mau ta'ata. 'E 'ua nā reira vau, 'e 'ua fa'auae ato'a atu vau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata i tā rātou e rave 'ia reva 'ē atu vau ; 'e 'ia tu'uhia atu teie mau 'api mai te tahi u'i i te tahi atu, 'e 'aore rā mai te tahi peropheta i te tahi atu, ē tae noa atu 'ua hōro'a mai te Fatu i te tahi atu mau fa'auera'a.
- 5 'E e fa'a'itehia te 'ā'amu nō tā'u hāmanira'a i teie nei mau 'api i muri nei ; 'e i muri iho, inaha, e pāpa'i ai au mai tā'u i parau na ; 'e e nā reira ho'i au 'ia fa'ahereherehia te mau mea mo'a roa nō te 'ite o tō'u ra mau ta'ata.

1 Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6 'Āre'a rā, 'aita vau e pāpa'i i te hō'ē mea i ni'a i teie mau 'api, maori rā 'o te mau mea i mana'ohia e au e mea mo'a. 'E i teienei, mai te mea e hape au, 'ua hape ato'a ho'i te feiā i tahito ra ; 'aore rā tō'u 'ōtohera'a nō te tahi atu mau ta'ata, nō te paruparu rā i roto iā'u nei, mai te au i tō te tino nei, tō'u 'ōtohera'a nei.

7 Nō te mea 'o te mau mea i mana'ohia e te tahi mau ta'ata ē, e mea faufa'a rahi roa nō te tino 'e nō te vārua ho'i, 'ua fa'aru'e-noa-hia ia 'e 'ua ta'ata'ahinoa-hia ho'i e te 'āvae o vetahi 'ē ra mau ta'ata. 'Oia ia, tē ta'ata'ahi noa nei te ta'ata i te Atua mau o 'Īserā'ela i tō rātou 'āvae ; 'ua parau iho nei au ē 'ua tāta'ahihia e tō rātou 'āvae, e parau rā vau i te tahi atu ā parau, 'oia ho'i—'ua fa'aru'e rātou iāna, 'e 'aore ho'i rātou e fa'aro'o i te reo nō tāna ra mau a'ora'a.

8 'E inaha, e haere mai 'oia i te ono hānere matahiti i muri a'e i te tau i fa'aru'e ai tō'u metua tāne i Ieruselema, mai te au i te mau parau a te melahi ra.

9 'E nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a tō te ao nei, e ha'avā rātou iāna 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore ; nō reira, e tā'iri rātou iāna, 'e e fa'a'oroma'i 'oia ; 'e e tūpa'i rātou iāna, 'e e fa'a'oroma'i 'oia. 'Oia ia, e tūtuha rātou i ni'a iho iāna, 'e e fa'a'oroma'i 'oia, nō tōna aroha rahi 'e tōna fa'a'oroma'ira'a roa i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

10 'E 'o te Atua o tō tātou mau metua, tei arata'ihia mai mai 'Aiphiti mai ra, 'e mai te fa'atītira'a mai ra, 'e tei fa'aorahia ho'i e ana i roto i te mēdēbara ra ; 'oia ia, te Atua o Aberahama, 'e te Atua o Isaaka, 'e te Atua o Iakoba ho'i, 'e 'ua tu'u atu 'oia iāna iho i te tino ta'ata nei, mai tā te melahi i parau mai ra, i te rima o te feiā parauti'a 'ore ra, 'e 'ia fa'ateiteihia, mai tā Zenoka i parau ra, 'e 'ia fa'asātaurohia, mai tā Neuma i parau ra, 'e 'ia tanuhia i roto i te mēnema mai tā Zenosa i parau ra, 'o tāna i fa'a'ite mai nō ni'a i nā mahana pōiri e toru ra, 'o tē riro 'ei tāpa'o nō tōna pohera'a i te feiā e pārahi i te mau motu o te moana ra ; i ha'apa'o-mau-hia ho'i nō te feiā o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

- 11 'Ua nā 'ō mai ho'i te peropheta : 'E i taua mahana ra e tāho'o mau ai te Fatu te Atua i te mau 'utuāfare ato'a o 'Īserā'ela, te tahi pae i tōna ra reo, 'e e fāri'i ai rātou i tō rātou 'oa'oa rahi 'e te fa'aorara'a, nō tō rātou parauti'a rahi, 'e te tahi pae i te mau pātiri 'e te mau uira nō tōna ra mana, nā roto i te vero, 'e te auahi, 'e te au auahi, 'e te māhu pōiri, 'e te 'āmahamahara'a o te fenua, 'e te mau mou'a i te hōpoira'ahia i ni'a ra.
- 12 'E 'ia tupu mau teie mau mea pā'āto'a e ti'a ai, tē nā reira mai ra te peropheta ra 'o Zenosa. E 'āfāfā te mau mato o te fenua ; 'e nō te autā rahi o te fenua e fa'auruhia ai te mau ari'i o te mau motu o te moana ra e te Vārua o te Atua 'o tē tae mai i ni'a iho ia rātou, i te fa'ahitira'a ē : Tē mamae nei te Atua o te nātura.
- 13 'E nō te mau ta'ata e pārahi i Ierusalemā ra, tē nā 'ō mai ra te peropheta, e hāmani-'ino-hia rātou e te mau ta'ata ato'a, nō te mea i fa'asātauro rātou i te Atua o 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'ua fa'afāriu 'ē atu i tō rātou 'ā'au, ma te pāto'i i te mau tāpa'o, 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ūmehia, 'e te mana 'e te hanahana o te Atua o 'Īserā'ela ra.
- 14 'E nō te mea, 'ua fa'afāriu 'ē atu rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au, tē nā reira mai ra te peropheta, 'e 'ua 'ino'ino ho'i i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, e orihaere noa ia rātou i te tino nei, 'e e mou, 'e e riro ho'i rātou 'ei fa'a'inora'a 'e 'ei tau'āpara'ura'a, 'e e 'ino'inohia ho'i rātou i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a.
- 15 'Āre'a rā, tē nā 'ō mai ra te peropheta, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra 'aita rātou e fa'afāriu 'ē atu i tō rātou 'ā'au i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, 'ei reira e ha'amana'o 'oia i te mau fafaura'a tāna i fafau atu i tō rātou ra mau metua.
- 16 'Oia ia, 'ei reira e ha'amana'o ai 'oia i te mau motu o te moana ra ; 'oia ia, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, e ha'aputupu mai au i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela nō 'ō mai i nā tufa'a e maha o te ao nei, mai tei parauhia e te peropheta ra e Zenosa.
- 17 'Oia ia, e 'ite ho'i tō te ao ato'a nei i te fa'aorara'a nō 'ō mai i te Fatu ra, tē nā reira mai ra te peropheta ; 'e e ha'amaita'ihia te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 18 'E 'ua pāpa'i ho'i au, 'o Nephi, i teie mau mea i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, penei a'e 'o te fa'afāriu mai au ia rātou 'ia ha'amana'o i te Fatu i tō rātou ra Tāra'ehara.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

19 Nō reira, tē parau atu nei au i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o 'Īserā'ela, e mea ti'a roa 'āhiri ē roa'a ia rātou teie nei mau mea.

20 Inaha ho'i, tē vai nei tā'u mau 'ohipa i roto i te vārua, 'o tei ha'aparuparu mai iā'u nei, 'e 'ua paruparu ho'i tō'u mau ponaivi ato'a nō tō Ierusalemā ra ; nō te mea 'āhiri 'aita te Fatu i aroha mai iā'u, nō te fa'a'ite mai ia rātou iā'u nei, mai tāna ho'i i fa'a'ite atu i te mau peropheta i tahito ra, 'ua pohe ato'a ia vau.

21 'E 'ua fa'a'ite mau ho'i 'oia i te mau mea ato'a nō ni'a ia rātou i te mau peropheta i tahito ra ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a 'oia ia tātou i te mau peropheta e rave rahi ; nō reira, e mea ti'a roa ia mātou 'ia 'ite i te parau nō ni'a ia rātou nō te mea 'ua pāpa'ihia te reira i ni'a iho i te mau 'api veo ra.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'api'i atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i teie mau mea i tō'u ra mau taea'e ; 'e i muri a'era ho'i, 'ua tai'o atu ra vau ia rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi tei 'ō'otihia i ni'a iho i te mau 'api veo ra, 'ia 'ite rātou i te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu i te tahī atu mau fenua 'ē, i rotopū i te feiā i tahito ra.

23 'E 'ua tai'o atu vau ia rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi i pāpa'ihia i roto i te mau buka a Mose ra ; 'e nō te fa'afāriu māite mai ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi i te Fatu ra i tō rātou Tāra'ehara, 'ua tai'o atu vau ia rātou i te mau parau i pāpa'ihia e te peropheta ra e Isaia ; 'e 'ua fa'aaui ho'i au i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ato'a ia mātou, 'ia riro te reira 'ei maita'i 'e 'ei ha'api'ira'a ho'i nā mātou.

24 Nō reira 'ua parau atu ra vau ia rātou, nā 'ō atu ra : 'A fa'aro'o mai na 'outou i te mau parau a te peropheta, 'outou te hō'ē toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, te hō'ē 'āma'a i 'ōfati-'ē-hia mai ; 'a fa'aro'o mai na 'outou i te mau parau a te peropheta, tei pāpa'ihia i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o 'Īserā'ela, 'e tei fa'aaui ho'i i ni'a ia 'outou, 'ia roa'a ia 'outou te ti'aturi, 'e i tō 'outou ra mau taea'e nō roto mai 'outou i tāpu-'ē-hia mai ai ; 'ua nā reira te peropheta i te pāpa'i.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

1 Nephi 20

- 1 'A fa'aro'o mai na 'e 'a ha'apa'o mai na i teie, 'e te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, 'outou 'o tei ma'irihia te i'oa o 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'o tei haere mai i rāpae nā te mau pape mai o Iuda, 'e 'aore rā i rāpae nā te mau pape nō te bāpetizora'a, 'o tei tapu i te i'oa ra o te Fatu, 'e tei fa'ahiti i te Atua o 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'aore ho'i rātou i tapu ma te parau mau 'e ma te parauti'a.
- 2 'Āre'a rā, 'ua parau rātou ē nō te 'oire mo'a mai rātou, 'aita rā rātou i ti'aturi māite i te Atua o 'Īserā'ela, 'oia te Fatu Sabaota ; 'oia ia, 'o te Fatu Sabaota tōna ra i'oa.
- 3 Inaha, 'ua fa'a'ite atu vau i tei muta'a ihora mau mea e tupu mai te mātāmua mai ā ; 'e nō roto atu ho'i ia i tō'u nei vaha, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mau vau i te reira. 'Ua fa'a'ite 'oi'oi ho'i au i te reira ia rātou.
- 4 'E 'ua nā reira vau nō te mea 'ua 'ite au i tō 'oe 'eta'eta, e uaua 'āuri tō 'oe 'a'i, 'e tō 'oe rae, e rae veo ia.
- 5 'E 'ua parau atu vau ia 'oe mai te mātāmua mai ā ; 'e 'aita te reira i tupu, i fa'a'ite atu ai au ia 'oe ra ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu vau i te reira 'ia 'ore 'oe 'ia parau ē—Nā tā'u 'īdolo te reira i rave, 'e nā tā'u hōho'a i taraihia, e tā'u ti'i i fa'atōhia ra i fa'aue i te reira.
- 6 'Ua 'ite 'e 'ua fa'aro'o ho'i 'oe i taua mau mea ato'a ra ; 'e nō te aha ho'i 'aita 'oe e fa'a'ite i te reira ? 'E mai teie nei 'a fa'a'ite atu ai au ia 'oe i te parau 'āpī, 'o tei hunahia ra, 'e 'aita ā 'oe i 'ite i te reira.
- 7 'Ua ravehia te reira i teienei, e 'ere mai te mātāmua mai ; 'e 'aita ā ho'i 'oe i fa'aro'o i te reira i fa'a'itehia ai 'oe i te reira, 'o te parau ho'i 'oe ē—Inaha, 'ua 'ite na ho'i au i te reira.
- 8 'Oia ia, 'e 'aita ā ho'i 'oe i fa'aro'o, 'oia ia, 'e 'aita ā ho'i 'oe i 'ite ; 'oia ia, 'aita ā ho'i tō tari'a i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o mai taua taime mai ā ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e riro 'oe i te ha'avare, 'e tō 'oe ra i'oa 'o te ta'ata hara mai te 'ōpū mai ā.
- 9 'Āre'a rā, nō tō'u i'oa nei i tāpe'a ai au i tō'u riri, 'e nō te ha'amaita'i iā'u i fa'atāere ai au i te riri ia 'oe, 'ia 'ore au 'ia tāpū 'ē atu ia 'oe ra.
- 10 Inaha ho'i, i tāmā na vau ia 'oe, 'e i ha'amaita'i roa na ho'i au ia 'oe i roto i te umu o te 'ati ra.

1 Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

- 11 Nō'u iho, 'oia ia, nō'u iho, e nā reira ai au ; e 'ore ho'i au e fa'atī'a 'ia ha'avī'ivi'ihia tō'u nei i'oa, 'e e ore ho'i au e hōro'a atu i tō'u nei hanahana ia vetahi 'ē.
- 12 'A fa'aro'o mai na iā'u, e Iakoba, 'e 'o 'oe ho'i, e 'Īserā'ela, 'o tei mā'itihia e au ra, 'o vau nei ho'i teie ; 'o vau nei te mātāmeha'i ; 'e 'o vau nei ho'i te fa'ahope'a.
- 13 Nā tō'u nei rima ato'a i hāmani i te tumu o te fenua, 'e nā tō'u nei rima 'atau i hōhora i te mau ra'i. 'Ia pi'i au ia rātou, e ti'a 'āmui mai rātou.
- 14 'A ha'aputupu'āmui mai 'outou pā'āto'a, 'e 'a fa'aro'o mai ; 'o vai tō rotopū ia rātou 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i teie nei mau mea ia rātou ? I herehia na 'oia e te Fatu ; 'oia ia, e fa'atupu 'oia i tāna parau 'o tāna i fa'a'ite atu nā roto ia rātou ; 'e e rave 'oia i tōna hina'aro ia Babulonia, 'e e tae mai tōna rima i ni'a iho i te feiā nō Kaladaio ra.
- 15 'Oia ato'a, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : 'O vau nei te Fatu, 'oia ia, 'o vau nei tei parau atu ; 'oia ia, 'ua pi'i au iāna nō te fa'a'ite atu, nā'u 'oia i arata'i mai, 'e e riro tōna tere i te manuia.
- 16 'A ha'afātata mai na iā'u nei ; 'aita ho'i tā'u nei e parau huna ; mai te mātāmua mai ā, mai te 'anotau te reira i fa'ahitihia ai, i tohu na vau ; 'e nā te Fatu te Atua, 'e tōna Vārua, i tonono mai iā'u.
- 17 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, tō 'oe Tāra'ehara, Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei ; nā'u 'oia i tonono atu, nā'u nā te Fatu tō 'oe Atua 'o tei ha'api'i ia 'oe i te mea e maita'i ai 'oe ra, 'o tei arata'i ia 'oe nā te 'ē'a tā 'oe e haere, nā'u i rave i te reira.
- 18 'Āhiri 'oe i ha'apa'o mai i tā'u nei mau fa'auera'a—'ua riro ia tō 'oe hau mai te 'ānāvai ra, 'e tō 'oe parauti'a mai te mau 'are o te moana ra.
- 19 'E tō hua'ai ra, mai te one ia ; 'e tā tō 'ōpū e fānau ra, mai te mau 'iri'iri ia ; e 'ore ho'i tōna i'oa e 'ō'oti-'ē-hia 'e e 'ore ho'i e ha'amouhia i mua iā'u nei.
- 20 'A haere mai 'outou i rāpae i Babulonia, 'a ma'ue 'ē mai rotopū atu i te feiā nō Kaladaio ra ; 'a fa'a'ite i te reira ma te reo hīmene, 'a parau i te reira, 'e 'a puroro atu te reo i te hope'a o te fenua nei ; 'a parau 'outou ē : 'Ua fa'aora te Fatu i tōna tāvini ia Iakoba.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

- 21 'E 'aore ho'i rātou i po'ihā ; 'ua arata'i 'oia ia rātou
nā te mau fenua marō ; 'ua fa'atahe mai 'oia i te mau
pape nō roto mai i te mato nā rātou ; 'ua vāhi ato'a
'oia i te mato 'e 'ua puroro noa mai ra te mau pape.
- 22 'E noa atu 'ua rave noa 'oia i taua mau mea ato'a
ra, 'e 'ua rahi atu ā, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, 'aita roa tō
te feiā parauti'a 'ore e hau.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the
deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock
for them; he clave the rock also and the waters
gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and
greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto
the wicked.

1 Nephi 21

- 1 'E teie fa'ahou : 'A fa'aro'o mai na, 'outou e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'outou pā'āto'a 'o tei 'ōfene-'ē-hia e tei ti'avaruhia nō te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore a te mau 'orometua o tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'outou pā'āto'a tei 'ōfene-'ē-hia, 'e tei ha'apurara-'ē-hia, 'outou tō tō'u nei mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē. 'A fa'aro'o mai na iā'u e tō te mau motu, 'e 'a ha'apa'o mai e te mau ta'ata i te ātea 'ē ra ; 'ua pi'i te Fatu iā'u mai roto mai ā i te 'ōpū ; 'e mai te 'ōpū mai ā o tō'u metua vahine 'ua fa'ahiti 'oia i tō'u nei i'oa.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'ariro 'oia i tō'u nei vaha 'ei 'o'e 'oi ; 'ua huna 'oia iā'u i roto i te maru o tōna rima, 'e 'ua fa'ariro iā'u 'ei te'a 'ana'ana ; 'ua huna 'oia iā'u i roto i tāna vaira'a te'a.
- 3 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : 'O tō'u tāvini 'oe, e 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'ia 'oe na ho'i au nei e fa'ahanahanahia ai.
- 4 'Ua parau atu ra vau : Rohirohi faufa'a 'ore tō'u ; 'ua fa'ahope noa vau i tō'u pūai 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore ; nā te Fatu rā vau nei e ha'avā, 'e te utu'a o tā'u 'ohipa, tei tō'u Atua ia.
- 5 'E teienei, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu—'o tei fa'atupu mai iā'u mai te 'ōpū mai 'ei tāvini nōna, nō te fa'aho'i mai ia Iakoba iāna ra—noa atu ē 'aita ā 'Īserā'ela i ha'aputuputuhia mai, e fa'ahanahanahia rā vau i te aro o te Fatu, 'e 'o tō'u Atua ra tō'u pūai.
- 6 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : E mea iti tenā 'ia riro mai 'oe 'ei tāvini nō'u nei, nō te fa'ati'a mai i te mau 'ōpū nō Iakoba, 'e nō te fa'aho'i mai i tō 'Īserā'ela i fa'ahereherehia na. E hōro'a ato'a atu vau ia 'oe 'ei ti'arama nō te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'ei fa'aorara'a 'oe nō'u ē tae noa atu i te mau hope'a o te fenua nei.
- 7 Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, te Tāra'ehara o 'Īserā'ela, Tei Mo'a iāna ra, i tei vahavahahia e te ta'ata ra, i tei au-'ore-hia e tō te mau nūna'a ; i te tāvini o te mau tāvana ra : E 'ite atu te hui ari'i 'e e ti'a atu rātou i ni'a, 'e te mau tamaiti ari'i ato'a e ha'amori atu ia, nō te mea e mea ha'apa'o maita'i te Fatu.

1 Nephi 21

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

8 Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : 'Ua fa'aro'o vau ia 'oe i te taima au ra, 'e te mau motu o te moana ē, 'e i te mahana nō te fa'aorara'a 'ua tauturu vau ia 'oe ; 'e e fa'aherehere au ia 'oe, 'e e hōro'a atu vau i tō'u tāvini ia 'oe 'ei fafaura'a i te ta'ata nei, 'ia pāpū tō 'outou fa'aeara'a i te fenua nei, 'e 'ia ha'apārahilia 'outou i te mau vāhi i tu'ua i te ano ra.

9 'Ia parau atu 'oe i te feiā mau 'āuri : 'A haere i rāpae ; 'e tō roto i te pōiri ra : 'A fa'a'ite mai ia 'outou iho. E 'amu haere rātou nā te pae 'ē'a, 'e tā rātou 'āua 'amura'a tei ni'a ia i te mau vāhi teitei.

10 E 'ore rātou e po'ia, e 'ore ho'i e po'ihā ; e 'ore ho'i rātou e pohe i te ve'ave'a 'e te mahana ; nā tei aroha ia rātou e arata'i ia rātou, ē tae noa atu i te pape piha'a ra.

11 E hāmani ho'i au i te 'ē'a nā ni'a i te mau mou'a ato'a nō'u ra ; e fa'ateiteihia te mau 'ē'a teitei i ni'a.

12 'Ei reira, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, inaha, e haere mai ai teie mai te ātea roa mai ; 'e inaha, nō te 'apato'erau teie 'e nō te tō'o'a o te rā ra ; 'e teie nō te fenua ra nō Sinima.

13 'A hīmene, e te mau ra'i ē ; 'a 'oa'oa, e te fenua ē ; e fa'ati'ahia te 'āvae 'o tei pārahi i te hiti'a o te rā ra ; e te mau mou'a ē, 'a hīmene pūai mai na 'outou ; e 'ore ho'i rātou e tā'irihia ē a muri noa atu ; 'ua ha'amāhanahana mai te Fatu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e e aroha mai 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata i ro'ohia i te 'ati ra.

14 Inaha rā, i parau mai Ziona ē : 'Ua fa'aru'e mai te Fatu iā'u, 'e 'ua ha'amo'e tō'u Fatu iā'u—'āre'a rā e fa'a'ite mai 'oia ē, 'aita roa 'oia i nā reira.

15 E ha'amo'e ānei ho'i te hō'ē metua vahine i tāna 'aiū 'aru'aru, 'e 'aita atu ra e 'ite i te aroha i te tamaiti nō tōna iho ra 'ōpū ? 'Oia ia, e mo'e paha ia iāna, e'ita rā 'oe e mo'e iā'u, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.

16 Inaha, 'ua pāpa'i ha'amau vau ia 'oe i ni'a i tō'u nā 'apu rima ; 'e tē vai noa ra tō mau patu i mua iā'u nei.

17 E rū noa mai tā 'oe ra mau tamari'i i te feiā i pau ai 'oe ra ; 'e tei ha'amou ia 'oe ra, e reva 'ē atu ia nā roto ia 'oe ra.

18 'A nānā na i tō mata 'e 'a hi'o na ē 'ati noa a'e ; 'ua putuputu 'āmui ato'a mai teie ia rātou iho, 'e e haere mai rātou ia 'oe ra. 'E mai iā'u e ora nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, e fa'a'ahu 'oe ia 'oe 'e rātou ato'a ra, i te 'ahu 'una'una maīta'i ra ; 'e e ha'amau haere i ni'a ia 'oe ra mai te vahine fa'aipoipo ra.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

- 19 'E tō 'oe ho'i mau vāhi pau tei fa'aru'ehia ra, 'e tō 'oe fenua i ha'amouhia ra, e apiapi roa ia i te ta'ata i teienei ; 'e te feiā i fa'aapiapi ia 'oe ra, e hōpoi-'ē-hia ia i te ātea 'ē.
- 20 Te mau tamari'i e roa'a ia 'oe ra, 'a mo'e 'ē ai ia 'oe i tei muta'a ihora, e parau mai ā rātou i roto i tō 'oe ra pū tari'a : 'Ua riro teie nei vāhi 'ei vāhi piriha'o nō'u ; 'a hōro'a mai na i te hō'ē vāhi nō'u, 'ia ō vau 'ia pārahi.
- 21 E riro ho'i 'oe i te parau i roto i tō 'ā'au na ē : Nā vai tā'u mau tamari'i nei i fānau mai ? 'Ua 'ere ho'i au i tā'u mau tamari'i, 'e 'ua mo'emo'e noa a'era, e ta'ata fa'aru'ehia vau e te ti'avaruhia i terā vāhi 'e i terā vahi ? 'E nā vai teie i fa'a'amu ? Inaha, 'ua toe ihora vau ana'e ; 'e i hea ana'e ho'i rātou ?
- 22 Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu te Atua : Inaha, e fa'ateitei atu vau i tō'u nei rima i te mau 'Ētene ra, 'e e fa'ati'a ho'i i tō'u reva i te mau ta'ata ; 'e e hōpoi mai rātou i tā 'oe mau tamari'i tamāroa i roto i tō rātou mau rima, 'e tā 'oe mau tamari'i tamāhine i ni'a iho i tō rātou ra mau taponu.
- 23 E riro te mau ari'i tāne 'ei metua tāne fa'a'amu nō 'oe, 'e tā rātou mau ari'i vahine 'ei metua vahine fa'a'amu nō 'oe ; e tīpapa rātou i raro i mua ia 'oe, ma tō rātou mata i raro i te repo ra, 'e e mitimiti ho'i rātou i te repo i tō 'āvae ra ; 'e e 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, 'o te Fatu vau ; e 'ore ho'i rātou 'o tē tīai mai iā'u nei e ha'amā.
- 24 E noa'a mai ānei ho'i te mā'a haru i haruhia nō 'ō mai i te ta'ata pūai ra, 'e te feiā parauti'a i haruhia ra, e noa'a mai ānei 'ia haru ?
- 25 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : E haru-fa'ahou-hia te feiā tītī i riro na i te ta'ata pūai, 'e te mā'a haru i noa'a i te ta'ata rī'ari'a ra, e noa'a fa'ahou mai ia ; 'e e 'aro atu vau iāna 'o tē aro mai ia 'oe ra, 'e e fa'aora vau i tā 'oe ra mau tamari'i.
- 26 'E nā'u e fa'a'amu ia rātou 'o tei hāmani 'ino mai ia 'oe ra 'ia 'amu i tō rātou iho tino ; e ta'ero ho'i rātou i tō rātou iho toto mai te ta'ero uaina 'āpī ra ; 'e e 'ite ho'i te mau ta'ata ato'a ē, 'o vau, 'o te Fatu, tō 'oe Fa'aora 'e tō 'oe Tāra'ehara, Tei Pūai nō Iakoba nei.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

1 Nephi 22

- 1 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, 'ua tai'o atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i taua mau mea ra i 'ō'otihia i ni'a iho i te mau 'api veo ra, 'ua haere mai ra tō'u nā tua'ana iā'u, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra iā'u : E aha te aura'a o teie mau mea tā 'oe i tai'o iho nei ? Inaha, e 'itea ānei te reira nā roto i te mau mea pae vārua, 'o tē tupu mai te au i tā te vārua 'eiaha i tā te tino nei ?
- 2 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia rāua : Inaha, 'ua fa'a'itehia mai te reira i te peropheta nā roto i te reo o te Vārua ra ; 'e nā roto ho'i i te Vārua e fa'a'itehia mai ai i te mau peropheta te mau mea ato'a 'o tē tae mai i ni'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei mai te au i te ha'apa'ora'a o te tino nei.
- 3 Nō reira, te mau mea tā'u i tai'o iho nei, 'o te mau mea ia nō te pae tino nei 'e nō te pae vārua ato'a ho'i ; 'ua mana'ohia ē, tē vai ra te tau e ha'apurara-noa-hia ai te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela nā roto i te ao ato'a nei, 'e i rotopū ho'i i te mau nūna'a ato'a.
- 4 'E inaha, 'ua mo'e roa te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i tō Ierusalemā ra i teieni. 'Oia ia, i arata'i-'ē-hia te tahi pae rahi o te mau 'ōpū ato'a ; 'e 'ua ha'apurarahia rātou i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi i ni'a i te mau motu o te moana ; 'e 'aore tātou i 'ite i te vāhi i pārahia e rātou ra, 'āre'a rā 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua arata'i-'ē-hia atu rātou.
- 5 'E i muri a'e i tō rātou ra arata'i-'ē-ra'a-hia, 'ua tohuhia teie mau mea nō ni'a ia rātou, 'e nō ni'a ato'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ha'apurarahia 'e 'o tē 'āno'i-haere-hia i muri iho nō Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei ; 'e e fa'a'eta'eta ho'i rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au iāna ; nō reira, e ha'apurarahia rātou i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a 'e e 'ino'inohia ho'i rātou e te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 6 'Āre'a rā, 'ia oti rātou i te tauturuhia e te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'ia fa'atoro mai te Fatu i tōna rima i ni'a i te mau 'Ētene ra, 'e 'ia fa'ariro 'oia ia rātou 'ei reva, 'e 'ia hōpoiā tā rātou mau tamari'i i roto i tō rātou ra mau rima, 'e 'ia hōpoiā ho'i tā rātou mau tamāhine i ni'a i tō rātou ra mau taponō, inaha, nō te pae tino teie mau mea i parauhia iho nei ; 'o te reira ia te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu i tō tātou ra mau metua ; 'e tē fa'a'ite nei te reira nō te mau mea tē tupu ia tātou i te mau mahana e haere mai nei, 'e i tō tātou mau taea'e ho'i nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.

1 Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

7 'E 'o teie te aura'a, e tae mai te tau e ha'apurarahia ai 'e e 'āno'i-haere-hia te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o 'Īserā'ela ; 'ei reira e fa'atupu ai te Fatu te Atua i te tahi nūna'a mana rahi i rotopū i te mau 'Ētene ra ; 'oia ia, i ni'a i teie nei fenua ; 'e nā rātou ho'i e ha'apurara i tō tātou ra hua'ai.

8 'E 'ia ha'apurarahia tō tātou ra hua'ai, e fa'atupu te Fatu te Atua i te hō'ē 'ohipa māere rahi i rotopū i te mau 'Ētene ra, 'o tē riro ia 'ei mea faufa'a rahi roa i tō tātou ra hua'ai ; nō reira, 'ua fa'aauhia te reira i ni'a i tō rātou fa'a'amura'ahia 'e te mau 'Ētene ra 'e i te hōpoira'ahia i roto i tō rātou ra mau rima 'e i ni'a i tō rātou ra mau taponō.

9 E riro ato'a te reira 'ei mea faufa'a rahi i te mau 'Ētene ; e 'ere rā i te mau 'Ētene ana'e ra, i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a rā o 'Īserā'ela, i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te mau fafau'a a te Metua o te ra'i ia Aberahama, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : nā roto i tō 'oe hua'ai e ha'amaita'ihia ai te mau 'ōpū ato'a o te ao nei.

10 'E 'ua hina'aro vau, e tō'u nā tua'ana, 'ia 'ite 'ōrua ē, e 'ore te mau 'ōpū ato'a o te ao nei e ha'amaita'ihia, maori rā 'ia fa'a'ite mai 'oia i tōna rima i mua i te aro o te mau nūna'a ato'a ra.

11 Nō reira, e ha'amata te Fatu te Atua i te fa'a'ite mai i tōna rima i mua i te aro o te mau nūna'a ato'a, nō te hōro'a mai i tāna mau fafau'a 'e tāna 'evanelia ia rātou nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ra.

12 Nō reira, e arata'i fa'ahou mai 'oia ia rātou i rāpae i te fa'atītira'a, 'e e ha'aputupu-'āmui-hia rātou i tō rātou ra fenua 'āi'a ; 'e e arata'ihia rātou i rāpae i te vāhi mo'emo'e 'e i rāpae ho'i i te pōiri ; 'e e 'ite rātou ē, 'o te Fatu tō rātou Fa'aora 'e tō rātou Tāra'ehara, Tei Pūai i 'Īserā'ela nei.

13 E iri mai ho'i te toto o taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i ra, 'oia te vahine tai'ata o te ao ato'a nei, i ni'a i tō rātou ihora upo'o ; 'e e 'aro ho'i rātou i rotopū ia rātou iho ; 'e e ma'iri ho'i te 'o'e tei roto i tō rātou iho rima i ni'a i tō rātou ihora upo'o, 'e e ta'ero ho'i rātou i tō rātou ihora toto.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

- 14 'E te mau nūna'a ato'a e 'aro mai ia 'oe, e te 'utuāfare nō 'Īserā'ela, e riro ia rātou i te 'aro atu i te tahi 'e i te tahi, 'e e topa ho'i rātou i roto i te 'āpo'o tā rātou i 'ō nō te mārei i te mau ta'ata o te Fatu. 'E te mau ta'ata ato'a e tama'i mai ia Ziona ra e ha'amouhia ia rātou, e taua vahine tai'ata rahi ra, 'o tei ha'api'o i te mau 'ē'a ti'a o te Fatu ra, 'oia ia, taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i ra, e ma'iri ia 'oia i raro i te repo, 'e e pararī rahi 'oia.
- 15 Inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō mai ra te peropheta ē, tē fātata roa mai nei te tau e fa'a'orehia ai tō Sātane mana i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; tē fātata mai nei ho'i te tau e riro ai te feiā te'ote'o ato'a 'e te feiā i rave i te parauti'a 'ore, mai te 'aihere ; 'e e tae mai ho'i te mahana e 'ama ai rātou.
- 16 Tē fātata mai nei ho'i te tau e nini'ihia mai ai te 'ira'a o te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i ni'a i te mau tamari'i ato'a a te ta'ata nei ; nō te mea e 'ore 'oia e vaiiho noa atu i te feiā parauti'a 'ore 'ia ha'amou i te feiā parauti'a.
- 17 Nō reira, e fa'aora 'oia i te feiā parauti'a nā roto i tōna ra mana, noa atu e nini'ihia mai te 'ira'a nō tōna ra riri 'ū'ana, 'e e fa'aorahia te feiā parauti'a, 'e e ha'amouhia tō rātou ra mau 'enemi i te auahi. Nō reira, 'eiaha te feiā parauti'a e mata'u ; tē nā 'ō mai ra te peropheta, e fa'aorahia rātou noa atu e nā roto mai i te auahi.
- 18 Inaha, e tō'u nā tua'ana, tē parau atu nei au ia 'ōrua, 'ia fātata mai teie mau mea i te tupu e ti'a ai ; 'oia ia, 'ia tae mai te toto, 'e te auahi, 'e te māhu au auahi e ti'a ai ; 'e e mea ti'a roa ho'i 'ia tae mai i ni'a iho i te fenua nei ; 'e e tae mai ho'i te reira i ni'a iho i te ta'ata i te tino nei, mai te mea e fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei.
- 19 Inaha ho'i, e 'ore te feiā parauti'a e mou ; nō te mea e tae mai te tau e tāpū-'ē-hia atu ai te feiā ato'a e tama'i mai ia Ziona ra.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

20 E fa'aîneine ho'i te Fatu i te tahi 'ē'a nō tōna ra mau ta'ata, nō te fa'ati'a i te mau parau tā Mose i parau, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E fa'atupu te Fatu ra tō 'outou Atua i te hō'ē peropheta nō 'outou, mai iā'u nei te huru ; e fa'aro'o ho'i 'outou iāna i te mau mea ato'a tāna e parau mai ia 'outou ra. 'E a muri a'era ē, te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē 'ore e fa'aro'o i taua peropheta ra, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia rātou mai rotopū atu i te mau ta'ata.

21 'E teienei, tē fa'a'ite atu nei au, 'o Nephi, 'ia 'ōrua ē, 'o taua peropheta i parauhia e Mose ra, 'o Tei Mo'a ia i 'Īserā'ela nei ; nō reira e ha'avā 'oia ma te parauti'a.

22 'E 'eiaha te feiā parauti'a e mata'u, nō te mea e 'ore rātou e ha'amouhia. 'O te bāsileia rā o te diabolō 'o tē fa'ati'ahia i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e 'ua fa'ati'ahia taua bāsileia ra i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i te tino nei—

23 Tē fātata roa mai nei ho'i te tau, 'o te mau 'ēkālesia ato'a i fa'ati'ahia 'ia roa'a te moni, 'e tei fa'ati'ahia 'ia roa'a te mana i ni'a iho i te ta'ata nei, 'e tei fa'ati'ahia 'ia riro 'ei mea auhia e te mata o tō te ao nei, 'e tei 'imi i te mau hina'aro vi'ivi'i o te tino nei 'e te mau mea o teie nei ao, 'e 'ia rave ho'i i te mau huru 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'o rātou ato'a tei roto i te bāsileia o te diabolō ra, e mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia mata'u, 'e 'ia rurutaina, 'e 'ia 'āueue ; 'o rātou ho'i tē ti'a 'ia fa'aha'eha'ahia i raro i te repo ; 'e 'o rātou ho'i tē ti'a 'ia 'ama mai te 'aihere ra ; 'e 'ua au ho'i te reira i te mau parau a te peropheta ra.

24 Tē fātata roa mai nei te tau e arata'ihia ai te feiā parauti'a mai te mau fanau'a pua'atoro fa'a'amu ra, 'e i reira Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela e fa'atere ari'i ai ma te pūai, 'e te mana, 'e te hanahana rahi.

25 E ha'aputupu mai 'oia i tāna ra mau tamari'i mai nā tufa'a e maha o te ao nei ; 'e nāna ho'i i tai'o i tāna ra mau māmoe, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i rātou iāna ; 'e e riro ho'i 'ei nana hō'ē 'e 'ei tīa'i hō'ē ; 'e nāna ho'i tāna mau māmoe e fa'a'amu ; 'e i roto ho'i iāna e roa'a ia rātou te mā'a.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

- 26 'E nō te parauti'a o tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ua 'ore tō Sātane mana ; 'e nō reira, 'aita 'oia e ti'a 'ia tu'uhia nō te ārea e rave rahi matahiti te maoro ; 'aita ho'i tōna e mana i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata, nō te mea tē pārahi ra rātou ma te parauti'a, 'e tē ari'i nei ho'i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei.
- 27 'E i teieni, inaha, tē parau atu nei au, 'o Nephi, 'ia 'ōrua ē, e tupu mai iho ā teie mau mea mai te au i tō te tino nei.
- 28 Inaha rā, e pārahi hau tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i roto i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, mai te mea e tātarahapa rātou.
- 29 'E i teieni, tē fa'aoti nei au, 'o Nephi ; nō te mea 'aita vau i hina'aro 'ia parau ā nō ni'a i teie nei mau mea.
- 30 Nō reira, e tō'u nā tua'ana, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia feruri 'ōrua ē, e parau mau te mau mea i pāpa'ihia i ni'a iho i te mau 'api veo ra ; 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū mai nei te reira ē, e mea ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.
- 31 Nō reira, 'eiaha 'ōrua e mana'o ē, 'o vau e tō'u metua tāne ana'e tei fa'a'ite pāpū mai, 'e tei ha'api'i mai ho'i i te reira. Nō reira, mai te mea e ha'apa'o maita'i 'ōrua i te mau fa'auera'a ma te fa'aitoito noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e fa'aorahia ia 'ōrua i te mahana hope'a ra. 'E 'oia mau roa ia. 'Āmene.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

Te Buka Piti a Nephi

Tē 'ā'amu nō te pobera'a o Lebi. Tē mārō ra nā tua'ana o Nephi iāna. 'Ua fa'aara mai te Fatu ia Nephi 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara. Tōna ra mau haere'a i roto te mēdēbara, 'e e rave rabi atu ā mau mea.

2 Nephi 1

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era vau, 'o Nephi, i te ha'api'i atu i tō'u ra nā tua'ana, 'ua parau ato'a atu ra tō mātou metua tāne, 'o Lehi, i te mau mea e rave rahi ia rāua, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite fa'ahou atu ra i te mau mea rahi tā te Fatu i rave nō rāua, i te arata'ira'a mai ia rāua i rāpae i te fenua nō Ierusalemā ra.
- 2 'Ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rāua nō ni'a i tā rāua mau mārōra'a i ni'a i te moana, 'e i te aroha ho'i o te Atua i te fa'aorara'a ia rāua, i 'ore ai rāua i horomi'ihia e te moana ra.
- 3 'E 'ua parau ato'a atu ra 'oia ia rāua nō ni'a i te fenua i fafauhia, 'o tei roa'a ia rāua—'e te aroha rahi o te Fatu ra, 'oia i fa'aara mai ia mātou 'ia ma'ue 'ē atu i te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō ra 'oia, 'ua 'ite au i te hō'ē 'ōrama, 'e i roto i te reira 'ua 'ite au ē 'ua ha'amouhia 'o Ierusalemā ; 'e 'āhiri ho'i tātou i pārahi noa i Ierusalemā, 'ua mou ato'a ia tātou.
- 5 'Āre'a rā, tē nā 'ō ra 'oia ē, noa atu ā tō tātou nei mau 'ati, 'ua roa'a ia tātou te hō'ē fenua i fafauhia, te hō'ē fenua i hau i te maīta'i i te mau fenua ato'a ra ; te hō'ē fenua tā te Fatu te Atua i fafau mai iā'u 'ei fenua 'āi'a nō tō'u ra hua'ai. 'Oia ia, 'ua fafau mai te Fatu i teie nei fenua iā'u, 'e nō tā'u mau tamari'i ē a muri noa atu, 'e nō rātou ato'a ho'i 'o tē arata'ihia mai mai te tahi atu ā mau fenua e te rima o te Fatu ra.
- 6 Nō reira, e tohu vau, 'o Lehi, mai te au i te mau fa'aurura'a a te Vārua i roto iā'u nei, e 'ore roa te hō'ē ta'ata e tae mai i teie nei fenua, maori rā 'o tē arata'ihia mai rātou e te rima o te Fatu.

The Second Book of Nephi

An account of the death of Lebi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Nō reira, 'ua ha'amo'ahia teie nei fenua nō rātou 'o tāna e arata'i mai. 'E mai te mea e tāvini rātou iāna mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a tāna i hōro'a mai, e riro ia 'ei fenua ti'amā nō rātou ; 'e nō reira e 'ore roa rātou e topa i roto i te fa'atītira'a ; 'e mai te mea ē, e fa'atītīhia rātou, nō tā rātou ia mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'e 'ia rahi te 'ohipa 'ī'ino i te tupura'a, e 'anatemahia ia te fenua nō rātou ; 'e i te parauti'a rā, e ha'amaita'ihia ia ē a muri noa atu.

8 'E inaha, e mea ti'a 'ia vai 'itea-'ore-hia teie nei fenua i te mau nūna'a 'ē ra ; inaha ho'i, 'o te apiapi te fenua i te mau nūna'a 'ē, 'e e 'ere ia tātou i te fenua 'āi'a.

9 Nō reira, 'ua fāri'i au, 'o Lehi, i te hō'ē fafaura'a 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, mai te mea e ha'apa'o rātou 'o te arata'ihia mai e te Fatu te Atua mai te fenua nō Ierusalemā mai, i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a, e manuia ia rātou i ni'a i teie nei fenua ; 'e e fa'ata'a-'ē-hia atu rātou i te tahi atu mau nūna'a, 'ia vai noa teie nei fenua nō rātou iho. 'E 'ia ha'apa'o māite rātou i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a, e ha'amaita'ihia ia rātou i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'e 'aore roa ho'i ia e ta'ata e hāmani 'ino mai ia rātou, 'e 'aore rā e rave 'ē atu i tō rātou ra fenua 'āi'a ; 'e e pārahi hau noa rātou ē a muri noa atu.

10 Inaha rā, 'ia tae i te tau e paruparu ai tō rātou fa'aro'o, i muri iho i tō rātou fāri'ira'a i te mau ha'amaita'ira'a e rave rahi nō 'ō mai i te rima o te Fatu ra—'e i fāri'i na ho'i i te 'ite nō ni'a i te hāmanira'a o te ao nei, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e i te 'itera'a i te mau 'ohipa faufa'a rahi 'e te māere a te Fatu mai te hāmanira'a mai ā o te ao nei ; 'e i muri a'e ho'i i te fāri'ira'a i te mana nō te rave i te mau mea ato'a nā roto i te fa'aro'o ; 'e te fāri'ira'a i te mau fa'auera'a ato'a mai te mātāmua mai ā, 'e tō rātou arata'ira'ahia mai e tōna ra aroha fāito 'ore i teie fenua maita'i i fafauhia ra—inaha, tē parau nei au ē, 'ia tae i te mahana e pāto'i ai rātou i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela ra, i te Mesia mau ra, tō rātou Tāra'ehara 'e tō rātou Atua, inaha, tei ni'a ia ia rātou te mau ha'avāra'a a te ta'ata tei roto iāna ra te parauti'a.

11 'Oia ia, e arata'i mai 'oia i te tahi atu mau nūna'a ia rātou ra, 'e e hōro'a atu 'oia i te mana ia rātou, 'e e rave 'ē atu 'oia i tō rātou ra fenua 'āi'a, 'e e ha'apurarahia rātou 'e e ha'amouhia ho'i.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

- 12 'Oia iā, mai terā u'i ē tae atu i terā u'i e tupu te mau ha'amani'ira'a toto 'e te mau 'ati e rave rahi i rotopū ia rātou ; nō reira, e tā'u nā tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'ōrua ; 'oia iā, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia fa'aro'o māite 'ōrua i tā'u nei mau parau.
- 13 'A ara mai na 'ōrua ; 'a ara mai i te vare'a ta'oto rahi, 'oia iā, i te vare'a ta'oto o hade ra, 'e 'a ueue atu i tenā mau fifi i tā'amuhia i ni'a ia 'ōrua na, 'oia ho'i te mau fifi i tā'amuhia i ni'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e nō reira 'ua 'āfa'i-tīti-hia atu rātou i raro i te 'ābuso mure 'ore nō te mamae 'e te oto.
- 14 'A ara ! 'E 'a ti'a mai na mai raro mai i te repo, 'e 'a fa'aro'o mai na i te mau parau a te hō'ē metua rurutaina, 'e 'ua fātata te mau melo o tōna tino i te tu'uhia i raro i te mēnema to'eto'e 'e te māniania 'ore ra, i te vāhi e 'ore roa e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia ho'i mai i te ora nei ; 'e i roto i nā mahana ri'i e haere atu vau nā te 'ē'a e haerehia e tō te ao ato'a nei.
- 15 Inaha rā, nā te Fatu i fa'aora mai i tō'u vārua i hade ra ; 'ua 'ite atu vau i tōna ra hanahana, 'e 'ua ha'a'ati-noa-hia vau ē a muri noa atu e nā rima o tōna ra aroha.
- 16 'E 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'ōrua 'e 'ia ha'apa'o ho'i i te mau ture 'e te mau parau a te Fatu ra ; inaha, 'o tā tō'u vārua teie i onono mai te mātāmua mai ā.
- 17 'Ua teimaha ho'i tō'u nei 'ā'au i te 'oto i terā tau 'e terā tau, i mata'u ho'i au, nō te 'eta'eta o tō 'ōrua 'ā'au, 'o te fa'airi mai te Fatu ra o te Atua i te 'ira'a o tōna ra riri 'ū'ana i ni'a iho ia 'ōrua na, 'e 'a tāpū-'ē-hia ai 'e 'a ha'amouhia ai 'ōrua ē a muri noa atu.
- 18 'E 'aore rā, 'o te tae mai te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho ia 'ōrua nō te ārea e rave rahi mau u'i te maoro ; e ro'ohia ai 'ōrua i te tama'i, 'e te o'e, 'e 'ino'inohia ai, 'e e arata'ihia ai i te hina'aro 'e te mana fa'atīti o te diabolō ra.
- 19 E au nā tamaiti ē, 'eiaha teie mau mea 'ia tae mai i ni'a iho ia 'ōrua, 'ia riro rā 'ōrua 'ei nā ta'ata mā'itihia 'e te herehia ho'i e te Fatu ra. Inaha rā, 'ia tupu tōna ra hina'aro ; e mea parauti'a tōna ato'a ra mau haere'a ē a muri noa atu.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

- 20 'E 'ua oti i te parauhia e ana ē : Mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u nei mau fa'auera'a, e manuia ia 'outou i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'ia 'ore rā 'outou e ha'apa'o i tā'u nei mau fa'auera'a, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia 'outou i tō'u nei aro.
- 21 'E i teieni, 'ia 'oa'oa tō'u 'ā'au nei ia 'ōrua, 'e 'ia reva atu tō'u vārua mai te ao atu nei ma te poupou ia 'ōrua, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i au 'ia ha'ama'irihia i raro i te mēnema ma te mihi 'e te 'oto, 'e tēnāna, 'a ti'a mai na mai raro mai i te repo, e au nā tamaiti ē, 'e 'a fa'ariro ia 'ōrua 'ei tāne mau, 'e 'a 'ōpua ma te mana'o hō'ē 'e te 'ā'au hō'ē, 'ia tāhō'ēhia i roto i te mau mea ato'a, 'ia 'ore 'ōrua 'ia tae i raro i te fa'atītira'a.
- 22 'Ia 'ore 'ōrua 'ia 'anatemahia i te 'anatemara'a rahi ; 'e 'oia ato'a, 'ia 'ore 'ōrua e fa'atae i te riri o te Atua parauti'a i ni'a iho ia 'ōrua, ē tae atu ai i te ha'amoura'a, 'oia ia, i te ha'amoura'a mure 'ore o te vārua 'e te tino ato'a ho'i.
- 23 'A ara, e tā'u nā tamaiti ; 'a 'ahu na i te ha'ana tama'i o te parauti'a. 'A ueue atu i te mau fifi i ruru'uhia ai 'ōrua na, 'e 'a haere mai i rāpae i te pōiri, 'e 'a ti'a mai i ni'a mai te repo mai.
- 24 'Eiaha e mārō fa'ahou atu i tō 'ōrua teina, 'o tei 'ite i te mau mea hanahana, 'e tei ha'apa'o ho'i i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu mai te taimē i fa'aru'e ai tātou i Ierusalemā ; 'e 'o tei riro na 'ei mauha'a i roto i te rima o te Atua, nō te arata'ira'a mai ia tātou i te fenua i parauhia ra ; 'āhiri 'aita 'oia, 'ua pohe roa ia tātou nō te po'ia i roto i te mēdēbara ra ; 'āre'a rā, i tītau 'ōrua i te taparahi iāna, 'oia ia, 'ua fa'a'oroma'i 'oia i te 'ati e rave rahi nā roto ia 'ōrua na.
- 25 'E tē mata'u rahi nei au 'e tē rurutaina nei ho'i, 'o te roa'a-fa'ahou-hia 'oia i te 'ati ia 'ōrua na ; inaha ho'i, i pari na 'ōrua iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē, 'ua tītau 'oia i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i ni'a ia 'ōrua ; 'ua 'ite rā vau ē, 'aita 'oia i tītau i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i ni'a ia 'ōrua, 'ua tītau rā 'oia i te hanahana o te Atua, 'e te ora mure 'ore ho'i nō 'ōrua.

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

26 'E nō tāna ra parau pāpū ia 'ōrua, i amuamu ai 'ōrua. Tē parau mai na 'ōrua ē, i parau 'ū'ana mai na 'oia ; 'e te parau na ho'i 'ōrua ē, i riri nā 'oia ia 'ōrua ; inaha rā, te 'ū'ana o tāna ra parau, 'o te 'ū'ana ia o te mana nō te parau a te Atua tei roto iāna ra ; 'e 'o tei parauhia e 'ōrua ē, e riri, 'o te parau mau ia mai tei roto i te Atua ra ; 'aore i ti'a iāna i te tāpe'a iāna iho, 'ua fa'a'ite mata'u 'ore mai rā 'oia i tā 'ōrua mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.

27 'E e mea ti'a roa 'ia vai te mana o te Atua i roto iāna, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'auē atu ia 'ōrua 'e 'ia ha'apa'o 'ōrua e ti'a ai. Inaha rā, e 'ere ia 'oia iho, 'o te Vārua rā ia o te Fatu tei roto iāna, i hāmama ai tōna vaha nō te parau atu, 'e i 'ore ai i ti'a iāna i te tāpe'a i te reira.

28 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti e Lamana, 'e 'oia ato'a e Lemuela 'e e Samu, 'e tā'u ato'a mau tamaiti 'oia ho'i te mau tamaiti a Isema'ela, inaha, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau parau a Nephi, e 'ore roa ia 'outou e pohe. 'E mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tāna parau, e vaiiho ia vau i te hō'ē ha'amaita'ira'a i ni'a ia 'outou, 'oia ia, 'o tā'u ha'amaita'ira'a mātāmua.

29 'Ia 'ore rā 'outou e fa'aro'o iāna, e rave 'ē atu ia vau i tā'u ha'amaita'ira'a mātāmua, 'oia ia, tā'u iho ha'amaita'ira'a, 'e e nini'ihia te reira i ni'a iho iāna.

30 'E i teienei, e Zorama, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na : Inaha, 'o te tāvini 'oe nō Labana ; 'āre'a rā 'ua arata'ihia mai 'oe mai te fenua nō Ieruselema mai, 'e 'ua 'ite au e hoa mau 'oe nō tā'u nei tamaiti, 'o Nephi, ē a muri noa atu.

31 Nō reira, nō tō 'oe ha'apa'o maita'i, e ha'amaita'ihia tō 'oe hua'ai 'e tōna ato'a ho'i hua'ai ; 'e e ora maoro rātou ma te manuia maita'i i ni'a i teie fenua nei ; 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē mea e fa'a'ino 'e 'aore rā e ha'ape'ape'a i tō rātou orara'a manuia maita'i i ni'a i teie fenua nei ē a muri noa atu, maori rā 'o te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i rotopū ia rātou.

32 Nō reira, mai te mea e ha'apa'o maita'i 'oe i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu, 'ua ha'amo'ahia ia teie nei fenua e te Fatu 'ei ha'apūra'a nō tō 'oe ra hua'ai 'e te hua'ai ato'a ho'i o tā'u ra tamaiti.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

2 Nephi 2

- 1 'E i teieni, e Iakoba, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na : 'O 'oe tā'u matahiapo i te mahana o tō'u ra 'ati i te mēdēbara ra. 'E inaha, i tō 'oe tamari'ira'a 'ua fāri'i 'oe i te mau 'ati 'e te 'oto rahi nō te 'ohipa 'i'ino a tō 'oe ra nā taea'e.
- 2 'Āre'a rā, e Iakoba, tā'u matahiapo i te mēdēbara, 'ua 'ite 'oe i te mana rahi o te Atua ; 'e e ha'amo'a 'oia i tō 'oe mau 'ati 'ei maita'i nō 'oe.
- 3 Nō reira, e ha'amaita'ihia tō 'oe vārua, 'e e pārahi 'oe ma te ora maita'i i pīha'i iho i tō 'oe ra taea'e, ia Nephi ; 'e e fa'a'ohipa 'oe i tō 'oe ra mau mahana nō te tāvini i tō 'oe Atua. Nō reira, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua fa'aorahia 'oe, nō te parauti'a o tō 'oe ra Tāra'ehara ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, i te 'ira'a mau o te tau e haere mai ai 'oia nō te 'āfa'i mai i te fa'aorara'a o te ta'ata nei.
- 4 'E 'ua ite 'oe i tōna hanahana i tō 'oe 'āpīra'a ; nō reira, 'ua ha'amaita'ihia 'oe mai ia rātou 'o tāna e poihere i te tino nei ; nō te mea hō'ē ā tō te Vārua huru i nanahi ra, i teie nei mahana, ē a muri noa atu. 'E 'ua fa'aimeinehia te 'ē'a e ora ai te ta'ata nei i te hi'ara'a, 'e e mea hōro'a-noa-hia te fa'aorara'a.
- 5 'E 'ua nava'i tō te ta'ata nei ha'api'ira'ahia, 'ia 'ite rātou i te maita'i 'e te 'ino. 'E 'ua hōro'ahia mai te ture i te ta'ata nei. 'E nā roto i te ture 'aita roa e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia vai hara 'ore noa ; 'oia ho'i, nā roto i te ture 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia te ta'ata nei. 'Oia ia, nā roto i te ture pae tino nei 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia rātou ; 'e 'oia ato'a, nā roto i te ture pae vārua 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia rātou i te mea maita'i, 'e 'ua riro 'ei mea 'ati ē a muri noa atu.
- 6 Nō reira, e tae mai te fa'aorara'a nā roto i te Mesia Mo'a ; 'e 'ua 'i ho'i 'oia i te maita'i 'e te parau mau.
- 7 Inaha, 'ua pūpū 'oia iāna iho 'ei tusia nō te hara, nō te fa'atupu i te mau tītaura'a a te ture i ni'a ia rātou ato'a 'o tei fāri'i i te 'ā'au 'oto 'e te vārua tātarahapa ; 'e 'aita roa te mau tītaura'a a te ture e tae mai i ni'a ia vetahi 'ē atu ā.

2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my firstborn in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

8 Nō reira, e mea faufa'a roa 'ia fa'a'itehia teie nei mau mea i tō te ao nei, 'ia 'ite rātou ē, e 'ore roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia pārahi i mua i te aro o te Atua, maori rā nā roto i te mau maita'i rahi, 'e te aroha, 'e te maita'i o te Mesia Mo'a, 'o tē hōro'a i tōna ora i te tino nei, 'e 'o tē rave fa'ahou i te reira nā roto i te mana o te Vārua, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'atupu i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o tei pohe, 'e 'o 'oia te ti'a mātāmua mai.

9 Nō reira, 'o te oho mātāmua 'oia nā te Atua, i te mea e riro 'oia 'ei ārai nō te mau tamari'i ato'a a te ta'ata nei ; 'e e fa'aorahia rātou 'o tei ti'aturi iāna ra.

10 'E nō te mea e riro 'oia 'ei ārai nō te mau ta'ata ato'a, e hope te mau ta'ata ato'a i te haere mai i te Atua ; nō reira, e ti'a rātou i mua i tōna aro, 'ia ha'avāhia e ana mai te au i te parau mau 'e te huru mo'a i roto iāna ra. Nō reira, tei te tītaura'a a te ture tā Tei Mo'a i hōro'a mai ra, e tāho'ohia ai te ta'ata i te utu'a i fa'aauhia ra, e taua utu'a i fa'aauhia ra, e mea 'ē roa te reira i te 'oa'oa i fa'aauhia ra, nō te fa'ati'a roa i te mau tītaura'a nō te tāra'ehara—

11 'E e mea ti'a roa ho'i 'ia vai nā pae e piti i te mau mea ato'a ra. 'Āhiri 'aita te reira, e tā'u matahiapo i te mēdēbara ē, 'aore ia e ti'a 'ia fa'atupu i te parauti'a, 'e 'aore ato'a i te 'ohipa 'īino, 'e 'aore ato'a i te parau mo'a 'e te mamae, 'e 'aore ato'a i te maita'i 'e te 'ino. Nō reira, e mea ti'a roa ia i te mau mea ato'a 'ia riro 'ei mea hō'ē ; nō reira, 'āhiri ho'i e mea hō'ē ana'e ra, e mea pohe ia, 'aita ho'i tō te reira e ora, 'aita ho'i e pohe, e 'ere ia i te mea tāhuti noa, e 'ere ato'a i te mea tāhuti 'ore, 'aita tōna e 'oa'oa, 'aita e mamae, 'aita e 'ite, 'aita ato'a e 'ite 'ore.

12 Nō reira, 'ua hāmani-mau-hia ia te reira nō te hō'ē mea faufa'a 'ore ; nō reira 'āhiri mai te reira, 'aore ia e faufa'a nō te hope'a o tōna ra hāmanira'ahia. Nō reira, 'ua fa'a'ore mau ia te reira i te pa'ari o te Atua 'e tāna ra mau 'ōpuara'a mure 'ore ; 'e 'oia ato'a te mana, 'e te aroha, 'e te parauti'a o te Atua.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

13 E mai te mea e parau mai 'oe ē, aita e ture, tē parau ato'a ra ia 'oe ē, 'aita e hara. 'E mai te mea e parau mai 'oe ē, 'aita e hara, tē parau ato'a ra ia 'oe ē, 'aita e parauti'a. 'E mai te mea ē 'aita e parauti'a, 'aita ato'a ia e 'oa'oa. 'E mai te mea 'aita e parauti'a 'e 'aita e 'oa'oa, 'aita ato'a ia e utu'a 'e 'aita ato'a e mamae. 'E mai te mea 'aita teie nei mau mea, 'aita ato'a ia e Atua. 'E mai te mea 'aita e Atua, 'aita ato'a ia tātou 'e 'aita ato'a te fenua nei ; nō te mea 'āhiri ē 'aita e Atua 'aita ia te hō'ē a'e mea i hāmanihia, 'aita ia e mea 'ia 'ohipa, 'e 'ia 'ohipahia ; nō reira'ia 'ore ia te mau mea ato'a e ti'a ai.

14 'E i teienei, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa ē, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou i teie nei mau mea 'ei faufa'a 'e 'ei ha'api'ira'a ho'i nō 'outou ; nō te mea tē vai nei te Atua, 'e nāna i hāmani i te mau mea ato'a ra, i te mau ra'i 'e te fenua nei, 'e te mau mea ato'a i roto ra, te mau mea 'ia 'ohipa, 'e te mau mea 'ia 'ohipahia.

15 'E 'ia fa'atupu i tāna ra mau 'ōpuara'a mure 'ore i te hope'a o te ta'ata nei, i muri a'e i tōna hāmanira'a i tō tātou nā metua mātāmua, 'e te mau 'ānimara o te fenua, 'e te mau manu o te reva, 'oia ho'i te mau mea ato'a i hāmanihia ra, i tītauhia ho'i 'ia vai nā pae e piti ; 'oia ho'i te mā'a i rāhuihia ra i te tahi pae, 'e i te tahi pae, 'o te tumu rā'au ia nō te ora ; e mea monamona te tahi, 'e e mea 'ava'ava te tahi.

16 Nō reira, 'ua fa'ati'a te Fatu te Atua i te ta'ata nei 'ia rave mai te au i tōna iho hina'aro. Nō reira, 'aita e ti'a i te ta'ata nei 'ia rave mai te au i tōna iho hina'aro, maori rā 'ua hia'ai 'oia i te tahi 'e 'aore rā i te tahi atu.

17 'E nō te mau mea tā'u i tai'o ra, 'ua mana'o ihora vau, 'o Lehi ē, 'ua ma'iri mai te hō'ē melahi a te Atua mai te ra'i mai, mai te au i tei pāpa'ihia ra ; nō reira, 'ua riro mai 'oia 'ei diabolō, 'e 'ua tītau ho'i 'oia i te mea 'ino i mua i te aro o te Atua.

18 'E nō te mea 'ua ma'iri mai 'oia mai te ra'i mai, 'e 'ua ro'ohia 'oia i te 'ati ē a muri noa atu, 'ua tītau ato'a atu ra 'oia 'ia mamae te mau ta'ata ato'a. Nō reira, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia, 'oia ho'i taua 'ōphī tahito ra, 'o te diabolō, 'oia te metua o te mau parau ha'avare ato'a ra, ia Eva i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'A 'amu i te mā'a o te rā'au i rāhuihia ra, 'e 'aita 'oe e pohe, e riro rā 'oe mai te Atua ra te huru, i te itera'a i te maita'i 'e te 'ino.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

19 'E i muri a'e i tō Adamu rāua 'o Eva 'amura'a i te mā'a o te rā'au i rāhuihia ra, 'ua ti'avaruhia rāua i rāpae'au i te 'ō i Edene, nō te fa'a'apu i te fenua.

20 'E 'ua fānau mai rāua i te mau tamari'i, 'oia ia, 'oia ho'i te 'utuāfare o te ao ato'a nei.

21 'E 'ua ha'amaorohia te pu'e mahana o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, mai te au i te hina'aro o te Atua, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia tātarahapa 'a vai ai rātou i te tino nei ; nō reira, 'ua riro tō rātou orara'a 'ei tāmatarā'a, 'e 'ua ha'amaorohia tō rātou pu'e mahana mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a tā te Fatu te Atua i hōro'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei. 'Ua hōro'a mai ho'i 'oia i te fa'auera'a 'ia tātarahapa te mau ta'ata ato'a e ti'a ai ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ho'i 'oia i te mau ta'ata ē 'ua mo'e rātou, nō te ture i 'ōfatihia e tō rātou ra nā metua.

22 'E i teienei, inaha, 'āhiri 'aita Adamu i 'ōfati i te ture 'aita ato'a ia 'oia e hi'a, e vai noa rā ia 'oia i roto i te 'ō i Edene. 'E te mau mea ato'a i hāmanihia na e mea ti'a ia 'ia vai noa i roto i tō rātou huru mau mai te au i tō rātou hāmanira'ahia i muta'a ihora ; 'e 'ia vai noa te reira ē a muri noa atu e ti'a ai, 'e 'aore e hope'a.

23 'E 'aita i ti'a ia rāua 'ia fānau i te tamari'i i reira, nō reira i vai ai rā rāua ma te hara 'ore, 'e 'aore o rāua e 'oa'oa, nō te mea 'aita rāua i 'ite i te mamae ; 'aore a rāua e ha'apa'ora'a i tei maita'i, nō te mea 'aita rāua i 'ite i te hara.

24 Inaha rā, 'ua ravehia te mau mea ato'a nā roto i te pa'ari nōna 'o tei 'ite i te mau mea ato'a.

25 'Ua hi'a Adamu 'ia vai te mau ta'ata, 'e tē vai nei te mau ta'ata 'ia noa'a tō rātou 'oa'oa.

26 'E e haere mai te Mesia i te 'īra'a mau o te tau, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'aora i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata i te hi'ara'a ra. 'E nō te mea 'ua fa'aorahia rātou i te hi'ara'a, 'ua riro ia rātou 'ei mea ti'amā ē a muri noa atu, i te 'ītera'a i te maita'i 'e te 'ino ; 'ia rave rātou i tei au i tō rātou iho hina'aro, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ha'avīhia, maori rā nā roto i te fa'au'ara'a a te ture i te mahana rahi 'e te hope'a ra, mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a tā te Atua i hōro'a mai.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

- 27 Nō reira, e mea ti'amā te mau ta'ata i te pae tino nei ; 'e 'ua hōro'ahia mai te mau mea ato'a ia rātou 'o tē tano nō te ta'ata nei. 'E e ti'amā tō rātou 'ia mā'iti i te ti'amāra'a 'e te ora mure 'ore, nā roto i te Ārai rahi o te ta'ata ato'a, 'e 'aore rā 'ia mā'iti i te fa'atūira'a 'e te pohe, mai te au i te fa'atūira'a 'e te mana o te diabolō ; nō te mea tē tītau nei 'oia 'ia ro'ohia te mau ta'ata ato'a i te 'oto mai iāna ihora.
- 28 'E i teienei, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ti'aturi 'outou i taua Ārai rahi ra, 'e 'ia ha'apa'o ho'i i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a rahi ; 'e 'ia auraro maita'i i tāna ra mau parau, 'e 'ia mā'iti i te ora mure 'ore, mai te au i te hina'aro o tōna ra Vārua Mo'a.
- 29 'E 'eiaha e mā'iti i te pohe mure 'ore, mai te au i tō te tino hina'aro 'e te 'ino i roto i te reira, 'o tei hōro'a i te mana i te vārua o te diabolō 'ia faatīti 'e 'ia arata'i ho'i ia 'outou i raro i hade, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'atere ia 'outou i roto i tōna ihora bāsileia.
- 30 'Ua parau atu vau i teie mau parau ri'i ia 'outou ato'a, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa, i te mau mahana hope'a nō tō'u nei orara'a i te tino nei ; 'e 'ua mā'iti ho'i au i te pae maita'i, mai te au i te mau parau a te peropheta ra. 'E 'aita atu tō'u e hina'aro, maori rā 'o te maita'i mure 'ore nō tō 'outou vārua. 'Āmene.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

2 Nephi 3

- 1 'E i teienei, e parau atu vau ia 'oe na, e Iosepha, e tā'u tamaiti hope'a i fānau mai. 'Ua fānauhia mai 'oe i te mēdēbara nō tō'u ra mau 'ati; 'oia ia, i te mau mahana nō tō'u ra 'oto rahi roa, i fānau mai ai tō metua vahine ia 'oe na.
- 2 'E 'ia ha'amo'a ato'a te Fatu i teie nei fenua, i te fenua i hau i te maita'i, nō 'oe, 'ei pārahira'a nō 'oe 'e nō tō 'oe ra hua'ai, 'e nō tō 'oe ra mau tua'ana, 'ei ha'apūra'a nō 'oe ē a muri noa atu, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'oe i te mau fa'auera'a a Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei.
- 3 'E i teienei, e Iosepha, e tā'u tamaiti hope'a i fānau mai, 'o tā'u i hōpoi mai mai roto mai i te mēdēbara nō tō'u ra mau 'ati, 'ia ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu ia 'oe ē a muri noa atu, 'e 'aore roa ho'i tō 'oe hua'ai e ha'amou-roa-hia.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, e hua'ai 'oe nō tō'u nei tau'upu; 'e e hua'ai ho'i au nō Iosepha 'o tei hōpoi-tīti-hia i 'Aiphiti. 'E e mau fafaura'a rahi ho'i tā te Fatu i fafau atu ia Iosepha ra.
- 5 Nō reira, 'ua ite mau Iosepha i tō tātou nei mahana. 'E 'ua roa'a iāna te fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'oia ho'i, nā roto i te hua'ai o tōna ra tau'upu e fa'atupu mai ai te Fatu te Atua i te hō'ē 'āma'a parauti'a nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela; 'eiaha te Mesia, 'o te tahi 'āma'a rā i 'ōfati-'ē-hia mai, 'ia ha'amana'ohia rā rātou i roto i te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'e e fa'a'itehia mai te Mesia ia rātou i te mau mahana hope'a ra, nā roto i te vārua nō te mana, i te 'āfa'ira'a mai ia rātou i rāpae mai roto mai i te pōiri ē tae atu ai i te māmarama—'oia ia, i rāpae i te pōiri ta'ota'o 'e te fa'atītira'a ē tae atu ai i te ti'amāra'a.
- 6 'Ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai ho'i Iosepha, i te nā-ō-ra'a mai ē: E fa'aineine te Fatu ra tō'u Atua i te hō'ē hi'o, 'e e riro 'oia 'ei hi'o maita'i nō te hua'ai o tō'u ra tau'upu.

2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

7 'Oia iā, 'ua parau iho ā Iosepha ē : 'Ua parau mai te Fatu iā'u : E fa'aineine au i te hō'ē hi'o maita'i nō roto mai i te hua'ai o tō tau'upu ; 'e e mana'o-maita'i-hia 'oia i rotopū i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu. 'E e hōro'a atu vau i te hō'ē fa'auera'a iāna 'ia rave i te tahi 'ohipa nō te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu, tōna mau taea'e, 'o tē riro 'ei mea faufa'a rahi roa nō rātou, i te fa'a'itera'a atu ia rātou i te 'ite nō te mau fafaura'a o tā'u i fafau atu i tō 'oe ra mau metua.

8 'E e hōro'a atu vau i te hō'ē fa'auera'a iāna ē, 'eiaha roa 'oia e rave i te tahi noa atu 'ohipa, maori rā te 'ohipa 'o tā'u e fa'aue atu iāna. 'E e fa'ariro vau iāna 'ei mea rahi i mua i tō'u ra mata ; nō te mea e rave 'oia i tā'u 'ohipa.

9 'E e riro 'oia 'ei ta'ata rahi mai ia Mose ra, 'o tā'u i parau ra ē, e fa'aineine au iāna nō 'outou, nō te fa'aora i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.

10 'E e fa'aineine ho'i au ia Mose, 'e nāna e arata'i mai i tō 'oe ra mau ta'ata i rāpae i te fenua ra nō 'Aiphiti.

11 'E e fa'aineine ho'i au i te hō'ē hi'o nō roto mai i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu ; 'e e hōro'a atu ho'i au i te mana iāna nō te fa'atae i tā'u parau i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu—'eiaha nō te fa'atae i tā'u ana'e parau, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, nō te fa'afāriu ato'a mai rā ia rātou i tā'u nei parau 'o tei tae a'ena atu i rotopū ia rātou.

12 Nō reira, e pāpa'i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu ; 'e e pāpa'i ho'i te hua'ai o tō Iuda ra tau'upu, 'e tā te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu e pāpa'i, 'e tā te hua'ai ho'i o tō Iuda ra tau'upu e pāpa'i, e tupu 'āpiti iā nō te fa'a'orera'a i te mau ha'api'ira'a hape 'e te fa'a'orera'a i te mau mārōra'a, 'e nō te fa'atupura'a i te hau i rotopū i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu, 'e nō te arata'ira'a ia rātou i te 'ite nō ni'a i tō rātou ra mau metua i te mau mahana hope'a, 'e i te 'ite ho'i nō ni'a i tā'u ra mau fafaura'a, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.

13 'E mai roto mai i te paruparu e ha'apūaihia 'oia i te mahana e ha'amatahia ai tā'u 'ohipa i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ato'a, i te fa'aho'ira'a ia 'outou, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

- 14 'E 'ua tohu Iosepha, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Inaha, e ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu i taua hi'o ra ; 'e 'o rātou 'o tē 'imi 'ia ha'amou iāna e ha'amouhia ia ; nō te mea e tupu te fafaura'a i roa'a mai iā'u nō 'ō mai i te Fatu ra, nō ni'a i te hua'ai o tō'u ra tau'upu. Inaha, 'ua 'ite pāpū vau i te tupura'a o teie nei fafaura'a.
- 15 'E e ma'irihia tōna ra i'oa i tō'u nei i'oa ; 'e i te i'oa ato'a ho'i o tōna ra metua tāne. 'E e riro 'oia mai iā'u nei te huru ; 'e nā te mea tā te Fatu e fa'atupu nā roto i tōna rima, nā roto i te mana o te Fatu, e arata'i i tō'u ra mau ta'ata i te fa'aorara'a.
- 16 'Oia ia, 'ua tohu mai ra Iosepha, nā 'ō mai ra : 'Ua 'ite pāpū vau i te reira, mai tā'u ato'a i 'ite i te fafaura'a ia Mose ra ; nō te mea 'ua parau mai te Fatu iā'u, e fa'aherehere au i tō 'oe hua'ai ē a muri noa atu.
- 17 'E 'ua parau mai te Fatu i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E fa'aineine au ia Mose, 'e e hōro'a atu vau i te mana iāna i roto i te hō'ē rā'au ; 'e e hōro'a ato'a atu vau i te pa'ari iāna 'ia pāpa'i i te parau. Terā rā 'aita vau e ha'amatarā i tōna vaha 'ia parau rahi, 'e 'aita ato'a vau e fa'ariro iāna 'ei ta'ata pūai i te paraparau. 'Āre'a rā e pāpa'i au i tā'u ra ture iāna i tō'u iho rima ; 'e e fa'aineine ato'a vau i te hō'ē auvaha nōna.
- 18 'E 'ua parau ato'a mai ra te Fatu iā'u : E fa'aineine au i te hō'ē hi'o nō roto i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu ; 'e e fa'aineine ato'a vau i te hō'ē auvaha nōna. 'E inaha, nā'u, nā'u nei e hōro'a atu i te mana iāna 'ia pāpa'i i te parau a te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu, i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu ; 'e nā te auvaha nō tō 'oe ra tau'upu e fa'a'ite i te reira.
- 19 'E te mau parau tāna e pāpa'i, 'o te mau parau ia 'o tei au i tō'u nei pa'ari, 'ia fa'a'itehia atu i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu. 'E e riro ho'i te reira mai te mea ra ē, i pi'i na te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu ia rātou mai raro mai i te repo ra ; 'ua 'ite ho'i au i tō rātou ra fa'aro'o.
- 20 'E e pi'i mai rātou mai raro mai i te repo ra ; 'oia ia, i te parau tātarahapa i tō rātou ra mau taea'e, ē tae noa atu 'ua ma'iri e rave rahi u'i i muri ia rātou. 'E a muri a'era, e parare tā rātou pi'i mai te au i te pāpū o tā rātou ra mau parau.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simplicity of their words.

- 21 'E nō tō rātou fa'aro'o, e tae atu tā rātou mau parau nā roto atu i tō'u nei vaha i tō rātou ra mau taea'e, 'oia ho'i i te hua'ai o tō 'oe ra tau'upu ; 'e nā roto i tō rātou fa'aro'o e fa'a'eta'eta ai au i tā rātou ra mau parau paruparu, i te ha'amana'ora'a i tā'u fafaura'a i fafau atu i tō 'oe ra mau metua.
- 22 'E i teienei, inaha, e tā'u tamaiti e Iosepha, i nā reira mai tō'u ra tupuna i te 'anotau tahito i te tohu mai.
- 23 Nō reira, nō teie nei fafaura'a e ha'amaita'ihia ai 'oe ; e 'ore roa ho'i tō 'oe ra hua'ai e ha'amouhia, nō te mea e ha'apa'o rātou i te mau parau a te buka.
- 24 E ti'a mai ho'i te hō'ē ta'ata mana rahi i rotopū ia rātou, 'o tē rave i te 'ohipa maita'i roa, nā roto i te parau e nā roto ho'i i te 'ohipa, 'e e riro 'oia 'ei mauha'a i roto i te rima o te Atua, ma te fa'aro'o rahi, nō te rave i te mau 'ohipa 'ūmere-roa-hia, 'e nō te rave i te mea rahi i mua i te mata o te Atua, i te fa'aho'ira'a mai i te mau mea e rave rahi i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e i te hua'ai ho'i o tō 'oe ra mau taea'e.
- 25 'E i teienei, e ao tō 'oe, e Iosepha. Inaha, e mea 'āpī 'oe ; nō reira a ha'apa'o i te mau parau a tō tua'ana ra, 'o Nephi, 'e e roa'a tā 'oe mai te au i te mau parau tā'u i parau ra. 'A ha'amana'o i te mau parau a tō metua tāne nei, 'o tei fātata i te pohe. 'Āmene.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

2 Nephi 4

- 1 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au, 'o Nephi, nō ni'a i te mau tohura'a tā tō'u metua tāne i parau mai nō ni'a ia Iosepha, 'o tei hōpoihiā i 'Aiphiti ra.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, 'ua tohu mau 'oia nō ni'a i tōna hua'ai tā'āto'a. 'E te mau tohura'a tāna i pāpa'i ra, 'aita ia e mau tohura'a i hau atu i te rahi i teie. 'E 'ua tohu 'oia nō ni'a ia mātou 'e tō mātou ra mau u'i a muri a'e ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia te reira i ni'a i te mau 'api veo.
- 3 Nō reira, 'ia fa'aoti a'era tō'u metua tāne i tāna paraura'a nō ni'a i te mau tohura'a a Iosepha, 'ua pī'i atu ra 'oia i te mau tamari'i a Lamana, 'oia ho'i tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e tāna mau tamari'i tamāhine, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāhine, 'outou e te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine a tā'u ra matahiapo, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia fa'aro'o mai tō 'outou tari'a i tā'u nei mau parau.
- 4 Nō te mea 'ua parau mai te Fatu te Atua ē : Mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u nei mau fa'auera'a, e manuia ia 'outou i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou e ha'apa'o i tā'u nei mau fa'auera'a, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia 'outou mai mua atu i tō'u nei aro.
- 5 Inaha rā, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāhine, 'aita roa e ti'a iā'u 'ia haere i raro i tō'u mēnema, maori rā 'ia vaiiho vau i te hō'ē ha'amaita'ira'a i ni'a iho ia 'outou ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite au ē, mai te mea e ha'api'ihia 'outou i te 'ē'a e au 'ia haere ra, e 'ore roa ia 'outou e fa'aru'e i te reira.
- 6 Nō reira, mai te mea e 'anatemahia 'outou, inaha, e vaiiho vau i tā'u ha'amaita'ira'a i ni'a ia 'outou, 'ia rave-'ē-hia taua 'anatemala ra mai ni'a mai ia 'outou, 'e 'ia tāho'ohia i ni'a i te upo'o o tō 'outou ra mau metua.
- 7 Nō reira, nō tā'u ra ha'amaita'ira'a, e 'ore roa te Fatu te Atua e fa'ati'a 'ia mou 'outou ; nō reira, e aroha mai 'oia ia 'outou e tō 'outou hua'ai ē a muri noa atu.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era tō'u metua tāne i tāna paraura'a i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine a Lamana ra, 'ua fa'auē atu ra 'oia 'ia arata'ihia mai te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine a Lemuela i mua iāna.

2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

- 9 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
Inaha, e tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e tā'u mau
tamari'i tamāhine, 'outou e te mau tamari'i tamāroa
'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine nō tā'u ra tamaiti piti ;
inaha, tē vaiiho nei au i te hō'ē ā ha'amaita'ira'a i ni'a
ia 'outou mai tā'u i vaiiho i ni'a i te mau tamari'i
tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine ho'i a Lamana
ra ; nō reira, e 'ore 'outou e ha'amouhia ; i te hope'a
rā e ha'amaita'ihia tō 'outou hua'ai.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era tō'u metua tāne i
tāna paraura'a ia rātou, inaha, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i
te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Isema'ela, 'oia ia, 'e i tōna
'utuāfare ato'a.
- 11 'E 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i te paraura'a ia rātou ra, 'ua
parau atu ra 'oia ia Samu, nā 'ō atu ra : E ao tō 'oe 'e
tō 'oe hua'ai ato'a, e fāri'i ho'i 'oe i te fenua mai tō 'oe
ra taea'e ia Nephi. 'E e tai'ohia tō 'oe hua'ai i rotopū i
tōna ra hua'ai ; 'e e riro tō 'oe huru mai tō tō 'oe ra
taea'e, 'e tō 'oe hua'ai mai tōna hua'ai ; 'e e
ha'amaita'ihia 'oe i tō 'oe ato'a ra mau mahana.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era tō'u metua tāne, 'o
Lehi, i tāna paraura'a i tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a, mai te
au i te hina'aro o tōna 'ā'au 'e tō te Vārua o te Fatu i
roto iāna ; 'ua ruhiruhiā ihora 'oia. 'E i muri a'era,
'ua pohe ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua tanuhia ihora.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope a'era nā mahana ri'i i muri
a'e i tōna pohera'a, 'ua riri mai ra Lamana rāua 'o
Lemuela 'e te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Isema'ela iā'u,
nō te mau parau a'o a te Fatu.
- 14 Nō te mea 'ua tītauhia vau, 'o Nephi, 'ia parau atu
ia rātou mai te au i tāna ra parau ; 'e i parau na ho'i
au i te mau mea e rave rahi ia rātou, 'e i nā reira na
ho'i tō'u metua tāne, hou tōna ra pohera'a ; 'e 'ua
pāpa'ihia e rave rahi o teie nei mau parau i ni'a i te
tahi atu o tā'u ra mau 'api ; e 'ā'amu ho'i te pae rahi o
teie mau mea i pāpa'ihia i ni'a i te tahi atu o tā'u ra
mau 'api.
- 15 'E i ni'a iho i teie nei mau 'api tē pāpa'i nei au i te
mau mea i roto i tō'u nei vārua, 'e te mau pāpa'ira'a
mo'a e rave rahi i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ra.
Nō te mea tē 'oa'oa nei tō'u vārua i te mau pāpa'ira'a
mo'a, 'e tē feruri hōhonu nei tō'u 'ā'au i te reira, 'e tē
pāpa'i nei ho'i au i te reira 'ei ha'api'ira'a 'e 'ei faufa'a
nā tā'u ra mau tamari'i.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons
and my daughters, who are the sons and the daugh-
ters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the
same blessing which I left unto the sons and daugh-
ters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be
destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made
an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto
the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto
them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou,
and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto
thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered
with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy
brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou
shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spo-
ken unto all his household, according to the feelings
of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in
him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died,
and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his
death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael
were angry with me because of the admonitions of
the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them,
according to his word; for I had spoken many things
unto them, and also my father, before his death;
many of which sayings are written upon mine other
plates; for a more history part are written upon mine
other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and
many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the
plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scrip-
tures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth
them for the learning and the profit of my children.

16 Inaha, tē 'oa'oa nei tō'u vārua i te mau mea a te Fatu ; 'e tē feruri tāmāu noa nei ā tō'u 'ā'au i te mau mea tā'u i hi'o 'e tā'u i fa'aro'o.

17 'Āre'a rā, noa atu ā te maīta'i rahi o te Fatu i te fa'a'itera'a mai iā'u i tāna mau 'ohipa rahi 'e te māere, 'ua fa'ahiti pūai atu tō'u 'ā'au i teie mau parau : 'Auē ho'i au 'o te ta'ata 'ati rahi ē ! 'Oia ia, tē 'oto nei tō'u 'ā'au nō tō'u nei tino ; tē mihi nei ho'i tō'u vārua nō tā'u mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.

18 'Ua ha'a'ati-haere-hia vau, nā roto i te mau fa'ahemara'a 'e te mau hara 'o tē ha'affi-'ōhie-nei iā'u.

19 'E 'ia hina'aro vau 'ia 'oa'oa, tē autā ra tō'u 'ā'au nō tā'u mau hara ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua 'ite au iāna tā'u i ti'aturi.

20 'O tō'u Atua tō'u tauturu ; 'ua arata'i mai 'oia iā'u nā roto i tō'u ra mau 'ati i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua fa'aherehere 'oia iā'u i ni'a i te mau pape nō te moana hōhonu ra.

21 'Ua fa'a'ī 'oia iā'u i tōna ra aroha, ē tae noa atu i te paruparura'a tō'u nei tino.

22 'Ua fa'aha'amā 'oia i tō'u ra mau 'enemi, i rurutaina ai rātou i mua iā'u.

23 Inaha, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oia i tā'u ra ti'aorora'a i te ao, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te 'ite iā'u nā roto i te 'ōrama i te ru'i ra.

24 'E i te ao 'ua ti'aoro 'ū'ana atu vau i te pure i mua iāna ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'ateitei atu vau i tō'u reo i ni'a ; 'e 'ua pou mai ra te mau melahi 'e 'ua poihere mai ra iā'u.

25 'E 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu ra tō'u tino nā ni'a i te mau pererau o tōna Vārua i ni'a i te mau mou'a teitei roa ra. 'E 'ua 'ite atu ra tō'u mata i te mau mea rahi ; 'oia ia, rahi atu i tei ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia hi'o ; nō reira 'ua fa'auehia vau, 'eiaha vau e pāpa'i i te reira.

26 'E i teienei, mai te mea ē 'ua 'ite au i te mau mea rarahi ; mai te mea ē i roto i tō te Fatu aroha rahi i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei 'ua haere mai 'oia e tāmāhanahana i te ta'ata nei nā roto i tōna aroha rahi, nō te aha ia tō'u 'ā'au e horuhoru ai, e tō'u vārua e pārahi noa ai i roto i te peho o te 'oto, 'e tō'u tino e ripā ai, 'e tō'u ho'i pūai e tō'aru'aru ai, nō tō'u ra mau 'ati ?

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

- 27 'E nō te aha vau e hōro'a ai iā'u i te hara, nō tō'u nei tino ? 'Oia ia, nō te aha vau e fa'ati'a ai iā'u 'ia topa i roto i te mau fa'ahemara'a, 'ia ti'a i te diabolo 'ia fāri'i i te hō'ē vāhi i roto i tō'u 'ā'au nō te fa'a'ore i tō'u hau, 'e nō te ha'ape'ape'a i tō'u vārua ? Nō te aha vau e riri ai i tō'u 'enemi ?
- 28 'A ara, e tō'u vārua ! 'Eiaha e ha'aparuparu i roto i te hara. 'A 'oa'oa, e tō'u 'ā'au, 'e 'eiaha e hō atu i te vāhi nō te 'enemi o tō'u vārua.
- 29 'Eiaha e riri fa'ahou nō tō'u ra mau 'enemi. 'Eiaha tō'u pūai e tō'aru'aru nō tō'u mau 'ati.
- 30 'A 'oa'oa, e tō'u 'ā'au, 'e 'a ti'aoro atu i te Fatu, 'e 'a parau atu ē : E te Fatu, e 'āruē au ia 'oe ē a muri noa atu ; 'oia ia, e 'oa'oa tō'u vārua ia 'oe, e tō'u Atua, 'e te papa nō tō'u ra fa'aorara'a.
- 31 E te Fatu, e fa'aora mai ānei 'oe i tō'u nei vārua ? E fa'aora mai ānei 'oe iā'u i te rima o tō'u ra mau 'enemi ? E fa'arurutaina mai ānei 'oe iā'u i te hi'ora'a atu i te hara ?
- 32 'Ia 'ōpani-noa-hia te mau 'ūputa o hade i mua iā'u, nō te mea 'ua 'oto tō'u 'ā'au 'e 'ua tātarahapa tō'u vārua ! E te Fatu, 'eiaha 'oe e 'ōpani i te mau 'ūputa o tō'oe ra parauti'a i mua iā'u nei, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia haere nā te 'ē'a o te peho ha'eha'a ra, 'e 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia haere māite nā te arati'a pāpū !
- 33 E te Fatu, 'a ha'a'ati noa mai 'oe iā'u i te 'ahu o tō'oe ra parauti'a ! E te Fatu, 'a fa'aaineine 'oe i te rāve'a e ora ai au i mua i tō'u ra mau 'enemi ! 'A fa'atitī'aifaro 'oe i tō'u 'ē'a i mua iā'u ! 'Eiaha 'oe e tu'u i te 'ōfa'i turorira'a i ni'a i tō'u 'ē'a—'āre'a rā, 'ia ha'apāpū 'oe i tō'u 'ē'a i mua iā'u, 'eiaha 'oe e fa'aapiapi i tō'u 'ē'a, i te mau 'ē'a rā o tō'u ra 'enemi.
- 34 E te Fatu, 'ua ti'aturi au ia 'oe, 'e e ti'aturi au ia 'oe ē a muri noa atu. E 'ore au e tu'u i tō'u ti'aturira'a i roto i te rima tāhuti nei ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite au ē, e 'anatemahia 'oia 'o tē tu'u i tōna ti'aturira'a i roto i te rima tāhuti nei. 'Oia ia, e 'anatemahia 'oia 'o tē tu'u i tōna ti'aturira'a i te ta'ata nei, 'e 'aore rā 'o tē fa'ariro i tō te tino nei 'ei rima nōna.

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

35 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite au ē, e hōro'a noa mai te Atua i te ta'ata 'o tē ani atu. 'Oia ia, e hōro'a mai tō'u Atua iā'u, 'ia ani au ma te hape 'ore ; nō reira, e fa'ateitei atu vau i tō'u reo ia 'oe ; 'oia ia, e ti'aoro atu vau ia 'oe, e tō'u Atua, te papa nō tō'u ra parauti'a. Inaha, e tae atu tō'u reo i ni'a ia 'oe ē a muri noa atu, e tō'u papa e tō'u Atua mure 'ore. 'Āmene.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

2 Nephi 5

- 1 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro rahi atu ra vau, 'o Nephi, i te Fatu ra i tō'u Atua, nō te riri o tō'u ra nā tua'ana iā'u.
- 2 Inaha rā, 'ua tupu rahi roa a'era tō rāua riri iā'u, 'e 'ua tītau ihora rāua 'ia taparahi iā'u.
- 3 'Oia ia, 'ua amuamu rāua iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Tē mana'o nei tō taua teina 'ia fa'atere ia taua ; 'e 'ua fāri'i tātou i te mau 'ati rahi nā roto iāna ; nō reira, e taparahi taua iāna, 'ia 'ore tātou e 'ati-fa'ahou-hia i tāna ra mau parau. Inaha ho'i, 'eiaha roa taua e fa'ati'a iāna 'ia riro 'ei fa'atere i ni'a ia taua ; nō te mea tei ia taua, nā tua'ana, te fa'atere i teie nei mau ta'ata.
- 4 I teienei, e'ita vau e pāpa'i i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api i te mau parau ato'a tā rāua i amuamu mai iā'u. 'Āre'a rā, 'ua ti'a roa ho'i iā'u 'ia parau ē, 'ua tītau rāua 'ia taparahi iā'u.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aara mai ra te Fatu iā'u, 'ia fa'aru'e mai au, 'o Nephi, 'ia rātou 'e 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tē pe'e mai iā'u ra.
- 6 Nō reira, i muri a'era, 'ua rave mai au, 'o Nephi, i tō'u 'utuāfare, 'e 'ia Zorama ato'a 'e tōna 'utuāfare, 'e 'ia Samu, tō'u ra tua'ana, 'e tōna 'utuāfare, 'e ia Iakoba 'e Iosepha, tō'u nā teina, 'e tō'u ato'a mau tuahine, 'e 'ia rātou ato'a 'o tei hina'aro 'ia pe'e mai iā'u ra. 'E 'o rātou ato'a ho'i 'o tei pe'e mai iā'u ra, 'o te mau ta'ata ia 'o tei ti'aturi i te mau parau fa'aara 'e te mau heheura'a a te Atua ; nō reira, 'ua fa'aro'o mai rātou i tā'u ra mau parau.
- 7 'E 'ua rave ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa 'e te mau mea tei mara'a ia mātou, 'e 'ua haere atu ra mātou i roto i te mēdēbara nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro. 'E i muri iho i tō mātou terera'a nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa.
- 8 'E 'ua hina'aro tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'ia ma'iri mātou i te i'oa o taua vāhi ra ia Nephi ; nō reira, 'ua ma'iri ihora mātou i te i'oa o te reira 'o Nephi.
- 9 'E 'o rātou ato'a tei pe'e mai iā'u ra, 'ua 'ōpua ihora rātou 'ia ma'iri i tō rātou i'oa, te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

10 'E 'ua ha'apa'o ihora mātou i te mau parau, 'e te mau ture, 'e te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu i roto i te mau mea ato'a, mai te au i te ture a Mose ra.

11 'E tei pīha'i iho te Fatu ia mātou ; 'e 'ua manuia roa mātou ; 'e 'ua ueue ihora mātou i te huero, 'e 'ua 'ō'oti atu ra ma te 'auhune rahi. 'E 'ua ha'amata atu ra mātou i te fa'a'amu i te mau nana māmoe, 'e te mau nana pua'atoro, 'e te mau huru 'ānimara ato'a.

12 'E 'ua 'āfa'i ho'i au, 'o Nephi, i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ra, 'e te pōpō ato'a, 'oia ho'i, te 'avei'a i hāmanihia e te rima o te Fatu nā tō'u ra metua tāne, mai te au i tei pāpa'ihia ra.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata mātou i te manuia rahi, 'e i te tupu rahi i ni'a i te fenua.

14 'E 'ua rave ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te 'o'e a Labana ra, 'e 'ua hāmani ihora i te tahi atu ā mau 'o'e mai taua 'o'e ra te huru, penei a'e 'o te haere mai te mau ta'ata i parauhia te mau 'āti Lamana nō te ha'amou ia mātou ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite au i tō rātou 'ino'ino iā'u 'e i tā'u mau tamari'i, 'e 'ia rātou ato'a tei parauhia e mau ta'ata nō'u ra.

15 'E 'ua ha'api'i au i tō'u mau ta'ata 'ia hāmani i te mau fare, 'e 'ia rave ho'i i te mau huru 'ohipa ato'a i te rā'au, 'e i te 'āuri, 'e i te kapa, 'e i te veo, 'e i te 'āuri pa'ari, 'e i te 'auro, 'e i te 'ārio, 'e i te mau huru 'ōfa'i metalo faufa'a roa e rave rahi i 'itea i taua fenua ra.

16 'E 'ua patu ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i te hō'ē hiero ; 'e 'ua patu vau i te reira mai te au i te hōho'a o te hiero o Solomona ra, 'aita rā te reira i hāmanihia i te mau mea tao'a rahi ; nō te mea 'aita te reira mau mea i 'itea i ni'a i te fenua, nō reira, 'aita te reira e ti'a 'ia hāmanihia mai te hiero o Solomona ra. 'Āre'a rā te huru nō te hāmanira'a 'ua au ia i te hiero o Solomona ; 'e te huru 'ohipa i ravehia, e mea nehenehe roa ia.

17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aitoito ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'ia rave pūai i te 'ohipa, 'e 'ia fa'a'ohipa i tō rātou rima.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hina'aro ihora rātou 'ia riro vau 'ei ari'i nō rātou. 'Aita rā vau, 'o Nephi, i hina'aro 'ia roa'a tō rātou ari'i ; 'ua rave itoito rā vau i te 'ohipa nō rātou mai te au i tō'u mana.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

- 19 'E inaha, 'ua tupu mau atu ra tā te Fatu i parau mai i tō'u ra mau tua'ana, 'o te parau nō rātou 'o tē nā 'ō ra ē, e roiro vau 'ei fa'atere 'e 'ei 'orometua nō rātou. Nō reira, i roiro na vau 'ei fa'atere 'e 'ei 'orometua nō rātou, mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu, ē tae roa mai i te tau i tūtau mai ai rātou 'ia taparahi iā'u.
- 20 Nō reira, 'ua tupu mau atu ra tā te Fatu i parau mai iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'ia 'ore rātou e fa'aro'o i tā 'oe ra mau parau, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia rātou mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu. 'E inaha, 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia rātou mai mua atu i tōna ra aro.
- 21 'E 'ua fa'atae mai 'oia i te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'oia ia, i te 'anatemara'a rahi, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino. Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au iāna, i roiro ai rātou mai te 'ōfa'i 'arā i te pa'ari ; 'e nō te mea ho'i, e 'iri 'uo'uo tō rātou, e mau ta'ata nehenehe maita'i 'e te au-maita'i-hia, nō reira 'ua fa'ariro te Fatu te Atua i tō rātou 'iri 'ei mea 'ere'ere 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia hina'arohia e tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 22 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu te Atua : E fa'ariro vau ia rātou 'ei mau ta'ata hā'iri'iri i tō 'oe ra mau ta'ata, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 23 E 'anatemahia te hua'ai o te ta'ata e 'āmui atu i tō rātou hua'ai ; 'e e 'anatemahia rātou i taua ato'a ra 'anatemara'a. 'E nā te Fatu te reira i parau mai, 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia ia.
- 24 'E nō te 'anatemara'a i tu'uhia i ni'a iho ia rātou 'ua roiro rātou 'ei mau ta'ata fa'atau, 'e 'ua 'ī ho'i rātou i te peu 'ino 'e te peu ha'avarevare, 'e 'ua 'imi haere noa rātou i te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 25 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu te Atua iā'u : E roiro rātou 'ei tā'iri i tō 'oe ra hua'ai, nō te fa'aitoito ia rātou 'ia ha'amana'o iā'u ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou e ha'amana'o iā'u, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i e ha'apa'o i tā'u ra mau parau, e tā'irihia ia rātou ē tae atu i te ha'amoura'a.
- 26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atōro'a ihora vau, 'o Nephi, ia Iakoba rāua 'o Iosepha 'ei tahu'a 'e 'ei 'orometua i te fenua o tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ora noa ihora mātou ma te 'oa'oa.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

28 'E 'ua ma'iri e toru 'ahuru matahiti mai te tau i
fa'aru'e ai mātou ia Ierusalem ra.

29 'E 'ua 'ō'oti māite ho'i au i te pāpa'a parau o tō'u ra
mau ta'ata i ni'a i te mau 'api 'o tā'u i hāmani.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu te Atua
iā'u : 'A hāmani na i te tahi atu ā mau 'api ; 'e 'a 'ō'oti
na 'oe i te mau mea e rave rahi i ni'a i te reira, 'o tei
riro 'ei mea maita'i i tō'u hi'ora'a, 'ei faufa'a nō tō 'oe
ra mau ta'ata.

31 Nō reira, nō te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te
Fatu, 'ua hāmani ihora vau, 'o Nephi, i teie nei mau
'api, 'e i ni'a iho i te reira 'ua 'ō'oti au i teie nei mau
mea.

32 'E 'ua 'ō'oti ihora vau i tei maita'i i te Atua ra. 'E
mai te mea ē 'ua māuruuru tō'u ra mau ta'ata i te mau
mea a te Atua ra, 'ua māuruuru ia rātou i tā'u i 'ō'oti i
ni'a iho i teie nei mau 'api.

33 'E mai te mea ē 'ua hina'aro tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'ia
'ite i te tahi atu ā mau tufa'a rahi nō ni'a i te 'ā'amu o
tō'u ra mau ta'ata, e mea ti'a ia ia rātou 'ia 'imi māite i
te tahi atu o tā'u ra mau 'api.

34 'E 'ua ti'a roa ho'i iā'u 'ia parau ē, 'ua ma'iri e
maha 'ahuru matahiti, 'e 'ua tupu tā mātou mau
tama'ira'a 'e te mau mārōra'a i tō mātou mau taea'e.

And thirty years had passed away from the time
we left Jerusalem.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my
plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto
me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven
many things upon them which are good in my sight,
for the profit of thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the com-
mandments of the Lord, went and made these plates
upon which I have engraven these things.

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God.
And if my people are pleased with the things of God
they will be pleased with mine engravings which are
upon these plates.

And if my people desire to know the more particu-
lar part of the history of my people they must search
mine other plates.

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had
passed away, and we had already had wars and con-
tentions with our brethren.

2 Nephi 6

- 1 Te mau parau a Iakoba, te teina o Nephi, 'o tana i parau atu i te mau ta'ata o Nephi :
- 2 Inaha, e to'u mau taea'e here, i pi'ihia na vau, 'o Iakoba, e te Atua, 'e i fa'atoro'ahia na ho'i au mai te au i tana ra fa'anahora'a mo'a, 'e i fa'atoro'ahia na ho'i e to'u ra taea'e, 'o Nephi, 'o ta 'outou i ti'aturi 'ei ari'i 'e 'aore ra 'ei paruru, 'e 'o ta 'outou ho'i i ti'aturi 'ei ha'apura'a no 'outou, inaha, 'ua 'ite 'outou e, 'ua parau atu vau i te mau mea e rave rahi ia 'outou na.
- 3 'Are'a ra, e parau fa'ahou atu vau ia 'outou ; no te mea 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia maita'i to 'outou varua. 'Oia ia, 'ua tapitapi roa vau ia 'outou ; 'e 'ua 'ite 'outou e, 'ua na-reira-hia mai te matamua mai a. 'Ua a'o atu ho'i au ia 'outou ma te itoito rahi ; 'e 'ua ha'api'i atu ho'i au ia 'outou i te mau parau a to'u ra metua tane ; 'e 'ua parau ato'a atu vau ia 'outou no ni'a i te mau mea ato'a i papa'ihia, mai te hamanira'ahia mai a o te ao nei.
- 4 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua hina'aro vau i te parau atu ia 'outou no ni'a i te mau mea e vai nei, 'e i te mau mea e tupu a muri a'e ; no reira, e tai'o atu vau i te mau parau a Isaia ia 'outou na. 'E 'o te mau parau ho'i ia ta to'u taea'e i hina'aro 'ia parau atu vau ia 'outou na. 'E no to 'outou iho maita'i e parau atu ai au, 'ia 'ite 'e 'ia fa'ahanahana ho'i 'outou i te i'oa o to 'outou ra Atua.
- 5 'E i teienei, te mau parau ta'u e tai'o atu, 'o te parau ia ta Isaia i parau no ni'a i te 'utuafare pa'ato'a no 'Isera'ela ; no reira, 'ua fa'aauhia ho'i te reira ia 'outou, no te mea, no te 'utuafare ato'a 'outou o 'Isera'ela. 'E te vai nei e rave rahi mau mea i parauhia e Isaia 'o te ti'a 'ia fa'aauhia i ni'a ia 'outou, no te mea no te 'utuafare o 'Isera'ela 'outou.
- 6 'E i teienei, 'o teie ia taua mau parau ra : Te na 'o mai ra te Fatu te Atua : Inaha, e fa'atoro atu vau i to'u nei rima i te mau 'Etene ra, 'e e fa'ati'a ho'i i to'u reva i te mau ta'ata ; 'e e hopoi mai ratou i ta 'oe mau tamari'i tamaroa i roto i to ratou rima, 'e ta 'oe mau tamari'i tamahine ra 'ia amohia mai ia i ni'a iho i to ratou ra mau taponu.

2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

- 7 E riro te mau ari'i tāne 'ei mau metua tāne fa'a'amu nō 'oe, e tā rātou mau ari'i vahine 'ei metua vahine fa'a'amu nō 'oe ; e tīpapa rātou i raro i mua ia 'oe, ma tō rātou aro i raro i te repo ra, 'e e mitimiti ho'i rātou i te repo i tō 'outou ra 'āvae ; 'e e 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, 'o te Fatu vau ; nō te mea e 'ore ho'i rātou 'o tē tīa'i mai iā'u e ha'amā.
- 8 'E i teienei, e parau rī'i au, 'o Iakoba, nō ni'a i teie nei mau parau : Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'a'ite mai te Fatu iā'u ē, 'ua taparahihia 'e 'ua hōpoi-tūtī-hia ho'i te feiā i pārahi i Ieruselema, i te vāhi nō reira mai tātou.
- 9 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'a'ite mai te Fatu iā'u ē, e ho'i fa'ahou atu rātou. 'E 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a mai 'oia iā'u ē, e fa'a'ite tino mai te Fatu te Atua, Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela, iāna iho ia rātou ra ; 'e i muri iho i tōna fa'a'itera'a mai iāna iho, e taparahi 'e e fa'asātauro rātou iāna, mai tā te melahi i parau mai iā'u ra.
- 10 'E i muri iho i tō rātou fa'a'eta'etara'a i tō rātou 'ā'au 'e te ha'apa'arira'a ia rātou iho i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela, inaha, e tae mai te mau ha'avāra'a a Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela i ni'a ia rātou. 'E tē vai ra te mahana e tā'irihia ai 'e e 'atihia ai ho'i rātou.
- 11 Nō reira, i muri iho i tō rātou tīahira'ahia i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, tē nā reira mai ra te melahi, e 'ati roa te tahi pae rahi i te tino ra, 'e nō te pure a te feiā parauti'a ra, e 'ore rātou e vāiihohia 'ia pohe ; e ha'apurarahia rātou, e tā'irihia, 'e e 'ino'inohia ho'i ; 'āre'a rā e aroha mai te Fatu ia rātou, 'e 'ia tae rātou i te 'ite i tō rātou Tāra'ehara ; 'ei reira e ha'aputupu-fa'ahou-hia mai ai rātou i tō rātou fenua 'āi'a.
- 12 E ao tō te mau 'Ētene ra, rātou 'o tei pāpa'ihia e te peropheta ra ; inaha ho'i, mai te mea e tātarahapa rātou, 'e e'ita rātou e tama'i i tō Ziona, 'e e'ita ho'i e 'āmui atu i taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i ra, e fa'aorahia ia rātou ; nō te mea e fa'atupu te Fatu te Atua i tāna mau fafaura'a o tāna i fafau atu i tāna ra mau tamari'i ; 'e nō te reira ho'i te peropheta i pāpa'i ai i teie mau mea.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

- 13 Nō reira, 'o rātou 'o tē tama'i mai i tō Ziona 'e i te feiā i fafau atu i te Fatu ra, e mitimiti ia rātou i te repo i tō rātou ra 'āvae ; 'e e 'ore roa ho'i te feiā o te Fatu ra e ha'amā. 'O te mau ta'ata ho'i o te Fatu ra 'o tē tīa'i iāna ; 'e e tīa'i noa ho'i rātou i te taera'a mai o te Mesia ra.
- 14 'E inaha, mai te au i te mau parau a te peropheta ra, e ha'amata fa'ahou te Mesia i te fa'aora ia rātou i te piti o te taime ; nō reira, 'ia tae i te mahana e ti'aturi ai rātou iāna ra, e fa'a'ite mai 'oia iāna iho ia rātou ma te mana 'e te hanahana rahi, ē tae atu i te ha'amoura'a i tō rātou ra mau 'enemi ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i 'oia e ha'amou i te feiā e ti'aturi iāna.
- 15 'E 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi iāna ra, e ha'amouhia ia rātou i te auahi, 'e te vero, 'e te mau 'āueuera'a fenua, 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto, 'e te ma'i rahi, 'e te o'e. 'E e 'ite rātou ē, 'o te Fatu, 'o te Atua ia, Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela.
- 16 E noa'a mai ānei ho'i te tao'a pau i riro na i te ta'ata pūai, 'e te feiā parauti'a i haruhia ra, e noa'a mai ānei 'ia haru ?
- 17 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : E haru-fa'ahou-hia te feiā tūtī i riro i te ta'ata pūai, 'e te tao'a pau i noa'a i te ta'ata ri'ari'a ra, e noa'a fa'ahou mai ia ; nā te Atua Mana ho'i e fa'aora i tōna feiā i fafau atu iāna. Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu : E 'aro atu vau ia rātou 'o tē aro mai ia 'oe ra—
- 18 'E nā'u e fa'a'amu ia rātou 'o tei hāmani 'ino mai ia 'oe ra i tō rātou iho 'i'o ; e ta'ero ho'i rātou i tō rātou iho toto mai te ta'ero uaina monamona ra ; 'e e 'ite ho'i te mau ta'ata ato'a ē, 'o vau, 'o te Fatu, tō 'oe Fa'aora 'e tō 'oe Tāra'ehara, Tei Pūai i Iakoba nei.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

2 Nephi 7

- 1 'Oia ia, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : 'Ua fa'aātea ānei au ia 'outou, 'e 'aore rā 'ua ti'avaru ānei au ia 'outou ē a muri noa atu ? Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu : Tei hea te parau ha'apae a tō 'outou metua vahine ? 'Ua tu'u 'ē atu vau ia 'outou ia vai, 'e 'ua ho'o atu vau ia 'outou ia vai i roto i tā'u mau 'amu tārahu ra ? 'Oia ia, 'ua ho'o atu vau ia 'outou ia vai ? Inaha, nō tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i ho'o atu ai 'outou ia 'outou iho, 'e nō tā 'outou mau hara i tu'ua-'ē-hia ai tō 'outou metua vahine.
- 2 Nō reira, iā'u i haere mai ai, 'aore roa ia e ta'ata ; e iā'u ho'i i pi'i ai, 'oia ia, 'aore roa ia e ta'ata nō te pāhono mai. E te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'ua ha'apotohia ānei tō'u rima 'e 'aita e ti'a 'ia fa'aora, 'e 'aore rā 'aita ānei tō'u e mana 'ia fa'aora ? Inaha, 'ia 'avau ana'e au ra, 'ua marō ia te moana iā'u ; e fa'ariro ho'i au i tā rātou mau 'ānāvai pape 'ei mēdēbara 'e tā rātou mau i'a 'ei mea hau'a 'ino nō te mea 'ua marō te mau pape, 'e 'ua pohe atu ra rātou nō te po'ihā.
- 3 Tē fa'a'ahu nei au i te mau ra'i i te 'ere'ere, 'e tē hāmani nei au i te 'ahu 'oto 'ei tāpo'i nō rātou.
- 4 'Ua hōro'a mai te Fatu te Atua i te vaha o te feiā 'ite ra iā'u, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia parau atu i te parau au i te taime mau ia 'outou na, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela. 'Ia rohirohi 'outou ra, tē fa'aara nei 'oia i terā po'ipo'i, i terā po'ipo'i. Tē fa'aara nei 'oia i tō'u tari'a, 'ia ha'apa'o vau mai te feiā 'ite ra.
- 5 'Ua fa'ahāmama te Fatu te Atua i tō'u tari'a, 'e 'aita vau i mārō atu, 'e 'aita ho'i i fāriu ti'a i muri.
- 6 'Ua tu'u noa atu vau i tō'u tua i te feiā i tā'iri mai ; 'e tō'u nā pāpāri'a i te feiā i hūhuti i te 'umi'umi. 'Aore ho'i au i huna 'ē atu i tō'u mata i te ha'amā 'e te tūtuhara'a.
- 7 E tauturu mai ho'i te Fatu te Atua iā'u, nō reira e 'ore roa vau e fa'aha'amāhia. Nō reira, e ha'amau vau i tō'u mata mai te 'ōfa'i 'arā ra, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e 'ore au e ha'amā.
- 8 E mea fātata mai te Fatu, 'e nāna e fa'ati'a mai iā'u. 'O vai te mārō mai iā'u ? 'A ti'a taua nō te 'aro. 'O vai tō'u nei 'enemi ? 'A ha'afātata mai 'oia iā'u nei, 'e e tā'iri au iāna i te pūai o tō'u ra vaha.

2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

9 Nā te Fatu ho'i te Atua e tauturu mai iā'u. 'E 'o rātou ato'a 'o tē fa'ahapa mai iā'u nei, inaha, e marau rātou mai te 'ahu nei, 'e e pau rātou i te 'amuhia e te huhu.

10 'O vai ho'i tō rotopū ia 'outou 'o tē mata'u i te Fatu, 'o tē fa'aro'o i te reo o tōna ra tāvini, 'o tē haere noa i roto i te pōiri 'e 'aita e māramarama ?

11 Inaha, 'o 'outou ato'a 'o tei tūtu'i i te auahi, 'e 'ua ha'a'ati ia 'outou iho i te mau pura auahi, 'a haere i roto i te māramarama o tā outou auahi 'e i roto i te mau pura auahi i tūtu'ihia e 'outou na. Teie tē noa'a ia 'outou i tō'u nei rima—e ta'oto 'outou i raro ma te 'oto ra.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

2 Nephi 8

- 1 'A fa'aro'o mai na iā'u nei, 'outou 'o tei tītau i te parauti'a. Hi'o mai i te mato i paohia mai ai 'outou na ; 'e te vāhi po'opo'o o te 'āpo'o i 'ōhia mai ai 'outou.
- 2 'A hi'o na i tō 'outou metua tāne ia Aberahama, 'e 'ia Sara, i fānau mai ia 'outou na ; 'ua pi'i au iāna ana'e iho, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ho'i iāna.
- 3 E tāmāhanahana ho'i te Fatu ia Ziona, e tāmāhanahana 'oia i tōna mau vāhi ano ato'a ; 'e e fa'ariro 'oia i tōna mēdēbara mai te 'ō Edene ra, 'e tōna vāhi pāpāmarō ra mai te 'ō a te Fatu. 'E e 'itea te 'oa'oa 'e te pou pou i roto i te reira, te ha'amāuruurura'a 'e te reo hīmene ra.
- 4 'A fa'aro'o mai na iā'u nei, e tō'u mau ta'ata ; 'e 'a fa'afāriu mai i tō 'outou tari'a iā'u nei, e tō'u nūna'a ; e nā 'ō nei atu te ture iā'u nei, 'e e fa'atae atu vau i tā'u parau mau 'ei ti'arama nō te mau ta'ata.
- 5 'Ua fātata mai te parauti'a nā'u ra, 'e 'ua reva 'ē atu tā'u fa'aorara'a, 'e nā tō'u rima e ha'avā i te mau ta'ata. E tī'a'i mai tō te mau motu iā'u, 'e e ti'aturi mai ho'i rātou i tō'u nei rima.
- 6 'A nānā na i tō 'outou mata i ni'a i te mau ra'i, 'e 'a hi'o ai i raro i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e e pe'e ho'i te mau ra'i mai te au auahi ra, 'e e marau ho'i te fenua mai te 'ahu ra ; e pohe ho'i rātou 'o tē pārahi i roto mai te reira ato'a ra. 'Āre'a te fa'aorara'a nā'u ra, e ti'a 'ia i te vaira'a ē a muri noa atu, 'e e 'ore roa ho'i te parauti'a nā'u ra e ha'amouhia.
- 7 'A fa'aro'o mai na iā'u nei, 'outou tei 'ite i te parauti'a, te feiā tei tō 'outou 'ā'au te ture nā'u i te pāpa'ira'ahia, 'eiaha 'outou e mata'u i te fa'a'ino a te ta'ata nei ; 'eiaha ato'a 'outou e mata'u i tā rātou mau parau fa'a'ino.
- 8 E pau ho'i rātou i te 'amuhia e te huhu mai te 'ahu ra, 'e e 'amuhia ho'i rātou e te tu'a mai te huruhuru māmoe ra. 'Āre'a te parauti'a nā'u ra, e ti'a 'ia i te vaira'a ē a muri noa atu, 'e te fa'aorara'a nā'u ra mai terā u'i i terā u'i.
- 9 'A ara, 'a ara ! 'A fa'a'ahu na ia 'oe i te pūai, e te rima o te Fatu ē ; 'a ara mai tei te mau mahana i muta'a ihora. E 'ere ānei 'o 'oe tei tāpūpū ia Rahaba, 'e tei pātia i te teni ra ?

2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

- 10 E 'ere ānei 'o 'oe tei ha'amārō i te tai, i te mau pape o te vāhi hōhonu rahi ; 'e 'o tei fa'ariro i te mau vāhi hōhonu o te moana 'ei 'ē'a nō te haere'a o te feiā i fa'aorahia ra ?
- 11 Nō reira, e ho'i fa'ahou mai tō te Fatu feiā i fa'aorahia, 'e e haere mai rātou ma te hīmene ia Ziona ; 'e e fa'akoronahia tō rātou upo'o i te 'oa'oa 'e te mo'a mure 'ore ; e ma'ue 'ē atu ho'i te 'oto 'e te autā.
- 12 'O vau nei ho'i 'oia, 'oia ia, 'o vau nei ho'i 'oia 'o tei tāmāhanahana ia 'outou. Inaha, 'o vai ho'i 'oe, i mata'u ai 'oe i te ta'ata nei, 'o tē pohe, 'e i te tamaiti a te ta'ata nei 'o tē riro mai te 'aihere ra ?
- 13 'A ha'amo'e ai ho'i i te Fatu i tei hāmani ia 'oe ra, 'oia tei hohora i te mau ra'i, 'e 'ua hāmani ho'i i te fenua, i tāmāu ho'i 'oe i te mata'u 'aita e mahana tu'ua, i te riri 'ū'ana o te ta'ata hāmani 'ino ra, mai te mea ra ē, 'ua fātata 'oia i te rave mai e taparahi ? 'E tei hea ho'i te riri 'ū'ana o te ta'ata hāmani 'ino ra ?
- 14 Tē rū nei te ta'ata fa'atīhīa i fa'ata'a-'ē-hia ra, 'ia matara 'oia, 'e 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia pohe i roto i te tāpe'ara'a ra, 'e 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia 'ere i te mā'a.
- 15 'O vau ho'i te Fatu tō Atua ; 'o tei fa'aharuru i te mau 'are miti ra ; 'o te Fatu Sabaota tō'u nei i'oa.
- 16 'E 'ua tu'u vau i tā'u mau parau i roto i tō vaha na, 'e 'ua tāpo'i au ia 'oe i te maru o tō'u nei rima, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'atupu i te mau ra'i 'e 'ia hāmani i te fenua, 'e 'ia parau ia Ziona : 'O 'oe tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 17 'A ara, 'a ara, 'a ti'a i ni'a, e Ierusalem, 'o tei inu i te rima o te Fatu i te 'āu'a o tōna ra riri 'ū'ana—'ua tae ho'i tā 'oe inura'a i te ota i tāvirihia nō te 'āu'a rurutaina ra—
- 18 'Aore roa te hō'ē e arata'i iāna i rotopū i te mau tamari'i tamāroa tāna i fānau ra ; 'e 'aore ato'a te hō'ē e mau i tāna rima, nō te mau tamari'i tamāroa ato'a tāna i ha'api'i ra.
- 19 'Ua haere mai teie nā pu'e tamāroa e to'opiti ia 'oe na ; 'e nā vai e aroha atu ia 'oe na—'o tō 'oe pau 'e tō 'oe pohe, 'e te po'ia 'e te 'o'e—'e nā roto 'ia vai e tāmāhanahana atu ai au ia 'oe na ?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

20 'Ua matapōirihia tā 'oe mau tamari'i tamāroa, maori rā 'o teie nei e to'opiti ; 'ua tārava noa rāua i raro i te 'ōmuara'a o te mau purūmu ra, mai te pua'atoro 'ōviri i te 'ūpe'a ra, 'ua 'ī rāua i te riri 'ū'ana o te Fatu, 'e i te a'o a tō 'oe ra Atua.

21 Nō reira, 'a fa'aro'o mai i teie i teienei, 'o 'oe tei 'ati i te pohe, 'e tei ta'ero, e 'ere rā i te uaina :

22 Tē nā 'ō mai ra tō 'oe Fatu, te Fatu tō 'oe Atua, 'o tei pāruru i tōna ra mau ta'ata : Inaha, 'ua rave au i te 'āu'a rurutaina i tō 'oe na rima ; te ota o te 'āu'a o tō'u ra riri 'ū'ana ; e 'ore roa 'oe e inu fa'ahou i te reira.

23 E tu'u rā vau i te reira i roto i te rima o te feiā e hāmani 'ino mai ia 'oe ; 'o tei parau mai i tō 'oe vārua ē : 'A pi'o i raro, 'ia haere tātou nā ni'a iho ia 'oe—'e 'ua tu'u 'oe i tō tino i raro mai te repo ra 'e mai te purūmu nō te feiā e haere nā ni'a iho.

24 'A ara, 'a ara, 'a 'ahu na i tō pūai, e Ziona ; 'a 'ahu na i tō mau 'ahu nehenehe, e Ierusalem, 'e te 'oire mo'a ē ; 'e mai teie taime atu 'eiaha roa te feiā peritome 'ore 'e te vi'ivi'i e tomo mai i roto ia 'oe na.

25 'A ueue na ia 'oe i te repo ra ; 'a ti'a i ni'a ; 'a pārahi i raro, e Ierusalem ; e tātara na ia 'oe i te mau tā'amu i ni'a i tō 'a'ī na, 'e te tamāhine fa'atūhina nō Ziona ē.

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

2 Nephi 9

- 1 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua tai'o vau i teie mau mea, 'ia 'ite 'outou i te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu o tāna i fafau atu i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o 'Īserā'ela—
- 2 'O tāna ho'i i parau atu i te 'āti Iuda ra, nā roto i te vaha o tōna ra mau peropheta mo'a, mai te mātāmua mai ā, mai terā u'i i terā u'i, ē tae noa atu i te tau e fa'aho'ihia ai rātou i roto i te 'ēkālesia mau 'e i te nana a te Atua ra ; 'ia ha'aputuputuhia rātou i tō rātou 'utuāfare i te mau fenua 'āi'a nō rātou ra, 'e e ha'apārahia rātou i tō rātou mau fenua ato'a i parauhia ra.
- 3 Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē parau atu nei au i teie mau mea ia 'outou 'ia 'oa'oa 'outou, 'e 'ia fa'ateitei 'outou i tō 'outou upo'o ē a muri noa atu, nō te mau ha'amaita'ira'a tā te Fatu te Atua e nīni'i mai i ni'a iho i tā 'outou mau tamari'i.
- 4 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua 'imi māite 'outou, e rave rahi o 'outou, 'ia 'ite i te mau mea e tupu a muri a'e ; nō reira 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua 'ite 'outou ē, e pe tō tātou tino i te pohe ; noa atu rā e 'ite atu tātou i te Atua i roto i tō tātou nei mau tino.
- 5 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua 'ite 'outou ē, e fa'a'ite mai 'oia iāna iho i roto i te tino i tō Ierusalem ra, i te vāhi nō reira mai tātou ra ; 'e e mea ti'a roa ho'i 'ia tae mai 'oia i rotopū ia rātou ra ; 'e e mea ti'a roa ho'i i Tei Hamani i te mau mea ato'a ra 'ia fa'ati'a iāna iho 'ia tu'u-ha'eha'a-hia i raro a'e i te ta'ata i te tino nei, 'e 'ia pohe ho'i nō te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e 'ia auraro te mau ta'ata ato'a iāna.
- 6 'E nō te mea 'ua tae mai te pohe i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata ato'a, nō te fa'ati'a i te 'ōpuara'a aroha a Tei Hamani i te mau mea ato'a, 'ia tae mai ia te mana nō te ti'afa'ahoura'a e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia tae mai ho'i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te ta'ata nei e ti'a ai nō te hi'ara'a ; 'e 'ua tae mai te hi'ara'a nō te 'ōfatira'a i te ture ; 'e nō te hi'ara'a ho'i o te ta'ata nei i tāpū-'ē-hia ai rātou mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu.

2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

7 Nō reira, e mea ti'a roa 'ia vai te hō'ē tāra'ehara mure 'ore—'e 'āhiri 'aita te reira tāra'ehara mure 'ore, e 'ore roa ia e ti'a i teie nei tino tāhuti 'ia riro 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore. Nō reira, e mea ti'a roa i te ha'avāra'a mātāmua i tae mai i ni'a i te ta'ata nei 'e 'ia vai noa ē a muri noa atu. 'E 'āhiri ē 'oia mau ra, e vai noa ia teie tino i raro 'e 'ia pē 'e 'ia marua noa atu i roto i te repo ra, 'e e 'ore roa ia e ti'afa'ahou mai.

8 'Auē te pa'ari o te Atua ē, tōna aroha 'e tōna maita'i ē ! Inaha ho'i, 'āhiri ē 'aita te tino e ti'afa'ahou mai, e riro ia tō tātou mau vārua i taua melahi ra 'o tei ma'iri mai mua mai i te aro o te Atua mure 'ore, 'e tei riro ho'i 'ei diabolō, 'e e 'ore ho'i 'oia e ti'afa'ahou mai.

9 'E 'ua riro tō tātou vārua mai iāna te huru, 'e 'ua riro tātou 'ei mau diabolō, 'ei mau melahi nā te diabolō, 'ia tāpū-ē-hia i te aro o tō tātou Atua, 'e 'ia pārahi i pīha'i iho i te metua o te mau ha'avare, i roto i te mamae mai tōna ra te huru ; 'oia ia, i pīha'i iho iāna 'o tei ha'avare i tō tātou nā metua mātāmua ra, 'e tei fa'ariro iāna iho fātata mai te melahi o te māmarama ra, 'e tei fa'ati'arepu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei 'ia tomo atu i roto i te mau pupu 'ohipa huna nō te taparahi ta'ata, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa huna ato'a nō te pōiri.

10 'Auē ho'i te rahi o te maita'i o tō tātou Atua ē, 'o tei fa'aineine i te rāve'a e ora ai tātou i te harura'a a teie teni ri'ari'a rahi ; 'oia ia, taua teni ra, 'o te pohe 'e 'o hade, 'o tā'u i parau te pohe o te tino, 'e te pohe ato'a ho'i o te vārua.

11 'E nō te rāve'a fa'aora a tō tātou Atua ra, a Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, e tu'u mai ia teie pohe 'o tā'u i parau ra, 'oia ho'i, te pohe pae tino nei, i tōna ra feiā pohe ; e taua pohe ra, 'o te mēnema ia.

12 E tu'u mai teie pohe 'o tā'u e parau nei, 'oia ho'i, te pohe pae vārua i tōna ra feiā pohe ; e taua pohe pae vārua ra, 'o hade ia ; nō reira, e mea ti'a roa i te pohe 'e ia hade 'ia tu'u mai i tō rāua feiā pohe, 'e e mea ti'a roa ho'i ia hade 'ia tu'u mai i tōna ra mau vārua fa'atīhia, 'e e mea ti'a roa ho'i i te mēnema 'ia tu'u mai i tōna ra mau tino fa'atūhia, 'e e fa'aho'ihia ho'i te mau tino 'e te mau vārua o te ta'ata nei i te tahi 'e i te tahi ; 'e e tupu ho'i te reira nā roto i te mana 'o tē ti'afa'ahoura'a o Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

- 13 'Auē ho'i te rahi o te 'ōpuara'a a tō tātou Atua ! Nō te mea i te tahi pae e tu'u mai te pāradaiso o te Atua i te mau vārua o te feiā parauti'a, 'e e tu'u mai ho'i te mēnema i te tino o te feiā parauti'a ; 'e e fa'aho'ihia te vārua 'e te tino i te tahi 'e i te tahi, 'e e riro te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ei mea pohe 'ore 'e 'ei mea tāhuti 'ore, 'e e mau vārua ora rātou, ma te fāri'i i te 'ite ti'a mau mai ia tātou i te tino nei, 'e 'āhiri ē mea tāhuti 'ore tātou e riro ia tō tātou 'ite 'ei 'ite ti'a mau.
- 14 Nō reira, e fāri'i tātou i te 'ite ti'a mau nō tā tātou mau 'ohipa hape ato'a, 'e tō tātou vi'ivi'i, 'e tō tātou vai-taha'a-noa-ra'a ; 'e e fāri'i te feiā parauti'a i te 'ite ti'a mau nō tō rātou 'oa'oa, 'e tō rātou parauti'a, ma te fa'a'ahuhia i te vi'ivi'i 'ore, 'oia ia, i te 'ahu nō te parauti'a.
- 15 'E a muri a'era, 'ia ti'a mai te ta'ata ato'a mai te pohe mātāmua mai i te ora, 'e 'ia riro rātou 'ei mea tāhuti 'ore, e mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia ti'a atu i mua i te ha'avāra'a a Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela ; 'e i reira e tae mai ai te ha'avāra'a, 'e 'ia ha'avāhia rātou mai te au i te ha'avāra'a mo'a a te Atua e ti'a ai.
- 16 'E 'oia mau, mai te Fatu e ora ra, e tupu iho ā ia tei parauhia e te Fatu te Atua, 'e 'o tāna parau mure 'ore ho'i te reira, 'o tē 'ore roa e mou, 'oia ho'i, 'ia parauti'a ā te feiā parauti'a ra, 'e 'ia vi'ivi'i ā ho'i te feiā vi'ivi'i ra ; nō reira, 'o tei vi'ivi'i ra, 'o te diablo ia 'e tāna ra mau melahi ; 'e e haere atu rātou i roto i te auahi mure 'ore i fa'a'ineinehia nō rātou ; 'e tō rātou māuiui mai tō te roto auahi ia 'e te gopheri, 'o tē pe'e noa atu tōna ura i ni'a ē a muri ē a muri noa atu, 'e 'aita roa e hope'a.
- 17 'Auē ho'i te mana rahi 'e te parauti'a o tō tātou Atua ē ! E fa'atupu ho'i 'oia i tāna mau parau ato'a, 'e 'ua haere atu te reira mai roto mai i tōna vaha, 'e 'ia fa'atupuhia tāna ture e ti'a ai.
- 18 Inaha rā, te feiā parauti'a, 'o te feiā mo'a a Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, 'o tei ti'aturi i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, 'o tei fa'a'oroma'i i te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a a te ao nei, 'e tei 'ore ho'i i ha'apa'o i te fa'aha'amāra'a a te reira, e fāri'i ia rātou i te bāsileia o te Atua, 'o tei fa'a'ineinehia nō rātou mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei, 'e e 'i ho'i rātou i te 'oa'oa ē a muri noa atu.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

- 19 'Auē ho'i te rahi o te aroha o tō tātou Atua ē, Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei ! E fa'aora ho'i 'oia i tōna ra feiā mo'a i taua teni ri'ari'a rahi ra, 'oia ho'i te diabolō, 'e te pohe, 'e 'o hade, 'e i taua roto auahi 'e te gopheri ra, 'oia ho'i te māuiui hope 'ore ra.
- 20 'Auē ho'i te rahi o te mo'ara'a o tō tātou Atua ē ! 'Ua 'ite ho'i 'oia i te mau mea ato'a, 'e 'aore roa te hō'ē mea tei 'ore i 'itea iāna.
- 21 E tae mai 'oia i te ao nei 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'aora i te mau ta'ata ato'a, mai te mea e ha'apa'o rātou i tōna ra reo ; inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'a'oroma'i 'oia i te mau māuiui o te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ia, te mau māuiui o te mau ta'ata ato'a, te mau tāne, te mau vahine, 'e te mau tamari'i ato'a ho'i, i roto i te 'utuāfare o Adamu ra.
- 22 'Ua fa'a'oroma'i 'oia i te reira 'ia tae mai te ti'afa'ahoura'a i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ia ti'a ia rātou ato'a 'ia ti'a atu i mua iāna i te mahana rahi nō te ha'avāra'a.
- 23 'E 'ua fa'aue mai ho'i 'oia 'ia tātarahapa te mau ta'ata ato'a e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i roto i tōna ra i'oa, ma te fa'aro'o pāpū i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia nā reira, e 'ore roa rātou e fa'aorahia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua.
- 24 'E 'ia 'ore rātou e tātarahapa 'e 'ia ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tōna ra i'oa, 'e 'ia fa'aitoito noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e fa'ahapahia ia rātou ; tē nā reira mai ra ho'i te Fatu te Atua, 'o Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei.
- 25 Nō reira, 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te ture ; 'e mai te mea 'aita e ture, 'aita ato'a ia e utu'a ; 'e mai te mea 'aita e utu'a, 'aita ato'a ia e fa'ahapara'a ; 'e mai te mea 'aita e fa'ahapara'a, e tae mai ia te aroha rahi o Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei i ni'a ia rātou, nā roto i te tāra'ehara ; 'ua fa'aorahia ho'i rātou e tōna ra mana.
- 26 'Ua fa'a'ore ho'i te tāra'ehara i te utu'a o tāna ra parauti'a i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei ore i 'ite i te ture, 'ia fa'aorahia rātou i taua teni rahi ri'ari'a ra, 'oia ho'i te pohe 'e 'o hade, 'e te diabolō, 'e te roto auahi 'e te gopheri ra ; 'oia ho'i te māuiui hope 'ore ; 'e e fa'aho'ihia rātou i te Atua 'o tei hōro'a mai i te aho nō rātou ra, i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

27 'Auē ho'i 'oia 'o tei 'ite i te ture, 'oia ia, 'o tei fāri'i i te mau fa'auera'a ato'a a te Atua, mai ia tātou nei, 'e 'ua 'ōfati i te reira, 'e 'ua ha'amāu'a i te mau mahana nō tōna orara'a i te tino nei, e ti'ara'a ri'ari'a ho'i ia tōna !

28 'Auē ho'i te 'ōpuara'a ha'avare a te diabolō ra ē ! 'Auē ho'i te te'ote'o, 'e te mau vāhi paruparu, 'e te ma'ama'a o te ta'ata nei ē ! 'ia māramarama rātou, 'ua mana'o rātou ē, e feiā 'aravihi rātou, 'e 'aita rātou e ha'apa'o i te a'o a te Atua, nō te mea 'ua vaiho rātou i te reira, i te mana'ora'a e 'ite rātou nā roto ia rātou iho, 'e nō reira, e mea ma'ama'a tō rātou pa'ari 'e 'aore ho'i a rātou e faufa'a i te reira. 'E e pohe ho'i rātou.

29 'Āre'a rā e mea maita'i te 'ite mai te mea e ha'apa'o rātou i te a'o a te Atua.

30 'Auē ho'i te feiā tao'a ē, te feiā tao'a i te mau mea nō teie nei ao. Nō tā rātou ho'i tao'a i vahavaha ai rātou i te feiā veve ra, 'e 'ua hāmani 'ino rātou i te feiā ha'eha'a, 'e tē vai noa nei ā tō rātou 'ā'au i ni'a i tā rātou mau tao'a rahi ; nō reira i riro ai tā rātou tao'a rahi 'ei atua nō rātou. 'E inaha, e mou tā rātou tao'a 'e rātou ato'a ho'i.

31 'Auē ho'i te tari'a turi 'o tē 'ore e fa'aro'o ; e pohe ho'i rātou.

32 'Auē ho'i te matapō 'o tē 'ore e 'ite ; e pohe ho'i rātou.

33 'Auē ho'i te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te 'ā'au ē ; nā te 'ite i tā rātou iho mau 'ohīpa 'ī'ino e tā'iri ia rātou i te mahana hope'a ra.

34 'Auē ho'i te ta'ata ha'avare ē ; e hurihia ho'i 'oia i raro i hade ra.

35 'Auē ho'i te taparahi ta'ata ē, 'o tei 'ōpua i te taparahi i te ta'ata nei, e pohe ho'i 'oia.

36 'Auē ho'i te feiā tai'ata ē, e hurihia ho'i rātou i raro i hade ra.

37 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i te feiā ha'amori 'īdolo ē, e 'oa'oa te diabolō o te mau diabolō ato'a ia rātou ra.

38 'Oia mau, 'auē ho'i te feiā ato'a e pohe i roto i tā rātou mau hara e ; e ho'i atu rātou i te Atua, 'e e hi'o ho'i i tōna ra mata, 'e e vai noa i roto i tā rātou ra mau hara.

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

39 'E tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a ha'amana'o 'outou i te ri'ari'a rahi 'ia 'ōfati i te ture a te Atua Mo'a, 'e te ri'ari'a rahi ho'i i te pe'era'a atu i te mau fa'ahemara'a a taua ta'ata ha'avare ra. 'A ha'amana'o, 'o te ha'apa'o tāmāu i te mau mea o te tino nei, 'o te pohe ia ; 'e 'o te ha'apa'o tāmāu i te mau mea pae vārua ra, 'o te ora mure 'ore ia.

40 'E tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a fa'aro'o mai na i tā'u nei mau parau. 'A ha'amana'o na i te mana rahi o Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei. 'Eiaha e parau ē, 'ua parau atu vau i te mau mea teiaha nō ni'a ia 'outou na ; nō te mea, 'ia nā reira 'outou, tē fa'a'ino ra ia 'outou i te parau mau ; 'ua parau ho'i au i te parau a Tei Hamani ia 'outou na. 'Ua 'ite ho'i au ē 'ua fa'ahapa 'ū'ana te parau mau i te mau mea vi'ivi'i ato'a ra ; 'aita rā te feiā parauti'a e mata'u i te reira, nō te mea 'ua hina'aro rātou i te parau mau 'e 'aore rātou e 'āueue.

41 'E i teieni, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a haere mai i te Fatu, i Tei Mo'a. 'A ha'amana'o e mea tītī'aifaro tōna mau haere'a. Inaha, e mea oaoa te 'ē'a o te ta'ata nei, 'e tei mua ti'a te reira iāna iho, 'e 'ua tītī'aifaro ho'i, 'e te tīa'i 'ūputa ra, 'o Tei Mo'a ia i 'Īserā'ela nei ; e 'aore ho'i 'oia i tārahu mai i te tāvini i reira ; e 'aore ho'i e 'ē'a 'ē atu maori rā nā taua 'ūputa ra ; e 'ore roa ho'i 'oia e vare i te ha'avare, nō te mea, 'o te Fatu te Atua tōna i'oa.

42 'E 'o te pātōtō ra, e 'iritihia ia iāna ; 'e te feiā 'aravihi, 'e te feiā 'ite, 'e tei tao'ahia ra, 'e 'o tei te'ote'o nō tō rātou 'ite, 'e tō rātou 'aravihi, 'e tā rātou mau tao'a—'oia ia, 'o rātou ia tāna e vahavaha atu ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou e fa'aru'e i te te'ote'o i roto i teie mau mea, 'e 'ia fa'ariro ia rātou iho 'ei feiā ma'ama'a i mua i te Atua, 'e 'ia fa'aha'eha'a roa ho'i ia rātou iho, e 'ore roa ia 'oia e 'iriti mai nō rātou.

43 'E hunahia te mau mea o te feiā 'aravihi 'e te feiā ha'apa'o ia rātou ē a muri noa atu—'oia ia, te 'oao'a i fa'aimeinehia nō te feiā mo'a ra.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

44 E tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a ha'amana'o i tā'u nei mau parau. Inaha, tē 'iriti nei au i tō'u nei mau 'ahu, 'e te ueue nei au i te reira i mua ia 'outou na ; 'e tē ti'aoro nei au i te Atua nō tō'u nei fa'aorara'a 'ia hi'o mai 'oia iā'u i tōna mata ha'avā ; nō reira, i te mahana hope'a ra, 'ia ha'avāhia te mau ta'ata ato'a i tā rātou ihora mau 'ohipa, e 'ite mai 'outou ē, 'ua 'ite mai te Atua nō 'Īserā'ela ē, 'ua ueue au i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i tō'u nei vārua, 'e te ti'a nei au i mua iāna ma te anaana, 'e 'ua mā ho'i au i tō 'outou toto.

45 E tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a fāriu 'ē atu i tā 'outou mau hara ; 'a ueue atu na i te mau fifi nōna 'o tei hina'aro 'ia tāpe'a tāmau ia 'outou ; 'a haere mai na i te Atua, 'oia te papa o tō 'outou fa'aorara'a.

46 'A fa'aineine i tō 'outou vārua nō taua mahana hanahana ra, e tu'uhia mai ai te parauti'a i te feiā parauti'a ra, 'oia ho'i, te mahana ha'avāra'a ra, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia rurutaina ma te mata'u rahi ra ; 'ia 'ore ho'i 'outou 'ia ha'amana'o ma te pāpū rahi i tā 'outou mau hara ri'ari'a ; 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia parau i te nā-'ōra'a ē : 'Ua mo'a, 'ua mo'a, tā 'oe ra mau ha'avāra'a, e te Fatu te Atua Manahope—'ua 'ite rā vau i tā'u nei hapa ; 'ua 'ōfati ho'i au i tā 'oe ra ture ; 'e nā'u iho nei tā'u mau hapa ra ; 'e 'ua riro vau i te diablo, 'e 'ua riro ho'i au 'ei tao'a pau nō tōna mamae rahi.

47 Inaha rā, e tō'u mau taea'e, e mea ti'a ānei 'ia fa'aara atu vau ia 'outou 'ia 'ite i te reira mau mea ri'ari'a ra ? E fa'aahoaho ānei au i tō 'outou vārua mai te mea ē, 'ua mā tō 'outou 'ā'au ? E parau pāpū ānei au ia 'outou 'ia au i te parau pāpū nō te parau mau 'āhiri ē 'aita tā 'outou e hara ?

48 Inaha, 'āhiri e mea mo'a 'outou e parau atu ia vau ia 'outou i te mau mea mo'a ; 'e nō te mea ho'i e 'ere 'outou i te mea mo'a, 'e 'ua fa'ariro 'outou iā'u 'ei 'orometua, e mea ti'a roa ia iā'u 'ia ha'api'i atu ia 'outou i te mau utu'a nō te hara.

49 Inaha, e mea au 'ore te hara i tō'u nei vārua, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa ho'i tō'u 'ā'au i te parauti'a ra ; 'e 'e 'āruē au i te i'oa mo'a o tō'u ra Atua.

50 'A haere mai na, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'outou ato'a tei po'ihā, 'a haere mai i te mau pape nei ; 'e te ta'ata moni 'ore ato'a, 'a haere mai na e ho'o 'e e 'amu ; 'oia ia, 'a haere mai na e ho'o i te uaina 'e te ū ma te moni 'ore 'e te tārahu 'ore.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

- 51 Nō reira, 'eiaha e ha'amāu'a i te moni nō te mea faufa'a 'ore, e tā 'outou 'ohipa nō te mea e 'ore e ha'amāuruuru ia 'outou ra. 'A fa'aro'o māite mai na 'outou iā'u, 'e 'a ha'amana'o ho'i i te mau parau tā'u i parau atu ; 'e 'a haere mai i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, 'e 'a rave i te fa'a'amu'a i te mea e 'ore e pau, 'e e 'ore ho'i e 'ino, 'e 'ia 'oa'oa tō 'outou vārua i te maita'i ra.
- 52 Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a ha'amana'o i te mau parau a tō 'outou Atua ; 'a pure tāmāu atu iāna i te ao, 'e 'a ha'amaita'i atu i tōna ra i'oa mo'a i te ru'i. 'Ia 'oa'oa tō 'outou 'ā'au.
- 53 'E inaha, 'auē ho'i te rahi o te mau fafau'a a te Fatu ra ē, e 'auē ho'i te rahi o tōna mau aroha rahi i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ē ; 'e nō tōna mana rahi, 'e tōna maita'i 'e te aroha, 'ua fafau mai 'oia ē, 'aita tō tātou hua'ai e ha'amou-roa-hia i te tino nei ; e fa'aora rā 'oia ia rātou ; 'e i te mau u'i i mua nei e riro mai rātou 'ei 'āma'a parauti'a i roto i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 54 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia parau atu ā ia 'outou i teie nei ; ananahi rā e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i te toe'a o tā'u ra mau parau. 'Āmene.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

2 Nephi 10

- 1 'E i teienei, tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au, 'o Iakoba, 'ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e here, nō ni'a i teie 'āma'a parauti'a 'o tā'u i parau a'enei.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, te mau fafaura'a i fāri'ihia e tātou 'o te mau fafaura'a ia ia tātou mai te au i tā te tino nei ; nō reira, 'ua fa'a'itehia mai au ē, e pohe tā tātou mau tamari'i e rave rahi i roto i te tino nei, nō te ti'aturi 'ore ; 'āre'a rā, e aroha mai te Atua ia rātou e rave rahi ; 'e e fa'aho'ihia tā tātou mau tamari'i, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia tae i tei hōro'a ia rātou i te 'ite mau nō tō rātou Tāra'ehara.
- 3 Nō reira, mai tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou na, e mea ti'a roa i te Mesia—'o teie ho'i tōna 'o'a 'o tā te melahi i fa'a'ite mai i te pō hope'a 'a paraparau mai ai 'oia iā'u ra—'ia ho'i mai i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda, i rotopū ia rātou 'o tei hau i te parauti'a 'ore i tō te ao ato'a nei ; 'e e fa'asātauro rātou iāna—'ia nā-reira-hia ho'i tō tātou Atua e ti'a ai ; 'e 'aore roa te hō'ē nūna'a 'ē i te ao ato'a nei, 'o tē ti'a 'ia fa'asātauro i tō rātou Atua.
- 4 Nō te mea 'āhiri ē 'ua ravehia te mau semeio rarahi i rotopū i te tahi atu mau nūna'a, 'ua tātarahapa ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i ia ē, 'o 'oia ia tō rātou Atua.
- 5 'E nō te mau 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ho'i, e fa'a'eta'eta ai tō Ierusalemia i tō rātou 'ā'au iāna, 'ia fa'asātaurohia 'oia.
- 6 Nō reira, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e tae mai ai i ni'a ia rātou te mau ha'amoura'a, 'e te mau o'e, 'e te mau ma'i rahi, 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto ho'i ; 'e 'o tei 'ore i pohe, e ha'apurarahia ia rātou i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a.
- 7 Inaha rā, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu te Atua : 'Ia tae i te mahana e ti'aturi ai rātou iā'u, 'e 'o vau te Mesia, 'e 'ua fafau atu vau i tō rātou mau metua ē, e fa'aho'i-tino-hia rātou i ni'a i te fenua nei, i tō rātou mau fenua 'āi'a.
- 8 'E a muri a'era e ha'aputuputuhia rātou mai tō rātou purara-maoro-ra'a, mai te mau motu mai o te moana, e mai nā tufa'a e maha o te ao nei ; 'e e rahi te mau nūna'a o te mau 'Ētene i mua i tō'u nei mata i te hōpoira'a ia rātou i tō rātou ra fenua 'āi'a, tē nā reira mai ra te Atua.

2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

- 9 'Oia ia, e riro te mau ari'i o te mau 'Ētene 'ei metua tāne fa'a'amu nō rātou, 'e e riro tā rātou mau ari'i vahine 'ei mau metua vahine fa'a'amu nō rātou ; nō reira, e mea rahi ia te mau fafau'a a te Fatu i te mau 'Ētene ; i parau na ho'i 'oia i te reira, 'e 'o vai ia tē ti'a 'ia mārō atu ?
- 10 Inaha rā, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Atua, e riro teie fenua 'ei fenua 'āi'a nō 'outou ; 'e e ha'amaita'ihia te mau 'Ētene i ni'a i te fenua.
- 11 'E e riro teie nei fenua 'ei fenua ti'amā i te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'aita roa e ari'i e vai i ni'a i te fenua, 'o tē tupu i rotopū i te mau 'Ētene.
- 12 'E e ha'apūai au i teie nei fenua i mua i te mau nūna'a ato'a.
- 13 'E 'o tē tama'i mai ia Ziona ra, e pohe ia 'oia, tē nā reira mai ra te Atua.
- 14 'O 'oia ho'i 'o tē fa'ati'a i te hō'ē ari'i nō te 'aro mai iā'u ra, e pohe ia 'oia, nō te mea, e riro vau, 'o te Fatu, te ari'i o te ra'i, 'ei ari'i nō rātou ; 'e e riro vau 'ei māramarama nō rātou 'o tei fa'aro'o i tā'u ra mau parau, ē a muri noa atu.
- 15 Nō reira, 'ia fa'atupuhia tā'u mau fafau'a 'o tā'u i fafau atu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, e tā'u e rave ia rātou 'a pārahi ai rātou i roto i te tino nei, 'oia ho'i 'ia ha'amou vau i te mau 'ohipa huna a te pōiri, 'e te mau taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a e ti'a ai.
- 16 Nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē tama'i mai ia Ziona, te 'āti Iuda 'e te 'Ētene ato'a ho'i, te tīti 'e te ti'amā ato'a ho'i, te tāne 'e te vahine ato'a ho'i, e pohe ia rātou ; nō te mea nō te vahine tai'ata o te ao nei ia rātou ; 'e 'o rātou e 'ere i tō'u nei ra, tē pāto'i mai nei ia rātou iā'u, tē nā reira mai ra tō tātou Atua.
- 17 E fa'atupu ho'i au i tā'u mau fafau'a ato'a o tā'u i fafau atu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e e fa'atupu vau i te reira ia rātou 'a pārahi ai rātou i roto i te tino nei—
- 18 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē nā 'ō mai ra tō tātou Atua : E fa'atae mai au i te 'ati rahi i ni'a i tō 'oe hua'ai nā roto i te rima o te mau 'Ētene ; 'āre'a rā e ha'amarū vau i te 'ā'au o te mau 'Ētene, 'ia riro rātou mai te hō'ē metua tāne ia rātou ; nō reira, e ha'amaita'ihia te mau 'Ētene 'e e tai'ohia rātou i rotopū i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

- 19 Nō reira, e ha'amo'a vau i teie nei fenua nō tō 'oe ra hua'ai, 'e nō rātou 'o tē tai'ohia i rotopū i tō 'oe ra hua'ai, 'ei fenua 'āi'a nō rātou ē a muri noa atu ; 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te Atua iā'u, e fenua maita'i ho'i ia i te mau fenua ato'a, nō reira e tītau vau i te mau ta'ata ato'a e pārahi i ni'a i te reira 'ia ha'amori mai iā'u, tē nā reira mai ra te Atua.
- 20 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, i te mea ē, 'ua hōro'a mai tō tātou Atua aroha i te 'ite rahi ia tātou nō teie nei mau mea, 'a ha'amana'o tātou iāna, 'e 'a fa'aru'e i tā tātou mau hara, 'e 'eiaha e fa'atautau i tō tātou upo'o i raro, 'aore ho'i tātou i fa'aru'ehia ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ti'avaruhia tātou i rāpae i tō tātou fenua 'āi'a ; 'e 'ua arata'ihia ho'i tātou i te hō'ē fenua maita'i a'e, 'e nā te Fatu ho'i i fa'ariri i te miti 'ei 'ē'a nō tātou, 'e tei ni'a tātou i te hō'ē motu nō te moana.
- 21 'Āre'a rā 'ua rahi tā te Fatu mau fafaura'a ia rātou 'o tei pārahi i ni'a i te mau motu o te moana ; nō reira, i te mea i parauhia ē, e mau motu nō te moana, 'ua hau atu ia i teie, 'e 'ua fa'aea-ato'a-hia ho'i te reira e tō tātou mau taea'e.
- 22 Inaha ho'i, 'ua arata'i 'ē atu te Fatu te Atua i te tahi pae ta'ata o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela nei i terā tau i terā tau 'ia au i tōna hina'aro e tōna mana'o. 'E i teienei, inaha, tē ha'amana'o nei te Fatu ia rātou i 'ōfene-'ē-hia ra, nō reira, tē ha'amana'o ato'a mai nei 'oia ia tātou.
- 23 Nō reira, 'ia 'oa'oa tō 'outou 'ā'au, 'e 'a ha'amana'o ē, e mea ti'amā 'outou 'ia rave noa atu i tei au i tō 'outou hina'aro—'ia mā'iti i te 'ē'a o te pohe mure 'ore 'e 'aore rā i te 'ē'a o te ora mure 'ore.
- 24 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a fa'a'āfaro 'outou ia 'outou iho i te hina'aro o te Atua, 'e 'eiaha i te hina'aro o te diablo 'e tō te tino nei ; 'e 'a ha'amana'o 'outou ē, i muri a'e i tō 'outou fa'a'āfara'a ia 'outou i te Atua, 'e nā roto ia i te maita'i o te Atua e fa'aorahia ai 'outou.
- 25 Nō reira, 'ia fa'ati'a mai te Atua ia 'outou mai te pohe mai nā roto i te mana o te ti'afa'ahoura'a, e mai te pohe mure 'ore ho'i nā roto i te mana o te tāra'ehara, 'ia fāri'ihia 'outou i roto i te bāsileia mure 'ore o te Atua, 'e 'ia 'āru'e 'outou iāna nā roto i te maita'i o te Atua. 'Āmene.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

2 Nephi 11

- 1 'E i teienei, 'ua parau atu 'o Iakoba e rave rahi atu ā mau mea i tō'u ra mau ta'ata i taua taimē ra ; 'āre'a rā, 'o teie mau mea ana'e tā'u i hina'aro 'ia pāpa'ihia, nō te mea 'ua nava'i iā'u te mau mea i pāpa'ihia e au ra.
- 2 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i ā vau, 'o Nephi, i te mau parau a Isaia, nō te mea 'ua 'oa'oa tō'u vārua i tāna ra mau parau. E fa'aau ho'i au i tāna ra mau parau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e e fa'atae atu ho'i au i te reira i tā'u mau tamari'i ato'a, 'e 'ua 'ite mau ho'i 'oia i tō'u ra Tāra'ehara, mai tā'u ato'a iho i 'ite iāna ra.
- 3 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i tō'u teina, 'o Iakoba, iāna, mai tā'u ho'i i 'ite iāna ; nō reira, e fa'atae atu vau i tā rāua mau parau i tā'u ra mau tamari'i nō te fa'a'ite pāpū ia rātou ē, e parau mau tā'u mau parau. Nō reira, i parau mai ai te Atua ē, nā roto i nā 'ite to'otoru e fa'ati'a vau i tā'u nei mau parau. 'Āre'a rā, tē tononā nei ā te Atua i te mau 'ite, 'e tē ha'apāpū mai ra 'oia i tāna ihora mau parau.
- 4 'E inaha, 'ua 'oa'oa tō'u vārua i te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a atu i tō'u mau ta'ata i te parau mau nō te taera'a mai o te Mesia ; nō te reira ho'i i hōro'ahia mai ai te ture a Mose ra ; 'e te mau mea ato'a ho'i i hōro'ahia mai e te Atua mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei, i te ta'ata nei, e taipē ana'e ia nōna ra.
- 5 Tē 'oa'oa ato'a nei ho'i tō'u vārua i te mau fafau'a tā te Fatu i fafau mai i tō mātou ra mau metua ; 'oia ia, tē 'oa'oa nei tō'u vārua i roto i tōna ra maita'i, 'e i roto i tāna ra parauti'a, 'e te mana, 'e te aroha i roto i te 'ōpuara'a rahi 'e te mure 'ore nō te fa'aorara'a mai te pohe mai ra.
- 6 'E tē oaoa nei ho'i tō'u vārua i te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a atu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ē, 'ia 'ore te Mesia e tae mai, e pohe ia te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 7 'Āhiri ho'i 'aita e Mesia, 'aita ato'a ia e Atua ; 'e 'āhiri 'aita e Atua, 'aita ato'a ia tātou nei, nō te mea 'aore ia te hō'ē a'e mea i hāmanihia. 'Āre'a rā tē vai nei te Atua, 'e 'o 'oia te Mesia, 'e e tae mai 'oia i te 'ira'a o tōna ra tau mau.
- 8 'E i teienei tē pāpa'i nei au i te tahi mau parau a Isaia, 'ia 'oa'oa te 'ā'au o tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'o tē 'ite i teie nei mau parau, 'e 'ia pōpou rātou nō te mau ta'ata ato'a. I teienei 'o teie te mau parau, 'e 'ua ti'a ho'i ia 'outou 'ia fa'aau i te reira ia 'outou 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i.

2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

2 Nephi 12

- 1 Te parau tā Isaia, te tamaiti a Amosa, i 'ite nō ni'a ia Iuda 'e Ierusalemā :
- 2 'E a muri a'era 'ia tae i te mau mahana hope'a ra, e fa'ati'ahia te mou'a ra o te fare o te Fatu i ni'a i te tupua'i o te mau mou'a, 'e e fa'ateiteihia ia i ni'a a'e i te mau 'āivi, 'e e ta'iruru mai tō te mau nūna'a ato'a ra i reira.
- 3 'E e rave rahi te ta'ata e haere ma te parau ē : 'A haere mai, e haere tātou i ni'a i te mou'a o te Fatu, i te fare o te Atua o Iakoba ; 'e nāna e ha'api'i mai ia tātou i tōna ra mau haere'a, 'e e haere tātou nā ni'a i tōna ra mau 'ē'a ; i nā Ziona atu ho'i te ture i te revara'a atu, 'e te parau a te Fatu i nā Ierusalemā atu ia.
- 4 'E nāna e ha'avā i rotopū i te mau nūna'a, 'e e a'o 'ū'ana atu i te parau i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi ; 'e e tūpa'i rātou i tā rātou mau 'o'e 'ei mau 'āuri 'ārote, 'e tā rātou mau māhae 'ei mau tipī tope ra—'e 'aita te hō'ē nūna'a e 'aro atu i te tahi atu nūna'a, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou e ha'api'i fa'ahou 'ia 'aro.
- 5 E te 'utuāfare o Iakoba ē, 'a haere mai 'outou 'e 'a haere ana'e tātou nā roto i te māramarama o te Fatu ; 'oia ia, 'a haere mai, i haere na ho'i 'outou ato'a nā te 'ē'a 'ē, 'o te ta'ata i tōna ihora haere'a parauti'a 'ore.
- 6 Nō reira, e te Fatu, 'ua fa'aru'e ho'i 'oe i tō 'oe mau ta'ata, i te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, nō te mea, 'ua 'ī rātou i te tāiroiro nō te hiti'a o te rā mai, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o rātou i te feiā tahutahu mai tō te Philiseti ra, 'e 'ua au atu rātou i te mau tamari'i a te mau ta'ata 'e'ē ra.
- 7 'Ua 'ī ho'i tō rātou fenua i te 'ārio 'e te 'auro, 'e 'aita e hope'a nō te rahira'a o tā rātou mau tao'a ; 'ua 'ī ato'a tō rātou fenua i te pua'ahorofenua, 'e 'aita ato'a e hope'a nō te rahira'a o tō rātou mau pere'o'o.
- 8 'Ua 'ī ho'i tō rātou fenua i te mau 'idolo ; 'e tē ha'amori ra rātou i te 'ohipa a tō rātou iho rima, i tā tō rātou iho rimarima i hāmani.
- 9 'E 'aita te ta'ata ri'i e tāhopu i raro, 'e 'aita te ta'ata mana e fa'aha'eha'a iāna iho, nō reira, 'eiaha e fa'a'ore i tāna mau hara.
- 10 E te mau ta'ata parauti'a 'ore ē, 'a haere i roto i te mato, 'e 'a fa'atāpuni ia 'outou i raro i te repo, nō te mea nā te mata'u o te Fatu 'e te hanahana o tōna ra mana e tā'iri mai ia 'outou na.

2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

11 'E a muri a'era, e fa'aha'eha'ahia te mata teitei o te ta'ata nei, 'e te te'ote'o o te ta'ata nei e tu'uhia ia i raro, 'e 'o te Fatu ana'e iho tē fa'ateiteihia i te reira mahana.

12 E tae vave mai ho'i te mahana o te Fatu Sabaota ra i ni'a i te mau nūna'a ato'a ; 'oia ia, i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'oia ia, i ni'a i te feiā te'ote'o 'e te fa'ateitei ; 'e i ni'a ho'i i te feiā fa'aahaaha, e fa'aha'eha'ahia ia 'oia i raro.

13 'Oia ia, e tae mai te mahana o te Fatu i ni'a iho i te mau 'āreti ato'a nō Lebanona, nō te mea 'ua teitei rātou 'e tē fa'ateiteihia ra ho'i ; 'e i ni'a iho i te mau aluna ato'a nō Basana ra.

14 'E i ni'a iho i te mau mou'a teitei ato'a, 'e i ni'a iho i te mau 'āivi ato'a, 'e i ni'a iho i te mau nūna'a ato'a i fa'aahaaha ra, 'e i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata ato'a ra.

15 'E i ni'a iho i te mau pare teitei ato'a, 'e i ni'a iho i te mau patu ato'a i 'āuahia ra.

16 'E i ni'a iho i te mau pahī ato'a o te moana, 'e i ni'a iho i te mau pahī ato'a nō Taresisa ; 'e i ni'a iho i te mau mea auhia 'e te mata.

17 'E e tu'uhia te fa'ateitei o te ta'ata i raro ; 'e te te'ote'o o te ta'ata e fa'aha'eha'ahia ia ; 'e 'o te Fatu ana'e iho te fa'ateiteihia i te reira mahana.

18 'E te mau 'īdolo ra 'o tāna ia e ha'amou roa.

19 'E e reva 'ē ho'i rātou i roto i te mau 'āpo'o o te mau mato ra, 'e i roto i te mau ana o te fenua nei, nō te mea e tae mai te mata'u o te Fatu i ni'a ia rātou 'e e tā'iri te hanahana o tōna ra mana ia rātou, 'ia ti'a mai 'oia i ni'a nō te ueue 'ū'ana i te fenua nei.

20 'Ia tae i te reira mahana e fa'aru'e mai te ta'ata i tāna mau 'īdolo 'ārio, 'e tāna mau 'īdolo 'auro, 'o tāna iho i hāmani 'ei ha'amorira'a nāna iho, nā te mau 'iore 'e nā te mau 'iore pererau.

21 Nō te haere i roto i te mau ārea o te mau mato ra, 'e i roto i te mau mato 'āmahamaha ra, nō te mea e tae mai te mata'u o te Fatu i ni'a ia rātou 'e e tā'iri te mana o tōna ra hanahana ia rātou, 'ia ti'a mai 'oia i ni'a nō te ueue 'ū'ana i te fenua nei.

22 'Ātūrā na i te ti'aturi i te ta'ata, tei te 'āpo'o ihu ho'i tōna ra aho ; nō reira tei hea ia tōna faufa'a rahi ?

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

2 Nephi 13

- 1 Inaha ho'i, tē 'iriti 'ē nei te Fatu, 'oia te Fatu Sabaota, mai roto mai ia Ierusalem, 'e mai roto mai ia Iuda, i te mau tauturura'a nō te ora, te tauturura'a nō te pāne, 'e te tauturura'a nō te pape—
- 2 Te ta'ata pūai, 'e te ta'ata 'aro, te ha'avā, 'e te peropheta, 'e te ta'ata 'aravihi, 'e te ta'ata ruhiruhiā ;
- 3 Te ra'atira nō te mau ta'ata e pae 'ahuru, 'e te ta'ata tura, 'e te fa'aa'o, 'e te 'aravihi maita'i, 'e te ta'ata 'orero 'aravihi.
- 4 E fa'ariro vau i te mau tamari'i 'ei hui ari'i nō rātou, 'e te mau 'aiū 'ei tāvana nō rātou.
- 5 E hāmani-'ino-hia te mau ta'ata, te tahi i te tahi, te mau ta'ata ato'a nā tōna iho ta'ata tupu ; e fa'ate'ote'o atu te tamari'i iāna i te ta'ata ruhiruhiā, 'e tei ha'eha'ara i tei tura.
- 6 'Ia haru te ta'ata i tōna taea'e, nō te 'utuāfare o tōna ra metua, 'a parau atu ai ē : E 'ahu tō 'oe, 'a haere mai, 'ei fa'atere 'oe i ni'a ia mātou, 'e 'eiaha e vaiiho i teie 'ati 'ia tae mai i raro a'e i tō 'oe mana—
- 7 'E i te reira mahana e tapu ai 'oia, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Eiaha vau 'ia riro 'ei fa'aora i tō 'outou pohe ; 'aita roa e mā'a 'e te 'ahu i roto i tō'u ra fare ; 'eiaha roa vau 'ia fa'arirohia 'ei fa'atere i teie nei mau ta'ata.
- 8 Tē tūrorirori nei ho'i Ierusalem, 'e tē hi'a nei Iuda ; nō te mea tē pāto'i mai nei tō rātou arero 'e tā rātou mau rāve'a i te Fatu, nō te fa'ao'ō'o atu i te mata nō tōna ra hanahana.
- 9 Nā te hōho'a o tō rātou mata e fa'a'ite pāpū nei i tō rātou iho hape, 'e tē fa'a'ite ra te reira i tā rātou hara mai ia Sodoma te huru, 'e 'aore roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia huna i te reira. 'Auē ho'i tō rātou mau vārua ē, nā rātou iho i hōpoi mai i te 'ino i ni'a ia rātou iho !
- 10 'A parau atu i te feiā parauti'a e maita'i ia tō rātou ; e 'amu ho'i rātou i te hotu o tā rātou ra 'ohipa.
- 11 'Auē ho'i te feiā parauti'a 'ore ē, e 'ati rahi tō rātou ; e tāho'ohia mai te utu'a a tō rātou rima i ni'a ia rātou !
- 12 'E tō'u nei mau ta'ata, e tamari'i te feiā hāmani 'ino ia rātou, 'e nā te mau vahine e fa'atere ia rātou. E tō'u nei mau ta'ata ē, nā te feiā i arata'i ia 'oe i arata'i 'ē atu ia 'oe 'e i ha'amou i te 'ē'a o tō 'oe ra mau haere'a.

2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

13 Tē ti'a nei te Fatu nō te pāroru, 'e tē ti'a nei 'oia nō te ha'avā i te ta'ata.

14 'E i te ha'avāra'a te Fatu e fārerei ai i te feiā ruhiruhiā o tōna ra mau ta'ata 'e tō rātou mau hui ari'i ; 'e 'ua 'amu-pau-hia e 'outou te 'ō vine, 'e te tao'a haru a te ta'ata ri'iri'i ra, tei roto ia i tō 'outou mau fare.

15 E aha tenā na ? Tē hāmani 'ino nei 'outou i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e tē oro nei i te mata o te ta'ata ri'iri'i, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu te Atua Sabaota.

16 'Oia fa'ahou, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : Nō te mea 'ua te'ote'o te mau tamāhine o Ziona, 'e 'ua haere ma te fa'ateni i te 'a'i ra, 'e ma te mata 'apatahi 'ia haere, 'e tē haere ra ma te titotito, 'e ma te ha'amāniania i te mau fa'a'una'una i ni'a i tō rātou ra mau 'āvae—

17 Nō reira e fa'aha'e'ha'a te Fatu i te upo'o o te mau tamāhine o Ziona ; 'e e fa'a'ite ho'i te Fatu i tō rātou ra mau vāhi huna.

18 'Ia tae i taua mahana ra, e rave 'ē ai te Fatu i tō rātou mau fa'a'una'una, 'e te mau 'ūpe'a rouru, 'e te mau hui menemene mai te 'āva'e ra ;

19 'E te mau fifi 'arapo'a, 'e te mau fifi rima, 'e te mau 'ahu pū'āverevere nō te 'a'i 'e te mata ;

20 'E te mau tā'ai upo'o ra, 'e te mau fifi 'āvae ra, 'e te mau tā'amu upo'o ra, 'e te mau tao'a fa'ano'ano'a ra ; 'e te mau tāpe'a tari'a ra ;

21 'E te mau tāpe'a rima ra, 'e te mau fa'a'una'una ihu ra ;

22 Te mau 'ahu fa'a'una'unahia ra, 'e te mau perēue roa, 'e te mau 'ahu tāpo'i upo'o 'e te 'a'i ra, 'e te mau tao'a fa'anehehe rouru ;

23 Te mau hi'o ra, 'e te 'ahu paruai maita'i ra ; 'e te mau tāupo'o 'ahu ra, 'e te mau pāroru mata ra.

24 'E a muri a'era, e monohia te hau'a no'ano'a i te hau'a 'ino ; 'e e monohia te 'ahu tātua-maita'i-hia i te pūveuveu ; 'e e monohia te rouru fa'atororiro ra i te pahure ; 'e e monohia te tātua maita'i ra i te tātua 'ahu 'oto ra ; 'e te'iri pa'apa'a mahana ra 'ei mono i te purotu.

25 E pohe tō 'oe mau ta'ata i te 'o'e 'e tō 'oe mau ta'ata 'aito ra i roto ia i te 'arora'a.

26 E 'ati tōna mau 'ūputa i te 'oto 'e te autā ; 'e e pārahi ho'i 'oia i raro i te repo ma te ano.

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet—

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires like the moon;

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

The rings, and nose jewels;

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war.

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

2 Nephi 14

- 1 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e haru mai ai nā vahine to'ohitu ra i te tāne hō'ē, 'a nā 'ō mai ē : E 'amu mātou i tā mātou iho mā'a, e 'ahu mātou i tō mātou iho 'ahu ; 'o tō 'oe i'oa ana'e ra tē ma'iri mai i ni'a ia mātou nei ; nō te hōpoi 'ē atu 'oe i te parau fa'a'ino ia mātou nei.
- 2 'E i taua mahana ra, e riro ai te 'āma'a o te Fatu ra 'ei mea nehenehe 'e te hanahana ; 'e e riro ho'i te hotu o te fenua ra 'ei mea maita'i roa 'e te nehenehe ho'i i tō 'Īserā'ela i ora mai.
- 3 'E a muri a'era, e riro ho'i tei toe i Ziona ra 'e tei pārahi i Ierusalema ra i te parauhia ē, e ta'ata mo'a ; te feiā ato'a i pāpa'ihia i rotopū i te feiā ora i Ierusalema ra—
- 4 'ia pau i te horoihia e te Fatu te vi'ivi'i o te mau tamāhine o Ziona ra, 'e 'ia hōpoi-'ē-hia te toto o Ierusalema mai rotopū iāna ra e te vārua ha'avāra'a 'e te vārua auahi ra.
- 5 'E i reira te Fatu e hāmani ai i te mau vāhi fa'aeara'a ato'a ra i te mou'a ra o Ziona, 'e i ni'a ato'a i te mau 'āmuira'a mo'a nōna ra, i te ata 'e te au auahi i te ao ra, 'e te 'ana'ana o te auahi 'ama ra i te pō ; 'e e riro te reira 'ei pāruru i ni'a i te hanahana ato'a o Ziona ra.
- 6 'E e riro ho'i te reira 'ei sēkene nō te tamarura'a i te ao i te ve'ave'a ; 'e 'ei vāhi nō te ha'apūra'a, 'e 'ei fa'arurura'a i te vero 'e te ua.

2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

2 Nephi 15

- 1 'E i reira e hīmene ai au i tō'u hoa here rahi i te tahi hīmene o tā'u i here, nō ni'a i tāna ra 'ō vine. E 'ō vine tā tō'u hoa here rahi i ni'a i te 'āivi hotu rahi.
- 2 'E 'ua 'āua ihora 'oia i te reira, 'e 'ua 'ohi ihora i te mau 'ōfa'i 'e 'ua pau, 'e 'ua tanu ihora i te vine maita'i roa ; 'e 'ua patu ihora i te pare i rōpū i te reira, 'e 'ua hāmani ihora i te nene'ira'a uaina i roto ra ; 'e 'ua mana'o ihora 'oia e fa'ahotu mai te reira i te vine mau, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu mai ra te reira i te vine 'ōviri.
- 3 'E i teienei, e te mau ta'ata nō Ierusalemā ē, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a nō Iuda nei ; tē ani nei au ia 'outou, 'a hi'opo'a na iā'u 'e taua 'ō vine nā'u nei.
- 4 E aha atu ā ho'i tē ti'a 'ia ravehia i roto i taua 'ō vine nā'u ra, 'o tei 'ore ā i ravehia e au ra ? Nō reira, i mana'o na ho'i au e fa'ahotu mai te reira i te vine maita'i, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu mai te reira i te vine 'ōviri.
- 5 'E i teienei, inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i tā'u e rave i taua 'ō vine nā'u nei—e hōpoi 'ē au i te 'āua, 'e 'ia pau roa i te 'amuhia ; 'e e vāvāhi au i te patu, 'e 'ia pau i te ta'ata'ahihia i raro.
- 6 'E e fa'aano roa vau i te reira 'ia ano ; 'e 'aita te reira e topehia 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i e 'ūtaruhia ; e tupu rā te mau rā'au taratara 'e te tātārāmoa i roto ra ; e fa'aue ho'i au i te mau ata ē 'eiaha rātou e ha'ama'iri i te ua i ni'a ihora.
- 7 Nō te mea 'o taua 'ō vine a te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ia, 'e te mau ta'ata nō Iuda ra, 'o tāna ia ohī pou pou ; 'e 'ua tīa'i ho'i 'oia i te parau mau, 'e inaha, 'o te hāmani 'ino tei 'itea ; 'ua tīa'i ho'i i te parauti'a, 'o te 'auē ia tei 'itea.
- 8 'Auē ho'i te feiā 'o tē 'āpiti atu i te fare i te tahi fare, 'e 'aore atu ra e fenua toe nō te tahi 'ē, e toe noa ihora rātou ana'e ra i rōpū i te fenua ra !
- 9 'Ua fa'a'ite mai te Fatu Sabaota ra i tō'u nei tari'a, e rave rahi te fare e riro 'ei fare ta'ata 'ore ; 'e te mau 'oire rahi 'e te nehenehe ato'a, 'e 'aita ia e ta'atahia.
- 10 'Oia ia, i roto i te 'ō vine hō'ē 'ahuru akera, hō'ē ia bato uaina e noa'a mai, 'e hō'ē ho'i huero homera ra, ta'ihō'ē ia epha e noa'a mai.
- 11 'Auē ho'i te feiā e ara 'oi'oi i te po'ipo'i, i te tītaura'a i te 'ava ta'ero, 'e te tāmāu-noa-ra'a ē tae atu i te pō, 'ia ta'ero rātou i te uaina !

2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

12 'E te kinura, 'e te nabala, 'e te tophe, 'e te helila, 'e te uaina, tei tā rātou ia mau fa'a'amu'a ; 'āre'a te 'ohipa a te Fatu ra, 'aore ia rātou i ha'apa'o, 'e 'aore ato'a i feruri i te 'ohipa i ravehia e tōna nā rima.

13 Nō reira, 'ua tūtū tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te mea 'aita tō rātou e 'ite ; 'e 'ua pau tō rātou feiā mana i te pohe i te po'ia, 'e tō rātou pupu ta'ata, 'ua pohe ia i te po'ihā.

14 Nō reira, 'ua fa'arahi hade iāna iho, 'e 'ua hāmama rahi i tōna vaha, 'aore e fāito ; 'e te roto noa atu ra iāna tō rātou ra feiā mana, 'e tō rātou pupu ta'ata, 'e tō rātou feiā te'ote'o, 'e 'o 'oia ato'a 'o tē 'oa'oa ra.

15 'E te ta'ata ri'i ra e tu'uhia ia i raro, 'e te ta'ata rahi ra e fa'aha'eha'ahia ia, 'e te mata o te ta'ata fa'ateitei ra e fa'aha'eha'ahia ia i raro.

16 'Āre'a te Fatu Sabaota ra e fa'ateitehia i te parau mau nāna ra, 'e te Atua ho'i 'o tei mo'a ra e ha'amo'ahia ia i roto i te parauti'a.

17 'E i reira te mau fanau'a māmoe e 'amu haere noa ai, 'e nā te feiā 'e'ē e 'amu ha'apau roa i te mau vāhi ano o te feiā ha'aporā ra.

18 'Auē ho'i rātou 'o tei 'ume i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ma te taura faufa'a 'ore ra, 'e te hara ma te taura rahi pere'o'o ra ;

19 'O tei parau ē : 'A vaiho iāna 'ia ha'avitiviti 'e 'ia fa'a'oi'oi i tāna 'ohipa, 'ia 'ite atu tātou i te reira ; 'ia tupu vave ho'i te parau a Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei 'e 'ia ha'afātata mai, 'e 'ia 'ite tātou i te reira.

20 'Auē ho'i rātou 'o tei parau i te 'ino e maita'i, 'e te maita'i e 'ino, 'o tei parau i te pōiri e māmarama, 'e te māmarama e pōiri, 'e tei parau i te maramara e momona, 'e te momona e maramara.

21 'Auē ho'i rātou 'o tei fa'ariro ia rātou iho 'ei mea 'aravihi i tō rātou iho hi'ora'a 'e 'ei mea ha'apa'o maita'i i tō rātou iho mana'ora'a !

22 'Auē rātou 'o tei pūai i te inu uaina, 'e te feiā pūai i te 'āno'i i te 'ava pūai.

23 'O tei fa'ati'amā i te feiā parauti'a 'ore nō te utu'a maita'i, 'e 'o tei fa'a'ore i te parauti'a o te ta'ata parauti'a ra !

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

- 24 Nō reira, mai te auahi e ha'apau i te 'aihere ra, e mai te auahi ura e ha'apau i te ota ra, e riro ato'a tō rātou a'a i te pē ra, 'e tō rātou mau pua e pe'e ia i ni'a mai te repo puehu ra ; nō te mea 'ua fa'aru'e rātou i ture a te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'e 'ua vahavaha i te parau a Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei.
- 25 Nō reira, 'ua tupu te riri o te Fatu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'atoro 'oia i tōna rima i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua tā'iri ihora ia rātou ; 'e 'ua rurutaina ihora te mau 'āivi ; 'e 'ua riro atu ra tō rātou mau tino mai te para i rotopū i te mau aroā ra. Nō teie mau mea ato'a 'aita tōna riri i fāriu 'ē, tē fa'atoro-noa-hia mai ra rā tōna rima.
- 26 'E e fa'ati'a 'oia i te tahi reva nō te mau fenua i te ātea 'ē ra, 'e e hiohio 'oia ia rātou i te hope'a mai o te fenua ra ; 'E inaha, e haere mai ho'i rātou ma te pe'epe'e rahi ; 'e 'aore roa te hō'ē i rotopū ia rātou e rohirohi e 'aore ho'i e turori.
- 27 E 'aore roa ho'i e ti'aruhe 'e 'aore ato'a e ta'oto ; 'e 'aore te tātua e matara i tō rātou tau'upu, 'e 'aore ho'i te tāpe'a o tō rātou mau tia'a e mutu.
- 28 'Ua 'oi tā rātou mau te'a, 'e 'ua ha'afefehia tā rātou mau fana ; e riro te mau mai'u'u o tā rātou mau pua'ahorofenua mai te 'ōfa'i 'arā ra, 'e tō rātou mau huira ra mai te pūāhiohio ia, tō rātou 'ū'uru ra mai tō te liona ia.
- 29 E 'ū'uru rātou mai te mau liona 'āpī ra ; 'oia ia, e 'ū'uru rātou ma te haru i te tao'a, 'e 'a hōpoi 'ē atu ai, 'e e 'ore roa e noa'a fa'ahou mai.
- 30 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e 'ū'uru mai rātou ia rātou mai te haruru o te miti ra ; 'e mai te mea e hi'o atu rātou i raro i te repo ra, 'e inaha, e pōiri 'e te 'oto, 'e e 'ārehurehu ho'i te māmarama i roto i te mau ra'i.

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

2 Nephi 16

- 1 I te matahiti i pohe ai te ari'i ra 'o Uzia, 'ua 'ite ato'a atu vau i te Fatu i te pārahira'a i ni'a i te terōno teitei 'e tei fa'ateiteihia ra, 'e 'ua 'i ho'i te hiero i te hiti 'ahu roroa nōna ra.
- 2 Tē ti'a noa ra nā seraphi i ni'a a'e ; ta'iono o rātou ato'a ra pererau ; e piti ra 'ei tāpo'i ia i tōna mata, 'e e piti ato'a ra 'ei tāpo'i ia i tōna 'āvae, 'e e piti ato'a ra 'ei ma'uera'a ia.
- 3 'E 'ua pi'i ihora te tahi i te tahi, nā 'ō a'era : E mo'a, e mo'a, e mo'a, 'o te Fatu Sabaota ra ; 'ua 'i te fenua ato'a nei i tōna ra hanahana.
- 4 'Ua ruroriri ihora nā pou o te opani i te reo nōna 'o tei pi'i ra ; 'e 'ua 'i a'era ho'i te hiero i te au auahi.
- 5 'Ua nā 'ō a'era ho'i au : 'Auē ho'i au nei ē, 'ua mou vau nei ; nō te mea e ta'ata vaha vi'ivi'i ho'i au ; 'e tei rotopū ho'i au i te mau ta'ata vaha vi'ivi'i ato'a i te pārahira'a ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i tō'u nei mata i te Ari'i, te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 6 'E 'ua ma'ue mai ra te hō'ē seraphi iā'u nei, 'e tei tōna rima te hō'ē 'ārahu 'ama, i ravehia mai e ana i te fa'ahohoni nō ni'a mai i te fata ra.
- 7 'E 'ua tu'u mai ra 'oia i te reira i ni'a i tō'u vaha, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : Inaha, 'ua ū tō 'utu i teie ; 'e 'ua fa'ata'a-'ē-hia tā 'oe mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'e 'ua fa'a'orehia tā 'oe ra hara.
- 8 'Oia ato'a, 'ua fa'aro'o vau i te reo o te Fatu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'O vai tā'u e tonono, 'e 'o vai tē haere nō tātou ? 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau : Teie au ; 'a tonono iā'u.
- 9 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia : 'A haere 'e 'a fa'a'ite atu i teie nei feiā—'A fa'aro'o mai na 'outou, 'aita rā rātou i māramarama ; 'e 'a hi'o mai na 'outou, 'aita rā rātou i 'ite.
- 10 'A ha'ame'ume'u i te 'ā'au o teie nei feiā, 'e 'a 'ōpani i tō rātou tari'a, 'e 'a ha'apō i tō rātou mata—'o te 'ite ho'i rātou i tō rātou mata, 'e 'o te fa'aro'o ho'i tō rātou tari'a, 'e 'o te māramarama ho'i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'o te fa'afāriuhia mai 'e 'o tē fa'aorahia ho'i rātou.
- 11 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau : E te Fatu, e aha te maorora'a ? 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'Ia pau roa te mau 'oire 'e 'aita e ta'ata fa'ahou, 'e te mau fare ato'a 'aita e ta'ata toe, 'e 'ia ano roa te fenua ra ;

2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

12 'E 'ia hōpoi-'ē-roa-hia e te Fatu te ta'ata, 'e e tupu te fa'aru'era'a rahi i ni'a i te fenua nei.

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

13 'Āre'a rā e toe ri'i noa mai te 'ahurura'a o te ta'ata, 'e e ho'i mai rātou, e pau ato'a rātou i te pohepohe, mai te rā'au ra te ale 'e te aluna ra, tē vai noa ra te ora i roto i tōna tumu 'a ma'iri noa ai tōna mau rau i raro ; 'e e riro ato'a te huero mo'a 'ei tumu nō taua fenua ra.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

2 Nephi 17

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te mau mahana o Ahaza te ari'i nō Iuda, te tamaiti a Iotama, te tamaiti a Uzia, 'ua haere mai ra Resina, te ari'i nō Arama, 'e 'o Peka te ari'i nō 'Iserā'ela, te tamaiti a Remalia, nō te 'aro ia Ierusalemā, 'e 'aita rā i pau ia rāua.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'a'itehia te 'utuāfare o Davida, i te nā-'ō-ra'a-hia atu ē : 'Ua turuhia Arama 'e Epheraima. 'E 'ua 'āueue ihora te 'ā'au o te ari'i 'e te 'ā'au o tōna ra mau ta'ata, mai te mau tumu rā'au o te vāhi uru rā'au e 'āueue i te mata'i ra.
- 3 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu ia Isaia : 'A haere atu i teieni e fāreirei ia Ahaza, 'o 'oe 'e tā 'oe tamaiti ra 'o Seare-iasuba, i te hope'a roa o te pape tahe ra o te roto i ni'a, i te arati'a o te 'āua o te tāmā 'ahu ra ;
- 4 'E 'a parau atu iāna : 'A ha'apa'o maita'i, 'e 'ia vai hau noa ; 'eiaha e mata'u, 'eiaha ato'a e taiā te 'ā'au i nā aveave o teie nei mau 'ōmo'i e 'ama nei, i te riri rahi o Resina 'e o Arama, 'e tō te tamaiti a Remalia ra.
- 5 Nō te mea, 'ua 'ōpua Arama, Epheraima, 'e te tamaiti a Remalia, i te mana'o 'ino ia 'oe i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 6 E haere tātou i ni'a e rave ia Iuda 'e e a'ua'u atu ; e vāhi mai tātou i te tahi pae nō tātou iho ; 'e e fa'ata'a tātou i te tahi ari'i i rōpū, 'oia ia, i te tamaiti a Tabeala.
- 7 Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu te Atua : E 'ore ia parau e ti'a, 'e e 'ore ho'i e tupu.
- 8 Nō te mea te upo'o o Arama 'o Damaseko ia, 'e te upo'o o Damaseko 'o Resina ia ; e'ita e tae i te toru ta'au ma pae o te matahiti, e 'āmahamaha ai Epheraima, e 'ore atu ra e parauhia e ta'ata.
- 9 'E te upo'o o Epheraima 'o Samaria ia ; 'e te upo'o o Samaria 'o te tamaiti ia a Remalia. 'Ia 'ore 'outou e ti'aturi, e 'ore 'outou e ha'apāpūhia.
- 10 'Oia fa'ahou, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu ia Ahaza, nā 'ō mai ra :
- 11 'A ani 'oe i te tahi tāpa'o i tō 'oe Fatu ra i te Atua ; 'a ani i te reira nō te mau mea hōhonu roa i raro 'e 'aore rā nō te mau mea teitei roa i ni'a roa.
- 12 'E 'ua parau atu ra Ahaza : E 'ore au e ani, e 'ore ho'i au e tāmata atu i te Fatu.

2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

13 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'A fa'aro'o mai na 'oe i teie nei, e te 'utuāfare o Davida ; e mea iti ānei 'outou i fa'aha'umani i te ta'ata, e fa'aha'umani ato'a ānei 'outou i tō'u Atua ?

14 Nō reira, nā te Fatu iho e hōro'a i te hō'ē tāpa'o ia 'outou—Inaha, e tō te hō'ē pāretenia, 'e e fānau i te hō'ē tamaiti, e ma'irihia ho'i tōna i'oa 'o Imanuela.

15 E 'amu 'oia i te pata 'e te meli, 'e e 'ite 'oia i te pāto'i i te mea 'ino 'e i te mā'iti i te mea maita'i.

16 Nā mua ho'i teie nei tamaiti e 'ite ai i te pāto'i i te 'ino 'e i te mā'iti i te mea maita'i, e fa'aru'ehia te fenua 'o tā 'oe i fa'aru'e e tōna nā ari'i.

17 E ro'ohia mai ra 'oe e te Fatu, 'e tō 'oe ato'a ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare ato'a o tō 'oe ra metua, i te mau mahana 'aita i 'itea mai, e mai te mahana mai ā i fa'aru'e ai Epheraima ia Iuda, 'oia te ari'i nō Asura ra.

18 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e hiohio ai te Fatu i te ra'o, i te tufa'a hope'a roa o 'Aiphiti ra ; 'e i te debure i te fenua ra nō Asura.

19 'E e haere mai ho'i rātou, 'e e tau rātou ato'a i ni'a i te mau peho i fa'aru'ehia ra, 'e te mau 'āpo'o o te mau mato ra, 'e i ni'a i te mau rā'au tātarāmoa ra, 'e i ni'a i te mau pū 'aihere ato'a ra.

20 'E i taua ato'a ra mahana e fa'a'ohipa ai te Fatu i te hahu tārahuhia ra, nā roto i te feiā i terā pae mai i te tahera'a pape, 'e nā roto i te ari'i nō Asura, i te upo'o 'e te huruhuru 'āvae ; 'e e ha'apau roa ato'a te reira i te 'umi'umi.

21 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e fa'a'amu te ta'ata i te pua'atoro 'āpī hō'ē roa 'e nā māmoe e piti ra.

22 'E a muri a'era, nō te rahi o te ū tā rātou e hōro'a mai, e 'amu ā 'oia i te pata ; 'e te ta'ata ato'a tei toe mai i ni'a i te fenua e 'amu ia rātou i te pata 'e te meli.

23 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, te mau vāhi ato'a tei reira hō'ē tauatini vine 'o tē ho'ohia ra i te hō'ē tauatini moni 'ārio, e riro ia 'ei vāhi nō te mau rā'au taratara 'e nō te mau tātarāmoa.

24 Ma te te'a 'e te fana e haere mai te mau ta'ata ato'a i reira, nō te mea e riro te fenua ato'a 'ei rā'au taratara 'e 'ei tātarāmoa.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign— Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

25 'E te mau 'āivi ato'a i 'ūtaruhia i te tapahi repo ra,
te vāhi 'aore i mata'uhia 'e te mau rā'au taratara 'e te
mau tātarāmoa ra, e riro ia 'ei haere'a nō te mau
pua'atoro, 'e 'ei ta'ata'ahira'a nā te pua'aniho 'e nā te
māmoē.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock,
there shall not come thither the fear of briers and
thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen,
and the treading of lesser cattle.

2 Nephi 18

- 1 'Oia fa'ahou, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te parau a te Fatu iā'u :
'A rave 'oe i te tahi 'ōtaro parau rahi, 'e 'a pāpa'i i ni'a
iho i te reira i te tohi a te ta'ata tahu'a ra, Mahera-
salala-hasabaza.
- 2 'E 'ua arata'i atu ra vau i nā 'ite ha'avare 'ore nā
muri iā'u 'ia pāpa'i rāua, 'o Uria te tahu'a ra, 'e 'o
Zekaria te tamaiti a Ieberekia ra.
- 3 'E 'ua ha'afātata atu ra vau i te peropheta vahine
ra ; 'e 'ua tō ihora 'oia e fānau mai ra e tamaiti. 'E 'ua
parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u : 'A ma'iri i tōna i'oa, 'o
Mahera-salala-hasa-baza.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, e 'ore roa taua tamaiti ra e 'ite i te parau
ē : E tō'u metua tāne, e tō'u metua vahine, nā mua a'e
e hōpoi-ē-hia ai te mau tao'a o Damaseko 'e te tao'a
haru o Samaria mai mua i te aro o te ari'i o Asura ra.
- 5 'Ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te Fatu iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra :
6 Nō te mea 'ua fa'aru'e teie nei feiā i te mau pape i
Siloa 'o tei tahe ri'i māite ra, 'e tē poupou ra ia
Resina, 'e te tamaiti a Remalia ra.
- 7 'E i teienei, inaha, tē hōpoi mai ra te Fatu i ni'a ia
rātou i te mau pape nō te 'ānāvai rahi ra, 'o tei 'eta'eta
'e tei pūai, 'oia te ari'i o Asura, 'e tōna ato'a ra
hanahana ; 'e e hāono noa 'oia i ni'a i tōna ra mau
tahera'a pape, 'e e manii noa nā ni'a i tōna ra mau
hiti.
- 8 'E e haere oia nā roto ia Iuda, i te hāono-noa-ra'a
'e te parare-ato'a-ra'a, e tae roa 'oia i te 'a'i ra ; 'e te
hōhorara'a o tōna pererau ra mai te 'ā'ano ato'a ia o
tō 'oe ra fenua, e Imanuela.
- 9 'A 'āmui tāhō'ē ia 'outou iho, 'e te mau ta'ata, 'e e
vāvāhi-fa'ahu'ahu'a-hia 'outou ; 'e 'a fa'aro'o mai na
'outou pā'āto'a e tō te mau fenua i te ātea roa ; 'a tātua
na ia 'outou iho, 'e e vāvāhi-f'ā'ahu'ahu'a-hia 'outou ;
'a tātua na ia 'outou iho, 'e e vāvāhi-f'ā'ahu'ahu'a-hia
'outou.
- 10 'A feruri 'āmui māite 'outou, 'e e riro 'ei mea
faufa'a 'ore ; 'a parau na i te parau, 'e e 'ore ia e tupu ;
nō te mea tei pīha'i iho te Atua ia mātou nei.
- 11 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u ma te rima pūai, 'e
'ua fa'aue mai ra iā'u ē 'eiaha vau e haere nā te
haere'a o teie nei feiā, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :

2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take
thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen,
concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record,
Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of
Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she con-
ceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call
his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to
cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of
Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken
away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of
Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and
Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up
upon them the waters of the river, strong and many,
even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he
shall come up over all his channels, and go over all
his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall over-
flow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck;
and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the
breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be
broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries;
gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces;
gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to
naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for
God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand,
and instructed me that I should not walk in the way
of this people, saying:

12 'Eiaha 'outou e parau ē : E pupu tāhō'ē, i te mau mea tā teie nei feiā e parau nei ē, E pupu tāhō'ē ; 'eiaha ho'i 'outou e mata'u i tā rātou e mata'u ra ; 'eiaha ho'i e horuhoru.

13 'A ha'amo'a i te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'e 'o 'oia tā 'outou e mata'u, 'e 'o 'oia tā 'outou e ri'ari'a.

14 'E e riro ho'i 'oia 'ei ha'apūra'a nō 'outou ; 'e 'ei 'ōfa'i turorira'a 'e 'ei mato māheaitura'a i nā 'utuāfare e piti o 'Īserā'ela, 'ei herepata 'e 'ei mārei nō tō Ierusalemā ra.

15 'E e rave rahi i rotopū ia rātou 'o tē turori 'e 'o tē hi'a, 'e 'o tē pararī, 'e 'o tē māreihia, 'e 'o tē ravehia.

16 'A ru'uru'u na i te 'itera'a pāpū ; 'a ha'amau na i te ture i rotopū i tā'u mau pipi.

17 'E e tīa'i au i te Fatu, 'o tei huna i tōna mata i te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, 'e e tīa'i ā vau iāna.

18 Inaha, 'ua riro vau 'e te mau tamari'i tā te Fatu i hōro'a mai nā'u ra 'ei mau tāpa'o 'e 'ei māerera'a i 'Īserā'ela nei nō 'ō mai i te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'o tei pārahi i te Mou'a ra i Ziona.

19 'E 'ia parau mai rātou ia 'outou ē : 'A 'imi ia rātou i te feiā vārua 'ino 'e te mau ta'ata hi'ohi'o 'o tē māniania ra 'e tē mutamuta ra—'eiaha ānei te ta'ata e 'imi i tō rātou iho Atua nō te feiā ora 'ia fa'aro'o i te parau a te feiā pohe ?

20 'A 'imi i te ture 'e i te 'itera'a pāpū ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia fa'aau i tā rātou parau i taua parau ra, nō te mea ia 'aita te māramarama i roto ia rātou.

21 E hope roa ia rātou i te haere nā roto i taua fenua nei nō te 'ati rahi 'e te po'ia ; 'e a muri a'era, 'ia pohe rātou i te po'ia, e riri rātou ia rātou iho, 'e e tuhi rātou i tō rātou ari'i e tō rātou Atua, 'e 'a hi'o ai i ni'a.

22 E mai reira ho'i e hi'o rātou i te fenua nei 'e e 'ite rātou i te 'ati 'e te pōiri, i te 'āru'iru'i 'e te ahoaho, 'e e ti'avaruhia i roto i te pōiri.

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

2 Nephi 19

- 1 E 'ere rā te pōiri i te rahi mai roto i tōna mau ha'ape'ape'ara'a, mai iāna ho'i i tā'iri i muta'a ihora i te fenua ra nō Zebuluna, 'e te fenua ra nō Naphatali, 'e i te taime hope'a ra, e tā'iri 'ū'ana ia 'oia i te haere'a tahatai, nā te pae i te miti 'Ute'ute i Ioridana ra, 'oia Galilea nō te mau nūna'a e rave rahi ra.
- 2 Te feiā i haere noa nā te pōiri ra, e māramarama rahi tei 'itea ia rātou ; te feiā i pārahi i roto i te maru pohe ra, 'ua 'ana'ana mai te māramarama i ni'a ia rātou.
- 3 'Ua fa'arahi 'oe i te nūna'a, 'e 'ua fa'arahi i te 'oa'oa—tē 'oa'oa ra rātou i mua ia 'oe mai te 'oa'oa i te 'auhunera'a ra, 'e mai te 'oa'oa o te feiā e tufa i te tao'a haru ra.
- 4 'Ua 'ōfati ho'i 'oe i te zugo nō tāna ra hōpoi'a, 'e te rā'au i ni'a i tōna ra taponono, te rā'au a te ta'ata hāmani 'ino ra.
- 5 I roto i te mau 'arora'a ato'a ho'i a te feiā tama'i ra e 'itehia te mānianiara'a, 'e te mau 'ahu i tāvirihia i roto i te toto ra ; 'e e 'ama noa ho'i te reira i te auahi 'e te vahie o te auahi ra.
- 6 'Ua fānau mai ho'i te hō'ē tama nā tātou, 'ua hōro'ahia mai te hō'ē tamaiti nā tātou ; 'e i ni'a i tōna ra taponono te hau fenua e vai ai ; 'e e ma'irihia tōna ra i'oa, te Hau 'ē, te Fa'aa'o, Te Atua Pūai, Te Metua mure 'ore, Te Ari'i nō te Hau.
- 7 'E te tupura'a rahi o te hau fenua 'e te hau 'aore ia e hope'a, e mana ho'i 'oia i ni'a i te terōno o Davida, 'e i ni'a i tōna ra bāsileia, 'e e fa'ati'a 'oia i te reira ma te parau mau 'e te parauti'a i teienei, ē a muri noa atu. Nā te itoito o te Fatu Sabaota e rave i teie.
- 8 'Ua fa'atae mai te Fatu i tāna parau ia Iakoba, 'e 'ua iri i ni'a ia 'Īserā'ela.
- 9 'E e 'ite ho'i te mau ta'ata ato'a o Epheraima, 'e te mau ta'ata o Samaria, 'o tei parau ma te te'ote'o 'e te fa'ateitei o te 'ā'au ra, i te nā-ō-ra'a ē :
- 10 'Ua marua te mau 'ōfa'i 'araea i raro, 'ei 'ōfa'i tarai rā tā tātou e patu ; 'ua tāpūhia te rā'au sukaino, 'ei 'āreti rā tā tātou e mono.
- 11 Nō reira, e fa'ati'a ai te Fatu i te mau 'enemi o Resina 'ei rave iāna, 'e 'a 'āmui tāhō'ē ai i tōna mau 'enemi iāna ;

2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

12 Tō Arama i mua 'e tō te Philiseti i muri ; 'e e pau
 'Īserā'ela ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e ia rātou. Nō teie mau mea
 ato'a 'aita tōna riri i fāriu 'ē, tē fa'atoro-noa-hia mai
 ra rā tōna rima.

13 'E 'aita taua feiā nei i fāriu mai iāna i tei tā'iri ia
 rātou ra ; 'e 'aore ho'i rātou i 'imi i te Fatu Sabaota ra.

14 Nō reira, e tāpū 'ē atu ai te Fatu ia 'Īserā'ela nei, i te
 upo'o 'e te 'āero, i te 'āma'a 'e te ohi i te mahana hō'ē.

15 'O te ta'ata ruhiruhiā e te fa'aturahia, 'o te upo'o
 ia ; 'e te peropheta e ha'api'i i te parau ha'avare ra, 'o
 te 'āero ia.

16 'E 'ua arata'i 'ē te feiā fa'atere i teie nei mau ta'ata ;
 'e te feiā i arata'ihia e rātou ra, 'ua ha'amouhia ia.

17 Nō reira, e 'ore roa te Fatu e 'oa'oa i tō rātou feiā
 'āpī tāne, e 'ore ho'i 'oia e aroha i tā rātou mau 'ōtare
 'e te mau vahine 'ivi ra ; e feiā ha'avare ho'i rātou
 ato'a 'e te rave i te 'ohipa 'ino, 'e e feiā parau
 ma'ama'a ana'e rātou ato'a. Nō teie mau mea ato'a
 'aita tōna riri i fāriu 'ē, tē fa'atoro-noa-hia mai ra rā
 tōna rima.

18 Tē 'ama nei ho'i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino mai te auahi
 ra ; e pau te mau rā'au taratara 'e te mau tātarāmoa,
 'e e 'ama ho'i te mau uru rā'au me'ume'u ra, 'e e pe'e
 ho'i i ni'a mai te au auahi e pe'e ra.

19 Nō te riri 'ū'ana o te Fatu Sabaota ra i ha'apōirihia
 ai te fenua nei, 'e e riro ho'i te ta'ata nei mai te vahie
 nō te auahi ra ; e aore roa te ta'ata e fa'aora noa i tōna
 iho taea'e.

20 'E e haru 'oia i tō te rima atau, 'e e poia noa ; 'e e
 amu ho'i 'oia i tō te rima 'aui e 'aore e māha te hiaai ;
 'e e 'amu ho'i te ta'ata ato'a i te 'i'o o tōna ihora
 rima—

21 E 'aro Manase ia Epheraima ; e 'aro Epheraima ia
 Manase ; e 'aro 'āmui ho'i rāua ia Iuda. Nō teie mau
 mea ato'a 'aita tōna riri i fāriu 'ē, tē fa'atoro-noa-hia
 mai ra rā tōna rima.

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind;
 and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all
 this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is
 stretched out still.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth
 them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head
 and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that
 teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err;
 and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their
 young men, neither shall have mercy on their father-
 less and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite
 and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For
 all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is
 stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour
 the briars and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets
 of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting
 up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land
 darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the
 fire; no man shall spare his brother.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hun-
 gry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall
 not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of
 his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh;
 they together shall be against Judah. For all this his
 anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched
 out still.

2 Nephi 20

- 1 'Auē ho'i rātou 'o tei ha'amana i te mau fa'auera'a mana parauti'a 'ore, 'e 'o tei pāpa'i i te parau hāmani 'ino 'o tā rātou iho i 'ōpua ;
- 2 Nō te fa'a'ere i te parauti'a i te feiā veve, 'e nō te haru i te ti'amāra'a o te feiā ha'eha'a o tō'u nei nūna'a, 'ia riro te mau vahine 'ivi 'ei tao'a nā rātou, 'e 'ia pau te mau 'ōtare i te haruhia e rātou !
- 3 E aha ho'i tā 'outou e rave 'ia tae i te mahana e ro'ohia atu ai ra, 'e 'ia tae mai te pau rahi nō te ātea mai ra ? E horo ti'a 'outou 'ia vai nō te tauturura'a ? 'E i hea 'outou e vaiiho ai i tā 'outou ra mau tao'a ?
- 4 'Ia 'ore au nei, e tu'u-ha'eha'a-hia rātou i rotopū i te feiā mau 'āuri, 'e e hi'a rātou e te feiā e pohe ato'a ra i raro. Nō teie mau mea ato'a 'aita tōna riri i fāriu 'ē, tē fa'atoro-noa-hia mai ra rā tōna rima.
- 5 E tō Asura ē, te rā'au nō tō'u nei riri, 'e te mauha'a i roto i tō rātou ra rima 'o tō rātou ia au 'ore rahi.
- 6 E tono atu vau iāna i te nūna'a ha'avare ra, 'e i te feiā i ririhia e au ra, 'ia ha'aputu 'oia i te tao'a haru, 'e 'ia hōpoi 'ē atu i te tao'a haru, 'e 'ia ta'ata'ahi 'oia ia rātou i raro mai te repo o te mau aroā ra.
- 7 'Aita rā 'oia i nā reira i te mana'o, 'aita ato'a tōna 'ā'au i nā reira i te 'ōpua ; 'āre'a rā i roto i tōna 'ā'au ra nō te ha'amou ia 'e nō te tāpū 'ē atu ia i te mau nūna'a fenua 'eiaha 'ia iti.
- 8 Tē nā 'ō ra ho'i 'oia : E 'ere ato'a ānei tā'u mau tamaiti ari'i e hui ari'i ato'a ?
- 9 E 'ere ānei 'o Kalano tei riro mai ia Karekemisa ? E 'ere ānei o Hamata tei riro mai ia Araphada ? E 'ere ānei o Samaria tei riro mai ia Damaseko ?
- 10 'E mai tō'u rima i fa'ati'a i te mau bāsileia o te mau 'īdolo ra, 'ua hau atu ia te mau ti'i o teie mau bāsileia i tō Ierusalemā 'e tō Samaria ;
- 11 Mai tā'u ho'i i rave i tō Samaria 'e tōna ra mau 'īdolo, e 'ore ānei au e nā reira i te rave ia Ierusalemā 'e tōna ato'a ra mau 'īdolo ?
- 12 Nō reira, 'e a muri a'era, e riro 'ia hope te mau 'ohipa ato'a a te Fatu i te ravehia e ana i ni'a i te Mou'a ra o Ziona 'e i ni'a ia Ierusalemā, e tāho'o ai 'oia i te hotu o te 'ā'au te'ote'o o te ari'i o Asura, 'e te hi'ora'a teitei o tōna mata.

2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

- 13 'E 'ua parau ho'i oia ē : Nā te pūai o tō'u nei rima 'e nā tō'u nei ho'i pa'ari i ti'a ai iā'u 'ia rave i teie mau mea ; 'e 'ua ha'apa'o ho'i au i tā'u i rave ; 'e 'ua ruri ho'i au i te 'ōti'a o te mau ta'ata ra, 'e 'ua haru vau i tā rātou mau tao'a i ha'aputu ra, 'e 'ua tu'u ho'i au i te feiā pārahira'a 'eta'eta ra i raro mai te 'aito ra ;
- 14 'E 'ua 'itea e au te tao'a rahi a te mau ta'ata mai te 'ōfa'ara'a i 'itea ra ; 'e mai te ta'ata i ha'aputu i te huero i fa'aru'ehia ra, 'ua ha'aputu ho'i au i tō te fenua ato'a nei ; 'e 'aore roa te hō'ē i 'apa'apa noa a'e i te pererau, 'e i hāmama noa a'e te vaha, 'e 'aore rā i māniana noa mai.
- 15 E fa'aahaaha mai ānei te 'ōpahi iāna iho i tei rave iāna nō te tāpū ? E fa'aahaaha mai ānei te 'e'e iāna iho i tei rave iāna nō te 'e'e ? E au atu ra ho'i ē, e ti'a i te rā'au 'ia ha'uti iāna iho i tei hōpoi iāna i ni'a, 'e 'aore rā 'ia hōpoi iāna iho i ni'a, mai te mea ra ē, e 'ere i te rā'au !
- 16 Nō reira, nā te Fatu, nā te Fatu Sabaota ra, e hōpoi atu i te tiahape i rotopū i te mau ta'ata poria nōna ra ; e i raro a'e i tōna maīta'i e tūtu'i 'oia mai te auahi vera ra.
- 17 'E e riro te māramarama o 'Īserā'ela ra 'ei auahi, 'e tei Mo'a nōna ra, 'ei auahi ura ; 'e e 'ama ho'i 'oia 'e e pau tāna mau tātarāmoa 'e tāna mau rā'au taratara i te mahana 'ōtahi.
- 18 'E te 'una'una ho'i o te uru rā'au nāna ra, 'e nō te 'ō ruperupe nāna ra, te vārua 'e tae noa atu i te tino ra, te pau ia iāna ; 'e e riro rātou mai te mea ra 'ua pohe te hōpoi reva ra.
- 19 'E te toe'a o te mau rā'au i taua uru rā'au nāna ra, e mea iti ia, 'e e hope noa i te hō'ē tamari'i 'ia tai'o.
- 20 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e 'ore te toe'a o 'Īserā'ela ra, e tō te 'utuāfare o Iakoba i ora ra, e ti'aturi fa'ahou i tei tā'iri mai ia rātou ; e ti'aturi rā rātou i te Fatu, i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, ma te parau mau.
- 21 E ho'i mai ā te toe'a, 'oia ia, te tahi toe'a nō Iakoba, i te Atua manahope ra.
- 22 'E noa atu 'ua riro tō 'oe ra mau ta'ata e 'Īserā'ela mai te one tahatai ra, e ho'i mai ā te tahi toe'a o rātou ra ; te ha'amoura'a i fa'aotihia ra e fa'atupu ia i te parauti'a rahi.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briars in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

23 'E nā te Fatu te Atua Sabaota e rave i te ha'amoura'a, ē tae noa atu i te fa'aotira'a i roto i te fenua ato'a ra.

24 Nō reira, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu te Atua Sabaota : E au mau ta'ata 'o tē pārahi nei i Ziona, 'eiaha e mata'u i te ta'ata Asura ; e tā'iri mai 'oia ia 'oe i te rā'au, 'e e tā'iri mai 'oia ia 'oe i tāna rā'au, mai te au i tō 'Aiphiti ra.

25 'E 'ua poto roa te tau, e māha tō'u o'ō'o, 'e e 'ore ho'i tō'u riri 'ia ha'amouhia atu rātou.

26 E nā te Fatu Sabaota ra e fa'ati'arepu i te hō'ē fa'autu'ara'a i ni'a iāna, ma te tā'iri ia Midiana i te mato ra nō Oreba ; 'e mai te rā'au tāna i hōpoi i ni'a a'e i te miti ra, e hōpoi ā 'oia i ni'a mai te au i tō 'Aiphiti ra.

27 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e fa'ata'a-'ē-hia ai tāna hōpoi'a i tō taponon ra, e tāna zugo i tō 'a'i ra ; 'e e ha'amouhia te zugo nō te fa'atāhinura'a ra.

28 'Ua haere mai ra 'oia i Aiata ; 'e 'ua tae roa mai ra i Migerona ; 'e tei Mikamasa tāna ra mau pere'o'o.

29 'Ua haere rātou nā ni'a i te hō'ē vāhi oaoa ; 'ua ta'oto rātou i Geba ; 'ua mata'u Ramata ; 'e 'ua horo 'o Gibeā o Saula.

30 'A pi'i māite tō reo, 'e te tamāhine a Galima ; 'ia fa'aro'ohia te reira i Laisa ; 'Auē ho'i e Anatota ē.

31 'Ua reva 'ē atu Mademena ; 'ua ha'aputupu tu tō Gebima ia rātou iho nō te horo 'ē atu.

32 E fa'aea noa 'oia i Noba i taua mahana ra ; e ueue 'oia i tōna rima i te mou'a nō te tamāhine o Ziona, te 'āivi nō Ierusalemā.

33 Inaha, nā te Fatu, nā te Fatu Sabaota ra e tāpū i te 'āma'a ma te mata'u rahi, 'e te feiā teitei ra e tāpūhia ia i raro ; 'e te feiā te'ote'o ra, e fa'aha'eha'ahia ia.

34 'E e tāpū 'oia i te mau vāhi me'ume'u o te mau uru rā'au i te 'āuri, 'e e hi'a Lebanona i te rima pūai ra.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

2 Nephi 21

- 1 'E e tupu te hō'ē ohi nō roto mai i te 'āma'a ra o Iese ; e riro te hō'ē aveave i te hotu mai nō roto mai i tōna ra mau a'a.
- 2 'E e tae mai te Vārua o te Fatu i ni'a iāna ; te vārua nō te pa'ari 'e nō te māramarama, te vārua fa'aa'o 'e nō te pūai, te vārua nō te 'ite 'e nō te mata'u i te Fatu ;
- 3 E rahi ho'i tōna māramarama i te mata'u i te Fatu ; 'e 'aita ho'i 'oia e ha'avā mai te au i te 'itea e tōna nā mata, 'e 'aita ho'i 'oia e a'o mai te au i tei fa'aro'ohia e tōna nā tari'a.
- 4 E ha'avā rā 'oia i te mau ta'ata ri'iri'i ma te parauti'a, 'e e a'o ho'i 'oia ma te fāito ti'a i te feiā ha'eha'a o te fenua nei ; 'e e tā'iri 'oia i te fenua nei i te rā'au o tōna ra vaha, 'e nā roto i te mata'i o tōna ra vaha e ha'apohe ai 'oia i te feiā parauti'a 'ore.
- 5 'E te parauti'a ra, 'o te tātua ia o tōna tau'upu, 'e te parau mau ra, 'o te tātua ia o tōna 'ōpū.
- 6 E pārahi ato'a ho'i te luko i pīha'i iho i te 'ārenio, e tārava 'āmui ho'i te nēmera i pīha'i iho i te pinia māmoe, 'e te fanau'a pua'atoro, 'e te liona 'āpī, 'e te fanau'a 'ānimara poria ra ; 'e nā te hō'ē tamari'i ri'i e arata'i ia rātou.
- 7 E 'āmui tāhō'ē te pua'atoro 'e te bea i te 'amura'a i te mā'a ; e tārava 'āmui ho'i tō rātou mau fanau'a te tahi i pīha'i iho i te tahi ; 'e e 'amu ho'i te liona i te matie mai te pua'atoro ato'a ra.
- 8 'E e ha'uti noa ho'i te 'aiū 'aru'aru i ni'a i te 'āpo'o o te asepi, 'e te tamari'i i fa'a'orehia te ū ra, e tu'u ia 'oia i tōna rima i ni'a i te pūpunira'a o te zepho ra.
- 9 'E 'aita roa rātou e ha'amāuiui 'e 'aita ho'i e hāmani 'ino i te hō'ē a'e mea i ni'a i tō'u ato'a ra mou'a mo'a, 'e e 'i ho'i te fenua nei i te 'ite nō ni'a i te Fatu, mai te mau pape e tāpo'i ra i te miti.
- 10 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e 'itea mai ai te hō'ē nō te tumu ra o Iese, 'e e ti'a 'oia i ni'a 'ei reva nō te nūna'a ; e 'imi ho'i te mau 'Ētene iāna ; 'e e riro tōna fa'aeara'a 'ei mea hanahana.

2 Nephi 21

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

- 11 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e fa'atoro fa'ahou mai te Fatu i tōna rima i te piti o te taimē nō te fa'aora i te toe'a o tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'o tei toe i Asura, 'e i 'Aiphiti, 'e i Patarota, 'e i Kusa, 'e i Elama, 'e i Sinara, 'e i Hamata, 'e i te mau motu o te moana ra.
- 12 'E e fa'ati'a 'oia i te hō'ē reva i ni'a nō te mau nūna'a ; 'e e ha'aputuputu mai 'oia i to 'Īserā'ela i fa'aru'ehia ra, 'e e 'āmui tāhō'ē mai ho'i i tō Iuda i ha'apurarahia mai nā poro e maha mai o te fenua nei.
- 13 E reva 'ē atu te mi'imi'i o Epheraima, 'e e tāpū-ēhia te mau 'enemi o Iuda ra ; e 'ore ho'i Epheraima e mi'imi'i ia Iuda, e 'ore ho'i Iuda e fa'aehuehu ia Epheraima.
- 14 'Āre'a rā e ma'iri rātou i ni'a i te mau taponō o tō Philiseti ra i te pae i te tō'o'a o te rā ; e pau ato'a tō te pae i te hiti'a o te rā ia rātou ; 'e e haru ho'i rātou ia Edoma 'e Moabi ; 'e e riro ho'i te mau tamari'i a Amona i te fa'aro'o ia rātou.
- 15 'E e ha'amou roa te Fatu i te reo o te miti o 'Aiphiti ra ; 'e e ueue 'oia i tōna rima i ni'a i te 'ānāvai pape ma te mata'i rahi pūai nāna ra ; 'e e tā'iri 'oia i te reira i roto e ta'ihitu pape tahe ra, 'e e fa'ahaere 'oia i te mau ta'ata i te tahī pae ma te 'āvae rari 'ore ra.
- 16 'E tē vai ra ho'i te hō'ē 'ē'a rahi nō te toe'a o tōna ra mau ta'ata 'o tei toe, mai Asura mai ra, mai tō 'Īserā'ela i te mahana i haere mai ai 'oia mai te fenua mai ra nō 'Aiphiti.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

2 Nephi 22

- 1 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e parau mai 'oe ē : E te Fatu, e 'ārue au ia 'oe ; riri noa mai ho'i 'oe iā'u ra, 'ua fa'atīoi-'ē-hia rā tō 'oe riri, 'e 'ua ha'amāhanahana mai 'oe iā'u.
- 2 Inaha, 'o te Atua tō'u fa'aorara'a ; e ti'aturi au, 'e 'aita vau e mata'u ; 'o te Fatu ra 'o IEHOVA tō'u pūai 'e tā'u 'āruera'a ; 'e 'ua riro ato'a 'oia 'ei fa'aorara'a nō'u.
- 3 Nō reira, e huti 'outou i te pape ma te 'oa'oa nō roto mai i te mau 'āpo'o pape nō te fa'aorara'a.
- 4 'E i te reira mahana 'outou e parau mai ai ē : 'A 'ārue i te Fatu, 'a ti'aoro atu i tōna ra i'oa, 'a fa'a'ite atu i tāna ra mau 'ohipa i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'a fa'a'ite atu ē 'ua fa'ateihia tōna ra i'oa.
- 5 'A hīmene i te Fatu ; 'ua rave ho'i 'oia i te mau mea maita'i hau roa a'e i te maita'i ; 'ua 'itehia te reira i roto i te ao ato'a nei.
- 6 'A pi'i pūai 'e 'a tuō ma te 'oa'oa, 'outou 'o tē pārahi nei i Ziona ; e mea rahi ho'i 'oia Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei i rotopū ia 'outou ra.

2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

2 Nephi 23

- 1 Te parau poro'i ia Babulonia, 'o tā Isaia te tamaiti a Amoza i 'ite.
- 2 'A fa'ati'a na 'outou i te hō'ē reva i ni'a i te mou'a teitei, 'a fa'ateitei ai i te reo ia rātou, 'a tārape atu ai i te rima, 'ia tomo rātou i roto i te mau 'ūputa o te hui ari'i ra.
- 3 'Ua fa'aue au i tō'u mau ta'ata i ha'amo'ahia ra, 'ua pi'i ato'a vau i tō'u mau ta'ata pūai, 'e 'aita ho'i tō'u riri i ni'a ia rātou 'o tei 'oa'oa i tō'u teiteira'a.
- 4 'Ua fa'arohia te haruru o te pupu ta'ata i ni'a i te mau mou'a, mai te haruru o te feiā e rave rahi ra, e haruru nane noa nō te mau bāsileia o te mau nūna'a e ha'aputupu'āmui ra, nā te Fatu Sabaota e ha'aputupu'āmui ra i te mau nu'u ato'a e 'aro ra.
- 5 'Ua haere mai rātou nō te fenua ātea roa mai, mai te hope'a o te ra'i mai, 'oia ia, 'o te Fatu 'e te mau mauha'a o tōna ra au 'ore rahi, nō te ha'amou i te fenua ato'a nei.
- 6 'A 'auē nā 'outou, 'ua fātata mai ho'i te mahana o te Fatu ; e tae mai ho'i te reira 'ei ha'amoura'a nō 'ō mai i te Manahope ra.
- 7 Nō reira, e paruparu te mau rima ato'a ra, 'e e tarapape ho'i te 'ā'au o te ta'ata ato'a ra.
- 8 'E e mata'u rātou ; 'e e ro'ohia rātou i te māuiui 'e te 'oto ; e hi'o rātou te tahi i te tahi ma te māere ; e riro tō rātou mau mata mai te mau auahi ura ra.
- 9 Inaha, tē fātata mai ra te mahana o te Fatu, mahana ri'ari'a rahi e mahana nō te riri 'ū'ana 'e nō te riri rahi, nō te fa'aano roa i te fenua ; 'e e ha'amou 'oia i te feiā rave hara ato'a i roto.
- 10 'E te mau feti'a o te ra'i ra e tōna mau pupu feti'a ato'a, e 'ore ia e hōro'a mai i tō rātou māmarama ; e ha'apōirihia te mahana i tōna haere'a mai, e 'ore ho'i te 'āva'e e hōro'a mai i tōna māmarama.
- 11 E fa'autu'a vau i te ao nei nō tōna 'ino, 'e te feiā paieti 'ore nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; e fa'a'ore au i te fa'arahi o te feiā te'ote'o, 'e e tu'u vau i raro i te fa'ateitei o te feiā ha'amata'u ra.
- 12 E fa'ariro vau i te ta'ata nei 'ei mea tao'a rahi a'e i te 'auro ra ; 'oia ia, i te ta'ata hō'ē nei 'ei mea tao'a rahi a'e i te hō'ē tāpū 'auro nō Ophira ra.

2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

13 Nō reira, e fa'a'āueue au i te mau ra'i ; 'e e fa'ata'ata'ahia te fenua 'ia ta'a 'ē atu i tōna ra vāhi, nā roto i te riri 'ū'ana o te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'e 'ia tae i te mahana nō tōna riri rahi ra.

14 E riro ho'i te reira mai te zabi a'ua'uhia ra, e mai te māmoe 'aore e ta'ata nō te ha'aputupu mai ; 'e e ho'i te ta'ata tāta'itahi i tōna ihora mau ta'ata, 'e e horo ho'i te ta'ata ato'a ra i tōna ihora fenua.

15 'E te ta'ata te'ote'o ato'a e pātia-ha'apohe-hia ia ; 'oia ia, 'e te feiā ato'a i 'āmui-ato'a-hia i te feiā parauti'a 'ore ra, e hi'a ana'e ia i te 'o'e.

16 E tā'iri-fatifati-noa-hia tā rātou mau tamari'i i mua i tō rātou mau mata ; e pau tō rātou mau fare i te haruhia 'e e rave-'ino-hia ho'i tā rātou ra mau vahine.

17 Inaha, e fa'ati'arepu vau i te mau Medai 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i nounou i te 'ārio 'e te 'auro, 'e 'aore ato'a rātou e au atu i te reira.

18 Nā tā rātou mau fana e tā'iri i te feiā 'āpī tāne 'ia hu'ahu'a ; 'e 'aita roa tō rātou e aroha i tō roto i te 'ōpū ra ; 'e 'aita ho'i tō rātou mau mata e fa'aora noa atu i te mau tamari'i.

19 'E 'o Babulonia, te hanahana o te mau bāsileia, te nehenehe o te 'una'una rahi o te mau Kaladaio ra, e tupu ho'i i te tau e ha'amou ai te Atua ia Sodoma 'e ia Gomora.

20 E 'ore roa ho'i te reira e ta'ata-fa'ahou-hia ; e 'ore ato'a e pārahihia mai terā u'i i terā u'i : e 'ore ho'i tō Arabia e fa'ati'a i tōna ti'ahapa i reira ; e 'ore ho'i te feiā tīa'i māmoe e 'āua i tā rātou mau 'āua i reira.

21 'E i reira te mau 'ānimara taehae o te mēdēbara ra e ta'oto ai, e 'ī ho'i tō rātou mau fare i te okima ana'e ; 'e i reira ho'i te fanau'a ione e pārahi ai, 'e i reira te sairima e 'ori ai i tā rātou 'orira'a.

22 E 'aoa noa te mau 'ānimara taehae o te mau motu i roto i tō rātou mau fare ano ra, 'e te mau teni i roto i tō rātou mau vāhi fa'ahiahia ; 'e 'ua fātata tōna tau, e 'ore ho'i tōna pu'e mahana e ha'amaorohia. E ha'amou vave ho'i au iāna ; 'oia ia, e aroha ho'i au i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, e pohe rā te feiā parauti'a 'ore.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

2 Nephi 24

- 1 E aroha ho'i te Fatu ia Iakoba, e mā'iti fa'ahou ā 'oia ia 'Īserā'ela, e ha'amau ho'i 'oia ia rātou i tō rātou ihora fenua ; e tā'ati ato'a ai ho'i te mau ta'ata 'ē ia rātou, 'e e 'āmui atu ho'i rātou i te 'utuāfare o Iakoba ra.
- 2 'E e rave te mau ta'ata ia rātou 'e e 'āfa'i atu ia rātou i tō rātou ra vāhi ; 'oia ia, mai te ātea roa i te mau hope'a o te fenua ; 'e e ho'i fa'ahou mai rātou i tō rātou ra mau fenua i fafauhia ra. E rave ho'i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ia rātou, 'e e riro te fenua o te Fatu nō te mau tāvini tāne 'e nō te mau tāvini vahine ; 'e 'o tei fa'ariro ia rātou 'ei tītī ra, 'o tē riro mai ia 'ei tītī nā rātou, 'e e mana ho'i rātou i ni'a iho i te feiā i hāmani 'ino mai ia rātou ra.
- 3 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e ha'amāha mai ai te Fatu i tō 'oe ra rohirohi, 'e tō 'oe ra mata'u, 'e tō 'oe ra 'ati i te 'ohipa i tu'uhia mai i ni'a ia 'oe ra.
- 4 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e parau atu ai 'oe i teie nei parable i te Ari'i o Babulonia, 'a nā 'ō ai ē : E mea nāhea ho'i te hāmani 'ino i 'ore ai 'e te 'oire 'auro i 'ore ai !
- 5 'Ua 'ōfati ho'i te Fatu i te rā'au a te feiā parauti'a 'ore 'e te mau sēpeta a te mau tāvana.
- 6 'O tei tā'iri i te ta'ata ma te riri 'ū'ana, ma te tā'iri tāmāu noa, 'o tei fa'atere i te mau nūna'a ma te riri, 'ua rave-'ino-hia ia, 'e 'aore roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ia fa'a'ore.
- 7 'Ua pārahi hau noa tō te fenua ato'a nei 'e 'aore e parau ; 'ua ha'amata mai rātou i te hīmene ma te 'oa'oa.
- 8 'Oia ia, te mau berusi teie e 'oa'oa nei ia 'oe, 'e te mau 'āreti ho'i o Lebanona, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Nō te mea 'ua tu'uhia 'oe i raro i te pohe ra, 'aore ia e ta'ata tāpū rā'au e tae mai nō te tāpū ia mātou nei.
- 9 'O hade i raro ra tei 'ārepurepu iho nei ia 'oe 'ia fārerei mai ia 'oe i te haerera'a atu ; tē fa'aaraa ra 'oia i te feiā i pohe ra, 'e i te feiā rarahi ato'a o te fenua nei ra ; 'e tē fa'atī'atia ana'e ra i te mau ari'i ato'a o te mau nūna'a mai tō rātou mau terōno ra.
- 10 E parau ato'a mai rātou, 'e 'a nā 'ō mai ai ia 'oe : 'Ua riro ānei 'oe 'ei mea paruparu mai ia mātou nei ? 'Ua fa'ariro-ato'a-hia ānei 'oe mai ia mātou ato'a nei ?

2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?

11 'Ua tu'uhia tō te'ote'o i raro i te mēnema ; 'e 'aita te haruru nō tā 'oe mau nabala i fa'aro'ohia ; 'ua riro ho'i te to'e 'ei vauvau nō 'oe, 'e 'ua tāpo'ihia 'oe e te mau to'e.

12 E mea nāhea ho'i tō 'oe ma'irira'a mai te ra'i mai, e Lucifero, te tamaiti nō te po'ipo'i ! 'Ua tāpūhia ānei 'oe i raro i te repo, 'o tei ha'aparuparu i te mau nūna'a nei !

13 'E i parau na 'oe i roto i tō 'ā'au ē : E haere au i ni'a roa i te ra'i ra, e fa'ateitei au i tō'u terōno i ni'a a'e i te mau feti'a o te Atua ra ; e pārahi ato'a ho'i au i ni'a i te mou'a 'āmuira'a ra, i te mau pae i 'apato'erau ra ;

14 E haere au i ni'a roa i te teiteira'a o te mau ata ra ; e riro ho'i au mai Tei Teitei Roa ra.

15 E hōpoi-roa-hia rā 'oe i raro roa i hade ra, i te hiti roa o te 'āpo'o ra.

16 Te feiā e 'ite ia 'oe ra, e riro i te ti'atonu māite ia 'oe, 'e e feruri rātou ia 'oe, 'a parau ai ē : 'O te ta'ata ānei teie i fa'arurutaina i te fenua nei, 'e i fa'āueue ato'a i te mau bāsileia ra ?

17 'E i fa'ariro i te ao nei mai te mēdēbara, 'e i ha'amou i te mau 'oire ato'a ; 'e 'aore i tātara i te fare o tōna ra feiā mau 'āuri ?

18 Tē tārava ra te mau ari'i ato'a nō te mau nūna'a ma tō rātou hanahana, 'oia ia, 'o rātou ato'a, te ta'ata tāta'itahi i roto i tō rātou iho ra fare.

19 'Ua hūa'ihia rā 'oe i rāpae i tō 'oe ra mēnema mai te 'āma'a i ha'avi'ivi'ihia ra, 'e mai te toe'a 'o tei taparahihia, 'e 'ua pātiahia i te 'o'e ra ; i tei reva i raro i te mau 'ōfa'i o te 'āpo'o ra ; mai te pera i ta'ata'ahihia e te 'āvae ra.

20 E 'ore 'oe e 'āmui-ato'a-hia ia rātou i te tanura'a ra, nō te mea 'ua ha'amou 'oe i tō 'oe fenua 'e 'ua taparahi i tō 'oe ra mau ta'ata ; e 'ore roa te hua'ai o te feiā rave 'ohipa 'ino ra e ha'amaita'ihia.

21 'A fa'aineine i te taparahi i tāna mau tamari'i nō te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino a tō rātou mau metua, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia mana fa'ahou, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'ia fatu i te fenua, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'ia fa'a'i i te fenua ato'a nei i te mau 'oire.

22 E 'aro atu vau ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra ho'i te Fatu Sabaota, 'e e tāpū 'ē atu vau i te i'oa i Babulonia nei, 'e te toe'a, 'e te tamaiti, 'e te tamaiti nā taua tamaiti ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

23 E fa'ariro ho'i au i te reira 'ei pārahira'a nō te kephoda, e riro ho'i 'ei pape hōpuna ana'e ; 'e e purūmu vau i te reira i te purūmu nō te pohe, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.

24 'Ua tapu ho'i te Fatu Sabaota ra, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'O tā'u mau i feruri ra, e tupu ia ; 'e 'o tā'u i 'ōpua ra e tupu ato'a ia—

25 E hōpoi mai au i te 'āti Asura i tō'u nei fenua, 'e i ni'a i tō'u mau mou'a e ta'ata'ahi ai au iāna i raro a'e i tō'u ra 'āvae ; 'e i reira e pe'e 'ē atu ai tāna zugo mai ia rātou ra, 'e tāna hōpoi'a i tō rātou ra mau tapono.

26 'O teie te 'ōpuara'a i 'ōpuahia nō te fenua ato'a nei ; 'e 'o teie ho'i te rima i fa'atorohia i ni'a i te mau nūna'a ato'a nei.

27 'Ua 'ōpua ho'i te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'e nā vai ia e fa'a'ore ? 'E 'ua fa'atorohia ho'i tōna ra rima, 'e nā vai ho'i ia e fa'aho'i mai ?

28 I te matahiti i pohe ai te ari'i ra 'o Ahaza i tu'uhia mai ai teie nei parau poro'i.

29 'Eiaha 'oe e 'oa'oa, e tō Parleysetina pā'āto'a, nō te mea 'ua fati te rā'au i papa'ihia ai 'oe ra ; e mea nā roto mai ho'i i te u'i o te 'ōphī ra e tupu mai ai te zepho, 'e tōna fanau'a e riro ia 'ei 'ōphī ma'ue mai te auahi ra.

30 E 'amu ho'i te matahiapo o te feiā ri'iri'i ra, 'e e ta'oto ho'i te feiā veve ma te fifi 'ore ; 'e e ha'apohe au i tō 'oe ra tumu i te o'e ; 'e e taparahi 'oia i tō 'oe ra toe'a.

31 'A 'auē, e te mau 'ūputa ē ; 'a 'oto, e te 'oire ē ; 'auē ho'i 'oe e Parleysetina tā'āto'a ē, 'ua tarapape roa ; e au auahi tei pe'e mai mai te pae 'apato'erau ra ; 'e 'aore roa te hō'ē i roto i tāna ra nu'u e vai 'ōtahi noa i te mau taime i fa'ata'ahia.

32 E aha ia te pāhonora'a tā te mau ve'a nō te mau nūna'a nei e hōro'a atu ? 'Ua fa'ati'ahia Ziona e te Fatu, 'e te feiā ri'iri'i o tōna ra nūna'a e ti'aturi ia rātou i te reira.

I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

2 Nephi 25

- 1 I teienei, e parau ri'i atu vau, 'o Nephi, i te mau parau 'o tā'u i pāpa'i, tei parauhia e te vaha o Isaia ra. 'E inaha ho'i, 'ua parau Isaia e rave rahi mau mea 'o tei riro 'ei mea fifi i te pae rahi o tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'ia māramarama ; nō te mea 'aore rātou i 'ite i te huru nō te tohura'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda ra.
- 2 'Aita ho'i au, 'o Nephi, i ha'api'i ia rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi nō ni'a i te mau peu a te 'āti Iuda ra, nō te mea 'ua riro tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ei mau 'ohipa nō te pōiri, 'e tā rātou i rave ra 'ei mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'ia.
- 3 Nō reira, e pāpa'i atu vau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'ia rātou ato'a 'o tē fāri'i mai 'āraua'e i teie nei mau mea 'o tā'u e pāpa'i nei, 'ia 'ite rātou i te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua 'o tē tae mai i ni'a i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a ra, mai te au i te parau tāna i parau ra.
- 4 Nō reira, 'a fa'aro'o mai na, e tō'u mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'a fa'aro'o mai na i tā'u nei mau parau ; nō te mea 'aita te mau parau a Isaia i pāpū ia 'outou, 'āre'a rā 'ua pāpū te reira i te mau ta'ata ato'a i 'i i te vārua nō te tohu. E tu'u atu vau i te hō'ē tohura'a ia 'outou mai tei au i tā te vārua i roto iā'u nei ; nō reira e tohu vau ma te pāpū mai te au i tei roto iā'u nei mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai māua tō'u metua tāne i Ierusalemā ra ; inaha ho'i, tē 'oa'oa nei tō'u vārua i te parau pāpū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'ia ha'api'ihia rātou.
- 5 'Oia ia, tē 'oa'oa nei tō'u vārua i te mau parau a Isaia, nō te mea nō Ierusalemā mai au, 'e 'ua 'ite tō'u mata i te mau mea nō ni'a i te mau 'āti Iuda ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua māramarama te mau 'āti Iuda i te mau parau a te mau peropheta, 'e 'aita atu ā e mau ta'ata i māramarama i te mau mea i parauhia i te mau 'āti Iuda mai ia rātou ra, maori rā 'ua ha'api'ihia rātou i te mau peu a te mau 'āti Iuda.
- 6 Inaha rā, 'aore au 'o Nephi, i ha'api'i atu i tā'u ra mau tamari'i i te ha'api'ira'a a te 'āti Iuda ; inaha rā 'ua pārahi au, 'o vau iho, i Ierusalemā, 'e nō reira 'ua 'ite au i te mau vāhi ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e ; 'e 'ua parau ho'i au i tā'u ra mau tamari'i nō ni'a i te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua, 'o tē tae mai i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda, i ni'a i te mau tamari'i, 'ia au i tei parauhia e Isaia ra, 'e 'aita vau i pāpa'i i te reira.

2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

7 Inaha rā, e pāpa'i ā vau i tā'u ihora tohura'a, mai te au i te vāhi pāpū iā'u ; 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e 'ore roa te ta'ata e hape i te reira ; 'āre'a rā i te mahana e tupu ai te mau tohura'a a Isaia, 'ei reira te mau ta'ata e 'ite pāpū ai i te mahana nō te tupura'a o te reira.

8 Nō reira, e mea faufa'a rahi te reira i te mau tamarī'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē mana'o ē, e 'ere ia i te mea faufa'a, e parau pāpū atu vau ia rātou, 'e e parau vau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ana'e ; 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e mea faufa'a rahi roa te reira ia rātou 'ia tae i te mau mahana hope'a ra ; 'e i taua mahana ra e māmarama ai rātou i te reira ; nō reira, nō tō rātou maita'i ho'i i pāpa'i ai au i te reira.

9 'E mai te hō'ē u'i i ha'amouhia i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda nō tā rātou 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'oia ato'a 'ua ha'amouhia rātou mai terā u'i i terā u'i mai te au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'e 'aore roa te hō'ē o rātou i ha'amouhia, maori rā 'ua fa'a'ite-ātea-hia na e te mau peropheta o te Fatu.

10 Nō reira, 'ua fa'a'itehia na ia rātou te ha'amoura'a e tae mai i ni'a iho ia rātou, i muri noa a'e i te mahana i fa'aru'e ai tō'u metua tāne i Ieruselema ra ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au ; e mai te au i tā'u tohura'a 'ua ha'amouhia rātou, maori rā 'o rātou 'o tei hōpoi-tūtī-hia i Babulonia ra.

11 'E i teienei, nō te vārua i roto iā'u nei i parau ai au i taua parau nei. E hōpoi-'ē-noa-hia rātou, e ho'i mai rā rātou, 'e e pārahi rātou i te fenua ra nō Ieruselema ; nō reira, e fa'aho'i-fa'ahou-hia rātou i tō rātou ra fenua 'āi'a.

12 Inaha rā, 'ua tupu tā rātou mau tama'i, 'e te mau parau tama'i, 'e 'ia tae mai te mahana e fa'a'ite tino mai ai te Fānau tahi a te Metua, 'oia ia, te Metua o te ra'i 'e te fenua ato'a nei, iāna iho ia rātou ra, inaha, e pāto'i rātou iāna, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e te ha'apa'arira'a ia rātou iho.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

- 13 Inaha, e fa'asātauro rātou iāna ; 'e i muri a'e i te vaira'a tōna tino i roto i te mēnema nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro, e ti'afa'ahou mai 'oia mai te pohe mai ma te ora i raro a'e i tōna nā pererau ; 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa, e fa'aorahia ia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua. Nō reira, 'ua 'oa'oa tō'u vārua 'ia tohu nō ni'a iāna, nō te mea 'ua 'ite au i tōna mahana, 'e tē fa'arahi nei tō'u 'ā'au i tōna ra i'oa mo'a.
- 14 'E inaha, 'e a muri a'era 'ia ti'a mai te Mesia mai te pohe mai, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite atu iāna iho i tōna ra mau ta'ata, i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa, inaha, e ha'amou-fa'ahou-hia Ierusalemā ; e 'auē ho'i tō rātou 'o tei tama'i atu i te Atua 'e te mau ta'ata nō tōna ra 'ēkālesia.
- 15 Nō reira, e ha'apurarahia te mau 'āti Iuda i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a ; 'oia ia, e ha'amou-ato'a-hia Babulonia ; nō reira, e ha'apurarahia te mau 'āti Iuda e te tahi atu mau nūna'a 'ē.
- 16 'E i muri a'e i tō rātou ha'apurarara'ahia, 'e tō rātou tā'irira'ahia e te Fatu te Atua nā roto i te mau nūna'a 'ē nō te ārea e rave rahi mau u'i te maoro, 'oia ia, mai terā u'i i terā u'i, ē tae noa atu i te tau e ti'aturi ai rātou i te Mesia ra, i te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'e i te tāra'ehara hope 'ore nō te mau ta'ata ato'a—'e 'ia tae mai taua mahana ra e ti'aturi rātou i te Mesia, 'e e ha'amori atu ho'i i te Metua nā roto i tōna ra i'oa, ma te 'ā'au mā, 'e te rima vi'ivi'i 'ore, 'e e 'ore ho'i e tīa'i atu ā i te tahi Mesia, 'e i reira, i taua ihora tau, e tae mai ai te mahana e ti'aturi rātou i teie nei mau mea e ti'a ai.
- 17 'E e fa'atoro fa'ahou mai te Fatu i tōna rima i te piti o te taime nō te fa'aho'i mai i tōna ra mau ta'ata, mai tō rātou mo'era'a 'e tō rātou hi'ara'a. Nō reira, e nā reira 'oia i te rave i te hō'ē 'ohipa māere 'e te 'ūmere i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

18 Nō reira, e fa'a'ite atu 'oia i tāna mau parau ia rātou, 'e nā taua mau parau ra e ha'avā ia rātou i te mahana hope'a ra, 'e e hōro'ahia ho'i te reira ia rātou nō te ha'apāpū ia rātou i te Mesia mau 'o tei pāto'ihia e rātou ra ; 'e nō te ha'apāpū ho'i ia rātou ē, 'eiaha rātou e tīa'i fa'ahou nō te hō'ē Mesia 'ia tae mai, nō te mea 'aita atu ā e Mesia e tae mai, maori rā 'o te Mesia ha'avare, 'o tē ha'avare i te ta'ata nei ; hō'ē noa iho ho'i Mesia i parauhia e te mau peropheta, 'e 'o te Mesia ho'i 'oia 'o tē pāto'ihia 'e te mau 'āti Iuda ra.

19 'E mai te au i te mau parau a te mau peropheta, e tae mai te Mesia i te matahiti e ono hānere i muri a'e i te matahiti i fa'aru'e ai tō'u metua tāne i Ierusalemā ; 'e mai te au i te mau parau a te mau peropheta 'e te parau ho'i a te melahi a te Atua, e ma'irihia tōna i'oa 'o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua.

20 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua parau pāpū vau 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia hape. 'E mai te Fatu te Atua e ora ra, tei 'āfa'i mai i tō 'Īserā'ela i rāpae i te fenua nō 'Aiphiti, 'e tei hōro'a mai i te mana ia Mose 'ia fa'aora 'oia i tō te mau nūna'a i hohonihia 'e te mau 'ōphī ta'ero ra, 'ia hi'o tō rātou mata i te 'ōphī tāna i fa'ateitei i mua ia rātou ra, 'e i hōro'a ato'a mai i te mana iāna 'ia tā'iri 'oia i te mato 'e 'ua tahe noa mai ra te pape ra ; 'oia ia, inaha tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e parau mau teie mau mea, 'e tē ora ra ho'i te Fatu te Atua, 'e 'aita roa atu e i'oa i raro a'e i te ra'i nei e ora ai te ta'ata nei, maori rā 'o Iesu Mesia nei 'o tā'u i parau iho nei.

21 Nō reira, nō te reira ho'i te Fatu te Atua i fafau mai ai iā'u nei 'ia ha'apa'ohia 'e 'ia fa'ahereherehia teie mau mea 'o tā'u e pāpā'i, 'e 'ia tu'uhia ho'i i roto i te rima o tō'u ra hua'ai, mai terā u'i i terā u'i, 'ia tupu te fafaura'a i fafauhia atu ia Iosepha, 'e 'ore roa tōna hua'ai e mou 'a vai noa ai te fenua nei.

22 Nō reira, e tae teie nei mau mea i terā u'i i terā u'i 'a vai noa ai te fenua nei ; 'e e tu'uhia atu te reira mai te au i te hina'aro 'e te mana'o o te Atua ; 'e te mau nūna'a e fāri'i i te reira, e ha'avāhia rātou mai te au i te mau parau i pāpā'ihia ra.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

23 'E 'ua itoito ho'i tātou i te pāpa'i 'e i te fa'aitoito i tā tātou mau tamari'i 'e tō tātou mau taea'e ato'a 'ia ti'aturi i te Mesia, 'e 'ia fa'a'āfarohia ho'i i te Atua ; 'ua 'ite ho'i tātou ē, nā roto i te maita'i e fa'aorahia ai tātou, hope noa atu ā te mau mea ato'a 'o tē mara'a ia tātou 'ia rave.

24 'E noa atu ā tō tātou ti'aturi i te Mesia, tē ha'apa'o nei ā ho'i tātou i te ture a Mose, ma te hi'o-māite-ra'a i mua i te Mesia ra, ē tae noa atu i te fa'ati'ara'a i te ture ra.

25 'E teie ho'i te tumu i hōro'ahia mai ai te ture ; nō reira, 'ua riro ia te ture 'ei mea pohe ia tātou nei, 'e 'ua fa'aorahia tātou i te Mesia ra nā roto i tō tātou fa'aro'o ; 'āre'a rā nō te mau fa'auera'a, i ha'apa'o ai tātou i te mau ture.

26 'E tē paraparau nei tātou nō ni'a i te Mesia, tē 'oa'oa nei tātou nō te Mesia, tē a'o nei tātou nō ni'a i te Mesia, tē tohu nei tātou nō ni'a i te Mesia, 'e tē pāpa'i nei ho'i tātou 'ia au i tā tātou mau tohura'a, 'ia 'ite tā tātou mau tamari'i 'o vai tā rātou e hi'o atu nō te ha'amatarara'a i tā rātou ra mau hara.

27 Nō reira, e paraparau tātou nō ni'a i te ture, 'ia 'ite tā tātou mau tamari'i i te pohera'a nō te ture ; 'e 'ia 'ite rātou i te pohera'a nō te ture ra, e hi'o ia rātou i mua i te ora tei roto i te Mesia ra ; 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i i te mea i hōro'ahia mai ai te ture ra. 'E 'ia fa'ati'ahia te ture i te Mesia ra, e'ita ia rātou e fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au iāna ra ; e mea ti'a ia 'ia fa'a'orehia te ture i reira.

28 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau ta'ata, e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta 'outou ; nō reira, i parau pāpū atu ai au ia 'outou, 'ia māramarama maita'i 'outou. 'E te mau parau tā'u i parau na, e riro ia 'ei faa'itera'a pāpū ia 'outou ; 'e 'ua nava'i ho'i te reira nō te ha'api'i atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te 'ē'a tia, 'e te 'ē'a ti'a ra, 'o te ti'aturi ia i te Mesia ma te huna 'ore iāna ; nā roto i te hunara'a iāna, 'ua huna ato'a ia 'outou i te mau peropheta 'e te ture.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

29 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o te 'ē'a ti'a ra, 'o tē ti'aturi ia i te Mesia, ma te huna 'ore iāna ; 'e 'o te Mesia Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei : nō reira, e mea ti'a ia 'outou ia tīpapa i mua iāna 'e 'ia ha'amori atu iāna ma tō 'outou mana ato'a, tō 'outou mana'o ato'a, e tō 'outou pūai ato'a, e tō 'outou vārua ato'a ; 'e mai te mea e nā reira 'outou, e 'ore roa 'outou e hurihia i rāpae.

30 "Ē, mai te mea e tia, 'ia ha'apa'o ā 'outou i te ture nō te ravera'a i te mau 'ohipa 'e te mau 'ōro'a a te Atua e ti'a ai, ē tae noa atu i te tau e fa'ati'ahia ai te ture i tu'uhia mai ia Mose ra.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

2 Nephi 26

- 1 'E i muri iho i tō te Mesia ti'ara'a mai mai te pohe mai, 'ei reira 'oia e fa'a'ite mai ai iāna iho ia 'outou, e tā'u mau tamari'i, 'e i tō'u mau taea'e herehia ; 'e te mau parau 'o tāna e parau atu ia 'outou na, e riro ia 'ei ture 'o tei tītauhia ia 'outou 'ia ha'apa'o.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua 'ite na vau ē 'ia hope te mau u'i e rave rahi, e tupu mai te mau tama'i rahi 'e te mau mārōra'a i rotopū i tō'u ra nūna'a.
- 3 'E 'ia tae mai te Mesia, e fa'a'itehia mai ai te mau tāpa'o o tōna ra fānaura'a i tō'u ra nūna'a, 'e tōna ato'a pohera'a e ti'afa'ahoura'a ; e mea māere 'e te mata'u rahi taua mahana ra i te feiā parauti'a 'ore ; nō te mea e pohe rātou ; e pohe ho'i rātou i te mea i tīahi 'ē atu na rātou i te mau peropheta 'e te feiā mo'a, 'e i pēhi ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i 'e i taparahi ho'i ia rātou ; nō reira e tae roa atu ai te pi'i o te toto o te feiā mo'a i ni'a i te Atua ra mai raro mai i te repo ia rātou ra.
- 4 Nō reira, 'o te ta'ata te'ote'o ato'a, 'e 'o tē rave i te 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore, e 'ama roa ia rātou i te mahana e tae mai ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'e e riro ho'i rātou mai te 'aihere ra.
- 5 'E 'o rātou 'o tē taparahi i te mau peropheta 'e te feiā mo'a, e horomi'i te mau hōhonura'a o te fenua ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra ; 'e e tāpo'i mai te mau mou'a ia rātou, 'e e puehu 'ē rātou i te mau pūāhiohio, 'e e ma'iri mai te mau fare i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e e fa'ahu'ahu'a ia rātou 'e e tāviri ia rātou mai te hu'a ra.
- 6 E ro'ohia ho'i rātou 'e te mau pātiri, 'e te mau uira, 'e te mau 'āueuera'a fenua, 'e te mau huru ha'amoura'a e rave rahi ; 'e te auahi o te riri o te Fatu e tupu ia i ni'a ia rātou, 'e e riro rātou mai te 'aihere ra, 'e e pau roa ia rātou 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 7 'Auē ho'i te mamae, 'e te horuhoru rahi ho'i o tō'u nei vārua i te pau o tō'u ra mau ta'ata e taparahihia ra ! 'E 'ua 'ite mau vau, 'o Nephi, i te reira, 'e 'oi pau ho'i au i mua i te aro o te Fatu ; e mea ti'a rā iā'u 'ia ti'aoro atu i tō'u Atua ē : E mea tia tō mau haere'a.

2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

- 8 Inaha rā, 'o te feiā parauti'a tei fa'aro'o i te mau parau a te mau peropheta, e 'aore i ha'apohe ia rātou, 'āre'a rā 'o tē ti'aturi noa ra i te Mesia ma te tīa'i māite i te mau tāpa'o 'o tē hōro'ahia mai, noa atu ā te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a ato'a—inaha, 'o rātou te feiā e ore e pohe.
- 9 E fā mai rā te Tamaiti o te Parau-Tia ia rātou ; 'e e fa'aora 'oia ia rātou ; 'e e fāri'i rātou i te hau i pīha'i iho iāna, ē tae noa atu 'ua hope nā u'i e toru, 'e e hope ato'a e rave rahi nō nā u'i e maha i te pohe i roto i te parauti'a.
- 10 'E 'ia hope ana'e teie nei mau mea i te tupu, e tae vave mai ia te ha'amoura'a o tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; e noa atu ā te mamae o tō'u nei vārua, 'ua 'ite mau vau i te reira ; nō reira, 'ua 'ite au ē, e tupu mau ia ; e ho'o rātou ia rātou iho nō te aore ; 'e nō te utu'a ho'i o tō rātou ra te'ote'o e te ma'ama'a e fāri'i rātou i te ha'amoura'a ; 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua auraro rātou i tā te diabololo 'e 'ua mā'iti i te mau 'ohipa nō te pōiri ra, 'eiaha rā i tā te māmarama, nō reira e mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia hurihia i raro i hade ra.
- 11 E 'ore roa te Vārua o te Fatu e mārō i te ta'ata nei ē a muri noa atu. 'E 'ia fa'aea te Vārua i te mārō i te ta'ata nei, e tae vave mai ia te pohe, 'e e mea 'oto roa te reira i tō'u nei vārua.
- 12 'E mai tā'u ho'i i parau nō ni'a i te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a i te mau 'āti Iuda ē, 'o Iesu te Mesia mau, e mea ti'a roa ia i te mau 'Ētene 'ia fa'a'ite-pāpū-hia ē, 'o Iesu te Mesia, te Atua mure 'ore.
- 13 'E e fa'a'ite mai 'oia iāna iho nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maiti'i ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei ti'aturi iāna ; 'oia ia, i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a, 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a, i te ravera'a i te mau semeio rarahi, 'e te mau tāpa'o, 'e te mau piri, i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o.
- 14 Inaha rā, tē tohu nei au ia 'outou nō ni'a i te mau mahana hope'a ; nō ni'a i te mau mahana e fa'atupuhia mai ai teie nei mau mea e te Fatu te Atua, i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

- 15 I muri iho i te paruparura'a te fa'aro'o o tō'u ra hua'ai 'e te hua'ai o tō'u ra mau taea'e, e tō rātou ho'i taparahira'ahia e te mau 'Ētene ra ; 'oia ia, i muri iho i tō te Fatu te Atua ha'a'atira'a ia rātou i te mau pūhapa ma te 'āua ia rātou ra, 'e te patura'a ho'i i te mau ha'apūra'a nō te haru ia rātou ; 'e i muri iho i tō rātou tu'ura'ahia i raro roa i te repo e morohi roa atu ra rātou, e pāpa'ihia ā te mau parau a te feiā parauti'a, 'e e fa'aro'ohia ā ho'i te mau pure a te feiā fa'aro'o, 'e 'o rātou ato'a tei topa i roto i te ti'aturi 'ore ra, e 'ore roa ia rātou e ha'amo'ehia.
- 16 'E 'o rātou ho'i 'o tē ha'amouhia e parau mai ia rātou mai raro mai i te repo ra, e parau marū mai tō rātou reo mai raro mai i te repo, 'e tō rātou reo, mai te reo ia o te hō'ē ta'ata i pohe ; 'e e hōro'a mai ho'i te Fatu te Atua i te mana iāna 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite i te parau nō rātou, 'e mai te mea ra ē, nō raro mai i te repo te reira ; 'e e parau marū mai ho'i tō rātou reo mai raro mai i te repo ra.
- 17 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu te Atua : E pāpa'i rātou i te mau mea e ravehia i rotopū ia rātou ra, 'e e pāpa'ihia te reira 'e e tāpirihia i roto i te hō'ē buka, 'e 'o rātou 'o tei paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o ra, e fa'a'erehia ia rātou i taua mau parau ra, nō te mea 'ua tūtau rātou 'ia ha'amou i te mau mea a te Atua ra.
- 18 Nō reira, 'o rātou tei ha'amouhia ra, 'ua ha'amou-'oi'oi-hia ia ; 'e te rahi ato'a o taua feiā e mata'u-roa-hia ra, e riro rātou mai te ota e puehu 'ē ra—'oia ia, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu te Atua : E oti 'oi'oi te reira, mai te 'amora'a mata nei ā—
- 19 'E a muri a'era, 'o rātou 'o tei paruparu tō fa'aro'o ra, e tā'irihia ia rātou e te rima o te mau 'Ētene ra.
- 20 'E 'ua fa'ateiteihia te mau 'Ētene e te te'ote'o o tō rātou iho 'ā'au, 'e 'ua turorirori rātou, 'e nō te rahi o tō rātou 'ōfa'i turorira'a, i fa'ati'a ai rātou i te mau 'ēkālesia e rave rahi ; 'ua fa'a'ino rā rātou i te mana 'e te mau semeio a te Atua, 'e 'ua ha'api'i ia rātou iho i tō rātou iho pa'ari 'e tō rātou iho 'ite, 'ia noa'a ia rātou te faufa'a ma te oro i te mata o te ta'ata ri'iri'i.
- 21 'Ua fa'ati'ahia te mau 'ēkālesia e rave rahi tei fa'atupu i te mi'imii, 'e te mārō, 'e te fe'i'i.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

- 22 'E tei reira ato'a ho'i te mau pupu 'ohipa huna, mai tō te mau tau tahito ra, mai te au i te mau pupu 'ohipa huna a te diabolo, 'e 'o 'oia iho ho'i te tumu nō teie mau mea ; 'oia ia, te tumu nō te taparahi ta'ata 'e te mau 'ohipa nō te pōiri ; 'oia ia, 'e tē arata'i atu ra 'oia ia rātou nā te 'a'i ma te taura vavai, ē tae noa atu 'ua ru'uru'u 'oia ia rātou i tāna mau taura pa'ari ē a muri noa atu.
- 23 Inaha ho'i, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'aore roa te Fatu te Atua e 'ohipa i roto i te pōiri.
- 24 'Aore ho'i 'oia e rave i te hō'ē a'e 'ohipa, maori rā nō te maita'i o te ao nei ; 'e 'ua here 'oia i tō te ao nei, 'e 'ua hōro'a 'oia i tōna iho ora, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia 'ume mai i te mau ta'ata ato'a iāna ra. Nō reira, 'aita 'oia i fa'aue mai i te ta'ata nei 'eiaha rātou e fāri'i i tāna ra fa'aorara'a.
- 25 Inaha, tē pi'i ra ānei 'oia i te hō'ē ta'ata, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'A haere 'ē atu iā'u nei ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa ; tē parau mai ra rā 'oia ē : 'A haere mai iā'u nei e tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te ao nei, 'a ho'o mai ai i te ū 'e te meli, ma te moni 'ore 'e ma te ho'o 'ore.
- 26 Inaha, 'ua fa'aue ānei 'oia i te mau ta'ata 'ia haere rātou i rāpae i te mau sunago, 'e 'aore rā i rāpae i te mau fare ha'amorira'a ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa.
- 27 'Ua fa'aue mai ānei 'oia i te mau ta'ata 'eiaha rātou e fāri'i i tāna fa'aorara'a ? Inaha tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa ; 'āre'a rā 'ua hōro'a noa mai 'oia i te reira i te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'e 'ua poro'i mai 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata 'ia tītau rātou i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia tātarahapa.
- 28 Inaha, 'ua fa'aue mai ānei te Fatu i te mau ta'ata 'eiaha rātou e fāri'i i tōna ra maita'i ? Inaha tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fāna'o te mau ta'ata ato'a, te tahi 'ia au i te tahi, 'e 'aore roa te hō'ē i 'ōpanihia.
- 29 'Ua fa'aue mai 'oia ē, 'eiaha roa e rave i te mau 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a ; inaha ho'i, te mau 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a ra, 'o tō te ta'ata ia fa'ateiteira'a ia rātou iho 'ei māramarama i tō te ao nei, 'ia noa'a ia rātou te fa'ahanahanara'a a tō te ao nei, 'aore rā rātou i tītau 'ia maita'i Ziona ra.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

- 30 Inaha, 'ua 'ōpani te Fatu i teie mau mea ; nō reira, 'ua hōro'a mai te Fatu te Atua i te hō'ē fa'auera'a i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē, e mea ti'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia fa'atupu i te here, e taua here ra 'o te aroha ia. 'Ia 'ore te here i roto ia rātou, e mea faufa'a 'ore ia rātou. Nō reira, mai te mea tei roto ia rātou te here, e'ita roa ia rātou e vaiho noa i te rave 'ohipa nō Ziona 'ia pohe.
- 31 'Āre'a rā te rave 'ohipa nō Ziona, 'ia 'ohipa 'oia nō Ziona ; 'e 'ia rave rātou i te 'ohipa nō te moni, e pohe ia rātou.
- 32 'E teie fa'ahou, 'ua fa'aue mai te Fatu te Atua, 'eiaha roa te ta'ata e taparahi ; 'eiaha roa rātou e ha'avare ; 'eiaha roa rātou e 'eiā ; 'eiaha roa rātou e fa'ahiti faufa'a 'ore noa i te i'oa o te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'eiaha roa rātou e nounou ; 'eiaha roa rātou e tāiroiro ; 'eiaha roa rātou e mārō te tahi i te tahi ; 'eiaha roa rātou e tai'ata ; 'e 'eiaha roa rātou e rave noa atu i teie nei mau mea ; 'e 'o rātou 'o tē rave i teie mau mea, e pohe ia.
- 33 E 'ere roa teie nei mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino nō 'ō mai i te Fatu ra, e rave rā 'oia i te 'ohipa maita'i i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'aore roa ho'i te hō'ē mea tāna e rave nei tei 'ore i fa'a'ite-maita'i-hia i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'ua ani 'oia ia rātou ato'a 'ia haere mai iāna ra 'e 'ia fāri'i i tōna maita'i ; 'e 'aita roa 'oia e pāto'i i te hō'ē 'ia haere mai iāna ra, te 'ere'ere 'e te 'uo'uo, te tītī 'e te ti'amā, te tāne 'e te vahine ; 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ato'a 'oia i te feiā 'ētene ; e hō'ē ana'e rātou ato'a i mua i te Atua, te 'āti Iuda 'e te 'Ētene ato'a ho'i.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

2 Nephi 27

- 1 Inaha rā, 'ia tae i te mau mahana hope'a ra, i te mau mahana o te mau 'Ētene—'oia ia, inaha e ta'ero te mau nūna'a ato'a o te mau 'Ētene, 'e te mau 'āti Iuda ato'a ho'i 'o tē tae mai i ni'a iho i teie nei fenua, 'e 'o tē pārahi ho'i i ni'a iho i te mau fenua 'ē ra, 'oia ia, i te mau fenua ato'a o teie nei ao, inaha, e ta'ero ia rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau huru 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a ra—
- 2 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e tā'iri mai ai te Fatu Sabaota ia rātou i te pātiri 'e te 'āueuera'a fenua, 'e te haruru rahi, 'e te vero, 'e te mata'i 'ū'ana, 'e te auahi ura 'ama rahi ra.
- 3 E te mau nūna'a ato'a e tama'i atu ia Ziona ra, 'e 'o tē ha'ape'ape'a ho'i iāna, e riro ia rātou mai te moemoeā nō te 'ōrama i te pō ra ; 'oia ia, e riro ia rātou mai te ta'ata po'ia 'o tē moemoeā ra, 'E inaha, tē mana'o ra 'oia ē, tē 'amu ra 'oia i te mā'a ; 'ia ara mai ra rā 'oia, 'aita tōna vārua i pa'ia ; e mai te ta'ata i pohe i te po'ihā 'o tē moemoeā ra, 'E inaha, tē mana'o ra 'oia ē, te inu ra 'oia i te pape ; ia ara mai ra rā 'oia, inaha, te vai po'ihā noa ra, 'e te pa'ia 'ore ho'i tōna vārua ; 'oia ia, mai te reira ato'a te pupu ta'ata o te mau nūna'a ato'a 'o tē tama'i mai i te Mou'a ra ia Ziona.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, 'o 'outou pā'āto'a 'o tē rave i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'a tāpē'a na ia 'outou iho 'a māere ai, nō te mea e 'oto 'outou, ma te pi'i rahi te reo ; 'oia ia, e ta'ero 'outou, e 'ere rā i te ta'ero uaina ; 'e e turori 'outou, e 'ere rā i te turori ta'ero 'ava.
- 5 Inaha ho'i, 'ua nīni'i mai te Fatu i te vārua ta'oto rahi i ni'a iho ia 'outou. Inaha ho'i, 'ua tāpiri 'outou i tō 'outou mata, 'e 'ua pāto'i ho'i 'outou i te mau peropheta ; 'e nō tā 'outou ra mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i tāpo'i ai 'oia i tō 'outou mau tāvana 'e tō 'outou mau hi'o.
- 6 'E a muri a'era, e fa'atae mai te Fatu te Atua ia 'outou i te parau nō te hō'ē buka, 'o te parau ia a te feiā i ta'oto ra.
- 7 'E inaha e tāpirihia taua buka ra ; 'e tei roto ho'i i taua buka ra te mau heheura'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra, mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o teie nei ao ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra.

2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

- 8 Nō reira, nō te mau mea i tāpirihia ra, e 'ore roa te mau mea i tāpirihia e hōro'ahia atu i te mahana nō te mau 'ohipa 'Īino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a te ta'ata nei. Nō reira, e tāpe'ahia mai te buka ia rātou.
- 9 E hōro'ahia atu rā taua buka ra i te hō'ē ta'ata, 'e nāna ho'i e hōro'a atu i te mau parau nō taua buka ra, 'oia ho'i te mau parau a te feiā i ta'oto i raro i te repo ra ; 'e nāna ho'i e hōro'a atu i te parau o taua buka ra i te tahi atu ;
- 10 E'ita rā 'oia e hōro'a atu i te mau parau i tāpirihia ra, e'ita ato'a 'oia e hōro'a atu i te buka. 'E e tāpirihia ho'i taua buka ra e te mana o te Atua, 'e e vaiiho-noahia te heheura'a i tāpirihia i roto i te buka ē tae noa atu i te tau mau o te Fatu ra, 'ei reira e fa'aho'ihia mai ai ; inaha ho'i, nā te reira e fa'a'ite mai i te mau mea ato'a mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei ē tae roa atu i te hope'a.
- 11 E tae mai ho'i te mahana e tai'ohia ai te mau parau nō taua buka i tāpirihia ra i ni'a i te tāpo'i fare ; 'e e tai'ohia ho'i nā roto i te mana o te Mesia ra ; 'e e heheuhia mai te mau mea ato'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, te mau mea i vai na i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e te mau mea ato'a ho'i e tupu a muri atu, ē tae noa atu i te hope'a o teie nei ao.
- 12 Nō reira, i te mahana e hōro'ahia atu ai te buka i te ta'ata 'o tā'u i parau na, e hunahia taua buka ra i te mata o tō te ao nei, 'ia 'ore te mata o te ta'ata 'ia 'ite i te reira, maori rā 'o nā 'ite to'otoru tē 'ite i te reira nā roto i te mana o te Atua i pīha'i iho i te ta'ata 'o tei hōro'ahia atu te buka ; 'e e fa'a'ite pāpū rātou i te parau mau nō taua buka ra 'e te mau mea ho'i i pāpa'ihia i roto ra.
- 13 'E 'aīta atu e ta'ata e 'ite i te reira, maori rā e to'ofanu pu'e ta'ata mai te au i te hina'aro o te Atua, nō te fa'a'ite pāpū i tāna ra parau i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'ua parau mai ho'i te Fatu te Atua ē, e parau mai te mau parau a te feiā parauti'a mai te mea ra ē nō tei pohe mai ra.
- 14 Nō reira, e hōpoi mai ai te Fatu te Atua i te mau parau o taua buka ra ; 'e nā roto i te vaha o te mau 'ite e rave rahi mai te au i tōna ra mana'o e fa'ati'a ai 'oia i tāna ra parau ; e 'auē ho'i te ta'ata e pāto'i i te parau a te Atua.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

- 15 'E inaha, a muri a'era, e parau atu te Fatu te Atua i te ta'ata o tana e horo'a atu te buka : 'A rave i teie nei mau parau tei 'ore i tapirihia 'e 'a horo'a atu i te tahi atu ta'ata, 'ia fa'a'ite atu 'oia i te reira i te ta'ata 'ite i te tai'o, i te na-'o-ra'a atu e : 'A tai'o na 'oe i teie, te ani ha'eha'a atu nei au ia 'oe. 'E e parau mai te ta'ata 'ite i te tai'o e : 'A hopoi mai i te buka, 'e e tai'o vau i te reira.
- 16 'E i teienei, no te hanahana o teie nei ao 'e no te moni ho'i e roa'a ia ratou, e na reira mai ai ratou i te parau, e 'ere ho'i no te hanahana o te Atua ra.
- 17 E parau atu ho'i te ta'ata ra e : 'Aita e ti'a ia'u 'ia hopoi mai i te buka, no te mea 'ua tapirihia te reira.
- 18 E i reira te ta'ata 'ite i te tai'o e parau mai ai e : 'Aita e ti'a ia'u 'ia tai'o i te reira.
- 19 No reira, 'e a muri a'era, e horo'a fa'ahou atu te Fatu te Atua i te buka 'e te mau parau i roto ra i te ta'ata 'ite 'ore i te tai'o ; 'e e parau mai te ta'ata 'ite 'ore i te tai'o : 'Aita vau i 'ite i te tai'o.
- 20 'E i reira te Fatu te Atua e parau mai ai iana ra e : 'Aita roa te ta'ata 'ite i te tai'o e tai'o i te reira, no te mea 'ua pato'ihia te reira e ratou, 'e e ti'a ho'i ia'u 'ia rave i ta'u ihora 'ohipa ; no reira e tai'o 'oe i te mau parau 'o ta'u e horo'a atu ia 'oe na.
- 21 'A vaiho i te mau mea i tapirihia ra, e fa'atupu ho'i au i te reira i to'u ihora tau ; 'e e fa'a'ite ho'i au i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei e ti'a ia'u 'ia rave i ta'u ihora 'ohipa.
- 22 No reira, 'ia oti ia 'oe te tai'o i te mau parau o ta'u i fa'ae atu ia 'oe ra, 'e 'ua roa'a ho'i ia 'oe te mau 'ite o ta'u i fafau ia 'oe ra, 'ei reira 'oe e tapiri fa'ahou ai i taua buka ra, 'e e huna fa'ahou ai ia'u ra, 'ia ti'a ia'u 'ia fa'aherehere i te mau parau i tai'o-'ore-hia e 'oe ra, e tae noa atu i te tau e ti'a ai ia'u, i to'u ra pa'ari, 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te mau mea ato'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 23 Inaha ho'i, 'o vau nei te Atua ; e Atua ho'i au no te mau semeio ; 'e e fa'a'ite ho'i au i to te ao nei e, ho'e a to'u huru i nanahi ra, i teie nei mahana, e a muri noa atu ; 'e 'aore ho'i au e 'ohipa i rotopu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, maori ra na roto i to ratou fa'aro'o.
- 24 'E teie fa'ahou a, 'e a muri a'era, e parau atu te Fatu iana 'ia tai'o i te mau parau 'o te horo'ahia atu iana ra :

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

- 25 Mai te mea e ha'afātata mai teie feiā iā'u nei i tō rātou vaha, 'e e fa'ahanahana mai ho'i iā'u nei i tō rātou ra 'utu, tei te ātea 'ē rā tō rātou 'ā'au iā'u nei, 'e tō rātou mata'u iā'u e mea ha'api'i-noa-hia ho'i ia e te mau parau a te ta'ata ana'e ra—
- 26 Nō reira, e rave au i te hō'ē 'ohipa māere i rotopū i teie nei feiā, 'oia ia, te hō'ē 'ohipa māere 'e te 'ūmere ; e mou atu ho'i te 'aravihi o te feiā 'aravihi 'e te feiā 'ite ra, 'e e mo'e 'ē te māramarama o te feiā 'ite ra.
- 27 'E 'auē ho'i te feiā i 'imi māite i te huna i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a i te Fatu ! 'E tei roto i te pōiri tā rātou mau 'ohipa ; 'e tē parau nei rātou ē : Nā vai tātou e hi'o mai, 'e 'o vai tei 'ite ia tātou ? 'E tē parau ato'a nei ho'i rātou ē : 'Oia mau roa, tā 'outou fa'atahurira'a i te mau mea ato'a mai te 'araea ia a te potera ra. Inaha rā, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia rātou ē 'ua 'ite au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa ato'a, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra. E parau ānei ho'i te 'ohipa i te ta'ata i rave ē, e 'ere nāna i hāmani iā'u ? 'E 'aore rā e parau ānei ho'i tei hāmanihia i tei hāmani iāna ē, 'aita 'oia i 'ite ?
- 28 Inaha rā, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra : E fa'a'ite atu vau i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata ē, nō te hō'ē taime iti poto e riro mai Lebanona 'ei 'āua hotu rahi ; 'e e mana'ohia ai ho'i te 'āua hotu rahi 'ei fenua uru rā'au ra.
- 29 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e fa'aro'o ai te ta'ata tari'a turi i te parau o te buka, 'e e 'ite ai ho'i te mata o te matapō nā roto mai i te mohimohi 'e te pōiri.
- 30 'E e tupu rahi te maīta'i o te feiā ha'eha'a, 'e e 'oa'oa rātou i roto i te Fatu, 'e e 'oa'oa ho'i te feiā veve i rotopū i Tei Mo'a i 'Iserā'ela nei.
- 31 'E 'oia mau, mai te Fatu e ora nei, e 'ite rātou ē, e ha'afaua'a-'ore-hia te feiā ha'amata'u, e ha'amouhia te feiā tāhitohito, 'e e tāpū-'ē-hia te feiā ato'a i tītau i te mau 'ohipa 'Tīno.
- 32 'E 'o rātou ato'a 'o tei fa'ahapa i te ta'ata nō tāna parau, 'e rātou 'o tei tu'u i te mārei nō te ta'ata a'o i te pae 'ūputa ra, 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tei ha'api'o 'ē i te feiā parauti'a nō te aore.
- 33 Nō reira, tē parau mai ra te Fatu, 'o tei fa'aora ia Aberahama, nō ni'a i te 'utuāfare o Iakoba ra : E 'ore roa Iakoba e ha'amā fa'ahou, e 'ore ho'i e māhe'ahē'a fa'ahou tōna mata.

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

34 'Āre'a rā 'ia 'ite 'oia i tāna mau tamari'i, te 'ohipa i ravehia e tō'u nei rima, i rotopū iāna ra, e riro rātou i te ha'amo'a i tō'u nei i'oa, 'e i te ha'amo'a i Tei Mo'a nō Iakoba ra, 'e i te mata'u ho'i i te aro o te Atua nō 'Īserā'ela ra.

35 'E te feiā i hapa i te pae vārua ra, e noa'a te 'ite i reira, 'e te feiā amuamu ra, e māmarama ia i te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu i reira.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

2 Nephi 28

- 1 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua parau atu vau ia 'outou mai tā te Vārua i tītau mai iā'u ; nō reira, 'ua 'ite au ē, e tupu mau te reira e ti'a ai.
- 2 'E te mau mea e pāpa'ihia nō roto mai i taua buka ra, e riro iā 'ei mea faufa'a rahi roa i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, i tō tātou iho ā rā hua'ai, 'oia ho'i i te toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 3 I te mea ho'i ē a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra e riro te mau 'ēkālesia 'o tei 'ore i fa'ati'ahia i te Fatu ra, i te parau atu i te tahi 'e te tahi : Inaha, nō te Fatu au ; 'e e parau mai ho'i te tahi atu ē : Nō te Fatu au ; 'e e nā reira noa rātou ato'a i te parau, rātou 'o tei fa'ati'a i tā rātou iho mau 'ēkālesia, 'eiaha rā i tō te Fatu—
- 4 'E e mārō rātou te tahi i te tahi ; 'e e mārō ho'i tō rātou mau tahu'a te tahi i te tahi, 'e e ha'api'i rātou ma tō rātou iho 'ite, 'e e huna ho'i i te Vārua Maita'i, 'o tē hōro'a mai i te mana 'ia parau.
- 5 'E e huna rātou i te mana o te Atua, 'o Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela ; 'e e parau atu rātou i te mau ta'ata ē : 'A fa'aro'o mai na ia mātou nei, 'e 'a fa'aro'o mai i tā mātou parau ; inaha, 'aore ho'i e Atua i teie nei mahana, nō te mea 'ua oti i te ravehia e te Fatu ra te Tāra'ehara tāna ra 'ohipa, 'e 'ua hōro'a 'oia i tōna mana i te ta'ata nei.
- 6 Inaha, 'a fa'aro'o mai na 'outou i tā'u parau ; mai te mea e parau rātou ē, 'ua ravehia te hō'ē semeio e te rima o te Fatu, 'eiaha roa e ti'aturi i te reira ; nō te mea i teie nei mahana, e 'ere 'oia i te Atua nō te mau semeio ; 'ua fa'aoti 'oia i tāna 'ohipa.
- 7 'Oia iā, e rave rahi mau ta'ata 'o tē parau ē : 'A 'amu, 'a inu, 'e 'ia 'oa'oa, ananahi ho'i e pohe ai tātou ; 'e e maita'i tō tātou i reira.
- 8 'E e rave rahi ato'a 'o tē parau ē : 'A 'amu, 'a inu, 'e 'ia 'oa'oa ; 'āre'a rā, 'a mata'u i te Atua—e fa'ati'a ho'i 'oia ia 'oe 'ia rave i te hara iti ; 'oia iā, 'a ha'avare ri'i, 'a fa'ahapa i te tahi nō tāna mau parau, 'a 'ō i te 'āpo'o nō tō 'oe ta'ata tupu ; 'aore e 'ino i roto i te reira ; 'a rave i teie mau mea ato'a, ananahi ho'i e pohe ai tātou ; 'e mai te mea e hara tā tātou, e fa'aiti noa mai te Atua i tāna mau tā'irira'a ia tātou, 'e i te hope'a e fa'aorahia tātou i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua.

2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

- 9 'Oia iā, e nā reira ho'i e rave rahi ta'ata i te ha'api'i i te mau ha'api'ira'a ha'avare 'e te faufa'a 'ore, 'e te ma'ama'a ho'i ; 'e e fa'aahaaha rātou i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e e 'imi māite rātou 'ia huna i tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a i te Fatu ; 'e tei roto ho'i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa i te pōiri.
- 10 'E e pi'i mai te toto o te feiā mo'a mai raro mai i te repo ia rātou.
- 11 'Oia iā, 'ua fa'aru'e pā'āto'a rātou i te 'ē'a ; 'ua vi'ivi'i rātou.
- 12 Nō te te'ote'o, 'e nō te mau 'orometua ha'avare, 'e te ha'api'ira'a ha'avare ho'i, i vi'ivi'i ai tā rātou mau 'ēkālesia, 'e i fa'ateitei ai rātou i tā rātou mau 'ēkālesia ; nō te te'ote'o ho'i i fa'aahaaha ai rātou ia rātou iho.
- 13 'Ua haru rātou i tā te feiā veve nō tō rātou mau fare purera'a nehenehe ; 'ua haru ho'i rātou i tā te feiā veve nō tō rātou mau 'ahu nehenehe ; 'e 'ua hāmani 'ino rātou i te feiā marū e te feiā ha'eha'a i te 'ā'au, 'e nō tō rātou te'ote'o i fa'aahaaha ai rātou ia rātou ihora.
- 14 'E 'ua 'eta'eta tō rātou 'a'i 'e 'ua teitei tō rātou upo'o ; 'oia iā, nō te te'ote'o, 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e te mau 'ohipa tai'ata, i tāiva ai rātou ato'a, maori rā te tahi pae iti noa, te mau ta'ata ha'eha'a i pe'e i te Mesia ; 'āre'a rā 'ua arata'i-'ēhia rātou, 'e i te rahira'a o te taime 'ua hape rātou, nō te mea 'ua ha'api'ihia rātou i te mau parau a te ta'ata nei.
- 15 E te feiā 'aravihi, e te feiā 'ite, e te feiā tao'a rahi, 'o tei fa'aahaaha ia rātou iho i te te'ote'o o tō rātou iho 'ā'au, 'e rātou ato'a 'o tē ha'api'i i te mau ha'api'ira'a ha'avare, 'e rātou ato'a tei rave i te mau 'ohipa tai'ata 'e tei ha'api'o i te 'ē'a ti'a o te Fatu, 'auē ho'i ē, 'auē ho'i ē, 'auē ho'i rātou ē, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu te Atua Manahope, nō te mea e hurihia rātou i raro i hade.
- 16 'Auē ho'i rātou 'o tei fa'afāriu 'ē i te mea ti'a nō te mea faufa'a 'ore 'e tei fa'a'ino i te mea maita'i, 'e tei nā 'ō mai ē, e mea faufa'a 'ore iā ! Nō te mea e tae mai te mahana e fa'autu'a vave mai ai te Fatu te Atua i te mau ta'ata o te ao nei ; 'e i taua mahana ra 'a 'ī roa ai rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e pohe ai rātou.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

17 Inaha rā, mai te mea e tātarahapa te mau ta'ata o te ao nei i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, e'ita ia rātou e ha'amouhia, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota.

18 Inaha rā, e riro taua 'ēkālesia rahi 'e te vi'ivi'i, 'oia te vahine tai'ata o te ao ato'a nei, i te ma'iri i raro i te repo; 'e ma'irira'a rahi tō taua 'ēkālesia ra.

19 'E 'ia 'āueue ho'i te bāsileia o te diabolō e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia fa'ati'arepuhia tō reira feiā i te tātarahapa e ti'a ai; 'ia 'ore rā e mau rātou i te diabolō i tāna ra mau fifi mure 'ore, 'e fa'ati'arepuhia rātou 'ia riri, e pohe ihora.

20 Inaha ho'i, i taua mahana ra e fa'atupu 'oia i te 'ārepurepu i roto i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e fa'ati'arepu ho'i ia rātou 'ia riri i te mea maita'i.

21 'E te tahi pae, e fa'ahau 'oia ia rātou, 'e fa'ata'oto ho'i ia rātou i te ta'oto hau roa, 'e parau mai rātou ē : E mea maita'i i Ziona; 'oia ia, 'ua manuia Ziona, e mea maita'i te mau mea ato'a—e nā reira ho'i te diabolō i te ha'avare i tō rātou vārua, 'e i te arata'i māite atu ho'i ia rātou i raro i hade.

22 'E inaha, 'ua tāvaimanino 'oia i te tahi pae, 'e 'ua parau atu ia rātou ē, 'aita e hade; 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu 'oia ia rātou ē : E 'ere au i te diabolō, 'aita roa ho'i e diabolō—'e 'ua nā reira 'oia i te parau marū atu i tō rātou tari'a, ē tae roa atu 'ua mau rātou iāna i tāna mau fifi ri'ari'a, 'e 'aita roa e ora i te reira.

23 'Oia ia, 'ua mau rātou i te pohe, 'e i hade; 'e 'ia ti'a te pohe, 'e hade, 'e te diabolō 'e tei tāpe'ahia i te reira ra, i mua i te terōno o te Atua e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa e ti'a ai; 'e 'ia haere atu rātou mai reira atu i roto i te vāhi i ha'apa'ohia nō rātou ra e ti'a ai; i roto i te roto auahi 'e te gopheri, 'oia ho'i te māuiui hope 'ore ra.

24 Nō reira, 'auē ho'i te ta'ata tē pārahi hau noa ra i Ziona !

25 'Auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē pi'i ra ē : E mea maita'i te mau mea ato'a !

26 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'oia 'o tei fa'aro'o atu i te parau a te ta'ata nei, 'e tei huna i te mana o te Atua, 'e i te hōro'a nō te Vārua Maita'i !

27 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē parau ē : 'Ua fāri'i mātou, 'e 'aita mātou e hina'aro fa'ahou i te hō'ē mea !

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

- 28 'Oia iā, 'auē ho'i rātou ato'a 'o tē rurutaina ra 'e 'o tē riri ra nō te parau mau a te Atua ra ! Inaha ho'i, 'o tei patuhia i ni'a i te papa ra, tē fāri'i ra 'oia ma te 'oa'oa ; 'e 'o tei patuhia i ni'a i te one ra, tē rurutaina ra 'oia, 'o te hi'a 'oia.
- 29 'Auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē parau ē : 'Ua fāri'i mātou i te parau a te Atua, 'e 'aita mātou e hina'aro fa'ahou i te parau a te Atua, 'ua nava'i ho'i tā mātou !
- 30 Inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu te Atua : E hōro'a vau i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei i te fa'ae nā ni'a iho i te fa'ae, i te a'o nā ni'a iho i te a'o, te tahi vāhi iti i'ō nei 'e te tahi vāhi iti i 'ō atu ; 'e e ao tō rātou 'o tē fa'aro'o mai i tā'u mau parau, 'e 'o tē hōro'a mai i te tari'a i tā'u a'o ; e ha'api'i ho'i rātou i te parau pa'ari, nō te mea 'o 'oia 'o tē fāri'i mai e hōro'a fa'ahou atu ā vau ; 'e 'ia rātou 'o tē parau mai ē, 'Ua nava'i tā mātou, e rave-'ē-hia tei fāri'ihia e rātou.
- 31 E 'anatemahia 'oia 'o tei tu'u i tōna ti'aturira'a i te ta'ata nei, 'e 'aore rā 'o tei rave i te tino nei 'ei tauturu nōna, 'e 'aore rā 'o tei fa'aro'o i te mau parau a te ta'ata nei, maori rā 'ua hōro'ahia mai tā rātou mau parau nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i.
- 32 'Auē ho'i te mau 'Ētene, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu te Atua Sabaota ! Noa atu e fa'atoro atu vau i tō'u rima ia rātou i terā mahana 'e terā mahana, e huna atu rātou iā'u ; 'āre'a rā e aroha vau ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu te Atua, mai te mea e tātarahapa rātou 'e e haere mai iā'u nei ; nō te mea 'ua fa'atorohia tō'u rima i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te mahana, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu te Atua Sabaota.

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

2 Nephi 29

- 1 Inaha rā, e rave rahi te ta'ata—i taua mahana 'a ha'amata ai au i te fa'atupu i te 'ohipa māere i rotopū ia rātou ra, e ha'amana'o ā vau i tā'u ra mau fafaura'a, 'o tā'u i fafau atu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; ia fa'atoro fa'ahou atu vau i tō'u nei rima, i te piti o te taime nō te fa'aora i tō'u ra feiā, nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ho'i rātou.
- 2 'E 'ia ha'amana'o ato'a ho'i au i tā'u mau fafaura'a ia 'oe, e Nephi, 'e i tō 'oe ato'a ra metua tāne, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, e ha'amana'o ā vau i tō 'oe ra hua'ai ; 'e nā roto i tō'u nei vaha te mau parau a tō 'oe ra hua'ai i te fa'ataehia atu i tō 'oe ra hua'ai ; 'e e hiohiohia ho'i tā'u mau parau ē tae noa atu i te mau hope'a o te fenua nei, 'ei reva nō tō'u ra mau ta'ata, nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ho'i rātou.
- 3 'E nō te mea e hiohiohia atu tā'u mau parau—e parau mai te mau 'Ētene e rave rahi ē : E Bibilia ! E Bibilia ! E Bibilia ho'i tā mātou, 'e 'aita atu ā e Bibilia.
- 4 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu te Atua : E te feiā ma'ama'a ē, e Bibilia tā rātou, 'e nō 'ō mai ho'i te reira i te mau 'āti Iuda, i tō'u ra feiā tahito i fafau mai iā'u. E mea nāhea ho'i tā rātou ha'amāuruurura'a i te mau 'āti Iuda nō te Bibilia i roa'a ia rātou nō 'ō mai ia rātou ra ? 'Oia ia, e aha te mana'o o te mau 'Ētene ra ? 'Ua ha'amana'o ānei rātou i te mau mamae rahi, 'e te mau 'ohipa, 'e te mau māuiui o te mau 'āti Iuda, 'e tō rātou ha'apa'o maīta'i iā'u nei, i te fa'ataera'a mai i te fa'aorara'a i te mau 'Ētene ra ?
- 5 E te mau 'Ētene ē, 'ua ha'amana'o ānei 'outou i tō'u ra feiā tahito i fafau mai iā'u, i te mau 'āti Iuda ? 'Aita roa ia ; 'ua tuhi rā 'outou ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ino'ino ia rātou, 'e 'aita ho'i 'outou i 'imi 'ia fa'aora ia rātou. Inaha rā, e fa'aho'i atu vau i taua mau mea ato'a ra i nī'a iho i tō 'outou upo'o ; nō te mea 'aita roa vau 'o te Fatu i ha'amo'e i tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 6 E terā ra ta'ata ma'ama'a 'o tē parau ē : E Bibilia, e Bibilia ho'i tā mātou, 'e 'aita atu ā e Bibilia tā mātou e hina'aro. 'Ua fāri'i ānei 'outou i te Bibilia, maori rā nō 'ō mai i te mau 'āti Iuda ra ?

2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

7 'Aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, e rave rahi te mau nūna'a, e 'ere i te hō'ē ana'e iho ? 'Aita 'outou i 'ite ē, e nā'u, nā te Fatu ra tō 'outou Atua i hāmani i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e te ha'amana'o nei ho'i au ia rātou 'o tē pārahi ra i ni'a i te mau motu o te moana ; 'e tē fa'atere nei au i roto i te mau ra'i i ni'a ra, 'e i roto ho'i i te ao i raro nei ; 'e tē fa'atae noa nei ā vau i tā'u parau i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'oia ia, i te mau fenua ato'a o te ao nei ?

8 Nō reira, nō te aha ho'i 'outou e amuamu ai, i te mea e roa'a ā ia 'outou tā'u nei parau ? 'Aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, 'ua riro te 'itera'a pāpū o nā nūna'a e piti 'ei 'ite nō te fa'a'ite ia 'outou ē, 'o vau nei te Atua, 'e hō'ē ā tō'u ha'amana'ora'a i te tahi nūna'a i te tahi atu ? E nō reira, hō'ē ā te mau parau tā'u e parau i te hō'ē nūna'a i te tahi atu. 'E 'ia fāriu mai nā nūna'a e piti te tahi i te tahi, e fa'ariro-ato'a-hia ho'i te 'itera'a pāpū o nā nūna'a e piti ra 'ei hō'ē.

9 E nā reira vau 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi ē, hō'ē ā tō'u huru i nanahi ra, i teie nei mahana, ē a muri noa atu ; 'e tē parau atu nei ho'i au i tā'u mau parau mai te au i tō'u iho hina'aro. 'E nō te mea 'ua oti iā'u tē parau atu i te hō'ē parau ra, 'eiaha 'outou e mana'o ē, 'aita e ti'a iā'u 'ia parau atu i te tahi atu ā parau ; 'aita ā ho'i tā'u 'ohipa i oti ; 'e 'aita te reira e oti ē tae noa atu i te hope'a o te ta'ata nei, 'e 'aita ho'i e oti i reira ē a muri noa atu.

10 Nō reira, nō te mea e Bibilia tā 'outou, 'eiaha 'outou e mana'o ē, tei roto i te reira tā'u mau parau ē hope roa a'e ; 'e 'eiaha ato'a 'outou e mana'o ē, 'aita atu ā e mau parau 'o tā'u i fa'aue 'ia pāpa'ihia.

11 'E tē fa'aue ra ho'i au i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te pae nō te hiti'a o te rā 'e i te pae nō te tō'o'a o te rā, 'e i te pae apato'erau, 'e i te pae apato'a, 'e i te mau motu nō te moana, 'ia pāpa'i rātou i te mau parau tā'u e parau atu ia rātou ; 'e nā roto ho'i i te mau buka e pāpa'ihia ra, e ha'avā ai au i tō te ao nei, te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia au i tāna ra 'ohipa, mai tei pāpa'ihia ra.

12 Inaha ho'i, e parau atu vau i te mau 'āti Iuda 'e e pāpa'i rātou i te reira ; 'e e parau atu vau i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e e pāpa'i ho'i rātou i te reira ; 'e e parau atu ho'i au i te tahi atu mau 'ōpū nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'o tā'u i arata'i 'ē atura, 'e e pāpa'i ho'i rātou i te reira ; 'e e parau atu ho'i au i te mau fenua ato'a o te ao nei, 'e e pāpa'i rātou i te reira.

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

13 'E a muri a'era, e roa'a i te mau 'āti Iuda te mau parau nō te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e e roa'a ho'i i te mau 'āti Nephi te mau parau nō te 'āti Iuda ; 'e e roa'a ho'i i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e i te mau 'āti Iuda ato'a te mau parau nō te mau 'ōpū nō 'Īserā'ela i mo'e ra ; 'e e roa'a ho'i i te mau 'ōpū nō 'Īserā'ela i mo'e ra te mau parau nō te mau 'āti Nephi 'e nō te mau 'āti Iuda ho'i.

14 'E a muri a'era, e ha'aputuputuhia tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela i te fenua 'āi'a nō rātou ra ; 'e e ha'aputuputuhia ho'i tā'u ra parau 'ia riro 'ei hō'ē. 'E e fa'a'ite atu vau i te feiā 'o tē aro mai i tā'u ra parau 'e i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'oia ho'i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'o vau nei te Atua, 'e 'ua fafau atu vau ia Aberahama, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē, e ha'amana'o ā vau i tōna hua'ai ē a muri noa atu.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

2 Nephi 30

- 1 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, e paraparau atu vau ia 'outou ; nō te mea 'aita vau, 'o Nephi, e vaiiho ia 'outou 'ia mana'o ē, e mea parauti'a a'e 'outou i te mau 'Ētene. Inaha ho'i, 'ia 'ore 'outou e ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e pohe 'outou ; 'e nō te mau parau i parauhia, 'eiaha 'outou e mana'o ē, 'ua mou roa te mau 'Ētene.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, te mau 'Ētene ato'a 'o tē tātarahapa, 'o te feiā ia i fafau atu i te Fatu ; 'e te mau 'āti Iuda ato'a 'o tē 'ore e tātarahapa, e tāpū-'ē-hia atu ia rātou ; 'aita roa ho'i te Fatu e fafau i te hō'ē noa atu ta'ata, maori rā i tei tātarahapa 'e tei ti'aturi i tāna Tamaiti, 'o Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela.
- 3 'E i teienei, e tohu ri'i atu vau nō ni'a i te mau 'āti Iuda 'e te mau 'Ētene ato'a ho'i. 'Ia tae mai te buka 'o tā'u i parau ra, 'e 'ia pāpa'ihia te reira i te mau 'Ētene ra, 'e 'ia pia-fa'ahou-hia i te Fatu ra, e rave rahi te ta'ata 'o tē ti'aturi i te mau parau i pāpa'ihia ra ; 'e e hōpoi atu rātou i te reira i te toe'a o tō tātou ra hua'ai.
- 4 'E i reira te toe'a o tō tātou hua'ai e 'ite ai i te parau nō tātou, 'e te huru ho'i nō tō tātou haerera'a mai mai Ierusalemā mai ra ; 'e e 'ite ho'i rātou ē, e hua'ai rātou nō te mau 'āti Iuda.
- 5 'E e a'ohia te 'evanelia a Iesu Mesia i rotopū ia rātou ; nō reira, e fāri'i ai rātou i te 'ite i te parau nō ni'a i tō rātou ra mau metua, 'e i te 'ite ho'i i te parau nō Iesu Mesia, 'o tei 'itehia na i rotopū i tō rātou mau metua.
- 6 'E i reira rātou e 'oa'oa ai ; nō te mea e 'ite rātou ē, e ha'amaita'ira'a teie nō rātou nō 'ō mai i te rima o te Atua ; 'e e ha'amata tō rātou mau poa pōiri i te ma'iri mai ni'a mai i tō rātou mata ; e 'ore ho'i te mau u'i e rave rahi e hope i rotopū ia rātou, e riro ai rātou 'ei feiā vi'ivi'i 'ore 'e te au-maita'i-hia.
- 7 'E a muri a'era, e ha'amata te mau 'āti Iuda i ha'apurarahia ra i te ti'aturi i te Mesia ; 'e e ha'amata ho'i rātou i te ha'aputupu i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e e riro rātou ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi i te Mesia 'ei feiā au-maita'i-hia.

2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful people.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

- 8 'E a muri a'era, e ha'amata te Fatu te Atua i tāna 'ohipa i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a, te mau 'ōpū ato'a, te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau nūna'a ato'a, nō te fa'atupu i te fa'aho'ira'a mai i tōna mau ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua nei.
- 9 E ha'avā te Fatu te Atua i te mau ta'ata ri'iri'i ma te parauti'a ; 'e e a'o ho'i 'oia ma te fāito ti'a i te feiā ha'eha'a o te fenua nei. 'E e tā'iri 'oia i te fenua nei i te rā'au o tōna ra vaha ; e nā roto i te mata'i o tōna ra vaha e ha'apohe ai 'oia i te feiā parauti'a 'ore.
- 10 'Ua fātata roa ho'i te tau e fa'ati'a ai te Fatu te Atua i te hō'ē fa'ata'a-'ē-ra'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e e ha'amou 'oia i te feiā parauti'a 'ore ; 'e e fa'aora noa 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'e noa atu ā e ha'amou 'oia i te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te auahi.
- 11 'E te parauti'a ra, 'o te tātua ia o tōna tau'upu ; 'e te parau mau ra, 'o te tātua ia o tōna 'ōpū.
- 12 'E i reira e pārahi te lukō i pīha'i iho i te 'ārenio ; 'e e tārava 'āmui ho'i te nēmera i pīha'i iho i te pinia māmoe, 'e te fanau'a pua'atoro, 'e te liona 'āpī, 'e te fanau'a 'ānimara poria ra ; e nā te hō'ē tamari'i ri'i e arata'i ia rātou.
- 13 E 'āmui tāhō'ē te pua'atoro 'e te bea i te 'amura'a i te mā'a ; e tārava 'āmui ho'i tō rātou mau fanau'a te tahi i pīha'i iho i te tahi ; 'e e 'amu ho'i te liona i te matie mai te pua'atoro ato'a ra.
- 14 'E e ha'uti noa ho'i te aiū 'aru'aru i ni'a i te 'āpo'o o te asepi ra, 'e te tamari'i i fa'a'ore i te ū ra, e tu'ū ia 'oia i tōna rima i ni'a i te pūpunira'a o te zepho ra.
- 15 'E 'aita roa rātou e ha'amāuiui 'e 'aita ho'i e hāmani 'ino i te hō'ē a'e mea i ni'a i tō'u ato'a ra mou'a mo'a ; 'e e 'i ho'i te fenua nei i te 'ite nō ni'a i te Fatu mai te mau pape e tāpo'i ra i te miti.
- 16 Nō reira, e fa'a'itehia ai te mau mea nō te mau nūna'a ato'a ; 'oia ia, e fa'a'itehia ai te mau mea ato'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 17 'Aore e mea mo'e 'o tē 'ore e heheuhia ; 'aore e 'ohipa nō te pōiri 'o tē 'ore e fa'a'itehia i roto i te māramarama ; 'e 'aore e mea i tā'atihia i ni'a i te fenua nei 'o tē 'ore e tātarahia.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

18 Nō reira, i taua mahana ra e heheuhia mai ai te mau mea ato'a i heheuhia na i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'aita tō Sātane e mana fa'ahou i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei nō te hō'ē tau maoro. 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, e fa'aoti au i tā'u nei mau parau.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

2 Nephi 31

- 1 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au, 'o Nephi, i tā'u tohura'a ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e here. 'Aita re'a te mau mea e ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i, maori rā te mau mea tā'u i 'ite ē, e tupu mau ia a muri nei ; 'aita atu ho'i e ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te mau parau e rave rahi a tō'u taea'e ra 'o Iakoba.
- 2 Nō reira, te mau mea tā'u i pāpa'i, 'ua nava'i ia iā'u, maori rā e mā'a parau iti ā tā'u e pāpa'i nō ni'a i te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu a te Mesia ra ; nō reira, e parau pāpū atu vau ia 'outou na mai te au i te pāpū o tā'u ra mau tohura'a.
- 3 'E tē 'oa'oa nei tō'u vārua i te parau pāpū ; 'e tē nā reira ra ho'i te Fatu te Atua i te fa'atupu i te parau mau i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei. 'E tē ha'amāramarama mai ra ho'i te Fatu te Atua i te 'ite o te ta'ata nei ; i te mea tē paraparau mai ra 'oia i te ta'ata nei mai te au i tō rātou reo, 'e mai te au ho'i i tō rātou 'ite.
- 4 Nō reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, 'ua parau atu vau ia 'outou na nō ni'a i taua peropheta ra 'o tā te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai iā'u nei, 'o tē bāpetizo atu i te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'e nāna e hōpoi 'ē atu i te mau hara a tō te ao nei.
- 5 'E i teienei, mai te mea e mea ti'a i te 'Ārenio a te Atua, i tei mo'a, 'ia bāpetizohia i roto i te pape nō te fa'ati'a i te mau parauti'a ato'a, inaha, e mea ti'a roa atu ā ia ia tātou, i te feiā mo'a 'ore, 'ia bāpetizohia tātou, 'oia ia, i roto i te pape !
- 6 'E i teienei, e ui atu vau ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e here, nāhea te 'Ārenio a te Atua i te fa'ati'a i te mau parauti'a ato'a, i bāpetizohia ai 'oia i roto i te pape ?
- 7 'Aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, 'ua mo'a 'oia ? 'E noa atu ā e mea mo'a 'oia, tē fa'a'ite mai ra 'oia i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ē, tē fa'aha'eha'a ra 'oia iāna iho i te pae tino nei i mua i te Metua, 'e tē fa'a'ite ato'a ra ho'i i te Metua ē, e auraro 'oia iāna ra i te ha'apa'ora'a i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a.
- 8 Nō reira, i muri iho i tōna bāpetizora'ahia i roto i te pape, 'ua pou mai ra te Vārua Maita'i, mai te hōho'a o te 'ū'upa ra, i ni'a iho iāna ra.

2 Nephi 31

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficient me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

9 'E 'ua fa'a'ite fa'ahou ā 'oia i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei i te tītī'aifarora'a o te 'ē'a, 'e te piriha'ora'a o te 'ūputa 'o tē tītauhia ia rātou 'ia tomo atu nā roto, 'e nāna iho i fa'ati'a i te hi'ora'a i mua ia rātou.

10 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei : 'A pe'e mai na 'outou iā'u nei. Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, e ti'a ānei ia tātou 'ia pe'e atu ia Iesu ra, 'ia 'ore tātou e hina'aro māite i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Metua ra ?

11 'E 'ua parau mai ra ho'i te Metua : 'A tātarahapa na 'outou, 'a tātarahapa na 'outou, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia nā roto i te i'oa o tā'u ra Tamaiti here.

12 'E 'ua tae mai ra ho'i te reo o te Tamaiti iā'u nei, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'O te bāpetizohia i tō'u nei i'oa, e hōro'ahia mai ia te Vārua Maita'i e te Metua iāna ra, mai iā'u ato'a nei ho'i ; nō reira, 'a pe'e mai iā'u nei, 'e 'a rave i te mau mea tā 'outou i 'ite iā'u i te ravera'a.

13 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua 'ite au ē, mai te mea e pe'e 'outou i te Tamaiti, ma te 'ā'au tae mau, ma te fa'ahua 'ore 'e te ha'avare 'ore i mua i te Atua, 'āre'a rā ma te hina'aro mau, i te tātarahapara'a i tā 'outou na mau hara, ma te fa'a'ite pāpū atu i te Metua ē, 'ua ti'a ia 'outou 'ia rave i ni'a iho ia 'outou i te i'oa o te Mesia nā roto i te bāpetizora'a—'oia ia, nā roto i te pe'era'a atu i tō 'outou Fatu 'e tō 'outou Fa'aora i raro i te pape, mai te au i tāna ra parau ; inaha, i reira 'outou e fāri'i ai i te Vārua Maita'i ; 'oia ia, i reira e tae mai ai te bāpetizora'a i te auahi 'e i te Vārua Maita'i ; 'e i reira e ti'a ai ia 'outou 'ia parau atu ma te reo o te mau melahi ra, 'e 'a pi'i māite atu ai i te 'āruera'a i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela ra.

14 Inaha rā, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Tamaiti iā'u nei, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : I muri iho i tō 'outou tātarahapara'a i tā 'outou mau hara, 'e i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te Metua ē 'ua hina'aro 'outou 'ia ha'apa'o i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, nā roto i te bāpetizora'a i te pape, 'e 'ua fāri'i i te bāpetizora'a i te auahi 'e i te Vārua Maita'i, 'e 'ua ti'a ho'i ia 'outou 'ia parau i te parau 'e'ē, 'oia ia, i te reo ho'i o te mau melahi, 'e i muri iho 'a huna ai iā'u i reira ra, e mea maita'i a'e paha 'āhiri 'aita 'outou i 'ite iā'u ra.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

- 15 'E 'ua fa'aro'o a'era vau i te hō'ē reo nō 'ō mai i te Metua ra, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Oia ia, e parau mau 'e te ha'avare 'ore te mau parau a tā'u ra Tamaiti here. 'O te ta'ata 'o tē fa'aitoito noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e fa'aorahia ia.
- 16 'E i teieni, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ia 'ore te ta'ata e fa'aitoito noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a, i te pe'era'a i te hi'ora'a o te Tamaiti a te Atua ora, e 'ore roa ia e fa'aorahia.
- 17 Nō reira, 'a rave na 'outou i te mau mea tā'u i fa'a'ite ia 'outou ra ē, i 'ite na vau ē, e ravehia ia e tō 'outou ra Fatu 'e tō 'outou ato'a ra Tāra'ehara ; 'e 'ua fa'a'itehia mai taua mau mea ra iā'u nei, 'ia 'ite 'outou i te 'ūputa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tomo atu. 'E te 'ūputa e tomohia e 'outou ra, 'o tē tātarahapa ia 'e te bāpetizora'a i te pape ; 'e i muri iho e tae mai ai te ha'amatarara'a nō tā 'outou ra mau hara nā roto i te auahi 'e te Vārua Maita'i.
- 18 'E 'ia nā reira 'outou, tei ni'a ānei ia 'outou i teieni 'ē'a piriha'o 'e te 'oa'oa ē tae roa atu ai i te ora mure 'ore ra : 'oia ia, 'ua tomo mai 'outou nā te 'ūputa ; 'ua rave māite 'outou mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Metua 'e te Tamaiti ato'a ; 'e 'ua fāri'i ho'i 'outou i te Vārua Maita'i, 'o tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei i te Metua 'e te Tamaiti, e tae atu i te fa'atupura'a i te fafaura'a i parauhia e ana ra, 'o tē nā 'ō mai ra ē, 'ia tomo 'outou nā te 'ē'a mau e fāri'i ia 'outou.
- 19 'E i teieni, e tō'u mau taea'e here, e ui atu vau ia 'outou na, 'ia tae 'outou i taua 'ē'a piriha'o ra 'e te oaoa, 'o te hope'a ānei ia ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa ; 'aita ā 'outou i tae i taua vāhi iti nei, maori rā nā roto i te parau a te Mesia 'e te fa'aro'o 'āueue 'ore iāna ra, i te ti'aturi-māite-ra'a i te mau maita'i rahi nōna, 'o tei pūai 'ia fa'aora.
- 20 Nō reira, 'ia haere māite 'outou i mua i te ti'a-māite-ra'a i te Mesia, ma te ti'aturi pāpū roa, 'e te here i te Atua e te ta'ata ato'a. Nō reira, mai te mea e haere māite 'outou i mua ma te rave i te fa'a'amu'a i te parau a te Mesia, 'e ma te fa'aitoito ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, inaha, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Metua : E fāri'i 'outou i te ora mure 'ore.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

21 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, teie te 'ē'a mau ; 'aita atu e 'ē'a 'e 'aita atu ho'i e i'oa i hōro'ahia mai i raro a'e i te ra'i, e ti'a ai i te ta'ata 'ia fa'aorahia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ra. 'E i teienei, inaha, 'o teie te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu a te Mesia ra, 'e teie ana'e te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu mau a te Metua, 'e tā te Tamaiti, 'e tā te Vārua Maita'i ho'i, hō'ē roa Atua, 'aita e hope'a. 'Āmene.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

2 Nephi 32

- 1 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua mana'o vau ē, tē feruri hōhonu nei 'outou i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au i tā 'outou e rave 'a ha'amata ai 'outou i te haere nā te 'ē'a. Inaha rā, nō te aha 'outou i feruri hōhonu ai i teie mau mea i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au ?
- 2 'Aita ānei 'outou i ha'amana'o i tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē, 'ia fāri'i 'outou i te Vārua Maita'i, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia parau ma te reo o te mau melahi ? 'E i teienei, nāhea e ti'a ai ia 'outou 'ia parau mai ma te reo o te mau melahi, maori rā nā roto i te Vārua Maita'i ?
- 3 E paraparau mai te mau melahi nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i ; nō reira, e paraparau mai rātou i te mau parau a te Mesia. Nō reira, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'a rave i te fa'a'amu'a i te mau parau a te Mesia ; inaha ho'i, e fa'a'ite te mau parau a te Mesia ia 'outou i te mau mea tā 'outou e ti'a 'ia rave.
- 4 Nō reira, i teienei, i parau na vau i teie nei mau parau, 'e mai te mea ē 'aita 'outou i māramarama i te reira, nō te mea ia 'aita 'outou i ani mai, 'e 'aita ho'i 'outou i pātōtō mai ; nō reira, 'aita 'outou i arata'ihia i roto i te māramarama, 'ia pohe rā 'outou i roto i te pōiri e ti'a ai.
- 5 Inaha ho'i, tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai te mea e tomo mai 'outou nā te 'ē'a, 'e e fāri'i ho'i i te Vārua Maita'i, nā te reira e fa'a'ite ia 'outou i te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou e rave.
- 6 Inaha, 'o teie te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu a te Mesia, 'e 'aita e mau ha'api'ira'a tumu e hōro'a-fa'ahou-hia ē tae noa atu 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oia iāna iho ia 'outou i roto i te tino nei. 'E 'ia fa'a'ite mai 'oia iāna iho ia 'outou i roto i te tino nei, te mau mea tāna e fa'a'ite ia 'outou ra, 'o tā 'outou ia e ha'apa'o e ti'a ai.
- 7 'E i teienei, 'aita e ti'a iā'u, ia Nephi, 'ia parau fa'arahi atu ā ; 'ua tāpe'a ho'i te Vārua i tā'u parau, 'e 'ua vaiihohia vau 'ia 'oto nō te ti'aturi 'ore, 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e te pōiri, 'e te 'ā'au 'eta'eta o te ta'ata nei ; nō te mea 'aita roa rātou e 'imi i te 'ite, 'e 'aita ato'a e tītau 'ia māramarama i te 'ite rahi, 'o tei hōro'ahia mai ia rātou ma te pāpū maita'i, 'oia mau, i te parau pāpū roa.

2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

8 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua 'ite au ē tē feruri hōhonu nei ā 'outou i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au ; 'e tē 'oto nei au i te mea ē, e mea tī'a iā'u 'ia parau atu nō ni'a i teie nei mea. Mai te mea e fa'aro'o 'outou i te Vārua, 'o tē ha'api'i i te ta'ata 'ia pure, e 'ite iā 'outou i reira ē, e mea tī'a ia 'outou 'ia pure ; 'aita ho'i te vārua 'ino e ha'api'i nei i te ta'ata 'ia pure, tē ha'api'i nei rā te reira iāna 'eiaha e pure.

9 Inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e mea tī'a ia 'outou 'ia pure tāmāu noa, 'eiaha e ha'aparuparu ; 'eiaha 'outou e rave i te hō'ē mea i te Fatu, maori rā ē 'ia pure 'outou nā mua i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o te Mesia, 'ia ha'amo'a 'oia i tā 'outou ra 'ohipa ia 'outou na, 'ia riro tā 'outou ra 'ohipa 'ei maita'i nō tō 'outou vārua.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

2 Nephi 33

- 1 'E i teieni, e'ita e ti'a iā'u, ia Nephi, 'ia pāpa'i i te mau mea ato'a i ha'api'ihia i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; e'ita ho'i au i te mea pūai i te pāpa'i mai tā'u i pūai i te a'o ; nō te mea 'ia parau te ta'ata nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i, nā te mana o te Vārua Maita'i e fa'atae i taua parau ra i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 2 Inaha rā, e rave rahi te ta'ata i fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au i te Vārua Mo'a, 'e 'aore tōna e vāhi i roto ia rātou ra, nō reira, 'ua fa'aru'e mai rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi tei pāpa'ihia ra, 'e 'ua fa'ariro ho'i rātou i te reira 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore.
- 3 'Āre'a rā, 'ua pāpa'i au, 'o Nephi, i te mau parau tā'u i pāpa'i ra, 'e tē fa'ariro nei ho'i au i te reira 'ei mea faufa'a rahi roa i tō'u ra mau ta'ata. 'E 'ua pure tāmāu noa ho'i au nō rātou i te ao, 'e tē fa'ararirari noa nei ho'i tō'u roimata i tō'u turu'a nō rātou i te ru'i ; 'e tē ti'aoro noa ra vau i tō'u Atua ma te fa'aro'o, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e fa'aro'o mai 'oia i tā'u ra ti'aorora'a.
- 4 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e ha'amo'a mai te Fatu te Atua i tā'u ra mau pure nō te maita'i o tō'u ra mau ta'ata. 'E te mau parau tā'u i pāpa'i ma te paruparu ra, e ha'apūaihia ia nō rātou ; nō te mea e ha'api'i atu te reira ia rātou 'ia rave i te maita'i ; e fa'a'ite ho'i ia rātou i te parau nō tō rātou ra mau metua ; e paraparau ho'i te reira nō ni'a ia Iesu, 'e e ha'api'i ho'i te reira ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi iāna, 'e 'ia fa'aitoito ē tae noa atu i te hope'a, 'oia te ora mure 'ore ra.
- 5 'E 'ua pāto'i pūai ho'i te reira i te hara, mai te au i te pāpū o te parau mau ra ; nō reira, 'aita roa e ta'ata e riri mai i te mau parau tā'u i pāpa'i, maori rā 'ua uruhia 'oia e te vārua o te diabolō ra.
- 6 Tē 'oa'oa nei au i te parau pāpū ; tē 'oa'oa nei au i te parau mau ; 'e tē 'oa'oa nei au ia Iesu, nō te mea 'ua fa'aora 'oia i tō'u vārua mai hade mai.
- 7 'Ua here au i tō'u nūna'a, 'e tē vai nei tō'u fa'aro'o rahi i te Mesia, 'e e fārerei au i te mau vārua pōra'o 'ore e rave rahi i tāna ra vāhi ha'avāra'a.
- 8 'Ua here au i te 'āti Iuda—ua parau vau ē, e 'āti Iuda, nō te mea 'o te fenua ia nō reira mai au.

2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

- 9 'Ua here ato'a vau i te mau 'Ētene. Inaha rā, e 'ore au e ti'aturi i te hō'ē nō rātou, maori rā 'ia 'āfaro rātou i te Mesia, 'e 'ia tomo ho'i nā roto i te 'ūputa oaoa 'e 'ia haere nā te 'ē'a piriha'o ē tae atu ai i te ora ra, 'e 'ia haere tāmau noa ho'i nā taua 'ē'a ra ē tae atu ai i te hope'a nō te pu'e mahana o te orara'a nei.
- 10 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'e te 'āti Iuda ato'a, e tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei, 'a fa'aro'o mai na i teie nei mau parau, 'e 'a ti'aturi ho'i i te Mesia ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou e ti'aturi i teie nei mau parau, 'a ti'aturi i te Mesia. 'E 'ia ti'aturi 'outou i te Mesia ra, e ti'aturi ato'a ia 'outou i teie nei mau parau, nō te mea, e mau parau teie nā te Mesia, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te reira iā'u nei ; 'e tē ha'api'i nei ho'i te reira i te ta'ata ato'a 'ia rave i te maita'i.
- 11 'E 'āhiri e 'ere te reira i te mau parau nā te Mesia ra, 'a ha'avā 'outou i te reira—nō te mea e fa'a'ite mai te Mesia ia 'outou, nā roto i te mana 'e te hanahana rahi, 'e nāna iho teie mau parau, 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra ; 'e e ti'a atu ho'i 'outou 'e 'o vau ato'a te mata i te mata i mua i tāna ha'avāra'a ; 'e i reira 'outou e 'ite ai ē, 'ua fa'auehia vau e ana 'ia pāpa'i i teie mau mea nei, noa atu ā tō'u nei paruparu.
- 12 'E tē pure nei au i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o te Mesia, 'ia fa'aorahia e rave rahi o tātou, 'e 'aore rā tātou pā'āto'a, i roto i tōna ra bāsileia i taua mahana rahi e mahana hope'a ato'a ra.
- 13 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'o 'outou pā'āto'a nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e tō te mau hope'a ato'a ho'i o te fenua nei, tē paraparau atu nei au ia 'outou mai te reo o te tahi i te pi'ira'a mai raro mai i te repo ra : 'A pārahi 'outou ē tae noa atu i taua mahana rahi ra.
- 14 'E 'outou 'o tē 'ore e hina'aro i te maita'i o te Atua, 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi i te mau parau a te mau 'āti Iuda ra, 'e i tā'u nei ho'i mau parau, 'e i te mau parau ho'i e tae mai nō roto mai i te vaha o te 'Ārenio a te Atua ra, inaha, e parau atu vau ia 'outou, 'a haere rā 'outou ē a muri noa atu, 'e e fa'ahapa ho'i teie nei mau parau ia 'outou i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 15 'E te mau mea ho'i tā'u e tā'ati i te fenua nei, e fa'aho'ihia mai ia nō te fa'ahapa ia 'outou i te taime nō te ha'avāra'a ; 'ua nā reira mai ho'i te Fatu i te fa'aue mai iā'u ra, 'e 'ia ha'apa'o vau i te reira e ti'a ai. 'Āmene.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

Te Buka a Iakoba

Te Teina o Nephi

Te mau parau nō tāna a'ora'a i tōna mau taea'e. Tē ha'amāmū ra 'oia i te hō'ē ta'ata 'o tē 'imi ra 'ia ha'amou i te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu a te Mesia. Te tabi mau parau ri'i nō ni'a i te 'ā'amu o te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

Iakoba 1

- 1 Inaha ho'i, i muri a'era, 'ua hope a'era te mau matahiti e pae 'ahuru 'e ma pae mai te 'anotau i fa'aru'e ai Lehi i Ierusalem; nō reira, 'ua hōro'a mai ra Nephi iā'u, ia Iakoba, i te hō'ē fa'auera'a nō ni'a i te mau 'api iti, 'e tei ni'a iho teie mau mea i te 'ō'otira'ahia.
- 2 'E 'ua hōro'a mai ra 'oia iā'u, ia Iakoba, i te hō'ē fa'auera'a 'ia pāpa'i au i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api i te tahi mau mea iti 'o tā'u i mana'o e mea faufa'a rahi; 'e 'eiaha vau e pāpa'i, maori rā 'ei vāhi iti noa nō ni'a i te 'ā'amu o teie nei feiā tei ma'irihia te i'oa o te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 3 'E 'ua parau mai ho'i 'oia ē, 'ia 'ō'otihia te 'ā'amu o tōna ra mau ta'ata i ni'a i te tahi atu o tāna ra mau 'api, 'e 'ia fa'aherehere au i teie nei mau 'api 'e 'ia hōro'a atu i tō'u iho hua'ai, i terā u'i i terā u'i.
- 4 'E mai te mea tē vai ra te tahi mau a'ora'a mo'a, 'e te heheura'a fa'ahiahia rahi, 'e te tohu, 'ia 'ō'oti iā vau i te mau upo'o parau nō te reira i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api, 'e 'ia pāpa'i ho'i au i te reira mai te au i tei ti'a ra, nō te Mesia, 'e nō te maīta'i o tō mātou mau ta'ata.
- 5 'E nō te fa'aro'o 'e te onoono rahi, i fa'a'ite-mauhiahia ai ia mātou te mau mea nō ni'a i tō mātou ra mau ta'ata, 'e te mau mea ho'i e tupu i ni'a ia rātou.
- 6 'E 'ua fāri'i ato'a ho'i mātou e rave rahi mau heheura'a, 'e te vārua ho'i nō te mau tohura'a e rave rahi; nō reira 'ua 'ite mātou i te parau nō ni'a i te Mesia 'e tōna ra bāsileia 'o tē tae mai.

The Book of Jacob

the Brother of Nephi

The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He foundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

- 7 Nō reira 'ua 'ohipa māite mātou i rotopū i tō mātou ra mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia fa'aitoito ia rātou 'ia haere mai i te Mesia, 'e 'ia fāri'i i te maita'i o te Atua, 'ia ō rātou i roto i tōna ra fa'aeara'a ; 'o te tapu ho'i 'oia i roto i tōna ra riri 'ū'ana 'e 'aita rātou e ō i reira, mai i te fa'ao'ō'ora'a i te mau mahana nō te fa'ahemara'a, 'a pārahi ai te mau tamari'i o 'Īserā'ela i te mēdēbara ra.
- 8 Nō reira, teie tō mātou hina'aro i te Atua, 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia fa'aitoito i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'eiaha e mārō atu i te Atua, 'eiaha e fa'atupu i tōna riri, 'ia ti'aturi rā te mau ta'ata ato'a i te Mesia, 'e 'ia feruri i tōna ra pohe, 'e 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i tōna ra sātauro 'e 'ia fa'a'oroma'i ato'a i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a o tō te ao nei ; nō reira, i itoito ai au, 'o Iakoba, i te ha'apa'ora'a i te fa'auera'a a tō'u ra tua'ana o Nephi.
- 9 I teienei, 'ua ruhiruhiā ihora 'o Nephi, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, 'ua fātata 'oia i te pohe ; nō reira, 'ua fa'atāhinu ihora 'oia i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ei ari'i 'e 'ei tāvana ho'i i ni'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata i teienei, mai te au i te mau fa'aterera'a a te mau ari'i ra.
- 10 'Ua here roa te mau ta'ata ia Nephi, nō te mea 'ua riro 'oia 'ei pārruru maita'i nō rātou, 'e i rave na ho'i 'oia i te 'o'e a Labana nō te pārruru ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ohipa ho'i 'oia nō tō rātou ra maita'i ē hope noa atu tōna ra pu'e mahana—
- 11 Nō reira, 'ua hina'aro te mau ta'ata 'ia ha'amana'o noa i tōna i'oa. 'E te feiā 'o tē fa'atere 'ei mono nōna ra, 'ua ma'irihia ia tō rātou ra i'oa e te mau ta'ata, 'o Nephi piti, 'o Nephi toru, 'e 'ua nā reira-noa-hia, mai te au i te mau fa'aterera'a a te mau ari'i ; 'e 'ua ma'irihia tō rātou i'oa mai te reira te huru 'e te mau ta'ata, noa atu te huru o tō rātou ihora i'oa mau.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ihora Nephi.
- 13 'E i teienei, te mau ta'ata e 'ere i te 'āti Lamana, nō te mau 'āti Nephi ia ; 'āre'a rā 'ua parauhia tō rātou mau i'oa te mau 'āti Nephi, te mau 'āti Iakoba, te mau 'āti Iosepha, te mau 'āti Zorama, te mau 'āti Lamana 'āti Lemuela, 'e te mau 'āti Isema'ela.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

14 'Āre'a rā, mai teie taime atu 'aita vau, 'o Iakoba, e pi'i ia rātou i teie nei mau i'oa, e pi'i rā vau ia rātou 'o tei tītau 'ia ha'amou i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ra, e mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e e pi'i au ia rātou 'o tei fa'ahoa ia Nephi, e mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'aore rā te mau ta'ata o Nephi, mai te au i te mau fa'aterera'a a te mau ari'i ra.

15 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i raro a'e i te fa'aterera'a a te ari'i piti, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata o Nephi i te fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e i te rave ri'i i te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore, mai tā Davida i rave i tahito ra, 'e mai ia Solomona ato'a ra ho'i, 'e tāna tamaiti, i te hina'arora'a e rave rahi mau vahine 'e mau vahine tāvini.

16 'Oia iā, 'ua ha'amata ho'i rātou i te 'imi i te 'auro 'e te 'ārio e rave rahi, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te fa'ateiteiri'i-hia i te te'ote'o.

17 Nō reira, 'ua a'o atu vau, 'o Iakoba, 'ia rātou i teie nei mau parau, 'a ha'api'i ai au ia rātou i roto i te hiero, i muri mai i tō'u fāri'ira'a i tō'u pi'ira'a nō 'ō mai i te Fatu ra.

18 'Ua fa'atōro'ahia na ho'i au o Iakoba, e tō'u taea'e ato'a ho'i o Iosepha, 'ei tahu'a 'e 'ei 'orometua nō teie nei mau ta'ata, e te rima o Nephi.

19 'E 'ua fa'a'ohipa māite māua i tō māua tōro'a i te Fatu, i te amora'a i te hōpoi'a i ni'a ia māua iho, ē tae noa atu i te mau hara a te mau ta'ata i ni'a i tō māua iho upo'o mai te mea 'aita māua e ha'api'i ia rātou i te parau a te Atua ma te itoito mau ; nō reira, i 'ohipa ai māua ma tō māua pūai, 'ia 'ore tō rātou toto e tae mai i ni'a i tō māua mau 'ahu ; 'e 'ia 'ore māua e nā reira i te rave, e tae tō rātou toto i ni'a i tō māua mau 'ahu, 'e e 'ore māua e ti'a ma te pōra'o 'ore i te mahana hope'a ra.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Iakoba 2

- 1 Te mau parau tā Iakoba, te taea'e o Nephi, i parau atu i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, i muri a'e i te pohera'a o Nephi :
- 2 I teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'o vau nei o Iakoba, mai te au i te hōpoi'a tā te Atua i tu'u mai iā'u nei, nō te fa'a'ohipa māite i tō'u nei tōro'a ma te pāpū, 'e 'ia tāmā vau i tō'u nei mau 'ahu i tā 'outou mau hara, i haere mai ai au i roto i te hiero i teie nei mahana 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou i te parau a te Atua.
- 3 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i 'outou iho ē, 'ua itoitou vau i te rave i te 'ohipa nō tō'u nei tōro'a ; 'āre'a rā i teie nei mahana 'ua rahi atu te teiaha o tō'u hina'aro 'e tō'u mana'o tapitapi nō te maita'i o tō 'outou vārua, i tō te mau mahana i ma'iri a'enei.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, 'ua ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau parau a te Fatu tā'u i tu'u atu ia 'outou na ē tae roa mai i teienei.
- 5 Inaha rā, 'a fa'aro'o mai na 'outou iā'u nei, 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i 'outou ē, nā roto i tāna tauturura'a, 'oia 'o tei 'ī i te mau mana ato'a 'e Tei Hamani i te ra'i 'e te fenua nei, e ti'a ai iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou i tō 'outou iho mau mana'o, 'e nō te aha ho'i 'outou i ha'amata ai i te rave i te hara ; e hara vi'ivi'i roa ho'i te reira iā'u nei, 'oia ia, e mea vi'ivi'i ato'a ho'i i te Atua.
- 6 'Oia ia, 'ua 'oto roa tō'u nei vārua i te reira 'e 'ua rurutaina ho'i au i mua i te aro o Tei Hamani iā'u ma te ha'amā, i te mea e mea ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou i te mau 'ohipa 'Tino i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au.
- 7 'E 'ua 'oto roa ato'a vau i te mea ē, 'ua tītauhia iā'u 'ia parau 'ū'ana atu ia 'outou i mua i tā 'outou mau vahine 'e tā 'outou ho'i mau tamari'i, e mea marū roa ho'i te 'ā'au o te tahi pae o rātou, 'e te vi'ivi'i 'ore ho'i i mua i te Atua, 'e 'ua māuruuru ho'i te Atua i te reira ;
- 8 E tē mana'o nei au ē, i haere mai rātou i ni'a nei nō te fa'aro'o i te parau au a te Atua, 'oia ia, te parau 'o tē fa'aora i te vārua mamae ra.

Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

9 Nō reira, 'ua 'oto roa tō'u 'ā'au i te mea 'ua tītauhia vau, nā roto i te fa'auera'a 'eta'eta i roa'a mai iā'u nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra, i te a'o atu ia 'outou mai te au i tā 'outou mau hara, 'ia fa'arahi i te mamae 'o tei mamae ra, 'eiaha rā nō te tāmāhanahana 'e nō te fa'aora i tō rātou ra mau puta ; 'e 'o tei 'ore i mamae ra, e 'ore ia rātou e rave i te fa'a'amu'a i te parau au a te Atua ; e pātiahia rā tō rātou vārua, 'e e puta ho'i tō rātou 'ā'au marū i te tipī rahi ra.

10 'Āre'a rā, rahi noa atu ā te 'ohipa, e mea ti'a roa iā'u 'ia rave mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a tu'utu'u 'ore a te Atua, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite atu ho'i ia 'outou i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, i mua i te mau ta'ata 'ā'au mā, 'e te 'ā'au 'oto, 'e i raro a'e ho'i i te hi'ora'a o te mata ha'avā o te Atua Manahope ra.

11 Nō reira, e mea ti'a roa iā'u 'ia parau atu ia 'outou i te parau mau, mai te au i te parau pāpū a te Atua ra. Inaha ho'i, te pure noa ra vau i te Fatu, 'e 'ua tae mai ra te parau iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E Iakoba, ananahi e haere mai 'oe i roto i te hiero, 'e 'a fa'a'ite atu ai i te parau tā'u e hōro'a atu ia 'oe i teie nei mau ta'ata.

12 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, teie ia te parau tā'u e fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou na, 'ua ha'amata te tahi pae o 'outou i te 'imi i te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau huru 'ōfa'i metalo faufa'a roa, 'e 'ua 'ī ho'i teie nei fenua i te reira huru tao'a, 'o te fenua ho'i teie i fafauhia nō 'outou e nō tō 'outou ra hua'ai.

13 'E 'ua ha'amaita'i mai te rima o te Atua ia 'outou ma te māuruuru rahi, i roa'a ai ia 'outou te mau tao'a e rave rahi ; 'e nō te mea 'ua rahi tā 'outou i tā tō 'outou mau taea'e, 'ua fa'ateiteihia 'outou i te te'ote'o o tō 'outou 'ā'au, 'e nō te moni rahi o tō 'outou mau 'ahu, i 'eta'eta ai tō 'outou 'ā'au e i teitei ai ho'i tō 'outou upo'o, 'e 'ua hāmani 'ino 'outou i tō 'outou mau taea'e, nō te mea 'ua mana'o 'outou ē, 'ua hau tō 'outou maita'i i tō rātou.

14 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, 'ua ti'ahia 'outou i te Atua i taua mea ra ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa. 'Ua fa'ahapa rā 'oia ia 'outou, 'e mai te mea e onono ā 'outou i taua mau mea ra, e tae vave mai ia tāna mau ha'avāra'a i ni'a iho ia 'outou.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

- 15 'Āhiri 'oia e fa'a'ite mai ia 'outou ē, e ti'a iāna 'ia hi'o i roto ia 'outou 'e 'ia 'ite i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e e ti'a ho'i iāna 'ia tā'iri mai ia 'outou i raro i te repo, i te hi'ora'a hō'ē o tōna ra mata !
- 16 'Āhiri 'oia e fa'aora ia 'outou i teie nei mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e i teie nei 'ohipa vi'ivi'i. 'E 'āhiri 'outou e fa'aro'o i te parau nō tāna ra mau fa'auera'a, 'e 'eiaha e fa'ati'a i teie nei te'ote'o o tō 'outou 'ā'au 'ia ha'amou i tō 'outou mau vārua !
- 17 'A feruri i tō 'outou mau taea'e mai tā 'outou e feruri ia 'outou iho na, 'e 'a aroha atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'e 'a hōro'a noa atu ho'i i tā 'outou tao'a, 'ia riro ato'a rātou 'ei feiā tao'a mai ia 'outou te huru.
- 18 'E nā mua 'outou e 'imi ai i te tao'a, 'a mata na 'outou i te 'imi i te bāsileia o te Atua.
- 19 'E 'ia roa'a ia 'outou te ti'aturira'a i te Mesia ra, e roa'a ato'a iā ia 'outou te tao'a rahi, mai te mea e 'imi 'outou i te reira ; 'e 'ia 'imi ho'i 'outou i te reira nō te hina'aro 'ia fa'atupu i te maita'i—'oia ho'i, nō te fa'a'ahu i te feiā taha'a noa, 'e nō te fa'a'amu i te feiā po'ia, 'e nō te fa'ati'amā i te feiā tūtī, 'e nō te hōro'a i te tauturura'a i te feiā ma'i 'e te feiā 'ati.
- 20 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua paraparau atu vau ia 'outou nō ni'a i te te'ote'o ; 'e 'o 'outou 'o tei hāmani 'ino i tō 'outou ta'ata tupu, 'e tei hāmani 'ino iāna nō te te'ote'o o tō 'outou 'ā'au i te mau mea tā te Atua i hōro'a mai nā 'outou, e aha iā tā 'outou parau i te reira ?
- 21 'Aita ānei 'outou e mana'o nei ē, e mea vi'ivi'i te reira mau mea i mua iāna 'o Tei Hamani i te ta'ata ato'a ra ? Hō'ē ā faufa'a rahi tō te tahi ta'ata 'e te tahi i mua i tōna ra mata. Nō te repo ho'i te mau ta'ata ato'a ; hō'ē noa iho ho'i tumu 'oia i hāmani ai ia rātou ato'a, 'oia ho'i, 'ia ha'apa'o rātou i tāna mau fa'auera'a 'e 'ia fa'ahanahana iāna ē a muri noa atu.
- 22 'E i teienei, e fa'aoti au i te parau atu ia 'outou na nō ni'a i teie nei te'ote'o. 'E 'āhiri 'aita, e mea ti'a iā iā'u 'ia paraparau atu i te tahi hara rahi a'e ia 'outou na, 'ua 'oa'oa rahi iā tō'u 'ā'au ia 'outou.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

- 23 Nō tā 'outou rā mau hara rahi roa i riro ai te parau a te Atua 'ei hōpoi'a rahi nā'u. Inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : 'Ua ha'amata teie nei feiā i te rave i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'aita ho'i rātou i māramarama i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ; 'e 'ua tītau rātou i te fa'ati'a ia rātou iho 'ia rave i te mau 'ohipa tai'ata, nō te mau mea i pāpa'ihia nō ni'a ia Davida 'e tāna ra tamaiti ia Solomona.
- 24 Inaha, e rave rahi tā Davida 'e tā Solomona mau vahine 'e te mau vahine tāvini ho'i, 'e e mea vi'ivi'i ho'i te reira i mua iā'u, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.
- 25 Nō reira, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : 'Ua arata'i mai au i teie nei feiā i rāpae i te fenua nō Ierusalem, nā roto i te mana o tō'u nei rima, 'ia tī'a iā'u 'ia fa'atupu i te tahi 'āma'a parauti'a iā'u nei nō te hua'ai o tē ōpū o Iosepha ra.
- 26 Nō reira, 'aita roa vau, 'o te Fatu te Atua, e fa'ati'a 'ia rave teie nei feiā i te mau mea i ravehia e te feiā i tahito ra.
- 27 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'a fa'aro'o mai iā'u, 'e 'a ha'apa'o na ho'i i te parau a te Fatu : 'Eiaha roa ho'i te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū ia 'outou na e rave maori rā hō'ē noa iho vahine ; 'e te mau vahine tāvini ra 'eiaha roa ia 'outou e rave i te hō'ē a'e.
- 28 'Ua 'oa'oa ho'i au, 'o te Fatu te Atua, i te vahine vi'ivi'i 'ore ra. 'E e mea vi'ivi'i te tai'ata i mua iā'u nei ; tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota.
- 29 Nō reira, 'ia ha'apa'o teie feiā i tā'u mau fa'auera'a e tī'a ai, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou e nā reira e 'anatemahia te fenua nō rātou.
- 30 'E 'ia hina'aro vau i te fa'atupu i te hua'ai nō'u ra, e fa'aue atu ia vau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; 'ia 'ore rā vau 'ia nā reira, e ha'apa'o ia rātou i teie mau mea nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 31 Inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite a'enei au, 'o te Fatu, i te mamae, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o a'enei ho'i au i te 'oto o te mau tamāhine a tō'u nei mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem ; 'oia ia, i te mau fenua ato'a o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a tā rātou ra mau tāne.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

- 32 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu Sabaota, 'aita roa vau e fa'ati'a 'ia tae noa mai ā te 'oto o te mau tamāhine nehenehe a teie nei mau ta'ata, 'o tā'u i arata'i mai i rāpae i te fenua nō Ierusalemā iā'u nei, nō te mau tāne o tō'u nei mau ta'ata, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota.
- 33 'E e'ita roa ho'i rātou e arata'i 'ē atu i te mau tamāhine a tō'u nei mau ta'ata i te tītira'a ra nō tō rātou 'ā'au marū, maori rā e fa'au'u'a atu vau ia rātou i te tahi 'anatemara'a rahi ē tae noa atu i tō rātou ha'amoura'a ; e 'ore ho'i rātou e tai'ata mai tā te feiā i tahito ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota.
- 34 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua 'ite 'outou ē, 'ua hōro'ahia mai teie nei mau fa'auera'a i tō tātou ra metua tāne ia Lehi ; nō reira, 'ua 'ite 'ē na 'outou i te reira i te mātāmua, 'e 'ua fa'ahapa-rahi-hia 'outou ; i te mea ē, 'ua rave 'outou i teie mau mea 'o tā 'outou i 'ite 'eiaha e rave.
- 35 Inaha, 'ua rahi atu tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i tā tō tātou ra mau taea'e, i tā te mau 'āti Lamana. 'Ua ha'amāuiui 'outou i te 'ā'au 'o tā 'outou mau vahine marū, 'e nō tō 'outou hi'ora'a 'ino i mua ia rātou i 'ore ai tā 'outou mau tamari'i i ti'aturi ia 'outou ra ; 'ua tae roa atu ho'i te ta'i o tō rātou 'ā'au i ni'a i te Atua nō ni'a ia 'outou. 'E nō te pāpū maita'i o te parau a te Atua i tae mai i raro nei ia 'outou ra, i 'oto rahi ai te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, mai te mea ra ē, i pātiahia na rātou i te mau puta hōhonu ra.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

Iakoba 3

- 1 Inaha rā, 'ua hina'aro vau, 'o Iakoba, 'ia parau atu ia 'outou 'o tei mā te 'ā'au. Hi'o atu i te Atua ma te mana'o pāpū, 'e 'a pure atu iāna ma te fa'aro'o rahi, 'e nāna e tāmāhanahana mai ia 'outou i roto i tō 'outou mau 'ati, 'e nāna ho'i e tauturu mai ia 'outou, 'e e fa'atae mai i te fa'au'ara'a i ni'a ia rātou 'o tē tītau 'ia ha'amou ia 'outou.
- 2 E 'outou ato'a tei mā te 'ā'au, 'a fa'ateitei mai i tō 'outou upo'o i ni'a 'e 'a fāri'i mai i te parau 'oa'oa a te Atua, 'e 'a rave i te fa'a'amu'a i tōna ra aroha ; 'ua tī'a ho'i ia ia 'outou, 'ia mau pāpū tō 'outou 'ā'au, ē a muri noa atu.
- 3 "Ē, 'auē ho'i ē, 'auē ho'i ē, 'outou 'aore i mā te 'ā'au, 'o tei vi'ivi'i i teie nei ā mahana i mua i te aro o te Atua ; 'ia 'ore 'outou e tātarahapa e 'anatemahia te fenua nei nō 'outou na ; e nā te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o tei 'ore i vi'ivi'i mai ia 'outou na, 'āre'a rā 'ua 'anatemahia rātou i te 'anatemara'a rahi, e tā'iri ia 'outou ē tae noa atu i te ha'amoura'a.
- 4 'E e tae vave mai te tau, 'ia 'ore 'outou e tātarahapa, e riro ia tō 'outou fenua 'āi'a ia rātou ra ; 'e nā te Fatu te Atua e arata'i 'ē atu i te feiā parauti'a mai rotopū atu ia 'outou na.
- 5 Inaha, 'ua riro tō 'outou mau taea'e te mau 'āti Lamana 'ei mea parauti'a a'e ia 'outou, 'e 'o rātou ho'i tā 'outou i au 'ore nō tā rātou 'ohipa vi'ivi'i 'e te 'anatemara'a i tae mai i ni'a i tō rātou ra mau 'iri ; 'e 'aita ho'i i mo'e ia rātou te fa'auera'a a te Fatu, 'o tei hōro'ahia mai i tō tātou ra hui tupuna—'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, 'ia rave rātou hō'ē noa iho vahine, 'e te mau vahine tāvini ra, 'eiaha roa ia 'ia ravehia, 'e 'eiaha ato'a ho'i te mau 'ohipa tai'ata 'ia ravehia i rotopū ia rātou ra.
- 6 'E i teienei, tē ha'apa'o nei ā rātou i taua fa'auera'a ra ; nō reira, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i i teie nei fa'auera'a, 'aita roa te Fatu te Atua e ha'amou ia rātou, e aroha mai rā 'oia ia rātou ; 'e tē vai ra te tau e riro mai rātou 'ei feiā ha'amaita'ihia.

Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

- 7 Inaha, 'ua here te mau tāne i tā rātou mau vahine, 'e 'ua here te mau vahine i tā rātou mau tāne ; 'e 'ua here tā rātou mau tāne 'e tā rātou mau vahine i tā rātou mau tamari'i ; 'e nō te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ho'i a tō rātou ra mau metua, i tupu ai tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore 'e te 'ino'ino ia 'outou ; nō reira, e aha atu ho'i tō 'outou maita'i i tō rātou i mua i te aro o Tei Hamani ia 'outou ?
- 8 E tō'u mau taea'e ē, tē mata'u ra vau, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau hara, e hau atu te 'uo'uo o tō rātou 'iri i tō 'outou, 'ia fa'ati'ahia 'outou e rātou ato'a i mua i te terōno o te Atua ra.
- 9 Nō reira, e hōro'a atu vau i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ia 'outou na, 'o te parau ia a te Atua, 'e 'eiaha roa 'outou e fa'a'ino fa'ahou ia rātou nō te huru 'ere'ere o tō rātou iri ; 'e 'eiaha ho'i 'outou e fa'a'ino fa'ahou ia rātou nō tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'ia ha'amana'o rā 'outou i tā 'outou iho mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e 'ia ha'amana'o ho'i ē, nō tō rātou mau metua i tae mai ai tō rātou huru vi'ivi'i.
- 10 Nō reira, 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou i tā 'outou mau tamari'i, 'e te 'oto rahi tā 'outou i fa'atupu i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au nō te hi'ora'a ha'apa'o 'ore tā 'outou i rave i mua ia rātou ; 'e 'oia ato'a, 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, nā tā 'outou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i e ha'amou i tā 'outou mau tamari'i, 'e e ha'apu'ehia ia tā rātou ra mau hara i ni'a i tō 'outou upo'o i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 11 E tō'u mau taea'e ē, 'a fa'aro'o mai na i tā'u nei mau parau ; 'a fa'aaraa i te mau mana'o o tō 'outou na vārua ; 'a fa'a'āueue ia 'outou iho, 'e 'ia ara mai 'outou i te ta'oto o te pohe ra ; 'a tātara ia 'outou iho i te mau 'ati o hade ra, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia riro 'ei mau melahi nā te diabolō ra, 'a hurihia ai i raro i taua roto auahi ra 'e te gopheri, 'oia ho'i te pohe piti ra.
- 12 'E i teienei, 'ua parau vau, 'o Iakoba, e rave rahi atu ā mau mea i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ra, ma te fa'aara atu ia rātou i te 'ino nō te poreneia, 'e te ti'a'ā, 'e te mau huru hara ato'a ra, ma te fa'a'ite atu ho'i ia rātou i te mau utu'a 'ino rahi nō te reira.
- 13 'Aita e ti'a 'ia pāpā'ihia i ni'a iho i teie nei mau 'api te hānere o te tufa'a o te mau parau a teie nei mau ta'ata, 'o tē tupu noa ra i te rahi ; i ni'a rā i te mau 'api rarahi ra 'ua pāpā'ihia te mau mea e rave rahi i ravehia e rātou ra, tā rātou mau tama'i, e tā rātou mau mārōra'a, 'e te hau o tō rātou ra mau ari'i.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

14 'Ua parauhia teie nei mau 'api, te mau 'api a
Iakoba, 'e 'ua hāmanihia te reira e te rima o Nephi ra.
'E tē fa'aoti nei au i teie nei mau parau.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and
they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an
end of speaking these words.

Iakoba 4

- 1 I teienei inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'api'i rahi atu vau, 'o Iakoba, i tō'u ra mau ta'ata nā roto i te parau, ('aita e ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i, maori rā, e ma'a parau iti o tā'u mau parau, nō te mea, e mea rave 'atā te 'ō'otira'a i tā mātou mau parau i ni'a iho i te mau 'api metalo nei) 'e 'ua 'ite mātou ē, e mea ti'a roa 'ia vai māite te mau mea i pāpa'ihia i ni'a i te mau 'api.
- 2 'O te mau mea rā tā mātou e pāpa'i i ni'a i te tahi atu ā mea, maori rā i ni'a i te mau 'api metalo, e mou ia 'e e mo'e roa atu ; 'ua ti'a rā ia mātou 'ia pāpa'i i te tahi mau parau iti i ni'a i te mau 'api, 'o tā mātou e hōro'a atu i tā mātou mau tamari'i, 'e i tō mātou mau taea'e here, i te māramarama iti i tō mātou huru, 'e te huru ho'i o tō rātou ra metua—
- 3 I teienei tē 'oa'oa nei mātou i te reira ; 'e tē 'ohipa nei ho'i mātou ma te itoito 'ia 'ō'oti i teie nei mau parau i ni'a i te mau 'api, ma te ti'aturi e fāri'i tō mātou mau taea'e here 'e tā mātou mau tamari'i i te reira ma te 'ā'au 'oao'a, 'e 'ia 'imi ho'i i tei ni'a i te reira, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'api'i ma te 'oa'oa e 'eiaha ma te 'oto, 'eiaha ho'i ma te vahavaha, i te mau mea nō ni'a i tō rātou ra nā metua mātāmua.
- 4 'E teie ho'i te tumu 'ua pāpa'i mātou i teie nei mau mea, 'ia 'ite rātou ē, 'ua 'ite mātou i te parau nō te Mesia, 'e tē vai nei tō mātou ti'aturira'a nō ni'a i tōna ra hanahana e rave rahi hānere matahiti hou tōna ra taera'a mai ; 'e e 'ere 'o mātou ana'e tei ti'aturi i tōna ra hanahana, te mau peropheta mo'a pā'āto'a rā ho'i nā mua atu ia mātou nei.
- 5 Inaha, 'ua ti'aturi rātou i te Mesia, 'e 'ua ha'amori ho'i i te Metua i tōna ra i'oa ; 'e tē ha'amori ato'a nei ho'i mātou i te Metua i tōna ra i'oa. 'E teie ho'i te tumu i ha'apa'o ai mātou i te ture a Mose, tē fa'arata'i nei te reira i tō mātou nei vārua iāna ra ; 'e nō reira i ha'amo'ahia ai te reira 'ei parauti'a nā mātou, mai tei ha'apa'o-ato'a-hia ia Aberahama i te mēdēbara, 'a ha'apa'o ai 'oia i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua nō te pūpūra'a atu i tāna ra tamaiti ia Isaaka, 'o te taipe ia nō te Atua 'e tāna ra Tamaiti fānau tahi.

Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

- 6 Nō reira, 'ua 'imi mātou i tā te mau peropheta ra, 'e tei ia mātou te mau heheura'a e rave rahi 'e te vārua nō te tohu ; 'e nō te mea, tē vai ra teie mau 'itera'a pāpū ia mātou nei, 'ua roa'a ia ia mātou te ti'aturi, 'e 'ua riro tō mātou fa'aro'o 'ei mea 'āueue 'ore, 'e 'ua ti'a ato'a ho'i ia mātou 'ia fa'aue nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, 'e e fa'aro'o mai te mau tumu rā'au ia mātou, 'e te mau mou'a, 'e te mau 'are miti.
- 7 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'a'ite mai te Fatu te Atua ia mātou i tō mātou paruparu, 'ia 'ite mātou ē, nā roto i tōna ra maita'i 'e tōna ra ho'i mau aroha rahi i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, i ti'a ai ia mātou 'ia rave i taua mau mea nei.
- 8 Inaha, e mea fa'ahiahia 'e e mea māere te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu. 'Aita roa e ti'a 'ia 'imi i te mau hōhonura'a nō te mau parau 'aro nāna ra ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia 'imi pāpū i tāna ato'a ra mau rāve'a. 'E 'aita ho'i e ta'ata tei 'ite i tōna mau haere'a, maori rā 'ia heheuhia mai ia iāna ra ; nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'eiaha 'outou e vahavaha i te mau heheura'a a te Atua ra.
- 9 Inaha ho'i, nā roto i te mana o tāna ra parau i tae mai ai te ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua nei, tei hāmanihia e te mana o tāna ra parau. Nō reira, mai te mea ē 'ua ti'a i te Atua 'ia parau, 'e 'ua tupu ihora teie nei ao, 'e 'ia parau, 'e 'ua oti ihora te ta'ata i te hāmanihia, inaha, e aha e 'ore e ti'a ai 'ia fa'aue i te fenua, 'e te mau 'ohipa i hāmanihia e tōna ra rima i ni'a i te fenua nei, mai tei au i tōna ra mana'o 'e tōna ra hina'aro ho'i ?
- 10 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'eiaha 'outou e titau ia a'o atu i te Fatu, 'ia fāri'i mai rā i te a'ora'a nō 'ō mai iāna ra. Inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite na ho'i 'outou iho ē, tē a'o mai ra 'oia ma te pa'ari, 'e ma te parauti'a, 'e ma te aroha rahi, i ni'a iho i tāna ato'a ra mau 'ohipa.
- 11 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ia fa'a'āfaro 'outou ia 'outou iho iāna nā roto i te tāra'ehara a te Mesia, tāna ra Tamaiti fānau tahi, 'ia roa'a ia 'outou te ti'afa'ahoura'a, mai te au i te mana o te ti'afa'ahoura'a i roto i te Mesia ra, 'e 'ia pūpūhia ho'i 'outou 'ei oho mātāmua nō te Mesia i te Atua, ma te fāri'i i te fa'aro'o, e ma te fāri'i ho'i i te ti'aturira'a pāpū i te hanahana nā roto iāna ra, hou 'oia e fa'a'ite mai ai iāna iho i te tino nei.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

- 12 'E i teienei, e au mau here ē, 'eiaha 'outou e māere i te mea 'ua parau atu vau i teie nei mau mea ia 'outou ; e aha ho'i e 'ore e parau ai nō ni'a i te tāra'ehara a te Mesia, 'e 'ia fāri'i i te 'ite ti'a nō ni'a iāna ra, 'e te 'ite ho'i nō ni'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a 'e te ao a muri atu ?
- 13 Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'o tei tohu ra, 'ia tohu ia 'oia i tei au i te 'ite o te ta'ata nei ; tē parau mai ra te Vārua i te parau mau 'e 'aita 'oia e ha'avare. Nō reira, tē parau ra 'oia i te huru mau o te mau mea e vai nei, 'e te huru mau ho'i o te mau mea e vai a muri a'e ; nō reira, 'ua fa'a'ite-pāpū-hia mai teie nei mau mea ia tātou nei, nō te fa'aorara'a o tō tātou mau vārua. Inaha rā, e 'ere tātou ana'e ra tei 'ite i teie nei mau mea ; 'ua parau ato'a atu ho'i te Atua i te reira i te mau peropheta i tahito ra.
- 14 Inaha rā, e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta ho'i te mau 'āti Iuda ; 'e 'ua vahavaha rātou i te mau parau pāpū, 'e 'ua taparahi ho'i rātou i te mau peropheta, 'e 'ua tītau ho'i i te mau mea 'aore i ti'a ia rātou 'ia 'ite. Nō reira, nō tō rātou matapō, 'o tei tae i ni'a ia rātou nō te tītaura'a i te mau mea 'aore i ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave ra, 'ia ma'iri rātou e ti'a ai ; 'ua rave 'ē ho'i te Atua i tāna ra mea pāpū mai ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ia rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi tei 'ore i hāro'aro'ahia e rātou, nō te mea 'ua hina'aro rātou i te reira. 'E nō te mea 'ua hina'aro rātou i te reira, 'ua nā reira te Atua, 'ia turori rātou.
- 15 'E i teienei, tē arata'i-noa-hia nei au, 'o Iakoba, e te Vārua 'ia tohu ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au nā roto i te mau 'ohipa a te Vārua i roto iā'u nei ē, nō te turorira'a o te 'āti Iuda e pāto'i ai rātou i te 'ōfa'i tei au 'ia tu'uhia i raro, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia patu i te hō'ē niu 'āueue 'ore i ni'a iho.
- 16 Inaha rā, mai te au i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, e riro teie nei 'ōfa'i 'ei niu rahi 'e te fa'ahope'a, 'e te 'āueue 'ore ho'i, 'e i ni'a iho i te reira e ti'a ai i te mau 'āti Iuda 'ia patu.
- 17 'E i teienei, e au mau here, nāhea e ti'a ai ia rātou, tei pāto'i i te niu mau, 'ia patu i ni'a iho i te reira, 'e 'ia riro mai taua 'ōfa'i ra 'ei 'ōfa'i tihī nō rātou ?

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

18 Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, e ha'amāramarama
atu vau i teie nei parau 'aro ia 'outou na ; 'ia 'ore au e
riro noa atu i te 'āueue-'ē-hia i tō'u nei ha'apa'o
maita'i i te Vārua, 'e 'ia turori ho'i i tō'u onoono-rahi-
ra'a ia 'outou.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this
mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get
shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble
because of my over anxiety for you.

Iakoba 5

- 1 Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'aita ānei 'outou i ha'amana'o i te tai'ora'a i te mau parau a te peropheta Zenosa, 'o tāna i parau i te 'utuāfare nō 'Īserā'ela, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 2 'A fa'aro'o mai, 'outou e te 'utuāfare nō 'Īserā'ela, 'a fa'aro'o mai i te parau nā'u nei, te hō'ē peropheta nā te Fatu.
- 3 Inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : E fa'aau vau ia 'oe, e te 'utuāfare nō 'Īserā'ela, i te hō'ē tumu 'ōlive 'atu'atuhia, tā te hō'ē ta'ata i rave 'e i 'atu'atu i roto i tāna ra 'ō vine ; e tupu a'era te reira, e pa'ari atu ra, e ha'amata ihora i te ha'apohe.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine, 'e 'ua 'ite ihora 'oia ē tē ha'amata ra tāna tumu 'ōlive i te ha'apohe ; 'e 'ua parau a'era 'oia : E tope au i te reira, e 'ūtaru, 'e e 'atu'atu i te reira, penei a'e 'o te 'ōteo mai te mau 'āma'a ri'i 'āpī, 'e 'aita te reira e pohe.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tope ihora 'oia i te reira, 'ua 'ūtaru ihora i te reira, 'e 'ua 'atu'atu ihora ho'i i te reira mai te au i tāna ra parau.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope a'era e rave rahi mahana, 'ōteo ri'i mai ra te mau 'āma'a ri'i 'e te 'āpī ra ; inaha rā, 'ua pohe ihora te 'ōmou.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra te fatu o te 'ō vine i te reira, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i tōna tāvini : E 'oto vau 'ia 'ere au i teie nei tumu rā'au ; nō reira, 'a haere 'oe, 'e 'a rave mai i te mau 'āma'a o te tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri, 'e 'a 'āfa'i mai i te reira iā'u nei, 'e e 'ōfene 'ē tāua i taua mau 'āma'a rarahi 'e te 'ōriorio ra, 'e e huri taua i te reira i roto i te auahi 'ia pa'apa'a.
- 8 'E inaha, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine ra, e hōpoi 'ē atu vau i teie mau 'āma'a ri'i 'āpī e rave rahi, 'e e poi au i te reira i te vāhi tā'u e hina'aro ; e noa atu e pohe te a'a o teie nei tumu rā'au, e ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aherehere i te mā'a nō te reira nā'u iho ; nō reira, e rave mai au i teie mau 'āma'a ri'i 'āpī, 'e e poi ai au i te reira i te vāhi tā'u e hina'aro.

Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

- 9 'A rave 'oe i te mau 'āma'a o te tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri ra, 'e 'a poi i te reira i te vāhi o taua mau 'āma'a mau ra ; 'e teie 'o tā'u i tāpū iho nei, e huri au i te reira i roto i te auahi 'ia pa'apa'a, 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia fa'aapiapi i tā'u 'ō vine.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave te tāvini o te Fatu o te 'ō vine ra mai te au i te parau a te Fatu o te 'ō vine ra, 'e 'ua poi ihora 'oia i te mau 'āma'a o te tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri ra.
- 11 'E 'ua fa'aue ihora te Fatu o te 'ō vine 'ia 'ūturuhia 'e 'ia tophia 'e 'ia 'atu'atuhia te reira, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai i tōna tāvini : E 'oto vau 'ia pohe teie nei tumu rā'au ; nō reira, i nā reira ai au penei a'e 'o te fa'aora vau i te mau a'a nō te reira 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia pohe, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aora i te reira nō'u.
- 12 Nō reira, 'a haere atu 'oe ; 'a ti'a'i i te tumu rā'au, e 'atu'atu i te reira mai te au i tā'u ra mau parau.
- 13 E tanu vau i teie i te pae ātea 'ē o tā'u 'ō vine, i te vāhi tā'u e hina'aro, 'aita tā 'oe e parau i te reira ; 'e e nā reira vau 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aora i te mau 'āma'a mau nō taua tumu rā'au ra nā'u iho ; 'e 'oia ato'a, 'ia ha'apu'e au i te mā'a nō te reira i te tau mau ra nā'u iho ; 'e 'ua 'oto ho'i au 'ia pohe teie tumu rā'au 'e tōna ato'a ra mā'a.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna haere'a, 'e 'ua huna atu ra 'oia i te mau 'āma'a mau o te tumu 'ōlive 'atu'atuhia ra i te mau pae ātea 'ē roa o te 'ō vine ra, te tahi 'āma'a i te tahi pae, 'e te tahi 'āma'a i te tahi pae, mai te au i tōna ra hina'aro 'e tōna ra mana'o.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia maoro te tau, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna ra tāvini : Mai e haere taua i raro i te 'ō vine, e 'ohipa tāua i roto i te 'ō vine.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine e tōna ra tāvini ato'a i raro i te 'ō vine e rave i te 'ohipa. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te tāvini i tōna Fatu : Inaha, 'a hi'o mai na ; a hi'o na i te tumu rā'au.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hi'o atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia i te tumu rā'au i poihiā i te mau 'āma'a o te 'ōlive 'ōviri ra ; 'e 'ua tupu te reira 'e tē fa'ahotu mai ra i te mā'a. 'E 'ua 'ite a'era 'oia ē e mea maita'i te reira ; 'e te mā'a nō te reira mai tō te mā'a mau ia.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

18 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te tāvini : Inaha, 'ua roa'a i te mau 'āma'a o te tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri ra te pape o te a'a ra, 'e 'ua tupu taua a'a ra i te pūai rahi ; 'e nō te pūai rahi o taua a'a ra i fa'ahotu mai ai te mau 'āma'a 'ōviri ra i te mā'a mau. I teienei, 'āhiri 'aita taua i poi i teie nei mau 'āma'a, 'ua pohe taua tumu rā'au ra. 'E i teienei, inaha, e ha'apu'e au i te mā'a e rave rahi tā te tumu rā'au i fa'ahotu mai ra ; 'e e ha'apu'e au i te mā'a nō te reira nā'u iho, nō te tau au ra.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i te tāvini : 'A haere mai na, e haere taua i te pae ātea 'ē o te 'ō vine nei, 'e e hi'o taua 'e 'aita ānei te mau 'āma'a mau o te tumu rā'au i fa'ahotu rahi ato'a mai i te mā'a, 'ia ti'a iā'u ia ha'apu'e i te mā'a nō te reira nā'u iho nō te tau au ra.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rāua i te pae tā te fatu i huna i te mau 'āma'a mau nō te tumu rā'au, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te tāvini : 'A hi'o na i teie ; 'e 'ua 'ite a'era 'oia ē 'ua fa'ahotu mai tō te mātāmua ra e rave rahi mā'a ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a a'era ho'i 'oia e mea maita'i. 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te tāvini : 'A rave i te mā'a nō ni'a i te reira, 'e 'a ha'apu'e nō te tau au ra, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aherehere i te reira nā'u iho ; inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō mai ra 'oia : E mea maoro tō'u 'atu'atura'a i te reira, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu mai te reira i te mau mā'a e rave rahi.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te tāvini i tōna ra Fatu : E aha 'oe i haere mai ai i'ō nei nō te tanu i teie nei tumu rā'au, 'e 'aore rā i teie 'āma'a o te tumu rā'au ? Inaha ho'i, e vāhi 'ino roa teie nō te fenua tā'āto'a o tā 'oe 'ō vine.

22 'E 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine iāna : 'Eiaha 'oe e a'o mai iā'u nei ; 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e mea 'ino te repo i'ō nei ; nō reira, 'ua parau atu vau ia 'oe ē, 'ua 'atu'atu maoro vau i te reira, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, 'ua fa'ahotu rahi mai te reira i te mā'a.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna tāvini : Hi'ō mai na ; inaha, 'ua tanu ato'a vau i te tahi ā 'āma'a nō taua tumu rā'au ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, 'ua hau teie vāhi i te 'ino i tō te mātāmua ra. 'A hi'ō na rā i te tumu rā'au. E mea maoro tō'u 'atu'atura'a i te reira, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu rahi mai te reira i te mā'a ; nō reira, 'a pāfa'i i te reira, 'e 'a ha'apu'e nō te tau au ra, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aherehere i te reira nā'u iho.
- 24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna tāvini : Hi'ō mai na, inaha 'ua tanu vau i te tahi ā 'āma'a ; inaha 'ua 'atu'atu ato'a ho'i au i te reira, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu mai te reira i te mā'a.
- 25 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te tāvini : Hi'ō mai na 'e 'a hi'ō na i tō te hope'a. Inaha, 'ua tanu vau i teie i roto i te vāhi maita'i o te repo ; 'e 'ua 'atu'atu maoro vau i te reira, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu mai te tahi pae ana'e o teie tumu rā'au i te mā'a mau ; 'e te tahi atu pae o te tumu rā'au 'ua fa'ahotu mai ia i te mā'a 'ōviri ; inaha, hō'ē ā tā'u 'atu'atura'a i teie tumu rā'au i te tahi atu mau tumu rā'au.
- 26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i te tāvini : 'A 'ōfene 'ē i te mau 'āma'a tei 'ore i fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a maita'i, 'e 'a huri atu ia rātou i roto i te auahi.
- 27 Inaha rā, 'ua parau mai ra te tāvini iāna : 'Ia tope tāua i te reira, 'e 'ia 'ūtaru i te reira, 'e 'ia 'atu'atu i te reira 'e 'ia maoro iti a'e, penei a'e 'o te fa'ahotu mai te reira i te mā'a maita'i nā 'oe, 'ia ti'a ia 'oe 'ia ha'apu'e i te reira nō te tau au ra.
- 28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'atu'atu ihora te Fatu o te 'ō vine 'e te tāvini ato'a o te Fatu o te 'ō vine ra i te mau mā'a ato'a o te 'ō vine ra.
- 29 'E i muri a'era, i te ma'irira'a te hō'ē tau roa, 'e 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna tāvini : 'A haere mai na, e haere tāua i raro i te 'ō vine, 'ia ti'a ia tāua 'ia 'ohipa fa'ahou i roto i te 'ō vine ra. Inaha ho'i, teie mai nei te tau, 'e 'ua fātata roa mai te hope'a ; nō reira, 'ia ha'apu'e au i te mā'a nā'u iho nō te tau au e ti'a ai.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine 'e te tāvini ato'a i raro i te 'ō vine ; 'e 'ua tae atu ra rāua i te tumu rā'au i 'ōfene-'ē-hia tōna ra mau 'āma'a mau, 'e i poihia ho'i i te mau 'āma'a 'ōviri ra ; 'E inaha, 'ua 'ī roa taua tumu rā'au ra i te mau huru mā'a ato'a.

31 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāmata ihora te Fatu o te 'ō vine i te mā'a, ē hope roa a'e te mau huru ato'a ra. 'E 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine : Inaha, e mea maoro tō taua 'atu'atura'a i teie nei tumu rā'au, 'e 'ua ha'apu'e au i te mā'a e rave rahi nā'u iho nō te tau au ra.

32 Inaha rā, i teie nei tau 'ua fa'ahotu rahi mai te reira i te mā'a, 'e 'aita roa hō'ē a'e mā'a maita'i nō te reira. 'E inaha, 'ua rau te huru o te mau mā'a 'ino ato'a ; 'e 'aita roa tā'u e faufa'a i te reira, rahi noa atu ā tā taua 'ohipa ; 'e i teienei, 'ua 'oto vau 'o te 'ere au i teie tumu rā'au.

33 'E 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i te tāvini : E aha tā taua e rave i teie nei tumu rā'au, 'ia fa'aherehere fa'ahou vau i te mā'a maita'i nā'u iho nei ?

34 'E 'ua parau mai ra te tāvini i tōna Fatu : Inaha, nō te mea i poi 'oe i te mau 'āma'a o te tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri ra, 'ua tauturu ia te reira i te mau a'a i ora ai te reira 'e 'aita i pohe ; nō reira, tē 'ite nei ia 'oe ē tē maita'i noa ra ā te reira.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna tāvini : 'Aita roa tō teie tumu rā'au e faufa'a iā'u nei, 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i tō te mau a'a e faufa'a iā'u nei mai te mea e fa'ahotu noa mai te reira i te mā'a 'ino.

36 'Āre'a rā, 'ua 'ite au ē, e mea maita'i te mau a'a, 'e 'ua fa'aherehere ho'i au i te reira nō tā'u iho 'ōpuara'a ; 'e nō tō rātou pūai rahi 'ua fa'ahotu mai te reira i te mā'a mau nā ni'a mai i te mau 'āma'a 'ōviri ra.

37 Inaha ho'i, 'ua tupu mai te mau 'āma'a 'ōviri ra, 'e 'ua hau tō rātou pūai i tō te mau a'a nōna ra ; 'e nō te mea 'ua hau te pūai o te mau 'āma'a 'ōviri i tō te mau a'a nōna ra, 'ua fa'ahotu mai te reira i te mā'a 'ino e rave rahi ; 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua fa'ahotu mai te reira i te mā'a 'ino e rave rahi, 'ua 'ite 'oe ē, tē tupu noa ra te pohe ; 'e 'ino vave te reira, 'e e hurihia i roto i te auahi, maori rā 'ia 'imi taua i te rāve'a nō te fa'aherehere i te reira.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

38 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna tāvini : E haere tāua i raro i te pae ātea 'ē o te 'ō vine, 'ia 'ite ē 'ua fa'ahotu ato'a mai ānei te mau 'āma'a mau i te mā'a 'ino.

39 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rāua i raro i te pae ātea 'ē o te 'ō vine. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite a'era rāua ē, 'ua 'ino roa ato'a te mā'a o te mau 'āma'a mau ; 'oia ia, te mātāmua 'e te piti 'e te hope'a ato'a ho'i ; 'e 'ua 'ino roa ho'i rātou ato'a ra.

40 'E 'ua vī taua pae o te tumu rā'au tei fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a maita'i i te mā'a 'ino o te tumu rā'au hope'a ra, i 'ōriorio ai taua 'āma'a ra 'e 'ua pohe roa.

41 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'oto ihora te Fatu o te 'ō vine, 'e 'ua parau atu ra i te tāvini : E aha atu ā tei ti'a iā'u 'ia rave nō tā'u 'ō vine ?

42 Inaha, 'ua 'ite na vau ē, 'ua 'ino te mau mā'a ato'a nō tā'u 'ō vine, maori rā 'o teie. 'E i teienei, teie tei fa'ahotu na i te mā'a maita'i, 'ua 'ino roa ato'a ia ; 'e i teie nei, 'ua riro te mau tumu rā'au ato'a nō tā'u nei 'ō vine 'ei mea 'ino 'e 'ua ti'a roa i te reira 'ia tāpūhia i raro 'e 'ia hurihia i roto i te auahi.

43 'E 'a hi'o na i teie tumu rā'au hope'a nei, 'ua 'ōriorio tōna 'āma'a, 'e 'ua tanu ho'i au i te reira i roto i te repo maita'i ; 'oia ia, i te vāhi maita'i roa a'e iā'u i te tahi atu mau vāhi ato'a nō tā'u 'ō vine.

44 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, 'ua tāpū ato'a vau i tei fa'aapiapi i teie nei pae fenua, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia tanu i teie nei tumu rā'au i te reira vāhi.

45 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, 'ua fa'ahotu mai te tahi pae i te mā'a maita'i, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu mai ho'i te tahi pae i te mā'a 'ino ; 'e nō te mea 'aita vau i 'ōfene 'ē i te mau 'āma'a 'ino nō te reira 'e i huri i roto i te auahi, inaha, 'ua vī te 'āma'a maitata'i ia rātou 'e 'ua 'ōriorio.

46 'E i teienei, inaha, noa atu ā ē 'ua ha'apa'o māite tāua i tā'u nei 'ō vine, 'ua 'ino tō te reira mau tumu rā'au, 'e 'aita rātou i fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a maita'i ; 'e 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia fa'aherehere i teie, 'ia ha'apu'e au i te mā'a nā'u iho nō te tau au ra. Inaha rā, 'ua riro rātou mai te tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri ra te huru, 'e 'aita tō te reira e faufa'a, maori rā 'ia tāpūhia i raro 'e 'ia hurihia i roto i te auahi ; 'e 'ua 'oto vau 'ia 'ere au i te reira.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

47 'Āre'a rā, e aha atu ā te ti'a iā'u 'ia rave i roto i tā'u 'ō vine ? 'Ua fa'aea ānei tō'u rima, 'e 'aita vau i 'atu'atu i te reira ? 'Aita roa, 'ua 'atu'atu vau i te reira, 'e 'ua 'ūturu vau i te reira, 'e 'ua tope au i te reira, 'e 'ua tāpara ho'i au i te reira ; 'e 'ua fa'atoro atu vau i tō'u rima mai te mātāmua mai ā, 'e tē fātata mai nei te hope'a. 'E 'ua 'oto vau 'ia tāpū 'ē atu vau i te mau tumu rā'au ato'a o tā'u 'ō vine, 'e 'ia huri i te reira i roto i te auahi 'ia pau. 'O vai ia tei fa'a'ino i tā'u nei 'ō vine ?

48 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te tāvini i tōna Fatu : E 'ere ānei ia nō te teitei roa o tā'oe 'ō vine—'e 'aita ānei te mau a'a maitata'i i vī i te reira mau 'āma'a ? 'E nō te mea 'ua vī te reira mau a'a ra i te mau 'āma'a, inaha, 'ua rahi tō te 'āma'a tupura'a i tō te pūai o te mau a'a, i rahi ai tō rātou iho pūai. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au, e 'ere ānei teie te mea i 'ino ai te mau tumu rā'au o tā'oe nei 'ō vine ?

49 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i te tāvini : E haere tāua e tāpū 'ē atu i te mau tumu rā'au o te 'ō vine nei 'e 'a huri atu ai ia rātou i roto i te auahi, 'ia 'ore rātou e fa'aapi i te fenua o tā'u 'ō vine, 'e 'ua pau ho'i tā'u mau rāve'a ato'a. Nāhea atu ā ho'i au i taua 'ō vine nā'u ra ?

50 'Āre'a rā, inaha, 'ua parau mai ra te tāvini i te Fatu nō te 'ō vine : 'A fa'aherehere i te reira 'ia maoro iti a'e.

51 'E 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu : 'Oia ia, e fa'aherehere au i te reira 'ia maoro iti a'e, nō te mea e 'oto ho'i au 'ia 'ere au i te mau tumu rā'au o tā'u 'ō vine.

52 Nō reira, e rave taua i te mau 'āma'a o teie nei mau tumu rā'au tā'u i tanu i te mau pae ātea 'ē o tā'u 'ō vine, 'e e poi tāua ia rātou i ni'a i te tumu rā'au nō reira mai rātou ra ; 'e e 'ōfene 'ē atu tāua i taua mau 'āma'a ra tei fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a 'ava'ava roa i taua tumu rā'au ra, 'e 'ia poi i te mau 'āma'a mau o taua tumu rā'au ra 'ei mono ia rātou.

53 E nā reira vau 'ia 'ore te tumu rā'au 'ia pohe, penei a'e 'o te fa'aora vau i tōna ra mau a'a nā'u iho nō tā'u iho 'ōpuara'a.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have dugged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

54 'E inaha, tē ora nei ā te mau a'a o te mau 'āma'a mau o te tumu rā'au tā'u i tanu i te vāhi tā'u i hina'aro ra ; nō reira 'ia fa'aora ato'a vau i te reira nō tā'u iho 'ōpuara'a, 'e e rave mai au i te mau 'āma'a o teie nei tumu rā'au, 'e e poi au i te reira i ni'a i taua mau a'a mau ra. 'Oia ia, e poi au i te mau 'āma'a rā'au tumu ra i ni'a ia rātou, 'ia fa'aora ato'a vau i te mau a'a nā'u iho, 'e 'ia nava'i tō rātou pūai, e fa'ahotu mai paha ia rātou i te mā'a maita'i nā'u, 'e e noa'a ā paha te hanahana iā'u nō te mā'a o tā'u 'ō vine.

55 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora rāua i te 'āma'a o te tumu 'ōlive mau tei riro 'ei tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri, 'e 'ua poi rāua i te reira i ni'a i te mau tumu 'ōlive mau 'o tei riro ato'a 'ei tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri.

56 'E 'ua rave ato'a ho'i rāua i te 'āma'a o te mau tumu 'ōlive mau tei riro 'ei tumu 'ōlive 'ōviri, 'e 'ua poi rāua ia rātou i ni'a i tō rātou tumu rā'au tumu mau.

57 'E 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i te tāvini : 'Eiaha e 'ōfene 'ē atu i te mau 'āma'a 'ōviri o te mau tumu rā'au, maori rā 'o tei 'ava'ava roa ; 'e i roto i te reira e poi 'oe mai te au i tā'u i parau ra.

58 'E e 'atu'atu fa'ahou tāua i te mau tumu rā'au o te 'ō vine, 'e e tope tāua i te mau 'āma'a ; 'e e 'ōfene 'ē atu tāua i te mau 'āma'a nō te mau tumu rā'au 'o tei 'ino, 'e 'ia pohe ho'i e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia huri atu i te reira i roto i te auahi.

59 E nā reira vau, penei a'e 'o te tupu tō te mau a'a pūai nō tō rātou iho maita'i ; 'e 'ia vī tō tei 'ino i tō tei maita'i, nō te tauira'a i te mau 'āma'a ra.

60 'E nō te mea 'ua fa'aora vau i te mau 'āma'a mau 'e te mau a'a ato'a ho'i, 'e 'ua poi fa'ahou ho'i au i te mau 'āma'a mau i ni'a i tō rātou tumu rā'au tumu mau ra, 'e 'ua fa'aora ho'i i te mau a'a o tō rātou tumu rā'au tumu mau ra, penei a'e 'o te fa'ahotu fa'ahou mai te reira i te mau tumu rā'au o tā'u 'ō vine i te mā'a maita'i ; 'e 'ia 'oa'oa fa'ahou vau i te mā'a nō tā'u 'ō vine, 'e penei a'e 'o te 'oa'oa roa vau i te mea 'ua fa'aora vau i te mau a'a 'e te mau 'āma'a ato'a o taua mā'a mātāmua ra.

61 Nō reira, 'a haere, 'a pi'i atu i te mau tāvini, 'ia 'ohipa māite tātou ma tō tātou pūai i roto i te 'ō vine, 'ia fa'aaineine taua i te 'ē'a, 'e 'ia fa'atupu fa'ahou vau i te mā'a mau, te hō'ē mā'a maita'i mau 'e tei hau i te maita'i i te mau mā'a ato'a.

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

- 62 Nō reira, 'ia haere tāua e 'ohipa ma tō taua pūai i teie nei tau hope'a, inaha ho'i, tē fātata mai nei ho'i te hope'a, 'e 'o teie te taime hope'a e tope ai au i tā'u 'ō vine.
- 63 'A poi na i te mau 'āma'a ; 'a ha'amata i te pae hope'a ra 'ia riro te reira 'ei mātāmua, 'e 'ia riro te mātāmua 'ei hope'a, 'e 'a 'ūtaru nā pīha'i iho i te mau tumu rā'au, i te mea tahito 'e te mea 'āpī ato'a ho'i, i tō te mātāmua 'e tō te hope'a ; i te mea hope'a 'e te mea mātāmua, 'ia hō'ē a'e tō te reira 'atu'atu-fa'ahou-ra'a-hia i te tau hope'a ra.
- 64 Nō reira, 'a 'ūtaru fa'ahou nā pīha'i iho ia rātou, 'a tope fa'ahou ia rātou, 'e 'a tāpara fa'ahou ia rātou nō te taime hope'a, i te mea tē fātata mai nei te hope'a. 'E mai te mea e tupu mai teie mau 'āma'a i poihia iho nei, 'e e fa'ahotu mai ho'i i te mā'a mau, 'ei reira 'oe e fa'aineine ai i te vāhi nō rātou 'ia tupu rātou.
- 65 'E 'ia tupu te reira, e tāpū 'ē 'oe i te mau 'āma'a e fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a 'ava'ava, mai te au i te pūai 'e te rahi ho'i o te 'āma'a maita'i ra ; 'eiaha 'oe e tāpū 'ē i te mau 'āma'a 'ino ato'a i te taime hō'ē, 'o te hau te pūai o te mau a'a i tō tei poihia ra, 'e 'a pohe ai tei poihia, 'e 'ua 'ere ia vau i te mau tumu rā'au nō tā'u nei 'ō vine.
- 66 'E e 'oto ho'i au 'ia 'ere au i te mau tumu rā'au nō tā'u 'ō vine ; nō reira, e tāpū 'ē atu 'oe i te 'āma'a 'ino mai te au i te tupura'a o te 'āma'a maita'i, 'ia 'aifāito tō te a'a pūai 'e tō te 'āma'a ato'a ho'i, ē tae noa atu 'ua upo'otī'a te maita'i i ni'a a'e i te 'ino, 'e 'ua tāpūhia te 'ino i raro 'e 'ua hurihia i roto i te auahi, 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia fa'aapiapi i tā'u 'ō vine ; e nā reira vau i te fa'aru'e i te 'ino i rāpae'au i tā'u 'ō vine.
- 67 'E e poi fa'ahou vau i te mau 'āma'a o te tumu rā'au mau i ni'a i te tumu rā'au mau ;
- 68 'E e poi au i te mau 'āma'a o te tumu rā'au mau i ni'a i te mau 'āma'a mau o te tumu rā'au ra ; e nā reira vau i te tā'ati fa'ahou ia rātou, 'ia fa'ahotu mai rātou i te mā'a mau, 'e 'ia riro rātou 'ei hō'ē.
- 69 'E e fa'aru'ehia te mea 'ino, 'oia ia, i rāpae'au i te fenua tā'āto'a nō tā'u 'ō vine ; inaha ho'i, teie ana'e tā'u topera'a i tā'u 'ō vine.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

70 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonu atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine i tōna tāvini ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra te tāvini 'e 'ua rave ihora mai tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai iāna, 'e 'ua arata'i mai ra 'oia i te tahi atu mau tāvini ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i rahi.

71 'E 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu o te 'ō vine ia rātou : 'A haere 'outou, 'e 'a 'ohipa i roto i te 'ō vine, ma tō 'outou pūai. Inaha ho'i, 'o te taima hope'a teie e 'atu'atu ai au i tā'u 'ō vine ; nō te mea tē fātata roa mai nei ho'i te hope'a, 'e tē fātata mai nei te tau ; 'e 'ia 'ohipa 'outou ma tō 'outou pūai 'e 'o vau ato'a, e noa'a te 'oa'oa ia 'outou i te mā'a 'o tā'u e ha'apu'e nā'u iho i te tau e fātata roa mai nei.

72 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te mau tāvini e 'ohipa ihora ma tō rātou pūai ; 'e 'ua 'ohipa ato'a ho'i te Fatu o te 'ō vine i pīha'i iho ia rātou ; 'e 'ua ha'apa'o rātou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu nō te 'ō vine i te mau mea ato'a.

73 'E 'ua tupu fa'ahou mai ra te mā'a mau i roto i te 'ō vine ; 'e 'ua tupu ato'a te mau 'āma'a mau ma te ruperupe maita'i ho'i ; 'e te mau 'āma'a 'ōviri ra, 'ua 'ōfene-'ē-hia 'e 'ua fa'aru'ehia ; 'e 'ua tāpe'a ihora rātou i te a'a 'e te ni'ara'a 'ia 'aifāito noa mai te au i tō rātou ra pūai.

74 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te 'ohipara'a ma te itoito, mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu nō te 'ō vine ra, ē tae noa atu 'ua fa'aru'ehia tei 'ino i rāpae'au i te 'ō vine, 'e 'ua fa'aherehere te Fatu i te mau tumu rā'au, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu fa'ahou mai i te mā'a mau ; 'e 'ua riro te reira mai te tino hō'ē ; 'e 'ua 'aifāito te huru o te mau mā'a ; 'e 'ua fa'aherehere ho'i te Fatu nō te 'ō vine nāna iho i te mā'a mau, 'o tei maita'i roa iāna mai te mātāmua mai ā.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

75 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite a'era te Fatu nō te 'ō vine ē, e mea maita'i tōna mā'a, 'e 'aita tāna 'ō vine i 'ino, 'ua pī'i atu ra 'oia i tōna mau tāvini, 'e 'ua parau atu ra ia rātou : Inaha, 'o te taime hope'a teie tā tātou e 'atu'atu i tā'u nei 'ō vine ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'outou ē, 'ua rave au mai te au i tō'u hina'aro ; 'e 'ua fa'aherehere au i te mā'a mau, 'e e mea maita'i ia te reira, 'oia ia, mai tei te mātāmua ra. 'E e ao tō 'outou ; nō te mea 'ua itoito 'outou i te 'ohipara'a i pīha'i iho iā'u i roto i tā'u 'ō vine, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, 'e 'ua fa'atupu fa'ahou 'outou i te mā'a mau iā'u, 'ia 'ore ā tā'u 'ō vine 'ia 'ino 'e 'ia fa'aru'ehia tei 'ino, inaha, e noa'a te 'oa'oa ia 'outou i pīha'i iho iā'u nei, nō te mā'a o tā'u 'ō vine.

76 Inaha ho'i, e mea maoro te tau e ha'apu'e ai au i te mā'a nō tā'u 'ō vine nā'u iho, nō te tau i fātata roa mai ; 'e nō te taime hope'a teie tā'u e 'atu'atu i tā'u nei 'ō vine, 'e tā'u e tope, 'e tā'u e 'ūtaru nā pīha'i iho, 'e tā'u e tāpara i te reira ; nō reira e ha'apu'e ai au nā'u iho i te mā'a, nō te hō'ē tau maoro, mai te au i tā'u i parau ra.

77 'E 'ia tae mai te tau e tupu fa'ahou mai ai te mā'a 'ino i roto i tā'u 'ō vine, 'ei reira vau e fa'ati'a ai 'ia ha'apu'ehia te maita'i 'e te 'ino ato'a ; 'e e fa'aherehere au i te maita'i nā'u iho, 'e e fa'aru'e atu vau i te 'ino i tōna iho vāhi. 'E i reira e tae mai ai te tau 'e te hope'a ; 'e e fa'ati'a vau 'ia tūtu'ihia tā'u 'ō vine i te auahi.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

Iakoba 6

- 1 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua parau a'enei au ia 'outou ē, e tohu vau, 'e inaha, teie tā'u tohura'a—Te mau mea i parauhia e taua peropheta nei e Zenosa, nō ni'a i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, i te fa'aura'a ia rātou i te tumu rā'au 'ōlive mau ra, e tupu mau ia.
- 2 'E i te mahana e fa'atoro fa'ahou ai 'oia i tōna rima i te piti o te taime nō te ha'aputupu fa'ahou i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'o te mahana ia te reira, 'oia ia, 'o te taime hope'a ia e haere mai ai te mau tāvini o te Fatu nā roto i tōna mana nō te 'atu'atu 'e nō te tope i tāna ra 'ō vine ; 'e i muri noa iho i te reira 'ua fātata roa te hope'a i reira.
- 3 E ao ho'i tō rātou 'o tei rave itoito i te 'ohipa i roto i tāna ra 'ō vine ; 'e e 'anatemara'a rahi ho'i tō rātou 'o tē hurihia i rāpae i tō rātou ihora vahi ! 'E e 'ama ho'i te ao nei i te auahi ra.
- 4 E aroha rahi ho'i tō tō tātou Atua ia tātou nei, 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ho'i 'oia i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, te mau a'a 'e te mau 'āma'a ho'i ; 'e tē fa'atoro noa nei ā 'oia i tōna rima ia rātou ē pō noa atu te mahana ; e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta 'e te mārō rātou ; 'āre'a 'o tē 'ore e fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, e fa'aorahia ia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ra.
- 5 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē tītau atu nei au ia 'outou na ma te parau marū, 'ia tātarahapa 'outou 'e 'ia haere mai ma te 'ōpuara'a pāpū o te 'ā'au, 'a 'ati atu ai i te Atua mai iāna e 'ati mai ia 'outou na. 'E 'a fa'atorohia mai ai tōna rima aroha ia 'outou i roto i te māmarama o te ao, 'eiaha 'outou e fa'a'eta'eta i tō 'outou 'ā'au.
- 6 'Oia ia, mai te mea e fa'aro'o 'outou i tōna reo i teie nei mahana, 'eiaha e fa'a'eta'eta i tō 'outou 'ā'au ; e aha ho'i 'outou e pohe ai ?
- 7 Inaha ho'i, i muri iho i tō 'outou fa'a'amura'ahia i te parau maita'i a te Atua e pō noa atu te mahana, e fa'ahotu mai ānei ia 'outou i te mā'a 'ino, 'ia tāpūhia i raro 'e 'ia hurihia 'outou i roto i te auahi ra ?

Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

8 Inaha, e pāto'i ānei 'outou i teie nei mau parau ? E pāto'i ānei 'outou i te mau parau a te mau peropheta ; 'e e pāto'i ānei ho'i 'outou i te mau parau ato'a i parauhia nō ni'a i te Mesia, rahi noa atu ā te ta'ata i parau nō ni'a iāna ra ; 'e e huna ānei 'outou i te parau maita'i a te Mesia, 'e te mana o te Atua, 'e te hōro'ara'a a te Vārua Maita'i, 'e e tinai ānei ho'i 'outou i te Vārua Mo'a, 'e e tāhitohito ānei ho'i i te 'ōpuara'a rahi nō te fa'aora'a 'o tei ha'apa'ohia nō 'outou na ?

9 'Aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, mai te mea e rave 'outou i teie mau mea, nā te mana o te fa'aorara'a 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a tei roto i te Mesia ra, e arata'i ia 'outou 'ia ti'a atu ma te ha'amā 'e te 'oto ri'ari'a i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Atua ?

10 'E mai te au i te mana nō te parauti'a ra, te parauti'a 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia hunahia, e tu'uhia atu ai 'outou i roto i taua roto auahi 'e te gopheri ra, e 'ore roa tōna mau ura e pohe, 'e e pe'e noa atu ho'i tōna au auahi ē a muri noa atu, 'e taua roto auahi 'e te gopheri ra, 'o te māuiui hope 'ore ia.

11 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a tātarahapa 'outou, 'e 'a tomo nā roto i te 'ūputa piriha'o, 'e 'a tāmāu noa i te haere nā te 'ē'a oaoa, ē tae noa atu i te tau e roa'a ai ia 'outou te ora mure 'ore.

12 'Ei pa'ari ho'i tō 'outou na ; e aha atu ā te ti'a iā'u 'ia parau atu ?

13 I te pae hope'a, 'a pārahi 'outou ē tae noa atu i te tau e fārerei fa'ahou ai au ia 'outou i mua i te ha'avāra'a au maita'i a te Atua ra, e tā'iri ho'i taua ha'avāra'a ra i te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te mehameha rahi 'e te mata'u rahi. 'Āmene.

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Iakoba 7

- 1 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, 'ia hope e rave rahi matahiti, 'ua haere mai ra te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ra, 'o Serema tōna i'oa.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te poro haere i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, i te fa'a'itera'a atu ia rātou ē, 'aita e Mesia. 'E 'ua a'o atu ho'i 'oia i te mau parau tāvaimanino i te ta'ata ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia ha'amou i te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu a te Mesia.
- 3 'E 'ua rave itoito 'oia i te 'ohipa nō te arata'i 'ē atu i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata, 'e e rave rahi ho'i tei arata'i-'ē-hia atu e ana ; 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, e fa'aro'o rahi to'u, tō Iakoba, i te Mesia 'o tē tae mai, 'ua 'imi māite ihora 'oia i te rāve'a 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia haere mai iā'u ra.
- 4 E ta'ata 'aravihi ho'i 'oia, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū roa 'oia i te reo o te mau ta'ata ; nō reira, 'ua ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ohipa rahi i te mau parau tāvaimanino, 'e e mana rahi ho'i tei roto i tāna parau, mai te au i te mana o te diabolō ra.
- 5 'E 'ua mana'o ihora 'oia nō te fa'a'āueue i tō'u fa'aro'o, noa atu ā te mau heheura'a 'e te mau mea e rave rahi 'o tā'u i 'ite nō ni'a i teie mau mea ; 'ua 'ite mau ho'i au i te mau melahi, 'e 'ua ha'api'i mai ho'i rātou iā'u nei. 'E 'ua fa'aro'o ato'a ho'i au i te reo o te Fatu i te paraura'a mai i te parau mau iā'u nei, i terā tau i terā tau ; nō reira, e'ita roa vau e fa'a'āueuehia.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra 'oia iā'u, 'e 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u mai teie te huru, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E te taea'e Iakoba, 'ua 'imi māite au i te rāve'a 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia paraparau atu ia 'oe ; nō te mea 'ua fa'aro'o 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, tē haere rahi nei 'oe ma te poro haere i te mea 'o tā 'oe i parau 'o te 'evanelia, 'oia ho'i te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu a te Mesia.
- 7 'E 'ua arata'i 'ē ho'i 'oe i te tahi pae rahi o teie nei feiā, 'e nō reira 'ua ha'api'o rātou i te 'ē'a ti'a o te Atua, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i ha'apa'o i te ture a Mose, 'oia ho'i te 'ē'a ti'a ; 'e 'ua fa'ahuru 'ē ho'i i te ture a Mose, 'ia ha'amori rātou i te hō'ē ta'ata tā 'oe i parau ē, e tae mai 'oia 'ia ma'iri e rave rahi hānere matahiti. 'E i teieni, inaha, tē fa'a'ite atu nei au, 'o Serema, 'ia 'oe na ē, e parau fa'ainaina Atua te reira ; nō te mea 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e ta'ata i 'ite i taua mau mea ra ; 'aita ho'i e ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu. 'E 'ua nā reira mai ra Serema i te mārō mai iā'u ra.

Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

8 Inaha rā, 'ua nīnī'i mai te Fatu te Atua i tōna Vārua i roto i tō'u ra vārua, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'aha'amā atu ra vau iāna i roto i tāna ra mau parau ato'a.

9 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : E huna ānei 'oe i te Mesia 'o tē tae mai ? 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'Āhiri e Mesia tē vai nei, 'aita roa iā vau e huna iāna ; 'ua 'ite rā vau ē, 'aita e Mesia e vai nei, 'aita ho'i i vai na, 'e 'aita ato'a e vai ē a muri noa atu.

10 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ? 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia, 'Ē.

11 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : 'Aita iā 'oe i māramarama i te reira ; nō te mea tē fa'a'ite pāpū mai nei ho'i te reira nō ni'a i te Mesia. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'aita roa te mau peropheta i pāpa'i, 'e 'aore rā i tohu, ma te fa'ahiti 'ore i te parau nō ni'a i taua Mesia ra.

12 'E e 'ere ho'i i te reira ana'e—'ua fa'a'itehia mai iā'u, nō te mea 'ua fa'aro'o 'e 'ua hi'o vau ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite-ato'a-hia mai iā'u e te mana o te Vārua Maita'i ; nō reira, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'āhiri ē 'aita e tāra'ehara, e mo'e roa te mau ta'ata ato'a.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : 'A fa'a'ite mai na i te hō'ē tāpa'o iā'u nei nā roto i taua mana o te Vārua Maita'i ra, nō reira mai tō 'oe ra 'ite rahi.

14 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau iāna : E aha ho'i au e ti'a ai iā'u 'ia 'a'a i te Atua nō te fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe na i te tāpa'o i te mea tā 'oe e 'ite nei ē, e parau mau iā ? E huna rā 'oe i te reira, nō te mea nō 'ō mai 'oe i te diabolō ra. 'Eiaha rā tō'u hina'aro 'ia tupu ; 'āre'a rā mai te mea e tā'iri mai te Atua ia 'oe na, 'ia riro te reira 'ei tāpa'o e 'ite ai 'oe ē, e mana tōna i te ra'i 'e i te fenua ato'a nei ; 'e e tae mai ho'i te Mesia. E te Fatu, 'ia tupu tō 'oe hina'aro, 'eiaha tō'u nei.

15 'E i muri a'era, i te paraura'a atu vau, 'o Iakoba, i taua mau parau nei, 'ua tae mai ra te mana o te Fatu i ni'a iho iāna, 'e 'ua marua ihora 'oia i raro i te fenua. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua utuutuhia 'oia nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro.

16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata : Ananahi a ha'aputupu 'āmui mai, nō te mea e pohe au ; nō reira, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia paraparau atu i te mau ta'ata hou vau e pohe ai.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmu mai ra te hō'ē pupu ta'ata ato'a ; 'e 'ua paraparau pāpū atu ra 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua tātarahapa atu ra 'oia i te mau mea tāna i ha'api'i atu ia rātou ; 'ua fā'i ihora ho'i 'oia i te Mesia, 'e te mana o te Vārua Maita'i, 'e te utuutura'a a te mau melahi.
- 18 'E 'ua parau pāpū atu ra 'oia ia rātou ē, 'ua fa'ahemahia 'oia e te mana o te diabolō. 'E 'ua parau ato'a atu 'oia nō ni'a ia hade, 'e nō te ora mure 'ore, 'e nō te fa'autu'ara'a mure 'ore.
- 19 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia : tē mata'u nei au nō te mea 'ua rave au i te hara matara 'ore, 'e 'ua ha'avare ho'i au i mua i te Atua ; nō te mea 'ua huna vau i te Mesia, i te nā-ō-ra'a atu ē, 'ua ti'aturi au i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ; 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū mau nei te reira nō ni'a iāna. 'E nō te mea ho'i i nā reira vau i te ha'avare i te Atua, 'ua mata'u roa vau 'o te ro'ohia vau e te mea ri'ari'a ra ; tē tātarahapa nei rā vau i te Atua.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'aita i ti'a iāna 'ia parau fa'ahou ā, 'e 'ua pohe roa ihora 'oia.
- 21 'E 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata i tāna parau i taua mau mea ra 'a fātata ai 'oia i te pohe, 'ua rahi roa ihora tō rātou māere ; 'e 'ua tae mai ra te mana o te Atua i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'ua paruparu ihora rātou 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i raro i te repo.
- 22 'E i teienei, 'ua māuruuru vau, 'o Iakoba, i te reira, nō te mea 'ua ani au i te reira i tō'u Metua i te ao ra ; 'e 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oia i tā'u ti'aorora'a 'e 'ua pāhono mai ho'i 'oia i tā'u ra pure.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu fa'ahou te hau 'e te aroha o te Atua i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua 'imi ihora rātou i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, 'e 'aita rātou i fa'aro'o fa'ahou i te mau parau a taua ta'ata parauti'a 'ore ra.
- 24 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi mau rāve'a i 'ōpuahia nō te fa'afāriu mai 'e nō te fa'aho'i mai i te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'ite i te parau mau ; 'āre'a rā 'ua faufa'a 'ore te reira, nō te mea 'ua 'oa'oa rātou i te fa'atupu i te tama'i 'e i te ha'amani'i i te toto, 'e tē vai ra tō rātou 'ino'ino mure 'ore ia mātou, tō rātou mau taea'e. 'E nā roto i te pūai o tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i 'ua tītau rātou 'ia ha'amou ia mātou ma te tu'utu'u 'ore.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

25 Nō reira, 'ua ha'apūai te mau ta'ata o Nephi nō te 'aro atu ia rātou, ma tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, ma tō rātou pūai ato'a, 'e ma te ti'aturi māite i te Atua 'e te papa nō tō rātou fa'aorara'a ; nō reira, 'ua ha'avī ā rātou i tō rātou ra mau 'enemi.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ruhiruhiā ihora vau, 'o Iakoba ; 'e nō te mea 'ua pāpa'ihia te pāpa'a parau o teie nei feiā i ni'a iho i te tahi atu mau 'api a Nephi, nō reira, tē fa'aoti nei au i teie nei pāpa'a parau, i te fa'a'itera'a atu ē, 'ua pāpa'i au i te reira ma tō'u 'ite ato'a, 'e i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē, 'ua ma'iri noa tō mātou taime, 'e 'ua mo'e 'ē noa atu ho'i tō mātou nei ora mai te moemoeā, 'e 'ua riro mātou 'ei feiā mo'emo'e, 'e 'ei feiā ha'eha'a, 'e 'ei feiā orihaere noa, tei ti'avaruhia mai Ierusalemā mai ; i fānauhia ho'i i roto i te 'ati 'e i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua 'ino'inohia e tō mātou mau taea'e, i tupu ai te mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a ; nō reira, 'ua 'oto noa mātou ē hope roa tō mātou pu'e mahana i te ao nei.

27 'E 'ua 'ite a'era vau, 'o Iakoba, tē fātata mai ra te mahana e haere ai au i raro i tō'u ra mēnema ; nō reira, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra vau i tā'u ra tamaiti ia Enosa : 'A rave i teie nei mau 'api. 'E 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra vau iāna i te mau mea tā tō'u ra taea'e 'o Nephi i fa'aue mai iā'u, 'e 'ua fafau mai 'oia ē, e ha'apa'o ma'ita'i 'oia i taua mau fa'auera'a ra. 'E tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u pāpa'ira'a i ni'a iho i teie nei mau 'api, 'e e mea iti ho'i tā'u i pāpa'i ; 'e tē parau atu nei au i te feiā e tai'o i teie nei parau, 'a pārahi, ma te ti'aturi e tai'o tō'u mau taea'e e rave rahi i tā'u nei mau parau. E te mau taea'e ē, 'ia ora na 'outou i te Atua.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

Te Buka a Enosa

- 1 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite au, 'o Enosa ē, e ta'ata parauti'a 'oia, 'oia ho'i, tō'u ra metua tāne—'e nāna i ha'api'i mai iā'u nei i tōna reo, 'e i te pa'ari 'e te a'o a te Fatu—'e 'ia fa'ahanahanahia te i'oa o tō'u ra Atua nō te reira.
- 2 'E e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i te tōra'a tā'u i tō i mua i te Atua, hou vau i fāri'i ai i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā'u ra mau hara.
- 3 Inaha, 'ua haere atu vau e taparahi i te mau 'ānimara i roto i te mau uru rā'au ; 'e te mau parau tā'u i fa'aro'o pinepine i tō'u metua tāne i te paraura'a nō ni'a i te ora mure 'ore 'e te 'oa'oa ho'i o te feiā mo'a ra, 'ua puta hōhonu roa ia i roto i tō'u 'ā'au.
- 4 'E 'ua hia'ai ihora tō'u vārua ; 'e 'ua topa turi ihora vau i mua i te aro o Tei Hamani iā'u ra, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra vau iāna ma te pure 'ū'ana 'e te anira'a atu i te maita'i nō tō'u ihora vārua ; 'e i taua mahana tā'āto'a ra 'ua ti'aoro noa vau iāna ; 'oia ia, e pō ihora tē ha'apūai noa ra vau i tō'u reo i ni'a, ē tae roa atu ra te reira i ni'a i te mau ra'i ra.
- 5 'E 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē reo iā'u ra, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E Enosa, 'ua fa'a'orehia tā 'oe mau hara, 'e e ha'amaita'ihia 'oe.
- 6 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i au, 'o Enosa ē, 'aita e ti'a i te Atua 'ia parau i te parau ha'avare ; nō reira, 'ua horoi-'ē-hia tō'u mana'o oto.
- 7 'E 'ua parau atu ra vau : E te Fatu, e mea nāheahia te reira ?
- 8 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : Nō tō 'oe fa'aro'o i te Mesia, 'o tei 'ore i fa'aro'ohia e 'aore ho'i i hi'ohia e 'oe na i te mātāmua. 'E e hope e rave rahi matahiti hou 'oia e fa'a'ite mai ai iāna iho i te tino nei ; nō reira, 'a haere na, nā tō 'oe fa'aro'o i fa'aora ia 'oe.
- 9 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era vau i teie nei mau parau, 'ua tupu ihora tō'u hina'aro 'ia fa'aorahia tō'u ra mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Nephi ; nō reira, 'ua nīni'i atu ra vau i te hina'aro tā'āto'a o tō'u vārua i te Atua nō rātou.

The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

- 10 'E 'a nā reira noa ai au i te pure 'ū'ana i roto i te vārua, inaha, 'ua tae fa'ahou mai ra te reo o te Fatu i roto i tō'u nei mana'o i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E hi'o aroha vau i tō 'oe mau taea'e mai te au i tō rātou itoito i te ha'apa'ora'a i tā'u ra mau fa'auera'a. Nā'u teie nei fenua i hōro'a atu nō rātou, 'e e fenua mo'a ho'i te reira ; 'e e 'ore ho'i au e 'anatemala i te reira, maori rā nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; nō reira, e fa'ahapa atu vau i tō 'oe mau taea'e mai tā'u ho'i i parau ra ; 'e e fa'atae au i tā rātou mau hapa i ni'a i tō rātou iho upo'o ma te 'oto.
- 11 'E 'ia fa'aro'o a'era vau, 'o Enosa, i teie nei mau parau, 'ua ha'amata ihora tō'u fa'aro'o i te Fatu i te riro 'ei mea 'āueue 'ore ; 'e 'ua pure atu ra vau iāna ma te mau pure 'ū'ana e rave rahi nō tō'u ra mau taea'e i te mau 'āti Lamana ra.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era iā'u te pure 'e te 'ohipa ma te itoito rahi, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u : E hōro'a atu vau ia 'oe mai te au i tō 'oe mau hina'aro, nō tō 'oe na fa'aro'o.
- 13 'E i teienei, inaha, 'o te mea ho'i teie tā'u i hina'aro iāna ra—'oia ho'i, mai te mea e 'ōfati tō'u mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi, i te ture, 'e 'ua ha'amouhia ho'i, 'aita rā te mau 'āti Lamana i ha'amouhia, 'ia fa'aherehere te Fatu te Atua i te pāpa'a parau o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e e mea ti'a ia 'ia fa'a'itehia mai e te mana o tōna ra rima mo'a i te mau 'āti Lamana i te tahi mau tau i mua nei, penei a'e 'o te 'āfa'i mai te reira ia rātou i roto i te fa'aorara'a—
- 14 'E i teienei rā, 'ua faufa'a 'ore noa tā mātou mau tāmatarā'a ia fa'aho'i mai ia rātou i te fa'aro'o mau. 'E 'ua tapu rātou i roto i tō rātou riri 'ū'ana, mai te mea e ti'a ia rātou, e ha'amou rātou i tā mātou mau pāpa'a parau 'e ia mātou ato'a, 'e te mau peu tumu ato'a ho'i a tō mātou ra mau metua.
- 15 Nō reira, nō te mea 'ua 'ite au ē, e ti'a i te Fatu te Atua 'ia fa'aherehere i tā mātou mau pāpa'a parau, 'ua ti'aoro pinepine atu ra vau iāna, 'e 'ua parau na ho'i 'oia iā'u ra ē : 'O te mea tā 'oe e ani nā roto i te i'oa o te Mesia ra ma te fa'aro'o 'e ma te ti'aturi ē e roa'a tā 'oe, e roa'a ia ia 'oe.
- 16 E fa'aro'o ho'i tō'u, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra vau i te Atua 'ia fa'aherehere 'oia i te mau pāpa'a parau ; 'e 'ua fafau mai 'oia iā'u ē e fa'a'ite mai 'oia i te reira i te mau 'āti Lamana i tōna ihora tau mau.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

17 'E 'ua 'ite ihora vau, 'o Enosa, e tupu te reira mai te au i te fafaura'a tāna i fafau mai ra ; nō reira, 'ua hau ihora tō'u vārua.

18 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u : 'Ua tītau ato'a mai tō 'oe mau metua i te reira iā'u nei ; 'e e ravehia te reira mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o ; 'ua 'aifāito ho'i tō rātou ra fa'aro'o i tō 'oe na.

19 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, 'ua hāhaere a'era vau, 'o Enosa, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, i te tohura'a i te mau mea e tupu a muri a'e, 'e i te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a atu ho'i i te mau mea i fa'aro'ohia na 'e i 'itehia e au ra.

20 'E tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei au ē, 'ua tītau māite te mau ta'ata o Nephi 'ia fa'aho'i mai i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia ti'aturi mau i te Atua. 'Āre'a rā 'ua faufa'a 'ore tā mātou mau 'ohipa ; 'ua vai 'āueue 'ore noa tō rātou 'ino'ino, 'e 'ua arata'ihia rātou e tō rātou iho huru 'ino i riro ai rātou 'ei mea 'ōviri, 'ei mea taehae, 'e 'ei feiā hina'aro ha'amani'i toto ; 'e tei 'i ho'i i te ha'amori 'idolo 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'e tē 'amu noa ra rātou i te mau 'ānimara taehae ; 'e tē pārahi noa ra i roto i te mau ti'ahapa, 'e tē orihaere noa ra i roto i te mēdēbara ma te tā'amuhia te tau'upu i te tātua 'iri 'ānimara poto, 'e 'ua hahuhia te upo'o ; 'e tei te fana, 'e te simetera, 'e te 'ōpahi, tō rātou 'aravihi. 'E 'aita atu e mā'a i 'amuhia e tō rātou mau ta'ata e rave rahi, maori rā te 'ina'i ota ; 'e 'ua tītau tāmau noa rātou 'ia ha'amou ia mātou.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'apu te mau ta'ata o Nephi i te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'atupu i te mau huru huero sītona ato'a, 'e te mau huru mā'a hotu, 'e te mau nana pua'atoro e rave rahi, 'e te mau huru nana 'ānimara ato'a, 'e te mau pua'aniho, 'e te mau pua'aniho 'ōviri, 'e te mau pua'ahorofenua e rave rahi ato'a.

22 'E tē vai ra e rave rahi mau peropheta i rotopū ia mātou. 'E 'ua riro te mau ta'ata 'ei feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta, 'e 'aita roa rātou i māramarama.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

23 'E 'aita atu e rāve'a maori rā 'o te parau ha'amata'u rahi, 'e te a'ora'a 'e te tohura'a nō ni'a i te mau tama'i, 'e te mau mārōra'a, 'e te mau ha'amoura'a, 'e te fa'aha'amana'o-pinepine-ra'a ia rātou i te pohe, 'e te maorora'a nō te ao mure 'ore, 'e te mau ha'avāra'a 'e te mana o te Atua, 'e nā teie nei mau mea ato'a—i fa'ati'arepu tāmāu noa ia rātou 'ia vai noa rātou i roto i te mata'u i te Fatu. Tē parau nei au ē, 'aita atu e rāve'a maori rā 'o teie nei mau mea, 'e te parau pāpū roa, tē ti'a 'ia tāpe'a mai ia rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia topa 'oi'oi atu i roto i te ha'amoura'a. 'E tē nā reira nei au i te pāpa'i nō ni'a ia rātou ra.

24 'E 'ua 'ite au i te mau 'arora'a i rōpū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana i tō'u ra pu'e mahana i te orara'a nei.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ruhiruhiā a'era vau, 'e 'ua hope ho'i hō'ē hānere e hitu 'ahuru ma iva matahiti mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai tō mātou metua tāne 'o Lehi ia Ierusalemā ra.

26 'E 'ua 'ite ihora vau ē, tē fātata ra vau i te tae i roto i tō'u mēnema, 'e i fa'auruhia na ho'i au e te mana o te Atua ia a'o atu vau 'e 'ia tohu atu ho'i i teie nei feiā, 'e 'ia a'o pāpū atu i te parau mai te au i te parau mau tei roto i te Mesia ra. 'Ua a'o pāpū atu vau i te reira i tō'u ato'a ra pu'e mahana, 'e 'ua hau atu tō'u pōpou i te reira i tō te mau mea ato'a o te ao nei.

27 'E 'ua fātata roa vau i te haere atu i tō'u vāhi fa'afa'aeāra'a, tei pīha'i iho ia i tō'u ra Tāra'ehara ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e fa'afa'aea vau i pīha'i iho iāna ra. Tē pōpou nei ho'i au i te mahana e riro ai tō'u tino tāhuti nei 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'e 'a ti'a atu ai i mua iāna ra ; 'e i reira vau e 'ite atu ai i tōna ra mata ma te 'oa'oa, 'e i reira ho'i 'oia e parau mai ai iā'u : 'A haere mai iā'u nei, 'e te ta'ata ha'amaita'ihia, tē vai ra te hō'ē vāhi i fa'aineinehia nō 'oe i roto i te mau fare o tō'u ra Metua. 'Āmene.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

Te Buka a Iaroma

- 1 I teienei inaha, tē pāpa'i nei au, 'o Iaroma, i te tahi mau parau ri'i mai te au i te fa'auera'a a tō'u ra metua tāne, 'o Enosa, 'ia pāpa'ihia tō mātou tuatāpapara'a tupuna.
- 2 'E nō te mea, e mau 'api iti teie, 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia ho'i teie nei mau mea nā roto i te hina'aro 'ia maita'i tō mātou mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Lamana, nō reira, 'ia pāpa'i ri'i au e ti'a ai ; e'ita rā vau e pāpa'i i te mau mea nō tā'u tohura'a, 'e nō tā'u mau heheura'a. 'E e aha atu ā ho'i tā'u e pāpa'i i tei pāpa'ihia e tō'u ra mau metua ? 'Aita ānei rātou i fa'a'ite mai i te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'oia iā ; 'e 'ua nava'i te reira iā'u.
- 3 Inaha, e mea ti'a 'ia ravehia te 'ohipa rahi i rotopū i teie nei feiā, nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e te turi o tō rātou tari'a, 'e te pōiri o tō rātou mana'o, 'e te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'a'i ; 'āre'a rā 'ua aroha roa te Atua ia rātou, 'e 'aita ā 'oia i ha'amou ia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.
- 4 'E e rave rahi te ta'ata i rotopū ia mātou 'o tei fāri'i i te mau heheura'a e rave rahi, 'e 'aita ho'i te tā'āto'ara'a i fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au. 'E teie te feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta 'ore 'e te fa'aro'o te auhō'ēra'a i te Vārua Mo'a, 'o tei ha'api'i mai i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o.
- 5 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua hope e piti hānere matahiti, 'e 'ua rahi te mau 'āti Nephi i ni'a i te fenua. 'Ua ha'apa'o rātou i te ture a Mose 'e 'ua ha'amo'a i te mahana sābati i te Fatu. 'E 'aita rātou i ha'avi'ivi'i i te i'oa o te Atua ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i rātou i fa'ainaina i te Atua. 'E e mea pāpū maita'i ho'i te mau ture o te fenua.
- 6 'E 'ua ha'apurarahia rātou i ni'a i te pae rahi o te fenua, 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a. 'E 'ua rahi roa atu rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'ua hina'aro roa rātou 'ia taparahi i te ta'ata 'e 'ia inu ho'i i te toto o te mau 'ānimara.

The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere pinepine mai rātou e 'aro ia mātou, te mau 'āti Nephi. 'Āre'a rā e mau ta'ata pūai tō mātou mau ari'i 'e tō mātou feiā fa'atere i te fa'aro'o i te Fatu ; 'e 'ua ha'api'i rātou i te mau ta'ata i te mau 'ē'a o te Fatu ; nō reira, 'ua tama'i mātou i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'ua tīahi atu ia rātou i rāpae i tō mātou mau fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata mātou i te ha'apa'ari i tō mātou mau 'oire 'e tō mātou ato'a fenua 'āi'a.

8 'E 'ua rahi roa mātou, 'e 'ua purara ho'i mātou i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua rahi tā mātou tao'a i te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau tao'a maitata'i, 'e te rā'au ma te 'ohipa nehenehe, 'e te mau fare, 'e te mau huru mātini ato'a, 'e te 'āuri, 'e te kapa, 'e te veo, 'e te 'āuri pa'ari, i te hāmanira'a i te mau huru mauha'a ato'a nō te fa'a'apu i te fenua, 'e te mau mauha'a tama'i—'oia ia, te te'a 'oe'oe, 'e te pūtē te'a, 'e te ohe, 'e te tāvero, 'e te mau mauha'a tama'i ato'a ra.

9 'E nō te mea 'ua fa'aineinehia mātou 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'aita rātou i manuia i te 'arora'a mai ia mātou. 'Āre'a rā 'ua fa'ati'ahia te parau a te Fatu 'o tāna i parau i tō mātou ra mau metua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ia ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, e manuia 'outou i ni'a i te fenua.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau ha'amata'u atu ra te mau peropheta o te Fatu i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, mai te au i te parau a te Atua, 'oia ho'i, 'ia 'ore rātou e ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a, 'e 'ia 'ōfati rātou i te ture, e ha'amouhia ia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.

11 Nō reira, 'ua 'ohipa māite te mau peropheta 'e te mau tahu'a, 'e te mau 'orometua, i te fa'aitoitora'a ma te fa'a'orama'i rahi i te mau ta'ata 'ia itoito ; i te ha'api'ira'a i te ture a Mose, 'e te tumu i hōro'ahia mai ai te reira ; 'e i te fa'aitoitora'a ia rātou 'ia hi'o i mua i ni'a i te Mesia, 'e 'ia ti'aturi iāna 'o tē tae mai, mai te mea ra ē tei 'ō nei 'oia i teienei. 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te ha'api'i ia rātou.

12 'E i muri a'era, nō tā rātou nā reirara'a i 'ore ai rātou i ha'amouhia ai i ni'a i te fenua ; 'ua putapū ho'i tō rātou 'ā'au i tā rātou ra parau, 'o tei fa'aitoito tāmau noa ia rātou 'ia tātarahapa.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope e piti hānere 'e toru 'ahuru ma va'u matahiti—'e tē vai noa ra te mau 'arora'a, 'e te mau mārōra'a, 'e te mau pe'ape'a, nō te ārea rahi o taua taime ra.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

14 'E 'aita vau, 'o Iaroma, e pāpa'i rahi fa'ahou, nō te mea e mea iti roa te mau 'api. Inaha rā, e tō'u mau taea'e, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tai'o i te tahi atu mau 'api a Nephi ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ō'otihia te pāpa'a parau o tā mātou mau tama'i i ni'a i te reira, mai te au i tā te mau ari'i i pāpa'i ra, 'e 'aore rā 'o tā rātou i fa'aue 'ia pāpa'ihia.

15 'E tē tu'u atu nei au i teie nei mau 'api i roto i te rima o tā'u tamaiti 'o Omoni, 'ia pāpa'ihia te reira mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a tō'u ra mau metua.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

Te Buka a Omoni

- 1 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua fa'auehia vau, 'o Omoni, e tō'u metua tāne, 'o Iaroma, 'ia pāpa'i au i te tahi ma'a parau iti i ni'a iho i teie nei mau 'api, 'ia fa'ahereherhia tō mātou tuatāpapara'a tupuna—
- 2 Nō reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, i tō'u nei pu'e mahana, 'ua 'aro rahi au ma te 'o'e nō te fa'aora i tō'u mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ma'iri i roto i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi, te mau 'āti Lamana. Inaha rā, e ta'ata parauti'a 'ore au, 'e 'aita ho'i au i ha'apa'o i te mau ture 'e te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu mai tei ti'a iā'u 'ia ha'apa'o.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope a'era e piti hānere e hitu 'ahuru 'e ma ono matahiti, 'e 'ua rahi tō mātou mau tau hau ; 'e 'ua rahi ato'a ho'i tō mātou mau tau 'arora'a rahi 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto. 'Oia iā, 'ua hope e piti hānere e va'u 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o noa vau i teie nei mau 'api mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a tō'u ra mau metua ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu vau i te reira i tā'u ra tamaiti 'o Amaron. 'E tē fa'aoti nei au i teienei.
- 4 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i ato'a vau, 'o Amaron, i te mau mea tā'u e pāpa'i i roto i te buka a tō'u ra metua tāne, 'e e 'ere te reira i te mea rahi.
- 5 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua hope a'era e toru hānere e piti 'ahuru matahiti, 'e 'ua mou roa te pae rahi o te mau ta'ata parauti'a 'ore o te mau 'āti Nephi ra.
- 6 'E oti a'era ho'i tā te Fatu arata'ira'a mai ia rātou mai te fenua nō Ierusalemā mai, 'e tāna tīa'ira'a ia rātou, 'e tāna fa'ahereherera'a ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi, 'aita 'oia i fa'ati'a 'ia 'ore tāna mau parau 'ia tupu, tāna i parau atu i tō rātou ra mau metua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ia 'ore 'outou e ha'apa'o i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, e 'ore roa 'outou e manuia i ni'a i te fenua nei.
- 7 Nō reira, 'ua tā'iri te Fatu ia rātou nā roto i te ha'avāra'a rahi ; 'ua fa'aora rā 'oia i te feiā parauti'a 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia pohe, 'e 'ua fa'aora ho'i 'oia ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hōro'a atu vau i te mau 'api i tō'u ra taea'e ia Kemisa.

The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

9 I teienei, e pāpa'i au, 'o Kemisa, i te mau mea iti tā'u e pāpa'i i roto i te hō'ē ā buka tā tō'u taea'e i pāpa'i ra ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite au i te parau hope'a tāna i pāpa'i, 'e 'ua pāpa'i 'oia i te reira i tōna ihora rima ; 'e 'ua pāpa'i ho'i 'oia i te reira i te mahana i hōro'a mai ai 'oia i teie nei mau mea iā'u ra. 'E 'ua nā reira mātou i te pāpa'i i te mau pāpa'a parau, 'e 'ua au ho'i i te mau fa'auera'a a tō mātou ra mau metua. 'E tē fa'aoti nei au i teienei.

10 Inaha, e tamaiti au, 'o Abinadoma, nā Kemisa. Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite au i te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a e rave rahi i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua taparahi ho'i au i te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi i tā'u iho 'o'e, nō te pāroru i tō'u ihora mau taea'e.

11 'E inaha, 'ua 'ō'otihia te pāpa'a parau o teie nei feiā i ni'a iho i te mau 'api tei ha'apa'ohia e te mau ari'i, mai te au i te mau u'i o te mau ari'i ; 'e 'aita ho'i au i 'ite i te hō'ē a'e heheura'a 'e 'aore rā i te hō'ē a'e tohura'a, maori rā te reira 'o tei pāpa'ihia ; nō reira, 'ua nava'i tei pāpa'ihia. 'E tē fa'aoti nei au i teienei.

12 Inaha, 'o Amaleki au, te tamaiti a Abinadoma. Inaha, e parau ri'i au ia 'outou nō ni'a ia Mosia, 'o tei fa'arirohia 'ei ari'i i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'aarahia 'oia e te Fatu 'ia haere 'ē atu 'oia i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ha'apa'o i te reo o te Fatu 'ia haere ato'a atu rātou i roto i te mēdēbara—

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira 'oia mai te au i tā te Fatu i fa'auē mai iāna. 'E 'ua haere atu rātou i rāpae i te fenua ē tae atu i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i e fa'aro'o i te reo o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua arata'ihia rātou e te mau a'ora'a 'e te mau tohura'a e rave rahi. 'E 'ua a'o-pinepine-hia rātou e te parau a te Atua ; 'e 'ua arata'ihia ho'i rātou e te mana nō tōna ra rima, nā roto i te mēdēbara ē tae roa atu i raro i te fenua i ma'irihia te i'oa, te fenua nō Zarahemela.

14 'E 'ua 'ite ihora rātou i te tahi mau ta'ata i reira, 'o tei parauhia te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela. I teienei, 'ua tupu te 'oa'oa rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela ; 'e 'ua 'oa'oa roa ho'i 'o Zarahemela, nō te mea 'ua tonono mai te Fatu i te mau ta'ata o Mosia 'e te mau 'api veo, tei roto ho'i i te reira te pāpa'a parau o te mau 'āti Iuda.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

- 15 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite a'era Mosia ē, 'ua haere mai te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela mai Ierusalemā mai i te tau i hōpoi-tūtī-hia ai Zedekia, te ari'i nō Iuda, i Babulonia ra.
- 16 'E 'ua haere atu rātou nā roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua arata'ihia ho'i rātou e te rima o te Fatu nā ni'a i te mau pape rahi, ē tae atu ai i te fenua i 'iteahia ai rātou e Mosia ra ; 'e 'ua pārahi noa rātou i reira mai taua atu taime ra.
- 17 'E i te tau i fārerei ai Mosia ia rātou ra, 'ua riro ia rātou 'ei nūna'a rahi roa. 'Āre'a rā, 'ua rahi tā rātou mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a rahi, 'e 'ua pohe ho'i rātou i te 'o'e i terā tau 'e i terā tau ; 'e 'ua fa'ahuru-'ē-hia ho'i tō rātou reo ; 'e 'aita rātou i hōpoi mai i te hō'ē a'e pāpa'a parau nā muri iho ia rātou ; 'e 'ua huna ho'i rātou i Tei Hamani ia rātou ; 'e 'aita roa Mosia 'e te mau ta'ata o Mosia i ta'a i tā rātou mau parau.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Mosia 'ia ha'api'ihia rātou i tōna ra reo. 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era rātou i te ha'api'ihia i te reo o Mosia, 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra Zarahemela i te tuatāpapara'a tupuna o tōna ra mau metua, mai tei ha'amana'ohia e ana ra ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia te reira, 'eiaha rā i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'āmui tāhō'ē ihora te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela 'e te mau ta'ata o Mosia ; 'e 'ua mā'itihia ihora Mosia 'ei ari'i nō rātou.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, i te mau mahana o Mosia, 'ua hōpoi-hia mai ra te hō'ē 'ōfa'i rahi iāna, 'e tei ni'a iho i te reira te tahi mau parau i te 'ō'otira'ahia ; 'e 'ua 'iriti 'oia i te mau parau i 'ō'otihia nā roto i te hōro'ara'a e te mana o te Atua.
- 21 'E 'ua tuatāpapa mai te reira i te 'ā'amu nō te hō'ē ta'ata 'o Korianetumera, 'e te taparahira'ahia o tōna ra mau ta'ata. 'E 'ua 'itehia Korianetumera 'e te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela ; 'e 'ua pārahi ho'i 'oia i pīha'i iho ia rātou nō te ārea e iva marama te maoro.
- 22 'Ua fa'a'ite ato'a mai te reira i te tahi mau parau ri'i nō ni'a i tōna ra mau metua. 'Ua haere mai tōna mau metua mātāmua mai te pare mai ra i te tau i fa'ahuru 'ē ai te Fatu i te reo o te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua tae mai ho'i te ha'avāra'a rahi a te Fatu i ni'a iho ia rātou mai te au i tāna mau ha'avāra'a parauti'a ; 'e tē vai noa nei ā tō rātou mau ivi i ni'a i te fenua i te pae apato'erau ra.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

- 23 Inaha, 'ua fānauhia vau, 'o Amaleki, i te mau mahana o Mosia ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au i tōna pohera'a 'a ora ai au ; 'e 'ua fa'atere mai ra tāna tamaiti, 'o Beniamina, 'ei mono nōna.
- 24 'E inaha, i te mau mahana o te ari'i Beniamina, 'ua 'ite au i te hō'ē 'arora'a rahi 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto i rōpū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana. Inaha rā, 'ua ha'avī te mau 'āti Nephi ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e nō reira 'ua ti'avaru atu ra te ari'i Beniamina ia rātou i rāpae i te fenua nō Zarahemela.
- 25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ruhiruhiā vau ; 'e 'aita ho'i tā'u e tamari'i, 'e nō te mea 'ua 'ite au ē, e ta'ata parauti'a te ari'i Beniamina i mua i te Fatu, nō reira, e hōro'a atu vau i teie nei mau 'api iāna, ma te tūtau atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia haere mai i te Atua, i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, 'e 'ia ti'aturi i te mau tohura'a 'e te mau heheura'a, 'e te utuutura'a a te mau melahi, 'e te hōro'ara'a nō te paraura'a i te parau 'ē, 'e te hōro'ara'a nō te 'iriti i te parau 'ē, 'e te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ra ; 'e 'aita ho'i e mea maita'i, maori rā nō 'ō mai i te Fatu ra : 'e te mau mea 'ino ra, nō 'ō mai ia i te diablo ra.
- 26 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia haere mai 'outou i te Mesia, i Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei, 'e 'ia fāri'i i tāna fa'aorara'a, 'e te mana nō tāna fa'aorara'a. 'Oia ia, 'a haere mai iāna, 'e 'a pūpū mai i tō 'outou mau vārua ato'a 'ei ō nāna ; 'e 'a tāmau noa i te ha'apae i te mā'a 'e i te pure, 'e 'a fa'aitoito noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra ; e mai te Fatu e ora nei, e fa'aorahia ia 'outou.
- 27 'E i teienei, e parau rī'i au nō ni'a i te tahi mau ta'ata 'o tei haere atu i te mēdēbara nō te ho'i atu i te fenua ra nō Nephi ; e rave rahi ho'i mau ta'ata tei hina'aro 'ia roa'a fa'ahou mai tō rātou fenua 'āi'a.
- 28 Nō reira, 'ua haere atu rātou i ni'a i roto i te mēdēbara. 'E tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere ra, e ta'ata pūai ia 'e te mana, 'e e ta'ata 'ā'au 'eta'eta ho'i, nō reira 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te mārōra'a i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e 'ua taparahihia rātou ato'a i roto i te mēdēbara, maori rā e pae 'ahuru, 'e 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.
- 29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua arata'i fa'ahou atu ra rātou i te tahi ā pupu huru rahi, 'e 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra i te mēdēbara.

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

30 'E tē vai ra to'u, 'o Amaleki, te hō'ē taea'e 'o tei
haere ato'a atu nā muri ia rātou ; 'e 'aita vau i fa'aro'o
fa'ahou i te parau nō ni'a ia rātou. 'E 'ua fātata vau i
te haere atu i raro i tō'u mēnema ; 'e 'ua 'ī teie nei
mau 'api. 'E tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u nei parau.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with
them; and I have not since known concerning them.
And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these
plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

Te Mau Parau a Moromona

- 1 'E i teienei, 'ua fātata vau, 'o Moromona, i te tu'u atu i te pāpa'a parau 'o tā'u i pāpa'i i roto i te rima o tā'u ra tamaiti 'o Moroni ; inaha, 'ua 'ite au i te pae rahi o te ha'amoura'ahia o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 2 E rave rahi hānere matahiti i ma'iri i muri mai i te taera'a mai o te Mesia i teienei, 'e tē hōro'a nei au i teie nei mau pāpa'a parau i roto i te rima o tā'u tamaiti ; 'e 'ua mana'o vau ē, e 'ite 'oia i te ha'amou-roa-ra'a-hia o tō'u mau ta'ata. 'Ia fa'ati'a mai rā te Atua 'ia ora noa 'oia i muri a'e i tō rātou pau, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia pāpa'i i te tahi mau parau iti nō ni'a ia rātou, 'e te tahi mau parau iti nō ni'a i te Mesia, e penei a'e 'ia tae i te hō'ē mahana e riro te reira 'ei faufa'a nā rātou.
- 3 'E i teienei, e parau ri'i atu vau nō ni'a i te mau mea tā'u i pāpa'i ; e fa'aoti a'era vau i te ha'apoto i te mau parau nō roto mai i te mau 'api a Nephi ra, ē tae roa mai i te fa'aterera'a a teie ari'i 'o Beniamina, 'o tā Amaleki i parau, 'ua 'imi ihora vau i roto i te mau pāpa'a parau i tu'uhia mai i roto i tō'u ra rima, 'e 'ua 'itehia mai teie nei mau 'api iā'u, 'e tei roto i te reira teie 'ā'amu iti nō te mau peropheta, mai ia Iakoba ē tae mai i te fa'aterera'a a teie nei ari'i 'o Beniamina, 'e te mau parau e rave rahi a Nephi.
- 4 'E 'ua māuruuru vau i te mau mea i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api, nō te mau tohura'a nō te taera'a mai o te Mesia ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i tō'u ra mau metua ē, 'ua tupu e rave rahi o tē reira ; 'oia iā, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua tupu te mau mea ato'a i tohuhia nō mātou ra, ē tae roa mai i teie nei mahana, 'e e tupu ho'i te mau tohu nō te mau mahana i mua nei—
- 5 Nō reira, e mā'iti au i teie nei mau mea nō te fa'aoti i tā'u pāpa'a parau i ni'a i te reira, e rave au i te toe'a o tā'u pāpa'a parau nō ni'a mai i te mau 'api a Nephi ; 'e 'aita e ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te hānerera'a o te tufa'a nō te mau mea nō ni'a i tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 6 Inaha rā, e rave au i teie nei mau 'api tei roto teie nei mau tohura'a 'e teie nei mau heheura'a, 'e e tu'u vau i te reira i roto i te toe'a o tā'u pāpa'a parau, e mea maita'i ho'i te reira iā'u ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e riro te reira 'ei mea maita'i i tō'u mau taea'e.

The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

- 7 'E tē nā reira nei au nō te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a pa'ari ; tē nā reira mai nei ho'i te reo iti ha'iha'i iā'u, mai te au i te mau 'ohīpa a te Vārua o te Fatu i roto iā'u. 'E i teienei, 'aita roa vau i 'ite i te mau mea ato'a ; 'ua 'ite rā te Fatu i te mau mea ato'a e tupu a muri atu ; nō reira, tē fa'auru nei 'oia iā'u 'ia rave mai te au i tōna hina'aro.
- 8 'E 'o tā'u pure i te Atua, nō tō'u mau taea'e ia, 'ia ho'i fa'ahou tō rātou 'ite i te Atua ; 'oia ia, i te fa'aorara'a a te Mesia ; 'ia riro fa'ahou rātou 'ei feiā au-maita'i-hia.
- 9 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au, 'o Moromona, i tā'u pāpa'a parau, 'o tā'u i rave nō ni'a mai i te mau 'api a Nephi ; 'e tē pāpa'i nei au i te reira mai te au i te 'ite 'e te pa'ari tā te Atua i hōro'a mai iā'u nei.
- 10 Nō reira, i muri a'era i tō Amaleki tu'ura'a atu i teie nei mau 'api i roto i te rima o te ari'i Beniamina, 'ua rave 'oia i te reira 'e 'ua 'āmui ihora i te tahi atu mau 'api, 'e tei roto i te reira te mau pāpa'a parau i hōro'ahia mai e te mau ari'i, mai terā u'i i terā u'i ē tae roa mai i te mau mahana o te ari'i Beniamina.
- 11 'E 'ua hōro'ahia mai te reira mai terā u'i i terā u'i, mai te ari'i Beniamina mai ē tae roa mai i roto i tō'u nei rima. 'E tē pure nei au, 'o Moromona, i te Atua 'ia fa'ahereherehia te reira mai teie atu taime. 'E 'ua 'ite au ē, e fa'ahereherehia te reira ; nō te mea 'ua pāpa'ihia te mau mea fa'ahiahihi rahi i ni'a iho i te reira, 'e nā roto mai i te reira e ha'avāhia ai tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'e tō rātou mau taea'e i taua mahana rahi 'e te hope'a ra, mai te au i tā te Atua parau i pāpa'ihia ra.
- 12 'E i teienei, 'o te parau teie nō taua ari'i ra 'o Beniamina—'ua tupu te tahi mau mārōra'a ri'i i rotopū i tōna iho mau ta'ata.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i raro mai te fenua mai ra nō Nephi, nō te 'aro i tōna mau ta'ata. Inaha rā, 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra te ari'i Beniamina i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua 'aro atu 'oia ia rātou ; 'e 'ua tama'i atu 'oia ma te pūai o tōna iho rima, 'e ma te 'o'e ho'i a Labana ra.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

- 14 'E 'ua tama'i atu rātou i tō rātou mau 'enemi nā roto i te pūai o te Fatu, 'e 'ua taparahi rātou e rave rahi tauatini o te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro atu rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana, ē tae noa atu 'ua ti'avaru rātou ia rātou i rāpae i tō rātou mau fenua 'āi'a.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a mai ra te mau Mesia ha'avare e rave rahi, 'e 'ua tāpirihia a'era tō rātou vaha, 'e 'ua fa'autu'ahia rātou mai te au i tā rātou ra mau hara.
- 16 'E i muri iho 'ua ti'a ato'a mai ra te mau peropheta ha'avare, 'e te feiā ha'api'i ha'avare, 'e te mau 'orometua ha'avare, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'autu'ahia rātou ato'a mai te au i tā rātou mau hara ; 'e i muri iho 'ua tupu mai ra te mau mārōra'a e rave rahi 'e te mau tāivara'a e rave rahi i te mau 'āti Lamana, inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ahau te ari'i Beniamina i tō te fenua nā roto i te tauturura'a a te mau peropheta mo'a 'o tē pārahi ra i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata—
- 17 Inaha ho'i, e ta'ata mo'a te ari'i Beniamina, 'e 'ua fa'atere 'oia i ni'a i tōna mau ta'ata ma te parauti'a ; 'e tē vai ra ho'i e rave rahi mau ta'ata mo'a i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua parau rātou i te parau a te Atua ma te mana 'e te pūai ho'i ; 'e 'ua a'o 'ū'ana rātou nō te 'ā'au 'eta'eta o te mau ta'ata—
- 18 Nō reira, nā roto i te tauturura'a a te mau peropheta, 'ua rave te ari'i Beniamina i te 'ohipa ma te pūai ato'a o tōna tino 'e te 'ite ato'a ho'i o tōna vārua, 'e 'ua fa'atupu fa'ahou 'oia i te hau i ni'a i te fenua.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

Te Buka a Mosia

Mosia 1

- 1 'E i teienei, 'aita e mārōra'a fa'ahou i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a nō Zarahemela, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i raro a'e i te hau o te ari'i ra 'o Beniamina, 'e 'ua pārahi noa te ari'i Beniamina ma te hau ē hope roa a'e te toe'a o tōna ra mau mahana.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau mai 'oia e toru tamari'i tamāroa ; 'e 'ua ma'iri 'oia i tō rātou ra mau i'oa 'o Mosia, 'o Heloruma, 'e 'o Helamana. 'E 'ua fa'aue 'oia ia ha'api'ihia ia rātou te reo o tōna ra mau metua, 'ia riro rātou 'ei feiā 'aravihi ; 'e 'ia 'ite rātou i te mau tohura'a i parauhia mai e te vaha o tō rātou ra mau metua, 'o tei fa'ataehia mai ia rātou e te rima o te Fatu.
- 3 'E 'ua ha'api'i ato'a ho'i 'oia ia rātou nō ni'a i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ra, i te nā 'ōra'a atu ē : E ta'u mau tamaiti, 'ua hina'arou vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, 'āhiri 'aita teie nei mau 'api tei roto i te reira teie nei mau pāpa'a parau 'e teie nei mau fa'auera'a, 'ua pohe mau ia tātou i roto i te pōiri i teienei, 'o tātou 'aore i 'ite i te mau parau 'aro a te Atua.
- 4 'Aita ho'i i ti'a i tō tātou ra metua tāne ia Lehi 'ia ha'amana'o i teie nei mau mea, i ti'a ai 'ia ha'api'ihia atu i tāna ra mau tamari'i, maori rā nā roto i te tauturura'a a teie nei mau 'api ; 'ua ha'api'ihia ho'i 'oia i te reo o te mau 'Aiphiti nō reira i ti'a ai iāna 'ia tai'o i teie nei mau 'ō'otira'a, 'e 'ia ha'api'i atu i te reira i tāna ra mau tamari'i, 'ia ti'a ato'a ho'i ia rātou 'ia ha'api'i atu i tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te fa'atupura'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua ē tae roa mai i teie nei tau.

The Book of Mosiah

Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

5 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tā'u mau tamaiti, 'āhiri 'aita teie nei mau mea i ha'apa'ohia 'e i fa'ahereherehia ho'i e te rima o te Atua ra, 'ia ti'a ia tātou 'ia tai'o 'e 'ia māramarama i tāna ra mau parau 'aro, 'e 'ia vai māite noa tāna mau fa'auera'a i mua i tō tātou aro, 'ua riro ia te fa'aro'o o tō tātou mau metua i te paruparu ; 'e 'ua riro ato'a tātou mai tō tātou mau taea'e, mai te mau 'āti Lamana ra te huru, 'o tei 'ore roa i 'ite i teie nei mau mea, 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i rātou i ti'aturi i te reira 'a ha'api'ihia atu ai rātou, nō te mea tē ti'aturi noa ra rātou i te mau peu tumu hape a tō rātou ra mau tupuna.

6 E tā'u mau tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, e parau mau teie nei mau parau, 'e e parau mau ato'a ho'i teie nei mau pāpa'a parau. 'E inaha, te mau 'api a Nephi tei roto i te reira te mau pāpa'a parau 'e te mau parau a tō tātou ra mau metua, mai te taime i fa'aru'e ai rātou i Ierusalemā ē tae roa mai i teienei, e parau mau roa ia ; 'ua 'ite māite tātou i te reira, nō te mea tei mua ia i tō tātou nei mata.

7 'E i teienei, e tā'u mau tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou i te 'imi māite i taua mau mea nei, 'ia faufa'ahia 'outou i te reira ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ato'a vau 'ia ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'ia manuia 'outou i ni'a i te fenua nei, mai te au i te mau fafaura'a tā te Fatu i nā reira i tō tātou ra mau metua.

8 'E e rave rahi atu ā te mau mea tā te ari'i Beniamina i ha'api'i atu i tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e tei 'ore ho'i i pāpa'ihia i roto i teie nei buka.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te ari'i Beniamina i te ha'api'ira'a atu i tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'ua ruhiruhiā roa ihora 'oia ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, e haere vave atu 'oia nā te 'ē'a e haerehia nei e tō te ao ato'a nei ; nō reira, 'ua mana'o 'oia e mea ti'a iāna 'ia ha'amaui i te bāsileia i ni'a i te hō'ē o tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

10 Nō reira, 'ua ani a'era 'oia 'ia arata'ihia mai Mosia i mua iāna, 'e teie te mau parau tāna i parau atu iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : E tā'u tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia fa'ahaere atu 'oe i te hō'ē parau poro'i i ni'a i teie fenua ta'ata i rotopū i teie mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ho'i i te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela, 'e te mau ta'ata o Mosia 'o tē pārahi nei i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'aputupu-'āmui-hia mai ; e ananahi au e poro atu ai nā roto i tō'u iho nei vaha i tō'u nei mau ta'ata ē, 'o 'oe te ari'i 'e te tāvana i ni'a iho i teie nei mau ta'ata 'o tā te Fatu tā tō tātou Atua i hōro'a mai ia tāua.

11 'E 'oia ato'a, e ma'iri au i te hō'ē i'oa i ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'ia 'ite-'ē-hia rātou i te mau ta'ata ato'a i arata'ihia mai e te Fatu te Atua i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā ; e nā reira vau nō tō rātou itoito i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu.

12 E ma'iri ho'i au i te hō'ē i'oa i ni'a ia rātou, 'o tē 'ore roa e paraihia, maori rā nā roto i te 'ōfatira'a ture.

13 'Oia iā, tē parau fa'ahou atu nei ā vau ia 'oe, mai te mea e 'ōfati teie mau ta'ata 'o tei ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia e te Fatu i te ture, 'e 'a riro ai 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore 'e te fa'aturi, e fa'aru'e te Fatu ia rātou, 'ia riro noa rātou 'ei feiā paruparu mai tō rātou ra mau taea'e ; 'e 'aita roa 'oia e fa'aherehere fa'ahou ia rātou nā roto i tōna mana fāito 'ore 'e te māere, mai tāna i fa'aherehere i tō tātou mau metua.

14 'E tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'āhiri 'aita 'oia i fa'atoro mai i tōna rima nō te fa'aherehere i tō tātou mau metua, 'ua topa iā rātou i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ei tīti nō tō rātou 'ino'ino.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te ari'i Beniamina i teie nei mau parau i tāna tamaiti, 'ua hōro'a atu ra 'oia i te hōpoi'a iāna nō ni'a i te mau 'ohipa ato'a o te bāsileia.

16 'E 'oia fa'ahou, 'ua fa'aue ato'a atu ra 'oia iāna 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo ; 'e te mau 'api ato'a a Nephi ; 'e te 'o'e a Labana, 'e te pōpō, 'oia ho'i, te 'avei'a, tei arata'i i tō tātou mau metua nā roto i te mēdēbara, 'e tei fa'aimeinehia ho'i e te rima o te Fatu 'ia arata'ihia rātou e te reira, te ta'ata ato'a tei au i tōna fa'aro'o 'e tōna ha'apa'o maita'i iāna ra.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

17 Nō reira, nō tō rātou ha'apa'o 'ore i 'ore ai rātou i manuia, 'aore ho'i i tere maita'i i tō rātou ra haere'a, 'āre'a rā 'ua tūra'ihia rātou i muri, 'e 'ua fa'ataehia mai te riri o te Atua i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e nō reira 'ua tā'irihia rātou i te o'e 'e te mau 'ati rahi, nō te fa'ati'arepu ia rātou 'ia ha'amana'o i tā rātou 'ohipa.

18 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Mosia 'e 'ua rave ihora i tā tōna metua tāne i fa'aeue mai iāna ra, 'e 'ua poro atu ra i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te fenua nō Zarahemela, 'ia putuputu mai rātou, 'e 'ia haere atu rātou i te hiero nō te fa'aro'o i te mau parau tā tōna metua tāne e parau mai ia rātou ra.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

Mosia 2

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave Mosia mai tā tōna metua tāne i fa'aue mai iāna, 'e 'ua fa'atae atu 'oia i te parau poro'i i tō te fenua ato'a, 'ia ha'aputupu mai te mau ta'ata o te fenua pā'āto'a, 'e 'ia haere rātou i ni'a i te hiero nō te fa'aro'o i te mau parau tā te ari'i Beniamina e parau mai ia rātou ra.
- 2 'E 'ua rahi roa te mau ta'ata, 'e nō te rahi 'aita a'era i ti'a ia rāua 'ia tai'o ia rātou ; 'e 'ua tupu roa ho'i rātou i te rahi, 'e 'ua riro 'ei feiā rahi i te fenua.
- 3 'E 'ua hōpoi ato'a mai ra rātou i te mau fanau'a mātāmua nō tā rātou mau nana, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia pūpū 'ei tusia 'e 'ei mau ō tāauahi mai te au i te ture a Mose ra.
- 4 'E 'ia ti'a ato'a ia rātou 'ia ha'amaita'i i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'o tei arata'i mai ia rātou i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem, 'e 'o tei fa'aora ato'a ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi, 'e tei fa'ata'a i te mau ta'ata parauti'a 'ei 'orometua nō rātou ; 'e te tahi ato'a ta'ata parauti'a 'ei ari'i nō rātou, 'o tei fa'atupu i te hau i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e tei ha'api'i ho'i ia rātou 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia 'oa'oa 'e 'ia fa'a'ihia i te aroha i te Atua 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae mai ra rātou i te hiero, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa ē 'ati noa a'e taua vāhi ra, te ta'ata 'e tōna ra 'utuāfare, 'oia ho'i tāna vahine, 'e tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e tāna mau tamari'i tamāhine, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i tamāhine, mai te matahiapo ē tae noa atu i te hope'a, 'e 'ua ta'a 'ē te tahi 'utuāfare i te tahi ē hope roa a'e.
- 6 'E 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa ē 'ati noa a'e te hiero, te reira te ta'ata e tōna ti'ahapa ma te fāriu atu te 'ūputa i te hiero, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia pārahi noa i roto i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa 'a fa'aro'o atu ai i te mau parau tā te ari'i Beniamina e parau mai ia rātou ra.
- 7 Nō te rahi o te ta'ata 'aita atu ra e ti'a i te ari'i Beniamina 'ia ha'api'i atu ia rātou ato'a i roto i te hiero, nō reira 'ua fa'aue a'era 'oia 'ia fa'ati'ahia te tahi pare, 'ia ti'a i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia fa'aro'o i tāna mau parau 'o tāna e parau atu ia rātou.

Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata a'era 'oia i te parau atu i tōna mau ta'ata mai ni'a mai i te pare ; 'e 'aita ho'i i ti'a ia rātou ato'a 'ia fa'aro'o mai i tāna mau parau nō te rahi o te ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia pāpa'ihia tāna mau parau 'e 'ia fa'ataehia te reira i rotopū i te mau ta'ata 'o tei 'ore i fa'aro'o mai i tōna reo, 'ia ti'a ato'a ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i tāna mau parau.

9 'E teie ia te mau parau tāna i parau atu 'e tāna ho'i i fa'aue 'ia pāpa'ihia, 'e tē nā 'ō ra te reira : E tō'u mau taea'e, e 'outou pā'āto'a 'o tei ha'aputupu'āmui mai, 'outou 'o tē fa'aro'o mai nei i tā'u nei mau parau, 'o tā'u e a'o atu ia 'outou i teie nei mahana ; 'aore ho'i au i fa'aue atu ia 'outou 'ia haere mai i'ō nei nō te ha'afaufa'a 'ore i te mau parau 'o tā'u e parau nei, 'ia fa'aro'o rā 'outou iā'u nei, 'e 'ia ha'afatafata i tō 'outou tari'a 'ia fa'aro'o 'outou, 'e i tō 'outou 'ā'au 'ia māmarama 'outou, 'e tō 'outou mana'o 'ia ti'a i te mau parau 'aro a te Atua 'ia fa'a'itehia mai i mua i tō 'outou nā mata.

10 'Aita ho'i au i fa'aue atu ia 'outou 'ia haere mai i'ō nei 'ia mata'u mai 'outou iā'u nei, 'e 'ia mana'o ho'i 'outou ē, 'ua hau atu vau i te hō'ē ta'ata tāhuti nei i te huru.

11 E ta'ata mau rā vau mai ia 'outou ato'a na te huru, e ti'a ho'i iā'u 'ia ro'ohia i te mau paruparu pae tino nei 'e pae mana'o ho'i ; 'ua mā'itihia rā vau e teie nei feiā, 'e 'ua fa'atōro'ahia vau e tō'u metua tāne, 'e 'ua fa'ati'ahia ho'i au e te rima o te Fatu 'ia riro 'ei tāvana 'e 'ei ari'i i ni'a i teie nei feiā ; 'e 'ua ha'apa'ohia 'e 'ua fa'ahereherehia ho'i au e tōna ra mana fāito 'ore, nō te tāvini ia 'outou ma te mana ato'a, 'e te mana'o ato'a, 'e te pūai ato'a 'o tā te Fatu e hōro'a mai iā'u nei.

12 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua fa'ati'ahia vau 'ia fa'a'ohipa i tō'u pu'e mahana nō te tāvini ia 'outou, ē tae roa mai i teie nei taime, 'e 'aita ho'i au i tītau i te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te tahi atu ā mau tao'a nō 'ō na mai ia 'outou na.

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

- 13 'Aita ho'i au i fa'ati'a 'ia tu'uhia 'outou i roto i te mau piha tāpe'ara'a i raro i te fenua, 'e 'ia riro te tahi o 'outou 'ei tītī nā te tahi atu, 'e 'ia taparahi 'outou i te ta'ata, 'e 'ia haru i te tao'a, 'e 'ia 'eiā, 'e 'ia fa'aturi ; 'e 'aita ho'i au i fa'ati'a 'ia rave 'outou i te mau huru 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore, 'e 'ua ha'api'i au ia 'outou 'ia ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu, i roto i te mau mea ato'a 'o tāna i fa'aue mai ia 'outou—
- 14 'E 'ua rave ato'a vau, 'o vau iho, i te 'ohipa i tō'u iho nei rima 'ia tāvini au ia 'outou, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'outou 'ia teiaha i te 'aufaura'a i te moni tute, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i te hōpoi'a rahi 'ia tae mai i ni'a iho ia 'outou—'e 'ua riro ho'i 'outou 'ei 'ite i teie nei mahana i te mau mea tā'u e parau nei.
- 15 Terā rā, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'aita vau i rave i teie mau mea 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aahaaha, 'e 'aita ho'i au i fa'a'ite atu i teie mau mea 'ei parira'a ia 'outou ; 'ua fa'a'ite rā vau i teie mau mea ia 'outou, 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, e ti'a iā'u 'ia ti'a i mua i te Atua i teie nei mahana ma te 'ā'au hapa 'ore.
- 16 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'ua parau a'enei au ia 'outou ē, 'ua fa'a'ohipa vau i tō'u pu'e mahana nō te tāvini ia 'outou, 'aita rā vau i hina'aro 'ia fa'aahaaha, nō te mea tē tāvini noa ra ho'i au i te Atua.
- 17 'E inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i teie mau mea, 'ia ha'api'i mai 'outou i te pa'ari ; 'ia 'ite ho'i 'outou ē, 'a tāvini ai 'outou i tō 'outou mau ta'ata tupu, tē tāvini ra 'ia 'outou i tō 'outou Atua.
- 18 Inaha, 'ua fa'ariro 'outou iā'u 'ei ari'i nō 'outou ; 'e 'ia rave au, 'o tā 'outou i fa'ariro 'ei ari'i nō 'outou i te 'ohipa nō te tāvini ia 'outou, 'aita ānei ia e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia rave i te 'ohipa nō te tāvini te tahi i te tahi ?
- 19 'E inaha ho'i, mai te mea ē 'ua ti'a roa iā'u 'ia fāri'i i te mau ha'amaita'ira'a nō 'ō na mai ia 'outou na, 'o vau nei 'o tā 'outou i fa'ariro 'ei ari'i nō 'outou, 'e 'o tei fa'a'ohipa i tōna pu'e mahana nō te tāvini ia 'outou na, 'e tei tāvini na ho'i i te Atua, 'ua ti'a roa 'ia 'ia rahi roa atu tā 'outou ha'amaita'ira'a atu i tō 'outou Ari'i i te ra'i ra !

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

20 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tō'u mau taea'e, mai te mea e hope te mana ato'a o tō 'outou vārua i te ha'amaita'i 'e i te 'ārua i taua Atua ra 'o tei hāmani ia 'outou, 'e tei ha'apa'o ia 'outou, 'e tei fa'aherehere ia 'outou, 'e tei fa'a'oa'oa ia 'outou, 'e tei fa'ati'a 'ia pārahi hau 'outou te tahi i te tahi—

21 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai te mea e tāvini 'outou iāna 'o tei hāmani ia 'outou mai te mātāmua mai ā, 'e 'o tē fa'aherehere nei ia 'outou i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana, i te hōro'ara'a atu i te aho nō 'outou, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ora 'e 'ia hāhaere 'e 'ia rave ho'i mai te au i tō 'outou iho hina'aro, 'e 'o tē tauturu mai nei ho'i ia 'outou i terā taime 'e i terā taime—e parau atu vau mai te mea e tāvini 'outou iāna ma tō 'outou vārua ato'a, e mau tāvini faufa'a 'ore ā 'outou i reira.

22 'E inaha, hō'ē ana'e mea tāna i hina'aro ia 'outou 'ia rave, 'o te ha'apa'ora'a ia i tāna mau fa'auera'a ; 'e 'ua fafau mai ho'i 'oia ia 'outou ē, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tāna mau fa'auera'a, e manuia 'outou i te fenua nei ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i 'oia e fa'ahuru 'ē i tāna i parau mai ; nō reira, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tāna mau fa'auera'a, e ha'amaita'i mai 'e e ha'amanuia mai ho'i 'oia ia 'outou.

23 'E i teienei, nā mua roa, 'ua hāmani 'oia ia 'outou, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i tō 'outou ora ia 'outou, 'e 'ua riro ia 'outou 'ei 'aitārahu nāna.

24 'E te piti ra : 'Ua hina'aro 'oia 'ia ha'apa'o 'outou i tāna i fa'auē mai ia 'outou ra ; 'e mai te mea e nā reira 'outou, e ha'amaita'i 'oi'oi mai 'oia ia 'outou ; 'e nō reira, 'ua 'aufau ia 'oia ia 'outou. 'E e 'aitārahu ā ho'i 'outou iāna, i teienei, i te mau taime i mua nei, ē a muri ē a muri noa atu ; 'e nō reira, e aha tā 'outou e ti'a ai ia 'outou 'ia fa'aahaaha ?

25 'E i teienei, tē ui atu nei au, e ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia fa'aahaaha ia 'outou iho na ? E parau atu vau, 'Aita. 'Aita roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia parau ē, e mea faufa'a a'e 'outou i te repo puehu o te fenua nei ; 'ua hāmanihia rā 'outou i te repo puehu o te fenua ; inaha rā, nōna ia, 'o tei hāmani ia 'outou na.

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

- 26 'E 'aore ho'i au, 'o vau iho, 'o tei parauhia e 'outou e ari'i nō 'outou, i hau atu i te maita'i ia 'outou ; 'e nō te repo ato'a ho'i au nei. 'E 'ua 'ite 'outou ē, 'ua ruhiruhiā vau, 'e 'ua fātata ho'i au i te tu'u atu i teie nei tino tāhuti i roto i te repo, i te vāhi nō reira mai 'oia ra.
- 27 Nō reira, mai tā'u i parau iho nei ia 'outou, i tāvini nā vau ia 'outou, ma te haere 'ā'au hapa 'ore i mua i te Atua ; 'e 'ua ha'aputupu'āmuī mai ho'i au ia 'outou i teie nei taime, 'ia 'ore au 'ia fa'ahapahia, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i tō 'outou toto 'ia iri mai i ni'a iho iā'u, 'ia ti'a atu vau 'e 'ia ha'avāhia e te Atua nō te mau mea tāna i fa'aue mai iā'u nō ni'a ia 'outou na.
- 28 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmuī mai au ia 'outou 'ia tāmā vau i tō'u nei mau 'ahu i tō 'outou toto i teie nei taime, i te taime 'a fātata ai au i te haere i raro i tō'u ra mēnema, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia haere atu i raro ma te hau, 'e 'ia 'āmuī ato'a tō'u vārua tāhuti 'ore i te mau pupu hīmene i ni'a ra, i te hīmenera'a i te mau ha'amaita'ira'a i te Atua parauti'a ra.
- 29 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei ā vau ia 'outou na, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmuī mai au ia 'outou nō te fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou ē, 'aita e ti'afa'ahou iā'u 'ia riro noa 'ei 'orometua 'e 'ei ari'i nō 'outou.
- 30 I teienei ā ho'i taime, tē rurutaina noa nei tō'u nei tino tā'āto'a 'a tāmata'i au i te a'o atu ia 'outou na ; 'āre'a rā 'ua tauturu mai te Fatu te Atua iā'u nei, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a mai ho'i iā'u 'ia parau atu vau ia 'outou na, 'ua fa'aue mai ho'i iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i teie nei mahana, 'ua riro tā'u tamaiti ra 'o Mosia 'ei ari'i, 'e 'ei tāvana nō 'outou.
- 31 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia rave 'outou mai tā 'outou i rave nā mua a'enei. Mai tā 'outou ho'i i ha'apa'o i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, 'e te mau fa'auera'a ho'i a tō'u ra metua tāne, i manuia ai 'outou, 'e i fa'aorahia ai ho'i 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ma'iri i roto i te rima o tō 'outou ra mau 'enemi ; 'e 'ia nā reira ato'a 'outou i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a tā'u tamaiti, 'e 'aore rā i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua 'o tē hōro'ahia mai ia 'outou nā roto iāna, e manuia ia 'outou i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e 'aita tō tō 'outou mau 'enemi e mana i ni'a ia 'outou.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

32 'Āre'a rā, e tō'u mau ta'ata, 'a ara 'o te tupu te mau mārorā'a i rotopū ia 'outou, 'e 'o te ha'apa'o 'outou i te vārua 'ino 'o tei parauhia e tō'u ra metua tāne e Mosia.

33 Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'a'itehia na te utu'a e tae mai i ni'a i te ta'ata 'o tē fa'aro'o atu i tā taua vārua ra ; 'e 'ia fa'aro'o atu 'oia iāna, 'e 'ia pārahi noa 'e 'ia pohe ho'i i roto i tāna ra mau hara, 'ua inu ia 'oia i te pohe nō tōna ihora vārua ; 'e e fāri'i ho'i 'oia i te fa'au'ara'a mure 'ore 'ei utu'a nāna, nō te mea 'ua 'ōfati 'oia i te ture a te Atua, mai tei 'ore i au i tōna ihora 'ite.

34 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'aita roa te hō'ē i rotopū ia 'outou 'o tei 'ore ā i ha'api'ihia i teie mau mea, maori rā tā 'outou mau tamari'i ri'i, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'outou ē, 'ua riro 'outou 'ei aītārahu i tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra ē a muri noa atu, nō reira 'ua ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia hōro'a atu iāna i tā 'outou mau tao'a ato'a 'e tā 'outou faufa'a ato'a e vai nei ; 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua ha'api'ihia 'outou nō ni'a i te mau pāpa'a parau tei roto i te reira te mau tohura'a i parauhia e te mau peropheta mo'a ra, ē tae roa mai i te tau i fa'aru'e ai tō tātou ra metua tāne 'o Lehi ia Ierusalem ;

35 'E 'oia ato'a, te mau parau ato'a ho'i i parauhia e tō tātou ra mau metua ē tae roa mai i teienei. 'E inaha ho'i, 'ua parau ato'a rātou i te mau mea i fa'auehia mai ia rātou e te Fatu ; nō reira, e parau mau 'e te parauti'a ho'i te reira.

36 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ia hope 'outou i te 'ite 'e i te ha'api'ihia i teie mau mea ato'a, 'e 'ia hara 'outou, 'e 'ia haere 'ē atu i tei parauhia ra, 'e 'ia fa'aātea 'ē atu ho'i 'outou ia 'outou iho i te Vārua o te Fatu ra, 'ia 'ore tōna e vāhi i roto ia 'outou nō te arata'i ia 'outou nā te 'ē'a o te pa'ari ra, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ha'amaita'ihia, 'ia ha'amanuiahia, 'e 'ia fa'ahereherehia ho'i—

37 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o te ta'ata e nā reira i te rave, 'ua pāto'i 'ū'ana ia 'oia i te Atua ; nō reira 'ua ha'apa'o ia 'oia 'ia auraro i te vārua 'ino, 'e 'ua riro 'oia 'ei 'enemi nō te parauti'a ato'a ; nō reira, 'aita tō te Fatu e vāhi i roto iāna, nō te mea 'aita 'oia e pārahi i roto i te mau hiero vi'ivi'i.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

- 38 Nō reira, 'ia 'ore taua ta'ata ra 'ia tātarahapa, 'e 'ia pārahi noa 'oia 'ei 'enemi 'e 'ia pohe ho'i 'ei 'enemi nō te Atua, e fa'aaraara mai ia te tītaura'a o te parauti'a mo'a i tōna vārua tāhuti 'ore, 'ia 'ite pāpū 'oia i tāna ihora hapa, tei fa'a'ōtemutemu iāna i mua i te aro o te Fatu, 'e tei fa'a'ī i tōna 'ōuma i te 'oto, 'e te māuiui, 'e te 'auē, mai te auahi pohe 'ore ra, 'o tē pe'e atu tōna ura i ni'a ē a muri ē a muri noa atu.
- 39 'E i teieni, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'aita tō te aroha e mana i ni'a i taua ta'ata ra ; nō reira tāna utu'a hope'a ra 'o te fa'a'oroma'i ia i te māuiui hope 'ore.
- 40 E te mau ta'ata ruhiruhiā ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata 'āpī, 'e te mau tamari'i ri'i ho'i 'o tei māramarama i tā'u nei mau parau, i parau pāpū na ho'i au 'ia māramarama 'outou, 'e tē pure nei au 'ia ara 'outou i te ha'amana'ora'a i te ti'ara'a ri'ari'a o te mau ta'ata i ma'iri i roto i te 'ōfatira'a ture.
- 41 'E 'oia ato'a, 'ua hina'aro ho'i au 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou i te huru ha'amaita'ihia 'e te 'oa'oa o te feiā e ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua. Inaha ho'i, 'ua ha'amaita'ihia rātou i roto i te mau mea ato'a, i te pae tino 'e te pae vārua ato'a ho'i ; 'e mai te mea e ha'apa'o maita'i noa rātou ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e fāri'ihia ia rātou i te ao ra, 'e e pārahi rātou i pīha'i iho i te Atua i roto i te 'oa'oa hope 'ore ra. 'A ha'amana'o, 'a ha'amana'o ē e parau mau teie mau mea ; 'e nā te Fatu te Atua i parau mai i te reira.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Mosiah 3

- 1 'E teie fa'ahou e tō'u mau taea'e, 'a fa'aro'o mai na 'outou, e ma'a parau iti ā tā'u e parau atu ia 'outou ; inaha ho'i, tē vai nei te tahi mau mea 'o tā'u i hina'aro 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou nō te mau mea e tupu a muri a'e.
- 2 'E te mau mea 'o tā'u e fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou na, 'ua fa'a'itehia mai ia iā'u e te hō'ē melahi a te Atua. 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai 'oia iā'u : 'A ara ; 'e 'ua ara ihora vau, 'e inaha tē ti'a ra 'oia i mua iā'u.
- 3 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : 'A ara, 'e 'a fa'aro'o i te mau parau tā'u e fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe ; inaha ho'i, 'ua tae mai au nō te fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe i te mau parau 'oa'oa nō te 'oa'oa rahi.
- 4 'Ua fa'aro'o ho'i te Fatu i tā 'oe mau pure, 'e 'ua ha'avā ho'i i tō 'oe parauti'a, 'e 'ua tono mai iā'u nō te fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe 'ia 'oa'oa 'oe ; 'e 'ia fa'a'ite atu ho'i 'oe i tō 'oe mau ta'ata, 'ia fa'a'i-ato'a-hia rātou i te 'oa'oa.
- 5 Inaha ho'i, tē fātata mai ra te tau 'e 'aita ho'i i ātea roa, 'e ma te mana, e tae mai ai te Fatu Manahope 'o tei fa'atere ari'i na, 'o tei vai na ho'i, 'e 'o tē vai noa nei ē a muri ē a muri noa atu, i raro nei mai te ra'i mai i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e e pārahi ho'i 'oia i roto i te hō'ē tino tāhuti, 'e e haere atu 'oia i rotopū i te ta'ata nei, ma te rave i te mau semeio fa'ahiahia, 'oia ho'i, te fa'aorara'a i te feiā ma'i, te fa'ati'a-fa'ahou-ra'a i te feiā pohe, te fa'aorara'a i te feiā piri'o'i 'ia haere, 'e te feiā matapō ia 'ite, 'e te feiā tari'a turi 'ia fa'aro'o, 'e te fa'aorara'a ho'i i te mau huru ma'i ato'a.
- 6 'E e ti'avaru 'oia i te mau diabolō, 'oia ho'i i te mau vārua 'ino e pārahi ra i roto i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 7 'E inaha, e fāri'i 'oia i te mau fa'ahemara'a, i te māuiui o te tino, i te po'ia, i te po'ihā, 'e i te rohirohi, 'o tē 'ore e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia fa'a'oroma'i, maori rā e tae mai te pohe iāna ; inaha ho'i, e tahe tōna toto nā roto i te mau 'āpo'o ato'a o tōna 'iri nō tōna māuiui rahi nō te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 8 'E e ma'irihia tōna i'oa, 'o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, te Metua o te ra'i e te fenua, Tei Hamani i te mau mea ato'a mai te mātāmua mai ā ; 'e tōna metua vahine e ma'irihia ia tōna i'oa 'o Maria.

Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

- 9 'E inaha, e haere mai 'oia i tōna ihora, 'ia tae te fa'aorara'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei nā roto i te fa'aro'o i tōna ra i'oa ; 'e i muri a'e i taua mau mea ato'a ra e fa'ariro rātou iāna 'ei ta'ata noa, 'e e parau rātou ē, e diabolo tōna, 'e e papa'i rātou iāna, 'e e fa'asātauro ho'i iāna.
- 10 'E e tia mai 'oia i ni'a i te toru o te mahana mai te pohe mai ; 'E inaha, e ti'a 'oia nō te ha'avā i tō te ao nei ; 'e inaha, 'ua ravehia teie mau mea ato'a 'ia tae te ha'avāra'a parauti'a i ni'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 11 Inaha ho'i, e riro ato'a tōna toto 'ei tāra'ehara nō te mau ta'ata i hi'a nō te 'ōfatira'a ture a Adamu, nō rātou tei pohe ma te 'ite 'ore i te hina'aro o te Atua nō ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'aore rā 'o tei hara ma te 'ite 'ore.
- 12 'Auē ho'i ē, 'auē ho'i 'oia tei 'ite ē 'ua 'ōrure 'oia i te Atua ! 'E 'aita ho'i te fa'aorara'a e tae i taua ta'ata ra, maori rā nā roto i te tātarahapara'a 'e te fa'aro'o i te Fatu ra ia Iesu Mesia.
- 13 'E i tononā te Fatu te Atua i tōna mau peropheta mo'a i rotopū i te mau tamari'i ato'a a te ta'ata nei, nō te fa'a'ite atu i teie nei mau mea i tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a, 'e te ta'ata ato'a e ti'aturi e tae mai te Mesia, e fāri'i iā rātou i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā rātou ra mau hara, 'e e 'oa'oa rātou ma te 'oa'oa rahi, mai te mea ra ē, 'ua tae mai na 'oia i rotopū ia rātou.
- 14 Terā rā 'ua 'ite te Fatu te Atua ē, e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'ata'a 'oia i te hō'ē ture nā rātou, 'oia ho'i te ture a Mose.
- 15 'E 'ua fa'a'ite 'oia ia rātou e rave rahi mau tāpa'o, 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ūmerekia, 'e te mau taipe, 'e te mau hōho'a nō tōna ra taera'a mai ; 'e 'ua parau ato'a atu te mau peropheta mo'a ia rātou nō ni'a i tōna taera'a mai ; terā rā 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i 'ite ē, e mea faufa'a 'ore te ture a Mose, maori rā nā roto i te tāra'ehara o tōna ra toto.
- 16 'E 'āhiri 'ua ti'a i te mau tamari'i ri'i 'ia hara, 'aita iā e ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'aorahia ; 'āre'a rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua ha'amaita'ihia rātou ; inaha ho'i, nō te mea mai tā rātou i hi'a ia Adamu, 'e 'aore rā nā roto i tā te tino, e riro ato'a te toto o te Mesia 'ei tāra'ehara nā rātou.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

- 17 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei ā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'aita atu e i'oa, 'aita ho'i e 'ē'a, 'aita ho'i e rāve'a e fa'a'itehia mai, e tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, i roto ana'e rā, 'e nā roto ana'e ho'i i te i'oa o te Mesia, te Fatu Manahope.
- 18 Inaha ho'i, te ha'avā ra 'oia, 'e e mea ti'a tāna ha'avāra'a ; 'e 'aita ho'i te tamari'i ri'i tei pohe i tōna 'aiūra'a e mou ; 'āre'a rā tē inu ra te ta'ata i te pohe nō tō rātou iho vārua, maori rā 'ia fa'aha'eha'a rātou ia rātou iho 'e 'ia riro mai te tamari'i ri'i ra, 'e 'ia ti'aturi ho'i ē, i vai na te fa'aorara'a, 'e tē vai nei, 'e e tae mai ia, i roto, 'e nā roto ho'i i te toto tāra'ehara o te Mesia, te Fatu Manahope ra.
- 19 'E 'ua riro te ta'ata nātura nei 'ei 'enemi nō te Atua, 'e 'ua tupu te reira mai te hi'ara'a o Adamu mai ā, 'e e vai noa ho'i ē a muri ē a muri noa atu, maori rā 'ia auraro 'oia i te mau arata'ira'a a te Vārua Mo'a, 'e 'ia fa'aru'e i te ta'ata nātura 'e 'ia riro 'ei ta'ata mo'a nā roto i te tāra'ehara a te Mesia ra te Fatu, 'e 'ia riro ho'i mai te hō'ē tamari'i ra i te auraro, te marū, te ha'eha'a, te fa'a'oroma'i, te 'i i te aroha, te hina'aro 'ia auraro i te mau mea ato'a tā te Fatu e hina'aro 'ia tu'u mai i ni'a iāna, mai te hō'ē tamari'i e auraro i tōna ra metua tāne.
- 20 'E 'oia fa'ahou, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, tē fātata mai ra i te tau e parare ai te 'ite nō ni'a i te Fa'aora nā roto i te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 21 'E inaha, 'ia tae mai taua tau ra, 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata e 'itea i mua i te Atua ma te hapa 'ore, maori rā te mau tamari'i ri'i, 'e tei tātarahapa 'e tei ti'aturi i te i'oa o te Fatu te Atua Manahope.
- 22 'E i taua tau nei ho'i, 'ia oti tā 'oe ha'api'ira'a atu i tō 'oe mau ta'ata i te mau mea tā te Fatu tā tō 'oe Atua i fa'aue atu ia 'oe na, 'ei reira 'aita atu ra rātou e 'itea ma te hapa 'ore i mua i te aro o te Atua, maori rā mai tei au i te parau tā'u i parau atu ia 'oe na.
- 23 'E i teienei, 'ua oti tā'u paraura'a atu i te mau parau tā te Fatu te Atua i fa'aue mai iā'u.
- 24 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : E riro taua mau parau ra 'ei 'itera'a pāpū māmarama i teie nei mau ta'ata 'ia tae i te mahana ha'avāra'a ; nō reira e ha'avāhia rātou, te ta'ata tāta'itahi, mai te au i tāna ra mau 'ohipa, mai te mea e mea maita'i te reira, 'e 'aore rā mai te mea e mea 'ino te reira.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

25 E mai te mea e mea vi'ivi'i rātou, e vaiihohia rātou i te hi'o-rī'ari'a-ra'a i tā rātou ihora mau hara 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'o tē fa'a'ōtemutemu ia rātou mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu i roto i te mamae 'e te māuiui hope 'ore, 'e e 'ore roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia ho'i mai ; nō reira 'ua inu rātou i te pohe i tō rātou iho vārua.

26 Nō reira, 'ua inu rātou i tō roto i te 'āu'a o te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua, 'aore atu ra i ti'a i te parauti'a 'ia tāpe'a i te reira 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia inu, 'aore ato'a ho'i i ti'a 'ia huna ē, e mea ti'a ia hi'a Adamu nō tōna 'amura'a i te mā'a hotu i rāhuihia ra ; nō reira, 'aita ā te aroha e parau ia rātou ē a muri noa atu.

27 'E tō rātou mamae rahi mai tō te roto auahi iā 'e te gopheri ho'i, 'e e mea pohe 'ore tō reira mau ura auahi, 'e tē pe'e noa ra tōna au auahi i ni'a ē a muri ē a muri noa atu. Tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu i te fa'aue mai iā'u. 'Āmene.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Mosia 4

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te ari'i Beniamina i te parau atu i te mau parau i hōro'ahia mai iāna e te melahi a te Fatu, 'ua nānā a'era tōna mata i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e inaha 'ua ma'iri a'ena rātou ato'a i raro i te repo, i te mea 'ua tae mai te mata'u i te Fatu i ni'a ia rātou.
- 2 'E 'ua hi'o rātou ia rātou iho i roto i tō rātou huru tāhuti noa, e mea 'ino a'e iā i te repo puehu o te fenua. 'E 'ua pi'i pūai mai ra rātou ato'a ma te reo hō'ē, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'A aroha mai ia mātou nei, 'e 'a tu'u mai i te toto tāra'ehara o te Mesia 'ia fa'a'orehia tā mātou nei mau hara, 'e 'ia mā tō mātou 'ā'au ; tē ti'aturi nei ho'i mātou ia Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, tei hāmani i te ra'i 'e te fenua, 'e te mau mea ato'a ra ; 'o tē pou mai i raro nei i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era teie mau parau i te parauhia e rātou, 'ua tae mai ra te Vārua o te Fatu i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'i ihora rātou i te 'oa'oa, nō te fāri'ira'a i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā rātou ra mau hara, 'e te hau i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o rahi ia Iesu Mesia 'o tē tae mai, mai te au i te mau parau i parauhia mai e te ari'i Beniamina ia rātou ra.
- 4 'E 'ua hāmama fa'ahou atu ra te ari'i Beniamina i tōna vaha 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te parau atu ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : E hōmā, e tō'u mau taea'e, e tō'u mau fēti'i, e tō'u nei mau ta'ata, 'a fa'aro'o fa'ahou mai 'outou iā'u, 'ia fa'aro'o 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i 'outou i te toe'a o tā'u nei mau parau, tā'u e parau atu ia 'outou na.
- 5 Inaha ho'i, mai te mea ē 'ua fa'aaraara te maita'i o te Atua ia 'outou i teie taime 'ia 'ite i tō 'outou faufa'a 'ore, 'e tō 'outou huru faufa'a 'ore 'e te hi'ara'a—

Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

6 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai te mea ē 'ua fāri'i 'outou i te 'ite i tō te Atua maita'i, 'e tōna mana fāito 'ore, 'e tōna pa'ari, e tōna fa'a'oroma'i, e tōna huru marū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'oia ato'a, te 'ite i te tāra'ehara i fa'aineinehia mai te ha'amatarara'a mai ā o te ao nei, 'e nā roto i te reira e tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a i te ta'ata 'o tē ti'aturi māite i te Fatu 'e 'o tē fa'aitoito noa i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a, 'e i te tāpe'a māite ho'i i te fa'aro'o ē tae noa atu i te hope'a nō tōna orara'a nei, 'oia ho'i te ora o te tino tāhuti—

7 Tē parau nei au ē, 'o 'oia ia te ta'ata 'o tē fāri'i i te fa'aorara'a, nā roto i te tāra'ehara i fa'aineinehia mai te ha'amatarara'a mai ā o te ao nei nō te ta'ata ato'a nei, 'o tē vai ra mai te hi'ara'a o Adamu mai ā, 'e 'o tē vai nei, 'e te vai ā ē tae noa atu i te hope'a o te ao nei.

8 'E 'o te rāve'a ia teie e tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a. 'E 'aita atu e fa'aorara'a maori rā teie tei parauhia a'enei ; 'e 'aita atu ho'i e rāve'a e ora ai te ta'ata, maori rā te mau rāve'a tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou.

9 'A ti'aturi i te Atua ; 'a ti'aturi ē tē vai ra 'oia, 'e nāna ho'i i hāmani i te mau mea ato'a, tō te ra'i 'e tō te fenua nei ; 'a ti'aturi ē tei iāna te pa'ari ē hope noa a'e, 'e te mau mana ato'a, tō te ra'i 'e tō te fenua nei ; 'a ti'aturi ē 'aita e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia māramarama i te mau mea mai tā te Fatu i māramarama.

10 'E teie fa'ahou ā, 'a ti'aturi e mea ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau hara 'e 'ia fa'aru'e roa i te reira, 'e 'ia fa'aha'eha'a ia 'outou iho i mua i te Atua ; 'e 'ia ani ma te 'ā'au tae 'ia fa'a'ore mai 'oia i tā 'outou mau hara ; 'e i teienei, mai te mea e ti'aturi 'outou i teie mau mea, 'a ara 'ia ha'apa'o 'outou i te reira.

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

11 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai tā'u i parau a'enei i te mātāmua ra, 'e 'a 'ite ai 'outou i te hanahana o te Atua, 'e 'aore rā 'āhiri 'ua 'ite 'outou i tōna maita'i 'e 'ua fāri'i i tōna ra aroha, 'e 'ua fāri'i ho'i i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā 'outou ra mau hara, 'o tei fa'atupu i te pōpou rahi i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au, nō reira 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o māite 'outou, 'e 'ia tāmāu noa i te ha'amana'o i te mana rahi o te Atua, 'e tō 'outou faufa'a 'ore, 'e tōna maita'i 'e te fa'a'oroma'ira'a ia 'outou, 'e te ta'ata ti'amā 'ore, 'e 'ia fa'aha'eha'a 'outou ia 'outou iho i raro, i te ha'eha'a roa ra, ma te pi'i atu i te i'oa o te Fatu i te mau mahana ato'a, 'e ma te ti'a māite i roto i te fa'aro'o 'o tē tae mai, 'o tei parauhia mai ho'i e te vaha o te melahi ra.

12 'E inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai te mea e rave 'outou i te reira, e 'oa'oa noa ia 'outou, 'e e fa'a'īhia ho'i 'outou i te aroha o te Atua, 'e e fāri'i tāmāu noa 'outou i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā 'outou ra mau hara ; 'e e tupu rahi tō 'outou 'ite i te hanahana nōna 'o tei hāmani ia 'outou, 'oia ho'i, i te 'ite i te mea ti'a e te parau mau.

13 E e'ita te mana'o e tupu i roto ia 'outou nō te hāmani 'ino i te tahi, e hina'aro rā 'outou 'ia ora noa ma te hau, 'e 'ia tu'u atu i te ta'ata ato'a i tei au i tāna ra utu'a.

14 'E 'eiaha roa 'outou e vaiiho noa i tā 'outou mau tamari'i 'ia po'ia rātou, 'e 'ia vai taha'a noa ; 'e 'eiaha roa ho'i 'outou e fa'ati'a ia rātou 'ia 'ōfati i te mau ture a te Atua, 'e 'ia taputō 'e 'ia tātama'i ho'i te tahi i te tahi, 'e 'ia tāvini i te diablo, te fatu o te hara, 'oia ho'i te vārua 'ino 'o tā tō tātou mau metua i parau mai ra, 'o te 'enemi 'oia nō te mau parauti'a ato'a.

15 E ha'api'i rā 'outou ia rātou 'ia haere nā te 'ē'a o te parau mau 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i ; e ha'api'i ho'i 'outou ia rātou 'ia aroha te tahi i te tahi, 'e 'ia tāvini te tahi i te tahi.

16 'E 'oia ato'a, e aupuru 'outou ia rātou tei au ia 'outou 'ia aupuru ; e hōro'a atu ho'i 'outou i tā 'outou tao'a iāna 'o tei 'ere i te reira ; 'e 'eiaha ho'i 'outou e vaiiho noa i te ta'ata tāparu 'ia ani faufa'a 'ore noa mai ia 'outou, 'e 'ua vaiiho atu 'outou iāna 'ia pohe.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

- 17 E parau paha 'outou ē : Nā te ta'ata iho i 'āfa'i mai i tōna 'ati i ni'a iho iāna ; nō reira e'ita vau e fa'atoro i tō'u rima, e'ita ato'a ho'i au e hōro'a atu i tā'u mā'a nāna, 'e e'ita ho'i au e 'ōpere atu i tā'u tao'a nāna 'ia fa'aora iāna i te pohe, nō te mea 'ua ti'a tāna mau utu'a—
- 18 'Āre'a rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e te ta'ata i rave i te reira, e mea ti'a roa ia iāna 'ia tātarahapa ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'oia e tātarahapa i tāna i rave ra, e pohe ia tōna ē a muri noa atu, 'e 'aita roa tāna e faufa'a i te bāsileia o te Atua ra.
- 19 Inaha ho'i, e 'ere ānei tātou pā'āto'a i te feiā tāparu ? 'Aita ānei tātou pā'āto'a e ti'aturi nei i te hō'ē ā ta'ata, 'oia ho'i i te Atua, nō te mau mea ato'a tā tātou i fāri'i ; nō te mā'a 'e te 'ahu, 'e nō te 'auro, 'e nō te 'ārio, 'e nō te mau huru tao'a ato'a tā tātou i fāri'i ?
- 20 'E inaha, i teie nei ā taime, tē pi'i noa ra 'outou i tōna 'oa, 'e i te tāparura'a nō te ha'amatarara'a i tā 'outou ra mau hara. 'Ua vaiho ānei 'oia 'ia tāparu faufa'a 'ore noa 'outou iāna ? 'Aita roa ; 'ua nini'i mai rā 'oia i tōna Vārua i ni'a ia 'outou, 'e 'ua fa'a'i 'oia i tō 'outou 'ā'au i te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ua tāpiri 'oia i tō 'outou vaha i 'ore i ti'a ai ia 'outou 'ia parau atu nō tō 'outou 'oa'oa rahi.
- 21 'E i teienei, mai te mea e fa'ati'a mai te Atua, 'o tei hāmani ia 'outou, 'e tei roto ho'i iāna te parau nō tō 'outou ora, 'e nō te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou i fāri'i, nō te hōro'a mai i tā 'outou e anī atu iāna ma te parauti'a, 'e ma te fa'aro'o, 'e ma te ti'aturi e fāri'i 'outou, e mea ti'a roa ia ia 'outou 'ia 'ōpere atu i te tao'a tā 'outou i fāri'i nā te tahi 'e te tahi.
- 22 'E mai te mea e ha'avā 'outou i te ta'ata 'o tē fa'atae mai i tāna anira'a ia 'outou nō tā 'outou tao'a 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia pohe, 'e 'ua fa'ahapa atu 'outou iāna, e aha atu ia tē ti'a nō tō 'outou fa'ahapara'ahia, 'o 'outou i tāpe'a i tā 'outou tao'a, e 'ere ho'i te reira i tā 'outou iho, nā te Atua rā, tei iāna ato'a ho'i tō 'outou ora ; 'e 'aita ho'i 'outou i tu'u atu i tā 'outou anira'a i ni'a, 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i i tātarahapa i te mea tā 'outou i rave.
- 23 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'auē ho'i taua ta'ata ra ē, nō te mea e mou ho'i tāna faufa'a e 'oia ato'a ; 'e i teienei, e parau atu vau i teie nei mau mea i te mau ta'ata tao'a rahi i te mau mea nō teie nei ao.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

24 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e parau atu vau i te feiā veve, 'outou 'o tei 'ere i te faufa'a, maori rā 'ua nava'i noa tā 'outou nō te ora i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana ; 'oia ho'i, 'outou pā'āto'a 'o tei fa'a'ere i te ta'ata tāparu, nō te mea 'aita a 'outou ; teie tō'u hina'aro ia 'outou, 'ia parau 'outou i tō 'outou iho 'ā'au ē : 'Aita vau e hōro'a nō te mea 'aita tā'u ; 'āre'a rā 'āhiri tē vai ra tā'u, e hōro'a ia vau.

25 'E i teienei, 'āhiri ē parau 'outou i te reira i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au, tē vai ra ia 'outou i roto i te hapa 'ore ; 'e mai te mea ē 'aita, 'ua fa'ahapahia ia 'outou, 'e 'ua ti'a roa ho'i tō 'outou fa'ahapara'ahia nō te mea tē nounou ra 'outou i tei 'ore i fāri'ihia e 'outou.

26 'E i teienei, nō teie mau mea tā'u i parau iho nei ia 'outou na—'oia ho'i, nō te fāri'ira'a i te ha'amatarara'a i tā 'outou ra mau hara i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia haere ma te hapa 'ore i mua i te aro o te Atua—tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ōpere atu 'outou i tā 'outou tao'a nā te mau ta'ata veve, 'o te ta'ata ato'a i tei au i tāna ra faufa'a, i te fa'a'amura'a i tei po'ia, 'e te fa'a'ahura'a i tei taha'a noa ra, 'e i te utuutura'a i tei ma'ihia, 'e te ha'amāmāra'a i tā rātou hōpoi'a i te pae vārua 'e i te pae tino ho'i, mai te au i tō rātou ra hina'aro.

27 'E 'a ara 'ia ravehia teie mau mea ato'a ma te pa'ari 'e ma te nahonaho ; 'aita ho'i i tītauhia i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia horo 'oi'oi atu i tei au i tōna ra pūai. 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e mea ti'a roa iāna 'ia ha'apa'o maita'i, 'e nā roto i te reira e roa'a iāna te rē ; nō reira, 'ia ravehia te mau mea ato'a ma te nahonaho.

28 'E 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, 'o te ta'ata i rotopū ia 'outou 'o tē tīpe'e i tā tōna ta'ata tupu, 'ia fa'aho'i 'oia i te mea tāna i tīpe'e mai, mai te au i te parau tāna i fa'aa'u atu ; mai te mea 'aita 'ua rave ia 'oe i te hara ; 'e e riro ato'a paha te reira i te fa'atupu i te hara i roto i tō 'oe ta'ata tupu.

29 'E i te pae hope'a, 'aita e ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou i te mau mea ato'a ē hope roa a'e e hara ai 'outou ; 'ua rau te huru o te 'ē'a 'e te rāve'a, 'e nō te rahi 'aita roa ia e ti'a iā'u 'ia tai'o i te reira.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

30 'Āre'a rā teie noa te tahi tufa'a tā'u e ti'a 'ia fa'a'ite
atu ia 'outou, 'oia ho'i, 'ia 'ore 'outou e hi'opo'a ia
'outou iho, 'e tō 'outou mau mana'o, 'e tā 'outou mau
parau, 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa, 'e e ha'apa'o ho'i i te
mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e e mau pāpū noa i te
fa'aro'o i tei fa'aro'ohia e 'outou nō te taera'a mai o tō
tātou Fatu, ē tae noa atu i te hope'a o tō 'outou
orara'a, e pohe mau ia 'outou. 'E i teienei, 'e te ta'ata
ē, 'a ha'amana'o, 'ia 'ore 'ia pohe.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch
yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and
your deeds, and observe the commandments of God,
and continue in the faith of what ye have heard con-
cerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of
your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remem-
ber, and perish not.

8 'E nō teie i'oa i fa'ati'amāhia ai 'outou, 'e 'aita atu ho'i e i'oa i fa'a'itehia e fa'ati'amāhia ai 'outou. 'Aita atu ho'i e i'oa i fa'a'itehia e tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a ; nō reira, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia rave 'outou i te i'oa o te Mesia i ni'a ia 'outou, 'outou ato'a ho'i 'o tei fafau i te fafaura'a i te Atua ē e ha'apa'o maita'i 'outou ē tae noa atu i te hope'a o tō 'outou orara'a.

9 'E a muri a'era, 'o tē nā reira ra e 'itea ia 'oia i te rima 'atau o te Atua, e 'ite ho'i 'oia i te i'oa i pi'ihia ai 'oia ; e pi'ihia ho'i 'oia i te i'oa o te Mesia.

10 'E i teienei, a muri a'era 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e rave i te i'oa o te Mesia i ni'a iāna, 'ia pi'ihia ia 'oia i te hō'ē i'oa 'ē atu e ti'a ai ; nō reira, e 'ite ia 'oia iāna iho i te rima 'au i te Atua.

11 'E 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o ato'a 'outou ē, 'o te i'oa teie tā'u i parau ē, e hōro'a vau ia 'outou, 'e e 'ore roa atu te reira e paraihia, maori rā nā roto i te 'ōfatira'a i te ture ; nō reira, 'a ara 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia 'ōfati i te ture, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i te i'oa 'ia paraihia i tō 'outou ra 'ā'au.

12 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē 'ia tāmau i te i'oa i pāpa'i-mau-hia i roto i tō 'outou ra 'ā'au, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia 'itea i te rima 'au i te Atua ; 'ia fa'aro'o rā 'outou 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i i te reo e pi'ihia ai 'outou, 'e 'oia ato'a i te i'oa o tāna e pi'i ia 'outou.

13 'E nāhea ho'i te hō'ē ta'ata e 'ite ai i te fatu 'o tāna i 'ore i tāvini, 'e tei riro 'ei ta'ata 'ē iāna, 'e tei te ātea 'ē te mau mana'o 'e te mau 'ōpuara'a o tōna ra 'ā'au ?

14 'E i teienei, e rave ānei te hō'ē ta'ata i te 'āsini a tōna ra ta'ata tupu, 'e e tāpe'a i te reira ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'aita roa ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i 'oia e fa'ati'a 'ia 'amu 'oia i rotopū i tāna mau nana, e tiahi rā 'oia iāna, 'e e ti'avaru iāna i rāpae. Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e nā reira-ato'a-hia ho'i ia i rotopū ia 'outou, 'ia 'ore 'outou e 'ite i te i'oa i pi'ihia ai 'outou ra.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

15 Nō reira, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia itoito 'outou ma te 'āueue 'ore, i te rave rahi ma te tāmāu noa i te mau 'ohipa maita'i, 'ia tā'ati te Mesia, te Fatu te Atua Manahope, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia arata'ihia i te ra'i, 'e 'ia fāri'i 'outou i te fa'aorara'a mure 'ore e te ora mure 'ore, nā roto i te pa'ari, 'e te mana, 'e te parauti'a, 'e te aroha nōna 'o tei hāmani i te mau mea ato'a i te ra'i ra 'e i te fenua ato'a nei, 'oia te Atua i ni'a i te mau mea ato'a ra. 'Āmene.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

Mosia 6

- 1 'E i teienei, 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a atu i te mau ta'ata, 'ua mana'o ihora te ari'i Beniamina ē, e mea ti'a iāna 'ia pāpa'i i te i'oa o te mau ta'ata i fafau i te fafaura'a i te Atua nō te ha'apa'o i tāna mau fa'auera'a.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'aore roa te hō'ē a'e ta'ata, maori rā te mau tamari'i ri'i, 'o tei 'ore i fafau i taua fafaura'a ra 'e tei 'ore i rave i ni'a ia rātou i te i'oa o te Mesia.
- 3 'E teie fa'ahou ā, i muri a'era, i tō te ari'i Beniamina fa'aotira'a i teie nei mau mea ato'a, 'e i te fa'atāhinura'a i tāna tamaiti ia Mosia 'ei tāvana 'e 'ei ari'i i ni'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e te hōro'ara'a atu i te mau hōpoi'a ato'a nō te bāsileia iāna, 'e te fa'ata'ara'a i te mau tahu'a nō te ha'api'i i te mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'aro'o 'e 'ia 'ite i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e nō te fa'ati'arepu ia rātou 'ia ha'amana'o i te tapu tā rātou i tapu, 'ua tu'u atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ho'i atu ra rātou, te ta'ata 'e tōna 'utuāfare, i tō rātou iho mau 'utuāfare.
- 4 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora Mosia i te fa'atere 'ei mono i tōna metua tāne. 'E 'ua tae 'oia i te toru 'ahuru 'e 'aore o te matahiti i te fa'aterera'a, 'e 'ua fātata roa e maha hānere e hitu 'ahuru ma ono matahiti i te hope mai te taime mai i fa'aru'e ai Lehi ia Ierusalem.
- 5 'E 'ua ora noa te ari'i Beniamina e toru matahiti 'e 'ua pohe ihora 'oia.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere noa te ari'i Mosia nā te mau 'ē'a o te Fatu, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o 'oia i tāna ra mau parau 'e tāna mau ture, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o 'oia i tāna mau fa'auera'a i te mau mea ato'a tāna i fa'aue mai iāna.
- 7 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i Mosia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia fa'a'apu i te fenua. 'E 'ua fa'a'apu ho'i 'oia iho i te fenua 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia fa'ateimaha i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia rave mai te au i tā tōna metua tāne i rave i roto i te mau mea ato'a. 'E 'aita roa e mārōra'a i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata nō te ārea e toru matahiti te maoro.

Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

Mosiah 7

- 1 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, 'ua fāri'i noa te ari'i Mosia i te hau nō te ārea e toru matahiti te maoro, 'e 'ua hina'aro a'era 'oia 'ia 'ite i te parau nō te mau ta'ata i haere i ni'a, nō te fa'aea i te fenua ra nō Lehi-Nephi, 'oia ho'i i te 'oire nō Lehi-Nephi ; nō te mea 'aita tōna mau ta'ata i fa'aro'o i te parau nō ni'a ia rātou, mai te taime i fa'aru'e ai rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; nō reira, 'ua ha'ape'ape'a rātou iāna i tā rātou ra mau tītaura'a.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a atu ra te ari'i Mosia hō'ē 'ahuru ma ono o tōna mau ta'ata pūai 'ia haere i ni'a, i te fenua ra nō Lehi-Nephi nō te 'imi i tō rātou mau taea'e.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te haere i ni'a, 'e tei rotopū ia rātou te tahi ta'ata pūai 'e te itoito, 'o Amona, 'e e hua'ai 'oia nō Zarahemela ; 'e e ta'ata fa'atere ho'i 'oia nō rātou.
- 4 'E i teieni, 'aita rātou i 'ite i te 'ē'a e haere nā roto i te mēdēbara, e tae atu ai i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Lehi-Nephi ; nō reira 'ua haere 'ē noa rātou i roto i te mēdēbara e rave rahi mau mahana, 'oia ia, 'ua haere 'ē noa rātou e maha 'ahuru mahana.
- 5 'E 'ia ma'iri e maha 'ahuru mahana tō rātou haere-'ē-noa-ra'a, 'ua tae atu ra rātou i te hō'ē 'āivi i te pae apato'erau i te fenua ra nō Siloma, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i reira.
- 6 'E 'ua rave ihora Amona i nā taea'e to'otoru nōna ra, 'o Amaleki, 'o Helema, 'e 'o Hema tō rātou mau i'oa, 'e 'ua haere atu ra rātou i raro, i te fenua ra nō Nephi.
- 7 'E inaha, 'ua fārerei atu ra rātou i te ari'i o te feiā e pārahi ra i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e i te fenua ra nō Siloma ; 'e 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou e te fa'ehau o te ari'i, 'e 'ua ravehia rātou, 'e 'ua ru'uru'uhia, 'e 'ua tu'uhia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāpe'ahia rātou e piti mahana i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a 'e 'ua arata'i-fa'ahou-hia atu ra rātou i mua i te ari'i, 'e 'ua tātarahia tō rātou mau tā'amu ; 'e 'ua ti'a noa ihora rātou i mua i te ari'i, 'e 'ua fa'ati'ahia 'e 'ua fa'auehia rātou 'ia pāhono mai i te mau uira'a tāna e ui atu ia rātou.

Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

9 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, 'o vau nei 'o Limehi, te tamaiti a Noa, 'oia te tamaiti a Zenifa, 'o tei haere mai i ni'a nei mai te fenua nō Zarahemela mai, nō te fatu i teie nei fenua, i te fenua o tō rātou ra mau metua, 'o tei fa'arirohia 'ei ari'i nā roto i te reo o te mau ta'ata.

10 'E i teienei, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite i te tumu i ha'afātata mai ai 'outou i te mau patu o te 'oire nei ma te mata'u 'ore, 'a pārahi ai au, 'o vau iho, 'e tō'u mau fa'ehau ato'a ho'i i rāpae'au i te 'ūputa ?

11 'E i teienei, 'o teie te tumu 'ua fa'aora vau ia 'outou, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia ui atu ia 'outou, 'āhiri 'aita te reira mana'o i tupu, 'ua fa'ae atu na iā vau i tā'u mau fa'ehau 'ia taparahi ia 'outou. 'Ua fa'ati'ahia 'outou 'ia paraparau mai.

12 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Amona ē, 'ua fa'ati'ahia 'oia 'ia paraparau atu, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i mua 'e 'ua pi'o ihora i mua i te aro o te ari'i ; 'e 'ia ti'a fa'ahou a'era 'oia i ni'a 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia : E te ari'i ē, 'ua māuruuru roa vau i te Atua i teie nei mahana, i te mea tē ora nei ā vau, 'e 'ua fa'ati'ahia vau 'ia paraparau ; 'e e tāmata ho'i au 'ia paraparau atu ma te mata'u 'ore ;

13 Nō te mea 'ua 'ite au ē, 'āhiri 'oe i 'ite ē 'o vai au nei, 'aita iā 'oe e fa'ati'a 'ia ru'uru'uhia vau i teie nei mau tā'amu. Nō te mea 'o Amona vau, 'e e hua'ai ho'i au nō Zarahemela, 'e i haere mai mātou mai te fenua nō Zarahemela mai nō te 'imi i tō mātou mau taea'e, tā Zenifa i arata'i mai i ni'a nei mai roto mai i taua fenua ra.

14 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i tō Limehi fa'aro'ora'a i te mau parau a Amona, 'ua 'oa'oa roa ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra : I teienei, 'ua 'ite pāpū vau ē tē ora noa nei ā tō'u mau taea'e i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela. 'E i teienei, e 'oa'oa vau ; e ananahi e fa'a'oa'oa ato'a vau i tō'u nei mau ta'ata.

15 Inaha ho'i, tei roto mātou i te fa'atūtira'a a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua tutehia mātou i te tute rahi 'o tē ti'a iā mātou 'ia 'aufau. 'E i teienei, inaha, e fa'aora tō tātou mau taea'e ia tātou i te fa'atūtira'a, 'e i te rima ho'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e riro tātou 'ei tīti nā rātou ; e mea maīta'i a'e ho'i 'ia riro tātou 'ei tīti nā te mau 'āti Nephi, i te 'aufau atu i te moni tute i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

16 'E i teienei, 'ua fa'aeu atu ra te ari'i Limehi i tōna mau ta'ata tīa'i, 'eiaha rātou e ru'uru'u fa'ahou ia Amona 'e tōna mau taea'e, 'ia 'āfa'i atu rā ia rātou i te 'āivi i te pae apato'erau i Siloma, 'e 'ia arata'i mai i tō rātou mau taea'e i roto i te 'oire, 'ia tī'a ia rātou ia tamaa, 'ia inu, 'e 'ia fa'afa'aea i te mau 'ohipa nō tō rātou tere ; i ro'ohia ho'i rātou i te mau 'ati e rave rahi ; i pohe nā rātou i te poia, 'e te po'ihā, 'e te rohirohi.

17 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua fa'atae atu ra te ari'i Limehi i te hō'ē fa'auera'a i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ia ha'aputupu'āmui mai rātou i te hiero, nō te fa'aro'o i te mau parau o tāna e parau atu ia rātou.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ha'aputupu'āmui mai rātou, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou mai teie te huru, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'O 'outou, e tō'u mau ta'ata, 'a fa'ateitei mai na 'outou i tō 'outou upo'o ma te 'oa'oa ; inaha ho'i, teie mai nei te tau, 'oia ho'i tē fātata mai nei te tau 'e 'aita tātou e riro fa'ahou i raro a'e i te fa'aterera'a a tō tātou mau 'enemi, noa atu ā tō tātou mau tāfifira'a rahi 'o tei riro 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore ; tē tī'aturi mau nei rā vau ē, tē vai atu ra te tāfifira'a e noa'a mai te manuia.

19 Nō reira, 'a fa'ateitei mai na 'outou i tō 'outou upo'o 'e 'a 'oa'oa, 'e 'a tī'aturi i te Atua, i te Atua o Aberahama, 'e o Isaaka, 'e o Iakoba ; 'e 'oia ato'a, i taua Atua ra tei arata'i mai i te mau tamarī'i o 'Īserā'ela i rāpae i te fenua nō 'Aiphiti, 'e tei arata'i ia rātou nā roto i te miti 'Ute'ute nā ni'a i te fenua marō ra, 'e tei fa'a'amu ho'i ia rātou i te mana, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia pohe i roto i te mēdēbara ra ; 'e 'ua rahi atu ā te mau mea tāna i rave nō rātou ra.

20 'E teie fa'ahou ā, i taua iho ā Atua ra tei arata'i mai i tō tātou mau metua i rāpae i te fenua nō Ierusalem, 'e tei ha'apa'o ho'i 'e tei fa'aherehere i tōna mau ta'ata ē tae roa mai i teienei ; 'E inaha, nō tā tātou mau 'ohipa 'Īino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i hōpoi mai ai 'oia ia tātou i roto i te fa'atūtira'a.

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

21 E 'ite ho'i 'outou ato'a i teie nei mahana ē, nō te hina'aro rahi o Zenifa, 'oia te ari'i o teie nei mau ta'ata, 'ia pārahi fa'ahou i te fenua o tōna ra mau metua, i ha'avarehia ai 'oia e te ha'avare 'e te 'ohipa tāviri a te ari'i ra o Lamana, 'o tei fa'aau i te parau i te ari'i ra ia Zenifa, 'e tei hōro'a atu ho'i i roto i tōna rima i te tahi pae o te fenua, 'oia ho'i te 'oire ra nō Lehi-Nephi, 'e te 'oire nō Siloma ; 'e te mau fenua ē 'ati noa a'e—

22 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia nō te hō'ē ana'e iho tumu, nō te 'āfa'i mai i teie mau ta'ata i raro a'e i tāna fa'aterera'a 'e 'aore rā i roto i te fa'atītira'a. 'E inaha, tē 'aufau nei tātou i te tute i teie taime i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, ē tae noa atu i te 'āfara'a 'o tā tātou tō, 'e tā tātou kerite, 'e tā tātou mau huru sītona ato'a, 'e te 'āfara'a ho'i o te mau fanau'a 'o tā tātou mau nana māmoē 'e tā tātou mau nana pua'atoro ; 'e tē tītau mai nei te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'āfara'a o te mau mea ato'a i roa'a mai ia tātou, 'e 'aore rā i tō tātou ora.

23 'E i teienei, e 'ere ānei te reira i te mea teiaha 'ia fa'a'oroma'i ? E 'ere ānei teie i te 'ati rahi nō tātou ? 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua rahi roa te tumu 'ua ti'a roa ia tātou 'ia 'oto.

24 'Oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua rahi roa te mau tumu 'ua ti'a roa ia tātou 'ia 'oto ; inaha ho'i, 'ua rahi roa tō tātou mau taea'e i taparahihia, 'e 'ua ha'amani'ihia tō rātou toto ma te faufa'a 'ore nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.

25 'E 'āhiri 'aita teie nei feiā i 'ōfati i te mau ture, 'aita ia te Fatu e fa'ati'a 'ia tae mai teie nei 'ino rahi i ni'a iho ia rātou. Inaha rā, 'aita rātou i fa'aro'o i tāna mau parau, 'e 'ua tupu a'era te mau mārōra'a i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amani'i ihora rātou i tō rātou toto te tahi i te tahi.

26 'E 'ua taparahi rātou i te hō'ē peropheta o te Fatu ; 'oia ia, i te hō'ē ta'ata mā'itihia e te Atua, 'o tei fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino e mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e 'ua tohu ho'i 'oia i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu, 'oia ia, i te taera'a mai o te Mesia.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being overzealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

- 27 'E nō te mea 'ua parau mai 'oia ia rātou ē, 'o te Mesia ra, 'o te Atua ia, te Metua o te mau mea ato'a ra, 'e i parau ho'i 'oia ē, e riro mau 'oia mai te ta'ata nei te huru, i te hōho'a o te ta'ata i hāmanihia i te mātāmua ra ; 'oia ho'i, i parau mai 'oia ē, 'ua hāmanihia te ta'ata i te hōho'a o te Atua ra, 'e e haere mai te Atua i raro nei i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e e rave mai ho'i 'oia i te tino 'i'o 'e te toto, 'e e hāhaere ho'i nā ni'a i te fenua nei—
- 28 'E i teienei, nō te mea i parau mai 'oia i te reira, 'ua taparahi rātou iāna ; 'e 'ua rahi atu ā te mau mea tā rātou i rave tei fa'atae mai i te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i ni'a ia rātou. Nō reira, 'o vai tei māere i te mea tei roto rātou i te tītira'a, 'e 'ua tā'irihia ho'i rātou i te 'ati māuiui rahi roa ?
- 29 Inaha ho'i, 'ua parau mai te Fatu ē : E'ita roa vau e tauturu atu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata i te mahana nō tā rātou 'ōfatira'a i te mau ture ; e fa'aapiapi rā vau i tō rātou mau 'ē'a 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia manuia, 'e e riro ho'i tā rātou mau rāve'a 'ei turorira'a i mua ia rātou ra.
- 30 'E tē parau fa'ahou mai ra 'oia ē : 'Ia ueue tō'u mau ta'ata i te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ra, e 'ō'oti ia rātou i te ota nō reira mai i roto i te pūāhiohio ra ; 'e e mea ta'ero ho'i te roa'a.
- 31 'E tē parau fa'ahou mai ra 'oia ē : 'Ia ueue tō'u mau ta'ata i te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ra, e 'ō'oti ia rātou i te mata'i nō te hiti'a o te rā ra, 'o tē hōpoi 'oi'oi mai i te pau rahi.
- 32 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua tupu te fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'e 'ua tā'irihia 'e 'ua ro'ohia ho'i 'outou i te 'ati.
- 33 'E mai te mea e fāriu mai 'outou i te Fatu ma te 'ā'au ato'a, 'e ma te ti'aturi iāna, 'e ma te tāvini iāna ma tō 'outou mana'o ato'a ra, 'ia nā reira 'outou, e fa'aora ia 'oia ia 'outou i tō 'outou tītira'a, mai te au i tōna ra hina'aro 'e tōna mana'o.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

Mosiah 8

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te ari'i Limehi i te paraparaura'a atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, i parau atu ho'i 'oia i te mau mea e rave rahi ia rātou, 'e e mea iti roa ho'i tā'u i pāpa'i i roto i teie nei buka, 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata i te mau mea ato'a nō ni'a i tō rātou mau taea'e i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.
- 2 'E 'ua tītau 'oia 'ia ti'a Amona i mua i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i te mau mea ato'a tei tupu i tō rātou mau taea'e mai te tau i haere atu ai Zenifa i rāpae i te fenua, ē tae roa mai i te tau i haere mai ai 'oia iho mai taua fenua ra.
- 3 'E 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra 'oia ia rātou i te parau hope'a tā te ari'i Beniamina i ha'api'i mai ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amāramarama atu ra 'oia i te reira i te mau ta'ata o te ari'i Limehi, 'ia 'ite rātou i te mau parau ato'a tāna i parau ra.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i te reira ; 'ua tu'u atu ra te ari'i Limehi i te mau ta'ata 'ia ho'i atu, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia ho'i rātou ato'a i tō rātou iho fare.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia 'āfa'ihia mai te mau 'api, tei 'ō'otihia i te pāpa'a parau o tōna ra mau ta'ata mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i mua ia Amona ra, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia tai'o i te reira.
- 6 I teienei, i muri noa iho i tō Amona tai'ora'a i taua pāpa'a parau ra, 'ua ani atu ra te ari'i iāna 'ia 'ite ē, e ti'a ānei iāna 'ia 'iriti i taua mau parau ra, 'e 'ua pāhono atu ra Amona iāna, 'aita e ti'a iāna.
- 7 'E 'ua parau atu ra te ari'i iāna : 'Ua 'oto na vau nō te mau 'ati o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra vau 'ia tere atu e maha 'ahuru ma toru o tō'u mau ta'ata i roto i te mēdēbara, 'ia 'imi haere rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ia ani mātou i tō mātou mau taea'e 'ia fa'aora ia mātou i te tītira'a.

Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

8 'E 'ua mo'e rātou i roto i te mēdēbara nō te ārea e rave rahi mahana te maoro, 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'aitoito noa rātou, 'e 'aita te fenua nō Zarahemla i 'itehia ia rātou, 'e 'ua ho'i mai rātou i teie nei fenua, i tere na ho'i rātou i te hō'ē fenua i rōpū i te mau pape e rave rahi ; i 'ite ho'i rātou i te fenua 'o tei 'ī i te mau ivi o te ta'ata e te 'ānimara, 'e 'ua 'ī ho'i i te mau huru fare pē ato'a, 'e i 'ite ho'i rātou i te hō'ē fenua i ta'atahia i te tahi mau ta'ata mai te au i te feiā o 'Īserā'ela i te rahi 'ia tai'o.

9 'E 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū nō te mau mea tā rātou i parau, 'ua 'āfa'i mai rātou i te mau 'api e piti 'ahuru ma maha 'o tei 'ī i te mau parau 'ō'otihia, 'e 'ua hāmanihia te reira i te 'auro mau.

10 'E inaha, 'ua 'āfa'i ato'a mai ho'i rātou i te mau pāruru 'ōuma rarahi, 'e 'ua hāmanihia te reira i te veo 'e te kapa, 'e e mea pa'ari maita'i.

11 'E teie fa'ahou ā, 'ua 'āfa'i mai rātou i te mau 'o'e, 'ua pau te tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ua 'ino te tipī i te tūtāe 'āuri ; 'e 'aita roa e ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua tē ti'a 'ia 'īriti i te parau 'e 'aore rā i te mau 'ō'otira'a i ni'a i taua mau 'api ra. Nō reira vau i parau atu ai ia 'oe : E ti'a ānei ia 'oe 'ia 'īriti ?

12 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'oe : 'Ua 'ite ānei 'oe i te hō'ē ta'ata e ti'a iāna 'ia 'īriti i te parau ? 'Ua hina'aro ho'i au 'ia 'īritihia teie nei mau pāpa'a parau i roto i tō tātou nei reo ; penei a'e 'o te fa'a'ite mai te reira ia tātou i te parau nō te toe'a o te nūna'a i ha'amouhia ra, nō rātou teie nei mau pāpa'a parau ; 'e 'aore rā, e fa'a'ite paha te reira ia tātou i te parau nō teie nei feiā i ha'amouhia ra ; 'e 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite i te tumu nō tō rātou ha'amoura'ahia.

13 'E i teienei 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : E ti'a roa iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe, 'e te ari'i, i te hō'ē ta'ata tē ti'a 'ia 'īriti i te mau pāpa'a parau ; tē vai ra tāna tao'a e ti'a ai iāna 'ia hi'o 'e 'ia 'īriti i te mau pāpa'a parau tahito ato'a ra ; 'e e tao'a hōro'a te reira nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra. 'E 'ua parauhia taua mea ra, e mau 'īriti parau, 'e 'aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia hi'o i roto i te reira, maori rā 'ua fa'auehia mai 'oia, 'o te hi'o 'oia i te mea 'aita e tano iāna 'e 'a pohe ai 'oia. 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'auehia 'ia hi'o i roto i te reira, 'ua parauhia ia 'oia e hi'o.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

- 14 'E inaha, te ari'i o te mau ta'ata i te fenua nō Zarahemela, 'o te ta'ata ia tei fa'auehia 'ia rave i teie nei mau mea, 'e tei iāna taua hōro'a rahi ra nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra.
- 15 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i ē, e mea rahi a'e te hi'o i te peropheta.
- 16 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amona ē, e heheu parau te hi'o 'e e peropheta ato'a ho'i ; 'e e 'ore roa e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia fāri'i i te hō'ē hōro'a rahi a'e, maori rā 'ia fāri'i 'oia i te mana o te Atua, 'e 'aita ho'i e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia fāri'i i te reira ; e ti'a rā i te ta'ata 'ia fāri'i i te mana rahi nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra.
- 17 'Āre'a rā e ti'a i te hi'o 'ia 'ite i te mau mea i tupu na, 'e te mau mea ho'i e tupu a muri atu, 'e nā roto ho'i ia rātou e heheuhia mai ai te mau mea ato'a, 'oia ho'i e fa'a'itehia mai ai te mau mea mo'e, 'e e tae mai ho'i te māramarama nō te mau mea i hunahia ra, 'e te mau mea 'ite-'ore-hia ra e fa'a'itehia mai ia e rātou ; 'e e fa'a'ite-ato'a-hia mai te mau mea 'aore e ti'a 'ia fa'a'itehia nā roto ia rātou.
- 18 'E 'ua nā reira te Atua i te fa'a'ineine i te hō'ē rāve'a e ti'a ai i te ta'ata 'ia rave i te mau semeio rarahi nā roto i te fa'aro'o ; nō reira e riro ai 'oia 'ei mea faufa'a rahi i tōna ra mau ta'ata tupu.
- 19 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Amona i te paraura'a i teie nei mau parau, 'ua 'oa'oa roa a'era te ari'i, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i atu ra 'oia i te Atua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Tei roto paha i teie nei mau 'api te hō'ē parau 'aro rahi, 'e 'ua fa'a'ineinemia paha teie nei mau 'iriti parau nō te tātara i te mau parau 'aro ato'a mai te reira te huru i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 20 'Auē ho'i te fa'ahiahia o te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu ē, 'auē ho'i te maorora'a nō tōna fa'a'oroma'i i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'auē ho'i te matapō 'e te 'eta'eta o te 'ite o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ē ; 'aita ho'i rātou e 'imi i te pa'ari, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou e hina'aro 'ia fa'atere te reira ia rātou.
- 21 'Oia ia, 'ua riro rātou mai te nana māmoe 'ōviri 'o tē horo 'ē atu i te tīa'i māmoe, 'e te purara atu, 'e te tīahihia, 'e te pau i te mau 'ānimara o te uru rā'au ra.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he cometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

TE PĀPA'A PARAU A ZENIFA—E 'ā'amu nō tōna ra mau ta'ata, mai te tau i fa'aru'e atu ai rātou i te fenua nō Zarahemela ē tae roa mai i te tau i fa'aorabia ai rātou i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana.

Mosiah 9

- 1 'Ua ha'api'i-māite-hia ho'i au, 'o Zenifa, i te reo o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au i te fenua nō Nephi, 'oia ho'i, te fenua 'āi'a mātāmua o tō mātou ra mau metua, 'e 'ua tonohia ho'i au 'ei ta'ata tāmoe moe i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia tāmoe moe i te rahi o tō rātou mau nu'u, 'ia ti'a i tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau 'ia haere atu e tama'i 'e ha'amou ia rātou—'āre'a rā i tō'u 'itera'a i te maita'i i rotopū ia rātou, 'ua hina'aro ihora vau 'eiaha rātou 'ia ha'amouhia.
- 2 Nō reira, 'ua mārō vau i tō'u ra mau taea'e i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua hina'aro roa vau 'ia fa'aau tō mātou ta'ata fa'atere i te parau ia rātou ; 'e nō te mea e ta'ata 'iriā 'oia 'e te hina'aro taparahi ta'ata, 'ua fa'aue ihora 'oia 'ia taparahihia vau ; 'ua orahia mai au nō te rahi o te ta'ata e taparahihia ra ; 'ua 'aro ihora ho'i te metua tāne i te metua tāne, 'e te taea'e i te taea'e, ē tae noa atu 'ua pau te pae rahi o tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra mātou, mātou 'o tei toe mai, i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, nō te fa'ati'a atu i taua 'ā'amu ra i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i.
- 3 'E nō te mea 'ua hina'aro rahi au 'ia fatu mātou i te fenua o tō mātou mau metua, 'ua ha'aputupu i hora vau i te mau ta'ata i hina'aro 'ia haere atu nō te rave mai i taua fenua ra, 'e 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou atu ra mātou i tō mātou tere nā roto i te mēdēbara nō te haere atu i taua fenua ra ; 'ua ha'afihia rā mātou e te o'e 'e te mau 'ati rahi ; e feiā tāere ho'i mātou i te ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō mātou Atua.
- 4 'Āre'a rā, 'ia hope a'era e rave rahi mau mahana nō tō mātou ori-haere-noa-ra'a i roto i te mēdēbara, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa i te vāhi i taparahihia ai tō mātou ra mau taea'e, tei pīha'i iho ia i te fenua o tō mātou ra mau metua.

THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra vau 'e nā ta'ata to'omaha ato'a o tō'u ra mau ta'ata i roto i te 'oire i te ari'i ra, 'ia 'ite au i tō te ari'i ra mana'o, 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i au ē e mea ti'a ānei iā'u 'ia haere atu e tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te fatu i te fenua ma te hau.
- 6 'E 'ua haere atu vau i mua i te ari'i, 'e 'ua fafau mai 'oia iā'u ē, e ti'a iā'u 'ia pārahi i te fenua ra nō Lehi-Nephi, 'e i te fenua ra nō Siloma.
- 7 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra ho'i 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata 'ia haere 'ē atu rātou i rāpae i te fenua, 'e 'ua haere atu ra vau e tō'u ra mau ta'ata i taua fenua ra 'ia roa'a mai te reira ia mātou.
- 8 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora mātou i te patu i te mau fare, 'e i te fa'a'āpī ho'i i te mau patu o te 'oire, 'oia ia, i te mau patu ato'a o te 'oire nō Lehi-Nephi, 'e te 'oire ho'i nō Siloma.
- 9 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora ho'i mātou i te fa'a'apu i te fenua, 'oia ia, i te mau huru huero ato'a, mai te huero tō, te sītona, te kerite, te neasi, te siheuma, 'e te mau huero o te mau huru mā'a hotu ato'a ; 'e 'ua tupu ihora mātou i te rahi 'e 'ua manuia i ni'a i te fenua.
- 10 I teienei, e rāve'a ha'avare 'e e 'ohipa tāviri teie nā te ari'i ra 'o Lamana nō te tu'u i tō'u mau ta'ata i raro a'e i te fa'atītira'a, i hōro'a mai ai 'oia i te fenua 'ei fa'aeara'a nō mātou.
- 11 Nō reira, i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō mātou pārahira'a i ni'a i taua fenua ra nō te ārea e hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti te maoro, 'ua tapitapi ihora te ari'i ra 'o Lamana, penei a'e 'o te tupu rahi tō'u mau ta'ata i taua fenua ra, 'e 'aita e ti'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia ha'avī ia rātou 'e 'ia 'āfa'i mai ia rātou i raro a'e i te fa'atītira'a.
- 12 I teienei e mau ta'ata fa'atau rātou 'e te ha'amori 'īdolo ; nō reira 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia fa'atīi ia mātou, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fāna'o i te hō'ē orara'a fa'ahiahia nā roto i te 'ohipa a tō mātou rima ; 'oia ia, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave i te fa'a'amu'a nā rātou iho i te mau nana nō tā mātou mau 'āua.
- 13 Nō reira, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata te ari'i ra 'o Lamana i te fa'atī'arepu i tōna ra mau ta'ata 'ia tama'i mai rātou i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua tupu ihora te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a i ni'a i te fenua.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

14 'E i te 'ahuru ma toru matahiti nō tā'u fa'aterera'a i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e i te pae apato'a roa i te fenua ra nō Siloma, tē fa'ainu noa ra 'e tē fa'a'amu noa ra tō'u ra mau ta'ata i tā rātou mau nana, 'e tē fa'a'apu noa ra rātou i tō rātou mau fenua, 'ua tae mai ra te nu'u fa'ehau rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te taparahi ia rātou, 'e i te haru i tā rātou mau nana, 'e i te rave ho'i i te tō nō tā rātou mau fa'a'apu.

15 'Oia ia, i muri a'era, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou 'o tei 'ore i roa'ahia ē tae roa mai ra i te 'oire nō Nephi, 'e 'ua ani mai rātou iā'u i te tauturura'a.

16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hōro'a vau i te mauha'a tama'i nā rātou, mai te fana, 'e te te'a, 'e te 'o'e, 'e te simetera, 'e te rā'au tā'iri, 'e te ma'a, 'e te mau huru mauha'a ato'a e ti'a ia mātou 'ia hāmani, 'e 'ua haere atu vau 'e tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana.

17 'Oia ia, nā roto i te pūai o te Fatu 'ua haere atu mātou e 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō te mea 'ua ti'aoro māite atu vau 'e tō'u ra mau ta'ata i te Fatu 'ia fa'aora 'oia ia mātou i te rima o tō mātou mau 'enemi, nō te mea 'ua fa'aarahia mātou 'ia ha'amana'o i te fa'aorara'ahia tō mātou mau metua.

18 'E 'ua fa'aro'o mai te Atua i tā mātou mau ti'aorora'a, 'e 'ua pāhono mai i tā mātou mau pure ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra mātou ma tōna ra pūai, 'oia ia, 'ua 'aro atu mātou i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e i te mahana hō'ē 'e te pō hō'ē 'ua taparahi mātou e toru tauatini 'e e maha 'ahuru ma toru ; 'ua taparahi mātou ia rātou ē tae roa atu 'ua tīahi 'ē mātou ia rātou mai roto atu i tō mātou fenua.

19 'E nā'u iho, nā tō'u iho rima i tauturu i te tanu i tō rātou feiā pohe. 'E inaha, 'ua fāri'i mātou i te 'oto rahi 'e te auē, i te mea 'ua taparahihia e piti hānere e hitu 'ahuru ma iva o tō mātou ra mau taea'e.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

Mosiah 10

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora mātou i te fa'ati'a i te bāsileia 'e 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora mātou i te pārahi i te fenua ma te hau. 'E 'ua fa'aue au 'ia hāmanihia te mau huru mauha'a tama'i ato'a, 'ia ineine te mau mauha'a tama'i nā tō'u ra mau ta'ata i te tau e haere mai ai te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro mai i tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 2 'E 'ua tu'u ho'i au i te mau tīa'i ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua, 'ia 'ore te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia haere huna fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro ia mātou 'e 'a ha'amou ai ia mātou ; 'ua nā reira vau i te tīa'i i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'e i tā'u ra mau nana, 'e i te ha'apa'o ho'i ia rātou, 'ia 'ore 'ia riro i roto i te rima o tō mātou ra mau 'enemi.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pārahi noa ihora mātou i te fenua o tō mātou ra mau metua e rave rahi matahiti, 'oia ia, nō te ārea e piti 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti te maoro.
- 4 'E 'ua fa'aue atu vau i te mau tāne 'ia fa'a'apu i te fenua, 'e 'ia fa'atupu i te mau huru sītona ato'a 'e te mau huru mā'a hotu ato'a ho'i.
- 5 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ho'i au i te mau vahine 'ia nino, 'e 'ia ha'a, 'e 'ia rave i te 'ohipa, 'e 'ia hāmani ho'i i te mau huru 'ahu paruai maita'i, 'oia ia, te mau huru 'ahu ato'a 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia fa'a'ahu i tō mātou tino vai taha'a noa ; 'e 'ua nā reira mātou i te manuia i ni'a i te fenua—'e 'ua fāri'i tāmāu noa mātou i te hau i ni'a i te fenua nō te ārea e piti 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti te maoro.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ihora te ari'i ra 'o Lamana, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora tāna tamaiti i te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna. 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te fa'ati'arepu i tōna ra mau ta'ata 'ia haere mai e 'aro i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua fa'aineine ihora rātou nō te 'arora'a, 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou e 'aro i tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 7 'Āre'a rā 'ua tono vau i tō'u mau ta'ata tāmōemoe ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ra nō Semelona, 'ia 'ite au i tā rātou mau fa'aineinera'a, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia pārahi ineine noa nō te 'aro atu ia rātou, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haere mai i ni'a iho i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'e 'a ha'amou ai ia rātou.

Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra rātou i te pae i apato'erau i te fenua ra nō Siloma ma tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau e rave rahi, 'e 'ua rave mai te mau tāne i te mau mauha'a mai te fana, 'e te te'a, 'e te 'o'e, 'e te simetera, 'e te 'ōfa'i, 'e te ma'a ; 'e 'ua hahuhia ho'i tō rātou upo'o 'e 'ua vai taha'a noa te reira ; 'e 'ua tātuhia tō rātou tau'upu i te 'iri puaa.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue ihora vau 'ia fa'atāpunihia te mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i a tō'u ra mau ta'ata i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua ha'aputupu ihora vau i tō'u mau ta'ata pa'ari ato'a 'o tē ti'a 'ia amo i te mauha'a, e tō'u feiā 'āpī tāne ato'a ho'i 'o tē ti'a 'ia amo i te mauha'a, 'ia haere i ni'a e 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua fa'anaho ihora vau ia rātou, te ta'ata tāta'itahi 'ia au i tōna matahiti.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra mātou i ni'a nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua haere ato'a atu vau, 'o vau iho i tō'u ruhiruhiāra'a, e 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra mātou i ni'a ma te pūai o te Fatu nō te tama'i.

11 'E i teienei, 'aore ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana i 'ite i te parau nō ni'a i te Fatu, ē tae noa atu i te pūai o te Fatu, nō reira 'ua ti'aturi rātou i tō rātou iho pūai. E feiā pūai rā rātou i te pūai o te ta'ata nei.

12 E feiā 'ōviri ho'i rātou, 'e te taeae, 'e te hina'aro taparahi ta'ata, 'e te ti'aturi i te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua ; 'oia ho'i—te ti'aturira'a ē, 'ua ti'avaruhia rātou i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a tō rātou mau metua, 'e 'ua hāmani-'ino-hia rātou e tō rātou mau taea'e i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua hāmani-'ino-ato'a-hia rātou 'a tere mai ai rātou nā ni'a i te moana ;

13 'E teie fa'ahou, tē ti'aturi ato'a ra ho'i rātou ē, 'ua hāmani-'ino-hia rātou i tō rātou fenua 'āi'a mātāmua, i muri iho i tō rātou taera'a mai nā ni'a i te moana, 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te mea 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i Nephi i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu—nō reira 'ua ha'amaita'ihia 'oia e te Fatu, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o ho'i te Fatu i tāna ra mau pure 'e 'ua pāhono mai ho'i i te reira, 'e nāna ho'i i arata'i ia rātou i tō rātou tere i roto i te mēdēbara.

14 'E 'ua riri tōna mau taea'e iāna nō te mea 'aita rātou i māmarama i te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu ; 'ua riri ato'a rātou iāna i ni'a i te mau pape nō te mea 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i te Fatu.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

15 'E teie fa'ahou, 'ua riri rātou iāna i tō rātou taera'a i te fenua i fafauhia ra, nō te mea tē parau ra rātou ē, 'ua rave 'oia i te mana i tō rātou rima 'ia fa'atere i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia taparahi iāna.

16 'E teie fa'ahou, 'ua riri rātou iāna nō te mea 'ua haere atu 'oia i roto i te mēdēbara mai tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai iāna, 'e 'ua hōpoi atu 'oia i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a iho i te mau 'api veo, 'e 'ua parau ho'i rātou ē, 'ua 'eiā 'oia i te reira ia rātou ra.

17 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te ha'api'i i tō rātou mau hua'ai 'ia 'ino'ino mai ia rātou, 'e 'ia taparahi mai ia rātou, 'e 'ia 'eiā 'e 'ia haru i tā rātou ra, 'e 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a nō te ha'amou ia rātou ; nō reira tē vai ra tō rātou 'ino'ino mure 'ore nō te mau hua'ai o Nephi.

18 'E teie te tumu i ha'avare mai ai te ari'i ra 'o Lamana iā'u, nā roto i tāna rāve'a ha'avare, 'e te 'ohipa tāviri, 'e tāna mau parau fa'atīaniani ; 'e 'ua arata'i mai au i tō'u nei mau ta'ata i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'ia ha'amouhia e rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua fāri'i mātou i te mau 'ati e rave rahi matahiti i ni'a i te fenua.

19 'E i teienei, i muri iho i to'u, 'o Zenifa, fa'a'itera'a atu i teie mau mea ato'a nō ni'a i te mau 'āti Lamana i tō'u mau ta'ata, 'ua fa'aitoito ihora vau ia rātou 'ia haere i te tama'i ma tō rātou pūai ato'a, e ma te ti'aturi i te Fatu ; nō reira, 'ua 'aro atu mātou ia rātou, te mata i te mata.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'avaru fa'ahou atu ra mātou ia rātou i rāpae i tō mātou fenua ; 'e e rave rahi ho'i tō rātou 'o tā mātou i taparahi, 'e nō te rahi 'aita atu ra i tai'o i te reira.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra mātou i tō mātou iho fenua, e ha'amata fa'ahou ihora tō'u mau ta'ata i te tīa'i i tā rātou mau nana, 'e i te fa'a'apu ho'i i tō rātou fenua.

22 'E i teienei, 'ua ruhiruhiā vau, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu vau i te bāsileia i te hō'ē o tā'u mau tamaiti ; nō reira, 'o te hope'a ia o tā'u parau. 'E 'ia ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu i tō'u mau ta'ata. 'Āmene.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

Mosia 11

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua hōro'a atu ra Zenifa i te bāsileia ia Noa, te hō'ē o tōna mau tamaiti ; nō reira, 'ua ha'amata ihora 'o Noa i te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna ; 'e 'aita 'oia i haere nā te 'ē'a o tōna ra metua tāne.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, 'aita 'oia i ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'ua pe'e rā 'oia i te mau hina'aro o tōna iho 'ā'au. 'E e rave rahi tāna mau vahine 'e te mau vahine tāvini. 'E 'ua arata'i 'ē 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia rave i te hara, 'e 'ia rave i te mau mea vi'ivi'i i mua i te aro o te Fatu. 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua rave rātou i te mau 'ohipa tai'ata 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a.
- 3 'E 'ua tūtau 'oia i te tute, 'oia ho'i i te pae o te tufa'a o tā rātou ato'a ra mau tao'a, te pae o te tufa'a o tā rātou 'auro 'e tā rātou 'ārio, 'e te pae o te tufa'a o tā rātou zifa 'e tā rātou kapa, 'e tā rātou veo 'e tā rātou 'āuri ; 'e te pae o te tufa'a o tā rātou mau fanau'a 'ānimara poria ra ; 'e 'oia ato'a te pae o te tufa'a o tā rātou sītona.
- 4 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia nō te tauturu iāna iho, 'e tāna mau vahine 'e tāna mau vahine tāvini ; 'e tōna ato'a mau tahu'a, 'e tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau vahine tāvini, 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia i te fa'ahuru 'ē i te mau 'ohipa nō te bāsileia.
- 5 'E 'ua fa'aru'e atu 'oia i te mau tahu'a ato'a i fa'atōro'ahia e tōna metua tāne ; 'e 'ua fa'atōro'a 'oia i te mau tahu'a 'āpī 'ei mono nō rātou, 'o tei fa'ateiteihia i roto i te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 6 'Oia ia, 'ua nā-reira-hia rātou i te tauturuhia i roto i tō rātou fa'atau, 'e i roto i tā rātou ha'amorira'a 'īdolo, 'e i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa tai'ata, nā roto i te mau tute tā te ari'i Noa i tūtau i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua nā reira te mau ta'ata i te rave i te 'ohipa rahi nō te tauturu i teie mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 7 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'amata ato'a rātou i te 'ohipa ha'amori 'īdolo, nō te mea 'ua ha'avarehia rātou e te parau ma'ama'a 'e te tāvaimanino a te ari'i 'e te mau tahu'a ; 'e 'ua parau ho'i rātou i te mau parau tāvaimanino ia rātou.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hāmani ihora te ari'i ra 'o Noa i te mau fare nehenehe 'e te 'ā'ano e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua fa'anehenehe a'era 'oia i te reira i te 'ohipa rā'au maita'i ato'a, 'e te mau huru tao'a rahi ato'a, 'e te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te 'āuri, 'e te veo, 'e te zifa, 'e te kapa.

Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

- 9 'E 'ua hāmani ato'a 'oia i te hō'ē aora'i rahi roa nōna, 'e te hō'ē terōno ho'i i rōpū i te reira, 'e 'ua hāmanihia te reira i te rā'au maita'i roa 'e 'ua fa'a'una'unahia i te 'auro 'e te 'ārio 'e te mau mea tao'a rahi.
- 10 'E 'ua fa'aue ato'a 'oia 'ia rave tōna mau ta'ata rave 'ohipa i te mau huru 'ohipa nehenehe ato'a i roto i te hiero, 'oia ho'i i te rā'au maita'i roa, 'e te kapa, 'e te veo.
- 11 'E 'ua fa'anehenehe ihora 'oia i te mau pārahira'a i fa'ata'ahia nō te mau tahu'a rahi i te 'auro mau, 'e tei ni'a a'e te reira i te mau pārahira'a ato'a ; 'e 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia hāmanihia te hō'ē 'āu'a i mua ia rātou, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia turu i tō rātou tino 'e tō rātou rima i ni'a iho i te reira, 'a parau atu ai rātou i te mau parau ha'avare 'e te ma'ama'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a a'era 'oia i te hō'ē pare i pīha'i iho i te hiero ; 'oia ia, te hō'ē pare teitei roa, 'e mea teitei mau te reira 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia ti'a i ni'a roa 'e 'ia hi'o atu i te fenua nō Siloma, 'e te fenua ato'a nō Semelona, tei noa'a i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e e ti'a ato'a iāna 'ia hi'o atu i te mau fenua ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu 'oia 'ia fa'ati'ahia te mau fare e rave rahi i te fenua nō Siloma ; 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia fa'ati'ahia te hō'ē pare rahi i ni'a i te 'āivi i te pae i apato'erau i te fenua nō Siloma ra, 'o tei vai na 'ei ha'apūra'a nō te mau hua'ai o Nephi i te tau i horo ai rātou i rāpae i te fenua ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia nā roto i te mau tao'a i noa'a iāna nā roto i te tutera'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, tei ni'a i tāna ra mau tao'a tōna 'ā'au, 'e 'ua puhura 'oia i tōna pu'e mahana i roto i te orara'a tai'ata i pīha'i iho i tāna mau vahine 'e tāna mau vahine tāvini ato'a ; 'e 'ua nā reira ato'a ho'i tōna mau tahu'a i pīha'i iho i te mau vahine tai'ata.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tanu ihora 'oia i te mau 'ō vine ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ; 'e 'ua hāmani ihora 'oia i te mau tāvirira'a vine, 'e 'ua hāmani rahi 'oia i te uaina ; 'e nō reira 'ua riro 'oia 'e tōna mau ta'ata ato'a 'ei mau ta'ata inu uaina.

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breast-work to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata te mau 'āti Lamana i te haere mai e taparahi i tōna mau ta'ata, 'oia ho'i i ni'a i te tahi mau pupu iti, 'e 'ua taparahi ia rātou i roto i tā rātou mau fa'a'apu, 'a tīa'i ai rātou i tā rātou mau nana.
- 17 'E 'ua tonu atu ra te ari'i ra 'o Noa i te mau tīa'i ē 'āti noa a'e te fenua nō te tīahi atu ia rātou ; 'aita rā i nava'i te mau ta'ata tāna i tonu, 'e 'ua tae mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora ia rātou, 'e 'ua tīahi atu ra i tā rātou mau nana e rave rahi i rāpae i te fenua ; 'e 'ua nā reira ihora te mau 'āti Lamana i te ha'amata i te ha'amou ia rātou, 'e i te fa'a'ohipa i tō rātou 'ino'ino i ni'a ia rātou.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonu atu ra te ari'i ra 'o Noa i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau e 'aro ia rātou, 'e 'ua tūra'ihia rātou i muri, 'oia ho'i 'ua tīahi 'ē atu ra rātou ia rātou nō te hō'ē taime ri'i ; nō reira, 'ua ho'i mai rātou ma te 'oa'oa rahi nō tā rātou mau tao'a i noa'a mai.
- 19 'E teienei, nō taua tama'i manuia rahi ra, 'ua fa'ateiteihia rātou i roto i te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au ; 'ua fa'aahaaha rātou i tō rātou iho pūai, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē, e tī'a i tō rātou e pae 'ahuru ta'ata 'ia 'aro atu i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini nō te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'aahaaha, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa rātou 'ia taparahi, 'e 'ia ha'amani'i i te toto o tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a tō rātou ari'i e mau tahu'a.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, tē vai ra te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū ia rātou, 'o Abinadi tōna i'oa ; 'e 'ua haere atu 'oia i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te tohu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : Inaha, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, tē nā 'ō mai ra 'oia i te fa'auera'a mai iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'A haere atu, 'e 'a parau atu i teie nei feiā ē, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu—'Auē ho'i teie nei feiā ē, nō te mea 'ua 'ite au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e tā rātou 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa tai'ata ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa, e tae tō'u riri i ni'a iho ia rātou.
- 21 'E 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia fāriu mai i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, inaha, e tu'u atu vau ia rātou i roto i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi ; 'oia ia, e fa'atitihia rātou, 'e e hāmani-'ino-hia rātou i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi.
- 22 'E a muri a'era, e 'ite rātou ē, 'o vau nei te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e e Atua tāho'o ho'i au, 'e te tāho'o ho'i i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a tō'u ra mau ta'ata.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

23 'E a muri a'era, 'ia 'ore teie nei feiā 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia fāriu mai i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, e fa'atīhīa rātou ; 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē e fa'aora ia rātou, maori rā te Fatu te Atua Manahope.

24 'Oia ia, 'e a muri a'era, 'ia ti'aoro mai rātou iā'u, e fa'atāere au i te fa'aro'o atu i tā rātou mau ti'aorora'a ; 'oia ia, e fa'ati'a vau 'ia papa'ihīa rātou e tō rātou mau 'enemi.

25 'E 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa ma te 'ahu 'oto 'e te rehu auahi, 'e 'ia ti'aoro 'ū'ana atu i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, e 'ore roa vau e fa'aro'o atu i tā rātou mau pure, e 'ore ho'i au e fa'aora ia rātou i tō rātou mau 'ati ; 'e tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, 'E tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu i te fa'aue mai iā'u.

26 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Abinadi paraura'a atu i teie nei mau parau ia rātou, 'ua riri ihora rātou iāna, 'e 'ua tītāu ihora 'ia taparahi iāna ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'aora te Fatu iāna mai roto mai i tō rātou rima.

27 I teienei, i tō te ari'i ra 'o Noa fa'aro'ora'a i te mau parau tā Abinadi i parau mai i te mau ta'ata, 'ua riri ato'a ihora 'oia ; 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : 'O vai Abinadi, i ti'a ai iā'u 'e tō'u mau ta'ata 'ia ha'avāhīa e ana, 'e 'aore rā 'o vai te Fatu, 'o tē tu'u mai i teie 'ati rahi i ni'a iho i tō'u nei mau ta'ata ?

28 Tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'outou 'ia 'āfa'i mai ia Abinadi i teie vāhi, 'ia taparahi au iāna, nō te mea 'ua parau 'oia i teie nei mau mea nō te fa'ati'arepu i tō'u mau ta'ata 'ia riri te tahi i te tahi, 'e nō te fa'atupu ho'i i te mau mārōra'a i rotopū i tō'u nei mau ta'ata ; nō reira e taparahi au iāna.

29 I teienei, 'ua ha'amatapōhia te mata o te mau ta'ata, nō reira 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au 'eiaha e fāri'i i te mau parau a Abinadi, 'e 'ua 'imi rātou mai taua taime mai ra 'ia haru iāna. 'E 'ua fa'a'eta'eta te ari'i ra 'o Noa i tōna 'ā'au i te parau a te Fatu, 'e 'aita roa 'oia i tātarahapa i tāna ra mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

Mosiah 12

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri nā matahiti e piti i tō Abinadi haerera'a mai i rotopū ia rātou ma te huna, 'aita roa rātou i 'ite ē 'o vai 'oia, 'e 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te tohu i rotopū ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ua nā 'ō mai te Fatu i te fa'aue mai iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē—E Abinadi, 'a haere 'e 'a tohu atu i tō'u nei mau ta'ata, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i tā'u ra mau parau ; 'aita ā rātou i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino ; nō reira, e tā'iri au ia rātou i roto i tō'u nei riri, 'oia ia, i roto i tō'u nei riri rahi, e fa'autu'a vau ia rātou nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.
- 2 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i teie nei u'i ē ! 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u : 'A fa'atoro atu i tō 'oe rima 'e 'a tohu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, 'e a muri a'era e fa'atīhīa 'e e tā'irihīa te pāpāri'a o teie nei u'i nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino ; 'oia ia, e tīahihīa rātou e te ta'ata, 'e e taparahihīa ; 'e nā te mau manu o te reva, 'e nā te mau 'ūrī, 'oia ia, 'e nā te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri e 'amu i tō rātou 'i'o.
- 3 'E a muri a'era, e riro te ora o te ari'i ra 'o Noa mai te 'ahu i roto i te umu auahi ve'ave'a ra ; 'e 'e 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, 'o vau mau te Fatu.
- 4 'E a muri a'era, e tā'iri ho'i au i teie nei mau ta'ata nō'u i te mau 'ati rahi, 'oia ia, i te o'e, 'e te ma'i rahi ; 'e e fa'atupu vau i te 'auē rahi i roto ia rātou i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te mahana.
- 5 'Oia ia, e fa'atae mai au i te mau hōpoi'a teiaha 'ia ru'uru'uhia i ni'a i tō rātou mau tua ; 'e e tūra'ihia rātou 'ia haere i mua mai te 'āsini vava ra.
- 6 'E a muri a'era, e ha'ama'iri mai au i te ua pa'ari i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e e tā'iri te reira ia rātou ; 'e e tā'iri-ato'a-hia rātou e te mata'i nō te hiti'a o te rā ra ; 'e e fa'a'ino ato'a te mau manumanu ri'i i tō rātou fenua, 'e e 'amu ha'apau ho'i i tā rātou sītona.
- 7 E tā'irihīa rātou i te ma'i rahi—'e nā reira vau nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.

Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

- 8 'E a muri a'era, 'ia 'ore rātou e tātarahapa e ha'amou roa vau ia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei ; e vaiiho mai rā rātou i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau i muri mai ia rātou, 'e e fa'aherehere au i te reira nā te tahi atu mau nūna'a 'o tē pārahi i ni'a i taua fenua ra ; 'oia ia, e nā reira iho ā vau nō te fa'a'ite atu i te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a teie nei mau ta'ata i te tahi atu mau nūna'a. 'E e rave rahi te mau mea tā Abinadi i tohu atu nō ni'a i teie nei feiā.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri ihora rātou iāna ; 'e 'ua rave ihora rātou iāna 'e 'ua 'āfa'i ru'uru'u atu ra iāna i mua i te ari'i, 'e 'ua parau atu ra rātou i te ari'i : Inaha, i 'āfa'i mai nei mātou i te hō'ē ta'ata i mua ia 'oe 'o tei tohu i te mau mea 'ino e tupu i ni'a i tō 'oe mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ho'i 'oia ē, e ha'amou te Atua ia rātou.
- 10 'E 'ua tohu ato'a ho'i 'oia i te mau mea 'ino e tupu i roto i tō 'oe orara'a, 'e tē nā 'ō ra 'oia, e riro tō 'oe ora mai te 'ahu i roto i te umu auahi ra.
- 11 'E teie fa'ahou, tē nā 'ō ra 'oia ē, e riro 'oe mai te rā'au, 'oia ho'i, mai te rā'au marō o te 'āua i horohia 'e te mau 'ānimara 'e tei ta'ata'ahihia e tō rātou 'āvae.
- 12 'E teie fa'ahou, tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i 'oia ē, e riro 'oe mai te pua o te mōtu'u, 'e 'ia para ana'e te huero, 'e 'ia farara mai te mata'i, e puhī-noa-hia ia i ni'a i te fenua. 'E tē parau fa'ahua mai ra 'oia mai te mea ra ē, nā te Fatu ia i parau mai i te reira. 'E tē nā 'ō ra 'oia ē, e tae mai teie mau mea i ni'a ia 'oe 'ia 'ore 'oe e tātarahapa, e nō tā 'oe mau 'ohipa 'i'ino e tae mai ai te reira.
- 13 'E i teienei, e te ari'i, e aha tā 'oe na 'ohipa 'ino rahi i rave, 'e e aha ho'i te mau hara rahi i ravehia e tō 'oe na mau ta'ata, i ti'a ai ia tātou 'ia fa'ahapahia e te Atua 'e 'aore rā 'ia ha'avāhia e teie nei ta'ata ?
- 14 'E i teienei, e te ari'i, inaha, 'aita tā mātou e hapa, 'e 'o 'oe na, e te ari'i, 'aita tā 'oe e hara i rave ; nō reira, 'ua ha'avare teie nei ta'ata nō ni'a ia 'oe na, 'e 'ua tohu faufa'a 'ore noa 'oia.
- 15 'E inaha, e mea pūai tātou, e'ita roa tātou e fa'atitīhia, 'e 'aore rā e 'āfa'i-faatitī-hia e tō tātou mau 'enemi ; 'oia ia, 'ua manuia roa 'oe i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e e manuia atu ā 'oe.
- 16 Inaha, teie te ta'ata, 'e tē tu'u atu nei mātou iāna i roto i tō 'oe rima ; 'ia ti'a ia 'oe 'ia rave iāna mai te au i tō 'oe hina'aro.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i ra 'o Noa 'ia hurihia Abinadi i roto i te fare 'āuri ; 'e 'ua fa'aue ato'a ho'i 'oia i te mau tahu'a 'ia 'āmui tāhō'ē mai rātou 'ia ti'a iāna 'e rātou ato'a 'ia fa'atupu i te hō'ē 'āpo'ora'a nō te fa'ata'a e aha tāna e rave i ni'a iāna.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra rātou i te ari'i : 'A 'āfa'i mai iāna i'ō nei 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia uiui atu iāna ; 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i 'ia 'āfa'ihia mai 'oia i mua ia rātou.
- 19 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te uiui iāna, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'afifi iāna, 'e i muri iho a pari atu ai iāna ; 'ua pāhono atu rā 'oia ia rātou ma te mata'u 'ore i te ha'amorohira'a i tā rātou ato'a ra mau uira'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua māere roa rātou i te mea 'ua ti'a iāna ia pāhono ti'a atu i tā rātou mau uira'a ato'a, ma te ha'afifi atu ia rātou i roto i tā rātou iho mau parau.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te hō'ē 'o rātou iāna : E aha te aura'a nō te mau parau i pāpa'ihia 'e tei ha'api'ihia ho'i e tō tātou mau metua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 21 'Auē te nehenehe o te 'āvae o te ve'a i ni'a i te mau mou'a, 'o tei hōpoi mai i te mau parau maita'i ; 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te parau hau ; 'o tei hōpoi mai i te mau parau maita'i nō te maita'i, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te fa'aorara'a ; 'o tei parau mai ia Ziona, tē fa'atere ari'i nei tō 'oe Atua.
- 22 E fa'ateitei tō 'oe mau fa'ehau i tō rātou reo ; 'e e 'āmui tāhō'ē tō rātou reo i te hīmenera'a ; 'e e 'ite rātou te mata 'e te mata 'ia fa'aho'i mai te Fatu ia Ziona.
- 23 'Ia puroro noa atu te 'oa'oa ; 'a hīmene 'āmui mai e te mau vāhi ano nō Ierusalemā ; 'ua ha'amāhanahana ho'i te Fatu i tōna mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia Ierusalemā.
- 24 'Ua fa'a'ite mai ho'i te Fatu i tōna rima mo'a i mua i te mata o te mau nūna'a ato'a ; 'e e 'ite tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei i te fa'aorara'a a tō tātou Atua ?
- 25 'E i teienei 'ua parau atu ra Abinadi ia rātou : E 'ere ānei 'outou i te mau tahu'a, 'e tē fa'ahua na 'outou ia 'outou iho 'ei 'orometua nō teie nei feiā, 'e 'ei 'ite i te Vārua nō te tohu, 'e tē ui mai nei ho'i 'outou iā'u i te aura'a nō teie nei mau mea ?

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

26 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'auē ho'i 'outou ē, i te mea tē ha'api'o ra 'outou i te mau 'ē'a tī'a o te Fatu ! 'Āhiri ē 'ua māramarama 'outou i teie nei mau mea, 'aore ā 'outou i ha'api'i atu i te reira ; nō reira, 'ua ha'api'o 'outou i te mau 'ē'a tī'a o te Fatu.

27 'Aita tō 'outou 'ā'au i tītau i te māramarama ; nō reira, 'aita 'outou i rave ma te pa'ari. Nō reira, e aha tā 'outou i ha'api'i atu i teie nei feiā ?

28 'E 'ua parau mai ra rātou : Tē ha'api'i nei mātou i te ture a Mose.

29 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Mai te mea tē ha'api'i nei 'outou i te ture a Mose, nō te aha ia 'aita 'outou i ha'apa'o i te reira ? Nō te aha ho'i tō 'outou 'ā'au i nounou ai i te mau tao'a rahi ? Nō te aha ho'i 'outou i rave ai i te mau 'ohipa taiata e i ha'amāu'a ai i tō 'outou pūai i rotopū i te mau vahine tai'ata ; 'oia ia, i arata'i atu ai ho'i i teie mau ta'ata 'ia rave i te hara, 'e 'ua tonu mai te Fatu iā'u 'ia tohu atu nō ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'oia ia, 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te 'ino rahi e tae mai i ni'a i teie nei mau ta'ata ?

30 'Aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, tē parau nei au i te parau mau ? 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite 'outou ē, tē parau nei au i te parau mau ; 'e 'ua tī'a roa ia 'outou 'ia rurutaina i mua i te Atua.

31 E a muri a'era, e tā'irihia 'outou nō tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; i parau na ho'i 'outou ē, te ha'api'i na 'outou i te ture a Mose. 'E e aha ho'i tā 'outou i 'ite nō ni'a i te ture a Mose ? E tae mai ānei te fa'aorara'a nā roto i te ture a Mose ? Nāhea 'outou i te parau ?

32 'E 'ua pāhono mai ra rātou ma te parau mai ē, e mea nā roto i te ture a Mose e tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a.

33 'Āre'a rā i teie nei 'ua parau atu ra Abinadi ia rātou : 'Ua 'ite au ē, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'oia ia, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau fa'auera'a i hōro'ahia mai e te Fatu ia Mose i ni'a i te mou'a ra i Sinai, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē :

34 'O vau te Fatu tō Atua, 'o tei 'āfa'i mai ia 'outou i rāpae i te fenua nō 'Aiphiti, i rāpae i te 'utuāfare nō te fa'atītira'a.

35 'Eiaha roa tō 'outou 'ei Atua 'ē atu i mua iā'u nei.

36 'Eiaha roa 'outou e hāmani i te 'īdolo tarai nō 'outou, 'e te hōho'a nō te hō'ē mea i ni'a i te ra'i ra, 'e nō te hō'ē mea i raro i te fenua nei.

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

37 I teienei 'ua parau atu ra Abinadi ia rātou, 'ua ha'apa'o ānei 'outou i teie mau mea ato'a ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa 'outou i nā reira. 'E 'ua ha'api'i ānei 'outou i teie nei mau ta'ata 'ia rave i teie mau mea ato'a ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita, 'aita roa 'outou i nā reira.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

Mosia 13

- 1 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te ari'i i teie mau parau, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia i tōna ra mau tahu'a : 'A hōpoi 'ē atu i teie ta'ata, 'e 'a taparahi atu iāna ; e aha ho'i tā tātou iāna, 'ua ma'ama'ahia 'oia.
- 2 'E 'ua ti'a a'era rātou i ni'a 'e 'ua tāmata ihora i te haru iāna ; 'āre'a rā 'ua pāto'i atu ra 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou :
- 3 'Eiaha e tāpe'a mai iā'u nei, e tā'iri mai ho'i te Atua ia 'outou māi te mea e fa'atae mai 'outou i tō 'outou rima i ni'a iā'u nei, nō te mea 'aore ā vau i fa'a'ite atu i te parau tā te Fatu i tonono mai iā'u nei nō te fa'a'ite atu ; 'e 'aore ho'i au i fa'a'ite atu i tā 'outou i tītau mai iā'u nei 'ia fa'a'ite atu ; nō reira, 'aita te Atua e fa'ati'a noa atu 'ia taparahihia vau i teienei.
- 4 'Āre'a rā e mea ti'a roa iā'u 'ia fa'atupu i te mau fa'auera'a tā te Atua i fa'aue mai iā'u, 'e nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite atu vau i te parau mau ia 'outou na, i riri mai ai 'outou iā'u nei. 'E nō te mea ho'i 'ua parau atu vau i te parau a te Atua, i mana'o ai 'outou ē, 'ua ma'ama'ahia vau.
- 5 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Abinadi paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'aita roa te mau ta'ata o te ari'i ra 'o Noa i fa'atae atu i tō rātou rima i ni'a iāna, 'e tei ni'a iho ho'i iāna te Vārua o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua 'ana'ana ihora tōna mata i te 'ana'ana rahi roa, mai tō Mose, 'a pārahi ai 'oia i te mou'a ra i Sinai, 'a paraparau ai ho'i 'oia i te Fatu.
- 6 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia nā roto i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra ; 'e 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra 'oia, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu :
- 7 Tē 'ite na 'outou ē, 'aita roa tō 'outou e mana nō te taparahi mai iā'u nei, nō reira tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u nei parau. 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, nā te reira e pātia i tō 'outou nā 'ā'au, nō te mea tē fa'a'ite nei au i te parau mau nō ni'a i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 8 'Oia ia, nā tā'u nei mau parau i fa'a'ī ia 'outou i te 'ūmere, 'e te māere, 'e te riri.
- 9 'Āre'a rā e fa'aoti au i tā'u nei parau ; 'e i reira 'aita tō'u e pe'ape'a i te vāhi tā'u e haere ra, mai te mea e fa'aorahia vau.
- 10 'Āre'a rā teie noa tā'u parau iti ia 'outou na ; tā 'outou e rave māi iā'u i muri nei, e riro ia te reira 'ei taipe 'e 'ei ata nō te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.

Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

- 11 'E i teienei, e tai'o atu vau i te toe'a o te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'aita te reira i pāpa'ihia i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua 'imi 'e 'ua ha'api'i atu ho'i 'outou i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i te pae rahi o tō 'outou orara'a.
- 12 'E i teienei, 'ua ha'amana'o na 'outou ē, i parau atu vau ia 'outou na ē : 'Eiaha roa 'outou e hāmani i te 'īdolo tarai nō 'outou, 'e 'aore rā i te hōho'a nō te hō'ē mea i ni'a i te ra'i ra, 'e 'aore rā nō te hō'ē mea i raro i te fenua nei, 'e 'aore rā nō te hō'ē mea i raro i te pape i raro a'e i te fenua.
- 13 'E teie fa'ahou ā : 'Eiaha roa 'outou e pi'o i raro ia rātou, 'eiaha ho'i e tāvini ia rātou ; 'e 'o vau nei ho'i te Fatu tō 'oe Atua, 'e e Atua tāho'o ho'i au nei ; 'e tē tāho'o nei ho'i au i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau metua i ni'a i te mau tamari'i, ē tae noa atu i te toru 'e te maha o te mau u'i 'o tē 'ino'ino mai iā'u nei.
- 14 'E e fa'a'ite atu ho'i au i te aroha i te feiā e rave rahi tauatini 'o tei hina'aro mai iā'u 'e 'o tē ha'apa'o i tā'u nei mau fa'auera'a.
- 15 'Eiaha roa 'outou e fa'ahiti faufa'a 'ore noa i te i'oa o te Fatu 'o tō 'outou Atua ; e 'ore ho'i te Fatu e fa'ariro iāna 'ei ta'ata hapa 'ore 'o tei fa'ahiti faufa'a 'ore noa i tōna ra i'oa.
- 16 'A ha'amana'o i te mahana sābati, 'ia ha'amo'ahia ia.
- 17 E ono mahana tā 'outou e ha'a, 'e nō te rave i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa ato'a.
- 18 'Āre'a rā te hitu o te mahana ra, 'o te sābati ia nō te Fatu tō 'outou Atua, 'eiaha roa 'outou e rave i te 'ohipa i te reira mahana, 'eiaha ato'a tā 'outou tamaiti, 'eiaha ato'a tā 'outou tamāhine, 'e tō 'outou tāvini tāne, 'eiaha ato'a tō 'outou tāvini vahine, 'eiaha ato'a tā 'outou mau pua'atoro, 'eiaha ato'a te ta'ata 'ē i'ō 'outou ra.
- 19 E ono ho'i mahana tō te Fatu hāmanira'a i te ra'i 'e te fenua, 'e te tai, 'e te mau mea ato'a i roto ra ; nō reira 'ua ha'amaita'i ihora te Fatu i te mahana sābati, 'e 'ua ha'amo'a ihora ho'i i te reira.
- 20 'A fa'atura atu i tō 'outou metua tāne 'e tō 'outou metua vahine ; 'ia ha'amaorohia tō 'outou pu'e mahana i ni'a i te fenua 'o tā te Fatu tō 'outou Atua i hōro'a nō 'outou na.
- 21 'Eiaha roa 'outou e taparahi i te ta'ata.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

22 'Eiaha roa 'outou e fa'aturi. 'Eiaha roa 'outou e 'eiā.

23 'Eiaha roa 'outou e pari ha'avare i tō 'outou ta'ata tupu.

24 'Eiaha roa 'outou e nounou i te fare o tō 'outou ta'ata tupu, 'eiaha ato'a 'outou e nounou i te vahine a tō 'outou ta'ata tupu, 'eiaha ato'a i tōna tāvini tāne, 'eiaha ato'a i tōna tāvini vahine, 'eiaha ato'a i tāna pua'atoro, 'eiaha ato'a i tāna 'āsini, 'eiaha ato'a i te mau mea ato'a a tō 'outou ta'ata tupu.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Abinadi i teie nei parau, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : 'Ua ha'api'i ānei 'outou i teie nei mau ta'ata 'ia rave rātou i teie nei mau mea ato'a, 'e 'ia ha'apa'o ho'i i teie nei mau fa'auera'a ?

26 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa ; nō te mea 'āhiri 'outou i nā reira, 'aita ia te Fatu e tonono mai iā'u nei nō te tohu atu i te 'ino 'o tē tae i ni'a i teie nei feiā.

27 'E i teienei, 'ua parau mai 'outou ē, nā roto i te ture a Mose e tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a. Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mea ti'a ia 'ia ha'apa'o ā 'outou i te ture a Mose ; 'āre'a rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tae mai te tau e 'ore roa e fītau-fa'ahou-hia 'ia ha'apa'o i te ture a Mose.

28 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei ā vau ia 'outou na, 'aita te fa'aorara'a e tae mai nā roto i te ture ana'e ra ; 'e 'āhiri 'aita te tāra'ehara tā te Atua iho e rave nō te mau hara 'e te mau 'ohīpa 'ī'ino a tōna ra mau ta'ata, e pohe mau iho ā rātou, noa atu ā te ture a Mose.

29 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mea ti'a roa 'ia hōro'ahia mai te hō'ē ture i te mau tamari'i o 'Īserā'ela, 'oia ia, te hō'ē ture 'eta'eta ; nō te mea e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta rātou, 'oi'oi i te rave i te mau 'ohīpa 'ī'ino, 'e te tāere i te ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

30 Nō reira, tē vai ra te hō'ē ture i hōro'ahia ia rātou, 'oia ia, te hō'ē ture nō te ravera'a i te mau 'ohīpa 'e te mau 'ōro'a, te hō'ē ture i tītauhia ia rātou 'ia ha'apa'o māite i terā mahana e i terā mahana, nō te fa'aha'amana'o ia rātou i te Atua 'e tā rātou 'ohīpa i mua iāna.

31 Inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mau taīpe ana'e teie nei mau mea nō te mau mea e tae mai.

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

32 'E i teienei, 'ua māramarama ānei rātou i te ture ?
Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'Aita roa, 'aita
rātou ato'a i māramarama i te ture ; nō te 'eta'eta o tō
rātou 'ā'au ; 'aore ho'i rātou i māramarama ē, e 'ore
roa te ta'ata e fa'aorahia, maori rā nā roto i te
fa'aorara'a a te Atua.

33 Inaha ho'i, 'aita ānei Mose i tohu ia rātou nō ni'a i
te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'e e fa'aora te Atua i tōna ra
mau ta'ata ? 'Oia ia, ē tae noa atu i te mau peropheta
ato'a i tohu mai te mātāmua mai ā o teie nei ao—'aita
ānei rātou i parau rahi mai 'e 'aore rā i te parau ri'i
mai nō ni'a i teie nei mau mea ?

34 'Aita ānei rātou i parau ē, e haere mai te Atua iho i
raro nei e pārahi i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata
nei, 'e e riro 'oia mai te ta'ata nei te huru, 'e e haere
ho'i i ni'a i te fenua nei ma te mana rahi ?

35 'Oia ia, 'aita ānei rātou i parau ato'a mai ē, e
fa'atupu 'oia i te ti'afa'ahoura'a 'o tei pohe ra ; 'e e
hāmani-'ino-hia 'e e ha'amāuiuihia 'oia ?

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto
you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and
this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they
understood not that there could not any man be
saved except it were through the redemption of God.

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them
concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God
should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the
prophets who have prophesied ever since the world
began—have they not spoken more or less concern-
ing these things?

Have they not said that God himself should come
down among the children of men, and take upon
him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power
upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should
bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that
he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mosia 14

- 1 'Oia ia, 'aita ānei Isaiah i parau mai ē : 'O vai tei ti'aturi i tā mātou parau, 'e 'ia vai te fa'a'itera'ahia mai te rima o te Fatu ?
- 2 Mai te ohi 'āpī ra ho'i 'oia i te tupura'a i mua iāna ; 'e mai te a'a mai roto mai i te repo marō ra ; 'aita tōna e tino fa'ahiahia roa 'e te hanahana ; 'e 'ia 'ite atu tātou iāna 'aita roa ia tōna e nehenehe e hina'aro atu ai tātou iāna.
- 3 'Ua vahavahahia 'e 'ua pāto'ihia 'oia e te mau ta'ata ; e ta'ata mātau 'oia i te 'oto, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i i te 'ati rahi ; 'e 'ua huna 'ē tātou i tō tātou mata iāna ; 'e 'ua vahavahahia 'oia, 'e 'ua ha'afau'ore tātou iāna.
- 4 'Oia mau roa 'ua amo 'oia i tō tātou mau 'ati rahi, 'e 'ua hōpoi 'ē 'oia i tō tātou mau 'oto ; 'ua mana'o rā tātou ē, 'ua tā'irihia, 'e 'ua papa'ihia 'oia e te Atua, 'e 'ua ha'amāuiuhia.
- 5 'Āre'a rā 'ua tā'irihia 'oia nō tā tātou nei mau 'ōfatira'a ture ; 'e 'ua ha'apēpēhia 'oia nō tā tātou nei mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'ua fāri'i 'oia i te fa'au'ara'a nō te fa'atae mai i te hau i ni'a ia tātou ; 'e nā roto i te mau pēpē i ni'a iāna 'ua fa'aorahia tātou.
- 6 'Ua haere 'ē ana'e tātou ato'a, mai te māmoe ra ; 'ua fāriu 'ē tātou, te ta'ata i tōna iho haere'a ; 'e 'ua fa'airi te Fatu i ni'a iāna iho i te utu'a o tā tātou ato'a nei mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 7 'Ua hāmani-'ino-hia 'oia, 'e 'ua ha'amāuiuhia 'oia, 'aita rā 'oia i hāmama noa atu i tōna vaha ; 'ua arata'ihia 'oia mai te fanau'a māmoe i te vāhi taparahira'a, 'e mai te māmoe e māmū i te aro o te feiā e paoti i tōna huruhuru 'e 'aita 'oia i hāmama noa atu i tōna vaha.
- 8 'Ua rave-'ē-hia 'oia mai te fare 'āuri mai 'e mai te ha'avāra'a ; 'e nā vai e paraparau mai nō ni'a i tōna u'i ? 'Ua tāpū-'ē-hia ho'i 'oia i te fenua o te feiā e ora nei ; nō te mau 'ōfatira'a ture a tō'u ra mau ta'ata i taparahi-pohe-roa-hia ai 'oia.
- 9 'Ua rave 'oia i tōna mēnema i rōpū i nā ta'ata parauti'a 'ore 'e i te ta'ata tao'a i tōna pohera'a ; 'aita rā tāna e 'ohipa 'ino i rave ; 'aore ato'a e ha'avare i roto i tōna vaha.

Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 'Ua ti'a rā i te Fatu 'ia ha'apēpēhia 'oia ; 'ua vaiiho 'oia iāna 'ia fāri'i i te 'ati rahi ; 'ia fa'arirohia ra 'oia 'ei tāra'ehara, e 'ite 'oia i tōna hua'ai, e ha'amaoro 'oia i tōna pu'e mahana ; 'e te hina'aro o te Fatu, e manuia ia i tōna rima.

11 E 'ite 'oia i te māuiui rahi o tōna vārua, 'e e māuruuru roa 'oia ; nā roto i te 'ite iāna e fa'ati'a ai tō'u tāvini parauti'a i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi ; 'e nāna ho'i e amo i tā rātou mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore.

12 Nō reira, e hōro'a atu ho'i au i te tufa'a nāna i'ō i te feiā rahi ra, 'e e tufa ho'i 'oia i te tao'a haru i'ō i te feiā pūai ra ; nō te mea 'ua nīni'i 'oia i tōna vārua ē tae noa atu ra i te pohe ; 'e 'ua tai'ohia 'oia i rotopū i te feiā 'ōfati ture ra ; 'e 'ua amo 'oia i te hara a te ta'ata ato'a e rave rahi, 'e 'ua faariro iāna 'ei ārai nō te feiā 'ōfati ture ra.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Mosia 15

- 1 'E i teieni, 'ua parau atu Abinadi ia rātou : 'Ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, e haere mai te Atua iho i raro nei i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e e fa'aora 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 2 'E nō tōna pārahira'a i roto i te tino nei, e parauhia ai 'oia te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'e 'ua auraro 'oia i te tino nei i te hina'aro o te Metua ; 'e 'ua riro 'oia te Metua 'e te Tamaiti ato'a ho'i—
- 3 Te Metua, nō te mea 'ua tōhia 'oia e te mana o te Atua ; 'e te Tamaiti, nō te tino 'i'o ; e mea nā reira 'oia i te rirora'a 'ei Metua 'e 'ei Tamaiti—
- 4 'E 'ua riro rāua 'ei hō'ē ā Atua, 'oia ia, te Metua mure 'ore mau nō te ra'i 'e te fenua.
- 5 'E nō reira 'ua auraro te tino i te Vārua, 'oia ho'i te Tamaiti i te Metua, e hō'ē ā ia Atua, 'e e ro'ohia 'oia i te fa'ahema, 'e 'aita roa 'oia e auraro i te fa'ahema, e vaiiho rā 'oia iāna iho 'ia tāhitohitohia, 'e 'ia papa'ihia, 'e 'ia ti'avaruhia i rāpae, 'e 'ia hunahia e tōna ihora mau ta'ata.
- 6 'E 'ia hope ana'e te reira, 'e i muri a'e ho'i i te ravera'a i te mau semeio mana e rave rahi i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, e arata'ihia 'oia, 'oia ia, mai tā Isaia i parau mai ra, mai te māmoe e māmū i mua i te aro o te feiā e paoti i tōna huruhuru, 'aita rā tōna vaha i hāmama noa atu.
- 7 'Oia ia, e nā reira 'oia i te arata'ihia, 'e i te fa'asātaurohia, 'e i te taparahihia, i auraro ho'i te tino ē tae noa atu i te pohe, 'e 'ua horomi'ihia te hina'aro o te Tamaiti i te hina'aro o te Metua.
- 8 'E e nā reira te Atua i te ha'amotu i te mau tā'amu nō te pohe, i roa'a ho'i iāna te rē i te pohe ; 'e 'ua roa'a tō te Tamaiti mana 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia riro 'ei ārai nō te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei—
- 9 'Ua haere 'oia i ni'a i te ra'i ; 'e tei roto iāna te aroha ; 'ua 'i 'oia i te aroha i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; tē ti'a ra 'oia i rōpū ia rātou 'e te parauti'a ; 'ua motu iāna te mau tā'amu nō te pohe ; 'ua rave i ni'a iāna iho i tā rātou mau 'ohīpa 'i'ino 'e tā rātou mau hara, 'e 'ua fa'aora ia rātou 'e 'ua ha'amāha i te tītaura'a a te parauti'a.

Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

- 10 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, nā vai e paraparau mai nō ni'a i tōna u'i ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'ia fa'arirohia ra 'oia 'ei tāra'ehara, e 'ite 'oia i tōna hua'ai. 'E i teienei, e aha tā 'outou e parau mai ? 'E 'o vai tē riro 'ei hua'ai nōna ?
- 11 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'o tei fa'aro'o i te mau parau tā te mau peropheta, 'oia ia, tā te mau peropheta ato'a i tohu mai nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Fatu—tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'o te ta'ata ato'a i fa'aro'o i tā rātou ra mau parau, 'e tei ti'aturi ē, e fa'aora te Fatu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e tei hi'o i mua i taua mahana ra nō te ha'amatarara'a i tā rātou ra mau hara, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'o tōna hua'ai ia teie, 'oia ho'i, e feiā 'āi'a rātou i te bāsileia o te Atua.
- 12 'O te feiā ia nā rātou te mau hara tāna i amo ; 'o te feiā ia nō rātou i pohe ai 'oia, nō te fa'aora ia rātou i tā rātou mau hara. 'E i teienei, e 'ere ānei rātou i te hua'ai nōna ?
- 13 'Oia ia, e 'ere ānei te mau peropheta ato'a ; rātou tāta'itahi tei hāmama i tō rātou vaha nō te tohu, 'o tei 'ore i 'ōfati i te ture ; 'oia ho'i te mau peropheta mo'a ato'a mai te ha'amatarara'a mai ā o te ao nei ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'o tōna hua'ai ia rātou.
- 14 'O te feiā ia teie 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te parau hau, 'o tei hōpoi mai i te mau parau maita'i nō te maita'i, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te parau nō te fa'aorara'a ; 'e 'o tei parau mai ia Ziona : Tē fa'atere ari'i nei tō 'oe Atua !
- 15 'E 'auē te nehenehe o tō rātou 'āvae i ni'a i te mau mou'a !
- 16 'E teie fa'ahou, 'auē te nehenehe i ni'a i te mau mou'a te 'āvae o te feiā e fa'a'ite nei i te hau !
- 17 'E teie fa'ahou, 'auē te nehenehe i ni'a i te mau mou'a te 'āvae o te feiā e fa'a'ite nei i te hau a muri nei, 'oia ia, mai teie nei atu taimē ē a muri noa atu !
- 18 'E inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e'ita te reira ana'e. 'E 'auē ho'i te nehenehe i ni'a i te mau mou'a te 'āvae nōna 'o tei hōpoi mai i te mau parau maita'i, 'oia ho'i tei fa'ati'a i te hau, 'oia ia, 'o te Fatu, 'o tei fa'aora i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'oia 'o tei hōro'a mai i te fa'aorara'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata.

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

19 'E 'āhiri ho'i 'aita te fa'aorara'a o tāna i rave nō tōna mau ta'ata, 'o tei fa'aïnehia mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'āhiri 'aita teie, 'ua ha'amouhia te mau ta'ata ato'a.

20 Inaha rā, e motu te mau tā'amu nō te pohe, 'e e fa'atere ari'i te Tamaiti, 'e tei iāna te mana i ni'a a'e i te feiā pohe ; nō reira, e fa'atupu 'oia i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe.

21 'E tē vai atu ra te hō'ē ti'afa'ahoura'a, 'oia ho'i te ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua ; 'oia iā, te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā 'o tei vai na, 'o tē vai nei, 'e 'o tē vai ra, ē tae roa atu ho'i i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia—e nā reira ho'i 'oia i te parauhia.

22 'E i teieni, te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te mau peropheta ato'a, e rātou ato'a tei ti'aturi i tā rātou mau parau, 'oia ho'i rātou ato'a tei ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e ti'afa'ahou mai iā rātou i ni'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua ; nō reira, 'o tē ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua iā rātou.

23 E fa'ati'ahia mai rātou i ni'a nō te pārahi i pīha'i iho i te Atua 'o tei fa'aora mai ia rātou ; nō reira e noa'a ia rātou te ora mure 'ore nā roto i te Mesia, 'o tei hahae i te mau tā'amu nō te pohe.

24 'E 'o te feiā teie tei ia rātou te ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua ; 'e 'o rātou teie 'o tei pohe i roto i tō rātou pōiri, hou te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'e 'aita te fa'aorara'a i fa'a'itehia mai ia rātou. 'E e nā reira te Fatu i te fa'atupu i te rāve'a nō te fa'aora ia rātou ; 'e e ti'a mai rātou i te ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua, 'oia ho'i e noa'a ia rātou te ora mure 'ore, ma te fa'aorahia e te Fatu.

25 'E e fāri'i ato'a te mau tamari'i ri'i i te ora mure 'ore.

26 Hī'o rā, 'e 'a mata'u, 'e 'a rurutaina i mua i te Atua ; 'ia rurutaina ho'i 'outou e ti'a ai ; 'e e 'ore ho'i te Fatu e fa'aora ia rātou i tei mārō atu iāna 'e tei pohe i roto i tā rātou mau hara ; 'oia iā, 'o rātou ato'a tei pohe i roto i tā rātou mau hara mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei, tei 'aro atu i te Atua ma te hina'aro mau ; rātou ato'a tei 'ite i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'aita rā rātou i ha'apa'o i te reira ; e 'ore roa rātou e ti'afa'ahou mai i te ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua.

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

- 27 Nō reira, e 'ere ānei i te mea au 'ia rurutaina 'outou ? E 'ore ho'i te fa'aorara'a e tae ia rātou mai te reira te huru ; e 'ore ho'i te Fatu e fa'aora i te ta'ata mai te reira te huru ; 'oia ia, e 'ore ho'i e ti'a i te Fatu 'ia fa'aora ia rātou ; e 'ore ho'i e ti'a iāna 'ia huna iāna iho ; e 'ore ho'i e ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ere i tā te parauti'a 'ia ti'a tāna tītaura'a.
- 28 'E i teieni tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, tē vai ra te taime e fa'a'itehia ai te fa'aorara'a a te Fatu i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a, 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 29 'Oia ia, e te Fatu, e fa'ateitei tō 'oe mau fa'ehau i tō rātou reo ; 'e e 'āmui tāhō'ē tō rātou reo i te hīmenera'a ; 'e e 'ite rātou te mata 'e te mata 'ia fa'aho'i mai te Fatu ia Ziona.
- 30 'Ia puroro noa atu te 'oa'oa, 'a hīmene 'āmui, e te mau vāhi pararī nō Ierusalemā ; 'ua ha'amāhanahana ho'i te Fatu i tōna mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia Ierusalemā.
- 31 'Ua fa'a'ite mai ho'i te Fatu i tōna rima mo'a i mua i te mata o te mau nūna'a ato'a ; 'e e 'ite tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei i te fa'aorara'a a tō tātou Atua.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

Mosia 16

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Abinadi paraura'a i teie nei mau parau, 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tōna rima, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra : Tē vai ra te taime e 'ite ai te mau ta'ata ato'a i te fa'aorara'a a te Fatu ; 'ei reira tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a e 'ite ai te mata 'e te mata 'e e fā'i ai i mua i te Atua ē, e mea parauti'a tāna ra mau ha'avāra'a.
- 2 'E i reira te feiā parauti'a 'ore e hurihia ai i rāpae ma te 'auē, 'e te 'oto 'e te autā, 'e te 'au'au i tō rātou niho ; 'e 'ua ro'ohia rātou i teie nei mau mea nō te mea 'aita rātou i ha'apa'o i te reo o te Fatu ; nō reira 'aita te Fatu e fa'aora ia rātou.
- 3 'E nō te hina'aro pae tino ho'i rātou 'e nō te diabolō, 'e e mana tō te diabolō i ni'a ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'o taua 'ōphī tahito ra tei ha'avare i tō tātou nā metua mātāmua ra, 'o te tumu ia nō tō rāua hi'ara'a ; 'e 'o te reira ho'i te tumu i riro ai te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ei mea hina'aro i tō te ao nei, i tō te tino, 'e i tā te diabolō, ma te 'ite i te maita'i 'e te 'ino, 'e 'a auraro ai i te diabolō ra.
- 4 'E nā reira ho'i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mo'e ; 'E inaha, 'ua mo'e rātou ē a muri noa atu 'āhiri 'aita te Atua i fa'aora i tōna ra mau ta'ata i roto i tō rātou huru mo'era'a 'e te hi'ara'a.
- 5 'A ha'amana'o rā ē, 'o 'oia 'o tē onono noa i roto i tōna iho huru tāhuti ra, 'e 'a tāmāu noa ai i te haere nā ni'a i te 'ē'a o te hara 'e te mārō i te Atua, e vai noa 'oia i roto i tōna huru hi'ara'a, 'e tei raro a'e 'oia i te mana o te diabolō. Nō reira, tē vai ra ia 'oia mai te au ra ē, 'aita e fa'aorara'a i ha'apa'ohia ra, 'e e 'enemi ia 'oia nō te Atua ; e 'enemi ato'a ho'i te diabolō nō te Atua.
- 6 'E i teienei, 'āhiri 'aita te Mesia i tae mai i te ao nei, 'aita ato'a e fa'aorara'a. Tē parauhia nei te reira nō ni'a i te mau mea e tae mai, mai te mea ra ē 'ua tupu mau te reira i teienei.
- 7 'E 'āhiri 'aita te Mesia i ti'afa'ahou mai mai te pohe mai, 'e 'aore rā i hahae i te mau tā'amū nō te pohe ra 'ia 'ere tō te mēnema rē, 'ia 'ore ho'i tō te pohe e tara, 'aita roa ia e ti'afa'ahoura'a i reira.
- 8 Tē vai ra rā te ti'afa'ahoura'a, nō reira 'aita tō te mēnema e rē ; 'e te tara o te pohe, 'ua horomi'ihia ia i te Mesia ra.

Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

- 9 'O 'oia te māramarama 'e te ora o te ao nei ; 'oia ia, te hō'ē māramarama hope 'ore, 'o tē 'ore roa e pōiri ; 'oia ia, 'o te ora hope 'ore ato'a ia, 'e 'aita roa e pohe fa'ahou.
- 10 'E teie nei tino tāhuti, e riro ia 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'e teie nei tino pohe noa, e riro ia 'ei tino pohe 'ore, 'e e fa'ati'ahia i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Atua, 'ia ha'avāhia e ana mai te au i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa, mai te mea e mea maita'i te reira 'e 'aore rā mai te mea e mea 'ino te reira—
- 11 'O tei maita'i ra, i te ti'afa'ahoura'a nō te ora hope 'ore 'e te 'oa'oa hope 'ore ; 'e 'o tei 'ino ra, i te ti'afa'ahoura'a i te pohe hope 'ore ; i te tu'ura'ahia atu i te diablo, 'o tei fa'auraro ia rātou, 'o te pohe ia—
- 12 I haere noa rātou nā roto i tō rātou iho mau hina'aro pae tino 'e mau mana'o pae tino ; ma te 'ore roa e ti'aoro atu i te Fatu 'a fa'atoro noa mai ai 'oia i tōna rima aroha ia rātou ra ; 'e 'ua fa'atoro-noa-hia mai ho'i te rima aroha ia rātou 'e 'aita rā rātou e fāri'i atu ; 'ua a'ohia rātou nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e 'aita roa rātou i fa'aru'e 'ē atu i te reira ; 'e 'ua fa'auehia rātou 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'aita roa rātou i tātarahapa.
- 13 'E i teienei, 'aita ānei e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia rurutaina 'e 'ia tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau hara, 'e 'ia ha'amana'o ho'i ē, nā roto i te Mesia ana'e ra e fa'aorahia ai 'outou ?
- 14 Nō reira, mai te mea e ha'api'i atu 'outou i te ture a Mose ra, 'a ha'api'i ato'a atu ē 'ua riro te reira 'ei ata nō te mau mea e tupu a muri atu—
- 15 'A ha'api'i atu ia rātou ē, e tae mai te fa'aorara'a nā roto mai i te Mesia i te Fatu, 'o te Metua mure 'ore mau ho'i 'oia. 'Āmene.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

Mosiah 17

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Abinadi i teie nei mau parau, 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i i te mau tahu'a 'ia hōpoi 'ē atu iāna 'e 'ia taparahi ha'apohe iāna.
- 2 Tē pārahi ra rā te tahi i rotopū ia rātou 'o Alama tōna i'oa, 'e e hua'ai ato'a ho'i 'oia nō Nephi. 'E e ta'ata 'āpī 'oia, 'e 'ua ti'aturi 'oia i te mau parau tā Abinadi i parau, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i 'oia i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'o tā Abinadi i parau ra nō ni'a ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te tāparu atu i te ari'i 'eiaha 'oia e riri ia Abinadi, 'ia tu'u atu rā iāna 'ia haere ma te hau.
- 3 'Āre'a rā 'ua rahi roa atu tō te ari'i riri, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia ia ti'avaruhia Alama i rāpae mai rotopū atu ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua tonu atu 'oia i tōna mau tāvini ia 'au'au 'e 'ia taparahi iāna.
- 4 'Āre'a rā 'ua horo 'ē atu ra 'oia mai mua atu ia rātou, 'e tāpuni ihora, 'e 'aita 'oia i 'itea ia rātou. 'E 'a tāpuni ai 'oia e rave rahi mahana, 'ua pāpa'i 'oia i te mau parau ato'a tā Abinadi i parau.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i ia ha'a'ati tōna mau tīa'i fa'ehau ia Abinadi 'e 'ia haru mai iāna ; 'e 'ua ru'uru'u ihora rātou iāna 'e 'ua huri atu ra iāna i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 6 'E 'ia ma'iri e toru mahana nō tōna 'āpo'ora'a 'e tōna mau tahu'a, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia hōpoi-fa'ahou-hia mai 'oia i mua iāna.
- 7 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia iāna : E Abinadi, 'ua 'ite mātou i te tahi fa'ahapara'a ia 'oe, 'e 'ua tano roa ho'i ia 'oe te pohe.
- 8 I parau na ho'i 'oe ē, e tae mai te Atua iho i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; e i teienei, nō te reira e taparahihia 'oe, maori rā 'ia fa'a'ore 'oe i te mau parau 'ino tā 'oe i parau mai nō ni'a iā'u 'e i tō'u ra mau ta'ata.
- 9 I teienei 'ua parau mai ra Abinadi iāna : Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, e'ita roa vau e fa'a'ore i te mau parau tā'u i parau atu ia 'oe na nō ni'a i teie nei feiā, nō te mea e parau mau roa te reira ; 'e 'ia 'ite 'oe ē, e parau mau ia, 'ua fa'ati'a ia vau iā'u iho 'ia ma'iri i roto i tō rima na.

Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

10 'Oia ia, e fa'a'oroma'i au ē tae noa atu i te pohera'a, e 'ore roa rā vau e fa'a'ore i tā'u ra mau parau, 'e e riro ho'i te reira 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū ia 'oe na. 'E 'ia taparahi mai 'outou iā'u nei, 'ua ha'amani'i ia 'outou i te toto o te ta'ata hara 'ore, 'e e riro ato'a te reira 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū ia 'outou i te mahana hope'a ra.

11 'E i teienei 'ua fātata roa te ari'i ra 'o Noa i te tu'u atu iāna, nō te mea 'ua mata'u 'oia i tāna ra parau ; 'e 'ua mata'u ho'i 'oia 'o te tae mai te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua i ni'a iho iāna.

12 'Āre'a rā 'ua fa'ateitei ihora te mau tahu'a i tō rātou reo nō te fa'ahapa iāna, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te pari iāna, i te nā-ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ua fa'a'ino 'oia i te ari'i. Nō reira 'ua tupu ihora te riri o te ari'i iāna ra, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra 'oia iāna 'ia taparahihia.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora rātou iāna, 'e 'ua ha'amāuiui ihora i tōna 'iri i te mau vahie 'ama, 'oia ia ē tae noa atu i te pohera'a.

14 'E 'ia pa'apa'a a'era 'oia i te auahi, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra 'oia ia rātou, nā 'ō atu ra :

15 Inaha, mai tā 'outou e rave mai iā'u nei, e nā reira ato'a tō 'outou hua'ai i te hāmani 'ino i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'oia ho'i nā roto i te māuiui pohe i te auahi ; e nā-reira-hia rātou nō te mea 'ua ti'aturi rātou i te fa'aorara'a a te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

16 'E a muri a'era, e riro ato'a 'outou i te ha'amāuiuihia i te mau huru ma'i ato'a nō tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'īno.

17 'Oia ia, e tā'irihia 'outou i terā rima 'e i terā rima, 'e e ti'avaruhia 'outou 'e e ha'apurarahia ho'i i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, mai te nana māmoe 'ōviri e ha'apurarahia e te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri 'e te taehae ra.

18 'E i taua mahana ra e a'ua'uhia 'outou, 'e e haruhia e te rima o tō 'outou mau 'enemi, 'e i reira 'outou e ha'amāuiuihia ai i te māuiui pohe i te auahi, mai iā'u ho'i e ha'amāuiuihia nei.

19 E nā reira ho'i te Atua i te fa'atae mai i te tāho'o i ni'a i te mau ta'ata 'o tē ha'amou i tōna ra mau ta'ata. E te Atua, 'a fāri'i mai na i tō'u nei vārua.

20 'E i teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Abinadi paraura'a i teie nei mau parau, 'ua ma'iri ihora 'oia i raro, 'ua pohe roa ho'i 'oia i te auahi ; 'oia ia, 'ua taparahihia 'oia nō te mea 'aita 'oia i huna i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e 'ua riro tōna pohe 'ei tāpa'o fa'a'ite pāpū i te parau mau nō tāna ra mau parau.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Mosiah 18

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua tātarahapa ihora Alama, 'o tei horo nā mua atu i te mau tāvini o te ari'i ra o Noa, i tāna mau hara e tāna mau 'ohipa 'T'ino, 'e 'ua haere huna atu ra 'oia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te ha'api'i i te mau parau a Abinadi—
- 2 'Oia ia, i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu, 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra, 'e te fa'aorara'a o te mau ta'ata, 'o tei fa'atupuhia nā roto i te mana, 'e te māuiui, 'e te pohe o te Mesia, 'e tōna ti'afa'ahoura'a 'e tōna revara'a i ni'a i te ra'i.
- 3 'E 'ua ha'api'i 'oia ia rātou ato'a i tei fa'aro'o i tāna parau. 'E 'ua ha'api'i huna 'oia ia rātou 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia 'iteahia e te ari'i. 'E e rave rahi tei ti'aturi i tāna mau parau.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi iāna i te hō'ē vāhi i parauhia 'o Moromona, 'e nā te ari'i i ma'iri i tō te reira i'oa, tei te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua ra i 'i roa i te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri taehae i terā taime 'e i terā taime, 'oia ho'i i terā 'anotau 'e i terā 'anotau.
- 5 I teienei, tē vai ra te hō'ē pape piha'a mā i Moromona, 'e 'ua mātau ho'i Alama i te haere i reira, nō te mea tei piha'i iho i taua pape piha'a ra te hō'ē uru rā'au ri'i, 'e tei reira tōna tāpunira'a i te ao i tā te ari'i ra mau 'imira'a iāna.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere rātou ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi iāna nō te fa'aro'o i tāna mau parau.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope a'era te mau mahana e rave rahi, 'ua putuputu ihora te feiā e rave rahi i te vāhi nō Moromona, nō te fa'aro'o i te mau parau a Alama. 'Oia ia, 'ua putuputu ihora te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi i tāna ra parau nō te fa'aro'o iāna. 'E 'ua ha'api'i atu ra 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua a'o atu ra ia rātou i te parau nō te tātarahapa, 'e te fa'aorara'a, 'e te fa'aro'o i te Fatu.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, tei 'ō nei te mau pape o Moromona ('e te reira te i'oa i topahia) 'e i teienei, nō te mea 'ua hina'aro 'outou 'ia ō mai i roto i te nana a te Atua, 'e 'ia parauhia 'ei mau ta'ata nōna, 'e 'ua hina'aro 'outou 'ia amo te tahi i tā te tahi mau hōpoi'a, 'ia māmā te reira ;

Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

9 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua hina'aro 'outou 'ia 'oto 'a 'oto ai te feiā 'oto ra ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ia tāmāhanahana ia rātou 'o te au 'ia tāmāhanahanahia, 'e 'ia ti'a 'ei mau 'ite nō te Atua i te mau taime ato'a 'e nō te mau mea ato'a, 'e i roto i te mau vāhi ato'a tā 'outou e pārahi ra, ē tae noa atu i te pohera'a, 'ia fa'aorahia 'outou e te Atua, 'e 'ia tai'ohia i rotopū ia rātou nō te ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua, 'ia noa'a ia 'outou te ora mure 'ore—

10 I teienei tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, mai te mea ē 'o teie te hina'aro o tō 'outou 'ā'au, e aha ia te mea e 'ore e au ai ia 'outou 'ia bāpetizohia nā roto i te i'oa o te Fatu, 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū i mua iāna ē, 'ua fafau 'outou i te hō'ē fafaura'a iāna, 'e e tāvini 'outou iāna 'e e ha'apa'o ho'i i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a, 'ia nīni'i rahi mai 'oia i tōna Vārua i ni'a ia 'outou ?

11 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te mau ta'ata i teie nei mau parau, 'ua pōpō ihora rātou i tō rātou rima nō te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ua parau mai ra : 'o tē hina'aro teie o tō mātou 'ā'au.

12 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora Alama ia Helama, 'e 'o 'oia te mātāmua, 'e 'ua haere atu ra e ti'a atu ra i roto i te pape, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E te Fatu, 'a nīni'i mai i tō 'oe Vārua i ni'a i tō 'oe tāvini nei, 'ia rave 'oia i teie nei 'ohipa ma te 'ā'au mā.

13 'E 'ia oti a'era iāna te parau i teie nei mau parau, 'ua tae mai ra te Vārua o te Fatu i ni'a iāna, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia : E Helama, nō te mana i hōro'ahia mai nō 'ō mai i te Atua manahope ra, tē bāpetizo nei au ia 'oe 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū ē, 'ua fafau 'oe i te hō'ē fafaura'a 'ia tāvini iāna ē tae noa atu 'ua pohe 'oe i te tino tāhuti nei ; 'e 'ia nīni'ihia mai te Vārua o te Fatu i ni'a ia 'oe ; 'e 'ia hōro'a mai 'oia i te ora mure 'ore nō 'oe, nā roto i te fa'aorara'a a te Mesia, 'o tāna i fa'aineine mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei.

14 'E 'ia fa'aoti a'era Alama i te parau i teie nei mau parau, 'ua tanuhia ihora Alama rāua 'o Helama i raro i te pape ; 'e 'ua ti'a a'era rāua 'e 'ua haere mai ra mai raro mai i te pape ma te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ua 'i ho'i rāua i te Vārua.

15 'E teie fa'ahou, 'ua rave ihora Alama i te tahi atu ta'ata, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te piti o te taime i roto i te pape, 'e 'ua bāpetizo atu ra iāna mai tāna i bāpetizo i te ta'ata mātāmua ra, 'aita rā 'oia i tanu fa'ahou iāna iho i raro i te pape.

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

- 16 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia i te bāpetizo ia rātou ato'a 'o tei tae i taua vāhi ra nō Moromona ; 'e e piti hānere 'aore 'e maha ta'ata 'ia tai'ohia, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua bāpetizohia rātou i roto i te mau pape nō Moromona, 'e 'ua fa'a'īhia rātou i te maita'i o te Atua.
- 17 'E 'ua parauhia rātou te 'ēkālesia a te Atua, 'oia ho'i te 'ēkālesia a te Mesia, mai taua taime mai ra. 'E i muri a'era 'ua 'āmuihia mai te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei bāpetizohia nā roto i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra i roto i tāna 'ēkālesia.
- 18 'E i muri a'era nā roto i te mana i hōro'ahia mai nō 'ō mai i te Atua 'ua fa'atōro'a Alama i te tahi mau tahu'a ; 'ua fa'atōro'a 'oia i te ta'ata hō'ē 'ei tahu'a nō roto mai i te mau pae 'ahuru ta'ata ato'a nō rātou, nō te a'o 'e nō te ha'api'i ia rātou i te mau mea nō ni'a i te bāsileia o te Atua.
- 19 'E 'ua fa'aue atu 'oia ia rātou, 'eiaha rātou e ha'api'i i te hō'ē a'e mea, maori rā te mau mea tāna i ha'api'i, 'e tei parauhia e te vaha o te mau peropheta mo'a ra.
- 20 'Oia ia, 'ua fa'aue atu 'oia ia rātou, 'eiaha rātou e a'o i te hō'ē mea, maori rā te parau nō te tātarahapa 'e te fa'aro'o i te Fatu, 'o tei fa'aora i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 21 'E 'ua fa'aue atu 'oia ia rātou, 'eiaha te mārōra'a 'ia vai i rotopū i te tahi 'e i te tahi, 'ia hi'o rā rātou i mua ma te mata hō'ē, 'e ma te fa'aro'o hō'ē 'e te bāpetizora'a hō'ē ; 'e ma te tāhō'ē mai i tō rātou 'ā'au i roto i te tāhō'ēra'a 'e i roto i te here te tahi i te tahi.
- 22 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia i te fa'aue ia rātou 'ia a'o. 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te riro 'ei mau tamari'i nā te Atua.
- 23 'E 'ua fa'aue atu 'oia ia rātou 'ia ha'apa'o i te mahana sābati, 'e 'ia ha'amo'ahia, 'e 'ia ha'amaita'i ho'i rātou i te Fatu tō rātou Atua i te mau mahana ato'a.
- 24 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ho'i 'oia ia rātou 'ia rave te mau tahu'a 'o tāna i fa'atōro'a i te 'ohipa ma tō rātou iho rima nō te tauturu ia rātou iho.
- 25 'E 'ua fa'ata'ahia te hō'ē mahana i te mau hepetoma ato'a 'ia ha'aputupu rātou ia rātou iho nō te ha'api'i i te mau ta'ata, 'e nō te ha'amori i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e i te mau mahana ato'a ho'i e au ia rātou 'ia ha'aputupu rātou ia rātou iho i te vāhi hō'ē.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

- 26 'E 'eiaha te mau tahu'a e ti'aturi i ni'a i te mau ta'ata nō te tauturu i tō rātou orara'a ; 'ia roa'a rā ia rātou te maīta'i o te Atua 'ei utu'a nō tā rātou 'ohipa, 'ia pūai rātou i te Vārua, ma te fāri'i i te 'ite nō te Atua, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'api'i ma te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra.
- 27 'E teie fa'aahou ā, 'ua fa'aue atu Alama 'ia hōro'a te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia i tā rātou tao'a, te ta'ata tāta'itahi mai te au i tāna tao'a ; te ta'ata e mea rahi tāna, 'ia rahi ato'a tāna e hōro'a ; 'e te ta'ata e mea iti tāna, 'ia iti ato'a te tītauhia iāna ; 'e te ta'ata 'aita tāna e tao'a, e hōro'ahia ia iāna.
- 28 'E 'ia nā reira rātou i te hōro'a atu i tā rātou tao'a, mai te au i tō rātou iho hina'aro i te Atua, 'e i te mau tahu'a tei 'ere, 'oia ia, i te feiā veve ato'a 'e tei taha'a noa.
- 29 'E 'ua parau atu 'oia i teie nei parau ia rātou, nō te mea 'ua fa'auehia 'oia e te Atua ; 'e 'ua haere rātou ma te parauti'a i mua i te Atua, i te hōro'ara'a te tahi i te tahi i te mau mea pae tino 'e pae vārua mai te au i tō rātou veve 'e tō rātou mau hina'aro.
- 30 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ravehia te reira i Moromona ; 'oia ia, i pīha'i iho i te mau pape nō Moromona ; 'oia ia, i roto i te uru rā'au i pīha'i iho i te mau pape nō Moromona ; 'oia ia, te vāhi nō Moromona, te mau pape nō Moromona, te uru rā'au nō Moromona, 'e e mea nehenehe roa te reira i te mata o te mau ta'ata 'o tei fāri'i i te 'ite nō ni'a i tō rātou Tāra'ehara i reira ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'amaita'ihia rātou, 'e e hīmene ho'i rātou nō te 'āruē iāna ē a muri noa atu.
- 31 'E 'ua ravehia teie nei mau mea i te mau hiti o te fenua, 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia 'iteahia e te ari'i.
- 32 Inaha rā, i muri a'era 'ia 'ite a'era te ari'i i te hō'ē 'ārepurepura'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'ua tonu atu ra 'oia i tōna mau tāvini nō te hī'o ia rātou. Nō reira i te mahana i ha'aputu 'āmui mai ai rātou ia rātou iho nō te fa'aro'o i te parau a te Fatu 'ua 'itehia 'e 'ua fa'a'itehia te reira i te ari'i.
- 33 'E i teienei 'ua parau ihora te ari'i ē, tē fa'ati'arepu ra Alama i te mau ta'ata 'ia 'aro mai iāna ; nō reira 'ua tonu atu 'oia i tōna nu'u fa'ehau nō te ha'amou ia rātou.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'itehia Alama 'e te mau ta'ata o te Fatu i te haerera'a mai o te nu'u fa'ehau o te ari'i ; nō reira 'ua rave rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa 'e tō rātou mau 'utuāfare 'e 'ua haere atu ra i roto i te mēdēbara.

35 E maha hānere 'e pae 'ahuru rahira'a ta'ata 'ia tai'ohia.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

Mosia 19

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra te nu'u fa'ehau o te ari'i, i 'imi māite na rātou i te mau ta'ata o te Fatu ma te manuia 'ore.
- 2 'E i teienei inaha, e mea iti te nu'u fa'ehau o te ari'i, i fa'aitihia ho'i rātou, 'e 'ua tupu ihora te 'āmahamaha i rotopū i te toe'a o te mau ta'ata.
- 3 'E 'ua ha'amata atu ra te pae iti o te mau ta'ata i te parau ha'amata'u atu i te ari'i, 'e 'ua tupu ihora te mārōra'a rahi i rotopū ia rātou.
- 4 'E i teienei tē vai ra te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū ia rātou 'o Gideona tōna i'oa, e ta'ata pūai 'oia 'e e 'enemi ho'i nō te ari'i, nō reira 'ua unuhi 'oia i tāna 'o'e, 'e 'ua tapu ihora 'oia ma te riri 'ū'ana 'ia taparahi i te ari'i.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua taputō ihora rāua 'o te ari'i ; 'e 'ia 'ite a'era te ari'i ē, 'ua fātata 'oia i te pau iāna, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua horo atu ra 'e 'ua pa'uma atu ra i ni'a iho i te pare i pīha'i iho i te hiero.
- 6 'E 'ua a'ua'u atu ra Gideona iāna, 'e 'ua fātata 'oia i te tae i ni'a i te pare nō te taparahi i te ari'i, 'e nānā a'era te ari'i i tōna mata ē 'ati noa a'e te pae fenua ra nō Semelona, 'e inaha, tei roto mai te nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'ōti'a o te fenua.
- 7 'E 'ua pi'i noa mai ra te ari'i ma te 'oto o tōna 'ā'au, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E Gideona, 'a fa'aora mai na iā'u, teie mai nei ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a ia tātou, 'e e taparahi rātou ia tātou ; 'oia ia, e taparahi rātou i tō'u mau ta'ata.
- 8 'E i teienei 'ua rahi tō te ari'i pe'ape'a i tōna iho ora i tō tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua fa'aora Gideona iāna.
- 9 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia horo 'ē atu mai mua atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua horo 'ē ato'a atu 'oia iho nā mua ia rātou, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu rātou i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e tā rātou ato'a ra mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou, 'e 'ua noa'ahia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te taparahi ia rātou.
- 11 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i ia rātou 'ia vaiiho te mau tāne ato'a i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'e 'ia horo 'ē atu mai mua atu i te mau 'āti Lamana.

Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

- 12 I teienei e rave rahi te mau tāne tei 'ore i vaiiho ia rātou, 'ua hina'aro rā rātou 'ia pārahi 'e 'ia pohe i pīha'i iho ia rātou. 'E 'ua vaiiho te toe'a i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'o rātou 'o tei pārahi i pīha'i iho i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'ua tonu atu ra rātou i tā rātou mau tamāhine purotu 'ia tī'a atu i mua i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'ia tāparu atu ia rātou 'eiaha rātou e taparahi mai ia rātou.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua aroha mai te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou, 'e 'ua au roa rātou i te purotu o tā rātou mau tamāhine.
- 15 Nō reira, 'ua fa'aora te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou, 'e 'ua hōpoi tītī ihora ia rātou, ma te hōpoi atu ia rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai i te fenua 'ei fa'aeara'a nō rātou, mai te mea e tu'u atu rātou i te ari'i ra ia Noa i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ia hōro'a i tā rātou tao'a, 'oia ho'i te 'āfara'a o tā rātou mau faufa'a ato'a, 'e te 'āfara'a o tā rātou 'auro, 'e tā rātou 'ārio, 'e te tā'āto'ara'a nō tā rātou mau tao'a faufa'a rahi, 'e 'ia nā reira rātou i te 'aufau i te tute i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i terā matahiti 'e i terā matahiti.
- 16 'E i teienei tei rotopū ho'i i te mau ta'ata i hōpoi-tītī-hia te hō'ē o te mau tamaiti a te ari'i, 'o Limehi tōna i'oa.
- 17 'E i teienei 'ua hina'aro Limehi, 'eiaha tōna metua tāne 'ia taparahihia ; 'ua 'ite rā Limehi i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a tōna metua tāne, 'e e ta'ata parauti'a rā 'oia iho.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonu huna atu ra Gideona i te mau ta'ata i roto i te mēdēbara, nō te 'imi haere i te ari'i 'e ia rātou ato'a tei pe'e atu iāna ra. 'E i muri a'era 'ua fāreirei atu ra rātou i te mau ta'ata i roto i te mēdēbara, 'o rātou pā'āto'a, 'eiaha rā te ari'i 'e tōna mau tahu'a.
- 19 I teienei 'ua tapu na rātou i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au ē e ho'i fa'ahou rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e mai te mea ē 'ua taparahihia tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i tei fa'aea i pīha'i iho ia rātou ra, e tītau rātou i te tāho'o i reira, 'e e pohe ato'a 'e 'o rātou ra.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

20 'E 'ua fa'aue mai ra te ari'i ia rātou, 'eiaha rātou e ho'i fa'ahou ; 'e 'ua riri a'era rātou i te ari'i, 'e 'ua tītau ihora rātou 'ia ha'apohe iāna, 'oia iā, i te pohe auahi.

21 'E 'ua fātata roa rātou i te rave i te mau tahu'a 'e 'ia taparahi ato'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou mai mua atu ia rātou.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fātata rātou i te ho'i fa'ahou i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e 'ua fārerei atu rātou i te mau ta'ata o Gideon. 'E 'ua fa'a'ite atu te mau ta'ata o Gideon ia rātou i te mau mea ato'a i tupu i ni'a i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'a te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia fāri'i rātou i te fenua nā roto i te 'aufaura'a i te tute i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'oia ho'i, te 'āfara'a o tā rātou mau faufa'a ato'a.

23 'E 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra te mau ta'ata i te feiā o Gideon 'e 'ua taparahi rātou i te ari'i, 'e 'ua horo atu tōna mau tahu'a i roto roa i te mēdēbara.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era rātou i te 'oro'a paraparaura'a, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi ma te 'oa'oa, nō te mea 'aita tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i i taparahihia ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu rātou ia Gideon i tā rātou i rave i te ari'i.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tapu ihora te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te hō'ē tapu ia rātou ē, 'aita tōna mau ta'ata e taparahi ia rātou.

26 'E 'o Limehi ato'a, e tamaiti 'oia nā te ari'i, 'e 'ua hōro'ahia mai te bāsileia iāna e te mau ta'ata, 'ua tapu 'oia i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, e 'aufau atu tōna mau ta'ata i te tute iāna, ē tae noa atu i te 'āfara'a o tā rātou ra mau faufa'a ato'a.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora Limehi i te fa'ati'a i te bāsileia 'e i te fa'atupu ho'i i te hau i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata.

28 'E 'ua ha'a'ati atu ra te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e i te mau tīa'i fa'ehau, 'ia tāpe'a 'oia i te mau ta'ata o Limehi i roto i te fenua, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua tauturu atu 'oia i tōna ra mau tīa'i fa'ehau nā roto i te tute tei 'aufauhia mai iāna e te mau 'āti Nephi.

29 'E i teienei 'ua fāri'i tāmāu noa te ari'i ra 'o Limehi i te hau i roto i tōna ra bāsileia nō te ārea e piti matahiti te maoro, 'e 'aita roa te mau 'āti Lamana i hāmani 'ino 'e 'aore ho'i i tītau 'ia taparahi ia rātou.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

Mosiah 20

- 1 I teienei tē vai ra te hō'ē vāhi i Semelona i reira te mau tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana i te ha'aputuputura'a ia rātou iho nō te hīmene, 'e nō te 'ori, 'e nō te fa'a'āarearea ia rātou iho.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te hō'ē mahana, 'ua putuputu mai te tahi pae iti o rātou nō te hīmene 'e nō te 'ori.
- 3 'E i teienei, 'ua ha'amā te mau tahu'a o Noa 'ia ho'i atu i te 'oire nō Nephi, 'oia ia, 'ua mata'u rātou 'o te taparahihia rātou e te mau ta'ata, nō reira 'aita rātou i ho'i atu i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i.
- 4 'E 'ua fa'aea noa rātou i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua 'ite a'era rātou i te mau tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua tāpuni ihora rātou ma te māta'ita'i atu ia rātou.
- 5 'E 'ia iti a'era tō rātou i te ha'aputuputu mai nō te 'ori, 'ua haere atu ra rātou mai roto atu i tō rātou mau vāhi tāpunira'a 'e 'ua haru ihora ia rātou e hōpoi 'ē atu ra i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'oia ia, e piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha mau tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana tā rātou i hōpoi 'ē atu i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'ua mo'e tā rātou mau tamāhine, 'ua riri ihora rātou i te mau ta'ata o Limehi, nō te mea 'ua mana'o rātou ē, nā te mau ta'ata o Limehi i rave i te reira.
- 7 Nō reira 'ua tono atu ra rātou i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua haere ato'a atu te ari'i iho i mua i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'ua haere atu rātou i te fenua nō Nephi nō te taparahi i te mau ta'ata o Limehi.
- 8 'E i teienei 'ua 'ite mai ra Limehi ia rātou nā ni'a mai i te pare, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia i tā rātou fa'a'aineinera'a nō te 'arora'a ; nō reira 'ua ha'aputuputu 'āmui 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua tāpuni ihora ia rātou i roto i te mau 'āua 'e te mau uru rā'au.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a, 'ua haere atu ra te mau ta'ata o Limehi mai roto atu i tō rātou mau vāhi tāpunira'a 'e 'aro atu ra ia rātou, 'e ha'amata ihora i te taparahi ia rātou.

Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu rahi roa ihora te 'arora'a, 'e 'ua tama'i rātou mai te liona 'ia roa'a tāna mā'a haru.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'avaru atu ra te mau ta'ata o Limehi i te mau 'āti Lamana mai mua atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua iti iho ho'i rātou i te 'āfara'a i te rahi i te mau 'āti Lamana. 'Ua 'aro rā nō tō rātou ora, 'e nō tā rātou mau vahine, 'e nō tā rātou mau tamari'i, nō reira 'ua hōro'a rātou i tō rātou pūai ato'a, 'e 'ua tama'i rātou mai tā te teni ra.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite a'era rātou i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i rotopū i tō rātou feiā pohe ra ; 'aita 'oia i pohe, 'ua puta rā 'oia, 'e 'ua fa'aru'e-noa-hia 'oia i raro i te repo, nō te 'oi'oi o te horora'a o tōna mau ta'ata.
- 13 'Ua rave ihora rātou iāna 'e 'ua rapa'au ihora i tōna mau puta, 'e 'ua hōpoi mai ra iāna i mua ia Limehi, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra : Inaha, teie te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō te mea 'ua puta 'oia, i ma'iri ai 'oia i rotopū i tō rātou feiā pohe ra, 'e 'ua fa'aru'e rātou iāna ; 'e inaha, 'ua hōpoi mai mātou iāna i mua ia 'oe na ; 'e i teienei 'a vaiiho mai ia mātou 'ia taparahi iāna.
- 14 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Limehi ia rātou : 'Eiaha roa 'outou e taparahi iāna, 'a hōpoi mai na iāna i'ō nei 'ia 'ite au iāna. 'E 'ua hōpoi mai ra rātou iāna. 'E 'ua parau atu ra Limehi iāna : Nō te aha 'oe i haere mai ai nō te 'aro i tō'u nei mau ta'ata ? Inaha, 'aita tō'u nei mau ta'ata i 'ōfati i te tapura'a tā'u i tapu atu ia 'oe na ; nō reira, nō te aha ia 'oe i 'ōfati ai i te tapura'a tā 'oe i tapu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ?
- 15 'E i teienei 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i : 'Ua 'ōfati au i te tapura'a nō te mea 'ua hōpoi 'ē atu tō 'oe mau ta'ata i te mau tamāhine a tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; nō reira, nā roto i tō'u ra riri, 'ua arata'i mai au i tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te 'aro atu i tō 'oe mau ta'ata.
- 16 'E i teienei, 'aita roa Limehi i fa'aro'o na i taua parau ra ; nō reira 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia : E 'imi au i rotopū i tō'u nei mau ta'ata, 'e te ta'ata i rave i te reira, e pohe ia 'oia. Nō reira 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia 'imihia te reira i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

17 I teienei 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Gideona, te ra'atira nō te ari'i, i teie mau mea, 'ua haere mai ra 'oia 'e 'ua parau mai ra i te ari'i : Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'a fa'a'oroma'i, 'e 'eiaha e 'imi i rotopū i teie nei feiā, 'e 'eiaha ho'i teie nei mea 'ino 'ia parihia i ni'a ia rātou.

18 'Aita ānei 'oe e ha'amana'o ra i te mau tahu'a a tō 'oe metua tāne, tā teie nei feiā i 'imi 'ia taparahi ? 'E 'aita ānei rātou i roto i te mēdēbara i teienei ? 'E e 'ere ānei ho'i nā rātou i 'eiā i te mau tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana ?

19 'E i teienei, inaha, 'a fa'a'ite atu i teie mau mea i te ari'i, 'ia fa'a'ite ato'a atu 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ia hau rātou ia tātou nei ; inaha ho'i, tē fa'aineine nei rātou i teienei 'ia haere mai e 'aro mai ia tātou nei ; 'e inaha ho'i e mea iti roa tātou nei.

20 'E inaha, tē haere mai nei rātou 'e tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau e rave rahi ; 'e 'ia 'ore te ari'i e fa'ahau ia rātou ia tātou nei, e pohe ia tātou.

21 'E 'aita ānei te mau parau a Abinadi i tupu, 'oia 'o tāna i tohu nō ni'a ia tātou nei—'e 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te mea 'aita tātou i ha'apa'o i te mau parau a te Fatu, 'e i fa'aru'e ho'i i tā tātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino ?

22 I teienei, e fa'ahau tātou i te ari'i, 'e e ha'apa'o ho'i tātou i te tapu tā tātou i tapu atu iāna ra ; e mea maita'i a'e ho'i ia tātou 'ia fāri'i i te fa'atūtira'a i te pohe ; nō reira, 'ia fa'aea tātou i te ha'amani'i rahi i te toto.

23 'E i teienei 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra Limehi i te ari'i i te mau mea ato'a nō ni'a i tōna metua tāne, 'e te mau tahu'a tei horo 'ē atu i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua pari ho'i ia rātou nō te hōpoi-'ē-ra'a atu i tā rātou ra mau tamāhine.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu te hau o te ari'i i mua i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Mai haere tātou e fārerei atu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, ma te mauha'a tama'i 'ore ; 'e tē hōreo atu nei au ia 'oe na ma te tapu ē e 'ore roa tō'u ra mau ta'ata e taparahi i tō 'oe na mau ta'ata.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pe'e atu ra rātou i te ari'i, e haere atu ra rātou ma te mauha'a tama'i 'ore nō te fārerei i te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E i muri a'era 'ua fārerei atu rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua tīpapa ihora te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i raro i mua ia rātou, 'e 'ua tāparu atu ra 'oia 'ia fa'aorahia te mau ta'ata o Limehi.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

26 'E 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau ta'ata o
Limehi, 'e 'aita tā rātou e mauha'a tama'i, 'ua aroha
mai ra rātou ia rātou 'e 'ua hau ihora ho'i ia rātou, 'e
'ua ho'i atu ra rātou 'e te ari'i ato'a i tō rātou ihora
fenua ma te hau.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi,
that they were without arms, they had compassion
on them and were pacified towards them, and re-
turned with their king in peace to their own land.

Mosiah 21

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i atu ra Limehi 'e tōna mau ta'ata i te 'oire ra nō Nephi, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te pārahi fa'ahou i ni'a i te fenua ma te hau.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope a'era te mau mahana e rave rahi, 'ua fa'atupu fa'ahou ihora te mau 'āti Lamana i te riri i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te haere mai i roto i te mau 'ōti'a nō te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e.
- 3 I teienei 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia taparahi ia rātou, nō te mea 'ua fa'aoti tō rātou ari'i i te hō'ē tapura'a ia Limehi ; 'āre'a rā 'ua tūpa'i noa mai rātou i tō rātou pāpāri'a, 'e 'ua fa'ahopohepo ho'i ia rātou ; 'e 'ua tu'u i te mau hōpoi'a teiaha i ni'a iho i tō rātou taponu, 'e 'ua fa'atere ho'i ia rātou mai tā rātou i fa'atere i te 'āsini vāvā ra—
- 4 'Oia ia, 'ua ravehia teie mau mea ato'a 'ia fa'ati'ahia te parau a te Fatu.
- 5 'E i teienei 'ua fāri'i te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau 'ati rahi, 'e 'aita roa e rāve'a e ti'a ai a rātou 'ia fa'aora ia rātou iho i tō rātou rima, nō te mea 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou e te mau 'āti Lamana ē 'ati noa a'e.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata i te amuamu atu i te ari'i nō tō rātou mau 'ati rahi ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ihora rātou 'ia haere atu e 'aro ia rātou. 'E 'ua ha'ape'ape'a rahi rātou i te ari'i i tā rātou mau amuamura'a ; nō reira 'ua fa'ati'a atu 'oia ia rātou 'ia rave mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro.
- 7 'E 'ua ha'aputupu fa'ahou ihora rātou ia rātou iho, 'e 'ua 'ahu ihora i tō rātou 'ahu tama'i, 'e 'ua haere atu ra e 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana nō te tīahi ia rātou i rāpae i tō rātou fenua.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'avī ihora te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou, 'e 'ua tūra'i ia rātou i muri i tō rātou fenua, 'e 'ua taparahi e rave rahi o tō rātou mau ta'ata.
- 9 'E i teienei 'ua tupu ihora te 'oto rahi 'e te autā rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Limehi ; tē 'oto ra te vahine 'ivi nō tāna tāne, tē 'oto ra te tamaiti 'e te tamāhine nō tō rātou metua tāne, 'e te mau taea'e nō tō rātou mau taea'e.
- 10 I teienei 'ua rahi te mau vahine 'ivi i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ta'i pūai noa rātou i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana, i tupu na ho'i tō rātou mata'u rahi i te mau 'āti Lamana 'o tei 'aro mai ia rātou.

Mosiah 21

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

- 11 'E i muri a'era, nā tō rātou mau 'oto hope'a 'ore i fa'ati'arepu i te toe'a o te mau ta'ata o Limehi 'ia riri atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra rātou nō te 'aro, 'āre'a rā 'ua tūra'i-fa'ahou-hia rātou i muri ma te pohe rahi.
- 12 'Oia ia, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra rātou i te toru o te taime, 'e hō'ē ā tō rātou pohe ; 'e te mau ta'ata tei 'ore i taparahihia, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra rātou i te 'oire ra nō Nephi.
- 13 'E 'ua fa'aha'eha'a ihora rātou ia rātou iho i raro i te repo, i te tu'ura'a atu ia rātou iho i te zugo nō te tūtira'a ra, i te fa'ati'ara'a atu 'ia tā'irihia, 'e 'ia tūahihia rātou i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, 'e 'ia tu'uhia ho'i te hōpoi'a i ni'a iho ia rātou, mai te au i te hina'aro o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi.
- 14 'E 'ua fa'aha'eha'a ihora rātou ia rātou iho i raro i te ha'eha'a rahi roa ; 'e 'ua ti'aoro māite atu rātou i te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ua ti'aoro atu rātou i tō rātou Atua i te mahana tā'āto'a, 'ia fa'aora 'oia ia rātou i tō rātou ra mau 'ati rahi.
- 15 'E i teienei 'ua fa'atāere te Fatu i te fa'aro'o atu i tā rātou ti'aorora'a nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; noa atu rā 'ua fa'aro'o te Fatu i tā rātou mau ti'aorora'a, 'e 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te ha'amarū i te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ha'amāmā ri'i rātou i tā rātou mau hōpoi'a ; 'aita rā te Fatu i fa'aora ia rātou i te fa'atītira'a.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ri'i rātou i te manuia i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata ho'i rātou i te fa'arahi i tā rātou fa'a'apura'a i te sītona, 'e te fa'a'amura'a i te mau nana māmoe, 'e te mau nana pua'atoro, 'e 'aita rātou i pohe i te po'ia.
- 17 I teienei e rave rahi te mau vahine i reira, 'ua rahi atu rātou i te mau tāne ; nō reira 'ua fa'aue atu te ari'i ra 'o Limehi 'ia hōro'a te mau tāne ato'a i te tatururura'a i te mau vahine 'ivi 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia pohe nō te po'ia ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou nō te rahi o te ta'ata i taparahihia.
- 18 I teienei 'ua 'āmui ihora te mau ta'ata ato'a o Limehi i roto i te pupu hō'ē i te mau tau e au, 'e 'ua tūa'i ho'i rātou i tā rātou sītona 'e tā rātou mau nana māmoe.

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

- 19 E 'aita te ari'i i haere i rāpae'au i te mau aua o te 'oire, maori rā tei pīha'i iho tōna mau tīa'i iāna, i mata'u ho'i 'oia 'o te tupu te hō'ē mea e riro atu 'oia i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 20 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia hi'ohi'o māite i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, 'o te tupu te hō'ē mea e roa'a ai ia rātou te mau tahu'a tei horo 'ē atu i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e tei 'eiā ho'i i te mau tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e tei fa'atupu i te pau rahi 'ia tae mai i ni'a iho ia rātou.
- 21 'E 'ua hina'aro roa rātou 'ia haru ia rātou 'e 'ia fa'autu'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua haere mai ho'i rātou i te fenua nō Nephi i te pō, 'e 'ua hōpoi 'ē atu i tā rātou sītona 'e tā rātou mau tao'a faufa'a rahi e rave rahi ; nō reira 'ua tīa'i noa rātou ia rātou.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ore roa te pe'ape'a i rōpū i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau ta'ata o Limehi, ē tae noa atu i te tau i tae mai ai Amona 'e tōna mau taea'e i taua fenua ra.
- 23 Tē pārahi ra te ari'i 'e tōna tīa'i ato'a i rāpae'au i te 'ūputa, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra rāua ia Amona 'e tōna mau taea'e ; 'e 'ua mana'o ihora rāua ē, e mau tahu'a teie nō Noa, nō reira 'ua fa'aue ihora 'oia 'ia haruhia, 'e 'ia ru'uru'uhia 'e 'ia hurihia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a. 'E 'āhiri e mau tahu'a rātou nō Noa, 'ua fa'aue ia 'oia 'ia taparahihia rātou.
- 24 'Āre'a rā 'ia 'ite a'era 'oia ē, e 'ere ia 'o rātou, 'e e mau taea'e rā nōna, 'e 'ua haere mai rātou mai te fenua nō Zarahemela mai, 'ua 'ī ihora 'oia i te 'oa'oa rahi roa.
- 25 I teieni hou te taera'a mai o Amona, 'ua tonu atu te ari'i ra 'o Limehi i te tahi mau tāne nō te 'imi i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; 'aita rā te reira i 'itea ia rātou, 'e 'ua mo'e rātou i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 26 'Āre'a rā, 'ua 'itea ia rātou te tahi fenua i ta'atahia i muta'a ihora ; 'oia ia, e fenua i tāpo'ihia i te mau ivi marō ; 'oia ia, e fenua i ta'atahia na, 'e 'ua ha'amouhia ; 'e tē mana'o ra rātou ē, 'o te fenua ra ia nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua ho'i mai ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e 'ua tae mai rātou i te 'ōtī'a o te fenua i nā mahana rī'i hou te taera'a mai o Amona.

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

27 'E 'ua hōpoi mai rātou i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau nā muri ia rātou, 'oia ia, te hō'ē pāpa'a parau nō te feiā nō rātou te mau ivi i 'iteahia e rātou ra ; 'e 'ua 'ō'otihia te reira i ni'a iho i te mau 'api i hāmanihia i te 'ōfa'i metalo ra.

28 'E i teienei 'ia 'ite a'era Limehi, nā roto mai i te vaha o Amona ē, 'ua roa'a ia Mosia te hōro'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra e ti'a ai iāna 'ia 'iriti i taua mau mea i 'ō'otihia ra, 'ua 'i fa'ahou ihora 'oia i te 'oa'oa ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'oa'oa ato'a ho'i Amona.

29 'E 'ua 'oto rahi Amona 'e tōna mau taea'e nō te mea 'ua rahi tō rātou mau taea'e i taparahihia.

30 'E 'oia ato'a nō te mea 'ua fa'ati'a te ari'i ra 'o Noa 'e tōna mau tahu'a 'ia rave te mau ta'ata i te mau hara e rave rahi 'e te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino i mua i te Atua ; 'e 'ua 'oto ato'a rātou i te pohera'a o Abinadi ; 'e nō te revara'a atu ho'i 'o Alama 'e te mau ta'ata i pe'e atu iāna, 'o tei fa'ati'a i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua nā roto i te pūai 'e te mana o te Atua, 'e te fa'aro'o ho'i i te mau parau i parauhia e Abinadi.

31 'Oia ia, 'ua 'oto rātou nō tō rātou revara'a, nō te mea 'aita rātou i 'ite i te vāhi tā rātou i haere. I teienei e 'oa'oa roa rātou 'ia 'āmui atu ia rātou, nō te mea 'ua fafau ato'a rātou i te tahi fafaura'a i te Atua 'ia tāvini iāna 'e 'ia ha'apa'o i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a.

32 'E i teienei mai te taera'a mai o Amona, 'ua fafau ato'a te ari'i ra 'o Limehi 'e tōna mau ta'ata e rave rahi i te tahi fafaura'a i te Atua, 'ia tāvini iāna 'e 'ia ha'apa'o i tāna mau fa'auera'a.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hina'aro Limehi 'e tōna mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia bāpetizohia ; 'āre'a rā 'aita roa hō'ē a'e ta'ata i taua fenua ra tei iāna te mana nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra. 'E 'ua pāto'i Amona 'ia rave i te reira, nō te mea 'ua mana'o 'oia e 'ere 'oia i te tāvini ti'amā.

34 Nō reira 'aita rātou i fa'ariro ia rātou iho 'ei 'ēkālesia, 'ua ti'a'i rā i te Vārua o te Fatu. I teienei 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia riro ato'a rātou mai ia Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e 'o tei haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara.

35 'Ua hina'aro rātou 'ia bāpetizohia 'ei 'ite 'e 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū ē, 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia tāvini i te Atua ma tō rātou 'ā'au ato'a ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ha'amaoro rātou i te tau ; 'e e fa'a'itehia te 'ā'amu nō tō rātou bāpetizora'ahia i muri nei.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

36 'E i teienei 'ua 'imi Amona 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e te ari'i ra 'o Limehi 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata, i te rāve'a 'ia fa'aora ia rātou iho i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana 'e i te fa'atītira'a.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

Mosiah 22

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora Amona rāua te ari'i ra 'o Limehi i te paraparau atu i te mau ta'ata nāhea rātou 'ia fa'aora ia rātou iho i te fa'atitira'a ; 'e 'ua ha'aputupu rāua i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te vāhi hō'ē ; 'e 'ua nā reira rāua 'ia ti'a ia rāua 'ia fāri'i i te reo o te mau ta'ata nō ni'a i taua 'ōpuara'ara.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa i 'itea ia rātou te rāve'a nō te fa'aora ia rātou iho i te fa'atitira'a, maori rā 'ia rave i tā rātou mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i, 'e tā rātou mau nana māmoē, 'e tā rātou mau nana pua'atoro, 'e tō rātou mau ti'ahapa, 'e 'ia reva atu i roto i te mēdēbara ; nō te rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'aita roa e ti'a i te mau ta'ata o Limehi 'ia tama'i atu ia rātou, nō te mana'ora'a 'ia fa'aora ia rātou iho i te fa'atitira'a ma te fa'a'ohipa i te 'o'e.
- 3 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Gideona 'e ti'a atu ra i mua i te ari'i, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra iāna : I teienei, 'e te ari'i, 'ua fa'aro'o pinepine a'enei 'oe i tā'u ra mau parau, 'a tama'i ai tātou i tō tātou mau taea'e, i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 4 'E i teienei, e te ari'i, mai te mea ē, 'aita ā 'oe i 'ite iā'u 'ei tāvini faufa'a 'ore, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o a'enei 'oe i tā'u mau parau ato'a, 'e e mea faufa'a ia 'oe na, tē hina'aro nei ia vau 'ia fa'aro'o ato'a mai 'oe i tā'u nei mau parau i teie taime, 'e e riro vau 'ei tāvini nō 'oe 'e e fa'aora vau i teie nei mau ta'ata i te fa'atitira'a.
- 5 'E 'ua fa'ati'a atu ra te ari'i iāna 'ia paraparau mai. 'E 'ua parau atu ra Gideona iāna :
- 6 'A hi'o na i te 'ē'a i muri, 'o tē haere ra nā roto i te patu i muri, i te pae muri o te 'oire. I te ru'i e ta'ero noa te mau 'āti Lamana, 'oia ho'i, te mau tīa'i fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira, e fa'atae atu tātou i te hō'ē fa'auera'a i rotopū i teie nei mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ia ha'aputupu rātou i tā rātou mau nana māmoē 'e te mau nana pua'atoro, 'e 'ia fa'ahaere atu ia rātou i roto i te mēdēbara i te ru'i.
- 7 'E e haere au mai te au i tā 'oe fa'auera'a 'e e ha'ape'e roa atu i te 'aufau i te tute hope'a nō te uaina i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e ta'ero rātou ; 'e i reira tātou e haere ti'a atu ai nā roto i te 'ē'a mo'emo'e nā te pae 'aui o tō rātou pūhapara'a 'a ta'ero ai 'e 'a ta'oto ai ho'i rātou.

Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

8 'E nā reira tātou 'e tā tātou mau vahine 'e tā tātou mau tamari'i, 'e tā tātou mau nana māmoē, 'e tā tātou mau nana pua'atoro i te haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e e haere atu tātou nā te fenua ra nō Siloma.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aro'o mai ra te ari'i i tā Gideona ra mau parau.

10 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra te ari'i 'o Limehi 'ia ha'aputupuutu mai tōna ra mau ta'ata i tā rātou mau nana ; 'e 'ua fa'atae atu 'oia i te tute nō te uaina i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua fa'atae rahi atu 'oia i te uaina 'ei tao'a hōro'a nā rātou ; 'e 'ua inu rahi noa rātou i te uaina tā te ari'i tā Limehi i fa'atae atu ia rātou.

11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua reva atu ra te mau ta'ata o te ari'i 'o Limehi 'e tā rātou mau nana māmoē 'e tā rātou mau nana pua'atoro i te ru'i i roto te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua haere atu rātou nā te fenua ra nō Siloma i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua fāriu ti'a atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua arata'ihia rātou e Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e.

12 'E 'ua 'āfa'i ato'a rātou i tā rātou 'auro ato'a 'e te 'ārio, 'e tā rātou mau tao'a faufa'a rahi tei mara'a ia rātou ; 'e tā rātou ato'a ra mau mā'a i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua tere noa atu ra rātou.

13 'E 'ia ma'iri a'era e rave rahi mahana i roto i te mēdēbara, 'ua tae atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua 'āmui atu rātou i tō Mosia mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua riro ihora rātou i raro a'e i tāna fa'aterera'a.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fāri'i mai Mosia ia rātou ma te 'oa'oa ; 'e 'ua fāri'i ato'a 'oia i tā rātou mau pāpa'a parau 'e te mau pāpa'a parau ato'a tei 'iteahia 'e te mau ta'ata o Limehi.

15 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'ua reva 'ē atu te mau ta'ata o Limehi i rāpae i te fenua i te ru'i, 'ua tonono atu ra rātou i te nu'u fa'ehau i roto i te mēdēbara nō te tāpapa ia rātou.

16 'E i muri a'e i tō rātou tāpapa-noa-ra'a ia rātou e piti mahana, 'aita e ti'a ia rātou 'ia pe'e fa'ahou atu i tō rātou mau 'ē'a, 'e nō reira 'ua mo'e rātou i roto i te mēdēbara.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

Tē 'ā'amu nō Alama 'e te mau ta'ata o te Fatu, tei ti'avarubia i roto i te mēdēbara e te mau ta'ata o te ari'i Noa.

Mosiah 23

- 1 I teienei, 'ua fa'aarahia Alama e te Fatu ē, e tae mai te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te ari'i Noa i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e nō reira 'ua ha'aputupu rātou i tā rātou mau nana māmoē, 'e 'ua rave ihora i tā rātou sītona, e haere atu ra i roto i te mēdēbara nā mua atu i te mau nu'u fa'ehau a te ari'i Noa.
- 2 'E 'ua ha'apūai te Fatu ia rātou, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ro'ohia 'e 'ia ha'amouhia e te mau ta'ata o te ari'i Noa.
- 3 'E 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou e va'u a'era mahana tō rātou tere i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 4 'E 'ua tae mai ra rātou i te hō'ē fenua, 'oia ia, i te hō'ē fenua nehenehe 'e te au maita'i, te hō'ē fenua pape mā.
- 5 'E 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te fa'a'apu i te fenua, 'e i te hāmani i te mau fare ; 'oia ia, e feiā itoito rātou, 'e 'ua rave pūai ho'i i te 'ohipa.
- 6 'E 'ua hina'aro ihora te mau ta'ata 'ia riro Alama 'ei ari'i nō rātou, nō te mea 'ua herehia 'oia e tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 7 'Ua parau atu ra rā 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, e 'ere i te mea tītauhia 'ia fa'ati'a tātou i te hō'ē ari'i ; nō te mea tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : 'Eiaha 'outou e mana'o ē 'ua hau te tahi ta'ata i te tahi, e 'eiaha ho'i te tahi ta'ata e mana'o iāna iho ē, 'ua hau 'oia i te tahi atu ; nō reira tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou e 'ere i te mea tītauhia 'ia fa'ati'a 'outou i te hō'ē ari'i.
- 8 'Āre'a rā, 'āhiri e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'ati'a i te ta'ata parauti'a i te mau tau ato'a 'ei ari'i nō 'outou, e mea ti'a ia 'ia fa'ati'a 'outou i te ari'i i reira.
- 9 'Āre'a rā a ha'amana'o i te mau 'ohipa 'īno a te ari'i Noa 'e tōna ra mau tahu'a ; 'e 'ua mau ato'a vau i roto i te mārei, i rave ai au i te mau mea vi'ivi'i e rave rahi i mua i te aro o te Fatu, 'e 'ua tātarahapa ho'i au ma te māuiui rahi.

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.

Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

10 'Āre'a rā 'ia hope a'era te mau 'ati e rave rahi, 'ua fa'aro'o mai ra te Fatu i tā'u mau ti'aorora'a, 'e 'ua pāhono mai ra ho'i 'oia i tā'u mau pure, 'e 'ua fa'ariro ho'i 'oia iā'u 'ei mauha'a i roto i tōna nā rima nō te 'āfa'i mai ia 'outou e rave rahi i te 'ite i tāna parau mau.

11 'Āre'a rā, 'aita vau e fa'ahanahana nei iā'u iho i roto i te reira, nō te mea e 'ere ho'i au i te mea ti'amā 'ia fa'ahanahana iā'u iho nei.

12 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'ua hāmani-'ino-hia 'outou e te ari'i Noa, 'e 'ua riro 'outou 'ei tītī nāna 'e nā tōna mau tahu'a, 'e 'ua arata'ihia ho'i 'outou i roto i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino e rātou ; nō reira 'ua ru'uru'uhia 'outou 'e te mau tā'amu nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.

13 'E i teienei, 'ua fa'aorahia 'outou e te mana o te Atua i taua mau ru'uru'ura'a ra ; 'oia iā, i te rima o te ari'i Noa 'e tōna mau ta'ata, 'e 'oia ato'a i te mau tā'amura'a nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e nō reira 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia tāmau māite ā 'outou i roto i teie ti'amāra'a i fa'ati'amāhia ai 'outou ra, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ti'aturi i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ei ari'i nō 'outou.

14 'E 'oia ato'a 'eiaha 'outou e ti'aturi i te tahi ta'ata 'ei 'orometua 'e 'ei ha'api'i nō 'outou, maori rā e ta'ata 'oia nō te Atua, i te haerera'a nā tōna ra mau 'ē'a 'e te ha'apa'ora'a i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a.

15 'Ua nā reira Alama i te ha'api'i atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ia aroha te ta'ata tāta'itahi i tōna ta'ata tupu mai tāna e aroha iāna ihora, 'ia 'ore te mārōra'a 'ia tupu i rotopū ia rātou ra.

16 'E i teienei, 'o Alama tō rātou tahu'a rahi, 'e nāna ho'i i fa'ati'a i tā rātou 'ēkālesia.

17 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa e ta'ata i fāri'i i te mana nō te a'o 'e nō te ha'api'i, maori rā nā roto iāna nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra. Nō reira 'ua fa'atōro'a 'oia i te mau tahu'a ato'a 'e te mau 'orometua ato'a ho'i nō rātou ra ; 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e i fa'atōro'ahia maori rā 'o te feiā parauti'a ana'e.

18 Nō reira 'ua pāruru rātou i tō rātou mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua tauturu ho'i ia rātou i roto i te mau mea parauti'a.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua manuia maita'i rātou i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i te i'oa o taua fenua ra 'o Helama.

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu rātou i te rahi 'e 'ua manuia maita'i ho'i rātou i taua fenua ra nō Helama ; 'e 'ua patu ihora rātou i te hō'ē 'oire, 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora i te i'oa o taua 'oire ra 'o Helama.

21 'Āre'a rā 'ua ti'a i te Fatu 'ia 'avau mai i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, tē tāmata mai ra 'oia i tō rātou fa'a'oroma'i 'e tō rātou fa'aro'o ho'i.

22 'Āre'a rā—'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi iāna ra, e fa'ateiteihia ia i te mahana hope'a ra. 'Oia ia, 'ua nā-reira-hia teie nei feiā.

23 Inaha ho'i, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou ē, 'ua arata'ihia rātou i roto i te fa'atitira'a, 'e 'aore e ti'a i te tahi 'ia fa'aora ia rātou, maori rā 'o te Fatu tō rātou Atua ana'e ra ; 'oia ia, te Atua o Aberahama 'e Isaaka 'e Iakoba.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia rātou ē, 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a atu ra 'oia i tōna mana rahi ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa rahi rātou.

25 Inaha ho'i, i muri a'era, 'a pārahi ai rātou i te fenua ra nō Helama, 'oia ia, i te 'oire nō Helama, 'e 'a fa'a'apu noa ai ho'i rātou i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, inaha, tei te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua ra te tahi nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana.

26 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua horo mai ra te mau taea'e o Alama mai tā rātou mau fa'a'apu mai, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu ihora rātou ia rātou iho i roto i te 'oire nō Helama ; 'e 'ua mata'u roa ihora rātou nō te taera'a mai te mau 'āti Lamana ra

27 'Āre'a rā 'ua haere mai ra Alama 'e 'ua ti'a a'era i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua a'o atu ra ia rātou 'eiaha rātou e mata'u, 'ia ha'amana'o rā i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e nāna ho'i rātou e fa'aora.

28 Nō reira 'ua fa'a'ore rātou i tō rātou mata'u, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te ti'aoro atu i te Fatu 'ia ha'amarū 'oia i te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia fa'aorahia rātou, 'e tā rātou mau vahine, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amarū ihora te Fatu i te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E 'ua haere atu ra Alama e tōna mau taea'e, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra ia rātou iho i roto i tō rātou rima ; 'e 'ua rave ihora te mau 'āti Lamana i te fenua ra nō Helama.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

30 I teienei, 'ua mo'e roa te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana tei a'ua'u atu i te mau ta'ata o te ari'i Limehi, 'oia ia, 'ua mo'e roa rātou i roto i te mēdēbara e rave rahi mahana.

31 'E inaha, 'ua 'itehia ia rātou te mau tahu'a o te ari'i Noa i te tahi vāhi tā rātou i ma'iri i te i'oa ia Amulona ; 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te pārahi i te fenua nō Amulona, 'e 'ua ha'amata ho'i i te fa'a'apu i te fenua.

32 I teienei 'o Amulona te i'oa o te ta'ata fa'atere o taua mau tahu'a ra.

33 'E i muri a'era 'ua tāparu atu ra Amulona i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua tono ato'a atu ra 'oia i tā rātou mau vahine, 'oia ho'i, te mau tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana, nō te tāparu atu i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia taparahi i tā rātou mau tāne.

34 'E 'ua aroha mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia Amulona 'e tōna mau taea'e, 'e 'aita atu ra ho'i rātou i taparahi ia rātou nō tā rātou mau vahine.

35 'E 'ua 'āmui ihora Amulona 'e tōna mau taea'e i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e tē haere noa ra rātou nā roto i te mēdēbara i te 'imira'a i te fenua nō Nephi, 'e 'ua 'ite a'era rātou i te fenua nō Helama, tei pārahihia e Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fafau mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia Alama 'e tōna mau taea'e ē, mai te mea e fa'a'ite atu rātou ia rātou i te 'ē'a ē tae atu ai i te fenua ra nō Nephi, e'ita rātou e taparahi ia rātou 'e e hōro'a mai rātou i tō rātou ti'amāra'a.

37 'Āre'a rā i muri iho i tō Alama fa'a'itera'a atu i te 'ē'a ia rātou ē tae atu ai i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'aita te mau 'āti Lamana i ha'apa'o i tā rātou fafaura'a ; 'ua fa'ati'a rā rātou i te mau tīa'i ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ra nō Helama, i ni'a a'e ia Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e.

38 'E 'ua haere atu te toe'a o rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi ; 'e 'ua ho'i mai ra te tahi pae o rātou i te fenua ra nō Helama, 'e 'ua 'āfa'i ato'a mai rātou i te mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i a te mau tīa'i 'o tei vaiihohia atu i taua fenua ra.

39 'E 'ua fa'ati'a mai ra te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia fa'arirohia Amulona 'ei ari'i 'e 'ei tāvana i ni'a a'e i tōna ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Helama ; 'āre'a rā 'aita tōna e mana 'ia rave i te tahi atu mea tei 'ore i au i te mana'o o te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 24

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua au-roa-hia mai ra Amulona e te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira 'ua fa'ati'a mai te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana iāna 'e tōna ra mau taea'e 'ia fa'ata'ahia rātou 'ei mau 'orometua i ni'a iho i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, i ni'a i te mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Semelona, 'e i te fenua ra nō Siloma, 'e i te fenua ra ho'i i Amulona.
- 2 'Ua haruhia teie mau fenua ato'a ra 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira, 'ua fa'ata'a te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te tahi mau ta'ata 'ei ari'i nō teie mau fenua ato'a.
- 3 'E i teieni te i'oa o te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o Lamana ia, 'e 'ua ma'irihia 'oia i te i'oa o tōna metua tāne ; 'e nō reira 'ua parauhia tōna i'oa 'o te ari'i Lamana. 'E 'ua riro 'oia 'ei ari'i nō te mau ta'ata e rave rahi.
- 4 'E 'ua fa'ata'a 'oia i te mau taea'e o Amulona 'ei mau 'orometua i te mau fenua ato'a i pārahia e tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e nō reira 'ua ha'amatahia te reo o te mau 'āti Nephi i te ha'api'ihia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 5 E mau ta'ata ho'i rātou tei aroha te tahi i te tahi ; 'āre'a rā 'aita rātou i 'ite i te Atua ; 'e 'aita ho'i te mau taea'e o Amulona i ha'api'i ia rātou i te tahi mea nō ni'a i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'aita ho'i i te ture a Mose ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i rātou i ha'api'i ia rātou i te mau parau a Abinadi.
- 6 'Āre'a rā 'ua ha'api'i rātou ia rātou 'ia pāpa'i i tā rātou pāpa'a parau nō ni'a ia rātou iho, 'e 'ia pāpa'i atu ho'i te tahi i te tahi.
- 7 'E 'ua tupu atu ra te tao'a a te mau 'āti Lamana i te rahi, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te ho'o atu i te tahi 'e te tahi, 'e 'ua rahi roa atu ra tā rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou 'ia riro 'ei feiā ha'avare 'e te 'ite i te rāve'a pa'ari nō teie nei ao, 'oia ia, 'ei feiā ha'avare, i te hina'arora'a i te mau huru 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a 'e te haru tao'a, 'eiaha rā i rotopū i tō rātou iho mau taea'e.
- 8 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora Amulona i te fa'a'ohipa i tōna mana i ni'a a'e ia Alama 'e tōna mau taea'e, 'e 'ua ha'amata ho'i 'oia i te hāmani 'ino mai iāna, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu i tāna ra mau tamari'i 'ia hāmani 'ino atu i tā rātou mau tamari'i.

Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

- 9 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i Amulona ia Alama, 'o 'oia ho'i te hō'ē o te mau tahu'a o te ari'i, 'e 'o 'oia ho'i tei ti'aturi i te mau parau a Abinadi 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia atu mai mua atu i te ari'i, 'e nō reira 'ua riri 'oia iāna ; e tei raro a'e ho'i 'oia i te ari'i ra ia Lamana, 'e 'ua fa'ahepo noa mai ho'i 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua tu'u i te mau 'ohipa rave 'atā i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua tu'u ato'a i te mau ra'atira hi'opo'a 'ohipa i ni'a ia rātou.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, nō te rahi o tō rātou mau 'ati 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te ti'aoro māite atu i te Atua.
- 11 'E 'ua fa'auae atu ra Amulona ia rātou 'ia fa'aea i tā rātou mau ti'aorora'a ; 'e e tu'u 'oia i te tahi mau tīa'i i ni'a ia rātou nō te hi'opo'a ia rātou, 'e 'o te ta'ata e 'itehia i te purera'a i te Atua e ha'apohehia ia 'oia.
- 12 'E 'aita atu ra Alama 'e tōna mau ta'ata i fa'ateitei i tō rātou reo i ni'a i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'āre'a rā 'ua nīni'i māite atu rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au iāna ; 'e 'ua 'ite mai ho'i 'oia i te mau mana'o o tō rātou mau 'ā'au.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu ia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau 'ati, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'A fa'ateitei mai i tō 'outou upo'o 'e 'ia au maīta'i noa, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au i te fafau'a tā 'outou i fafau mai iā'u ra ; 'e e fafau atu ho'i au i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'e e fa'aora ho'i ia rātou i te fa'atītira'a.
- 14 'E e ha'amāmā vau i te mau hōpoi'a teiaha i tu'uhia i ni'a iho i tō 'outou mau taponu, 'e e'ita roa 'outou e 'ite i te teiaha'a nō te reira i ni'a i tō 'outou mau tua, 'a vai noa ai 'outou i roto i te fa'atītira'a ; 'e e rave au i te reira 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia riro 'ei mau 'ite nō'u a muri a'e, 'e 'ia 'ite pāpū ho'i 'outou ē, tē hi'o aroha nei au, te Fatu te Atua, i tō'u mau ta'ata i roto i tō rātou mau 'ati.
- 15 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua riro te mau hōpoi'a i tu'uhia i ni'a iho ia Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e 'ei mea māmā ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'apūai te Fatu ia rātou 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i te mau hōpoi'a ma te 'ōhie, 'e 'ua auraro ihora rātou ma te 'ā'au tae 'e te fa'a'oroma'i i te mau hina'aro ato'a o te Fatu.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o rahi 'e tō rātou fa'a'oroma'i 'ua tae fa'ahou mai ra te reo o te Fatu ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ia au maīta'i noa 'outou, ananahi e fa'aora ai au ia 'outou i te fa'atītira'a.
- 17 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia ia Alama : E haere 'oe nā mua i teie nei feiā, 'e e haere ato'a vau nā muri iho ia 'oe 'e e fa'aora i teie nei feiā i te fa'atītira'a.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

18 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu Alama 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata i tā rātou mau nana i te ru'i, 'e tā rātou sītona ho'i ; 'oia ia, tē ha'aputupu noa ra rātou i tā rātou mau nana māmoe ē hope roa a'e te ru'i.

19 'E 'ia po'ipo'i a'era 'ua fa'atupu te Fatu i te vare'a ta'oto rahi i ni'a i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'oia ia, 'ua ro'ohia te mau ra'atira hi'opo'a 'ohipa i te ta'oto rahi.

20 'E 'ua reva atu ra Alama 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e hope a'era te mahana tā'āto'a i te haerehia e rātou, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i roto i te hō'ē peho, 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i te i'oa o taua peho ra 'o Alama, nō te mea nāna i arata'i ia rātou i roto i te mēdēbara.

21 'Oia ia, i roto i te peho nō Alama 'ua pūpū atu ra rātou i tō rātou māuruuru i te Atua nō te mea 'ua hi'o aroha mai 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amāmā mai i tā rātou mau hōpoi'a, 'e 'ua fa'aora ho'i ia rātou i te fa'atītira'a ; i vai na ho'i rātou i roto i te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'aita roa e ta'ata e ti'a 'ia fa'aora ia rātou, maori rā 'o te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

22 'E 'ua ha'amāuruuru atu ra rātou i te Atua, 'oia ia, tō rātou mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e tā rātou mau vahine ato'a, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i ato'a 'o tei 'ite i te parau, 'ua fa'ateitei rātou i tō rātou reo i te 'āruera'a i tō rātou ra Atua.

23 'E i teienei 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu ia Alama : 'A haere 'oi'oi atu 'oe 'e teie nei feiā ato'a i rāpae i teie nei fenua, 'ua ara mai ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e tē tāpapa mai nei rātou ia 'oe na ; nō reira, 'a haere atu 'oe i rāpae i teie nei fenua 'e e tāpe'a vau i te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i teie peho, 'ia 'ore rātou e haere atu nō te tāpapa i teie nei feiā.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua reva 'ē atu ra rātou i rāpae i taua peho ra, 'e 'ua haere noa atu ra rātou nā roto i te mēdēbara.

25 'E 'ia hope a'era nā mahana e hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti i roto i te mēdēbara 'ua tae atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; 'e 'ua fāri'i mai te ari'i Mosia ia rātou ma te 'oa'oa.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

Mosiah 25

- 1 'E i teienei 'ua ha'aputuputu mai ra te ari'i ra 'o Mosia i te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 2 I teienei, 'aita te mau tamari'i a Nephi i rahi, 'oia ho'i te mau hua'ai o Nephi, i te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela, 'oia ho'i te hua'ai o Muleka, 'o tei pe'e mai iāna i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 3 'E 'aita ho'i te mau ta'ata o Nephi 'e te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela i rahi atu i tō te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'oia ia, 'ua iti iho rātou i te 'āfara'a i te rahi.
- 4 'E i teienei 'ua ha'aputuputuhia mai te mau ta'ata ato'a o Nephi, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i o Zarahemela, 'e 'ua ha'aputuputuhia rātou i roto i nā pupu e piti.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tai'o atu ra Mosia, 'e 'ua fa'auē ato'a atu 'oia 'ia tai'ohia te mau pāpa'a parau a Zenifa i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'ua tai'o atu 'oia i te mau pāpa'a parau nō te mau ta'ata o Zenifa, mai te tau i fa'aru'e atu ai rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ē tae roa mai i te tau i ho'i fa'ahou mai ai rātou.
- 6 'E 'ua tai'o ato'a atu ra 'oia i te 'ā'amu o Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e, 'e tō rātou mau 'ati ato'a ho'i, mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ē tae roa mai i te tau i ho'i fa'ahou mai ai rātou.
- 7 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Mosia i te tai'o i te mau pāpa'a parau, 'ua ro'ohia ihora tōna mau ta'ata i pārahi i taua fenua ra i te māere 'e te 'ūmere.
- 8 Nō te mea 'aita rātou i 'ite ē, nāhea rātou 'ia feruri ; 'ia 'ite a'era rātou i te feiā i fa'aorahia mai i te fa'atītira'a 'ua 'i roa ihora rātou i te 'oa'oa rahi.
- 9 'E teie fa'ahou, 'ia ha'amana'o rātou i tō rātou mau taea'e i taparahihia 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua 'i roa ihora rātou i te 'oto, 'e 'ua rahi ho'i te tahera'a o tō rātou roimata nō te 'oto.
- 10 'E teie fa'ahou, 'ia ha'amana'o rātou i te maita'i o te Atua, 'e tōna ra mana i te fa'aora'a ia Alama 'e tōna mau taea'e i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana 'e i te fa'atītira'a ho'i, 'ua fa'ateitei atu ra rātou i tō rātou reo 'e 'ua ha'amāuruuru atu ra i te Atua.

Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

- 11 'E teie fa'ahou, 'ia ha'amana'o rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana, i tō rātou mau taea'e, i tō rātou huru 'ino 'e te vi'ivi'i, 'ua 'i ihora rātou i te māuiui 'e te autā nō te hina'aro 'ia maita'i tō rātou mau vārua.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri ihora te mau tamari'i a Amulona 'e tōna mau taea'e ato'a, tei rave i te mau tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana 'ei vahine nā rātou, i te mau peu a tō rātou mau metua, 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i fa'ati'a 'ia parauhia rātou i te i'oa o tō rātou mau tupuna, nō reira 'ua rave rātou i te i'oa o Nephi, 'ia parauhia rātou te mau tamari'i a Nephi, 'e 'ia tai'ohia rātou i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i parauhia te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 13 'E i teienei, 'ua tai'ohia te mau ta'ata ato'a o Zarahemela i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te mea 'aita te bāsileia i tu'uhia i te tahi atu ta'ata, maori rā i te hua'ai o Nephi.
- 14 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Mosia i te paraura'a 'e i te tai'ora'a atu i te mau ta'ata, 'ua hina'aro 'oia 'ia paraparau ato'a atu Alama i te mau ta'ata.
- 15 'E 'ua paraparau atu Alama ia rātou, i muri iho i tō rātou ha'aputuputura'a ia rātou i roto i te tahi mau pupu rarahi, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i terā pupu 'e i terā pupu, i te porora'a atu i te mau ta'ata i te parau nō te tātarahapa 'e te fa'aro'o i te Fatu.
- 16 'E 'ua a'o atu 'oia i te mau ta'ata o Limehi 'e tōna mau taea'e, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i fa'aorahia i te fa'atitira'a, 'ia ha'amana'o rātou ē nā te Fatu i fa'aora ia rātou.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama ha'api'ira'a i te mau ta'ata i te mau mea e rave rahi, 'e 'ia fa'aoti ho'i 'oia i tāna paraparaura'a atu ia rātou, 'ua hina'aro ihora te ari'i ra 'o Limehi 'ia bāpetizohia 'oia ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ho'i tōna mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia bāpetizo-ato'a-hia rātou.
- 18 Nō reira, 'ua haere atu ra Alama i raro i te pape, 'e 'ua bāpetizo ihora 'oia ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua bāpetizo 'oia ia rātou mai tāna i nā reira i tōna mau taea'e i roto i te mau pape nō Moromona ; 'oia ia, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i bāpetizohia ra, 'ua riro rātou 'ei mau ta'ata nō te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ; 'e nō tō rātou fa'aro'o i te mau parau a Alama ra i nā-reira-hia ai rātou.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a atu ra te ari'i ra 'o Mosia 'ia fa'ati'a Alama i te mau 'āma'a nō te 'ēkālesia ē'ati noa a'e te fenua nō Zarahemela ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu 'oia i te mana iāna nō te fa'atōro'a i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua i roto i te mau 'āma'a ato'a nō te 'ēkālesia.
- 20 I teienei nō te rahi ho'i o te mau ta'ata i nā-reira-hia ai, nō te mea 'aita e ti'a i te hō'ē noa iho 'orometua 'ia fa'atere ia rātou ato'a ; 'e 'aita ato'a e ti'a ia rātou ato'a 'ia fa'aro'o i te parau a te Atua i roto i te hō'ē putuputura'a.
- 21 Nō reira 'ua ha'aputupu rātou ia rātou i roto i te tahi mau pupu ta'a 'ē, i parauhia te mau 'āma'a nō te 'ēkālesia ; tei roto ho'i i te mau 'āma'a ato'a nō te 'ēkālesia te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua, 'e 'ua ha'api'i atu te mau tahu'a ato'a i te parau mai te au i tei hōro'ahia mai ia rātou e te vaha o Alama.
- 22 'E noa atu ā te rahi o te mau 'āma'a o te 'ēkālesia, hō'ē noa iho rā ia 'ēkālesia ; 'oia ia, te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i e mea 'ē atu i ha'api'ihia i roto i te mau 'āma'a ato'a nō te 'ēkālesia, maori rā te parau nō te tātarahapa 'e te fa'aro'o i te Atua.
- 23 'E i teienei tē vai ra e hitu 'āma'a nō te 'ēkālesia i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela. 'E i muri a'era 'o rātou 'o tei hina'aro i te rave i ni'a iho ia rātou i te i'oa o te Mesia, 'e 'aore rā i tō te Atua, 'ua 'āmui mai ia rātou i roto i te mau 'āma'a nō te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ;
- 24 'E 'ua pi'ihia rātou te mau ta'ata o te Atua. 'E 'ua nīni'i mai te Fatu i tōna Vārua i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'ihia 'e 'ua ha'amanuiahia rātou i ni'a i te fenua.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mosiah 26

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, e rave rahi mau u'i 'āpī 'o tei 'ore i māramarama i te mau parau a te ari'i Beniamina, nō te mea e mau tamari'i ri'i rātou i te tau i parau mai ai 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e 'aita rātou i ti'aturi i te peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua.
- 2 'Aita rātou i ti'aturi i tei parauhia nō ni'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a mai te pohe mai, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i ti'aturi i te parau nō te taera'a mai o te Mesia.
- 3 'E i teienei, nō tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore 'aita atu ra i ti'a ia rātou 'ia māramarama i te parau a te Atua ; 'e 'ua 'eta'eta tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 4 'E 'aita rātou i hina'aro 'ia bāpetizohia ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i 'āmui mai i te 'ēkālesia. 'E e feiā fa'ata'a-'ē-hia rātou i tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e 'ua vai noa rātou mai te reira, 'oia ho'i, i roto i tō rātou hina'aro o te tino 'e te hara ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou e ti'aoro atu i te Fatu tō rātou Atua.
- 5 'E i teienei, i te taime nō te fa'aterera'a a Mosia ra, 'aita tō rātou rahi i au i te 'āfara'a o te mau ta'ata o te Atua ; 'āre'a rā nō te mau mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau taea'e i tupu ai rātou i te rahi.
- 6 I te mea ē, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'avare ihora rātou i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i roto i te 'ēkālesia i tā rātou mau parau tāvaimanino, 'e 'ua arata'i ia rātou 'ia rave i te mau hara e rave rahi, nō reira 'ua ti'a roa ia rātou 'o tei rave i te hara 'e tei roto i te 'ēkālesia, 'ia a'ohia e te 'ēkālesia.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua arata'ihia atu ra rātou i mua i te mau tahu'a, 'e nā te mau 'orometua i tu'u atu ia rātou i te mau tahu'a, 'e nā te mau tahu'a i arata'i ia rātou i mua ia Alama, 'oia te tahu'a rahi.
- 8 I teienei 'ua hōro'a te ari'i Mosia i te mana ia Alama i ni'a i te 'ēkālesia.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'aita Alama i 'ite i te hō'ē mea nō ni'a ia rātou ; 'āre'a rā e rave rahi te ta'ata tei pari ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua ti'a a'era te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu ra nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino e rave rahi.
- 10 I teienei 'aita te hō'ē mea mai te reira te huru i tupu na i roto i te 'ēkālesia ; nō reira 'ua tapitapi Alama i roto i tōna vārua, 'e 'ua fa'ae atu ra 'oia 'ia arata'ihia rātou i mua i te ari'i.

Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

11 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te ari'i : Inaha, teie te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tā mātou i arata'i mai i mua ia 'oe, 'o tei parihia e tō rātou ra mau taea'e ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'itehia rātou i te ravera'a i te mau 'ohipa 'T'ino e rave rahi. 'E 'aita rātou e tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'T'ino ; nō reira 'ua arata'i mai mātou ia rātou i mua ia 'oe, 'ia ha'avā 'oe ia rātou mai te au i tā rātou ra mau hara.

12 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra te ari'i Mosia ia Alama : Inaha, 'aita vau e ha'avā ia rātou ; nō reira, e tu'u atu vau ia rātou i roto i tō 'oe rima 'ia ha'avāhia.

13 'E i teieni, 'ua tapitapi fa'ahou ihora te vārua o Alama ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua ani atu ra i te Fatu i te mea tāna e rave nō ni'a i teie nei mea, nō te mea 'ua mata'u 'oia 'o te hapa 'oia i mua i te aro o te Atua.

14 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tōna nīni'ira'a atu i tōna vārua i te Atua, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :

15 E ao tō 'oe, e Alama, 'e e ao ho'i tō rātou tō tei bāpetizohia i roto i te mau pape o Moromona. 'Ua ha'amaita'ihia 'oe nō tō 'oe fa'aro'o rahi i te mau parau ana'e a tō'u ra tāvini 'o Abinadi.

16 'E e ao tō rātou nō tō rātou fa'aro'o rahi i te mau parau ana'e tā 'oe i parau atu ia rātou ra.

17 'E e ao tō 'oe i te mea 'ua fa'ati'a 'oe i te hō'ē 'ēkālesia i rotopū i teie nei feiā ; 'e e fa'ati'ahia rātou, e riro ho'i rātou 'ei feiā nō'u.

18 'Oia ia, e ao tō teie nei feiā 'o tei hina'aro 'ia amo i tō'u ra i'oa ; nō te mea e ma'irihia ho'i rātou i tō'u i'oa ; 'e nō'u ia rātou.

19 'E nō te mea 'ua ui mai 'oe iā'u nō ni'a i te ta'ata 'ōfati ture, e ao tō 'oe.

20 E tāvini ho'i 'oe nō'u ; 'e tē fafau nei au ia 'oe ē e noa'a ia 'oe te ora mure 'ore ; 'e 'ia tāvini 'oe iā'u nei 'e 'ia haere atu ma tō'u nei i'oa, 'e 'ia ha'aputupu mai i tā'u mau māmoe.

21 'E 'o tei fa'aro'o i tō'u ra reo e riro ia 'ei māmoe nā'u ; 'e e fāri'i 'oe iāna i roto i te 'ēkālesia, 'e e fāri'i ato'a ho'i au iāna.

22 Inaha ho'i, 'o tā'u 'ēkālesia teie ; 'o tē bāpetizohia, e bāpetizohia 'oia i te tātarahapa. 'E 'o tā 'oe e fāri'i e ti'aturi ia 'oia i tō'u ra i'oa ; 'e e fa'a'ore noa vau i tāna mau hara.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

23 'O vau ho'i tē rave i ni'a iā'u iho i te mau hara a tō te ao nei ; 'e nā'u ho'i i hāmani ia rātou ; 'e 'o vau ho'i tē hōro'a iāna 'o tē ti'aturi ē tae noa atu i te hope'a, i te hō'ē pārahira'a i tō'u rima atau.

24 Inaha ho'i, e pi'ihia rātou i tō'u ra i'oa ; 'e 'ia 'ite rātou iā'u ra, e ti'a mai ia rātou, 'e e noa'a ia rātou te hō'ē pārahira'a i tō'u rima 'atau ē a muri noa atu.

25 'E a muri a'era, 'ia 'oto te piti o te pū ra, 'ei reira rātou 'o tei 'ore i 'ite iā'u ra e haere mai ai 'e e ti'a mai ai i mua iā'u.

26 'E i reira rātou e 'ite ai ē, 'o vau te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e tō rātou Tāra'ehara ; 'aita rā rātou i hina'aro 'ia fa'aorahia.

27 'Ei reira e fa'a'ite ai au ia rātou ē, 'aore au i 'ite ia rātou ; 'e e reva atu rātou i roto i te auahi mure 'ore i fa'a'ineinehia nō te diabolō 'e tōna ra mau melahi.

28 Nō reira tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e fa'aro'o i tō'u nei reo, 'eiaha 'oe e fāri'i iāna i roto i tā'u 'ēkālesia, 'e 'aita ho'i au e fāri'i iāna i te mahana hope'a ra.

29 Nō reira tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'a haere ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ōfati i tā'u ra ture, e ha'avā iā 'oe iāna mai te au i te mau hara tāna i rave ; 'e mai te mea ē, e fā'i mai 'oia i tāna mau hara i mua ia 'oe 'e iā'u ato'a nei, 'e 'ia tātarahapa ma tōna 'ā'au ato'a, e fa'a'ore 'oe i tāna ra mau hara, 'e e nā reira ato'a ho'i au.

30 'Oia ia, 'ia tātarahapa pinepine ana'e tō'u mau ta'ata, e fa'a'ore iā vau i tā rātou ra mau hapa iā'u nei.

31 'E 'ia fa'a'ore ato'a 'outou i tā 'outou iho mau hapa te tahi i te tahi ; nō te mea 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, te ta'ata 'o tē 'ore e fa'a'ore i te mau hapa a tōna ta'ata tupu 'ia parau mai 'oia ē 'ua tātarahapa 'oia, 'ua fa'atae mai iā 'oia i te fa'ahapara'a i ni'a iāna iho.

32 I teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'a haere na ; 'e te ta'ata 'o tē 'ore e tātarahapa i tāna mau hara, 'aita iā 'oia e tai'ohia mai i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ia ha'apa'ohia te reira mai teie atu nei taime.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Alama i teie nei mau parau, 'ua pāpa'i ihora 'oia i te reira 'ia vai noa te reira, 'e 'ia ha'avā 'oia i te mau ta'ata o taua 'ēkālesia ra mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua ra.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Alama 'e 'ua ha'avā ia rātou 'o tei 'itea i te ravera'a i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, mai te au i te parau a te Fatu ra.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

- 35 'E 'o rātou 'o tei tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara 'e 'ua fā'i mai i te reira, 'ua 'āmui mai ia 'oia ia rātou i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia.
- 36 'E 'o rātou 'o tei 'ore i fā'i mai i tā rātou mau hara 'e tei 'ore i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino ra, 'aita ia rātou i tai'ohia mai i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ua tāpūhia tō rātou mau i'oa.
- 37 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atitī'aifaro ihora Alama i te mau 'ohipa ato'a o te 'ēkālesia ; 'e 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou rātou i te fāri'i i te hau 'e 'ua manuia rahi i roto i te mau 'ohipa a te 'ēkālesia, i te haerera'a ma te ha'apa'o maita'i i mua i te Atua ; 'e i te fāri'ira'a i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e i te bāpetizora'a e rave rahi.
- 38 'E i teienei, 'ua hope teie mau mea ato'a i te ravehia e Alama 'e tōna mau hoa rave 'ohipa fa'atere i te 'ēkālesia, i te haerera'a ma te itoito ato'a, i te ha'api'ira'a i te parau a te Atua i roto i te mau mea ato'a, i te fāri'ira'a i te mau huru 'ati ato'a, i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a-hia e te feiā ato'a e 'ere nō roto i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua.
- 39 'E 'ua a'o atu rātou i tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'e 'ua a'o-ato'a-hia rātou, 'oia ho'i te ta'ata tāta'itahi i te parau a te Atua, mai te au i tāna mau hara, 'oia ho'i te mau hara tāna i rave, i te fa'auera'ahia mai e te Atua 'ia pure ma te tu'utu'u 'ore, 'e 'ia ha'amaita'i atu iāna i roto i te mau mea ato'a.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

Mosia 27

- 1 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, 'ua tupu rahi ihora te hāmani-'ino-ra'a 'o tei tu'uhia mai i ni'a iho i te 'ēkālesia 'e te feiā fa'aro'o 'ore, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora tō te 'ēkālesia i te amuamu 'e i te mutamuta i tō rātou feiā fa'atere nō ni'a i te reira ; 'e 'ua amuamu atu rātou ia Alama. 'E 'ua tu'u atu Alama i te reira i mua i tō rātou ari'i ra ia Mosia. 'E 'ua paraparau atu ra Mosia i tōna mau tahu'a.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atae atu ra te ari'i ra 'o Mosia i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ē, 'eiaha roa te hō'ē ta'ata fa'aro'o 'ore e hāmani 'ino i te mau ta'ata nō te 'ēkālesia a te Atua.
- 3 'E tei roto ho'i i te mau 'āma'a ato'a nō te 'ēkālesia te tahi fa'auera'a 'eta'eta, 'oia ho'i, 'eiaha roa te hāmani 'ino 'ia tupu i rotopū ia rātou, 'ia vai rā te 'aifāitora'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a ;
- 4 'E 'ia 'ore te te'ote'o 'e te fa'ateitei 'ia ha'ape'ape'a i tō rātou hau ; 'e 'ia faariro te ta'ata tāta'itahi i tōna ta'ata tupu mai iāna iho ; i te ravera'a i te 'ohipa i tō rātou iho rima nō te tauturu ia rātou iho.
- 5 'Oia ia, 'ia rave tō rātou mau tahu'a ato'a 'e tō rātou mau 'orometua ato'a i te 'ohipa i tō rātou iho rima nō te tauturu ia rātou iho i te mau taime ato'a, maori rā i te tau i ro'ohia ai rātou i te ma'i 'e te veve rahi ; 'e nō te ravera'a i teie mau mea i fāri'i ai rātou i te maita'i o te Atua.
- 6 'E 'ua tupu fa'ahou te hau rahi i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua rahi roa ato'a ho'i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te purara nā ni'a i te fenua nei, 'oia ia, i te pae apato'erau 'e te pae apato'a, 'e i te pae hiti'a o te rā 'e te pae tō'o'a o te rā, i te patura'a i te mau 'oire rarahi 'e te mau 'oire ri'i i roto i te mau tufa'a e maha ato'a o te fenua nei.
- 7 'E 'ua aroha mai 'e 'ua ha'amanuia mai te Fatu ia rātou, 'e 'ua riro atu ra rātou 'ei feiā rahi 'e te tao'a rahi.

Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

8 I teienei 'ua tai'ohia te mau tamaiti a Mosia i rotopū i te feiā ti'aturi 'ore ; 'e 'ua tai'ohia ho'i te hō'ē o te mau tamaiti a Alama i rotopū ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua ma'irihia tōna i'oa 'o Alama, te i'oa o tōna ra metua tāne ; 'āre'a rā 'ua riro 'oia 'ei ta'ata parauti'a 'ore rahi 'e te ha'amori 'idolo. 'E e ta'ata parau rahi ho'i 'oia, 'e 'ua parau atu 'oia i te mau parau tāvaimanino rahi i te mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua arata'i 'ē atu 'oia i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia rave i te mau 'ohipa 'Tino mai tāna i nā reira.

9 'E 'ua riro 'oia 'ei ta'ata ha'ape'ape'a rahi i te tupura'a o te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ; i te fa'afāriu-'ē-ra'a atu i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata ; 'e i te fa'atupura'a i te mārōra'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; 'e i te hōro'ara'a atu i te rāve'a e roa'a ai te mana i te 'enemi o te Atua i ni'a iho ia rātou.

10 'E i teienei, i muri 'era, 'a haere noa ai 'oia nō te ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua, 'e 'ua haere huna ho'i 'oia 'e te mau tamaiti a Mosia ato'a ma te 'imi i te rāve'a 'ia ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ia arata'i 'ē atu ho'i i te mau ta'ata o te Fatu, ma te ha'apa'o 'ore i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e i tā te ari'i ato'a ho'i—

11 'E mai tā'u i parau a'enei ia 'outou, 'a haere noa ai rātou i te pātō'ira'a atu i te Atua, inaha, 'ua fā mai ra te hō'ē melahi a te Fatu ia rātou ; 'e 'ua pou mai 'oia mai te mea ra ē, nā roto i te ata ; 'e 'ua parau mai ra 'oia mai te reo o te pātiri ra, 'e 'ua 'āueue te fenua i ti'ahia e rātou ra ;

12 'E 'ua tupu tō rātou māere rahi, 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i raro i te fenua, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i māmarama i te mau parau tāna i parau mai ia rātou ra.

13 'Āre'a rā 'ua pi'i fa'ahou mai ra 'oia, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E Alama, 'a ti'a mai na 'e 'a haere mai na, nō te aha ho'i 'oe i hāmani 'ino ai i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ? Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu : Nā'u teie 'ēkālesia, 'e nā'u ia e fa'ati'a i te reira ; 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē mea e ha'amōrohi i te reira, maori rā te 'ōfatira'a ture a tō'u ra mau ta'ata.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

- 14 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra te melahi : Inaha, 'ua fa'aro'o a'enei te Fatu i te mau pure a tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e te mau pure ato'a a tōna ra tāvini 'o Alama, tō 'oe metua tāne ; 'e 'ua pure ho'i 'oia nō 'oe ma te fa'aro'o rahi, 'ia arata'ihia 'oe i te 'ite i te parau mau ; nō reira i haere mai ai au nō te fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a o te Atua, 'ia pāhonohia te mau pure a tōna ra mau tāvini mai te au i tō rātou ra fa'aro'o.
- 15 'E i teienei, inaha, e ti'a ānei ia 'oe 'ia pāto'i mai i te mana o te Atua ? Inaha ho'i, 'aita ānei tō'u nei reo i fa'a'āueue i te fenua ? 'E 'aita ānei 'oe i 'ite mai iā'u nei i mua i tō 'oe nā aro ? 'E 'ua tonohia mai au nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra.
- 16 I teienei, e parau atu vau ia 'oe na : 'A haere, 'e 'a ha'amana'o i te fa'atītira'ahia tō 'oe mau metua i te fenua ra nō Helama, 'e i te fenua ra ho'i nō Nephi ; 'e 'a ha'amana'o ho'i i te mau mea rarahi tāna i rave nō rātou ra ; i vai na ho'i rātou i roto i te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia rātou. 'E i teienei, e parau atu vau ia 'oe, e Alama, 'a haere i tō 'oe haere'a, 'e 'eiaha e 'imi fa'ahou i te rāve'a 'ia ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ia pāhonohia tā rātou mau pure, noa atu ē 'ua hina'aro 'oe 'ia ti'avaruhia 'oe.
- 17 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'o teie te mau parau hope'a tā te melahi i parau mai ia Alama, 'e 'ua haere 'ē atu ra 'oia.
- 18 'E 'ua ma'iri fa'ahou ihora Alama 'e te mau ta'ata i pīha'i iho iāna i raro i te fenua, 'e 'ua rahi roa tō rātou māere ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite tō rātou iho mata i te hō'ē melahi a te Fatu ; e mai te pātiri ho'i tōna reo, 'o tei fa'a'āueue i te fenua ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i rātou ē, 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e mea, maori rā nā te mana o te Atua i fa'a'āueue 'e i fa'arurutaina i te fenua, mai te mea ra ē, tē 'afā ra te reira.
- 19 'E i teienei nō te rahi o tō Alama mata'u 'ua vāvāhia 'oia, 'e 'aita i ti'a iāna 'ia hāmama i tōna vaha ; 'oia iā, 'ua paruparu roa a'era 'oia, 'e 'aita i ti'a iāna 'ia hā'uti'uti i tōna rima ; nō reira 'ua ravehia 'oia e te mau ta'ata i pīha'i iho iāna, 'e 'ua hōpoiha atu ra ma te paruparu rahi, ē tae noa atu 'ua tu'uhia 'oia i mua i tōna ra metua tāne.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

20 'E 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra rātou i tōna metua tāne i te mau mea ato'a i tupu i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua 'oa'oa ihora tōna metua tāne, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, nā te mana o te Atua te reira.

21 'E 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui mai ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia 'ite rātou i tā te Fatu i rave i tāna ra tamaiti, 'e 'ia rātou ato'a ho'i i pīha'i iho iāna ra.

22 'E 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui mai ra 'oia i te mau tahu'a ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te ha'apae i te mā'a, ma te pure i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'ia fa'ahāmama mai 'oia i te vaha o Alama, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia paraparau mai, 'e 'ia fa'a'eta'etahia tōna 'āvae—'ia 'ara'ara te mata o te mau ta'ata 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i rātou i te maita'i 'e te hanahana o te Atua.

23 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rātou ha'apaera'a i te mā'a 'e i te purera'a nō te ārea e piti mahana 'e e piti ru'i te maoro, 'ua fāri'i ihora tō Alama nā 'āvae i te pūai, 'e 'ua ti'a a'era 'oia i ni'a 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te parau atu ia rātou, ma te ani atu ia rātou 'ia fa'aitoito :

24 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ho'i 'oia ia rātou, 'Ua tātarahapa vau i tā'u mau hara, 'e 'ua fa'aorahia ho'i e te Fatu ; inaha 'ua fānauhia vau i te Vārua.

25 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u : 'Eiaha e māere i te mea 'ia fānau-fa'ahou-hia te mau ta'ata ato'a e ti'a ai, 'oia ia, te mau tāne 'e te mau vahine, 'e tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a, 'e tō te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ia fānauhia i te Atua ra, 'ia tauihia mai tō rātou huru tāhuti 'e te huru hi'ara'a, 'ei huru parauti'a, 'ia fa'aorahia e te Atua, 'ia riro 'ei mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e 'ei mau tamari'i tamāhine nāna.

26 'E nā roto i te reira, e riro rātou 'ei mau ta'ata fa'a'āpīhia ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia nā reira, e 'ore roa rātou e fāri'i i te bāsileia o te Atua.

27 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ore 'ia nā-reira-hia, e hurihia rātou i rāpae ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au i te reira, nō te mea i fātata vau i te hurihia i rāpae.

28 'Āre'a rā, i muri iho i tō'u haerera'a nā roto i te mau 'ati rahi e rave rahi, 'e 'ia tātarahapa ho'i au 'e 'ia fātata i te pohe, 'ua ti'a i te Fatu nā roto i tōna aroha 'ia haru mai iā'u mai roto mai i te auahi 'ama mure 'ore, 'e 'ua fānauhia vau i te Atua ra.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

- 29 'Ua fa'aorahia tō'u vārua i te au 'ava'ava 'e te mau ru'uru'ura'a nō te mau 'ohipa 'I'ino ra. Tei roto ho'i au i te 'ābuso pōiri ta'ota'o roa ra ; i teienei rā tē 'ite nei au i te māramarama māere o te Atua. 'Ua ha'amāuiuihia tō'u vārua i te māuiui mure 'ore ; 'ua haruhia mai rā vau, 'e 'aita tō'u vārua e māuiui fa'ahou.
- 30 'Ua pāto'i na vau i tō'u Tāra'ehara, 'e 'ua huna na ho'i au i tei parauhia mai e tō tātou ra mau metua ; i teienei rā, 'ia 'ite rātou ē, e tae mai 'oia, 'e tē ha'amana'o nei ā 'oia i te mau ta'ata ato'a tāna i hāmani ra, 'e e fa'a'ite mai 'oia iāna iho i te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 31 'Oia ia, e pi'o te mau turi ato'a i raro, 'e e fā'i ho'i te mau vaha ato'a i mua iāna ra. 'Oia ia, 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra, 'ia ti'a mai te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia ha'avāhia e ana ra, 'ei reira rātou e fā'i ai ē, 'o 'oia te Atua ; 'ei reira ato'a ho'i rātou 'o tei 'ore i 'ite i te Atua i teie nei ao, e fā'i ai ē, 'ua tano i te ha'avāra'a nō te fa'autu'ara'a mure 'ore 'ia ma'iri mai i ni'a iho ia rātou ; 'e e 'āueue, e rurutaina, 'e e fa'a'ōtemutemu ho'i rātou i raro a'e i te hi'ora'a a tōna mata 'imi māite ra.
- 32 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora Alama 'e rātou ato'a ho'i tei pīha'i iho ia Alama i te tau i fā mai ai te melahi ia rātou ra, i te ha'api'i atu i te mau ta'ata ; i te haerera'a ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ato'a, i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mau mea tā rātou i fa'aro'o 'e i hi'o, 'e i te poro-haere-ra'a i te parau a te Atua ma te 'ati rahi, 'e 'ua hāmani-'ino-rahi-hia rātou e te feiā ti'aturi 'ore, 'e 'ua papa'ihia mai ho'i e taua mau ta'ata e rave rahi ra.
- 33 'E noa atu ā teie mau mea nei, 'ua tāmāhanahana rahi rātou i te 'ēkālesia, i te ha'apūaira'a i tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e i te tītaura'a atu ia rātou ma te fa'a'oroma'i rahi 'e te māuiui rahi 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.
- 34 E to'omaha ho'i o rātou e mau tamaiti ia nā Mosia ; 'e tō rātou mau i'oa 'o Amona, 'e 'o Aarona, 'e 'o Omonera, 'e 'o Himeni ; 'o teie ia te mau i'oa o te mau tamaiti a Mosia.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

35 'E 'ua haere rātou ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua nō Zarahemela, 'e i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a i raro a'e i te fa'aterera'a a te ari'i ra 'o Mosia ; i te 'imi-māite-
ra'a 'ia fa'a'ore i te mau 'ino tā rātou i rave i te 'ēkālesia ; i te fā'ira'a i tā rātou mau hara ato'a, i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te mau mea tā rātou i 'ite, 'e i te ha'amāramaramara'a atu ho'i i te mau tohura'a 'e te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o mai ia rātou ra.

36 'E nō reira 'ua riro ihora rātou 'ei mau mauha'a i roto i te rima o te Atua i te arata'ira'a i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i te 'ite i te parau mau, 'oia ia, i te 'ite i tō rātou Tāra'ehara.

37 'E 'ua ha'amaīta'ihia rātou ! Nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite atu rātou i te parau hau ; 'ua fa'a'ite atu ho'i rātou i te mau parau maita'i nō te maita'i ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ho'i rātou i te mau ta'ata ē, tē fa'atere ari'i nei te Fatu.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

Mosiah 28

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era teie mau mea i te ravehia 'e te mau tamaiti a Mosia ra, 'ua rave ihora rātou i te tahi pae iti o te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra i tō rātou metua tāne, i te ari'i, 'e 'ua hina'aro rātou iāna 'ia fa'ati'a mai ia rātou 'ia haere atu rātou 'e teie mau ta'ata tā rātou i mā'iti, i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia a'o atu i te mau mea tā rātou i fa'aro'o, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite atu ho'i i te parau a te Atua i tō rātou ra mau taea'e, i te mau 'āti Lamana—
- 2 Penei a'e 'o te fa'afāriu mai rātou ia rātou i te 'ite i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a tō rātou ra mau metua ; 'e penei a'e ho'i 'o te fa'a'orehia tō rātou 'ino'ino i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ia fa'afāriuhia mai ho'i rātou 'ia 'oa'oa i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e 'ia riro rātou 'ei mau hoa te tahi i te tahi, 'e 'ia fa'a'orehia te mau mārōra'a i ni'a i te mau fenua ato'a tā te Fatu tō rātou Atua i hōro'a mai ia rātou.
- 3 I teienei 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia a'ohia atu te parau nō te fa'aorara'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'aita roa ho'i rātou i hina'aro 'ia pohe te vārua o te hō'ē noa atu ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'ia mana'o rātou nō ni'a i te hō'ē vārua ta'ata 'o tē fa'a'oroma'i i te māuiui hope 'ore, 'ua fa'a'āueue ia 'e 'ua fa'arurutaina te reira ia rātou.
- 4 'E 'ua nā reira te Vārua o te Fatu i te 'ohipa i ni'a iho ia rātou, e mau ta'ata hara 'ino roa ho'i rātou. 'E nō te aroha mure 'ore o te Fatu i fa'aora noa ai 'oia ia rātou ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fāri'i tō rātou vārua i te mamae rahi nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, i te mamae rahi 'e te mata'u 'o te ti'avaruhia rātou i rāpae ē a muri noa atu.
- 5 'E i muri a'era 'ua tītau māite atu ra rātou i tō rātou metua tāne i te mahana e rave rahi 'ia fa'ati'a mai ia rātou 'ia haere atu i te fenua ra nō Nephi.
- 6 'E 'ua haere atu ra te ari'i ra 'o Mosia 'e 'ua ani atu ra i te Fatu, mai te mea e mea ti'a iāna 'ia tu'u atu i tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa 'ia haere atu i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana nō te a'o haere i te parau.
- 7 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu ia Mosia : 'A tu'u ia rātou 'ia haere atu, 'e e rave rahi ta'ata 'o tē ti'aturi i tā rātou mau parau, 'e e roa'a ia rātou te ora mure 'ore ; 'e nā'u ho'i e fa'aora i tā 'oe mau tamari'i tamāroa i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana.

Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a atu ra Mosia ia rātou 'ia haere 'e 'ia rave mai te au i tā rātou anira'a.

9 'E 'ua tere atu ra rātou i roto i te mēdēbara, nō te haere atu e a'o haere i te parau i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e e fa'a'ite atu vau i te 'ā'amu nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa i rave i muri nei.

10 I teienei 'aita tā te ari'i ra 'o Mosia e tamari'i tamāroa nō te hōro'a atu i tōna bāsileia, nō te mea 'aita roa te hō'ē o tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa i hina'aro 'ia fāri'i i te bāsileia.

11 Nō reira 'ua rave 'oia i te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api veo, 'e te mau 'api ho'i a Nephi, 'e te mau mea ato'a ho'i tāna i ha'apa'o 'e i fa'aherehere mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, i muri iho i te 'iritira'ahia 'e te pāpa'ira'ahia te mau pāpa'a parau i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api 'auro ra, 'e tei 'iteahia ho'i e te mau ta'ata o Limehi ra, 'e tei hōro'ahia ho'i iāna e te rima o Limehi.

12 'E i nā reira 'oia nō te hina'aro rahi o tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua hina'aro mau ho'i rātou 'ia 'ite i te parau nō nō ni'a i taua mau ta'ata i ha'amouhia.

13 'E i teienei 'ua 'iriti 'oia i te reira nā roto i te taturura'a a nā 'ōfa'i e piti i ha'amauhia i ni'a i nā hiti e piti o te vaira'a menemene ra.

14 I teienei 'ua fa'aineinehia teie mau mea mai te mātāmua mai ā, 'e 'ua tu'uhia mai ho'i mai terā u'i i terā u'i, 'ei rāve'a nō te 'iritira'a i te mau reo.

15 'E 'ua ha'apa'ohia te reira 'e 'ua fa'ahereherehia ho'i e te rima o te Fatu, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē pārahi i ni'a i te fenua i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a tōna ra mau ta'ata.

16 'E 'o te ta'ata ho'i tei iāna teie mau mea ra, 'ua parauhia ia 'oia e hi'o, mai te au i te peu i te tau tahito ra.

17 I teienei i muri iho i tō Mosia 'iritira'a i teie mau pāpa'a parau, inaha, 'ua tuatāpapa mai te reira i te 'ā'amu nō te mau ta'ata i ha'amouhia, mai te tau i ha'amouhia ai rātou ra, ē tae roa atu i mua i te patura'ahia o te pare rahi ra, i te tau i fa'ahuru 'ē ai te Fatu i te reo o te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua ha'apurarahia rātou i te ātea nā roto i te ao ato'a nei, 'oia ia, 'e mai reira ē tae roa atu i te hāmanira'ahia o Adamu.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

18 I teienei 'ua fa'atupu teie 'ā'amu i te 'oto rahi i roto i te mau ta'ata o Mosia, 'oia ia, 'ua 'ī roa rātou i te 'oto ; 'āre'a rā 'ua hōro'a mai te reira i te 'ite rahi ia rātou, 'e nā roto ho'i i te reira 'ua pōpou rātou.

19 'E pāpa'ihia teie 'ā'amu i muri nei ; inaha ho'i, e mea ti'a roa 'ia 'ite te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mau mea i pāpa'ihia i roto i teie nei 'ā'amu.

20 'E i teienei, mai tā'u i parau iho nei ia 'outou, 'ia oti a'era teie mau mea i te ravehia e te ari'i ra 'o Mosia, 'ua rave ihora 'oia i te mau 'api veo, 'e te mau mea ato'a i pāpa'ihia e ana ra, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra ia Alama, te tamaiti a Alama ra ; 'oia ia, te mau pāpa'a parau ato'a, 'e nā 'iriti parau ho'i, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra iāna ra, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra iāna 'ia ha'apa'o 'e 'ia fa'aherehere i te reira, 'e 'ia ha'apa'o ato'a 'oia i te pāpa'a parau nō te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia tu'u i te reira i terā u'i 'e i terā u'i, mai tei tu'uhia mai ra mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai Lehi i Ierusalema ra.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mosiah 29

- 1 I teienei 'ia oti a'era teie mau mea i te ravehia e Mosia, 'ua fa'atae atu ra 'oia i te parau i te mau fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ia 'ite i tō rātou mana'o ē, 'o vai te tano 'ia riro 'ei ari'i nō rātou.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te mau ta'ata i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ua hina'aro mātou i tā 'oe tamaiti ia Aarona 'ia riro 'ei ari'i 'e 'ei tāvana nō mātou.
- 3 I teienei 'ua reva atu Aarona i te fenua ra nō Nephi, nō reira 'aita i ti'a i te ari'i 'ia tu'u atu i te bāsileia i ni'a iāna ; 'e 'aita ho'i 'o Aarona i hina'aro i te bāsileia i ni'a iāna ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i te hō'ē o te mau tamaiti ua Mosia i hina'aro 'ia tu'uhia te bāsileia i ni'a iho ia rātou.
- 4 Nō reira 'ua fa'atae fa'ahou atu ra te ari'i ra 'o Mosia i te parau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, te parau i pāpa'ihia tāna i fa'atae atu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata. E teie te mau parau i pāpa'ihia, 'o tei nā 'ō atu ē :
- 5 Inaha, e tō'u mau ta'ata, 'oia ho'i e tō'u mau taea'e ē, 'ua fa'ariro ho'i au ia 'outou mai te reira te huru, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia feruri māite 'outou i te mea i anihia ia 'outou 'ia feruri—no te mea tē hina'aro na 'outou i te hō'ē ari'i.
- 6 I teienei tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua pāto'i mai te ta'ata 'o tē tano mau 'ia fāri'i i teie nei bāsileia, 'e 'aita roa 'oia i hina'aro 'ia rave i te bāsileia i ni'a iho iāna.
- 7 'E i teienei, mai te mea e mā'itihia te tahi 'ē atu 'ei mono nōna, inaha, tē mata'u nei au 'o te tupu te mārōra'a i rotopū ia 'outou na. 'O vai ho'i ia tei 'ite ē, e'ita e tupu te riri o tā'u ra tamaiti nōna te bāsileia 'e 'a arata'i 'ē atu ai i te tahi pae o teie nei mau ta'ata nā muri iho iāna, 'e nā te reira e fa'atupu i te mau tama'ira'a 'e te mau mārōra'a i rotopū ia 'outou, 'e nā te reira ho'i e ha'amani'i i te toto rahi 'e te ha'api'ira'a ho'i i te 'ē'a o te Fatu ra ; 'oia ia, 'e e ha'amou i te vārua o te mau ta'ata e rave rahi.
- 8 I teienei tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia vai pa'ari tātou 'e 'ia feruri tātou i teie nei mau mea, e'ita ho'i i te mea ti'a ia tātou 'ia ha'amou i tā'u tamaiti, 'e e'ita ho'i i te mea ti'a ia tātou 'ia ha'amou i te tahi atu ta'ata mai te mea e mā'itihia 'oia 'ei mono nōna ra.

Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

9 'E mai te mea e fāriu fa'ahou tā'u ra tamaiti i tōna ra te'ote'o 'e te mea faufa'a 'ore ra, e tātarahapa iā 'oia i te mau mea tāna i parau ra ; 'e 'a ani mai ai i tōna ti'ara'a nō te bāsileia, 'e nā te reira e fa'atupu i roto iāna 'e i teie nei feiā ho'i i te mau hara e rave rahi.

10 'E i teienei 'ia pa'ari tātou i te hi'o-ātea-ra'a atu i teie nei mau mea, 'e 'ia rave tātou i te mea au nō te fa'atupu i te hau o teie nei feiā.

11 Nō reira, e riro noa vau 'ei ari'i nō 'outou ē hope noa atu te toe'a o tō'u nei pu'e mahana ; 'āre'a rā, 'ia fa'ata'a tātou i te tahi mau ha'avā, nō te ha'avā i teie mau ta'ata mai te au i tā tātou ture ; 'e e fa'anahonaho 'āpī tātou i te mau 'ohipa a teie nei mau ta'ata, 'e e fa'ata'a tātou i te mau ta'ata 'aravihi 'ei mau ha'avā, 'e nā rātou e ha'avā i teie mau ta'ata mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

12 I teienei e mea maita'i a'e i te ta'ata 'ia ha'avāhia e te Atua i te ha'avāhia e te ta'ata nei, e mea parauti'a ho'i te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua i te mau taime ato'a, 'āre'a rā tā te ta'ata nei mau ha'avāra'a e 'ere iā i te mea parauti'a i te mau taime ato'a.

13 Nō reira, 'āhiri e noa'a ia 'outou te tahi mau ta'ata parauti'a 'ei mau ari'i nō 'outou, 'e 'o tē ha'amaui i te mau ture a te Atua, 'e 'o tē ha'avā i teie nei mau ta'ata mai te au i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a ; 'oia iā, 'āhiri e noa'a ia 'outou te tahi mau ta'ata 'ei mau ari'i nō 'outou 'e 'o tē rave mai tā tō'u metua tāne ra 'o Beniamina i rave nō teie nei mau ta'ata—tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'āhiri e ti'a mai te reira te huru i te mau taime ato'a, e mea maita'i iā 'ia vai noa te mau ari'i nō te fa'atere i ni'a a'e ia 'outou.

14 'E 'ua rave ato'a vau iho i te 'ohipa ma tō'u mana ato'a 'e tō'u mau 'ite ato'a, nō te ha'api'i atu ia 'outou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e nō te fa'atupu i te hau i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, 'ia 'ore te mau tama'i, 'e te mau mārōra'a, 'e te 'eiā, 'e te 'eiā haru, 'e te taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a.

15 'E te ta'ata ho'i 'o tē rave i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ra, 'o tā'u iā e fa'aua'a mai te au i te hara o tāna i rave, mai te au i te ture i hōro'ahia mai ia tātou 'e tō tātou ra mau metua.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

- 16 I teienei tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, nō te mea e 'ere te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mea parauti'a, e'ita ia i te mea au 'ia fa'ati'a 'outou i te hō'ē ta'ata 'e 'aore rā i te tahi mau ta'ata 'ei ari'i 'e 'aore rā 'ei mau ari'i nō te fa'atere i ni'a a'e ia 'outou.
- 17 Inaha ho'i, e aha te rahira'a o te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino tā te hō'ē ari'i parauti'a 'ore e rave, 'oia ia, 'o te hō'ē ha'amoura'a rahi ia !
- 18 'Oia ia, 'a ha'amana'o na i te ari'i ra ia Noa, i tāna mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e tāna mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'e i te 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a tōna ra mau ta'ata. Inaha, e ha'amoura'a rahi tei tae mai i ni'a iho ia rātou ; 'e nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'ua fāri'i rātou i te fa'atitira'a.
- 19 'E 'āhiri 'aita te āraira'a a Tei Hamani ia rātou ra 'o tei 'i i te pa'ari, nō tā rātou tātarahapa mau, 'ua vai noa ia rātou i roto i te fa'atitira'a ē tae roa mai i teienei.
- 20 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia rātou nō te mea 'ua fa'aha'eha'a rātou ia rātou iho i mua iāna ; 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua ti'aoro māite atu rātou iāna i fa'aora ai 'oia ia rātou i te fa'atitira'a ; 'e nō reira 'ua fa'a'ohipa te Fatu i tōna mana i roto i te mau mea ato'a i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, i te fa'atorora'a mai i te rima nō te aroha ia rātou 'o tē ti'aturi iāna ra.
- 21 'E inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'aita roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'a'ore i te mana o te hō'ē ari'i parauti'a 'ore, maori rā nā roto i te mārōra'a rahi 'e te ha'amani'ira'a rahi i te toto.
- 22 Inaha ho'i, tei roto tōna mau hoa i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'e te ha'a'atihia ra ho'i 'oia e tōna mau tīa'i ; 'e tē vāvāhi ra 'oia i te mau ture a te feiā i fa'atere na ma te parauti'a nā mua a'e iāna ra ; 'e tē ta'ata'ahi ra 'oia i raro a'e i tōna 'āvae i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua ;
- 23 'E 'ua ha'amana 'oia i te mau ture, 'e 'ua fa'atae atu i te reira i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, i te mau ture 'ia au i tāna ihora mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore ; 'e te mau ta'ata ho'i 'o tē 'ore e ha'apa'o i tāna ra mau ture, e ha'amouhia ia rātou ; 'e te mau ta'ata ho'i 'o tē mārō mai iāna, e tonono atu ia 'oia i tāna ra mau nu'u fa'ehau nō te 'aro atu ia rātou, 'e mai te mea e ti'a iāna, e ha'amou roa 'oia ia rātou ; e mea nā reira te hō'ē ari'i parauti'a 'ore i te ha'api'o i te mau haere'a o te mau ta'ata parauti'a ato'a.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

24 'E i teienei inaha tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e 'ere i te mea ti'a 'ia tae mai te reira mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i ni'a iho ia 'outou.

25 Nō reira, 'ia mā'iti 'outou nā roto i te reo o teie nei mau ta'ata, i te mau ha'avā, 'ia ha'avāhia 'outou mai te au i te mau ture i hōro'ahia mai ia 'outou e tō tātou ra mau metua, e mea parau mau te reira, 'e 'ua hōro'ahia mai ho'i ia rātou e te rima o te Fatu.

26 I teienei, e 'ere i te mea mātauhia 'ia tītau atu te reo o te mau ta'ata i te mea au 'ore i te mea ti'a ; 'āre'a rā e mea mātauhia i te pae iti o te mau ta'ata 'ia tītau i te mea ti'a 'ore ; nō reira teie tā 'outou e ha'apa'o 'e e fa'ariro 'ei ture nā 'outou—'ia fa'atere 'outou i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa nā roto i te reo o te mau ta'ata.

27 'E 'ia tae i te taime e mā'iti ai te reo o te mau ta'ata i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'ei reira ato'a ia te taime e tae mai ai te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua i ni'a iho ia 'outou, 'oia ia, te reira ato'a ia te taime e tāho'o mai ai 'oia ia 'outou i te ha'amoura'a rahi, mai tāna ho'i i tāho'o a'enei i teie nei fenua.

28 'E i teienei mai te mea tē vai ra tō 'outou mau ha'avā, 'e 'aita rātou e ha'avā ia 'outou mai te au i te ture i hōro'ahia mai, 'ua ti'a ia ia 'outou 'ia tu'u atu ia rātou 'ia ha'avāhia e te hō'ē ha'avā rahi a'e.

29 Mai te mea ē 'aita tō 'outou mau ha'avā rahi e ha'avā ma te rave i te mau ha'avāra'a parauti'a, e ha'aputupu 'āmui mai ia 'outou i te mau ha'avā ri'i, 'e nā rātou ia e ha'avā i tō 'outou mau ha'avā rahi, mai te au i te reo o te mau ta'ata.

30 'E tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'outou na 'ia rave i teie nei mau mea ma te mata'u i te Fatu ; 'e tē fa'aue atu nei ho'i au ia 'outou na 'ia rave i teie nei mau mea, 'e 'eiaha tō 'outou 'ei ari'i ; 'e 'ia rave teie nei feiā i te mau hara 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e tāho'ohia ia te reira i ni'a i tō rātou iho mau upo'o.

31 Inaha ho'i tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, nā te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ari'i i fa'atupu i te mau hara a te mau ta'ata e rave rahi ; nō reira e hurihia tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i ni'a iho i te upo'o o tō rātou ra mau ari'i.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

32 'E i teienei 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia fa'a'orehia teie mea 'aifāito 'ore i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e i rotopū ho'i i tō'u teie nei mau ta'ata; 'āre'a rā 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia vai noa teie nei fenua 'ei fenua ti'amā, 'e 'ia fa'ati'ahia te ta'ata ato'a i tā rātou mau tufa'a 'e i tō rātou iho mau hina'aro ato'a, 'ia au ho'i i te hina'aro o te Fatu 'ia pārahi noa 'e 'ia fāri'i tātou i teie nei fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō tātou; 'oia ia, 'a pārahi noa ai te hō'ē toe'a o tō tātou hua'ai i ni'a i te fenua.

33 'E e rave rahi atu ā mea tā te ari'i Mosia i pāpa'i atu ia rātou, i te ha'amahorara'a atu i te mau tāmatarā'a 'e te mau fifi ho'i o te ari'i parauti'a; 'oia ho'i te māuiui o te vārua i tō rātou mau ta'ata, 'e te mau amuamura'a a te mau ta'ata i tō rātou ari'i; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu 'oia i te reira ia rātou.

34 'E 'ua fa'a'ite atu ho'i 'oia ia rātou ē, e mea au 'ore taua mau mea ra, 'āre'a rā e tae te hōpoi'a i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a e ti'a ai, 'ia ti'a i te ta'ata tāta'itahi 'ia amo i tāna tufa'a.

35 'E 'ua ha'amahora ato'a atu ra 'oia i mua ia rātou pā'āto'a i te mau fifi tā rātou e fāri'i nā roto i te hō'ē ari'i parauti'a 'ore nō te fa'atere ia rātou;

36 'Oia ia, i te tā'āto'ara'a nō tāna mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e te tā'āto'ara'a nō te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a, 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto, 'e te 'eiā, 'e te 'eiā haru, 'e te tai'ata, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia tai'ohia—ma te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou ē, e mea ti'a roa 'ia fa'a'orehia teie mau mea, 'e e mea au 'ore rahi ho'i te reira i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

37 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te ari'i Mosia i te fa'atae atu i teie mau mea i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'ua ti'aturi ihora rātou i te parau mau nō tāna mau parau.

38 Nō reira 'ua ha'apae rātou i tō rātou mau hina'aro nō te hō'ē ari'i, 'e 'ua hina'aro māite atu ra rātou 'ia 'aifāito tō te mau ta'ata ato'a huru i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra te mau ta'ata ato'a i tō rātou hina'aro 'ia fa'au'ahia rātou nō tā rātou iho mau hara.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

39 Nō reira, i muri a'era 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra rātou ia rātou iho i roto i te mau pupu i ni'a i te fenua ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e, nō te fa'a'ite mai i tō rātou mau mana'o nō ni'a i te mau ta'ata e ti'a 'ia riro 'ei mau ha'avā nō rātou, nō te ha'avā ia rātou mai te au i te ture i hōro'ahia mai ia rātou ra ; 'e 'ua 'oa'oa roa a'era rātou nō te ti'amāra'a i hōro'ahia mai ia rātou ra.

40 'E 'ua tupu ihora tō rātou aroha rahi ia Mosia ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'ariro rātou iāna 'ei ta'ata rahi atu i te tahi atu mau ta'ata ; 'e 'aita rātou i mana'o noa a'e ē 'ua riro 'oia 'ei ari'i fa'ahēpo 'o tei tītau i te faufa'a, 'oia ia, i te tao'a ti'a 'ore e vi'ivi'i ai te vārua ; 'e 'aita roa 'oia i tītau i te tao'a ia rātou, 'e 'aita ho'i 'oia i pōpou i te ha'amani'i i te toto ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te hau i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia fa'aorahia i te mau huru fa'atītira'a ato'a ; nō reira 'ua fa'ariro rātou iāna, 'oia ia, 'ei mea maita'i roa, 'e te fa'ahia roa.

41 'E i muri a'era 'ua fa'ata'a ihora rātou i te tahi mau ha'avā nō te fa'atere ia rātou, 'e nō te ha'avā ho'i ia rātou mai te au i te ture ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua tā'āto'a.

42 'E i muri a'era 'ua fa'ata'ahia ihora Alama 'ia riro 'ei ha'avā rahi mātāmua, 'e e tahu'a rahi ato'a ho'i 'oia, 'e nā tōna metua tāne i fa'atōro'a iāna, 'e i hōro'a mai ho'i iāna i te fa'aterera'a nō ni'a i te mau 'ohipa ato'a a te 'ēkālesia.

43 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua haere noa Alama nā te 'ē'a o te Fatu ra, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o 'oia i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a, 'e 'ua ha'avā 'oia i te mau ha'avāra'a parauti'a ; 'e 'ua vai tāmāu noa te hau i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e.

44 'E 'o te ha'amatarā'a ia nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua nō Zarahemla i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a i parauhia te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'o Alama te ha'avā rahi mātāmua.

45 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ihora tōna metua tāne, i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma piti o tōna ra matahiti, 'e 'ua ora noa ho'i 'oia 'ia tupu te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

46 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ato'a ihora Mosia, i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti nō tāna ra fa'aterera'a, 'oia ho'i, i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma toru o tōna ra matahiti ; 'e 'ia 'āmuihia te tā'āto'ara'a, e pae hānere 'e e iva ia matahiti mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai Lehi i Ierusalema.

47 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ari'i i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e 'o te hope'a ato'a ia o te pu'e mahana o Alama, 'o tei fa'ati'a i tā rātou 'ēkālesia.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

Te Buka a Alama te Tamaiti a Alama

Te 'ā'amu o Alama, te tamaiti a Alama, 'oia te ha'avā rabi mātāmua i ni'a a'e i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e 'oia ato'a ho'i te tabu'a rabi i ni'a a'e i te 'Ēkālesia. Te 'ā'amu nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'e te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a ho'i i rotopū i te mau ta'ata. 'E te hō'ē ato'a 'ā'amu nō te hō'ē 'arora'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, mai te au i te pāpa'a parau a Alama, 'oia te ha'avā rabi mātāmua.

Alama 1

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, i te matahiti mātāmua nō te fa'aterera'a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e mai teie taime atu, i haere na te ari'i ra 'o Mosia nā te 'ē'a i haerehia 'e tō te ao ato'a nei, i 'aro na 'oia i te tama'i maita'i, i haere na 'oia ma te parauti'a i mua i te Atua, 'e 'aita 'oia i vaiiho i te hō'ē ta'ata nō te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'ati'a 'oia i te tahi mau ture, 'e 'ua fāri'ihia te reira e te mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua ti'a roa ia rātou 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau ture tāna i ha'amau.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, i te matahiti mātāmua nō te fa'aterera'a a Alama i te pārahira'a ha'avā, 'ua 'āfa'ihia mai ra te hō'ē ta'ata i mua iāna 'ia ha'avāhia, e ta'ata rahi 'oia 'e te tu'iro'o ho'i nō tōna pūai rahi.
- 3 'E 'ua haere 'oia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i te a'ora'a atu ia rātou i tei parauhia e ana e parau nā te Atua, 'e te fa'a'inora'a i te 'Ēkālesia ; 'e te paraura'a i te mau ta'ata e mea ti'a i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua ato'a 'ia riro 'ei feiā auhā, 'e e 'ere i te mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave i te 'ohipa i tō rātou iho rima ; 'āre'a rā e mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia tauturuhia e te mau ta'ata.
- 4 'E 'ua parau ato'a atu 'oia i te mau ta'ata, e fa'aorahia te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mahana hope'a, 'e 'eiaha rātou e mata'u 'e 'eiaha ho'i e rurutaina, 'ia fa'ateitei rā rātou i tō rātou upo'o i ni'a ma te 'oa'oa ; 'ua hāmani ho'i te Fatu i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e 'ua fa'aora ho'i i te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'e i te hope'a ra, e noa'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a te ora mure 'ore.

The Book of Alma the Son of Alma

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'api'i 'oia i teie mau mea 'e e rave rahi tei ti'aturi i tana mau parau, 'oia ia e rave rahi tei ha'amata i te tauturu iana 'e tei horo'a atu i te moni nana.
- 6 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te fa'ateiteihia i te te'ote'o o tona 'a'au, 'e i te 'o'omo i te mau 'ahu moni rahi, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te fa'ati'a i te ho'e 'ekalesia i tei au i tana i a'o ra.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'a haere atu ai 'oia no te a'o atu ia ratou 'o tei ti'aturi i tana ra parau, 'ua farerei a'era 'oia i te ho'e ta'ata no te 'ekalesia a te Atua, 'oia ia, i te ho'e o ta ratou mau 'orometua ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te maro 'u'ana mai iana, 'ia ti'a iana 'ia arata'i 'e atu i te mau ta'ata no te 'ekalesia ; 'ua pato'i atu ra ra taua ta'ata ra iana, ma te a'o atu iana i te mau parau a te Atua.
- 8 I teienei 'o Gideona te i'oa o taua ta'ata ra ; 'e 'o 'oia ho'i tei riro na 'ei mauha'a i te rima o te Atua i te fa'aorara'a i te mau ta'ata o Limehi mai roto mai i te fa'atitira'a.
- 9 I teienei, no te mea 'ua pato'i atu Gideona iana ma te fa'a'ohipa i te mau parau a te Atua, 'ua riri ihora 'oia ia Gideona, 'e 'ua rave ihora 'oia i tana 'o'e 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te ta'iri iana. I teienei no te mea 'ua ruhiruhi roa Gideona, no reira 'aita atu ra i ti'a iana 'ia paruru atu i tana ra mau ta'irira'a, no reira 'ua pohe ihora 'oia i te 'o'e.
- 10 'E 'ua ravehia atu te ta'ata i taparahi iana 'e te mau ta'ata o te 'ekalesia, 'e 'ua 'afa'ihia atu 'oia i mua ia Alama, 'ia ha'avahia 'oia mai te au i te mau hara tana i rave.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a atu ra 'oia i mua ia Alama 'e 'ua paruru iana iho ma te mata'u 'ore.
- 12 'Ua parau atu ra ra Alama iana : Inaha, 'o teie te taima matamua i tupu ai te mau 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a i rotopu i teie mau ta'ata. 'E inaha, e 'ere 'oe i te tahu'a ha'avare ana'e ra, 'ua tamata ra 'oe i te ha'apuai i te 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a ma te fa'a'ohipa i te 'o'e ; 'e 'ia ha'apuaihia te 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a i rotopu i teie nei mau ta'ata, e ha'amou-roa-hia ratou.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

- 13 'E 'ua ha'amani'i ho'i 'oe i te toto o te hō'ē ta'ata parauti'a, 'oia ia, te hō'ē ta'ata 'o tei rave i te 'ohipa maita'i e rave rahi i rotopū i teie nei mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ia fa'aora noa mātou ia 'oe na, e iri mai ia tōna toto i ni'a ia mātou 'ei tāho'ora'a.
- 14 Nō reira 'ua fa'autu'ahia 'oe 'ia pohe, mai te au i te ture i hōro'ahia mai ia tātou e Mosia, 'oia tō tātou ari'i hope'a ; 'e 'ua fāri'ihia te reira e teie nei mau ta'ata ; nō reira e mea ti'a roa i teie nei mau ta'ata 'ia ha'apa'o i taua ture ra.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave atu ra rātou iāna ; 'o Nehora tōna 'oa ; 'e 'ua hōpoi atu ra rātou iāna i ni'a i te tupua'i 'āivi i Maniti ra, 'e i reira 'ua tītauhia 'oia 'ia fā'i, 'e 'ua fā'i mai 'oia i mua i te mau ra'i 'e te fenua ē, e mea au 'ore tāna i ha'api'i i te mau ta'ata i tā te Atua ra parau ; 'e i reira 'oia i pohe ai i te hō'ē pohe ha'amā.
- 16 'Āre'a rā, 'aita te reira i fa'a'ore i te ha'apararera'a i te 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e ; e rave rahi ho'i tei au i te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o te ao nei, 'e 'ua haere atu rātou ma te a'o haere i te mau ha'api'ira'a ha'avare ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou 'ia noa'a te tao'a e te tura.
- 17 'Āre'a rā, 'aita i ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'avare noa, i mata'u ho'i rātou i te ture, mai te mea e 'itehia, 'ua fa'autu'ahia te mau ta'ata ha'avare ; nō reira 'ua fa'ahua a'o noa rātou mai te au i tō rātou ti'aturira'a ; 'e i teienei 'aita tō te ture e mana i ni'a i te hō'ē ta'ata nō tōna ti'aturira'a.
- 18 'E 'aita ato'a i ti'a ia rātou 'ia 'eiā, i mata'u ho'i rātou i te ture ; nō te mea 'ua fa'autu'ahia rātou 'o tei 'eiā ; 'e 'aita ho'i i ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave huna noa, 'aita ato'a 'ia taparahi i te ta'ata, nō te mea 'o 'oia 'o tei taparahi i te ta'ata ra, 'ua fa'autu'ahia ia 'oia 'ia pohe.
- 19 'Āre'a rā, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora te feiā e 'ere i tō te 'ēkālesia a te Atua 'ia hāmani 'ino i te feiā i roto i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua, 'e 'ua rave ho'i rātou i te i'oa o te Mesia i ni'a iho ia rātou.
- 20 'Oia ia, 'ua hāmani 'ino rātou ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ino ia rātou i te mau huru parau ato'a ra, 'e tē nā-reira-hia ra rātou nō tō rātou ha'eha'a ; nō te mea 'aita rātou i te'ote'o i roto i tō rātou iho 'ā'au, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua ha'api'i atu rātou i te parau a te Atua, te tahi i te tahi, ma te moni 'ore e ma te ho'o 'ore.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

- 21 I teienei tē vai ra te hō'ē ture 'eta'eta i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nō te 'ēkālesia, 'oia ho'i 'eiaha te hō'ē ta'ata nō te 'ēkālesia e ti'a mai nō te hāmani 'ino i te feiā i rāpae i te 'ēkālesia, e 'eiaha ho'i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a 'ia tupu i rotopū ia rātou iho.
- 22 'Āre'a rā, tē vai ra e rave rahi i rotopū ia rātou 'o tei ha'amata i te fa'ate'ote'o, 'e tei ha'amata i te mārō 'ū'ana atu i tō rātou mau 'enemi, ē tae noa atu i te motora'a, 'oia ia, e moto atu rātou te tahi i te tahi i tō rātou rima.
- 23 I teienei teie te piti o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a Alama, 'o te tumu ia nō te 'ati rahi o te 'ēkālesia ; 'oia ia, 'o te tumu ia nō te tāmatarara'a rahi i roto i te 'ēkālesia.
- 24 'Ua 'eta'eta ho'i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'ua paraihia tō rātou mau 'oia, 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i ha'amana'o-fa'ahou-hia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te Atua. 'E e rave rahi ho'i tei fa'aātea 'ē atu ia rātou mai rotopū atu ia rātou.
- 25 I teienei, e tāmatarara'a rahi teie nō rātou 'o tei mau pāpū i te fa'aro'o ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'aitoito noa rātou 'e 'ua tāmāu māite ho'i i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e 'ua fa'a'oroma'i rātou i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a i ha'apu'ehia i ni'a iho ia rātou ra.
- 26 'E 'ia vaiiho te mau tahu'a i tā rātou 'ohipa nō te ha'api'i atu i te parau a te Atua i te mau ta'ata, 'ua vaiiho ato'a te mau ta'ata i tā rātou 'ohipa nō te fa'aro'o i te parau a te Atua. 'E 'ia oti a'era te tahu'a i te fa'a'ite atu i te parau a te Atua ia rātou, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra rātou ato'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa ma te itoito ; 'e 'aita te tahu'a i mana'o ē, e mea maita'i a'e 'oia i tei fa'aro'o mai iāna, e 'ere ho'i te ta'ata a'o i te mea maita'i a'e i tei fa'aro'o mai iāna, e 'ere ato'a te 'orometua i te mea maita'i a'e i te ta'ata e ha'api'ihia ra ; e hō'ē ā fāito tō rātou ato'a, 'e 'ua rave rātou ato'a i te 'ohipa, te ta'ata tāta'itahi mai te au i tōna ra pūai.
- 27 'E 'ua 'ōpere rātou i te tahi tufa'a nō tā rātou tao'a, te ta'ata tāta'itahi mai te au i tei noa'a iāna, i te feiā veve 'e i te ta'ata nava'i 'ore, 'e i te feiā ma'i, 'e i tei ro'ohia i te 'ati ra ; 'e 'aita rātou i 'ō'omo i te mau 'ahu moni rahi, e feiā mā 'e te nehenehe ho'i rātou.
- 28 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'anahonaho i te mau 'ohipa a te 'ēkālesia ; 'e 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou te hau i te vai tāmāu noa ; noa atu ā te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a ato'a.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

- 29 'E i teienei, nō tō te 'ēkālesia itoito i ha'amata ai rātou 'ia riro 'ei feiā tao'a rahi, 'e 'ua noa'a te mau mea ato'a i hina'arohia e rātou ra—e rave rahi mau nana māmoe 'e mau nana pua'atoro, 'e te mau huru fanau'a 'ānimara poria ato'a, 'e 'ua rahi tā rātou sītona, 'e te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau mea tao'a rahi ato'a ra, 'e 'ua rahi tā rātou tiritā 'e te 'ahu paruai maita'i roa, 'e te mau huru 'ahu maita'i ato'a 'o tei 'ore i fa'a'una'unahia.
- 30 'E nō reira, i roto i tō rātou huru manuia rahi, 'aita rātou i tu'u 'ē atu i tei taha'a noa, 'e tei poia, 'e tei po'ihā, 'e tei pohehia i te ma'i, 'e tei 'ore i fa'a'amuhia i te mā'a ; 'e 'aita rātou i ha'amaui i tō rātou 'ā'au i ni'a i te mau tao'a rahi ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a noa rātou nā te mau ta'ata ato'a, i te ta'ata pa'ari 'e te ta'ata 'āpī ato'a ho'i, i te tītī 'e te tī'amā, i te tāne 'e te vahine, i te feiā i roto i te 'ēkālesia 'e tei rāpae ho'i i te 'ēkālesia ; 'aita rātou e ha'apa'o i te huru o te ta'ata i 'ere i te maita'i.
- 31 'E nō reira 'ua manuia maita'i rātou 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā tao'a rahi roa atu i te feiā i rāpae i te 'ēkālesia.
- 32 Nō te feiā ho'i i rāpae i te 'ēkālesia 'ua rave noa rātou i te mau 'ohipa tahutahu, 'e te ha'amori 'īdolo, 'e te fa'atau, 'e te mau parau ri'i paieti 'ore, 'e te mi'imi'i, 'e te mārō ; 'e tē 'ō'omo ra rātou i te mau 'ā'ahu moni rahi ; 'e tē fa'ateiteihia ra i roto i te te'ote'o o tō rātou iho 'ā'au ; i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a, te ha'avarera'a, te 'eiāra'a, te harura'a i te tao'a, te tai'atarā'a, te taparahira'a i te ta'ata, 'e te ravera'a i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua fa'auto'ahia e te ture rātou ato'a 'o tei 'ōfati i te reira, mai te mea 'ua ti'a 'ia nā-reira-hia.
- 33 'E i muri a'era, nā roto i te fa'auto'ara'a a te ture i ni'a ia rātou, 'ua fāri'i te ta'ata tāta'itahi i te fa'auto'ara'a nō te 'ohipa tāna i rave, 'ua fa'aea ri'i ihora rātou, 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i hina'aro 'ia rave fa'a'ite mai i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; nō reira 'ua tupu te hau rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ē tae noa atu i te pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alama 2

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatara'a nō te pae o te matahiti nō tā rātou fa'aterera'a 'ua tupu te hō'ē mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; tē vai ra te hō'ē ta'ata 'o tei parauhia o 'Amaliki ; e ta'ata ha'avare 'oia, 'oia ia, e ta'ata 'aravihi i te pa'ari o teie nei ao, 'ia au i te fa'aterera'a a te ta'ata i taparahi ia Gideona i te 'o'e, 'e 'o tei taparahihia mai te au i te ture—
- 2 I teienei nā roto i te ha'avare a teie nei ta'ata 'o 'Amaliki, 'ua 'ume atu 'oia i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia pe'e atu iāna ; 'e nō tō rātou rahi 'ua riro ihora rātou 'ei mea pūai roa ; 'e 'ua tāmata ihora rātou 'ia fa'ati'a ia 'Amaliki 'ei ari'i i ni'a i te mau ta'ata.
- 3 I teienei 'ua pe'ape'a a'era te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i 'o tei 'ore i arata'i-'ē-hia 'e te mau 'umera'a a 'Amaliki ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite rātou mai te au i tā rātou ra ture ē, e mea ti'a i teie mau mea 'ia fa'ati'ahia e te reo o te mau ta'ata e ti'a ai.
- 4 Nō reira, 'āhiri 'ua ti'a ia 'Amaliki 'ia fāri'i i te reo o te mau ta'ata nō te mā'iti iāna, e riro ia 'oia i te tāpe'a i tō rātou ti'amāra'a 'e te mau mea e maita'i ai rātou i tā te 'ēkālesia ; 'e nō te mea e ta'ata parauti'a 'ore 'oia, 'ua hina'aro 'oia 'ia ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputuputu mai ra te mau ta'ata ato'a nō te mau fenua ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e, te ta'ata tāta'itahi mai te au i tōna ihora hina'aro, i roto e piti pupu ta'a 'ē, tei hina'aro ia 'Amaliki 'e i tei 'ore i hina'aro iāna, 'e 'ua mārō atu ra rātou te tahi i te tahi i te mau mārōra'a māere rahi roa.
- 6 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te ha'aputuputu mai ia rātou iho nō te fa'a'ite mai i tō rātou mau mana'o nō ni'a i taua mea ra ; 'e 'ua tu'uhia atu te reira i mua i te mau ha'avā.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāto'i te reo o te mau ta'ata ia 'Amaliki, 'e nō reira 'aita 'oia i fa'arirohia 'ei ari'i i ni'a a'e i te mau ta'ata.
- 8 I teienei 'ua rahi roa atu ra te 'oa'oa o te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata i 'ore i hina'aro iāna ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'ati'arepu atu ra 'o 'Amaliki i te mau ta'ata i au iāna 'ia riri atu i te feiā i 'ore i au mai iāna.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputuputu 'āmui a'era rātou ia rātou iho, 'e 'ua fa'atāhinu atu ra ia 'Amaliki 'ei ari'i nō rātou.

Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

10 I teienei i muri iho i tō 'Amaliki fa'arirora'ahia 'ei ari'i i ni'a a'e ia rātou, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia ia rātou 'ia rave i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia tu'u mai ia rātou i raro a'e iāna.

11 I teienei 'ua ma'irihia te i'oa o te mau ta'ata o 'Amaliki i te i'oa o 'Amaliki, 'oia ho'i 'ua parauhia rātou e mau 'āti 'Amaliki ; e tei toe ra 'ua parauhia ia e mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ho'i te mau ta'ata o te Atua.

12 Nō reira 'ua 'ite te mau ta'ata nō te mau 'āti Nephi i te 'ōpuara'a a te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, 'e nō reira 'ua fa'aineine ihora rātou nō te 'aro ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua rave rātou i te mau 'o'e 'e te mau simetera, 'e te mau fana, 'e te mau te'a, 'e te mau 'ōfa'i, 'e te mau ma'a, 'e te mau huru mauha'a tama'i ato'a.

13 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'aineine nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i te taima nō tō rātou taera'a mai. 'E 'ua fa'ata'ahia te mau ra'atira, 'e te mau ra'atira teitei a'e, 'e te mau ra'atira rahi mai te au i tō rātou rahi.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hōro'a atu 'Amaliki i tōna mau ta'ata i te mau huru mauha'a tama'i ato'a ; 'e 'ua fa'ata'a ato'a ho'i 'oia i te mau tāvana 'e te feiā fa'atere i ni'a a'e i tōna ra mau ta'ata, nō te arata'i ia rātou 'ia 'aro atu i tōna mau taea'e.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i ni'a i te 'āivi ra nō Amenihu, tei te pae i te hiti'a o te rā nō te 'ānāvai Sidona ra, 'o tē tahe ra nā te pae fenua ra nā Zarahemla, 'e i reira rātou i ha'amata ai nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi.

16 I teienei 'o Alama te ha'avā rahi 'e te tāvana ho'i o te mau ta'ata o Nephi, nō reira 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i ni'a ma tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, 'e tōna ato'a ra mau ra'atira, 'e te mau ra'atira rahi, 'oia ia, 'o 'oia te upo'o fa'atere o tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau nō te haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki.

17 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te taparahi i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i ni'a i te 'āivi i te pae hiti'a o te rā i Sidona ra. 'E 'ua tama'i mai ra te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i te mau 'āti Nephi ma te pūai rahi, 'e nō reira 'ua pohe te mau 'āti Nephi e rave rahi i mua i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

- 18 Noa atu rā 'ua ha'apūai te Fatu i te rima o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora rātou i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki e rave rahi, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te horo 'ē atu mai mua atu ia rātou ra.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i taua mahana tā'āto'a ra, 'e 'ua taparahi ia rātou e rave rahi, 'e nō reira, hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti tauatini e pae hānere 'e toru 'ahuru 'e ma piti mau 'āti 'Amaliki i taparahihia ; 'e tō te mau 'āti Nephi i taparahihia ra, e ono tauatini 'e pae hānere 'e ono 'ahuru 'e ma piti ia ta'ata.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, nō te mea 'aita i ti'a ia Alama 'ia a'ua'u fa'ahou atu i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia fa'ati'a i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i te peho ra nō Gideona, i ma'irihia ho'i taua peho ra i te i'oa o taua Gideona i taparahihia e te rima o Nehora i te 'o'e ; 'e i roto i teie peho 'ua fa'ati'a ihora te mau 'āti Nephi i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i te ru'i.
- 21 'E 'ua tonu atu ra Alama i te mau ta'ata tāmoe nō te pe'e atu i te toe'a o te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, 'ia 'ite 'oia i tō rātou mau hina'aro, 'e tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'huna ; 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia pāroru iāna iho ia rātou, 'e 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ha'amouhia.
- 22 I teienei, teie te i'oa o te mau ta'ata tāna i tonu atu nō te hi'ohi'o i te pūhapara'a o te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, 'o Zerama, 'e Amenora, 'e Maniti, 'e Limahera ; 'e 'o teie ia te mau ta'ata i haere atu nā muri iho i te tahi atu mau ta'ata nō te hi'ohi'o i te pūhapara'a o te mau 'āti 'Amaliki.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ia po'ipo'i a'era, 'ua ho'i rū noa mai ra rātou i te pūhapara'a o te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te mea 'ua māere rahi roa rātou 'e 'ua mata'u rahi roa ho'i, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 24 Inaha, 'ua pe'e atu mātou i te pūhapara'a o te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, ē tae atu i te fenua ra nō Minona, i ni'a a'e i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i te 'ē'a e tae atu ai te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'ua 'ite atu ra mātou ma te māere rahi i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e inaha, 'ua 'āmui atu te mau 'āti 'Amaliki ia rātou.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

25 'E tei ni'a mai ra rātou i tō tātou mau taea'e i taua fenua ra ; 'e tē horo ra rātou i mua ia rātou 'e tā rātou mau nana, 'e tā rātou mau vahine, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i i tō tātou 'oire ; 'e 'ia 'ore tātou 'ia ha'avitiviti, e noa'a ia tō tātou 'oire ia rātou, 'e e taparahihia ho'i tō tātou mau metua tāne, 'e tā tātou mau vahine, 'e tā tātou mau tamari'i.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora te mau ta'ata o Nephi i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i rāpae i te peho nō Gideona i tō rātou ihora 'oire, 'oia ho'i i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela.

27 'E inaha, 'a haere atu ai rātou nā roto i te 'ānāvai Sidona, tei ni'a mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti 'Amaliki ia rātou nō te ha'amou roa ia rātou ; e mea rahi roa ho'i rātou, mai te one tahatai ra ho'i rātou i te rahi 'ia tai'ohia.

28 'Āre'a rā, 'ua ha'apūaihia te mau 'āti Nephi e te rima o te Fatu, 'e 'ua pure 'ū'ana atu ho'i rātou iāna 'ia fa'aora mai 'oia ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi, nō reira 'ua fa'aro'o mai te Fatu i tā rātou ra mau ti'aorora'a, 'e 'ua ha'apūai mai ra ia rātou, 'e 'ua pohe te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i mua ia rātou.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro atu ra Alama ia 'Amaliki i te 'o'e, te mata i te mata ; 'e 'ua 'aro 'ū'ana ihora rāua, te tahi i te tahi.

30 'E i muri a'era, nō te mea e ta'ata 'o Alama nō te Atua, 'e nō te mea ho'i e mea rahi tōna fa'aro'o, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra 'oia i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E te Fatu ē, 'a aroha mai 'e 'a fa'aora mai iā'u nei, 'ia riro vau 'ei mauha'a i roto i tō 'oe nā rima nō te fa'aora 'e nō te fa'aherehere i teie nei feiā.

31 I teienei 'ia fa'aoti a'era Alama i teie nei mau parau, 'ua 'aro fa'ahou atu ra 'oia ia 'Amaliki ; 'e 'ua ha'apūaihia 'oia, 'e nō reira 'ua taparahi pohe roa ihora 'oia ia 'Amaliki i te 'o'e.

32 'E 'ua 'aro ato'a atu 'oia i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'āre'a rā 'ua horo 'ē atu te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i muri mai mua atu ia Alama, 'e 'ua tonono mai ra 'oia i tōna mau tīa'i nō te 'aro ia Alama.

33 'Āre'a rā 'ua 'aro atu Alama 'e tōna mau tīa'i i te mau tīa'i o te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, ē tae noa atu 'ua taparahi 'e 'ua tīahi 'oia ia rātou i muri.

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

- 34 'E nō reira 'ua tāmā ihora 'oia i te fenua, i te pae hiti i te tō'o'a o te rā nō te 'ānāvai Sidona ra, ma te huri atu i te mau tino o te mau 'āti Lamana i taparahihia i roto i te mau pape nō Sidona ra, 'ia ateatea te tahi vāhi haerera'a nō tōna mau ta'ata i te tahi pae mai nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, i te pae i te tō'o'a o te rā i te 'ānāvai ra Sidona.
- 35 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae atu rātou pā'āto'a i te tahi pae mai nō te 'ānāvai Sidona, 'ua horo 'ē atu te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti 'Amaliki mai mua atu ia rātou, noa atu e mea rahi atu rātou 'e 'aita rātou e hope 'ia tai'ohia.
- 36 'E 'ua horo atu rātou mai mua atu i te mau 'āti Nephi i roto i te mēdēbara i te tō'o'a o te rā 'e i te pae apato'erau, i te ātea 'ē roa atu i te mau 'ōti'a nō te fenua ; 'e 'ua a'ua'u atu ra te mau 'āti Nephi ia rātou ma tō rātou pūai, 'e 'ua taparahi ia rātou.
- 37 'Oia ia, 'ua 'arohia rātou i te mau vāhi ato'a, 'e 'ua taparahihia, 'e 'ua tīahihia, ē tae noa atu 'ua purara rātou i te pae tō'o'a o te rā, 'e i te pae apato'erau, ē tae noa atu 'ua tae rātou i te mēdēbara 'o tei parauhia 'o Heremounetesa ; 'o te pae ia nō te mēdēbara 'o tei 'ī i te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri 'e te taehae.
- 38 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tei pohe i roto i te mēdēbara nō tō rātou mau puta ; 'e 'ua 'amuhia rātou e taua mau 'ānimara ra 'e te mau manu taehae o te reva ; 'e 'ua 'itehia tō rātou mau ivi, 'e 'ua ha'apu'ehia i ni'a i te fenua.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

Alama 3

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te mau 'āti Nephi, 'o tei 'ore i taparahihia e te mau mauha'a tama'i, i te hunara'a i te feiā i taparahihia—i teie nei 'aita te feiā i taparahihia i tai'ohia, nō te mea e mea rahi roa rātou—'ia fa'aoti a'era rātou i te hunara'a i tō rātou feiā pohe, 'ua ho'i atu ra rātou pā'āto'a i tō rātou mau fenua, 'e i tō rātou mau fare, 'e i tā rātou mau vahine, 'e i tā rātou mau tamari'i.
- 2 I teienei e rave rahi mau vahine 'e mau tamari'i i taparahihia i te 'o'e, 'e 'oia ato'a tā rātou mau nana māmoe 'e tā rātou mau nana pua'atoro ; 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua ha'amouhia tā rātou mau 'āua sītona e rave rahi, 'e 'ua ta'ata'ahihia ho'i te reira e te mau ta'ata e rave rahi.
- 3 'E i teienei te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau ta'ata ho'i o te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i taparahihia i te hiti o te 'ānāvai Sidona 'ua hurihia ia i roto i te mau pape nō Sidona ; e inaha tei roto tō rātou mau ivi i te mau hōhonura'a o te moana, 'e e rave rahi ho'i te reira.
- 4 'E 'ua ta'a 'ē maita'i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te mea 'ua tāpa'o rātou ia rātou iho i te tāpa'o 'ute'ute i ni'a iho i tō rātou mau rae mai te au i te peu a te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'āre'a rā 'aita rātou i hahu i tō rātou mau upo'o mai tā te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 5 I teienei 'ua hahuhia te upo'o o te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e tē taha'a noa ra ho'i rātou, maori rā tō rātou tau'upu i tātuahia i te 'iri pua'a, 'e 'ua tātuahia ho'i rātou i tā rātou mauha'a tama'i, 'oia ho'i tā rātou mau fana, 'e tā rātou mau te'a, 'e tā rātou mau 'ōfa'i, 'e tā rātou mau ma'a, 'e tē vai atu ra.
- 6 E 'iri huru 'ere'ere ho'i tō te mau 'āti Lamana, mai te au i te tāpa'o i tu'uhia mai i ni'a iho i tō rātou ra mau metua tāne, 'ei 'anatemara'a ia rātou nō tā rātou 'ōfatira'a i te ture 'e tā rātou 'ōrurera'a i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'oia ho'i, 'ia Nephi, Iakoba, Iosepha, 'e Samu ; e mau ta'ata parauti'a 'e te mo'a rātou.
- 7 'E 'ua tītau tō rātou mau taea'e 'ia taparahi ia rātou, nō reira 'ua 'anatemahia rātou ; 'e 'ua tu'u mai ra te Fatu te Atua i te tahi tāpa'o i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'oia ia, i ni'a iho ia Lamana 'e Lemuela, 'e i te mau tamaiti a Isema'ela, 'e te mau vahine nō te mau 'āti Isema'ela.

Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

- 8 'E 'ua nā-reira-hia 'ia ta'a 'ē maita'i tō rātou hua'ai i te hua'ai o tō rātou ra mau taea'e, 'ia ti'a i te Fatu te Atua 'ia fa'aherehere i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia 'āmui haere noa ia rātou 'e 'ia ti'aturi i te mau peu tumu hape i tu'uhia mai 'e 'o tē ha'amou ia rātou.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'o 'oia 'o tei 'āmui i tōna ra hua'ai i tō te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua ha'ama'iri mai 'ia 'oia i taua 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho i tōna ihora hua'ai.
- 10 Nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē tu'u iāna iho 'ia arata'i-'ē-hia e te mau 'āti Lamana ra, 'ua parauhia 'ia 'oia i te reira i'oa, 'e 'ua tu'uhia te tahi tāpa'o i ni'a iho iāna.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi i te peu tahito a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'āre'a rā 'o tei ti'aturi i te mau pāpa'a parau i hōpoiha mai mai te fenua mai ra mai Ierusalem, 'e i te peu tumu ato'a ho'i a tō rātou ra mau metua tāne, 'o tei riro 'ei parau mau, 'e 'o tei ti'aturi 'e tei ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'ua parauhia 'ia rātou e mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ho'i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, mai te reira mai taime—
- 12 'E 'o rātou ho'i tei pāpa'i i te mau pāpa'a parau, tei roto i te reira te parau mau nō tō rātou ihora mau ta'ata, 'e nō te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 13 I teienei, e parau fa'ahou tātou nō ni'a i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, nō te mea 'ua tu'u-ato'a-hia te hō'ē tāpa'o i ni'a ia rātou, 'oia ia, 'ua tu'u rātou i te tāpa'o i ni'a ia rātou iho ; 'oia ia, te hō'ē tāpa'o 'ute'ute i ni'a iho i tō rātou mau rae.
- 14 'Ua nā reira te parau a te Atua i te tupu, 'e teie ho'i te mau parau tāna i parau atu ia Nephi : Inaha, 'ua 'anatemala vau i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e tu'u atu ho'i au i te hō'ē tāpa'o i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'ia ta'a 'ē rātou e tō rātou hua'ai ia 'oe 'e i tō 'oe ra hua'ai, mai teie nei atu taime ē a muri noa atu, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e 'ia fāriu mai iā'u, 'ia aroha atu vau ia rātou.
- 15 'E teie fa'ahou ā : E tu'u atu vau i te hō'ē tāpa'o i ni'a iho iāna 'o tē 'āmui atu i tōna hua'ai i tō 'oe ra mau taea'e, 'ia 'anatemala-ato'a-hia rātou.
- 16 'E teie fa'ahou ā : E tu'u atu vau i te hō'ē tāpa'o i ni'a iho iāna 'o tē aro mai ia 'oe 'e tō 'oe ra hua'ai.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that minglith his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

- 17 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e parau atu vau ē, 'o tē fa'aru'e mai ia 'oe na e 'ore roa 'oia e parau-fa'ahou-hia e hua'ai nō 'oe ; 'e e ha'amaita'i au ia 'oe 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē parauhia e hua'ai nō 'oe, mai teie nei atu ē a muri noa atu ; 'e 'o teie tā te Fatu mau fafaura'a ia Nephi 'e i tōna ra hua'ai.
- 18 I teienei 'aita te mau 'āti 'Amaliki i 'ite ē, tē fa'atupu ra rātou i te mau parau a te Atua i tō rātou ha'amatarara'a i te tāpa'o ia rātou iho i ni'a i tō rātou mau rae ; 'āre'a rā 'ua pāto'i ia rātou i te Atua, nō reira e mea ti'a roa 'ia ma'iri mai te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho ia rātou.
- 19 I teienei, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, nā rātou iho i fa'atae mai i te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho ia rātou ; 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua nā reira te ta'ata tāta'itahi i 'anatemahia i te fa'atae mai i tōna iho pohe i ni'a iāna iho.
- 20 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'aita i rahi te mahana i ma'iri i muri iho i te 'arora'a i tupu i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti 'Amaliki, 'ua haere mai ra te tahi atu ā nu'u fa'ehau nō te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, i taua ihora vāhi i 'aro ai te nu'u fa'ehau mātāmua i te mau 'āti 'Amaliki.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonohia mai te tahi nu'u fa'ehau nō te ti'avaru ia rātou i rāpae i tō rātou fenua.
- 22 I teienei nō te mea 'ua pēpē Alama i te hō'ē puta, 'aita atu ra 'oia i haere e 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ;
- 23 'Āre'a rā 'ua tono atu 'oia i te tahi nu'u fa'ehau rahi roa nō te 'aro atu ia rātou ; 'e 'ua haere atu rātou 'e 'ua taparahi i te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi, 'e 'ua ti'avaru atu i te toe'a o rātou i rāpae i te mau 'ōti'a o tō rātou fenua.
- 24 'E i reira 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai rātou 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te fa'atupu i te hau i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'aita a'era rātou i ha'ape'ape'a-fa'ahou-hia e tō rātou mau 'enemi.
- 25 I teienei 'ua tupu teie mau mea ato'a, 'oia ia, 'ua ha'amatahia 'e 'ua fa'aotihia teie mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a i te pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

26 'E i roto i taua matahiti hō'ē ra, 'ua tauatini, 'e 'ua 'ahuru noa atu te tauatinira'a o te mau ta'ata i tonohia atu i te ao mure 'ore, 'ia roa'a ia rātou tā rātou mau utu'a mai te au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa, mai te mea e mea maita'i te reira 'e 'aore rā mai te mea e mea 'ino te reira, 'ia roa'a ia rātou te 'oa'oa mure 'ore 'e 'aore rā te mamae mure 'ore, mai te au i te vārua tā rātou i ha'apa'o ra, mai te mea e mea maita'i taua vārua ra 'e 'aore rā e mea 'ino te reira.

27 E fa'autu'ahia ho'i te ta'ata ato'a 'o tei ha'apa'ohia e ana ra, e au ho'i teie i te mau parau nō te vārua nō te tohu ; nō reira, 'ia au te reira i te parau mau ra. 'E 'o te hope'a teie nō te pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alama 4

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, i te ono o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ra, 'aita roa te mau mārōra'a 'e te mau tama'i i tupu i ni'a i te fenua nō Zarahemela.
- 2 'Āre'a rā 'ua fāri'i te mau ta'ata i te 'oto rahi, 'oia ia, i te 'oto rahi roa nō tō rātou mau taea'e i pohe, 'e 'oia ato'a nō tā rātou mau nana māmoe e mau nana pua'atoro i pau, 'e 'oia ato'a nō tā rātou mau fa'a'apu sītona i pau, i te ta'ata'ahihia 'e i te ha'amouhia e te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 3 'E nō te rahi o tō rātou mau 'ati i 'oto ai te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'e 'ua mana'o rātou e mau ha'avāra'a teie 'o tā te Atua i fa'atae mai i ni'a ia rātou nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; nō reira i araara ai rātou i te ha'amana'ora'a i tā rātou 'ohipa.
- 4 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te ha'amau māite atu i te 'ēkālesia ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi ho'i te mau ta'ata i bāpetizohia i roto i te mau pape nō Sidona, 'e 'ua 'āmuihia i roto i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ua bāpetizohia rātou e te rima o Alama, 'oia tei fa'atōro'ahia 'ei tahu'a rahi i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia e te rima o tōna ra metua tāne 'o Alama.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae i te hitu o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, i 'āmui mai ai e toru tauatini e pae hānere ta'ata ia rātou iho i roto i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ra, 'e 'ua bāpetizohia ho'i rātou. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te hitu o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e 'ua vai tāmāu noa te hau ē hope noa atu taua tau ra.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae i te va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a o te mau ha'avā, 'ua ha'amata ihora te te'ote'o i te tupu i roto i te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia, nō tā rātou mau tao'a rahi, 'e tā rātou mau tiritā maita'i, 'e tā rātou mau 'ahu paruai maita'i roa, 'e nō tā rātou mau nana māmoe 'e mau nana pua'atoro huru rahi, 'e tā rātou 'auro 'e tā rātou 'ārio, 'e te mau huru tao'a faufa'a rahi ato'a i roa'a mai ia rātou nā roto i tā rātou 'ohipa itoito ; 'e nā roto i teie mau mea ato'a 'ua fa'ateiteihia rātou e te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te 'ō'omo i te mau 'ahu moni rahi roa.

Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

7 I teienei 'o teie te tumu i 'oto roa ai Alama, 'oia ia, 'e te tahi pae rahi o te mau ta'ata tā Alama i fa'atōro'a 'ei mau 'orometua, 'ei mau tahu'a, 'e 'ei mau peresibutero i ni'a i te 'ēkālesia ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi tō rātou i 'oto rahi nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino tā rātou i 'ite i te tupura'a i rotopū i tō rātou mau ta'ata.

8 'E 'ua 'ite 'e 'ua hi'o ho'i rātou ma te 'oto rahi 'e 'ua ha'amata te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia i te fa'ateitehia i roto i te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e i te tu'u atu ho'i i tō rātou 'ā'au i ni'a i te mau tao'a rahi 'e i ni'a i te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o te ao nei, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te tāhitohito rātou te tahi i te tahi, 'e 'ua ha'amata ho'i rātou i te hāmani 'ino i te mau ta'ata 'o tei 'ore i ti'aturi i tō rātou iho mana'o 'e tō rātou iho hina'aro.

9 'E nō reira, i te va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua tupu te mau tama'ira'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia ; 'oia ia, tē vai ra te fe'i'i, 'e te mārōra'a, 'e te tāiroiro, 'e te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a, 'e te te'ote'o ho'i 'o tei hau roa atu i te te'ote'o i tō te mau ta'ata i rāpae i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua.

10 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā ; 'e 'ua riro te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te 'ēkālesia 'ei turorira'a nō te feiā i rāpae i te 'ēkālesia ; 'e 'ua paruparu a'era te 'ēkālesia i tōna haerera'a i mua.

11 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te iva o te matahiti, 'ua 'ite Alama i te 'ohipa 'ino rahi i roto i te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a 'oia ē, nō te hi'ora'a tano 'ore o te 'ēkālesia 'ua ha'amata te reira i te arata'i i te feiā ti'aturi 'ore i te rave i te hō'ē tufa'a nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i te tahi atu, 'e tē fa'atupu ra te reira i te pohe o te mau ta'ata.

12 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite 'oia i te 'aifāito 'ore rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, tē fa'ateitei ra te tahi pae i tō rātou te'ote'o, ma te vahavaha ia vetahi 'ē, 'e ma te huri atu i tō rātou tua i te feiā veve 'e te feiā taha'a noa, 'e te feiā po'ia, 'e te feiā po'ihā, 'e te feiā ma'i 'e tei fāri'i i te 'ati.

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

- 13 I teienei 'o teie te tumu rahi nō te 'oto rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a rā te tahi pae ia rātou iho, ma te tauturu atu i te mau ta'ata i tei au 'ia tauturuhia e rātou ; mai te hōro'ara'a atu i te tahi tufa'a nō tā rātou tao'a i te feiā veve 'e te feiā nava'i 'ore, te fa'a'amura'a i tei po'ia, 'e tei fa'a'oroma'i i te mau huru 'ati ato'a, nō te 'ōpuara'a a te Mesia, 'o tē tae mai mai te au i tā te vārua nō te tohu ra.
- 14 Ma te hi'o atu i mua i taua mahana ra, nō te fāri'i i te ha'amatarara'a i tā rātou ra mau hara ; ma te 'ī i te 'oa'oa rahi nō te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe i te mau tā'amu nō te pohe ra, mai te au i te hina'aro 'e te mana 'e te fa'aorara'a a Iesu Mesia.
- 15 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite Alama i te mau 'ati o te mau ta'ata ha'eha'a i pe'e atu i te Atua, 'e te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a i ha'apu'ehia i ni'a iho ia rātou 'e te toe'a o tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia i tō rātou 'aifāito 'ore, nō reira 'ua 'oto roa ihora 'oia ; 'āre'a rā 'aita te Vārua o te Fatu i fa'aru'e iāna.
- 16 'E 'ua mā'iti ihora 'oia i te hō'ē ta'ata 'aravihi nō rotopū mai i te mau peresibutero o te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu 'oia i te mana iāna mai te au i te reo o te mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia ha'amana i te mau ture mai te au i te mau ture i hōro'ahia na, 'e 'ia fa'a'ohipa māite i te reira mai te au i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau hara a te mau ta'ata.
- 17 'O Nephiha te i'oa o teie nei ta'ata, 'e 'ua mā'itihia 'oia 'ei ha'avā rahi ; 'e 'ua pārahi 'oia i ni'a iho i te pārahira'a ha'avā nō te ha'avā 'e nō te fa'atere i te mau ta'ata.
- 18 I teienei, 'aita Alama i hōro'a atu i te tōro'a tahu'a rahi iāna i ni'a i te 'ēkālesia, 'ua tāpe'a noa rā 'oia i te tōro'a tahu'a rahi nōna iho ; 'ua hōro'a atu rā 'oia i te pārahira'a ha'avā ia Nephiha.
- 19 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia 'ia ti'a iāna iho 'ia haere atu i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e i rotopū ho'i i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ia ti'a iāna ia a'o atu i te parau a te Atua ia rātou, nō te fa'ati'arepu ia rātou ia ha'amana'o i tā rātou 'ohipa, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia huti i raro i te mau huru te'ote'o ato'a, 'e te 'ohipa tāviri, 'e te mau huru mārōra'a ato'a i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata, nā roto i te parau a te Atua, 'e 'aita 'oia i 'ite i te rāve'a e fa'afāriuhia ai rātou, maori rā nā roto i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te 'itera'a pāpū nō te fa'ahapara'a atu ia rātou.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephihah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephihah.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

20 'E nō reira i te ha'amatarā'a nō te iva o te matahiti
nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata
o Nephi, 'ua hōro'a atu Alama i te pārahira'a ha'avā
ia Nephiha, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o noa ihora 'oia i te
autahu'ara'a rahi nō te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua,
'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū i te parau, mai te au i te vārua nō
te heheura'a 'e te tohu.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year
of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi,
Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah,
and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood
of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the
word, according to the spirit of revelation and
prophecy.

Tē mau parau tā Alama, te Tabu'a rabi, i a'o atu, mai te au i te fa'anabōra'a mo'a a te Atua, i te mau ta'ata i roto i tō rātou iho mau 'oire 'e mau 'oire ri'i ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua.

Alama 5

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata Alama i te a'o atu i te parau a te Atua i te mau ta'ata, nā mua roa i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, e mai reira atu i te mau fenua ē hope roa a'e.
- 2 'E teie te mau parau tāna i parau atu i te mau ta'ata i roto i te 'ēkālesia i fa'ati'ahia i te 'oire nō Zarahemela, mai te au i tāna iho pāpa'a parau, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 3 'Ua fa'atōro'ahia vau, 'o Alama, e tō'u metua tāne e Alama 'ei tahu'a rahi i ni'a iho i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ; 'e tei iāna ra ho'i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua 'ia rave i teie mau mea ; inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te fa'ati'a i te 'ēkālesia i ni'a i te fenua i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua ra nō Nephi ; 'oia ia, i te fenua i parauhia te fenua nō Moromona ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua bāpetizo 'oia i tōna mau taea'e i roto i te mau pape o Moromona.
- 4 'E inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua fa'aorahia rātou i te rima o te mau ta'ata o te ari'i ra 'o Noa, nā roto i te aroha 'e te mana o te Atua.
- 5 'E inaha, i muri iho i te reira, 'ua fa'atīthia rātou e te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te mēdēbara, 'oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tei roto rātou i te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'ua fa'aora fa'ahou te Fatu ia rātou mai roto mai i te fa'atītira'a nā roto i te mana o tāna ra parau ; 'e 'ua 'āfa'ihia mai tātou i teie nei fenua, 'e i'ō nei tātou i ha'amata ai i te fa'ati'a i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua i ni'a i teie nei fenua ē 'ati noa a'e.
- 6 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'outou nō teie nei 'ēkālesia, 'ua tāmāu māite ānei 'outou i te ha'amana'o i te fa'atītira'ahia tō 'outou ra mau metua ? 'Oia ia, 'ua tāmāu māite ānei 'outou i te ha'amana'o i tōna ra aroha 'e te fa'a'oroma'ira'a roa ia rātou ? 'E 'oia ato'a, 'ua tāmāu māite ānei 'outou i te ha'amana'o ē nāna tō rātou vārua i fa'aora mai roto mai i hade ?

The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.

Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

- 7 Inaha, nāna ho'i tō rātou 'ā'au i fa'afāriu mai ; 'oia ia, nāna i fa'aara ia rātou i te vare'a ta'oto rahi, 'e 'ua ara a'era rātou i te Atua ra. Inaha, tei roto roa rātou i te pōiri ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ha'amāramaramahia tō rātou 'ā'au i te māramarama o te parau mure 'ore ra ; 'oia ia, 'ua ru'uru'uhia ho'i rātou e te mau tā'amu nō te pohe, 'e te mau fifi nō hade, 'e 'ua tīa'i ā te pohe mure 'ore ia rātou.
- 8 'E i teienei tē ui atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua ha'amouhia ānei rātou ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa rātou i nā-reira-hia.
- 9 'E tē ui fa'ahou atu nei au, 'ua motu ānei te mau tā'amu nō te pohe, 'e te mau fifi o hade i ru'uru'u ia rātou ra, 'ua matara ānei te reira ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'oia ia, 'ua matara ia, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua hīmene a'era rātou ma te aroha fa'aora. 'E tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē 'ua fa'aorahia rātou.
- 10 'E i teienei tē ui atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mea nāhea rātou i te fa'aorahia ? 'Oia ia, e mea nāhea tō rātou ti'aturira'a 'ia fāri'i i te fa'aorara'a ? E aha atu ā ho'i te mea i matara ai rātou i te mau tā'amu nō te pohe, 'oia ia, 'e i te mau fifi nō hade ra ?
- 11 Inaha, 'ua tī'a ho'i iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou na ē—'aita ānei tō'u ra metua tāne 'o Alama i ti'aturi i te mau parau i parauhia e te vaha o Abinadi ? E 'ere ānei 'oia i te hō'ē peropheta mo'a ? 'Aita ānei 'oia i parau i te mau parau a te Atua, 'e 'ua ti'aturi tō'u metua tāne o Alama i te reira ?
- 12 'E mai te au i tōna ra fa'aro'o 'ua tupu te hō'ē tauira'a rahi i roto i tōna ra 'ā'au. Inaha tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, e parau mau ana'e te reira.
- 13 'E inaha, 'ua a'o atu 'oia i te parau i tō 'outou ra mau metua, 'e 'ua tupu ato'a te mau tauira'a rahi i roto i tō rātou mau 'ā'au, 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a rātou ia rātou iho 'e 'ua tu'u i tō rātou ti'aturira'a i mua i te Atua ora mau ra. 'E inaha, e feiā ha'apa'o maita'i rātou ē tae roa atu i te hope'a ra ; nō reira 'ua fa'aorahia rātou.
- 14 'E i teienei, inaha, tē ui atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tō'u mau taea'e nō te 'ēkālesia, 'ua fānau-vārua-hia ānei 'outou i tā te Atua ra ? 'Ua fāri'i ānei 'outou i tōna hōho'a i roto i tō 'outou nā mata ? 'Ua 'itea ānei ia 'outou teie tauira'a rahi i roto i tō 'outou na 'ā'au ?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

15 Tē fa'a'ohipa ra ānei 'outou i te fa'aro'o i roto i te fa'aorara'a nāna 'o tei hāmani ia 'outou ? Tē hi'o ātea ra ānei 'outou ma te mata fa'aro'o, 'e tē 'ite atu ra ānei 'outou i teie tino tāhuti i te fa'ati'ara'ahia 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'e teie nei tino pohe noa i te fa'ati'ara'ahia 'ei tino pohe 'ore, 'e i te ti'ara'a i mua i te Atua ia ha'avāhia mai te au i te mau 'ohipa i ravehia i te tino tāhuti nei ?

16 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tē mana'o na ānei 'outou i roto ia 'outou iho ē, tē fa'aro'o ra 'outou i te reo o te Fatu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ia 'outou i taua mahana ra ē : 'A haere mai iā'u nei, 'o 'outou tei ha'amaita'ihia, inaha ho'i, 'ua riro tā 'outou mau 'ohipa i rave 'ei mau 'ohipa parauti'a i ni'a i te fenua nei ?

17 'E 'aore rā tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou i roto ia 'outou iho ē, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ha'avare i te Fatu i taua mahana ra, 'a parau atu ai ē—E te Fatu, 'ua riro tā mātou mau 'ohipa i rave i ni'a i te fenua nei 'ei mea parauti'a—'e e fa'aora ia 'oia ia 'outou ?

18 'E 'aore rā, tē 'ite ra ānei 'outou ia 'outou iho i te 'āfa'ira'ahia i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Atua ma te 'ā'au i 'i i te 'oto 'e te taiā, ma te ha'amana'o i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa hape ato'a, 'oia ia, ma te ha'amana'o pāpū i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a, 'oia ia, ma te ha'amana'o pāpū ē, 'ua pāto'i 'outou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua ?

19 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, e ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia hi'o atu i ni'a i te Atua i taua mahana ra ma te 'ā'au parauti'a 'e te rima mā ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, e ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia hi'o atu i ni'a, ma te hōho'a o te Atua i 'ō'otihia i ni'a i tō 'outou ra mata ?

20 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, e ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia mana'o ē, e fa'aorahia 'outou 'e i tu'u na ho'i 'outou ia 'outou iho 'ei mau tāvini nō te diabolō ?

21 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, e 'ite 'outou i taua mahana ra ē, 'aita 'outou e ti'a 'ia fa'aorahia, nō te mea 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata e fa'aorahia, maori rā 'ua horoihia tōna mau 'ahu 'e 'ua teatea ; 'oia ia, e mea ti'a roa i tōna mau 'ahu 'ia tāmāhia, 'e 'ia horoihia te mau tāfetafeta ato'a nā roto i te toto nōna o tō tei parauhia e tō tātou mau metua, 'o tē haere mai nō te fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata i tā rātou mau hara.

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

22 'E i teienei, tē ui atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tō'u mau taea'e, e aha ia tō 'outou mana'o, 'ia ti'a atu 'outou i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Atua, ma tō 'outou mau 'ahu i tāfetafeta i te toto 'e te mau huru 'ohipa vi'ivi' ato'a ra ? Inaha, e aha tā teie mau mea e fa'a'ite fa'ahapa mai ia 'outou i reira ?

23 Inaha, 'aita ānei te reira e fa'a'ite pāpū mai ē, e mau ta'ata taparahi ta'ata 'outou, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua rave ato'a i te mau huru 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a ?

24 Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, e vāhi tō taua mau huru ta'ata ra nō te pārahi i te bāsileia o te Atua, i pīha'i iho ia Aberahama, 'e ia Isaaka, 'e ia Iakoba, 'e i te mau peropheta mo'a ato'a ho'i, 'o tei mā tō rātou mau 'ahu 'e te pōra'o 'ore, 'e te vi'ivi' i 'ore 'e te teatea ?

25 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'Aita roa ; maori rā 'ia fa'ariro 'outou i Tei Hamani ia tātou nei 'ei ta'ata ha'avare mai te mātāmua mai ā ; 'e 'aore rā 'ia mana'o 'outou ē, e ta'ata ha'avare 'oia mai te mātāmua mai ā ; 'aita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia mana'o ē, e vāhi tō taua huru ta'ata ra i te bāsileia o te ao ra ; 'āre'a rā e ti'avaru-'ē-hia rātou i rāpae nō te mea e mau tamari'i rātou nō te bāsileia o te diablo.

26 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tō'u mau taea'e, mai te mea ē 'ua 'itea ānei ia 'outou te tauira'a o tō 'outou 'ā'au, 'e mai te mea ē 'ua tupu tō 'outou hina'aro 'ia hīmene i te hīmene nō te aroha fa'aora, tē ui atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'ua ti'a ānei ia 'outou i te hina'aro i te reira i teienei ?

27 Tē haere ra ānei 'outou ma te hapa 'ore i mua i te Atua ? E ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia parau i roto ia 'outou iho, mai te mea ē 'ua fa'ata'ahia 'outou 'ia pohe i teie nei taime, 'e 'ua nava'i tō 'outou huru ha'eha'a ? 'E 'ua tāmāhia 'e 'ua fa'ateateahia tō 'outou ra mau 'ahu i te toto o te Mesia, 'o tē haere mai e fa'aora i tōna ra mau ta'ata i tā rātou mau hara ?

28 Inaha, 'ua fa'a'ore ānei 'outou i te te'ote'o ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, mai te mea ē 'aita 'outou i nā reira, 'aita ato'a ia 'outou i ineine nō te fārerei atu i te Atua. Inaha, e mea ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'a'ineine vave ; tē fātata mai ra ho'i te bāsileia o te ao, 'e 'aita o taua ta'ata ra e ora mure 'ore.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

29 Inaha, tē ui nei au ē, tē vai ra ānei te hō'ē i rotopū ia 'outou 'o tei 'ore i fa'a'ore i te nounou ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'aita ia 'oia i ineine ; 'e 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia fa'a'ineine vave 'oia, tē fātata mai nei ho'i te hora ; 'e 'aita i 'itea iāna te taera'a mai o taua tau ra ; 'e 'aita roa 'oia e 'iteahia ma te hapa 'ore.

30 'E teie fa'ahou ā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, tē vai ra ānei te hō'ē i rotopū ia 'outou 'o tei vahavaha atu i tōna ra taea'e, 'e 'aore rā 'o tei ha'apu'e i te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a i ni'a iāna ra ?

31 'Auē ho'i ē terā ra huru ta'ata ē, 'aita 'oia i ineine, 'e tē fātata mai ra te tau e mea ti'a roa iāna 'ia tātarahapa, 'e 'aore rā e 'ore 'oia e fa'aorahia !

32 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'outou ato'a e te mau ta'ata rave i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ē ; 'a tātarahapa, 'a tātarahapa, e nā te Fatu te Atua i parau mai i te reira.

33 Inaha, tē fa'atae mai ra 'oia i te parau anira'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ho'i tē fa'atorohia ra te rima o te aroha ia rātou ra ; 'e tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i 'oia ē : 'A tātarahapa, 'e e fāri'i au ia 'outou.

34 'Oia ia, tē nā 'ō mai ra 'oia : 'A haere mai 'outou iā'u nei 'e e fāri'i 'outou i te mā'a nō te tumu rā'au nō te ora ; 'oia ia, e 'amu 'outou i te pāne nō te ora, 'e e inu ho'i i te mau pape nō te ora ma te ti'amā.

35 'Oia ia, 'a haere mai 'outou iā'u nei 'e 'a fa'atupu i te mau 'ohipa parauti'a, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tāpūhia i raro 'e 'ia hurihia i roto i te auahi ra—

36 Inaha ho'i, tē fātata mai nei te tau, 'e 'oia 'o tei 'ore i fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a maita'i, 'e 'aore rā 'o tei 'ore i rave i te mau 'ohipa parauti'a, e fāri'i ia 'oia i te autā 'e te 'oto.

37 'O 'outou e te mau ta'ata rave i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ē, 'e tei fa'ateiteihia i roto i te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o teie nei ao, 'e 'o 'outou tei fa'ahua 'ite i te mau 'ē'a nō te parauti'a 'āre'a rā tei haere 'ē nā te 'ē'a mai te māmoe tīa'i 'ore ra, 'ua ti'aoro noa mai te tīa'i māmoe ia 'outou, 'e tē ti'aoro noa mai nei ā ia 'outou na, 'aore rā 'outou e fa'aro'o i tōna ra reo !

38 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, tē ti'aoro noa mai nei te tīa'i māmoe maita'i ia 'outou na, 'oia ia, tē ti'aoro nei ho'i 'oia ia 'outou i tōna iho i'oa, 'oia ho'i, i te i'oa o te Mesia ; 'e mai te mea ē 'aita 'outou e fa'aro'o i te reo o te tīa'i māmoe maita'i ra, i te i'oa i pi'ihia ai 'outou ra, inaha, e 'ere ia 'outou i te māmoe nā te tīa'i māmoe maita'i ra.

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

39 'E i teienei mai te mea e 'ere 'outou i te māmoe nā te tīa'i māmoe maita'i ra, nō teihea nana māmoe ia 'outou ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'o te diabolō ia tō 'outou tīa'i māmoe, 'e nō tāna nana māmoe ho'i 'outou ; 'e i teienei, 'o vai tē ti'a 'ia huna i teie ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'o 'oia tē huna i teie nei mau parau, e ta'ata ha'avare 'oia 'e e tamari'i ho'i 'oia nā te diabolō.

40 'E tē parau atu nei ho'i au ia 'outou na ē, 'o te mau mea maita'i ra nō 'ō mai ia i te Atua ra ; 'e te mau mea 'ino ra nō 'ō mai ia i te diabolō ra.

41 Nō reira, 'ia fa'atupu te hō'ē ta'ata i te mau 'ohipa maita'i, tē fa'aro'o ra ia 'oia i te reo o te tīa'i māmoe maita'i, 'e tē pe'e atu ra ia 'oia iāna ; 'āre'a rā te ta'ata 'o tē fa'atupu ra i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'ua riro ia 'oia 'ei tamari'i nā te diabolō, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o 'oia i tōna ra reo 'e tē pe'e atu ra 'oia iāna.

42 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē nā reira e fāri'i ia 'oia i tāna mau utu'a nō 'ō mai iāna ra ; nō reira, te mau utu'a e roa'a i te ta'ata 'o tei nā reira 'o te pohe ia i tā te mau mea nō te parauti'a ra, 'o 'oia i pohe i te mau 'ohipa maita'i ato'a.

43 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia fa'aro'o mai 'outou iā'u nei, tē parau nei ho'i au ma te pūai o tō'u nei vārua ; inaha ho'i, 'ua parau pāpū atu vau ia 'outou na 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia hape, 'oia ho'i 'ua parau atu vau mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

44 'Ua pī'ihia ho'i au 'ia parau atu mai teie te huru, mai te au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua tei roto ia Iesu Mesia ra ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'auehia vau 'ia ti'a atu 'e 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū atu i teie nei feiā i te mau mea i parauhia e tō tātou mau metua nō ni'a i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.

45 'E 'eiaha te reira ana'e. 'Aita ānei 'outou i mana'o ē, 'ua 'ite au iho nei i teie nei mau mea ? Inaha, tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'ua 'ite mau vau ē e parau mau ana'e teie mau mea 'o tā'u i parau iho nei. 'E i tō 'outou mana'ora'a, e mea nāhea vau i 'ite ai i te parau mau nō te reira ?

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

46 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'ua fa'a'itehia mai te reira iā'u nā roto i te Vārua Mo'a o te Atua. Inaha ho'i, 'ua ha'apae a'enei au i te mā'a 'e 'ua pure a'enei ho'i au e rave rahi mau mahana, 'ia 'ite au iho nei i teie nei mau mea. 'E i teienei 'ua 'ite māite au ē, e parau mau ia ; nā te Fatu te Atua ho'i i fa'a'ite mai i te reira iā'u nei nā roto i tōna ra Vārua Mo'a ; 'e 'o teie ia te vārua nō te heheura'a i roto iā'u nei.

47 'E 'oia fa'ahou, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'ua heheuhia mai iā'u nei ē, e parau mau te mau parau i parauhia mai e tō tātou mau metua ; 'e i nā reira-mau-hia mai te au i te vārua nō te tohu i roto iā'u nei, 'o tē fa'a'ite-ato'a-hia mai e te Vārua o te Atua.

48 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'ua 'ite māite au ē, e parau mau roa te mau mea tā'u e parau atu ia 'outou na nō ni'a i te mau mea e tae mai ; 'e tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'ua 'ite au ē, e tae mai Iesu Mesia, 'oia ia, te Tamaiti, te Tamaiti fānau tahi a te Metua, tei 'i i te maita'i, 'e te aroha, 'e te parau mau. 'E inaha, 'o 'oia tē tae mai nō te hōpoi 'ē atu i te hara a tō te ao nei ; 'oia ia, te mau hara a te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē tāmau māite i te ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa.

49 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'o te fa'anahora'a teie i pi'ihia ai au, 'oia ia, 'ia a'o atu i tō'u ra mau taea'e herehia, 'oia ia, 'e i te mau ta'ata e pārahi ra i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'oia ia, 'ia a'o atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a, i te ta'ata pa'ari 'e te ta'ata 'āpī, i te feiā tūtī 'e te feiā ti'amā ; 'oia ia, e parau atu vau ia 'outou na e te feiā ruhiruhiā, 'e te feiā huru pa'ari, 'e te u'i 'āpī ; 'oia ia, 'ia ti'aoro atu ia rātou 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia fānau-fa'ahou-hia.

50 'Oia ia, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Vārua : 'A tātarahapa, e tō te mau hope'a o te fenua nei, tē fātata mai ra te bāsileia o te ao ra ; 'oia ia, tē haere mai ra te Tamaiti a te Atua ma tōna ra hanahana, e tōna pūai, 'e te hinuhinu, 'e te mana, 'e te hau. 'Oia ia, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Vārua : 'A hi'o na i te hanahana o te Ari'i o te ao ato'a nei ; 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua fātata roa te Ari'i o te ra'i i te 'ana'ana mai i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

51 'E 'oia ato'a 'ua parau mai te Vārua iā'u nei, 'oia ia, i te pi'ira'a mai iā'u nei ma te reo pūai, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'A haere ti'a atu na 'oe 'e 'a parau atu i teie nei mau ta'ata ē—'A tātarahapa, 'ia 'ore 'outou e tātarahapa, e 'ore roa 'outou e fāri'i i te bāsileia o te ao ra.

52 'E teie fa'ahou ā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Vārua : Inaha, tē vai nei ho'i te 'ōpahi i te a'a o te tumu rā'au i teienei ā ; nō reira te mau tumu rā'au ato'a 'aore i fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a maita'i ra, e tāpūhia ia i raro 'e e hurihia i roto i te auahi ; 'oia ia, te auahi pohe 'ore 'e 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia tinaihia. Inaha, 'e 'a ha'amana'o ē, nā Tei Mo'a i parau mai i te reira.

53 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'ua ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia pāto'i i teie nei mau parau ; 'oia ia, 'ua ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia ha'apae i teie nei mau mea, 'e 'a ta'ata'ahi ai i Tei Mo'a i raro a'e i tō 'outou 'āvae ; 'oia ia, 'ua ti'a ānei ia 'outou ia fa'aahaaha i te te'ote'o o tō 'outou 'ā'au ; 'oia ia, e tāmāu noa ānei 'outou i te fa'a'ahu ia 'outou iho i te ahu moni rahi 'e te tu'ura'a atu i tō 'outou 'ā'au i ni'a i te mau mea faufa'a 'ore nō teie nei ao, 'oia ho'i i tā 'outou mau tao'a rahi ?

54 'Oia ia, e tāmāu noa ānei 'outou i te mana'o ē, e mea maita'i a'e 'outou i te tahi atu ; 'oia ia, e tāmāu noa ānei 'outou i te hāmani 'ino i tō 'outou mau taea'e 'o tei fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho, 'e tei haere ho'i mai te au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua, i fa'aōhia mai ai rātou i roto i te 'ēkālesia nei, 'e i ha'amo'ahia ho'i rātou e te Vārua Mo'a, 'e 'ua fa'atupu rātou i te mau 'ohipa maita'i i tei au i te tātarahapa—

55 'Oia ia, e tāmāu noa ānei 'outou i te huri atu i tō 'outou tua i te feiā veve, 'e te nava'i 'ore, 'e i te tāpe'a noa i tā 'outou faufa'a ia rātou ?

56 'E i te pae hope'a, 'o 'outou ato'a o tē tāmāu noa ā i roto i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'o rātou ia teie 'o tē tāpūhia i raro 'e 'o tē hurihia i roto i te auahi, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa vave rātou.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

57 'E i teienei tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'o 'outou ato'a 'o tei hina'aro māite 'ia pe'e mai i te reo o te tīa'i māmoē maita'i ra, 'a haere mai 'outou mai rotopū mai i te mau ta'ata 'ī'ino, 'e 'a fa'ata'a 'ē mai ia 'outou, e 'eiaha 'outou e rave noa atu i tā rātou mau mea vi'ivi'i ra ; 'e inaha, e paraihia tō rātou mau i'oa, 'e 'aita roa ho'i te i'oa o te mau ta'ata parauti'a 'ore e tai'ohia i rotopū i te i'oa o te feiā parauti'a ; 'ia tupu te parau a te Atua, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē : E 'ore roa te i'oa o te mau ta'ata 'ī'ino e 'āmuihia i te i'oa o tō'u ra mau ta'ata.

58 'E e pāpa'ihia ho'i te i'oa o te feiā parauti'a i roto i te buka nō te ora, 'e e hōro'a atu vau ia rātou i te hō'ē pārahira'a i tō'u ra rima atau. 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, e aha tā 'outou parau nō te pāto'i mai i teie ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, mai te mea e pāto'i mai 'outou i te reira, 'aita roa ia e pe'ape'a, nō te mea 'ia fa'atupuhia te parau a te Atua e ti'a ai.

59 Nō te mea 'o vai ia tīa'i māmoē i rotopū ia 'outou na e rave rahi tāna māmoē, 'e 'aita 'oia e tīa'i māite ia rātou 'ia 'ore te mau luko e ō mai 'e 'a 'amu ai i tāna nana māmoē ? 'E inaha, mai te mea e ō mai te luko i roto i tāna ra nana māmoē, 'aita ānei 'oia e tīahi 'ē atu iāna ? 'Oia ia, mai te mea e ti'a iāna, e taparahi ia 'oia iāna.

60 'E i teienei tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, e pi'i noa mai te tīa'i māmoē maita'i ia 'outou na ; 'e 'ia fa'aro'o 'outou i tōna reo, e hōpoi mai 'oia ia 'outou i roto i tāna ra nana, 'e e māmoē 'outou nāna i reira ; 'e tē fa'aue mai nei 'oia ia 'outou, 'eiaha 'outou e vaiho i te luko taehae ia ō mai i rotopū ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ha'amouhia.

61 'E i teienei, tē fa'aue atu nei au, 'o Alama, 'ia 'outou nā roto i te reo nōna 'o tei fa'aue mai iā'u nei, 'ia ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau parau tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou na.

62 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou i tō te 'ēkālesia nā roto i te fa'auera'a ; 'e 'ia 'outou e 'ere i tō te 'ēkālesia tē parau atu nei au nā roto i te anira'a, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'A haere mai 'e 'ia bāpetizohia nō te tātarahapara'a, 'e 'ia 'amu ato'a 'outou i te mā'a nō te tumu rā'au nō te ora.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

Alama 6

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Alama i te paraparau atu i te mau ta'ata o te 'ekālesia 'o tei fa'ati'ahia i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela, 'ua fa'atōro'a ihora 'oia i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau peresibutero, nā roto i te tu'ura'a i tōna nā rima mai te au i te fa'anahora'a a te Atua, 'ia peresideni rātou 'e 'ia tīa'i māite ho'i i te 'ekālesia.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'o rātou ato'a e 'ere i tō te 'ekālesia 'e 'o tei tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara, 'ua bāpetizohia rātou nō te tātarahapara'a, 'e 'ua fāri'ihia rātou i roto i te 'ekālesia.
- 3 'E i muri ato'a a'era, 'o rātou ato'a nō roto i te 'ekālesia 'o tei 'ore i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'īno 'e tei 'ore ho'i i fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho i mua i te Atua—tē parau nei au nō ni'a i te feiā tei fa'ateiteihia i roto i te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au—'ua fa'aru'ehia rātou, 'e 'ua paraihia tō rātou mau i'oa, 'e 'aita tō rātou mau i'oa i tai'ohia i rotopū i tō te feiā parauti'a ra.
- 4 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te ha'amata i te fa'ati'a i te fa'anahora'a o te 'ekālesia i te 'oire nō Zarahemela.
- 5 I teienei 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, e mea hōro'a-noa-hia te parau a te Atua i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e 'aita roa te ta'ata i 'ōpanihia 'ia ha'aputupu ia rātou iho nō te fa'aro'o i te parau a te Atua.
- 6 'Āre'a rā 'ua fa'auehia mai te mau tamari'i a te Atua 'ia ha'aputupu pinepine rātou ia rātou iho, 'e 'ia 'āmui ia rātou iho ma te ha'apae i te mā'a 'e ma te pure fa'a'ū'ana 'ia roa'a te maita'i i te mau ta'ata 'o tei 'ore i 'ite i te Atua.
- 7 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Alama i te hōro'a atu i teie nei mau arata'ira'a, 'ua fa'aru'e mai ra 'oia ia rātou, 'oia ia, i te 'ekālesia i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te pae i te hiti'a o te rā o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, 'e tae atu ra i roto i te peho nō Gideona, i fa'ati'ahia na te hō'e 'oire i reira 'o tei pī'ihia te 'oire nō Gideona, 'e tei roto te reira i te peho i pī'ihia 'o Gideona, 'e 'ua topahia tōna i'oa i te i'oa o te ta'ata i taparahihia i te 'o'e e te rima o Nehora.

Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 'E 'ua haere atu ra Alama 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te a'o atu i te parau a te Atua i te 'ekālesia i fa'ati'ahia i te peho nō Gideona, mai te au i te parau mau i heheuhia mai 'e tei parauhia mai e tōna ra mau metua, 'e mai te au i te vārua nō te heheura'a i roto iāna ra, 'e mai te au ho'i i te 'itera'a pāpū o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'o tē haere mai nō te fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata i tā rātou mau hara, e mai te au ho'i i te fa'anahora'a mo'a i pi'ihia ai 'oia ra. 'E te reira ia tei pāpa'ihia. 'Āmene.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

Tē mau parau a Alama 'o tāna i fā'a'ite atu i te mau ta'ata i Gideona, mai te au i tāna ibo pāpa'a parau.

Alama 7

- 1 Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, nō te mea 'ua fā'atī'ahia vau 'ia haere mai ia 'outou nei, nō reira e tāmata vau 'ia parau atu ia 'outou i tō'u iho reo ; 'oia ia, nā tō'u iho vaha, 'o te mātāmua ho'i teie o tā'u paraura'a atu ia 'outou i te parau a tō'u iho vaha, i tāpe'a-tāmau-hia ho'i au i te pārahira'a ha'avā, nō te rahi o te 'ohipa i 'ore ai i ti'a ai iā'u 'ia haere mai i'ō 'outou nei.
- 2 'Aita roa i ti'a iā'u 'ia haere mai i'ō nei i teie taime 'āhiri 'aita te pārahira'a ha'avā i hōro'ahia i te tahi 'ē atu, nō te fa'atere nō te mono iā'u ; 'e nā roto i te aroha rahi o te Fatu 'ua fā'atī'a mai 'oia iā'u 'ia haere mai i'ō 'outou nei.
- 3 'E inaha, 'ua haere mai au ma te ti'aturi rahi 'e te hina'aro rahi ho'i 'ia 'ite au ē, 'ua fā'aha'eha'a na 'outou ia 'outou iho i mua i te Atua, 'e 'ua tāmāu māite noa 'outou i te ani atu i tōna ra maita'i, 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua riro 'outou 'ei feiā hapa 'ore i mua iāna ra ; 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i au ē, 'aita 'outou i vai i roto i te pe'ape'a ri'ari'a mai tō tātou mau taea'e i Zarahemela ra.
- 4 'Ia fā'ahanahanahia rā te i'oa o te Atua, 'oia i hōro'a mai iā'u 'ia 'ite, 'oia ia, 'oia i hōro'a mai iā'u 'ia fāri'i i te 'oa'oa rahi nō te 'itera'a ē 'ua tu'u-fā'ahou-hia rātou i ni'a i te 'ē'a nō tāna ra parauti'a.
- 5 'E tē ti'aturi nei au, mai te au i te Vārua o te Atua i roto iā'u nei ē, e fāri'i ato'a vau i te 'oa'oa nō ni'a ia 'outou ; 'aita rā vau i hina'aro 'ia tupu mai tō'u 'oa'oa nō ni'a ia 'outou nā roto i te mau 'ati e rave rahi 'e te 'oto i fāri'ihia e au nō te mau taea'e i Zarahemela, inaha ho'i, 'ua fāri'i au i te 'oa'oa nō rātou i muri a'e i tō'u haerera'a nā roto i te 'ati rahi 'e te 'oto.

The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.

Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 Inaha rā, tē ti'aturi nei au ē 'aita 'outou i vai na i roto i te ti'aturi 'ore rahi mai tō 'outou ra mau taea'e ; tē ti'aturi nei au ē 'aita 'outou i fa'ateiteihia i roto i te te'ote'o o tō 'outou 'ā'au ; 'oia ia, tē ti'aturi nei au ē 'aita 'outou i ha'amaui i tō 'outou 'ā'au i ni'a i te mau tao'a rahi 'e te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o teie nei ao ; 'oia ia, tē ti'aturi nei au ē 'aita 'outou i ha'amori i te mau 'idolo, 'ua ha'amori rā 'outou i te Atua mau, 'e te Atua ora, 'e tē hi'o ra 'outou i mua nō te ha'amatarara'a i tā 'outou ra mau hara, ma te fa'aro'o mure 'ore e tupu a muri atu.

7 Inaha ho'i, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e rave rahi te mau mea e tupu a muri atu ; 'e inaha, tē vai nei te hō'ē mea i hau roa atu i te faufa'a rahi i te mau mea ato'a—inaha ho'i, tē fātata mai nei te tau e ora ai 'e e tae mai ai te Tāra'ehara i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata.

8 Inaha, 'aita vau e parau nei ē, e haere mai 'oia i rotopū ia tātou nei, 'a pārahi ai 'oia i roto i tōna tino tāhuti nei ; inaha ho'i, 'aita te Vārua i parau mai iā'u ē, e nā-reira-hia ia. I teienei, nō ni'a i teie mea, 'aita ia vau i 'ite ; 'ua 'ite rā vau ē, e mana tō te Fatu te Atua 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a mai te au i tāna ra parau.

9 Inaha rā, teie tā te Vārua i parau mai iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'A ti'aoro atu i teie nei mau ta'ata i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē—'A tātarahapa 'outou, 'e 'a fa'aîneine i te 'ē'a o te Fatu, 'e 'a haere nā ni'a i tōna mau 'ē'a, e mea tītī'aifaro te reira ; inaha ho'i, tē fātata mai nei te bāsileia o te ao, 'e e haere mai te Tamaiti a te Atua i ni'a i te fenua nei.

10 'E inaha, e fānauhia mai 'oia e Maria i Ierusalem, i te fenua o tō tātou ra mau hui tupuna ; e pāretenia 'oia, te hō'ē fāri'i maita'i 'e tei mā'itihia ho'i ; 'o tē tāpo'ihia e te ata o te Vārua Maita'i 'e 'o tē tō nā roto i tōna mana, 'e e fānau mai 'oia i te hō'ē tamaiti, 'oia ia, i te Tamaiti a te Atua.

11 'E e haere atu 'oia ma te fa'a'orama'i i te mau māuiui 'e te mau 'ati, 'e te mau huru fa'ahemara'a ato'a ; 'e e nā reira 'oia 'ia tupu te parau 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, e rave 'oia i ni'a iāna te mau māuiui 'e te mau ma'i o tōna mau ta'ata.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

12 'E e rave 'oia i te pohe i ni'a iāna, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia tātara i te mau tā'amu nō te pohe i ru'uru'uhia ai tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e e rave 'oia i tō rātou mau paruparu i ni'a iho iāna, 'ia fa'a'ihia tōna ra 'ā'au i te aroha, mai te au i te tino, 'e 'ia 'ite 'oia nā roto i te tino i te rāve'a nō te fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia au i tō rātou mau paruparu.

13 I teienei, 'ua ite te Vārua i te mau mea ato'a ; 'āre'a rā e fa'a'oroma'i te Tamaiti a te Atua i te mamae tino nei, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia rave i te mau hara a tōna ra mau ta'ata i ni'a iāna, 'e 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ore i tā rātou mau hapa mai te au i te mana nō tāna fa'aorara'a ; 'e i teienei, inaha, teie te 'itera'a pāpū i roto iā'u nei.

14 I teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia tātarahapa 'outou 'e 'ia fānau-fa'ahou-hia e ti'a ai ; nō te mea tē parau mai nei ho'i te Vārua ē, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fānau-fa'ahou-hia e 'ore 'outou e fāri'i i te bāsileia o te ao ra ; nō reira, 'a haere mai 'e 'ia bāpetizohia nō te tātarahapara'a, 'ia tāmāhia 'outou i tā 'outou mau hara, 'ia noa'a ia 'outou te fa'aro'o i te 'Ārenio a te Atua, 'o tei hōpoi 'ē atu i te mau hara a tō te ao nei, tei iāna ho'i te pūai 'ia fa'aora 'e 'ia tāmā i te ta'ata i te mau mea parauti'a 'ore ato'a ra.

15 'Oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'a haere mai 'e 'eiaha e mata'u, 'e 'a ha'apae i te mau hara ato'a i ro'o-'ōhie-hia ai 'outou ra, 'e i ru'uru'uhia ai 'outou i te pohe ; 'oia ia, 'a haere mai 'e 'a haere ti'a atu, 'e 'a fa'a'ite atu i tō 'outou Atua ē, 'ua hina'aro 'outou 'ia tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau hara 'e 'ia fafau atu i te hō'ē fafaura'a iāna 'ia ha'apa'o i tāna mau fa'auera'a, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū atu iāna i teie nei mahana i te reira nā roto i te haerera'a i raro i te mau pape nō te bāpetizora'a.

16 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē nā reira, 'e 'o tē ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua mai te reira atu ā taime, 'o 'oia ia tei ha'amana'o i tā'u i parau atu iāna, 'oia ia, e ha'amana'o 'oia ē 'ua parau atu na vau iāna ē, e noa'a te ora mure 'ore iāna, mai te au i te 'itera'a pāpū o te Vārua Mo'a, 'o tei fa'a'ite pāpū mai iā'u nei.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

- 17 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua ti'aturi ānei 'outou i teie nei mau mea ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua ti'aturi 'outou i te reira ; 'e te rāve'a i 'ite ai au i te reira e mea nā roto ia i te fa'a'itera'a a te Vārua i roto iā'u nei. 'E i teienei nō te mea e mea pūai tō 'outou fa'aro'o i te reira, 'oia ia, i te mau mea o tā'u i parau atu, 'ua rahi ia tō'u nei 'oa'oa.
- 18 'E mai tā'u ho'i i parau atu ia 'outou na i te mātāmua ra, tē vai nei tō'u hina'aro 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia vai i roto i te huru pe'ape'a mai tō 'outou ra mau taea'e, 'e i teienei, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua fa'ati'ahia tō'u ra hina'aro.
- 19 'Ua 'ite ho'i au ē, tei ni'a 'outou i te mau 'ē'a nō te parauti'a ; 'ua 'ite au ē, tei ni'a 'outou i te 'ē'a e tae atu ai i te bāsileia o te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite au ē, tē fa'atiti'aifaro nei 'outou i tōna mau 'ē'a.
- 20 'Ua 'ite au ē, 'ua fa'a'itehia 'outou i te reira nā roto i te 'itera'a pāpū o tāna ra parau, 'e 'aita e ti'a iāna 'ia haere nā te mau 'ē'a pi'o, 'e 'aita ato'a 'oia e fa'ahuru 'ē i tāna i parau ; 'e 'aita ho'i 'oia e fāriu atu i te pae 'atau 'e i te pae 'aui, 'oia ho'i mai te mea ti'a i te mea ti'a 'ore ; nō reira, e mea mure 'ore tōna haere'a.
- 21 'E 'aita 'oia e pārahi i roto i te mau hiero vi'ivi'i ; 'e 'aita ho'i te hō'ē mea vi'ivi'i 'e 'aore rā te hō'ē mea repo e ti'a 'ia fāri'ihia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ; nō reira tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou ē, e tae mai te tau, 'oia ia, i taua mahana hope'a ra, 'o 'oia 'o tei vi'ivi'i e vai noa 'oia i roto i tōna huru vi'ivi'i.
- 22 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua parau atu vau i teie mau mea ia 'outou na, 'ia fa'aara vau ia 'outou 'ia 'ite 'outou i tā 'outou 'ohipa i te Atua ra, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia haere ma te hapa 'ore i mua iāna, 'ia haere ho'i 'outou mai te au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua ra i fāri'ihia ai 'outou na.
- 23 'E i teienei, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia riro 'outou 'ei feiā ha'eha'a, 'e te auraro, 'e te marū ; 'e 'ei feiā a'o-'ōhiehia ; tei 'i i te fa'a'oroma'i, 'e te hitahita 'ore ; 'e te au maita'i i te mau mea ato'a ; 'e te itoito i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua i te mau taime ato'a ; i te anira'a i te mau mea ato'a e au ia 'outou na, i tā te vārua 'e tā te tino ato'a ho'i ; 'e i te ha'amaita'ira'a i te Atua nō te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou e fāri'i ma te fa'aea 'ore.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

24 'E 'ia tāpe'a māite 'outou i te fa'aro'o, 'e te ti'aturi,
'e te here, 'e i reira e rahi ai tā 'outou ravera'a i te mau
'ohipa maita'i.

25 'E 'ia ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu ia 'outou, 'e 'a
ha'apa'o māite i tō 'outou iho mau 'ahu 'ia pōra'o
'ore, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou i te pae hope'a 'ia ha'apārahia
i roto i te bāsileia o te ao ra i pīha'i iho ia Aberahama,
ia Isaaka, 'e ia Iakoba, 'e i te mau peropheta mo'a mai
te mātāmua mai ā o te ao nei, 'e 'ia pōra'o 'ore tō
'outou mau 'ahu mai tō rātou mau 'ahu i pōra'o 'ore,
'e 'ia 'ore 'ia haere i rāpae ē a muri noa atu.

26 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua parau atu
vau i teie mau parau ia 'outou mai te au i tā te Vārua i
fa'a'ite pāpū mai iā'u nei ; 'e 'ua 'oa'oa roa tō'u vārua
nō tō 'outou itoito rahi 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i i tā'u nei
parau.

27 'E i teienei, 'ia tae mai te hau o te Atua i ni'a ia
'outou na, 'e i ni'a ho'i i tō 'outou mau 'utuāfare e
mau fenua, 'e i ni'a ato'a i tā 'outou mau nana māmoe
'e mau nana pua'atoro, 'e tā 'outou ato'a ra mau tao'a,
'e i ni'a ato'a i tā 'outou mau vahine 'e tā 'outou mau
tamari'i, mai te au i tō 'outou fa'aro'o 'e tā 'outou
mau 'ohipa maita'i, mai teie tau atu ē a muri noa atu.
'E 'o teie tā'u i parau. 'Āmene.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and
then ye will always abound in good works.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your gar-
ments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit
down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy
prophets who have been ever since the world began,
having your garments spotless even as their gar-
ments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go
no more out.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken
these words unto you according to the Spirit which
testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly re-
joice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed
which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you,
and upon your houses and lands, and upon your
flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your
women and your children, according to your faith
and good works, from this time forth and forever.
And thus I have spoken. Amen.

Alama 8

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era ia Alama te ha'api'ira'a atu i te mau ta'ata i Gideona i te mau mea e rave rahi 'aore i ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia, 'e i te fa'ati'ara'a ho'i i te fa'anahora'a o te 'ēkālesia mai tāna i rave na i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'ua ho'i mai ra 'oia mai te fenua mai ra mai Gideona, 'oia ia, 'ua ho'i mai ra 'oia i tōna ihora fare i Zarahemela nō te fa'afa'aea ri'i i te mau 'ohipa o tāna i rave.
- 2 'E 'o teie te hope'a nō te ivara'a o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te 'ahurura'a o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua reva atu ra Alama mai reira atu, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Meleke, i te pae tō'o'a o te rā nō te 'ānāvai Sidona, i te pae tō'o'a o te rā, nā te mau fenua i te hiti nō te mēdēbara.
- 4 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te ha'api'i i te mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Meleke mai te au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua, 'e 'ua pi'ihia ho'i 'oia nā roto i te reira ; 'e 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te ha'api'i atu i te mau ta'ata ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ra nō Meleke.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra te mau ta'ata iāna nō 'ō mai i te mau 'ōti'a ato'a o te fenua i te pae i te mēdēbara ra. 'E 'ua bāpetizohia ihora rātou ē hope roa a'e tō taua fenua ra.
- 6 'E 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i tāna 'ohipa i Meleke ra, 'ua reva atu ra 'oia, 'e e toru a'era mahana 'oia i te haerera'a i te pae apato'erau nō te fenua ra nō Meleke ; 'e 'ua tae atu ra 'oia i te hō'ē 'oire i parauhia 'o Amonihā.
- 7 I teienei, e peu nā te mau ta'ata o Nephi 'ia ma'iri i te i'oa o tō rātou mau fenua, 'e tō rātou mau 'oire, 'e tō rātou mau 'oire iti, 'oia ia, 'e tō rātou mau 'oire iti roa atu, i te i'oa o te ta'ata mātāmua i pārahi i reira ; 'e 'ua nā reira-ato'a-hia te fenua nō Amonihā.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era Alama i te 'oire nō Amonihā, 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te a'o atu i te parau a te Atua ia rātou.
- 9 I teienei, e mana rahi tō Sātane i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata nō te 'oire nō Amonihā ; nō reira 'aita rātou i fa'aro'o i te mau parau a Alama.

Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

- 10 'Āre'a rā 'ua rave pūai Alama i te 'ohipa nā roto i te vārua, i te tōra'a i te Atua nā roto i te pure 'ū'ana, 'ia nīni'i mai 'oia i tōna Vārua i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata i roto i taua 'oire ra ; 'e 'ia fa'ati'a mai ho'i 'oia 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia bāpetizo ia rātou e tae atu ai i te tātarahapara'a.
- 11 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai iāna ē : Inaha, 'ua 'ite mātou ē, 'o Alama ā 'oe ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a mātou ē, e tahu'a rahi 'oe i ni'a i te 'ēkālesia tā 'oe i fa'ati'a i te mau vāhi e rave rahi i ni'a i te fenua, mai te au i tō 'oe iho mana'o ; e 'ere mātou nō tā 'oe 'ēkālesia, 'e 'aita ho'i mātou i ti'aturi i taua mau peu tumu ma'ama'a ra.
- 12 'E i teienei 'ua 'ite ho'i mātou ē, nō te mea e 'ere mātou nō tā 'oe 'ēkālesia, 'ua 'ite mātou ē 'aita ia tō 'oe e mana i ni'a iho ia mātou ; 'e 'ua hōro'a ho'i 'oe i te pārahira'a ha'avā ia Nephiha ; nō reira e 'ere ia 'oe i te ha'avā rahi i ni'a ia mātou nei.
- 13 I teienei 'ia oti a'era tā te mau ta'ata paraura'a mai i te reira, 'e te pāto'ira'a mai i tāna ato'a ra mau parau, 'e te fa'a'inora'a mai iāna, 'e te tūtuhara'a mai i ni'a iho iāna, 'e te tiāhira'a ho'i iāna i rāpae i tō rātou 'oire, 'ua reva atu ra 'oia, 'e 'ua rave ihora 'oia i te 'ē'a e tae atu ai i te 'oire i pi'ihia 'o Aarona.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'a haere noa ai 'oia i reira, 'ua teiaha roa 'oia i te 'oto, i te haerera'a nā roto i te mau ati e rave rahi, 'e te māuiui rahi o te 'ā'au, nō te parauti'a 'ore o te feiā e pārahi ra i te 'oire nō Amoniha, 'e i muri a'era, 'a teiaha noa ai Alama i te 'oto, inaha, 'ua fā mai ra te hō'ē melahi a te Fatu iāna, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra :
- 15 E ao tō 'oe e Alama ; nō reira, 'a fa'ateitei i tō 'oe upo'o i ni'a 'e 'a 'oa'oa, e mea ti'a roa ho'i ia 'oe 'ia 'oa'oa ; nō te mea 'ua itoito 'oe i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua mai te tau mai ā i fāri'i ai 'oe i tā 'oe parau poro'i mātāmua nō 'ō mai iāna ra. Inaha, 'o vau nei te reira tei hōro'a atu i te reira ia 'oe.
- 16 'E inaha, 'ua tonohia mai au nō te fa'aue atu ia 'oe na 'ia ho'i atu i te 'oire nō Amoniha, 'e 'ia a'o fa'ahou atu i te mau ta'ata nō taua 'oire ra ; 'oia ia, 'ia a'o atu ia rātou. 'Oia ia, 'ia parau atu ia rātou ē, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa, e ha'amou te Fatu te Atua ia rātou.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephihah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

17 Inaha ho'i, tē feruri noa nei rātou i teie taime i te rāve'a nō te fa'a'ore i te ti'amāra'a o tō 'oe ra mau ta'ata, (tē nā reira mai ra ho'i te Fatu) 'e e mea au 'ore ho'i ia i te mau ture, 'e te mau parau, 'e te mau fa'auera'a ho'i tāna i tu'u mai i tōna ra mau ta'ata.

18 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Alama i te parau poro'i a te melahi a te Fatu ra, 'ua ho'i 'oi'oi atu ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Amonihā. 'E 'ua tomo atu 'oia i roto i te 'oire nā te tahi 'ē'a atu, 'oia ia, nā te 'ē'a i te pae apato'a nō te 'oire ra nō Amonihā.

19 'E 'ua tomo atu ai 'oia i roto i te 'oire, 'ua po'ia 'oia, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra i te hō'ē ta'ata : E ti'a ānei ia 'oe 'ia hōro'a mai i te mā'a nā te hō'ē tāvini ha'eha'a o te Atua ?

20 'E 'ua parau mai ra taua ta'ata ra iāna : E ta'ata 'āti Nephī au nei, 'e tē 'ite nei au ē, e peropheta mo'a 'oe nā te Atua, 'e 'o 'oe te ta'ata tā te melahi i parau mai i roto i te hō'ē 'ōrama ē : E fāri'i 'oe iāna. Nō reira, 'a haere mai nā muri iā'u i roto i tō'u fare, 'e e hōro'a atu vau nā 'oe i tā'u ra mā'a ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e riro 'oe 'ei ha'amaita'ira'a nō'u 'e nō tō'u ra 'utuāfare ho'i.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fāri'i mai ra taua ta'ata ra iāna i roto i tōna ra 'utuāfare ; 'e 'o Amuleka te 'i'oa o taua ta'ata ra ; 'e 'ua hōpoi mai ra 'oia i te faraoa e te 'ina'i 'e 'ua tu'u mai ra i mua ia Alama.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'amu ihora Alama i te faraoa 'e 'ua pa'ia a'era, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ihora 'oia ia Amuleka 'e tōna 'utuāfare, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ato'a atu ra 'oia i te Atua.

23 'E i muri iho i tōna 'amura'a 'e i te pa'iara'a, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia Amuleka : 'O vau nei 'o Alama te tahu'a rahi i ni'a i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua nei.

24 'E inaha, 'ua pi'ihia vau 'ia a'o atu i te parau a te Atua i rotopū i teie nei feiā, mai te au i te vārua nō te heheura'a 'e te tohu ; i pārahi na vau i teie nei fenua 'e 'aita rātou i fāri'i mai iā'u, 'ua tīahi rā rātou iā'u i rāpae 'e 'ua fātata vau i te huritua i teie nei fenua ē a muri noa atu.

25 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'auehia mai au 'ia ho'i fa'ahou mai 'e 'ia tohu i teie nei feiā ; 'oia ia, 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū atu ia rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

26 'E i teienei, e Amuleka, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'amu mai 'oe iā'u 'e 'ua fāri'i mai ho'i iā'u, e ha'amaita'ihia 'oe ; i po'ia na ho'i au nō te mea i ha'apae nā vau i te mā'a e rave rahi mahana.

27 'E 'ua pārahi ihora Alama i pīha'i iho ia Amuleka e rave rahi mahana hou 'oia i a'o atu ai i te mau ta'ata.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu rahi ihora te mau 'ohipa 'T'ino a te mau ta'ata.

29 'E 'ua tae mai ra te parau ia Alama, nā 'ō mai ra : 'A haere na 'oe ; 'e 'a parau ato'a atu ho'i i tō'u tāvini ra ia Amuleka, 'a haere atu 'e 'a tohu atu i teie nei feiā, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē—'A tātarahapa 'outou, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e tāho'ohia ia teie nei feiā i tō'u ra riri ; 'oia iā, e 'ore roa vau e fa'afāriu 'ē atu i tō'u ra riri rahi.

30 'E 'ua haere atu ra Alama 'e Amuleka ato'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra i te mau parau a te Atua ia rātou ; 'e 'ua 'ī roa rāua i te Vārua Maita'i.

31 'E 'ua hōro'ahia mai te mana ia rāua, 'e nō reira 'aita roa i ti'a i te hō'ē noa atu 'ia tāpe'a ia rāua i roto i te mau vāhi tāpe'ara'a i raro i te fenua ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i i ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia taparahi ia rāua ; 'āre'a rā 'aita rāua i fa'a'ohipa i tō rāua mana e tae roa atu i te taime 'ua ru'uru'uhia rāua i te mau taura 'e 'ua hurihia i roto i te vāhi tāpe'ara'a. I teienei, 'ua nā-reira-hia 'ia ti'a i te Fatu 'ia fa'a'ite atu i tōna ra mana nā roto ia rāua.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rāua 'e 'ua a'o atu ra 'e 'ua tohu atu ra ho'i i te mau ta'ata, mai te au i te vārua e te mana tā te Fatu i hōro'a mai ia rāua ra.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

Tē mau parau a Alama, 'e te mau parau ato'a a Amuleka, 'o tei a'obia atu i te mau ta'ata e pārahi ra i te fenua ra nō Amoniba. 'E 'oia ato'a 'ua buribia rāua i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ua fa'aorabia rāua e te mana semeio o te Atua 'o tei vai na i roto ia rāua ra, mai te au i te pāpa'a parau a Alama.

Alama 9

- 1 'E i teienei, 'ua fa'auehia vau, 'o Alama, 'e te Atua 'ia rave au ia Amuleka 'e 'ia haere atu e a'o fa'ahou atu i taua feiā nei, 'e 'aore rā i te mau ta'ata e pārahi ra i te 'oire nō Amoniba, 'e i muri a'era, 'a ha'amata ai au i te a'o atu ia rātou, 'ua mārō mai ra rātou iā'u, nā 'ō mai ra :
- 2 'O vai 'oe ? 'Ua mana'o ānei 'oe ē, e ti'aturi mātou i te 'itera'a pāpū o te hō'ē noa iho ta'ata, noa atu ā e a'o mai 'oia ia mātou ē, e mou te fenua nei ?
- 3 I teienei, 'aita rātou i māramarama i te mau parau tā rātou i parau, nō te mea 'aita rātou i 'ite ē, e mou iho ā ā te fenua nei.
- 4 'E 'ua parau ato'a mai ra rātou : E'ita roa mātou e ti'aturi i tā 'oe mau parau mai te mea e tohu mai 'oe ē, e ha'amouhia teie nei 'oire rahi i te hō'ē ana'e iho mahana.
- 5 I teienei 'aita rātou i 'ite ē, e ti'a i te Atua 'ia rave i te mau 'ohipa māere mai te reira te huru ; nō te mea e feiā 'ā'au pa'ari rātou 'e e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta.
- 6 'E 'ua parau mai ra rātou : 'O vai ho'i te Atua 'o tei 'ore i tonu rahi mai i tāna ha'amanara'a, maori rā i te hō'ē ana'e ta'ata i rotopū i teie nei feiā, nō te fa'a'ite mai ia rātou i te parau mau nō taua mau mea rahi 'e te māere ra ?
- 7 'E 'ua haere ti'a mai ra rātou nō te haru iā'u ; inaha rā, 'aita i ti'a ia rātou. 'E 'ua ti'a ihora vau ma te mata'u 'ore nō te a'o atu ia rātou, 'oia ia, 'ua a'o māite atu vau ia rātou ma te mata'u 'ore, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē :
- 8 Inaha, 'auē ho'i 'outou e te u'i parauti'a 'ore 'e te ha'api'o ē, nāhea i mo'e ai ia 'outou te mau peu tumu a tō 'outou mau metua ; 'oia ia, 'ua mo'e 'oi'oi ia 'outou te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.

Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

- 9 'Aita ānei 'outou i ha'amana'o ē, 'ua arata'ihia mai tō tātou metua tāne 'o Lehi mai Ierusalemā mai e te rima o te Atua ? 'E 'aita ānei 'outou i ha'amana'o ē, 'ua arata'ihia rātou e ana nā roto i te mēdēbara ?
- 10 'E 'ua mo'e vave ānei ia 'outou te mau tau e rave rahi tāna i fa'aora i tō tātou mau metua i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi, 'e i fa'aherehere ho'i ia rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ha'amouhia i te rima o tō rātou ihora mau taea'e ?
- 11 'Oia ia, 'e 'āhiri 'aita tōna mana fāito 'ore, 'e tōna aroha, 'e tōna fa'a'oroma'i ia tātou, 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia na ia tātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei, hou roa i teie nei tau ; 'e e mea pāpū ato'a paha ē 'ua tu'uhia tātou i roto i te vāhi nō te mamae hope 'ore 'e te 'oto hope 'ore.
- 12 Inaha, i teienei tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'ua fa'aue mai 'oia ia 'outou 'ia tātarahapa ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e 'ore roa 'outou e o i te bāsileia o te Atua ra. Inaha rā, e 'ere ia te reira ana'e—'ua fa'aue mai 'oia ia 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e ha'amou roa 'oia ia 'outou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei ; 'oia ia, e tāho'o 'oia ia 'outou i tōna ra riri, 'e i roto i tōna riri rahi tāho'o e 'ore roa 'oia e fa'afāriu 'ē atu.
- 13 Inaha, 'aita ānei 'outou e ha'amana'o ra i te mau parau tāna i parau mai ia Lehi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : Mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, e manuia ia 'outou i ni'a i te fenua nei ? 'E 'oia ato'a 'ua nā-'ō-hia mai ē : Mai te mea ē 'aita 'outou e ha'apa'o i tā'u mau fa'auera'a e tāpū-'ē-hia atu ia 'outou i te aro o te Fatu.
- 14 I teienei, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, nō te mea 'aita te mau 'āti Lamana i ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia rātou i te aro o te Fatu. I teienei tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ua tupu mau te parau a te Fatu i taua mea nei, 'e 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia atu te mau 'āti Lamana i tōna ra aro, mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā nō tā rātou mau 'ōfatira'a i te mau ture i ni'a i te fenua nei.
- 15 'Āre'a rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'oroma'i a'e ia 'outou i te mahana ha'avāra'a, mai te mea e vai noa 'outou i roto i tā 'outou mau hara, 'oia ia, e ti'a ato'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'oroma'i a'e ia 'outou i roto i teie nei orara'a, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

16 E rave rahi ho'i fafaura'a i fa'ataehia atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua i pārahi noa ai rātou i roto i te pōiri ; nō reira e aroha mai te Fatu ia rātou 'e e ha'amaoro ho'i i tō rātou pu'e mahana i te fenua nei.

17 'E tē vai ra te tau e riro ai rātou i te ti'aturi i tāna ra parau, 'e i te 'ite ho'i i te tano 'ore nō te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua ; 'e e rave rahi ho'i tō rātou e fa'aorahia, 'e e aroha mai ho'i te Fatu i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ti'aoro atu i tōna ra i'oa.

18 Inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, mai te mea e rave tāmau ā 'outou i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e 'ore roa tō 'outou pu'e mahana e ha'amaorohia i ni'a i te fenua nei, e tonohia atu ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana nō te 'aro ia 'outou ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e tae mai ia rātou i te hō'ē taimē mana'o-'ore-hia e 'outou na, 'e e ro'ohia 'outou i te ha'amoura'a rahi roa ; 'e e tupu ho'i ia te reira mai te au i te riri rahi tāho'o o te Fatu.

19 E'ita ho'i 'oia e fa'ati'a ia 'outou 'ia pārahi noa i roto i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, nō te ha'amou i tōna mau ta'ata. Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'Aita roa ; e mea ti'a a'e iāna 'ia fa'ati'a atu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia ha'amou i tōna ato'a ra mau ta'ata 'o tei parauhia e mau ta'ata nō Nephi, mai te mea e topa atu rātou i roto i te hara 'e e 'ōfati i te ture, i muri a'e i tō rātou fāri'ira'a i te māramarama rahi 'e te 'ite rahi i hōro'ahia mai ia rātou e te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

20 'Oia ia, i muri a'e i tō rātou fa'arirora'ahia 'ei feiā ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia e te Fatu ; 'oia ia, i muri a'e i tō rātou fa'arirora'ahia 'ei mea maita'i a'e i te tahi atu mau nūna'a, mau 'ōpū, mau reo, e mau ta'ata ; 'e i muri a'e ho'i i te fa'a'itera'ahia mai te mau mea ato'a ia rātou, i tei vai na, 'e tē vai nei, 'e tē vai ē a muri noa atu, mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro, 'e tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e tā rātou ho'i mau pure.

21 I muri a'e i tō rātou fāreireira'ahia mai e te Vārua o te Atua ; 'e i te paraparaura'a atu i te mau melahi, 'e i te paraura'ahia mai e te reo o te Fatu ; 'e i te fāri'ira'a ho'i i te vārua nō te tohu, 'e te vārua nō te heheura'a, 'e te mau hōro'a e rave rahi, 'oia ho'i te hōro'a nō te parau i te mau reo 'e'ē, 'e te hōro'a nō te a'o, 'e te hōro'a a te Vārua Maita'i, 'e te hōro'a nō te 'iriti i te parau.

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

22 'Oia iā, i muri a'e i tō rātou fa'aorara'ahia e te Atua i te fenua nō Ierusalemā nā roto i te rima o te Fatu ; 'e i te fa'aorara'ahia i te o'e, 'e i te ma'ira'ahia, 'e te mau huru ma'i ato'a ; 'e i tō rātou fa'arirora'ahia 'ei feiā pūai i roto i te 'arora'a, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia pau ; 'e i te arata'ira'ahia ho'i i rāpae i te fa'atitira'a i terā tau i terā tau, 'e i te ha'apa'ora'ahia 'e i te fa'ahereherera'ahia ho'i rātou ē tae roa mai i teienei ; 'e i te ha'amanuiara'ahia ho'i rātou ē tae roa 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā tao'a rahi i te mau mea ato'a ra—

23 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, mai te mea e hapa teie nei feiā, 'o tei fāri'i i te mau ha'amaita'ira'a e rave rahi nō 'ō mai i te rima o te Fatu ra, i te ravera'a i te mea au 'ore i te māramarama 'e te 'ite i roa'a mai ia rātou ra, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, mai te mea e nā reira rātou i te topa atu i roto i te hapa, e mea ti'a a'e te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou.

24 Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'ataehia te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'aita rā ia 'outou na mai te mea e 'ōfati 'outou i te ture ; 'e 'aita ānei ho'i te Fatu i fa'aue pāpū mai 'e i fa'aau māite mai i te parau ē, 'ia mārō atu 'outou iāna, e ha'amou-roa-hia iā 'outou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei ?

25 'E i teienei, 'o teie te tumu, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ha'amouhia, i tononā mai ai te Fatu i tāna ra melahi i te tahi pae o tōna ra mau ta'ata, nō te fa'a'itera'a ia rātou ē, e mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia haere i mua 'e 'ia ti'aoro māite i teie nei feiā, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'A tātarahapa 'outou, tē fātata mai nei ho'i te bāsileia o te ao ra.

26 'E 'aita i rahi te mahana toe e tae mai ai te Tamaiti a te Atua ma tōna ra hanahana ; 'e tōna hanahana ra, 'o te hanahana iā o te Fānau tahi a te Metua, 'o tei 'i i te maita'i, 'e te fāito ti'a, 'e te parau mau, 'e tei 'i i te marū, 'e te aroha, 'e te fa'a'oroma'i, 'e te 'oi'oi i te fa'aro'o i te mau ti'aorora'a a tōna ra mau ta'ata 'e i te pāhono atu ho'i i tā rātou ra mau pure.

27 'E inaha, e haere mai 'oia nō te fa'aora i te mau ta'ata 'o tē bāpetizohia nō te tātarahapara'a, nā roto i te fa'aro'o i tōna ra i'oa.

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

28 Nō reira, 'a fa'aîneine 'outou i te 'ē'a o te Fatu, nō te mea tē fātata mai nei te tau e fāri'i ai te mau ta'ata ato'a i te utu'a nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa, mai te au i tā rātou ha'apa'ora'a—mai te mea e mea parauti'a rātou e fāri'i ia rātou i te fa'aorara'a nō tō rātou vārua, mai te au i te mana 'e te fa'aorara'a a Iesu Mesia ; 'e mai te mea e mea vi'ivi'i rātou e fāri'i ia rātou i te pohe i tō rātou vārua, mai te au i te mana 'e te fa'atūtira'a a te diabolō.

29 I teienei, inaha, 'o te reo teie o te melahi, i te ti'aorora'a i te mau ta'ata.

30 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, e mau taea'e ho'i 'outou nō'u nei, 'e e mea ti'a ia 'outou 'ia herehia, 'e e mea ti'a ho'i ia 'outou 'ia rave i te mau 'ohipa e au nō te tātarahapa, nō te mea 'ua 'eta'eta roa ho'i tō 'outou 'ā'au i te parau a te Atua, 'e nō te mea ho'i e feiā mo'e 'e te hi'a ho'i 'outou.

31 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia parau atu vau, 'o Alama, i taua mau parau ra, inaha, 'ua riri roa mai ra te mau ta'ata iā'u, nō te mea 'ua parau atu vau ia rātou ē, e feiā 'ā'au pa'ari rātou 'e e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta.

32 'E nō te mea ho'i 'ua parau atu vau ia rātou ē, e feiā mo'e 'e e feiā hi'a rātou, 'ua riri mai ra rātou iā'u, 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia haru iā'u, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia huri atu iā'u i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.

33 'Āre'a rā, i muri a'era, 'aita roa te Fatu i vaiiho ia rātou 'ia rave iā'u i taua taime ra 'e 'ia huri atu iā'u i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Amuleka 'e 'ua ti'a atu ra i mua, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te a'o ato'a atu ia rātou. 'E i teienei, 'aita te mau parau ato'a a Amuleka i hope i te pāpa'ihia, 'ua pāpa'ihia rā te tahi tufa'a nō tāna ra mau parau i roto i teie nei buka.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivity of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

Alama 10

- 1 I teienei, 'o te mau parau teie tā Amuleka i a'o atu i te mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Amoniha, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē :
- 2 'O vau nei 'o Amuleka ; e tamaiti au nā Gidona, te tamaiti a Isema'ela, 'oia te hua'ai nō Aminadi ; 'e nā taua Aminadi ra i 'Iriti i te aura'a nō te pāpa'ira'a i ni'a iho i te papa'i o te hiero, 'o tei pāpa'ihia e te rima o te Atua.
- 3 'E e hua'ai 'o Aminadi nō Nephi, te tamaiti a Lehi, 'o tei haere mai mai te fenua mai ra mai Ierusalem, 'e e hua'ai 'oia nō Manase, te tamaiti a Iosepha, 'o tei ho'ohia atu i 'Aiphiti e te rima o tōna ra mau taea'e.
- 4 'E inaha, e ta'ata ro'o rahi au i rotopū ia rātou ato'a 'o tei 'ite iā'u nei ; 'oia iā, 'e inaha, e rave rahi tō'u fēti'i 'e mau hoa, 'e 'ua fāri'i au i te mau tao'a rahi nā roto i te itoito o tō'u ra rima.
- 5 'Āre'a rā, hope noa atu ā teie mau mea ato'a, 'aita vau i 'ite rahi i te mau 'ē'a o te Fatu, 'e tāna ra mau parau 'aro 'e tōna mana māere. 'Ua parau atu vau ē, e 'ere tō'u 'ite i te mea rahi i teie mau mea ; inaha rā, 'ua hape au, 'ua 'ite ho'i au i te mea rahi nō tāna ra mau parau 'aro 'e tōna mana māere ; 'oia iā, i te fa'aorara'a i teie nei mau ta'ata.
- 6 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta vau i tō'u 'ā'au, 'e 'ua pi'ihia vau i te mau taime e rave rahi, 'aita rā vau i fa'aro'o ; nō reira 'ua 'ite au i teie mau mea ; 'aita rā vau i hina'aro i taua 'ite ra, nō reira 'ua tāmau noa vau i te 'aro atu i te Atua nā roto i te parauti'a 'ore o tō'u ra 'ā'au, ē tae roa atu i te maha o te mahana 'e te hitu o te 'āva'e, 'oia ho'i i te 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.
- 7 'A rātere ai au nō te fārerei i te hō'ē fēti'i piri roa, inaha, 'ua fā mai ra te hō'ē melahi a te Fatu iā'u 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : E Amuleka, 'a ho'i i tō 'oe na fare, 'e 'a fa'a'amu i te hō'ē peropheta a te Fatu ; 'oia iā, i te hō'ē ta'ata mo'a, 'oia ho'i i te hō'ē ta'ata i mā'itihia e te Atua ; 'ua ha'apae ho'i 'oia i te mā'a e rave rahi mahana nō te mau hara a teie nei feiā, 'e 'ua po'ia roa 'oia, 'e e fāri'i mai 'oe iāna i roto i tō 'oe 'utuāfare ē e fa'a'amu ho'i iāna, 'e e ha'amaita'i 'oia ia 'oe 'e tō 'oe ra 'utuāfare ; 'e e tae mai te ha'amaita'ira'a a te Fatu i ni'a ia 'oe 'e tō 'oe 'utuāfare.

Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'apa'o vau i te parau a taua melahi ra, 'e 'ua ho'i atu ra vau i tō'u fare. 'E 'a haere atu ai au i reira, 'ua fāreirei au i te ta'ata tā te melahi i parau mai iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E fāri'i 'oe iāna i roto i tō 'oe 'utuāfare—'e inaha o taua ta'ata iho ā rā teie 'o tei parau atu ia 'outou i te mau mea nō ni'a i te Atua.
- 9 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi iā'u, e ta'ata mo'a 'oia ; nō reira 'ua 'ite au ē, e ta'ata mo'a 'oia, nō te mea 'ua parauhia te reira e te hō'ē melahi a te Atua.
- 10 'E teie fa'ahou ā, 'ua 'ite au ē, e parau mau roa te mau mea tāna i fa'a'ite mai ; inaha ho'i tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tē ora ra te Fatu, 'e 'ua tonu mai 'oia i tāna ra melahi nō te fa'a'ite mai i teie mau mea iā'u ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia 'a pārahi ai teie Alama i tō'u ra fare.
- 11 Inaha ho'i, 'ua ha'amaita'i 'oia i tō'u 'utuāfare, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ato'a 'oia iā'u, 'e tā'u mau vahine, e tā'u mau tamari'i, 'e tō'u metua tāne, 'e tō'u mau fēti'i ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i 'oia i tō'u ra mau fēti'i ato'a, 'e 'ua vai noa te ha'amaita'ira'a a te Fatu i ni'a iho ia mātou mai te au i te mau parau tāna i parau mai.
- 12 'E i teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Amuleka paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata i te māere, i te mea ē 'ua hau atu i te hō'ē ana'e 'ite 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te mau mea i parihia ai rātou ra, 'e i te mau mea ho'i e tupu a muri atu, mai te au i te vārua nō te tohu i roto ia rāua.
- 13 'Āre'a rā, tei rotopū ia rātou te tahi pae 'o tei hina'aro 'ia uiui ia rāua, 'ei rāmāra'a ia rāua i tā rāua ra mau parau, nā roto i tā rātou mau rāve'a ha'avare, 'ia noa'a ia rātou te tahi fa'ahapara'a ia rāua, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia tu'u atu ia rāua i tō rātou mau ha'avā, 'ia ha'avāhia rāua mai te au i te ture, 'e 'ia taparahihia rāua 'e 'aore rā 'ia hurihia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, mai te au i te hara tā rātou i fa'ariro 'ei hara 'e 'ei parira'a ho'i ia rāua.
- 14 I teienei, teie te mau ta'ata 'o tei hina'aro 'ia ha'apohe ia rāua, 'oia ho'i te mau pāruu ture, 'o tei tārahuia 'e 'aore rā tei fa'ata'ahia 'e te mau ta'ata, nō te fa'atere i te ture i te mau taime nō tō rāua ha'avāra'a, 'e 'aore rā nō te mau ha'avāra'a i mua i te mau ha'avā, nō te mau hapa a te mau ta'ata.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

- 15 I teienei, 'ua ha'api'ihia teie mau pāruru ture i te mau huru 'ohipa ato'a 'e te mau rāve'a ha'avare ato'a a te ta'ata nei ; 'ia roa'a tō rātou 'aravihi i te ravera'a i te 'ohipa nō tō rātou tōro'a.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te uiui ia Amuleka, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'afifi iāna i tāna ra mau parau, 'e 'aore rā 'ia fa'ahapa i te mau parau tāna e parau.
- 17 I teienei, 'aita rātou i 'ite ē, 'ua ti'a ia Amuleka 'ia 'ite i tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a. 'Āre'a rā, i muri a'era, 'a ha'amata ai rātou i te uiui atu iāna, 'ua 'ite ihora 'oia i tō rātou mana'o, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te u'i parauti'a 'ore 'e te ha'api'o ē, 'e te mau pāruru ture 'e te feiā fa'ahua paieti ē, tē ha'amau na ho'i 'outou i te mau niu nō te diablo ; tē tu'u ra ho'i 'outou i te mau herepata 'e te mau mārei nō te haru i te feiā mo'a o te Atua.
- 18 Tē fa'atupu na 'outou i te mau 'ōpuara'a nō te ha'api'o i te mau 'ē'a o te parauti'a, 'e nō te fa'atae mai i te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i ni'a iho i tō 'outou upo'o, ē tae noa atu i te ha'amou-roa-ra'a o teie nei mau ta'ata.
- 19 'Oia ia, 'ua tano roa tā Mosia parau, 'oia tō tātou ari'i hope'a, 'a fātata ai 'oia i te vaiiho atu i te bāsileia, nō te mea 'aita tōna e mono, 'e 'a fa'ati'a ai 'oia 'ia tāvanahia tōna ra mau ta'ata mai te au i tā rātou iho parau—'oia ia, 'ua tano roa tāna parau, 'a nā 'ō atu ai 'oia ē, 'ia tae i te tau e mā'iti ai te reo o teie mau ta'ata i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'oia ho'i, 'ia tae i te tau e topa ai teie nei feiā i roto i te hapa, 'ei reira e ineine ai rātou nō te ha'amoura'a.
- 20 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mana'o ti'a roa tō te Fatu nō te ha'avā i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'ua tano roa tāna paraura'a atu i teie nei mau ta'ata nā roto i te reo o tāna ra mau melahi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'A tātarahapa 'outou, 'a tātarahapa, tē fātata mai nei ho'i te bāsileia o te ao ra.
- 21 'Oia ia, 'ua tano roa tāna pi'ira'a atu nā roto i te reo o tōna ra mau melahi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : E haere mai au i raro i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ma te parau fāito ti'a 'e te parauti'a i roto i tō'u ra rima.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

- 22 'Oia iā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'āhiri 'aita te mau pure a te feiā parauti'a 'o tē pārahi nei i ni'a i te fenua i teienei, 'ua ha'amou-roa-hia iā 'outou i teienei ; e 'ere rā nā roto i te diluvi, mai te feiā i te 'anotau o Noa ra, nā roto rā i te o'e, 'e te ma'i rahi, 'e te 'o'e.
- 23 'Āre'a rā nā roto i te mau pure a te feiā parauti'a i fa'aorahia ai 'outou na ; nō reira i teienei, 'ia ti'avaru 'outou i te feiā parauti'a i rāpae mai rotopū atu ia 'outou na, i reira e'ita roa te Fatu e fa'aherehere ia 'outou ; 'āre'a rā nā roto i tōna riri 'ū'ana e haere mai 'oia nō te fa'auto'a ia 'outou ; 'e i reira e tā'irihia 'outou i te o'e, 'e te ma'i rahi, 'e te 'o'e ; 'e tē fātata mai nei taua tau ra, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou.
- 24 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua rahi roa atu ra te riri o te mau ta'ata ia Amuleka, 'e 'ua pi'i a'era rātou i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Tē fa'a'ino mai ra teie nei ta'ata i tā tātou mau ture ti'a, 'e i tō tātou mau pāruru ture 'aravihi 'o tā tātou i mā'iti.
- 25 'Āre'a rā 'ua fa'atoro atu ra Amuleka i tōna rima, 'e 'ua pi'i māite atu ra ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te u'i parauti'a 'ore 'e te ha'api'o ē, nō te aha ho'i i noa'a ai ia Sātane te mana rahi i ni'a i tō 'outou 'ā'au ? Nō te aha 'outou e auraro ai iāna, 'ia noa'a iāna te mana i ni'a ia 'outou, nō te ha'amatapō i tō 'outou mata, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia māramarama i te mau parau i parauhia ra, mai te au i tō te reira parau mau ra ?
- 26 Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'ahapa atu ānei au i tā 'outou ture ? 'Aita 'outou i māramarama ; tē parau mai nei ho'i 'outou ē, 'ua fa'ahapa vau i tā 'outou ture ; 'āre'a rā 'aita vau i nā reira, 'ua parau rā vau i tei au i tā 'outou ture, 'e 'ua fa'ahapahia 'outou i te reira.
- 27 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tē ha'amatahia ra te tumu nō te ha'amoura'a i teie nei feiā i te fa'ati'ahia e te parauti'a 'ore a tō 'outou mau pāruru ture 'e tō 'outou mau ha'avā.
- 28 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Amuleka paraura'a atu i teie nei mau parau, 'ua fa'ahapa pūai mai ra te mau ta'ata iāna i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ua 'ite tātou ē, e tamari'i teie nei ta'ata nā te diabolō, 'ua ha'avare mai ho'i 'oia ia tātou, 'e 'ua fa'ahapa mai ho'i 'oia i tā tātou ture. 'E i teienei, tē parau mai nei 'oia ē, 'aita 'oia i fa'ahapa mai i te reira.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

29 'E teie fa'ahou ā, 'ua fa'a'ino noa 'oia i tō tātou mau pāroru ture, 'e tō tātou mau ha'avā.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tu'u ihora te mau pāroru ture i te reira i roto i tō rātou iho 'ā'au, 'ia ha'amana'o noa rātou iho i te reira 'ei fa'ahapara'a iāna.

31 'E tei rotopū ia rātou te hō'ē ta'ata 'o Zeezeroma tōna i'oa. I teieni 'o 'oia te mātāmua i pari ia Amuleka 'e ia Alama, e ta'ata 'aravihi roa 'oia i rotopū ia rātou, 'e e 'ohipa rahi ho'i tāna i rotopū i te mau ta'ata.

32 I teieni, teie te hina'aro o te mau pāroru ture, 'ia noa'a ia te tao'a rahi ia rātou ; 'e e noa'a te tao'a rahi ia rātou mai te au i tā rātou 'ohipa i rave.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

Alama 11

- 1 I teienei, tei roto i te ture a Mosia te parau ē, e mea ti'a roa i te mau ta'ata ato'a i mā'itihia 'ei ha'avā nō te ture, 'oia ho'i te mau ta'ata i fa'ata'ahia 'ei mau ha'avā, 'ia 'aufauhia mai te au i te taime tā rātou i fa'a'ohipa nō te ha'avā i te mau ta'ata i arata'ihia i mua ia rātou 'ia ha'avāhia.
- 2 I teienei, mai te mea e 'aitārahu te hō'ē ta'ata i te tahi atu, 'e 'aita 'oia i 'aufau i tāna tārahu, 'ua parihia ia 'oia i mua i te ha'avā ; 'e nā te ha'avā e fa'ati'a i te ture, 'e nāna e tono atu i te mau ta'ata tōro'a 'ia 'āfa'i mai i taua ta'ata ra i mua iāna ; 'e nāna e ha'avā i taua ta'ata ra mai te au i te ture 'e te mau parau i fa'a'itehia iāna ra, 'e nō reira 'ua tītauhia 'oia 'ia 'aufau i tāna tārahu e ti'a ai, 'e 'aore rā e rave-'ē-hia tāna tao'a, 'e 'aore rā e ti'avaru-'ē-hia mai rotopū atu i te mau ta'ata 'ei ta'ata 'eiā 'e te haru tao'a.
- 3 'E 'ua 'aufauhia te ha'avā mai te au i tōna ra taime—te hō'ē senine 'auro i te mahana hō'ē, 'e 'aore rā te hō'ē senuma 'ārio, 'o tei au i te hō'ē senine 'auro ; 'e 'ua au teie i te ture i ha'apa'ohia.
- 4 I teienei, teie te mau i'oa o tā rātou mau moni 'auro, 'e tā rātou mau moni 'ārio, mai te au i tō rātou faufa'a. 'E 'ua ma'irihia teie mau i'oa e te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te mea 'aita rātou i tai'o mai tā te mau 'āti Iuda i pārahi i Ierusalemā ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i fāito mai tā te mau 'āti Iuda ; 'ua fa'ahuru 'ē rā rātou i tā rātou tai'ora'a 'e tō rātou fāito i terā u'i i terā u'i, 'ia au i te ferurira'a 'e te mau rāve'a a te mau ta'ata, ē tae roa mai i te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'e 'ua ha'amauhia na ho'i te reira e te ari'i ra 'o Mosia.
- 5 Tē nā 'ō nei te tai'ora'a—e senine 'auro, e seona 'auro, e suma 'auro, 'e e limena 'auro.
- 6 E senuma 'ārio, e amenora 'ārio, e ezeroma 'ārio, 'e e oneti 'ārio.
- 7 'Ua au te hō'ē senuma 'ārio i te hō'ē senine 'auro, 'e 'ua au ho'i te hō'ē 'e 'aore rā te tahi i te hō'ē ho'ini kerite, 'e i te hō'ē ho'ini o te mau huru huero ato'a ra.
- 8 'Ua au te seona 'auro i te faufa'a nō nā senine e piti ra.
- 9 'E 'ua au te hō'ē suma 'auro i te faufa'a nō nā seona e piti ra.
- 10 'E te hō'ē limena 'auro ra, 'ua au ia tōna faufa'a i tō rātou pā'āto'a 'ia 'āmuhia.

Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11 'E 'ua au te hō'ē amenora 'ārio i te faufa'a nō nā
senuma e piti ra.

12 'E 'ua au te hō'ē ezeroma 'ārio i te faufa'a nō nā
senuma e maha ra.

13 'E 'ua au te hō'ē oneti i taua mau fāito ato'a ra 'ia
'āmuihia.

14 I teienei, teie te fāito nō te mau nūmera rī'i nō tō
rātou tai'ora'a—

15 Te sibelona, 'o te 'āfa ia nō te senuma ; nō reira, 'ua
au te sibelona i te 'āfa nō te ho'ini kerite.

16 'E te sibuluma, 'o te 'āfara'a ia nō te sibelona.

17 'E te lea, 'o te 'āfara'a ia nō te sibuluma.

18 I teienei, teie tō rātou nūmera mai te au i tō rātou
tai'ora'a.

19 I teienei, 'ua au te hō'ē anetiona 'auro i nā sibelona
e toru.

20 I teienei, nō te hina'aro o te mau ha'avā 'ia roa'a tā
rātou faufa'a, 'e nō te mea ho'i e roa'a ia rātou te
faufa'a mai te au i te rahi o tā rātou 'ohipa e rave, nō
reira 'ua fa'ati'arepu rātou i te mau ta'ata 'ia
'ōrurehau, 'e 'ua fa'atupu ho'i i te mau huru ti'arepu
ato'a 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a, 'ia fa'arahihia tā
rātou tufa'a 'ohipa, 'e 'ia roa'a rahi ia rātou te moni
nō te mau parau parira'a i 'āfa'ihia i mua ia rātou ; nō
reira 'ua fa'ati'arepu rātou i te mau ta'ata ia 'ino'ino
atu ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka.

21 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora teie Zeezeroma i te uiui ia
Amuleka, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E pāhono mai ānei 'oe iā'u
nei i te tahi mau uira'a iti 'o tā'u e ui atu ia 'oe na ? I
teienei e ta'ata 'aravihi o Zeezeroma i te mau rāve'a a
te diabolo, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ore i te mea maita'i ; nō
reira, 'ua parau mai 'oia ia Amuleka ē : E pāhono mai
ānei 'oe i te mau uira'a 'o tā'u e tu'u atu i mua ia 'oe
na ?

22 'Ua parau atu ra Amuleka iāna : 'Ē, mai te mea ē
'ua au te reira i tā te Vārua o te Fatu i roto iā'u nei ; e
'ore roa ho'i au e parau i te hō'ē mea au 'ore i te
Vārua o te Fatu. 'E 'ua parau mai ra Zeezeroma iāna :
Inaha, teie te mau oneti 'ārio e ono, 'e e hōro'a atu
vau i teie mau mea ato'a nā 'oe mai te mea e huna 'oe
ē 'aita te hō'ē o Tei Teitei Roa e ora nei.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two
senums.

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four
senums.

And an onti was as great as them all.

Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their
reckoning—

A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon
for half a measure of barley.

And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

Now this is their number, according to their reck-
oning.

Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, be-
cause they received their wages according to their
employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riot-
ings, and all manner of disturbances and wicked-
ness, that they might have more employ, that they
might get money according to the suits which were
brought before them; therefore they did stir up the
people against Alma and Amulek.

And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, say-
ing: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall
ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in
the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that
which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek:
Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto
you?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according
to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall
say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the
Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are
six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if
thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

23 'Ua parau atu ra Amuleka : E te tamaiti o hade ē, e aha ho'i 'oe e fa'ahema mai ai iā'u nei ? 'Ua 'ite ānei 'oe ē, 'aita roa te feiā parauti'a e auraro i taua mau huru fa'ahemara'a ra ?

24 Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, 'aita e Atua ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na ē, 'Aita roa ; 'ua 'ite pāpū ho'i 'oe ē, tē vai ra te Atua, 'āre'a rā 'ua rahi roa atu tō 'oe hina'aro i taua tao'a ti'a 'ore ra i tō 'oe hina'aro iāna.

25 'E i teienei, 'ua ha'avare 'oe iā'u nei i mua i te aro o te Atua. 'Ua parau mai 'oe iā'u—'A hi'ona i teie mau oneti e ono, e moni rahi te reira, 'e e hōro'a atu vau nā 'oe—i roto rā i tō 'oe 'ā'au 'ua 'ōpua 'oe 'ia tāpe'a noa i te reira 'e 'eiaha e hōro'a mai iā'u nei ; tō 'oe noa hina'aro 'ia huna vau i te Atua ora 'e te parau mau, 'ia roa'a ia 'oe te parira'a nō te ha'amou iā'u. 'E i teienei, inaha, nō taua 'ohipa 'ino rahi ra, e fāri'i 'oe i tā 'oe utu'a.

26 'E 'ua parau mai ra Zeezeroma iāna : Tē parau ra ānei 'oe ē, tē vai ra te hō'ē Atua ora 'e te parau mau ?

27 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amuleka : 'Ē, tē vai ra te hō'ē Atua ora 'e te parau mau.

28 'E 'ua ui mai ra Zeezeroma : E rave rahi ānei Atua e vai nei ?

29 'E 'ua pāhono atu ra 'oia. 'Aita.

30 I teienei, 'ua ui fa'ahou mai ra Zeezeroma iāna : E mea nāhea tō 'oe 'itera'a i teie mau mea ?

31 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia : Nā te hō'ē melahi te reira i fa'a'ite mai iā'u nei.

32 'E 'ua ui fa'ahou mai ra Zeezeroma : 'O vai 'oia 'o tē haere mai ? 'O te Tamaiti ānei a te Atua ?

33 'Ua parau atu ra 'oia iāna, 'Ē.

34 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra Zeezeroma : E fa'aora ānei 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata i roto i tā rātou mau hara ? 'E 'ua pāhono atu ra Amuleka 'e nā 'ō atu ra iāna : Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, 'aita roa 'oia e nā reira, e'ita roa ho'i e ti'a iāna 'ia huna i tāna parau.

35 I teienei, 'ua parau mai ra Zeezeroma i te mau ta'ata : 'Ia ha'amana'o 'outou i teie mau mea ; i parau na ho'i 'oia ē, hō'ē noa iho Atua ; 'e 'oia ato'a i parau na ho'i 'oia ē, e tae mai te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'āre'a rā 'aita 'oia e fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata—mai te mea ra ē, e ha'amanara'a tōna nō te fa'aue i te Atua.

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

36 I teienei 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra Amuleka iāna :
Inaha, 'ua ha'avare 'oe, i parau na 'oe ē, 'ua parau atu
vau, mai te mea ra ē, e ha'amanara'a tō'u 'ia fa'aue i
te Atua, nō te mea i parau na vau ē, e 'ore roa 'oia e
fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata i roto i tā rātou mau hara.

37 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'oe na, e'ita roa e
ti'a iāna 'ia fa'aora ia rātou i roto i tā rātou mau hara ;
e'ita roa ho'i au e huna i tāna ra parau, 'e 'ua parau
ho'i 'oia ē, e 'ore roa te hō'ē mea vi'ivi'i e o i te
bāsileia o te ao ra ; nō reira, nāhea 'outou e fa'aorahia
ai, maori rā 'ia roa'a ia 'outou te bāsileia o te ao ra ?
Nō reira, e'ita roa 'outou e fa'aorahia i roto i tā 'outou
mau hara.

38 I teienei 'ua parau fa'ahou mai ra Zeezeroma iāna :
'Ua riro ānei te Tamaiti a te Atua 'ei Metua mure
'ore ?

39 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amuleka iāna : 'Ē, 'o 'oia mau
te Metua mure 'ore nō te ao ra 'e nō te fenua nei, 'e te
mau mea ato'a i roto ra ; 'o 'oia te mātāmeha'i 'e te
fa'ahope'a, 'o 'oia te ha'amatara'a 'e te hope'a.

40 'E e haere mai 'oia i te ao nei nō te fa'aora i tōna ra
mau ta'ata ; 'e e rave 'oia i ni'a iho iāna i te mau hapa
a te feiā i ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa ; 'e 'o rātou teie 'o tē
fāri'i i te ora mure 'ore, 'e 'aita roa te fa'aorara'a e tae
mai ia vetahi 'ē atu.

41 Nō reira tē vai noa nei te feiā parauti'a 'ore mai te
mea ra ē, 'aita te fa'aorara'a i ravehia nō rātou, maori
rā 'o te tātarara'a i te mau tā'amu nō te pohe ; inaha
ho'i, tē vai ra te mahana e ti'afa'ahou mai ai te mau
ta'ata pā'āto'a mai te pohe mai nō te ti'a atu i mua i te
Atua, 'e 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā rātou ra mau
'ohipa.

42 I teienei, tē vai nei te hō'ē pohe i parauhia te pohe
pae tino nei ; 'e nā te pohe o te Mesia e ha'amatara i
te mau tā'amu nō teie pohe pae tino nei, 'ia ti'a i te
mau ta'ata pā'āto'a 'ia ti'afa'ahou mai mai teie pohe
pae tino nei.

43 E tā'ati-fa'ahou-hia te vārua 'e te tino i tō rāua
huru mau ; 'e e fa'aho'ihia te mau melo 'e te mau
ponaivi ato'a i tō rātou vāhi mau, mai tō tātou huru i
teienei ; 'e e fa'ati'ahia atu tātou i mua i te Atua, ma te
'ite mai tā tātou e 'ite nei i teienei, 'e ma te
ha'amana'o pāpū maita'i i tā tātou ato'a ra mau hara.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou
hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had
authority to command God because I said he shall
not save his people in their sins.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them
in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath
said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom
of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye
inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot
be saved in your sins.

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of
God the very Eternal Father?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very
Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things
which in them are; he is the beginning and the end,
the first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his
people; and he shall take upon him the transgres-
sions of those who believe on his name; and these
are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation
cometh to none else.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had
been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of
the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that
all shall rise from the dead and stand before God,
and be judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal
death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands
of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from
this temporal death.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in
its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored
to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time;
and we shall be brought to stand before God, know-
ing even as we know now, and have a bright recollec-
tion of all our guilt.

44 I teienei, e tae mai teie fa'aho'ira'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, i te ta'ata pa'ari 'e te ta'ata 'āpī, i te tītī 'e te tī'amā, i te tāne 'e te vahine, i te feiā parauti'a 'ore 'e te feiā parauti'a ; e 'ore roa ho'i te hō'ē 'i'o rouru iti a'e o tō rātou upo'o e mo'e ; e fa'aho'ihia rā te mau mea ato'a i tō rātou iho huru mau, mai tō rātou huru i teienei, 'oia ho'i i roto i te tino, 'e e arata'ihia ia 'e e ha'avāhia ho'i i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Mesia te Tamaiti, 'e te Atua te Metua, 'e te Vārua Mo'a, 'oia ho'i te hō'ē Atua mure 'ore, 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa, mai te mea e mea maita'i te reira 'e 'aore rā mai te mea e mea 'ino te reira.

45 I teienei, inaha, 'ua parau iho nei au ia 'outou nō ni'a i te pohe o te tino tāhuti nei, 'e 'oia ato'a nō ni'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te tino tāhuti nei. Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e fa'ati'ahia mai teie tino tāhuti nei mai te pohe mai 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'oia ho'i mai te pohe mātāmua i te ora, 'e' aita te reira e pohe fa'ahou ; e tū'atihia tō rātou vārua i tō rātou tino, 'e 'aita te reira e fa'ata'a-ē-fa'ahou-hia ; 'e 'ua riro te reira 'ei mea vārua 'e te tāhuti 'ore, 'e 'aita rātou e 'ite fa'ahou i te pohe.

46 I teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Amuleka i teie mau parau, 'ua māere fa'ahou ihora te mau ta'ata, 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua rurutaina ihora Zeezeroma. 'E 'o te hope'a teie o te mau parau a Amuleka, 'oia ho'i teie te tā'āto'ara'a o te mau mea tā'u i pāpa'i.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

Alama 12

- 1 I teienei, 'a 'ite ai Alama ē nō te mau parau a Amuleka i ha'amāmūhia ai Zeezeroma, i 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, 'ua ha'afifi Amuleka iāna i tāna ha'avarera'a 'e te tāmatarā'a ho'i 'ia ha'apohe iāna, 'e te 'itera'a ho'i Alama ē, 'ua rurutaina 'oia i te ha'amana'ora'a i tāna ra hara, hāmama atu ra 'oia i tōna vaha 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia iāna, nō te fa'ati'a i te mau parau a Amuleka, 'e nō te ha'amāramarama atu ā, 'e nō te hōhōra atu ho'i i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a 'ia rahi atu ā i tā Amuleka i ha'api'i atu.
- 2 I teienei, 'ua fa'aro'ohia e te mau ta'ata ē 'ati noa a'e te mau parau tā Alama i parau atu ia Zeezeroma ; e mea rahi roa te ta'ata, e teie tāna i parau atu :
- 3 I teienei, e Zeezeroma, 'ua 'itehia ho'i 'oe i roto i tā 'oe mau parau ha'avare 'e te 'ohipa tāviri ; 'aita 'oe i ha'avare i te ta'ata ana'e ra, 'ua ha'avare ato'a rā 'oe i te Atua ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite 'oia i tō 'oe ato'a ra mau mana'o, 'e tē 'ite nei ho'i 'oe ē, 'ua fa'a'itehia mai tō 'oe nā mau mana'o ia māua nei nā roto i tōna ra Vārua ;
- 4 'E tē 'ite nei ho'i 'oe ē, 'ua 'ite māua e mea ha'avarevare tā 'oe na 'ōpuara'a, mai te peu ha'avarevare a te diabolō, nō te ha'avare 'e nō te fa'ahema ho'i i teie nei mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a ia 'oe 'ia fa'atupu i tō rātou riri ia māua, 'ia fa'a'ino mai rātou ia māua, 'e 'ia tīahi 'ē atu ho'i ia māua i rāpae—
- 5 I teienei, 'o tē 'ōpuara'a teie a tō 'oe enemi, 'e 'ua fa'a'ohipa 'oia i tōna mana i ni'a ia 'oe na. I teienei, tē hina'aro nei au ia 'oe 'ia ha'amana'o, i te parau 'o tā'u e parau atu nei ia 'oe na, tē parau atu nei ia vau i te tā'āto'ara'a.
- 6 'E inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou pā'āto'a, e mārei teie nā te 'enemi, 'o tāna i tu'u mai nō te haru i teie nei feiā, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia 'ume ia 'outou i raro a'e iāna, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia ru'uru'u ia 'outou i tāna ra mau fifi, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia tā'amu ia 'outou i te fifi e tae atu ai i te pohe mure 'ore, mai te au i te mana nō tāna ra fa'atītira'a.

Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

7 I teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua rurutaina rahi roa ihora Zeezeroma, nō te mea 'ua ha'apāpū-roa-hia tōna mana'o i teie nei i te mana o te Atua ; 'e 'ua ha'apāpū-ato'a-hia ho'i tōna mana'o ē, 'ua fāri'i Alama 'e Amuleka i te 'ite i tōna huru, 'e 'ua ha'apāpūhia ho'i 'oia ē, 'ua 'ite ato'a rāua i te mau mana'o 'e te mau hina'aro o tōna ra 'ā'au ; 'e 'ua hōro'ahia te mana ia rāua 'ia 'ite i teie nei mau mea mai te au i te vārua nō te tohu.

8 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora Zeezeroma i te uiui māite ia rāua, 'ia rahi atu ā tōna 'ite nō ni'a i te bāsileia o te Atua. 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia Alama : E aha te aura'a nō teie mea 'o tā Amuleka i parau iho nei nō ni'a i te ti'afa'ahou'a o te feiā pohe ra, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, e ti'afa'ahou mai te mau ta'ata ato'a mai te pohe mai, te feiā parauti'a 'e te feiā parauti'a 'ore ato'a ho'i, e fa'ati'ahia rātou i mua i te Atua 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa ?

9 'E i teienei, 'ua ha'amata ihora 'o Alama i te ha'amāramarama atu i teie nei mau mea iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'Ua hōro'ahia i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia 'ite i te mau parau 'aro a te Atua ; 'ua hōro'ahia mai rā te reira ma te fa'aue pāpū maita'i, 'eiaha rātou e fa'a'ite noa atu, maori rā mai te au i te tufa'a nō tāna ra parau 'o tāna i hōro'a mai i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, mai te au i tō rātou itoito 'e te 'ana'anatae i te tītaura'a iāna.

10 'E nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'a'eta'eta i tōna 'ā'au, 'o 'oia ato'a ia te fāri'i i te tufa'a iti nō te parau ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē ore e fa'a'eta'eta i tōna 'ā'au, e hōro'ahia ia iāna te tufa'a rahi atu nō te parau, ē tae noa atu 'ua hōro'ahia iāna 'ia 'ite i te mau parau 'aro a te Atua ē tae noa atu 'ua 'ite 'oia i te 'ira'a nō te reira.

11 'E 'o rātou ho'i 'o tē fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, e hōro'ahia ia rātou te tufa'a iti nō te parau ē tae noa atu 'aita rātou e 'ite fa'ahou i tāna ra mau parau 'aro ; 'e i reira rātou e rave-tīti-hia ai e te diabolō, 'e e arata'ihia ai ho'i e tōna ra hina'aro i raro i te pohe. I teienei, 'o te aura'a teie nō te mau fifi o hade ra.

12 'E i parau pāpū atu na Amuleka nō ni'a i te pohera'a, 'e te fa'ati'a-fa'ahou-ra'a-hia mai o teie nei tino tāhuti 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'e te hōpoira'ahia ho'i i mua i te ha'avāra'a a te Atua, 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā tātou mau 'ohipa.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

13 'E mai te mea e fa'a'eta'etahia tō tātou 'ā'au, 'oia ia, mai te mea e fa'a'eta'etahia tō tātou 'ā'au i te parau, 'e nō reira 'aita te reira i 'itehia i roto ia tātou, 'e i reira 'ua 'ino roa ia tō tātou huru, 'e 'ei reira ho'i tātou e fa'ahapahia ai.

14 'E nā tā tātou ho'i mau parau tātou e fa'ahapa mai, 'oia ia, nā tā tātou mau 'ohipa ato'a tātou e fa'ahapa mai ; e 'ore roa tātou e 'itea ma te pōra'o 'ore ; 'e nā tō tātou mau mana'o ho'i tātou e fa'ahapa mai ; 'e i roto i teie huru 'ino tō tātou e 'ore e ti'a ia tātou 'ia hi'o atu i ni'a i tō tātou Atua ; 'e e 'oa'oa roa tātou mai te mea ē, e ti'a ia tātou 'ia parau atu i te mau mato 'e te mau mou'a 'ia ma'iri mai i ni'a iho ia tātou nō te huna ia tātou i tōna ra aro.

15 'Aita rā teie e ti'a ; e mea ti'a ia tātou 'ia fa'ati'ahia 'e 'ia ti'a atu i mua i tōna ra hanahana, 'e i mua i tōna ra mana, 'e tōna ra pūai, te hinuhinu, 'e te hau, e fā'i atu i tō tātou ha'amā mure 'ore ē e mea parauti'a ana'e tāna ra mau ha'avāra'a ; 'e e mea parauti'a 'oia i roto i tāna ato'a ra mau 'ohipa, 'e te hāmani maita'i i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'e tei iāna te mana ato'a nō te fa'aora i te mau ta'ata ato'a e ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa 'e 'o tē fa'atupu i te 'ohipa e au i te tātarahapa.

16 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'e i reira e tae mai ai te pohe, 'oia te pohe piti, 'oia ho'i te pohe pae vārua ; 'e 'o te ta'ata i pohe i roto i tāna ra mau hara, i te pohe tāhuti nei, e pohe ato'a ia 'oia i te pohe pae vārua ; 'oia ia, e pohe mau 'oia i te mau mea o te parauti'a.

17 'E i reira e riro ai tō rātou mau 'ati rahi mai te roto auahi 'e te gopheri ra, tōna ura tē tae roa i ni'a ē a muri ē a muri noa atu ; 'e te reira tau e tā'amuhia ai rātou i te fifi i raro i te pohe mure 'ore, mai te au i te mana 'e te fa'atitira'a a Sātane ra, 'e 'ua ha'avī ho'i 'oia ia rātou mai te au i tōna ra hina'aro.

18 'E i reira, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e vai atu ā rātou mai te mea ra ē, 'aita roa e fa'aorara'a i ha'apa'ohia ; e 'ore roa ho'i rātou e fa'aorahia mai te au i tā te Atua ra parauti'a ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i rātou e pohe, nō te mea 'aita e mea tāhuti.

19 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua rahi roa atu ra te māere o te mau ta'ata.

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, inso-much that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

20 'Āre'a rā tē vai ra te hō'ē ta'ata 'o Anetiona i reira, e tāvana rahi 'oia i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua haere ti'a mai ra 'oia 'e 'ua parau mai ra iāna : E aha teie tā 'oe i parau iho nei, e ti'afa'ahou mai ānei te ta'ata mai te pohe mai, 'e 'a fa'arirohia ai teie nei tino tāhuti nei 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'e e 'ore roa te vārua e pohe ?

21 E aha ho'i te aura'a nō te pāpa'ira'a mo'a 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, 'ua tu'u ihora te Atua i te mau kerubi 'e te 'o'e ura i te pae hiti'a o te rā i te 'ō i Edene ra, 'o te tomo atu tō tātou nā metua mātāmua i roto 'e 'a rave ai i te mā'a nō te tumu rā'au nō te ora, 'e 'a ora noa ai ē a muri noa atu ? 'E nō reira 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'aita roa e rāve'a e ora ai rāua ē a muri noa atu.

22 I teienei, 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : Teie te mea tā'u i fātata i te ha'amāramarama atu ia 'outou na. I teienei tē 'ite nei tātou ē 'ua hi'a Adamu nā roto i te ravera'a i te mā'a hotu i rāhuihia, mai te au i te parau a te Atua ; 'e nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, nō tōna ra hi'ara'a i mo'e ai 'e i hi'a ai te mau ta'ata ato'a ra.

23 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'āhiri 'ua ti'a ia Adamu 'ia rave noa atu i te mā'a nō te tumu rā'au nō te ora i taua taime ra, 'ua 'ore roa ia te pohe, 'e 'ua ha'afaufa'a 'ore-hia te parau, 'e 'ua fa'arirohia ia te Atua 'ei mea ha'avare, nō te mea i parau na ho'i 'oia ē : Mai te mea e 'amu 'oe i te reira, e pohe mau ā ia 'oe.

24 'E 'ua 'ite tātou ē, e tae mai te pohe i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ia, te pohe i parauhia e Amuleka, 'oia ho'i te pohe tāhuti ; 'āre'a rā 'ua hōro'ahia mai te hō'ē taime i te ta'ata 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia tātarahapa, nō reira i riro ai teie nei orara'a 'ei taime tāmatara'a ; 'e 'ei taime nō te fa'aineine 'ia fārerei atu i te Atua ; 'ei taime nō te fa'aineine nō taua huru hope 'ore ra i parauhia e māua, 'e 'o tē tupu i muri iho i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra.

25 I teienei, 'āhiri ē 'aita te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, 'o tei ha'apa'ohia mai te ha'amatarara'a mai ā o te ao nei, 'aita roa ia e ti'afa'ahoura'a nō te feiā pohe ; 'āre'a rā tē vai ra te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a i ha'apa'ohia, 'e nā te reira e fa'atupu i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra, mai tei parauhia mai ra.

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

26 'E i teienei, inaha, 'āhiri 'ua ti'a i tō tātou nā metua mātāmua 'ia haere atu 'e 'ia 'amu i tō te tumu rā'au nō te ora, tei roto ia rāua i te 'ati mure 'ore, 'e 'aita tō rāua e taima fa'aaineinera'a ; 'e nō reira 'ua morohi roa atu te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, 'e 'ua fa'a'orehia ia te parau a te Atua, 'e 'ua faufa'a 'ore ia.

27 Inaha rā, 'aore i nā-reira-hia ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ha'apa'ohia te pohe nō te ta'ata ato'a ra ; 'e i muri iho i te pohe, e mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'avāhia, 'e 'o taua ha'avāra'a ho'i ia tā māua i parau na, 'e 'o te hope'a ia.

28 'E i muri iho i tō te Atua fa'ata'ara'a i teie mau mea 'ia tae mai i ni'a i te ta'ata, inaha, 'ua 'ite ihora 'oia ē, e mea ti'a roa i te ta'ata nei 'ia 'ite i te mau mea tāna i fa'ata'a nō rātou ra ;

29 Nō reira, 'ua tono mai 'oia i te mau melahi 'ia paraparau ia rātou, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite i te mau ta'ata i te hō'ē tufa'a nō tōna ra hanahana.

30 'E 'ua ha'amata rātou mai te reira atu taima 'ia ti'aoro atu i tōna ra i'oa ; nō reira 'ua paraparau mai te Atua i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ia rātou i te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, 'o tei fa'aaineinera'a mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite 'oia i teie ia rātou mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o 'e te tātarahapa, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa mo'a.

31 Nō reira, 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te mau fa'auera'a i te ta'ata nei, 'ua 'ōfati na ho'i rātou i te fa'auera'a mātāmua i tō te pae tāhuti nei, 'e 'ia riro 'ei mau atua, i te 'ite i te maita'i 'e te 'ino, i ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia rave noa atu, 'oia ho'i i ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia rave noa atu mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro 'e mau mana'o, 'ia rave i te mea 'ino 'e 'aore rā 'ia rave i te mea maita'i—

32 Nō reira 'ua hōro'a mai te Atua i te mau fa'auera'a ia rātou, i muri iho i tōna fa'a'itera'a mai ia rātou i te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, 'e 'eiaha roa rātou e rave i te 'ino, te utu'a nō te reira 'o te pohe piti ia, 'oia ho'i te pohe mure 'ore i te mau mea nō te parauti'a ; 'e 'aita tō te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a e mana i ni'a i te reira, nō te mea 'aita roa e ti'a i te mau 'ohipa nō te parauti'a 'ia ha'amouhia, mai te au i te maita'i fāito 'ore o te Atua.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

- 33 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau mai te Atua i te mau ta'ata nā roto i te i'oa o tāna ra Tamaiti, ('o teie ho'i te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a i ha'apa'ohia) i te nā-'ō-rara'a mai ē : Mai te mea e tātarahapa 'outou, 'e 'aita 'outou e fa'a'eta'eta i tō 'outou 'ā'au, 'ei reira vau e aroha atu ai ia 'outou, nā roto i tā'u ra Tamaiti fānau tahi ;
- 34 Nō reira, 'o te ta'ata e tātarahapa, 'e 'aita e fa'a'eta'eta i tōna 'ā'au, e fāri'i 'oia i te aroha nā roto i tā'u ra Tamaiti fānau tahi, 'e te ha'amatarara'a nō tāna ra mau hara ; 'e 'o rātou teie 'o tē ō mai i tō'u fa'aeara'a.
- 35 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'a'eta'eta i tōna ra 'ā'au 'e 'o tē rave noa i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, inaha, tē tapu nei au i roto i tō'u nei riri 'ū'ana ē, e 'ore roa 'oia e ō mai i roto i tō'u nei fa'aeara'a.
- 36 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, inaha tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai te mea e fa'a'eta'eta 'outou i tō 'outou 'ā'au, e 'ore roa ia 'outou e ō i roto i te fa'aeara'a o te Fatu ; nō reira, nā tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i fa'atupu i te riri i roto iāna, 'e 'ua fa'atae mai 'oia i tōna riri 'ū'ana i ni'a iho ia 'outou mai te au i tā 'outou fa'atupura'a riri mātāmua, 'oia ia, mai te au i tāna ra parau i te fa'atupura'a riri hope'a 'e tō te mātāmua ato'a ho'i, i te pohe mure 'ore o tō 'outou vārua ; nō reira, mai te au i tāna ra parau i te pohe hope'a, 'e tō te mātāmua ato'a ho'i.
- 37 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, i te mea ho'i ē, tē 'ite nei tātou i teie mau mea, 'e e parau mau ho'i te reira, 'ia tātarahapa tātou, 'e 'eiaha 'ia fa'a'eta'eta i tō tātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ia 'ore tātou 'ia fa'atae mai i te riri 'ū'ana o te Fatu tō tātou ra Atua i ni'a iho ia tātou i roto i teie, te piti nō tāna ra mau fa'auera'a 'o tāna i hōro'a mai ia tātou ; 'ia tomo rā tātou i roto i te fa'aeara'a o te Atua, 'o tei fa'a'aineinehia mai te au i tāna ra parau.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

Alama 13

- 1 'E teie fa'ahou, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia hi'o 'outou i muri i te tau i tu'u mai ai te Fatu te Atua i teie mau fa'auera'a i tāna ra mau tamari'i ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ho'i au 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, 'ua fa'atōro'a te Fatu te Atua i te mau tahu'a, 'ia au i tāna ra fa'anahora'a mo'a, 'oia ho'i te fa'anahora'a a tāna Tamaiti, 'ia ha'api'i mai i taua mau mea nei i te ta'ata nei.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'atōro'ahia taua mau tahu'a ra 'ia au i te fa'anahora'a a tāna ra Tamaiti, nā roto i te hō'ē rāve'a e ti'a ai i te mau ta'ata 'ia 'ite i te rāve'a nō te hi'o atu i tāna ra Tamaiti nō te fa'aorara'a.
- 3 'E teie te huru nō tō rātou fa'atōro'ara'ahia—'ua pi'ihia 'e 'ua fa'aineinehia rātou mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei mai te au i te 'ite-ātea-ra'a o te Atua, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o rahi 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa maitata'i ; 'e i te ha'amatarā'a 'ua vaihohia rātou 'ia mā'iti i te maita'i 'e 'aore rā i te 'ino ; 'e nō te mea 'ua mā'iti rātou i te maita'i, 'e 'ua fa'a'ohipa i te fa'aro'o rahi roa, 'ua pi'ihia rātou i te hō'ē pi'ira'a mo'a, 'oia ia, i taua pi'ira'a mo'a i fa'aineinehia mai te au i te fa'aorara'a i fa'aineinehia nō te feiā mai te reira te huru.
- 4 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te pi'ihia nō teie pi'ira'a mo'a mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'a pāto'i ai te tahi pae i te Vārua o te Atua nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au 'e te pōiri ho'i o tō rātou mana'o ; 'e 'āhiri ē 'aita i nā-reira-hia, 'ua fāri'i ia rātou i te fāna'o rahi mai tō rātou ra mau taea'e.
- 5 'Oia ho'i, i te mātāmua hō'ē ā ia tō rātou ti'ara'a 'e tō rātou mau taea'e ; nō reira 'ua fa'aineinehia teie nei pi'ira'a mo'a mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei nō te feiā 'o tei 'ore i fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au ; 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia i roto 'e nā roto i te tāra'ehara a te Tamaiti fānau tahi, 'o tei fa'aineinehia—
- 6 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te pi'ihia i teie nei pi'ira'a mo'a, 'e i te fa'atōro'ahia i te autahu'ara'a rahi 'ia au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua, nō te ha'api'i atu i tāna mau fa'auera'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'ia ti'a ato'a ia rātou 'ia tomo atu i roto i tōna ra fa'aeara'a—

Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

7 'Ua fa'anahohia teie autahu'ara'a rahi 'ia au i te fa'anahora'a a tana ra Tamaiti, 'e taua fa'anahora'a ra i vai na ia mai te ha'amatarara'a mai a o te ao nei ; 'oia ho'i, 'aita tona e mahana ha'amatarara'a 'e 'aita ho'i e matahiti fa'ahope'ara'a, 'ua fa'aimeinehia ho'i mai te tau mure 'ore e tae atu i te tau mure 'ore, mai te au i tona 'ite-atea-ra'a i te mau mea ato'a ra—

8 I teienei 'ua fa'atoro'ahia ratou mai teie te huru—'ua pi'ihia ratou i te ho'e pi'ira'a mo'a, 'e 'ua fa'atoro'ahia ho'i i te ho'e toro'a mo'a, 'e 'ua rave ho'i i ni'a ia ratou i te autahu'ara'a rahi no te fa'anahora'a mo'a, 'e taua pi'ira'a ra, 'e toro'a ra, 'e autahu'ara'a rahi ra 'aita ia e ha'amatarara'a 'e 'aita ho'i e fa'ahope'ara'a—

9 No reira 'ua riro atu ra ratou 'ei mau tahu'a rahi e a muri noa atu, 'ia au i te fa'anahora'a a te Tamaiti, te Fānau tahi a te Metua, 'aita e mau mahana ha'amatarara'a 'e 'aita ho'i e mau matahiti fa'ahope'ara'a, 'e tei 'i i te maita'i, 'e te fāito ti'a, 'e te parau mau. 'E 'oia mau roa ia. 'Āmene.

10 I teienei, mai tā'u i parau nō ni'a i te fa'anahora'a mo'a, 'oia ho'i teie nei autahu'ara'a rahi, e rave rahi tei fa'atoro'ahia 'e 'ua riro ho'i 'ei mau tahu'a rahi nā te Atua ; 'e nō tō ratou fa'aro'o rahi 'e te tātarahapara'a, 'e tō ratou parauti'a i mua i te Atua, 'ua mā'iti ratou 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia rave i te 'ohipa parauti'a, 'e 'eiaha 'ia pohe.

11 No reira 'ua pi'ihia ratou 'ia au i teie nei fa'anahora'a mo'a, 'e 'ua ha'amo'ahia, 'e 'ua horoihia tō ratou mau 'ahu 'ia teatea nā roto i te toto o te 'Ārenio.

12 I teienei, i muri iho i tō ratou ha'amo'ara'ahia e te Vārua Maita'i, 'e i muri iho i te fa'ateateara'ahia tō ratou mau 'ahu, 'e i muri iho i tō ratou rirora'a 'ei mea mā 'e te pōra'o 'ore i mua i te Atua, 'aita roa i ti'a ia ratou 'ia hi'o noa atu i te hara, ma te 'ore e au 'ore rahi atu i te reira ; e rave rahi, 'e e rave rahi roa atu tei tāmāhia 'e tei tomo atu i roto i te fa'aeara'a o te Fatu tō ratou Atua.

13 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia fa'aha'eha'a 'outou ia 'outou iho i mua i te Atua, 'e 'ia fa'ahotu mai i te hotu e au nō te tātarahapa, 'ia ti'a ato'a ia 'outou 'ia tomo i roto i taua fa'aeara'a ra.

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

- 14 'Oia ia, 'a fa'aha'eha'a na ia 'outou iho mai tā te feiā i te mau mahana o Melehizedeka, 'oia te tahu'a rahi i roto i teie ato'a iho fa'anahora'a o tā'u i parau iho nei, 'e 'o tei rave ato'a i ni'a iho iāna i te autahu'ara'a rahi ē a muri noa atu.
- 15 'E 'o teie ato'a iho ā Melehizedeka tā Aberahama i 'aufau atu i te tufa'a 'ahuru ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'aufau ato'a atu tō tātou metua tāne ra 'o Aberahama i te tufa'a 'ahuru 'oia ho'i i te 'ahuru nō te tufa'a nō tāna ra mau tao'a ato'a.
- 16 I teienei 'ua hōro'ahia mai teie mau 'ōro'a mai teie te huru, 'ia ti'a i te mau ta'ata 'ia hi'o atu i te Tamaiti a te Atua, e taipe ho'i te reira nō tāna ra fa'anahora'a, 'e 'o tāna fa'anahora'a ia, 'e 'ua ravehia te reira 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia hi'o atu iāna nō te ha'amatarara'a i tā rātou ra mau hara, 'e 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia tomo atu i roto i te fa'aeara'a o te Fatu.
- 17 I teienei, 'o taua Melehizedeka ra, 'o te ari'i ia i ni'a i fenua ra nō Salema ; 'e 'ua pūai roa ho'i tōna ra mau ta'ata i roto i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'oia ia, 'ua haere 'ē rātou ato'a ra ; 'e 'ua 'i ho'i rātou i te mau huru 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a ra.
- 18 'E nō te mea e fa'aro'o rahi tō Melehizedeka, 'e 'ua fāri'i 'oia i te tōro'a i roto i te autahu'ara'a rahi mai te au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua, 'ua a'o atu 'oia i te parau nō te tātarahapa i tōna ra mau ta'ata. 'E inaha, 'ua tātarahapa rātou ; 'e 'ua fa'atupu Melehizedeka i te hau i ni'a i te fenua i tōna ra mau pu'e mahana ; nō reira 'ua parauhia 'oia te ari'i nō te hau ; e ari'i ho'i 'oia nō Salema ; 'e 'ua fa'atere 'oia i raro a'e i tōna ra metua tāne.
- 19 I teienei, e rave rahi tei nā mua iāna, e rave rahi ho'i tei nā muri, 'aita rā te tahi i hau atu i te rahi iāna ; nō reira, 'ua fa'a'ite-pāpū-hia te parau nōna.
- 20 I teienei, e mea faufa'a 'ore 'ia parau fa'ahou vau i taua mau mea ra ; te mau mea tā'u i parau iho nei 'ua nava'i ia. Inaha, tei mua ia 'outou te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ; 'e mai te mea e fa'ahuru 'ē 'outou i te reira, e ha'amouhia ia 'outou.

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

- 21 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a i teie mau parau ia rātou, 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tōna rima i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra ma te reo rahi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'O teie nei te taime nō te tātarahapa, tē fātata mai nei ho'i te mahana nō te fa'aorara'a.
- 22 'Oia ia, tē fa'a'ite mai ra te reo o te Fatu i te reira i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, nā roto i te vaha o te mau melahi ; 'oia ia, tē fa'a'ite mai ra 'oia i te reira 'ia roa'a ia rātou te mau parau 'oa'oa nō te 'oa'oa rahi ; 'oia ia, 'e tē pi'i ra 'oia i teie mau parau 'oa'oa i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ia, i te feiā ato'a i ha'apurarahia i ni'a i te fenua nei ; nō reira, 'ua tae mai te reira ia tātou nei.
- 23 'E 'ua fa'a'itehia mai te reira ia tātou ma te pāpū maita'i, 'ia māramarama maita'i tātou, 'ia 'ore tātou 'ia hape ; 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te mea e feiā purutia tātou i roto i te hō'ē fenua 'ē ; nō reira 'ua ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia tātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'itehia mai ho'i teie nei mau parau 'oa'oa ia tātou nei, ē hope roa a'e tā tātou nei 'ō vine.
- 24 Inaha ho'i, tē fa'a'ite noa mai nei ā te mau melahi i te reira i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i tō tātou nei fenua ; 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia 'ia fa'a'ineinehia te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei 'ia fāri'i i tāna ra parau i te tau e tae mai ai 'oia i roto i tōna ra hanahana.
- 25 'E i teienei, tē tīa'i nei tātou nō te fa'aro'o i te mau parau 'āpī 'oa'oa nō tōna taera'a mai, 'o tē fa'a'itehia mai ia tātou nā roto i te vaha o te mau melahi ; tē tae mai ra ho'i te tau, 'aita rā tātou i 'ite i te 'oi'oirā'a nō te reira. 'Ua hina'aro roa ho'i au 'ia tupu te reira i tō'u nei mau mahana ; 'āre'a rā poto noa atu te tau, 'e maoro noa atu, e 'oa'oa ia vau i te reira.
- 26 'E e fa'a'itehia ho'i te reira i te feiā parauti'a 'e te mo'a, nā roto i te vaha o te mau melahi, i te tau e tae mai ai 'oia ra, 'ia tupu te mau parau a tō tātou mau metua, mai tā rātou i parau nō ni'a iāna, 'ia au i te vārua nō te tohu tei roto ia rātou ra.
- 27 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua hina'aro vau ma tō'u 'ā'au ato'a, 'oia ia, ma te hepohepo rahi ē tae noa atu i te māuiui, 'ia fa'aro'o mai 'outou i tā'u nei mau parau, 'e 'ia fa'aru'e i tā 'outou mau hara, 'e 'eiaha e fa'atāere i te mahana nō tā 'outou tātarahapara'a.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

- 28 'Ia fa'aha'eha'a rā 'outou ia 'outou iho i mua i te Fatu, 'e 'ia ti'aoro atu i tōna ra i'oa mo'a, 'e 'ia ara 'e 'ia pure tāmau noa, 'ia 'ore tō 'outou fa'ahemara'a 'ia hau i tō 'outou pūai, 'e 'ia arata'ihia 'outou e te Vārua Mo'a, 'e 'ia riro 'outou 'ei feiā ha'eha'a, 'e te marū, 'e te auraro māite, 'e te fa'a'orama'i, 'e te 'i ho'i i te aroha 'e te fa'a'orama'i roa.
- 29 Ma te ti'aturi i te Fatu, 'e ma te ti'aturi e fāri'i 'outou i te ora mure 'ore ; 'e ma te fāri'i noa i te aroha o te Atua i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'ateiteihia i te mahana hope'a 'e 'ia tomo atu i roto i tōna ra fa'aeara'a.
- 30 'E 'ia hōro'a mai te Fatu i te tātarahapa ia 'outou, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fa'atae mai i tōna riri 'ū'ana i ni'a iho ia 'outou, 'ia 'ore 'outou ia ru'uru'uhia i raro i te mau fifi o hade, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'outou 'ia fāri'i i te piti o te pohe.
- 31 'E 'ua parau atu Alama i te mau ta'ata, i te mau parau e rave rahi 'o tei 'ore i pāpa'ihia i roto i teie nei buka.

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

Alama 14

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i tāna paraura'a atu i te mau ta'ata, e rave rahi tei ti'aturi i tāna mau parau, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te tātarahapa, 'e i te 'imi i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a.
- 2 'Ua hina'aro rā te tahi pae rahi o rātou i te taparahi ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka : 'ua riri ho'i rātou ia Alama, nō te pāpū o tāna mau parau ia Zeezeroma ; 'e 'ua parau ato'a rātou ē, 'ua ha'avare Amuleka ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ino i tā rātou ture, 'e tō rātou mau pāroru ture 'e te mau ha'avā.
- 3 'E 'ua riri ato'a rātou ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka ; 'e nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū rāua nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'ua tītau atu ra rātou 'ia taparahi huna ia rāua.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'aita rātou i nā reira ; 'ua rave rā rātou ia rāua 'e 'ua ru'uru'u ia rāua i te taura pa'ari, 'e 'ua hōpoi atu ra ia rāua i mua i te ha'avā rahi o te fenua.
- 5 'E 'ua haere atu ra te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua pari atu ra ia rāua—ma te fa'a'ite atu ē, 'ua fa'a'ino rāua i te ture, 'e tō rātou mau pāroru ture 'e te mau ha'avā o te fenua, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a o te fenua ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai rāua ē, hō'ē noa iho Atua, 'e e tononā mai 'oia i tāna Tamaiti i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'āre'a rā 'aita 'oia e fa'aora ia rātou ; 'e e rave rahi te mau mea mai te reira te huru tā te mau ta'ata i pari atu ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka. I teieni 'ua ravehia teie i mua i te ha'avā rahi o te fenua.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua māere roa ihora Zeezeroma i te mau parau i parauhia ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a 'oia i te pōiri o te mana'o o tāna i fa'atupu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nā roto i tāna mau parau ha'avare ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora tōna vārua i te ahoaho 'a ha'amana'o ai 'oia i tāna ihora hara ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'amata ato'a 'oia i te ha'a'atihia e te mau māuiui o hade.

Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Inaha, 'ua hara vau, 'e e mea pōra'o 'ore teie nā ta'ata i mua i te Atua. 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia 'ia pāroru atu ia rāua mai taua atu taime ra ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'a'ino mai ra rātou iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ua uru-ato'a-hia ānei 'oe e te diabolō ? 'E 'ua tūtuha mai ra rātou i ni'a iāna, 'e 'ua ti'avaru atu ra iāna i rāpae mai rotopū atu ia rātou, 'e rātou ato'a ho'i 'o tei ti'aturi i te mau parau i parauhia e Alama rāua 'o Amuleka ; 'e 'ua ti'avaru atu ra rātou ia rātou i rāpae, 'e 'ua tonō atu ra i te mau ta'ata 'ia pēhi ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i.

8 'E 'ua ha'aputupuutu mai ra rātou i tā rātou mau vahine 'e mau tamari'i i te vāhi hō'ē, 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi 'e 'aore rā 'o tei ha'api'ihia 'ia ti'aturi i te parau a te Atua, 'ua hurihia ia rātou i roto i te auahi ; 'e 'ua 'āfa'i ato'a mai ra rātou i tā rātou mau pāpa'a parau 'e tei roto i te reira te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, 'e 'ua huri ato'a atu ra i te reira i roto i te auahi, 'ia 'ama 'e 'ia pau i te auahi.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave atu ra rātou ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka, 'e 'ua hōpoi mai ra ia rāua i te vāhi taparahira'a, 'ia 'ite atu rāua i te pohe 'o tei pau i te auahi.

10 'E 'ia 'ite a'era Amuleka i te māuiui o te mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i i te 'amara'a i te auahi, 'ua māuiui ato'a ihora 'oia ; 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia Alama : Nāhea e ti'a ai ia taua 'ia hi'o i teie nei mea ri'ari'a ? Nō reira, e fa'atoro atu taua i tō taua rima, ma te fa'a'ohipa i te mana o te Atua e vai nei i roto ia taua, 'e e fa'aora ia rātou i te auahi.

11 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : 'Ua fa'ahēpohia vau e te Vārua ē 'eiaha vau e fa'atoro atu i tō'u rima ; inaha ho'i, e fāri'i mai te Fatu ia rātou iāna ra i roto i te hanahana ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'a 'oia 'ia nā reira rātou i te rave i teie mea, 'e 'aore rā 'ia rave te mau ta'ata i teie mea i ni'a ia rātou, mai te au i te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e te mau ha'avāra'a tāna e fa'atae mai i ni'a ia rātou i roto i tōna riri 'ū'ana e mea ti'a ia ; 'e e riro te toto o te feiā hara 'ore 'ei 'ite nō te fa'ahapa ia rātou, 'oia ia, e pi'i fa'ahapa mai te reira ia rātou i te mahana hope'a ra.

12 I teienei, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Amuleka ia Alama : Inaha, e riro paha rātou i te tūtu'i ato'a ia taua.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

- 13 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra Alama : 'A vaiiho noa 'ia au i te hina'aro o te Fatu. Inaha rā, 'aita tā taua 'ohipa i oti ; nō reira e'ita roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia tūtu'i ia taua.
- 14 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia pau a'era te mau tino o te feiā i hurihia i roto i te auahi, 'e te mau pāpā'a parau ato'a i hurihia e rātou ato'a i roto i te auahi ra, 'ua haere mai ra te ha'avā rahi o te fenua 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra i mua ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka 'a ru'uru'uhia ai rāua i te taura ra ; 'e 'ua po'ara mai ra i tō rāua nā pāpāri'a i tōna rima, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra ia rāua : I muri iho i teie mau mea tā 'ōrua i 'ite, e 'o fa'ahou ānei 'ōrua i teie nei feiā, 'e 'a hurihia atu ai rātou i roto i te hō'ē roto auahi 'e te gopheri ?
- 15 Inaha, tē 'ite nei 'ōrua ē, 'aita tō 'ōrua e mana 'ia fa'aora i te feiā i hurihia i roto i te auahi ; 'aita ato'a te Atua i fa'aora ia rātou, noa atu hō'ē ā tā rātou fa'aro'o 'e tā 'ōrua. 'E 'ua po'ara fa'ahou mai ra te ha'avā i tō rāua nā pāpāri'a, ma te ani mai : E aha tā 'ōrua parau nō ni'a ia 'ōrua iho na ?
- 16 I teienei, e ha'avā teie nō te fa'anahora'a nō te fa'aro'o a Nehora, 'oia tei taparahi ia Gideona.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa 'o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka i pāhono noa atu iāna ; 'e 'ua po'ara fa'ahou mai ra 'oia ia rāua, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra ia rāua i te feiā tōro'a 'ia hurihia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 18 'E 'ia hope a'era nā mahana e toru i tō rāua vaira'a i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'ua haere mai ra e rave rahi mau pāruru ture, 'e te mau ha'avā, 'e te mau tahu'a, 'e te mau 'orometua, nō te ha'apa'ora'a a Nehora ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a nō te hi'o ia rāua, 'e 'ua uiui mai ra rātou ia rāua i te mau parau e rave rahi ; 'aita rā rāua i pāhono atu ia rātou.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a mai ra te ha'avā i mua ia rāua, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : Nō te aha 'aita 'ōrua i pāhono mai i te mau parau a teie nei feiā ? 'Aita ānei 'ōrua i 'ite ē, e mana tō'u 'ia tu'u atu ia 'ōrua i roto i te auahi ura ra ? 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia ia rāua 'ia parau mai ; 'aita rā rāua i pāhono atu.

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua reva atu ra rātou 'e 'ua haere atu ra i tō rātou mau haere'a ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra rātou i te po'ipo'i a'e, 'e 'ua po'ara fa'ahou mai ra te ha'avā ia rāua i ni'a i tō rāua nā pāpāri'a. 'E e rave rahi ato'a tei haere mai, 'e 'ua po'ara mai ra ia rāua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E ti'a fa'ahou mai ānei 'ōrua nō te fa'ahapa mai i teie nei feiā, 'e nō te fa'a'ino mai i tā mātou ture ? Mai te mea e mana rahi tō 'ōrua nō te aha 'aita 'ōrua i fa'aora ia 'ōrua iho ?
- 21 'E e rave rahi te mau mea mai teie te huru tā rātou i parau atu ia rāua, ma te 'au'aura'a atu i tō rātou niho ia rāua, 'e te tūtuhara'a atu ho'i i ni'a ia rāua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : E aha ia tō mātou hi'ora'a 'ia fa'ahapahia mātou ?
- 22 'E e rave rahi te mau mea mai te reira te huru, 'oia ia, te mau mea ato'a mai te reira te huru, 'o tā rātou i parau atu ia rāua ; 'e i nā reira ho'i rātou i te tāhitohito atu ia rāua e rave rahi mau mahana. 'E 'ua tāpe'a rātou i te mā'a 'e te pape ia rāua, 'ia tupu tō rāua po'ia 'e te po'ihā ; 'e 'ua rave ato'a rātou i tō rāua mau 'ahu, 'ia vai taha'a noa rāua ; 'e 'ua ru'uru'uhia rāua i te mau taura pa'ari, 'e 'ua tāpe'ahia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rāua fāri'ira'a i te 'ati e rave rahi mau mahana, (i te 'ahuru ma piti o te mahana, i te 'ahuru o te 'āva'e, i te 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi,) 'ua haere mai ra te ha'avā rahi o te fenua ra nō Amoniha, 'e e rave rahi o tō rātou mau 'orometua 'e tō rātou mau pāroru ture i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a tei reira 'o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka i te ru'uru'ura'ahia i te mau taura.
- 24 'E 'ua ti'a mai ra te ha'avā rahi i mua ia rāua, 'e 'ua po'ara fa'ahou mai ra ia rāua, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra ia rāua : Mai te mea tei ia 'ōrua ra te mana o te Atua, 'a fa'aora ia ia 'ōrua iho i teie mau tā'amura'a, 'e i reira mātou e ti'aturi ē, e ha'amou te Fatu i teie nei feiā mai te au i tā 'ōrua mau parau.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

- 25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra rātou pā'āto'a 'e 'ua tūpa'i mai ra ia rāua, ma te parau mai i te hō'ē ā mau parau, ē tae noa atu ho'i i te ta'ata hope'a ; 'e 'ia hope a'era tā te ta'ata hope'a paraura'a atu ia rāua, 'ua tae mai ra te mana o te Atua i ni'a iho ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka, 'e 'ua ti'a a'era rāua i ni'a, ma te ti'a māite i ni'a i tō rāua 'āvae.
- 26 'E 'ua ti'aoro atu ra Alama, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E aha te maoro tā māua e fa'a'oroma'i i teie nei mau 'ati rahi, e te Fatu ? E te Fatu, 'a hōro'a mai na 'oe i te pūai ia māua mai te au i tō māua fa'aro'o i te Mesia, ē tae noa atu 'ua fa'aorahia. 'E 'ua motu ihora ia rāua te mau taura i ru'uru'uhia i ni'a ia rāua ; 'e 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata i te reira, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te horo, nō te mata'u 'o tē tae mai te pohe i ni'a iho ia rātou.
- 27 'E i muri a'era, nō te rahi o tō rātou mata'u, 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i raro i te repo, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i tae i te 'ūputa hope'a ē tae atu ai i rāpae'au i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e 'ua 'āueue 'ū'ana ihora te fenua, 'e 'ua pararī ihora te mau papa'i o te fare tāpe'ara'a nā te 'āfara'a, 'e 'ua topa ihora te reira i raro i te repo ; 'e nā roto i te topara'a mai te reira, 'ua pohe ihora te ha'avā rahi, 'e te mau pāroru ture, 'e te mau tahu'a, 'e te mau 'orometua, 'o tei tūpa'i ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka.
- 28 'E 'ua haere mai ra Alama rāua 'o Amuleka i rāpae'au i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'aita roa rāua i pēpē ; 'e 'ua hōro'a mai ho'i te Fatu i te mana ia rāua, mai te au i tō rāua fa'aro'o i te Mesia. 'E 'ua haere ti'a mai rāua mai roto mai i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e 'ua matara tō rāua mau tā'amura'a ; 'e 'ua marua taua fare tāpe'ara'a i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua pohe te mau ta'ata ato'a i roto, maori rā 'o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka ; 'e 'ua haere ti'a atu ra rāua i roto i te 'oire.
- 29 I teieni, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te mau ta'ata i te haruru rahi, 'ua horo 'āmui mai ra rātou i roto i te mau pupu ta'ata 'ia 'ite i te tumu ; 'e 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ia Alama rāua 'o Amuleka i te haerera'a mai i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'o tei topa te mau papa'i i raro i te repo, 'ua ro'ohia ihora rātou i te mata'u rahi, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra mai mua atu i te aro o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka, mai te pua'aniho e horo ra 'e tōna fanau'a mai mua atu i nā liona e piti ; 'e i nā reira rātou i te horo 'ē atu i te aro o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

Alama 15

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'auehia mai ra Alama rāua 'o Amuleka 'ia haere i rāpae i te 'oire ; 'e 'ua reva atu ra rāua, 'e 'ua tae roa atu ra i te fenua ra nō Sidoma ; 'e inaha, i reira 'ua 'itehia ia rāua te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei fa'aru'e atu i te fenua ra nō Amonihā, 'o tei ti'avaruhia 'e tei pēhīhia ho'i i te 'ōfa'i, nō te mea 'ua ti'aturi rātou i te mau parau a Alama.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra rāua ia rātou i te mau mea ato'a i tupu i ni'a i tā rātou mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i, 'e nō ni'a ato'a ia rāua iho, 'e i ni'a ato'a i tō rāua mana i fa'aorahia ai rāua.
- 3 'E 'o Zeezeroma ato'a, te tārava ra 'oia ma te ma'i i Sidoma, e fīva rahi tōna, 'e 'ua tupu te reira nā roto i te mau fifi rahi o tōna mana'o nō tāna mau 'ohīpa 'ī'ino ; 'e 'ua mana'o ho'i 'oia ē, 'ua pohe 'o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka ; 'ua mana'o 'oia ē 'ua taparahīhia rāua nō tāna mau 'ohīpa 'ī'ino. 'E nō teie hara rahi, 'e te tahi atu o tāna mau hara e rave rahi, 'ua ahoaho roa tōna 'ā'au ē tae roa atu 'ua rahi roa tōna ahoaho, 'aita e rāve'a nō te fa'aora ; nō reira 'ua tupuhia 'oia i te fīva rahi 'e te ve'ave'a rahi.
- 4 I teienei, i tōna fa'aro'ora'a ē tei te fenua ra nō Sidoma 'o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka, 'ua itoito a'era tōna 'ā'au ; 'e 'ua fa'atae 'oi'oi ihora 'oia i te hō'ē parau anira'a ia rāua, ma te tītau ia rāua 'ia haere mai iāna ra.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere 'oi'oi atu ra rāua, mai te au i te parau anira'a i fa'ataehia ia rāua ; 'e 'ua tomo atu ra rāua i roto i te fare i'ō Zeezeroma, 'e 'ua 'ite atu rāua iāna i ni'a i tōna ro'i, 'ua ma'ihia, 'e 'ua paruparu roa ho'i i te fīva rahi ; 'e 'ua ahoaho roa tōna mana'o nō tāna mau 'ohīpa 'ī'ino ; 'e i tōna 'itera'a mai ia rāua, 'ua fa'atoro mai ra 'oia i tōna rima, 'e 'ua ani mai ra ia rāua 'ia fa'aora rāua iāna.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Alama iāna, ma te rave mai i tōna rima : 'Ua ti'aturi ānei 'oe i te mana o te Mesia e tae atu ai i te fa'aorara'a ?
- 7 'E 'ua pāhono mai ra 'oia 'e nā 'ō mai ra : 'Ē, 'ua ti'aturi au i te mau parau ato'a tā 'oe i ha'api'i mai.
- 8 'Ua nā 'ō atu ra Alama : Mai te mea e ti'aturi 'oe i te fa'aorara'a a te Mesia, e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia fa'aorahia.
- 9 'Ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia : 'Ē, e ti'aturi au mai te au i tā 'oe mau parau.

Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

- 10 'E i reira 'ua ti'aoro atu ra Alama i te Fatu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E te Fatu tō mātou Atua, 'a hi'o aroha mai i teie nei ta'ata, 'e 'a fa'aora mai iāna mai te au i tōna fa'aro'o i roto i te Mesia.
- 11 'E 'ia oti a'era teie mau parau i te parauhia e Alama, 'ua 'ōu'a tā'ue noa mai ra Zeezeroma i ni'a i tōna nā 'āvae, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te haere ; 'e 'ua māere roa atu ra te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'e 'ua parare atu ra te ro'o o taua mea ra ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ato'a o Sidoma.
- 12 'E 'ua bāpetizo ihora Alama ia Zeezeroma i te Fatu ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia mai taua taime atu i te a'o haere atu i te mau ta'ata.
- 13 'E 'ua fa'ati'a ihora Alama i te hō'ē 'ēkālesia i te fenua ra nō Sidoma, 'e 'ua fa'atōro'a 'oia i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua, 'ia bāpetizo i te mau ta'ata ato'a i hina'aro 'ia bāpetizohia i te Fatu.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi o rātou ; 'e 'ua ta'iruru mai rātou i Sidoma mai te fenua ē 'ati noa a'era, 'e 'ua bāpetizohia ihora rātou.
- 15 'Āre'a rā te mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Amoniha, 'ua vai noa rātou 'ei feiā 'ā'au pa'ari 'e 'ei feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta ; 'e 'aita rātou i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara, 'e 'ua parau ho'i rātou ē, nō te diabolō tō Alama rāua 'o Amuleka mana ; nō te ha'apa'ora'a ho'i a Nehora rātou, 'e 'aita rātou i ti'aturi nō ni'a i te tātarahapara'a i tā rātou mau hara.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'o Alama rāua 'o Amuleka, nō te parau a te Atua i fa'aru'e ai Amuleka i tāna 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau tao'a faufa'a rahi nāna ra i te fenua ra nō Amoniha ; 'ua pāto'ihia 'oia e te feiā i roto na 'ei mau hoa nōna, 'e nā tōna metua tāne ato'a, 'e nā tōna mau fēti'i ato'a ho'i.
- 17 Nō reira, i muri iho i tō Alama fa'ati'ara'a i te 'ēkālesia i Sidoma, tē 'ite ra 'oia i te tāpe'ara'a rahi ; 'oia ia, tē 'ite ra 'oia ē, 'ua tāpe'ahia te mau ta'ata i te te'ote'o o tō rātou ra 'ā'au, 'e tē fa'aha'eha'a ra rātou ia rātou iho i mua i te Atua, 'e tē ha'amata ra rātou i te ha'aputupu ia rātou iho i tō rātou mau vāhi mo'a nō te ha'amori i te Atua i mua i te fata, ma te tīa'i 'e te pure tāmāu noa, 'ia fa'aorahia rātou mai ia Sātane mai, 'e mai te pohe mai, 'e mai te ha'amoura'a mai—

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

18 I teienei, mai tā'u i parau, 'ua 'ite Alama i teie nei mau mea ato'a, nō reira 'ua rave 'oia ia Amuleka 'e 'ua haere mai i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua arata'i atu iāna i tōna ihora fare, 'e 'ua tauturu iāna i roto i tōna ra mau 'ati, 'e 'ua ha'apūai i tōna fa'aro'o i te Fatu.

19 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alama 16

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te 'ahuru ma hō'ē o te matahiti, i te pae o te mahana 'e te piti o te 'āva'e, nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua vai noa te hau rahi i ni'a i te fenua nō Zarahemela, 'aita te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a i tupu nō te tahi mau matahiti te maoro, 'e 'ia tae a'era i te pae o te mahana nō te piti o te 'āva'e i te 'ahuru ma hō'ē o te matahiti, 'ua fa'arō'ohia ihora te parau nō te 'arora'a ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, 'ua tae mai te mau nu'u fa'ehau 'āti Lamana nā te pae i te mēdēbara, i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua, ē tae roa mai i te 'oire ra nō Amonihā, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te taparahi i te mau ta'ata 'e i te ha'amou ho'i i te 'oire.
- 3 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, nā mua i ti'a ai i te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia ha'aputupu i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau nava'i maita'i nō te ti'avaru atu ia rātou i rāpae i te fenua, 'ua ha'amou rātou i te mau ta'ata e pārahi ra i te 'oire nō Amonihā, 'e te tahi pae ato'a ho'i i te 'ōti'a nō te fenua ra nō Noa, 'e 'ua hōpoi tītī atu ho'i i te tahi pae i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 4 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua hina'aro te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia roa'a fa'ahou mai te mau ta'ata i hōpoi-tītī-hia i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 5 Nō reira, tei rotopū ia rātou te hō'ē ta'ata i fa'ata'ahia 'ei ra'atira rahi i ni'a i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, ('e 'o Zorama tōna i'oa, 'e tē vai ra tāna e piti tamaiti, 'o Lehi 'e 'o Aha)—i teie nei 'ua 'ite Zorama 'e tāna nā tamaiti to'opiti e tahu'a rahi 'o Alama i ni'a a'e i te 'ēkālēsia, 'e i tō rātou fa'arō'ora'a ē, tei iāna te vārua nō te tohu, nō reira 'ua haere mai ra rātou iāna, 'e 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia 'ite ē, 'ua ti'a ānei i te Fatu 'ia haere atu rātou i roto i te mēdēbara nō te 'imi i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'o tei hōpoi-tītī-hia 'e te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ani atu ra Alama i te Fatu nō ni'a i taua mea ra. 'E 'ua ho'i mai ra Alama 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou : Inaha, e haere te mau 'āti Lamana i terā pae mai o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, i te pae apato'a i te mēdēbara, i'ō roa atu i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua ra nō Maniti. 'E inaha, i reira 'outou e 'aro atu ai ia rātou, i te pae i te hiti'a o te rā i te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, 'e i reira ho'i te Fatu e tu'u mai ai ia 'outou i tō 'outou mau taea'e i hōpoi-tītī-hia e te mau 'āti Lamana.

Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Zorama 'e tāna nā tamaiti 'e tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau ato'a i terā pae mai o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, 'e 'ua haere ti'a atu ra i'ō roa atu i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua ra nō Maniti ē tae roa atu i te mēdēbara i te pae apato'a, 'oia i te pae hiti'a o te rā i te 'ānāvai ra Sidona.

8 'E 'ua 'aro atu ra rātou i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ha'apurarahia 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua rave mai ra rātou i tō rātou mau taea'e i hōpoi-tīti-hia e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē 'o rātou 'o tei hōpoi-tīti-hia i mo'e. 'E 'ua arata'ihia mai ra rātou e tō rātou mau taea'e i tō rātou ihora mau fenua.

9 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te 'ahuru ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua ti'avaruhia te mau 'āti Lamana i rāpae i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amouhia te mau ta'ata o Amonihā ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'amouhia te mau ta'ata ora ato'a nō te mau 'āti Amonihā, 'e tō rātou ato'a 'oire rahi 'o tā rātou i parau ē, e'ita roa e ti'a i te Atua 'ia ha'amou, nō te rahi o te reira.

10 Inaha rā, i roto i te hō'ē noa iho mahana 'ua vai ano noa te reira, 'e 'ua 'amuhia te mau tino pohe 'e te mau 'ūrī 'e te mau 'ānimara taehae nō te mēdēbara.

11 'Āre'a rā, 'ia hope a'era te mau mahana e rave rahi, 'ua ha'apu'ehia tō rātou mau tino pohe i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e 'ua tāpo'ihia te reira i te tāpo'i rairai. 'E i teienei, nō te rahi o te hau'a 'ino i reira, 'aita atu ra te mau ta'ata i ho'i atu e pārahi i te fenua ra nō Amonihā e rave rahi matahiti. 'E 'ua parauhia taua vāhi ra te Pau o tō Nehora ; nō te mea e pipi rātou tei taparahihia e Nehora ; 'e 'ua vai ano noa tō rātou fenua.

12 E 'aita te mau 'āti Lamana i haere fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi, ē tae noa atu i te 'ahuru ma maha o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi. 'E nō reira e toru matahiti 'ua vai tāmāu noa te hau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi i ni'a i te fenua.

13 'E 'ua haere atu ra Alama rāua 'o Amuleka i te poro-haere-ra'a i te tātarahapa i te mau ta'ata i roto i tō rātou mau hiero, 'e tō rātou mau fare mo'a, 'e i roto ato'a i tō rātou mau sunago, tei hāmanihia mai te au i tā te mau 'āti Iuda.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

14 'E te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o mai i tā rātou mau parau, 'o tā rātou ia i ha'api'i atu i te parau a te Atua ma te fa'aea 'ore, 'e ma te ha'apa'o 'ore i te huru o te ta'ata.

15 'E nō reira, 'ua haere atu ra Alama rāua 'o Amuleka, 'e e rave rahi atu ā 'o tei mā'itihia nō taua 'ohipa ra, nō te poro haere i te parau ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua. 'E 'ua fa'ati'ahia te 'ēkālesia i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e i roto i te retioni pā'āto'a ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e i rotopū ho'i i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi.

16 'E 'aita te hō'ē mea 'aifāito 'ore i rotopū ia rātou ; 'ua nīni'i mai te Fatu i tōna Vārua i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a nō te fa'aineine i te mana'o o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata, 'oia ho'i, nō te fa'aineine i tō rātou 'ā'au 'ia fāri'i i te parau e ha'api'ihia ia rātou i te taimē nō tōna taera'a mai—

17 'Ia 'ore rātou 'ia fa'a'eta'eta atu i te parau, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i rātou 'ia riro 'ei feiā ti'aturi 'ore, 'e 'a ha'amouhia ai, 'ia fāri'i rā rātou i te parau ma te 'oa'oa, 'e mai te 'āma'a ra, 'ia poihia rātou i roto i te vine mau ra, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia tomo atu i roto i te fa'aeara'a o te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

18 I teienei, taua mau tahu'a ra 'o tei hāhaere atu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'ua a'o atu ra ia rātou, 'eiaha e ha'avare, 'eiaha e fa'ahema, 'eiaha e fe'i'i, 'eiaha e mārō, 'eiaha e 'ino'ino, 'eiaha e fa'a'ino, 'e 'eiaha e 'eiā, 'eiaha e rave fa'atāpuni, 'eiaha e 'eiā haru, 'eiaha e taparahi i te ta'ata, 'eiaha e fa'aturi, 'e 'eiaha ho'i e rave i te mea faufau ; ma te ti'aoro ē, e mea au 'ore teie mau mea—

19 'E tē fa'a'ite atu ra i te mau mea i fātata i te tupu mai ; 'oia ia, tē fa'a'ite atu ra i te taera'a mai o te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'e tōna mau mamae 'e tōna pohera'a, 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra.

20 'E e rave rahi ta'ata i ui mai i te vāhi e tae mai ai te Tamaiti a te Atua ; 'e 'ua ha'api'ihia ho'i rātou ē e fā mai 'oia ia rātou i muri a'e i tōna ti'afa'ahoura'a ; 'e 'ua fa'aro'o mai te mau ta'ata i te reira ma te pōpou rahi 'e te 'oa'oa.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

21 'E i teienei, i muri iho i te fa'ati'ara'ahia o te 'ēkālesia i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e—'e te roa'ara'a te rē i ni'a a'e i te diabolō, 'e te a'ora'ahia te parau a te Atua i tōna huru mau i tō te mau fenua ato'a, 'e tō te Fatu nīni'ira'a mai i tāna mau ha'amaita'ira'a i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata—'e teie te hope'a nō te 'ahuru maha o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Tē 'ā'amu nō te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Mosia, 'o tei pāto'i atu i tō rātou ti'ara'a nō te bāsileia nō te parau a te Atua, 'e tei haere atu i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi nō te a'o atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ; tō rātou mau 'ati 'e tō rātou fa'aorara'abia—mai te au i te pāpa'a parau a Alama.

Alama 17

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'a tere atu ai Alama mai te fenua atu o Gideona i te pae apato'a, 'ia tae i te fenua ra nō Maniti, inaha, 'ua māere roa 'oia i te fārereira'a i te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Mosia 'o tē haere ra i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.
- 2 I teienei, tei pīha'i ato'a iho teie nei mau tamari'i tamāroa a Mosia ia Alama i te taime i fā mātāmua mai ai te melahi iāna ; nō reira 'ua 'oa'oa roa Alama i te 'itera'a i tōna ra mau taea'e ; 'e 'ua rahi roa atu tōna 'oa'oa i te mea e mau taea'e noa ā rātou nōna i te Fatu ; 'oia ia, 'ua tupu tō rātou 'ite i te parau mau i te rahi ; e mau ta'ata mana'o pāpū ho'i rātou 'e 'ua 'imi māite rātou i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, 'ia 'ite rātou i te parau a te Atua.
- 3 E 'ere rā i te reira ana'e ; 'ua pinepine rātou i te pure, 'e i te ha'apae i te mā'a ; nō reira 'ua fāri'i rātou i te vārua nō te tohu, 'e te vārua nō te heheura'a ; 'e 'ia ha'api'i rātou, 'ua ha'api'i ia ma te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua.
- 4 'E i ha'api'i na rātou i te parau a te Atua nō te ārea e hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma maha matahiti te maoro i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, ma te manuia rahi i te fa'afāriu mai i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i te 'ite i te parau mau ; 'oia ia, nā roto i te mana nō tā rātou mau parau 'ua arata'ihia mai te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i mua i te fata a te Atua, nō te ti'aoro atu i tōna ra i'oa 'e nō te fā'i atu i tā rātou mau hara i mua iāna.
- 5 I teienei, 'o te mau mea teie 'o tei tae i ni'a ia rātou i tō rātou mau tere, 'e 'ua ro'ohia rātou i te mau 'ati e rave rahi ; 'ua ro'ohia rātou i te 'ati rahi, i te tino 'e te mana'o ato'a ho'i, 'oia ho'i, te po'ia, te po'ihā 'e te rohirohi, 'e te māuiui rahi i te pae vārua.

An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.

Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

6 I teienei, 'o teie tō rātou mau tere : I muri iho i tō rātou fa'aru'era'a atu i tō rātou metua tāne, ia Mosia, i te matahiti mātāmua nō te fa'aterera'a o te mau ha'avā ; 'e i muri iho i tō rātou fa'aru'era'a i te bāsileia tā tō rātou metua tāne i hina'aro 'ia hōro'a mai ia rātou ; 'e 'o te hina'aro ato'a ho'i ia o te mau ta'ata.

7 'Āre'a rā 'ua reva atu ra rātou i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua rave atu rātou i tā rātou mau 'o'e, 'e tā rātou mau mahae, 'e tā rātou mau fana, 'e tā rātou mau te'a, 'e tā rātou mau ma'a ; 'e i nā reira rātou 'ia noa'a tā rātou mā'a 'a fa'aea ai rātou i roto i te mēdēbara.

8 'E 'ua reva atu ra rātou 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i mā'itihia e rātou i roto i te mēdēbara, nō te haere atu i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi, nō te poro atu i te parau a te Atua i te mau 'āti Lamana.

9 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi mahana tō rātou haerera'a atu i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua ha'apae rahi rātou i te mā'a 'e 'ua pure rahi rātou i te Fatu 'ia hōro'a mai i te hō'ē tufa'a nō tōna Vārua 'ia 'āpe'e ia rātou, 'e 'ia vai noa i roto ia rātou, 'ia riro rātou 'ei mauha'a i te rima o te Atua nō te arata'i, mai te mea e ti'a, i tō rātou mau taea'e, i te mau 'āti Lamana, i te 'ite i te parau mau, i te 'ite ho'i i te vi'ivi'i nō te mau peu tumu tano 'ore a tō rātou mau metua.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atae mai te Fatu i tōna Vārua i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra ia rātou : 'Ia tāmāhanahanahia 'outou. 'E 'ua tāmāhanahanahia rātou.

11 'E 'ua nā 'ō ato'a mai ra te Fatu ia rātou : 'A haere atu i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, i tō 'outou mau taea'e, 'e 'a fa'ati'a i tā'u parau ; 'e 'ia fa'a'oroma'i 'outou i te fa'a'oroma'ira'a roa 'e te mau 'ati, 'e 'ia fa'ariro 'outou ia 'outou iho 'ei hi'ora'a maita'i nō rātou i roto iā'u, 'e e fa'ariro vau ia 'outou 'ei mauha'a i roto i tō'u nei rima nō te fa'aorara'a i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua itoito ihora te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Mosia, 'e rātou ato'a i pīha'i iho ia rātou ra, 'ia haere atu i te mau 'āti Lamana nō te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i te parau a te Atua.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae atu ra rātou i te mau 'ōti'a nō te fenua o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua fa'ata'a 'ē atu ra rātou ia rātou iho, 'e 'ua ta'a 'ē atu ra te tahi i te tahi, ma te ti'aturi i te Fatu nō te fa'afārerei fa'ahou ia rātou i te hope'a nō tā rātou 'ō'otira'a ; 'e 'ua mana'o ho'i rātou ē, 'e 'ohipa rahi tā rātou i rave.
- 14 'E e mea rahi mau ia te reira, 'e 'ua ha'amata ho'i rātou i te poro atu i te parau a te Atua i te hō'ē pupu ta'ata 'ōviri 'e te 'ā'au 'eta'eta 'e te taehae, te hō'ē pupu ta'ata i hina'aro i te taparahi i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e i te 'eiā 'e i te 'eiā haru ho'i i tā rātou ; 'e tei ni'a tō rātou 'ā'au i te mau mea tao'a rahi, 'oia ho'i, i te 'auro 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau 'ōfa'i tao'a rahi ; 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia fāri'i i teie mau mea nā roto i te taparahira'a ta'ata 'e te harura'a tao'a, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia rave i te 'ohipa i tō rātou iho rima.
- 15 'Oia ia e feiā fa'atau roa ho'i rātou, 'e e rave rahi tō rātou e ha'amori ra i te mau 'īdolo, 'e 'ua ma'iri mai te 'anatemara'a a te Atua i ni'a iho ia rātou nō te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua ; noa atu te mau fafaura'a tā te Fatu i fa'atae mai i ni'a iho ia rātou 'ia au i te mau tītaura'a nō te tātarahapara'a.
- 16 Nō reira, teie te tumu i tāmata ai te mau tamaiti a Mosia 'ia rave i te reira 'ohipa, penei a'e 'o te fa'afāriu mai rātou ia rātou i te tātarahapa ; 'e penei a'e 'o te fa'afāriu mai rātou ia rātou 'ia 'ite i te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a.
- 17 Nō reira i fa'ata'a 'ē ai rātou ia rātou iho, 'e i haere atu ai i rotopū ia rātou, te ta'ata tata'ihō'ē, mai te au i te parau 'e te mana o te Atua 'o tei hōro'ahia mai iāna ra.
- 18 I teienei 'o Amona te ra'atira i rotopū ia rātou, 'oia ho'i tei tauturu ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'aru'e mai ra 'oia ia rātou, i muri iho i tōna ha'amaita'ira'a ia rātou mai te au i tō rātou mau tōro'a e rave rahi, 'e i muri iho i tōna fa'a'itera'a i te parau a te Atua ia rātou, 'e 'aore rā i te ha'api'ira'a ia rātou hou tōna revara'a atu ; 'e i nā reira rātou i te rave i tō rātou mau tere e rave rahi ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua.
- 19 'E 'ua haere atu Amona i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, te fenua i ma'irihia te i'oa o te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Isema'ela, 'o tei riro ato'a 'ei mau 'āti Lamana.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

20 'E 'a tae atu ai Amona i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, 'ua rave mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana iāna 'e 'ua ru'uru'u ihora iāna, mai te au i tā rātou peu 'ia ru'uru'u i te mau 'āti Nephi ato'a 'o tei ma'iri mai i roto i tō rātou mau rima, 'e 'ia hōpoi atu ia rātou i mua i te ari'i ; 'e tei te ari'i te parau 'ia taparahi ia rātou, 'e 'aore rā 'ia tāpe'a ia rātou i roto i te fa'atitira'a, 'e 'aore rā 'ia huri ia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'aore rā 'ia ti'avaru atu ia rātou i rāpae i tōna fenua, mai te au i tōna hina'aro 'e tōna mana'o.

21 'E nō reira 'ua hōpoiha atu Amona i mua i te ari'i 'o tē fa'atere ra i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela ; 'e 'o Lamoni tōna i'oa ; 'e e hua'ai 'oia nō Isema'ela.

22 'E 'ua ani mai ra te ari'i ia Amona ē mai te mea e hina'aro ānei 'oia 'ia pārahi mai i teie fenua i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'oia ho'i i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata.

23 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : 'E, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia pārahi i rotopū i teie nei feiā nō te hō'ē taime ri'i ; 'oia iā, ē tae atu paha i te mahana e pohe ai au ra.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua māuruuru roa te ari'i ra o Lamoni ia Amona, 'e 'ua fa'ae atu ra 'oia 'ia tātarahia tōna mau tā'amu ; 'e 'ua hina'aro 'oia 'ia rave Amona i te hō'ē o tāna ra mau tamāhine 'ei vahine nāna.

25 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : 'Eiaha roa, 'ia riro rā vau 'ei tāvini nō 'oe. Nō reira 'ua riro Amona 'ei tāvini nō te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tu'uhia 'oia i rotopū i te tahi atu mau tāvini nō te tīa'i i te mau nana māmoe a Lamoni, mai te au i te peu a te mau 'āti Lamana.

26 'E 'ia hope a'era nā mahana e toru nō tōna tāvinira'a i te ari'i, tē haere ra 'oia 'e te mau tāvini 'āti Lamana 'e tā rātou mau nana māmoe i te vāhi nō te pape, 'o tei parauhia te pape o Sebusa, 'e 'ua mātau te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a i te fa'ahaere mai i tā rātou mau nana māmoe i teie vāhi nō te fa'ainu ia rātou i te pape—

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

27 Nō reira, 'a fa'ahaere atu ai Amona 'e te mau tāvini o te ari'i i tā rātou mau nana māmoe i teie vāhi nō te pape, inaha, 'ua tī'a mai ra te tahi mau ta'ata 'āti Lamana, tei tae na i te pape nō te fa'ainu i tā rātou mau nana, 'e 'ua ha'apurara a'era i te mau nana māmoe a Amona 'e tā te mau tāvini o te ari'i, 'e 'ua ha'apurara roa a'era ia rātou, 'e nō reira 'ua horo haere noa atu ra rātou i te mau vāhi e rave rahi.

28 I teienei, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau tāvini o te ari'i i te amuamu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : I teienei, e taparahi te ari'i ia tātou mai tāna i nā reira i tō tātou mau taea'e, nō te mea 'ua ha'apurarahia tā rātou mau nana māmoe nā roto i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a teie mau ta'ata. 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te 'oto rahi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Inaha, 'ua purara roa tā tātou mau nana i teienei.

29 I teienei, 'ua 'oto ihora rātou nō te mata'u 'o te taparahihia rātou. I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Amona i te reira, 'ua 'ī roa ihora tōna 'ā'au i te oaoa ; 'e 'ua nā 'ō ihora 'oia iāna iho : E fa'a'ite atu vau i tō'u mana i tō'u mau ta'ata tāvini nei, 'oia ho'i te mana i roto iā'u nei, i te fa'aho'ira'a i teie nei mau nana māmoe i te ari'i ra, 'ia noa'a mai iā'u te 'ā'au o tō'u mau ta'ata tāvini nei, 'e 'ia arata'i au ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi i tā'u nei mau parau.

30 'E i teienei, 'o teie ia te mau mana'o o Amona, 'a hi'o atu ai 'oia i te mau 'ati o teie mau ta'ata 'o tāna i parau e mau taea'e nōna.

31 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāvaimanino 'oia ia rātou nā roto i tāna mau parau, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E tō'u mau taea'e, 'a fa'aitoito, mai haere tātou e 'imi i te mau nana māmoe, 'e e ha'aputupu'āmu i tātou ia rātou 'e e fa'ahaere mai ia rātou i te vāhi nō te pape nei ; e nā reira tātou i te fa'aherehere i te mau nana māmoe a te ari'i 'e 'aita 'oia e taparahi ia tātou.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou e 'imi haere i te mau nana māmoe ; 'e 'ua pe'e atu rātou ia Amona, 'e 'ua horo 'oi'oi rātou 'e tae atu ra i mua i te mau nana māmoe a te ari'i, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu'āmu mai ra ia rātou i te vāhi nō te pape ra.

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

33 'E 'ua ti'a fa'ahou mai ra taua mau ta'ata ra nō te ha'apurara i tā rātou mau nana māmoe ; 'e 'ua parau atu ra Amona i tōna mau taea'e : 'A ha'a'ati 'outou i te mau nana māmoe 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia horo 'ē atu ; 'e e haere atu vau e 'aro i teie mau ta'ata 'o tē ha'apurara i tā tātou mau nana māmoe.

34 Nō reira, 'ua nā reira rātou mai tā Amona i fa'aue mai ia rātou, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua ti'a atu ra nō te 'aro ia rātou 'o tē ti'a ra i pīha'i iho i te mau pape nō Sebusa ; 'e e 'ere rātou i te mea iti.

35 Nō reira 'aita rātou i mata'u ia Amona, nō te mea 'ua mana'o rātou ē, e ti'a i te hō'ē o tō rātou mau ta'ata 'ia taparahi iāna mai te au i tō rātou hina'aro, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i 'ite ē, 'ua fafau mai te Fatu ia Mosia ē, e fa'aora 'oia i tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa i tō rātou rima ; 'e 'aita ato'a rātou i 'ite i te hō'ē mea nō ni'a i te Fatu ; nō reira rātou i 'oa'oa ai i te taparahira'a i tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tītau rātou 'ia ha'apurara i te mau nana māmoe a te ari'i.

36 'Āre'a rā 'ua ti'a atu ra Amona 'e 'ua ma'a atu ra i te 'ōfa'i i ni'a ia rātou ma te fa'a'ohipa i tāna ma'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua ma'a 'ū'ana atu ra 'oia i te 'ōfa'i i ni'a ia rātou ma te pūai rahi ; 'e 'ua taparahi 'oia i te tahi pae o rātou 'e nō reira 'ua tupu ihora tō rātou māere rahi i tōna mana ; 'ua riri rā rātou nō tō rātou mau taea'e i taparahihia, 'e 'ua 'ōpua māite ihora rātou 'ia pohe 'oia ; nō reira, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'aita 'oia e tano ia rātou i tā rātou mau 'ōfa'i, 'ua haere mai ra rātou 'e te mau rā'au tā'iri nō te taparahi iāna.

37 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'a'ohipa Amona i tāna 'o'e nō te tāpū i te rima o te mau ta'ata tāta'itahi i fa'ateitei mai i tāna rā'au tā'iri nō te tā'iri mai iāna ; 'e 'ua pāruru atu 'oia i tā rātou mau tā'irira'a nā roto i te tāpūra'a atu i tō rātou mau rima i te 'oira'a nō tāna 'o'e, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua māere roa ihora rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te horo 'ē atu mai mua atu iāna ; 'oia ia, e 'ere rātou i te mea iti, 'e 'ua tīahi atu 'oia ia rātou 'ia horo 'ē atu nā roto i te pūai o tōna ra rima.

38 I teienei, 'ua pohe e ono i te ma'a, 'aita rā 'oia i taparahi ia rātou i te 'o'e, maori rā tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere ana'e ; 'e 'ua tāpū fa'ata'a 'ē 'oia i te mau rima ato'a i fa'ateiteihia i ni'a nō te tā'iri mai iāna, e 'ere ho'i te reira i te mea iti.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

'E 'a tīahi 'ē atu ai 'oia ia rātou i te ātea, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra 'oia 'e 'ua fa'ainu ihora rātou i tā rātou mau nana māmoē 'e 'ua fa'aho'i atu ra ia rātou i roto i te 'āua a te ari'i ; 'e i reira 'ua haere atu ra rātou i mua i te ari'i, ma te amo atu i te mau rima i tāpūhia i te 'o'e a Amona ra, nō te feiā 'o tei tītau 'ia taparahi iāna ; 'e 'ua 'āfa'ihia te reira i mua i te ari'i 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū i te mau mea tā rātou i rave.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

Alama 18

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue ihora te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni 'ia ti'a mai tōna mau tāvini 'e 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū mai i te mau mea ato'a tā rātou i 'ite nō ni'a i te 'ohipa i tupu.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai rātou ato'a i te mau mea tā rātou i 'ite, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o a'era 'oia i tō Amona ha'apa'o maita'i i te pānurura'a i tāna ra mau nana māmoe, 'e i tōna ho'i mana rahi 'a 'aro pūai atu ai 'oia ia rātou 'o tei tītau 'ia taparahi mai iāna, 'e 'ua māere roa ihora te ari'i, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : E 'ere teie i te ta'ata ana'e. Inaha, e 'ere ānei teie te Vārua Rahi tei fa'atae mai i te utu'a rahi i ni'a iho i teie nei feiā, nō tā rātou mau taparahira'a i te ta'ata ?
- 3 'E 'ua pāhono atu ra rātou i te ari'i, nā 'ō atu ra : 'Aita mātou i 'ite, e Vārua Rahi ānei 'oia 'e 'aore rā e ta'ata ānei ; 'ua 'ite rā mātou ē, 'aita roa e ti'a i te mau 'enemi o te ari'i 'ia taparahi iāna, 'e 'aita ho'i e ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'apurara 'ē atu i te mau nana māmoe a te ari'i 'a fa'aea ai 'oia i pīha'i iho ia mātou, nō tōna 'aravihi 'e te pūai rahi ho'i ; nō reira, 'ua 'ite mātou e hoa 'oia nō te ari'i. 'E i teienei, e te ari'i, 'aita roa mātou i ti'aturi ē tē vai nei te hō'ē ta'ata e mana rahi tōna mai te reira, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i mātou ē, 'aita e ti'a iāna 'ia taparahihia.
- 4 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te ari'i i teie mau parau, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia ia rātou : I teienei, tē 'ite nei au ē, 'o te Vārua Rahi teie, 'e 'ua haere mai 'oia i raro nei nō te fa'aora ia 'outou, 'ia 'ore au e taparahi ia 'outou mai tā'u i nā reira i tō 'outou ra mau taea'e. I teienei 'o te Vārua Rahi teie tei parauhia mai e tō tātou ra mau metua.
- 5 I teienei 'o te peu tumu teie i fāri'ihia e Lamoni nō 'ō mai i tōna ra metua tāne, 'oia ho'i, tē vai noa ra te Vārua Rahi. Noa atu ē 'ua ti'aturi noa rātou i taua Vārua Rahi ra, 'ua mana'o rā rātou ē, e mea ti'a te mau mea ato'a tā rātou e rave ra ; terā rā, 'ua rurutaina ihora Lamoni ma te mata'u, i te mea ē 'ua hape 'oia i te taparahira'a i tōna ra mau tāvini :
- 6 E rave rahi ho'i tō rātou 'o tāna i taparahi, nō te mea i ha'apurara na tō rātou mau taea'e i tā rātou mau nana māmoe i te vāhi nō te pape ra ; 'e nō reira, nō te mea 'ua ha'apurara rātou i tā rātou mau nana māmoe i taparahihia ai rātou ra.

Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

7 I teienei, e peu mātauhia teie nā teie mau 'āti Lamana 'ia tīa'i i pīha'i iho i te mau pape nō Sebusa nō te ha'apurara 'ē atu i te mau nana māmoe a te mau ta'ata, 'ia tī'a ia rātou 'ia fa'ahaere atu e rave rahi 'o tei ha'apurarahia i roto i tō rātou iho fenua, 'o teie tā rātou peu harura'a i rotopū ia rātou.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ui mai ra te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni i tōna mau tāvini, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : Tei hea roa teie ta'ata, tei iāna te reira huru mana rahi ?

9 'E 'ua parau atu ra rātou iāna : Inaha, tē fa'a'amu ra 'oia i tā 'oe mau pua'ahorofenua. I teienei, i fa'aue na ho'i te ari'i i tōna mau tāvini, hou te taime nō te fa'ainura'a i tā rātou mau nana māmoe, 'ia fa'aineine rātou i tāna mau pua'ahorofenua 'e te mau pere'o'o ho'i, 'e 'ia 'āfa'i atu iāna i te fenua ra nō Nephi ; nō te mea tē fa'atupuhia ra te hō'ē fa'a'amu'a rahi i te fenua ra nō Nephi 'e te metua tāne o Lamoni, te ari'i nō te fenua pā'āto'a.

10 I teienei 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni ē tē fa'aineine ra Amona i tāna mau pua'ahorofenua 'e tōna ra mau pere'o'o, 'ua rahi atu ra tōna māere nō tō Amona ha'apa'o maita'i, 'e 'ua nā 'ō ihora 'oia : 'Oia mau roa, 'aita roa e tāvini i rotopū i tō'u ato'a ra mau tāvini mai teie nei ta'ata i te ha'apa'o maita'i ; 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ho'i 'oia i tā'u ato'a ra mau fa'auera'a 'ia ravehia te reira.

11 I teienei 'ua 'ite pāpū vau ē, 'o te Vārua Rahi teie, 'e tē hina'aro nei au 'ia haere mai 'oia iā'u nei, 'ua mata'u rā vau.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Amona fa'aineinera'a i te mau pua'ahorofenua 'e te mau pere'o'o nō te ari'i 'e tōna mau tāvini, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te ari'i ra, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia ē 'ua tau'i roa te hōho'a mata o te ari'i ; nō reira 'ua fātata roa ihora 'oia i te ho'i atu i rāpae mai mua mai i tōna ra aro.

13 'E 'ua parau mai ra te hō'ē o te mau tāvini o te ari'i iāna, e Rabana, tōna aura'a 'ia 'iritihia, 'oia ho'i, e ari'i mana 'e 'aore rā e ari'i rahi ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite rātou ē, e mana rahi tō rātou mau ari'i ; 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia i te parau mai iāna : E Rabana, 'ua hina'aro te ari'i 'ia fa'aea mai 'oe i'ō nei.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

- 14 Nō reira, 'ua fāriu atu ra Amona i ni'a i te ari'i, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra iāna : E aha tā 'oe i hina'aro iā'u 'ia rave nā 'oe na, e te ari'i ? 'E 'aita te ari'i i pāhono mai iāna nō te ārea e hō'ē hora te maoro, mai te au i te fāito nō tā rātou taime, 'e 'aita roa ho'i 'oia i 'ite i te mea tāna e ti'a 'ia parau atu iāna.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra Amona iāna : E aha tā 'oe i hina'aro iā'u nei ? 'Aita rā te ari'i i pāhono mai iāna.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'i ihora Amona i te Vārua o te Atua, nō reira 'ua 'ite atu 'oia i te mau mana'o o te ari'i. 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia iāna : Nō te mea ānei 'ua fa'aro'o 'oe ē, 'ua pāroru vau i tō 'oe mau tāvini 'e tā 'oe mau nana māmoe, 'e 'ua taparahi ho'i i nā taea'e e hitu nō rātou i te mā'a 'e i te 'o'e, 'e 'ua tāpū 'ē ho'i i te rima o vetahi 'ē atu, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia pāroru i tā 'oe mau nana māmoe 'e tō 'oe mau tāvini ; inaha, nō teie ānei mea i tupu ai tō 'oe māere ?
- 17 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, e aha ia te mea i tupu ai tō 'oe māere rahi ? Inaha, e ta'ata ho'i au, 'e e tāvini ho'i nō 'oe ; 'e nō reira, 'o te mea ti'a tā 'oe e hina'aro, 'o tā'u ia e rave.
- 18 I teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te ari'i i teie mau parau, 'ua māere fa'ahou ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua ta'a iāna ē, 'ua 'ite Amona i tōna mau mana'o ; 'e noa atu ā i te reira, 'ua hāmama ihora te ari'i Lamoni i tōna vaha, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra iāna : 'O vai ho'i 'oe na ? 'O taua Vārua Rahi ra ānei 'oe 'o tei 'ite i te mau mea ato'a ?
- 19 'Ua parau atu ra Amona iāna, nā 'ō atu ra : E 'ere ia vau.
- 20 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i : E mea nāhea 'oe i 'ite ai i te mau mana'o o tō'u nei 'ā'au ? 'A parau mai 'oe ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e 'a fa'a'ite mai i teie mau mea iā'u nei ; 'e 'a fa'a'ite ato'a mai ho'i iā'u nei ē nā roto i tō vai mana i taparahi ai 'e i tāpū 'ē atu ai 'oe i te mau rima o tō'u ra mau taea'e tei ha'apurara 'ē atu i tā'u ra mau nana māmoe—
- 21 'E i teienei, mai te mea e fa'a'ite mai 'oe i teie mau mea iā'u nei, e hōro'a atu ia vau ia 'oe na i te mau mea ato'a tā 'oe e hina'aro ; 'e mai te mea e hina'arohia, nā tō'u ia mau nu'u fa'ehau e pāroru ia 'oe ; 'ua 'ite rā vau ē, 'ua rahi atu tō 'oe mana i tō rātou ato'a ra ; terā rā, te mau mea ato'a tā 'oe e hina'aro mai iā'u nei, nā'u ia e hōro'a atu ia 'oe na.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

22 I teienei, nō te 'aravihi 'e te hapa 'ore o Amona, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia Lamoni : E fa'aro'o ānei 'oe i tā'u nei mau parau, mai te mea e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'oe ē nā roto i tō vai mana i rave ai au i teie mau mea nei ? 'E teie te mea tā'u i hina'aro ia 'oe na.

23 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i iāna, nā 'ō mai ra : 'Ē, e ti'aturi au i tā 'oe mau parau ato'a. 'E e mea nā reira 'oia i te noa'ara'a nā roto i te hō'ē rāve'a 'aravihi.

24 E ha'amata ihora Amona i te parau atu iāna ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra iāna : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, tē vai ra te hō'ē Atua ?

25 'E 'ua pāhono mai ra 'oia, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra iāna : 'Aita vau i 'ite i te aura'a nō te reira.

26 'E i muri iho 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Amona : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, tē vai ra te hō'ē Vārua Rahi ?

27 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia, 'Ē.

28 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Amona : 'O te Atua ia. 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra Amona iāna : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, nā teie Vārua Rahi, 'oia ho'i nā te Atua, i hāmani i te mau mea ato'a i te ra'i ra 'e i te ao ato'a nei ?

29 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'Ē, 'ua ti'aturi au ē, nāna i hāmani i te mau mea ato'a i te ao nei ; 'aita rā vau i 'ite nō ni'a i te mau ra'i.

30 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : Te mau ra'i, 'o te vāhi ia tei reira te Atua 'e tāna mau melahi mo'a i te pārahira'a.

31 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni : Tei nia a'e ānei te reira i te ao nei ?

32 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amona : 'Ē, 'e tē hi'o noa mai ra ho'i 'oia i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia i te mau mana'o ato'a 'e te mau hina'aro ato'a o te 'ā'au nei ; 'e nā tōna rima ho'i i hāmani ia rātou pā'āto'a mai te mātāmua mai ā.

33 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni : Tē ti'aturi nei au i teie mau mea ato'a tā 'oe i parau iho nei. 'Ua tonohia mai ānei 'oe nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra ?

34 'Ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : E ta'ata ho'i au ; 'e 'ua hāmanihia ho'i te ta'ata i te mātāmua ra 'ia au i te hōho'a o te Atua ra, 'e 'ua pi'ihia vau e tōna ra Vārua Mo'a 'ia ha'api'i atu i teie nei mau mea i teie mau ta'ata, 'ia fa'afāriuhia mai rātou i te 'ite i te parauti'a 'e te parau mau ;

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

- 35 'E tei roto iā'u nei te hō'ē tufa'a nō taua Vārua ra i te pārahira'a, 'e tē hōro'a mai nei te reira i te 'ite iā'u, 'e te mana ato'a ho'i mai te au i tō'u fa'aro'o 'e tō'u hina'aro i te Atua.
- 36 I teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Amona paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia nō ni'a i te hāmanira'ahia o te ao nei, 'e te hāmanira'ahia o Adamu, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu 'oia iāna i te mau mea ato'a nō ni'a i te hi'ara'a o te ta'ata ; 'e 'ua tuatāpapa māite atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua tu'u ihora ho'i i mua iāna te mau pāpa'a parau 'e te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a nō te mau ta'ata, 'o tei parauhia e te mau peropheta ē tae roa a'e i te taime i reva mai ai tō rātou metua tāne 'o Lehi mai Ierusalemā mai.
- 37 'E 'ua tuatāpapa ato'a ihora 'oia ia rātou, (i te ari'i 'e tōna ra mau tāvini) i te mau haere'a o tō rātou mau metua nā roto i te mēdēbara, 'e tō rātou mau 'ati ato'a i te po'ia 'e te po'ihā, 'e tō rātou māuiui 'e tē vai atu ra.
- 38 'E 'ua tuatāpapa ato'a atu ra ho'i 'oia ia rātou i te mau 'ōrurehaura'a a Lamana rāua 'o Lemuela, 'e te mau tamaiti a Isema'ela, 'oia iā, 'ua tuatāpapa atu 'oia i tā rātou mau 'ōrurehaura'a ato'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua ha'amāramarama atu 'oia ia rātou i te mau pāpa'a parau 'e te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a mai te taime i fa'aru'e ai Lehi i Ierusalemā ē tae roa a'e i teie nei taime.
- 39 E 'ere rā te reira ana'e ; 'ua ha'amāramarama ato'a atu ho'i 'oia ia rātou i te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, 'o tei fa'a'inehia mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a atu 'oia ia rātou nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a atu 'oia ia rātou nō ni'a i te mau 'ohipa ato'a a te Fatu.
- 40 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a i teie mau mea, 'e i te ha'amāramarama'a atu i te ari'i, 'ua ti'aturi ihora te ari'i i tāna ato'a ra mau parau.
- 41 'E 'ua ti'aoro atu ra 'oia i te Fatu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : E te Fatu, 'a aroha mai ; mai te au i te rahi o tō 'oe aroha 'o tā 'oe i hōro'a mai i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ra, 'ia fa'atae ato'a mai i te reira i ni'a iho iā'u 'e i tō'u ato'a ra mau ta'ata.
- 42 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i te parau i te reira, 'ua topa ihora 'oia i raro i te repo, mai te mea ra ē, 'ua pohe roa 'oia.

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

43 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora tōna mau tāvini iāna
'e 'ua 'āfa'i atu ra rātou iāna i roto i mua i tāna ra
vahine, 'e 'ua tu'u ihora iāna i ni'a iho i te ro'i ; 'e 'ua
tārava noa 'oia mai te mea ra ē, 'ua pohe 'oia nō te
ārea e piti ao 'e e piti ru'i te maoro ; 'e 'ua 'oto rahi
ihora tāna vahine, 'e tāna mau tamaiti, 'e tāna ho'i
mau tamāhine nōna, 'ia au i te peu a te mau 'āti
Lamana, 'ua 'oto rahi rātou nō tōna ra pohe.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and
carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a
bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of
two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons,
and his daughters mourned over him, after the man-
ner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

Alama 19

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope a'era e piti ao 'e e piti ho'i ru'i, 'ua fātata roa rātou i te rave i tōna tino nō te tu'u atu i roto i te hō'ē mēnema i hāmanihia e rātou nō te huna i tō rātou feiā pohe.
- 2 I teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te ari'i vahine i te ro'o o Amona, nō reira 'ua tono atu ra 'oia i te hō'ē ve'a, i hina'aro ho'i 'oia 'ia haere mai 'oia i mua iāna ra.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira Amona mai te au i tei fa'auehia mai iāna ra, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i mua i te ari'i vahine, 'e 'ua ui atu ra iāna i te mea tāna i hina'aro iāna 'ia rave.
- 4 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iāna : 'Ua fa'a'ite mai te mau tāvini o tā'u ra tāne ē, e peropheta 'oe nā te Atua mo'a, 'e e mana ho'i tō 'oe nō te rave i te mau 'ohipa rarahi e rave rahi i tōna ra 'ioa.
- 5 Nō reira, mai te mea e parau mau te reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia haere 'oe i roto nō te hi'o i tā'u ra tāne, nō te mea 'ua tu'uhia 'oia i ni'a iho i tōna ro'i nō te ārea e piti ao 'e e piti ho'i ru'i te maoro ; 'e tē parau ra te tahi pae ē, 'aita 'oia i pohe, 'e tē parau ra ho'i te tahi atu pae ē, 'ua pohe 'oia 'e tē hau'a 'ino ra ho'i, 'e e mea ti'a iāna 'ia tu'uhia atu i roto i te mēnema ; 'āre'a rā iā'u iho nei, 'aita roa 'oia e hau'a 'ino ra.
- 6 I teienei, teie ia tō Amona hina'aro, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, tei roto te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni i te mana o te Atua ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, i rave-'ē-hia atu te pāruru pōiri nō te ti'aturi 'ore i tōna ferurira'a, 'e 'ua tae mai te māmarama tei ha'amāmarama mai i tōna ra ferurira'a, 'oia ho'i, te māmarama o te hanahana o te Atua, 'oia te māmarama māere ho'i o tōna ra maita'i—'oia ia, 'ua fa'aō taua māmarama ra i te 'oa'oa rahi i roto i tōna vārua, 'e 'ua pe'e 'ē atu ra te ata pōiri, 'e 'ua fa'aamahia te māmarama nō te ora mure 'ore i roto i tōna ra vārua, 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, e mana tō te reira i ni'a i tōna tino tāhuti, 'e 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu tōna vārua i roto i te Atua ra—
- 7 Nō reira, 'o tā te ari'i vahine i hina'aro mai iāna ra, 'o tōna ato'a iho ia hina'aro. Nō reira, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i roto nō te hi'o i te ari'i mai tā te ari'i vahine i hina'aro iāna ; 'e 'ua hi'o atu 'oia i te ari'i, 'e 'ua 'ite ihora 'oia ē, 'aita roa 'oia i pohe.

Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

- 8 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te ari'i vahine : 'Aita 'oia i pohe, tē ta'oto noa ra rā 'oia i te Atua, e ananahi e ti'a fa'ahou mai 'oia i ni'a ; nō reira, 'eiaha roa e huna iāna.
- 9 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : 'Ua ti'aturi ānei 'oe i te reira ? 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iāna : 'Aita tō'u e 'ite maori rā 'o tā 'oe parau ana'e ra, 'e te parau ho'i a tō māua mau tāvini nei ; 'āre'a rā tē ti'aturi nei au ē, e tupu ia te reira mai tā 'oe i parau iho nei.
- 10 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : E ao tō 'oe nō tō 'oe fa'aro'o rahi ; tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, e teie nei vahine, 'aita teie huru fa'aro'o rahi i 'itehia i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi ato'a.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tīa'i noa a'era 'oia i te ro'i o tāna tāne, mai taua taime mai ra ē tae noa atu i taua iho taime ra i te po'ipo'i a'e 'o tā Amona i fa'ata'a e ti'a mai ai 'oia i ni'a.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a mai 'oia i ni'a, mai te au i te mau parau a Amona ; 'e 'a ti'a mai ai 'oia i ni'a, 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tāna rima i ni'a i te vahine ra, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra : 'Ia fa'ahanahanahia tō te Atua ra i'oa, 'e 'ia fa'ahanahanahia ho'i 'oe.
- 13 Nō te mea, mai ia 'oe e ora nei, 'ua 'ite au i tō'u Tāra'ehara ; 'e e haere mai 'oia 'e e fānauhia 'oia e te hō'ē vahine, 'e e fa'aora 'oia i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa. I teienei, 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a mai i teie mau parau, 'ua putapū ihora tōna 'ā'au i roto iāna, 'e 'ua ma'iri fa'ahou ihora 'oia i raro nō te 'oa'oa ; 'e 'ua ma'iri ato'a ihora te ari'i vahine i raro, 'ua paruparu ho'i 'oia i te Vārua.
- 14 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Amona i te Vārua o te Fatu i te nīni'ira'ahia mai, mai te au i tāna ra mau pure, i ni'a iho i te mau 'āti Lamana, i tōna ra mau taea'e, 'o tei fa'atupu i te 'oto rahi i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'aore rā i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te Atua ra, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau peu tumu ho'i, 'ua tu'u ihora 'oia i tōna turi i raro, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te nīni'i atu i tōna vārua ato'a nā roto i te pure, i te ha'amaita'ira'a atu i te Atua nō tāna i rave na i tōna ra mau taea'e ; 'e 'ua ro'o-ato'a-hia 'oia i te 'oa'oa ; 'e 'ua ma'iri rātou to'otoru ato'a i raro i te repo.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

- 15 I teienei, i te 'itera'a te mau tāvini o te ari'i ē 'ua ma'iri rātou i raro, 'ua ha'amata ato'a ihora rātou i te ti'aoro atu i te Atua, nō te mata'u 'o te ro'ohia ho'i rātou i te mata'u o te Fatu, 'o rātou ho'i tei ti'a i mua i te ari'i ra 'e tei fa'a'ite pāpū mai ho'i iāna i te mana rahi o Amona.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra rātou i te i'oa o te Fatu ma tō rātou pūai, ē tae noa atu 'ua ma'iri rātou i raro i te repo, maori rā te hō'ē noa iho o te mau vahine 'āti Lamana, 'o Abisa tōna i'oa, i fa'afāriuhia na ho'i 'oia i te Fatu e rave rahi matahiti, nā roto i te hō'ē 'ōrama ta'a 'ē i fāri'ihia e tōna metua tāne—
- 17 Nō reira, nō te mea 'ua fa'afāriuhia 'oia i te Fatu, 'e 'aita ho'i 'oia i fa'a'ite atu i te reira, nō reira, i tōna 'itera'a ē 'ua ma'iri te mau tāvini o Lamoni i raro i te repo, 'e tōna ato'a fatu vahine, 'oia te ari'i vahine, 'e te ari'i, 'e 'o Amona ato'a ho'i i raro i te repo, 'ua 'ite 'oia ē nā te mana iā te reira o te Atua ; 'e nō te mea 'ua mana'o 'oia ē, mai te mea e fa'a'itehia atu te mau mea i tupu i rotopū ia rātou i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia hi'o rātou i taua mea ra, e riro iā rātou i te ti'aturi i te mana o te Atua, nō reira 'ua horo atu 'oia i terā fare 'e i terā fare, i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te reira i te mau ta'ata.
- 18 'E 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra rātou i te fare o te ari'i. 'E e rave rahi ta'ata tei haere mai, 'e i tō rātou māere, 'ua 'ite atu ra rātou i te ari'i, 'e te ari'i vahine, 'e tō rāua mau tāvini i te tāravara'a i raro i te repo, 'e tē tārava ra rātou mai te mea ra ē, 'ua pohe roa rātou ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a atu rātou ia Amona, 'E inaha, e 'āti Nephi 'oia.
- 19 'E i teienei 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata i te amuamu i rotopū ia rātou iho ; 'e tē parau ra te tahi pae ē, e 'ino rahi teie i tae mai i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'oia ho'i, i ni'a iho i te ari'i 'e tōna 'utuāfare, nō te mea 'ua fa'ati'a 'oia 'ia pārahi mai taua 'āti Nephi ra i taua fenua ra.
- 20 'Āre'a rā 'ua 'avau a'era te tahi pae ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Nā te ari'i iho i fa'atae mai i teie nei 'ino i ni'a iho i tōna 'utuāfare, nō te mea 'ua taparahi 'oia i tōna mau tāvini, 'o tei tīa'i i te mau nana māmoe i ha'apurarahia i te mau pape nō Sebusa ra.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

- 21 'E 'ua fa'ahapa-ato'a-hia rātou e te mau ta'ata i ti'a na i te mau pape nō Sebusa ra, 'e tei ha'apurara ho'i i te mau nana māmoē a te ari'i ra ; 'ua riri ho'i rātou ia Amona nō te rahi o tō rātou mau taea'e tāna i taparahi i te mau pape nō Sebusa ra, 'a pāroru ai 'oia i te mau nana māmoē a te ari'i ra.
- 22 I teienei, 'ua riri roa te hō'ē 'o rātou ia Amona, 'oia 'o tei taparahihia tōna taea'e i te 'o'e a Amona ra ; 'ua huti ihora 'oia i tāna 'o'e 'e 'ua haere atu ra nō te taparahi ia Amona ; 'e 'a fa'ateitei ai 'oia i te 'o'e nō te taparahi iāna, inaha, 'ua ma'iri ihora 'oia i raro, 'e 'ua pohe roa.
- 23 I teienei, 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'aita roa 'o Amona e ti'a 'ia taparahihia, nō te mea 'ua parau mai te Fatu i tōna metua tāne ia Mosia : E fa'aora noa vau iāna, 'e te mau mea ato'a e tupu i ni'a iho iāna ra mai te au ia i tō 'oe fa'aro'o—nō reira, 'ua tu'u Mosia iāna i te Fatu ra.
- 24 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata ē, 'ua pohe roa taua ta'ata i fa'ateitei i te 'o'e nō te taparahi ia Amona, 'ua mata'u ihora rātou ato'a, 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i fa'atoro noa atu i tō rātou rima nō te taparahi iāna, 'e 'aita ato'a i te hō'ē noa atu o rātou 'o tei ma'iri i raro ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te māere fa'ahou i rotopū ia rātou iho i te tumu nō taua mana rahi ra, 'e 'aore rā i te aura'a nō taua mau mea ra.
- 25 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tō rotopū ia rātou 'o tei parau ē : E Vārua Rahi 'o Amona ; 'e 'ua parau ho'i te tahi atu pae ē, 'ua tonohia mai 'oia e te Vārua Rahi ;
- 26 'Āre'a rā, 'ua 'avau te tahi atu pae ia rātou ato'a, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E demoni 'oia tei tonohia mai nō 'ō mai i te mau 'āti Nephi nō te ha'amāuiui ia rātou.
- 27 'E tē vai ra te tahi pae 'o tei parau ē, 'ua tonohia mai Amona e te Vārua Rahi nō te ha'ape'ape'a ia rātou nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; 'e 'ua pārahi tāmau noa taua Vārua Rahi ra i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e nāna i fa'aora atu ia rātou i tō rātou ra rima ; 'e 'ua parau ho'i rātou ē, nā teie Vārua Rahi i ha'amou i tō rātou mau taea'e e rave rahi, i te mau 'āti Lamana.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

28 'E 'ua nā reira te mārōra'a rahi i te tupu i rotopū ia rātou. 'E 'a mārō noa ai rātou, 'ua haere mai ra te tāvini vahine i ha'aputupu 'āmui mai ia rātou, 'e 'ia 'ite a'era 'oia i te mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'ua 'oto roa ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua tahe noa ihora tōna roimata.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua rave atu ra i te rima o te ari'i vahine, penei a'e 'o te fa'ati'a mai 'oia iāna i ni'a mai raro mai i te repo ; e i tōna iho tāpe'ara'a atu i tōna rima, 'ua ti'a mai ra 'oia i ni'a i tōna nā 'āvae, 'e 'ua pi'i mai ra ma te reo pūai, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ia fa'ahanahanahia Iesu, 'o tei fa'aora mai iā'u nei i te hade ri'ari'a rahi ! E te Atua hanahana, 'a aroha mai i teie nei mau ta'ata !

30 'E 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a i teie, 'ua tuiāu ihora 'oia i tōna nā rima, nō te mea 'ua 'i roa 'oia i te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te mau parau e rave rahi 'aita i 'ite-pāpū-hia ; 'e 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a i teie, 'ua rave ihora 'oia i te rima o te ari'i ra o Lamoni, 'E inaha, 'ua ti'a ihora 'oia i ni'a i tōna 'āvae.

31 'E 'ia 'ite 'oi'oi a'era 'oia i te mārōra'a i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e ha'amata ihora i te 'avau atu ia rātou, 'e i te ha'api'i ia rātou i te mau parau tāna i fa'aro'o nō roto mai i te vaha o Amona ; 'e 'ua ti'aturi te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'o tei fa'aro'o i tāna mau parau, 'e 'ua fa'afāriuhia mai rātou i te Fatu.

32 'Āre'a rā tē vai ra e rave rahi i rotopū ia rātou 'o tei 'ore i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o i tāna mau parau ; nō reira 'ua haere 'ē atu rātou i tō rātou haere'a.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ti'a a'era Amona i ni'a, 'ua tauturu atu ra 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua nā reira ato'a ho'i te mau tāvini ato'a o Lamoni ; e hō'ē ā huru te mea tā rātou ato'a i fa'a'ite atu i te mau ta'ata—'e 'ua fa'ahuru-'ē-hia tō rātou 'ā'au ; 'e 'aita tō rātou e hina'aro fa'ahou nō te rave i te 'ino.

34 'E inaha, e rave rahi tei fa'a'ite i te mau ta'ata ē, 'ua 'ite rātou i te mau melahi 'e 'ua paraparau atu ho'i ia rātou ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i te mau mea a te Atua, e tōna ra parauti'a.

35 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tei ti'aturi mai i tā rātou mau parau ; 'e 'o rātou 'o tei ti'aturi mai 'ua bāpetizohia ia ; 'e 'ua riro atu ra rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a rātou i te 'ēkālesia i rotopū ia rātou.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

36 'E 'ua nā reira te 'ohipa a te Atua i te tupu i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua nā reira ho'i te Fatu i te ha'amata i te nīni'i mai i tōna Vārua i ni'a iho ia rātou ; e tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ua fa'atorohia tōna rima i te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a 'o tē tātarahapa 'e 'o tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

Alama 20

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rātou fa'ati'ara'a i te 'ēkālesia i ni'a i taua fenua ra, 'ua hina'aro te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni 'ia haere atu 'o Amona nā muri iāna i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite atu iāna i tōna ra metua tāne.
- 2 'E 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu ia Amona, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Eiaha 'oe e haere atu i ni'a, i te fenua ra nō Nephi ; inaha ho'i, e tītau te ari'i 'ia taparahi ia 'oe ; e haere rā 'oe i te fenua ra nō Midoni ; inaha ho'i, tei roto tō 'oe taea'e 'o Aarona, 'e 'o Muloki, 'e 'o 'Ama ato'a ho'i i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 3 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Amona i te reira, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia Lamoni, Inaha, tei te fare tāpe'ara'a i Midoni tō'u iho taea'e, 'e tō'u mau taea'e, 'e e haere atu vau e fa'aora ia rātou.
- 4 I teienei, 'ua parau mai ra Lamoni ia Amona : 'Ua 'ite au ē, nā roto i te pūai o te Fatu e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a. Inaha rā, e haere atu vau nā muri ia 'oe i te fenua ra nō Midoni ; nō te mea e hoa nō'u te ari'i i te fenua ra nō Midoni, 'e 'o Anetiomono tōna ra i'oa ; nō reira e haere au i te fenua ra nō Midoni, nō te tāparu i te ari'i o taua fenua ra, 'e e tu'u mai 'oia i tō 'oe mau taea'e i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a. I teienei, 'ua ui mai ra Lamoni iāna : Nā vai i fa'a'ite mai ia 'oe ē, tei te fare tāpe'ara'a tō 'oe mau taea'e ?
- 5 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Amona iāna : 'Aita e ta'ata i fa'a'ite mai iā'u, 'o te Atua rā ; 'e 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u ē—'A haere 'e 'a fa'aora mai i tō 'oe mau taea'e, tei te fare tāpe'ara'a rātou i te fenua ra nō Midoni.
- 6 I teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Lamoni i te reira, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tōna mau tāvini 'ia fa'aineine i tāna mau pua'ahorofenua 'e tōna mau pere'o'o.
- 7 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia ia Amona : 'A haere mai, e haere au i raro nā muri ia 'oe i te fenua ra nō Midoni, 'e i reira e tāparu vau i te ari'i 'ia tu'u mai 'oia i tō 'oe mau taea'e i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'a tere atu ai Amona rāua 'o Lamoni i reira, 'ua fārerei rāua i te metua tāne o Lamoni, 'o 'oia ho'i te ari'i i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.

Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

- 9 'E inaha, 'ua parau mai ra te metua tâne o Lamoni iāna : Nō te aha ho'i 'aita 'oe i haere mai i te fa'a'amua rahi i taua mahana rahi ra, 'a fa'atupu ai au i te hō'ē tāmā'ara'a rahi nā tā'u ra mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e nā tō'u ho'i mau ta'ata ?
- 10 'E 'ua parau ato'a mai ra 'oia ē : Tē haere nei 'oe i hea nā muri i teie nei 'āti Nephi, te hō'ē o te mau tamari'i a te hō'ē ta'ata ha'avare ?
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra Lamoni iāna i tōna tere, nō te mea 'ua mata'u 'oia 'ia fa'atupu atu i tōna riri.
- 12 'E 'ua fa'a'ite atu ho'i 'oia iāna i te tumu i pārahi noa ai 'oia i tōna iho ra bāsileia, 'e i 'ore ai 'oia i tae atu ai i tōna ra metua tâne, i te fa'a'amua rahi tāna i fa'a'ineine.
- 13 'E i teienei, i muri iho i tō Lamoni fa'a'itera'a atu iāna i teie mau mea ato'a, inaha, 'ua māere ihora 'oia nō te mea 'ua riri tōna metua tâne iāna, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai 'oia : E Lamoni, tē haere nei 'oe e fa'aora i teie mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ho'i i te mau tamari'i tamāroa a te ta'ata ha'avare. Inaha, 'ua 'eiā haru 'oia i tā tō tātou mau metua ; 'e i teienei, 'ua haere mai tāna mau tamari'i i rotopū ia tātou nei, 'ia ti'a ia rātou, nā roto i tō rātou 'aravihi 'e tā rātou mau ha'avare, 'ia fa'ahema ia tātou, 'e 'ia haru fa'ahou atu i tā tātou tao'a.
- 14 I teienei, 'ua fa'aue mai ra te metua tâne o Lamoni iāna 'ia taparahi ia Amona i te 'o'e. 'E 'ua fa'aue ato'a mai ra 'oia iāna ē 'eiaha roa 'oia e haere atu i te fenua ra nō Midoni, 'āre'a rā 'ia ho'i atu 'oia nā muri iho iāna i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela.
- 15 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Lamoni iāna : E'ita roa vau e taparahi ia Amona, 'e e'ita ato'a ho'i au e ho'i i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, e haere rā vau i te fenua i Midoni nō te fa'aora i te mau taea'e o Amona, nō te mea 'ua 'ite au ē, e mau ta'ata parauti'a rātou, 'e e mau peropheta mo'a ho'i nā te Atua mau ra.
- 16 I teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era tōna metua tâne i teie nei mau parau, 'ua riri ihora 'oia iāna, 'e 'ua tātara mai ra 'oia i tāna 'o'e nō te tā'iri iāna i raro i te fenua.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

- 17 'Āre'a rā 'ua ti'a mai ra Amona, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra iāna : Inaha, 'eiaha roa 'oe e taparahi i tā 'oe tamaiti ; terā rā e mea maita'i a'e tōna pohe i tō 'oe ; inaha ho'i, 'ua tātarahapa 'oia i tāna ra mau hara ; 'ia pohe rā 'oe i teie nei taime i tō 'oe nā riri, e 'ore roa tō 'oe vārua e ti'a 'ia fa'aorahia.
- 18 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e mea ti'a roa ia 'oe 'ia fa'a'oroma'i ; 'ia taparahi 'oe i tā 'oe tamaiti, e ta'ata hara 'ore ho'i 'oia, e ti'aoro atu tōna toto mai te repo atu i te Fatu tōna Atua, 'ia tae mai te utu'a tāho'o i ni'a ia 'oe ; 'e penei a'e paha e pohe tō 'oe vārua.
- 19 I teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Amona paraura'a atu i teie mau parau iāna, 'ua pāhono mai ra 'oia iāna, i te nā-ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Ua 'ite au ē, 'ia taparahi au i tā'u tamaiti, 'ua ha'amani'i au i te toto hara 'ore ; 'o 'oe ho'i tei tītau 'ia ha'apohe iāna.
- 20 'E 'ua fa'atoro mai ra 'oia i tōna rima nō te taparahi ia Amona. 'Āre'a rā 'ua pāruu māite atu ra Amona i tāna mau tā'irira'a mai, 'e 'ua tā'iri atu 'oia i tōna rima 'e 'aita i ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ohipa fa'ahou i te reira.
- 21 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te ari'i ē, 'ua ti'a ia Amona 'ia taparahi iāna, 'ua tāparu mai ra 'oia ia Amona 'ia fa'aora noa iāna.
- 22 'Āre'a rā 'ua fa'ateitei a'era Amona i tāna 'o'e, 'e 'ua parau atu ra iāna : Inaha, e taparahi au ia 'oe, maori rā 'ia fa'ati'a 'oe 'ia tu'uhia mai tō'u mau taea'e i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 23 I teienei, nō te mata'u o te ari'i 'o te pohe 'oia, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : Mai te mea e fa'aora noa 'oe iā'u, e hōro'a atu vau ia 'oe i tā 'oe e ani mai, ē tae noa atu i te 'āfara'a o te bāsileia.
- 24 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Amona ē, 'ua marū mai te ari'i ruhiruhiā iāna mai te au i tōna hina'aro, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia iāna : Mai te mea e fa'ati'a 'oe 'ia tu'uhia mai tō'u mau taea'e i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ia tāpe'a noa ho'i Lamoni i tōna ra bāsileia, 'e 'eiaha 'oe e 'ino'ino iāna, e fa'ati'a rā 'oe 'ia rave 'oia i tei au i tōna ra mau hina'aro i roto i te mau mea ato'a tāna e mana'o ra, 'ei reira e fa'aora noa vau ia 'oe ; 'ia 'ore rā 'oe e nā reira, e tā'iri au ia 'oe i raro i te repo.
- 25 I teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Amona paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua 'oa'oa ihora te ari'i nō tōna ora.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

26 'E i tōna 'itera'a ē, 'aita 'o Amona i hina'aro 'ia taparahi iāna, 'e i tōna ato'a 'itera'a i tōna here rahi i tāna ra tamaiti ia Lamoni, 'ua māere roa ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia : Nō te mea 'o teie ana'e iho tā 'oe i hina'aro, 'ia fa'aora vau i tō 'oe mau taea'e, 'e 'ia fa'ati'a ato'a vau 'ia tāpe'a noa tā'u tamaiti 'o Lamoni i tōna ra bāsileia ; inaha, e fa'ati'a vau ia 'oe 'ia tāpe'a noa tā'u tamaiti i tōna ra bāsileia mai teie atu taime ē a muri noa atu ; 'e 'aita vau e fa'atere fa'ahou iāna—

27 E fa'ati'a ato'a vau ia 'oe 'ia tu'uhia mai tō 'oe mau taea'e i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e e ti'a ho'i ia 'oe e tō 'oe mau taea'e ato'a 'ia haere noa mai iā'u, i roto i tō'u bāsileia ; nō te mea e hina'aro rahi tō'u ia fārerei ia 'oe. 'Ua māere roa ho'i te ari'i i te mau parau tāna i parau mai, 'e i te mau parau ato'a tā tāna tamaiti tā Lamoni i parau mai, nō reira 'ua hina'aro roa 'oia 'ia ha'api'i i te reira.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Amona rāua 'o Lamoni i tō rāua tere i te fenua ra nō Midoni. 'E 'ua fa'ahereherehia Lamoni i mua i te mata o te ari'i o taua fenua ra ; nō reira 'ua arata'ihia mai te mau taea'e o Amona i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a.

29 'E i tō Amona fārereira'a ia rātou 'ua 'oto roa a'era 'oia, inaha ho'i, 'ua taha'a noa rātou, 'e 'ua motumotu roa tō rātou 'iri nō te mea 'ua ru'uru'uhia rātou i te taura pa'ari. 'E 'ua māuiui ato'a rātou i te po'ia, 'e te po'ihā, 'e te mau huru 'ati ato'a ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'a'oroma'i noa rātou i tō rātou ra mau 'ati ato'a.

30 'Ē, mai tei tupu, 'ua ma'iri rātou i roto i te rima o te hō'ē feiā 'ā'au pa'ari 'e te 'ā'au 'eta'eta ; nō reira 'aita roa rātou i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o mai i tā rātou mau parau, 'e 'ua ti'avaru rātou ia rātou i rāpae, 'e 'ua tā'iri ia rātou, 'e 'ua tīahi ia rātou i terā fare 'e i terā fare, 'e i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, ē tae noa atu 'ua tae rātou i te fenua ra nō Midoni ; 'e i reira 'ua ravehia rātou 'e 'ua hurihia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ua ru'uru'uhia i te mau taura pa'ari, 'e 'ua tāpe'ahia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a e rave rahi mau mahana, 'e 'ua fa'aorahia rātou e Lamoni rāua 'o Amona.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

Tē 'ā'amu nō te a'ora'a a Aarona, 'e Muloki, 'e tō rāua mau taea'e, i te mau 'āti Lamana.

Alama 21

- 1 I teienei, 'ia fa'ata'a 'ē atu Amona e tōna mau taea'e ia rātou iho i te mau 'ōtī'a nō te fenua o te mau 'āti Lamana, inaha, 'ua haere atu ra Aarona i te fenua i parauhia 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o Ierusalem, i ma'irihia ho'i i te i'oa o te fenua fānaura'a o tō rātou ra mau metua ; e tei te ātea 'ē taua fenua ra tāpiri i te mau 'ōtī'a nō te fenua ra nō Moromona.
- 2 I teienei, 'ua fa'ati'a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e te mau 'āti Amaleka, 'e te mau ta'ata o Amulona i te hō'ē 'oire rahi, 'e 'ua pi'ihia te reira o Ierusalem.
- 3 I teienei, e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta mau te mau 'āti Lamana, 'āre'a rā te mau 'āti Amaleka 'e te mau 'āti Amulona 'ua hau roa atu ia tō rātou 'eta'eta, nō reira 'ua fa'a'eta'eta atu rātou i te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia riro ato'a rātou 'ei feiā pūai i roto i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Aarona i te 'oire ra nō Ierusalem, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia nā mua i te a'o atu i te mau 'āti Amaleka. 'E 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te a'o atu ia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau sunago, 'e 'ua hāmani ho'i rātou i te mau sunago mai te au i te fa'anahora'a a tō Nehora ; 'e e rave rahi ho'i te mau 'āti Amaleka 'e te mau 'āti Amulona i roto i te fa'anahora'a a tō Nehora.
- 5 Nō reira, 'a tomo atu ai Aarona i roto i te hō'ē o tā rātou mau sunago nō te a'o atu i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'a paraparau atu ai 'oia ia rātou, inaha, 'ua ti'a mai ra te hō'ē ta'ata 'āti Amaleka 'e 'ua ha'amata mai ra i te mārō mai iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E aha tenā tā 'oe e fa'a'ite na ? 'Ua 'ite ānei 'oe i te hō'ē melahi ? Nō te aha ho'i 'aita te mau melahi e fā mai ia mātou nei ? Inaha, 'aita ānei teie nei mau ta'ata i au i te maita'i mai tō 'oe ra mau ta'ata ?

An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.

Alma 21

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

6 Tē parau ato'a mai nei 'oe ē, 'ia 'ore mātou 'ia tātarahapa, e pohe ia mātou. Nāhea 'oe i 'ite ai i te mana'o 'e te hina'aro i roto i tō mātou nei 'ā'au ? Nāhea 'oe i 'ite ai ē, e mea ti'a ia mātou 'ia tātarahapa ? Nāhea ho'i 'oe i 'ite ai ē, e feiā parauti'a 'ore mātou ? Inaha, 'ua hāmani na ho'i mātou i te mau fare mo'a, 'e tē ha'aputupu'āmui nei mātou nō te ha'amori i te Atua. Tē ti'aturi nei ho'i mātou ē, e fa'aora te Atua i te mau ta'ata ato'a.

7 I teienei, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Aarona iāna : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, e tae mai te Tamaiti a te Atua nō te fa'aora i te ta'ata nei i tā rātou mau hara ?

8 'E 'ua parau mai ra taua ta'ata ra iāna : 'Aita mātou i ti'aturi ē 'ua 'ite 'oe i te hō'ē mea mai te reira te huru. 'Aita mātou i ti'aturi i teie mau peu tumu ma'ama'a. 'Aita mātou i ti'aturi ē, 'ua 'ite 'oe i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i mātou i ti'aturi ē, 'ua 'ite tō 'oe mau metua 'e tō mātou mau metua i te mau mea tā rātou i parau, 'oia ho'i i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.

9 I teienei, 'ua ha'amata ihora Aarona i te ha'amāramarama atu i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ia rātou nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Mesia, e nō ni'a ato'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra, e aita te ta'ata nei e fāri'i i te fa'aorara'a, maori rā nā roto i te pohe 'e te mau mamae o te Mesia, 'e te tāra'ehara nō tōna ra toto.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'a ha'amata atu ai 'oia i te ha'amāramarama atu i teie mau mea ia rātou, 'ua riri ihora rātou iāna, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te tāhitohito mai iāna ; 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o i te mau parau tāna e parau ra.

11 Nō reira, 'ia 'ite a'era 'oia ē, 'aita rātou i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o i tāna mau parau, 'ua fa'aru'e atu ra 'oia i tō rātou sunago, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te hō'ē 'oire iti i parauhia 'o Ani-Aneti, 'e i reira 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia ia Muloki, 'e 'ia 'Ama ato'a 'e tōna mau taea'e, i te a'ora'a atu i te parau ia rātou. 'E tē mārō ra rātou i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi nō ni'a i te parau.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta te mau ta'ata i tō rātou 'ā'au, nō reira 'ua reva 'ē atu ra rātou 'e 'ua tae atu ra i te fenua ra nō Midoni. 'E 'ua a'o atu rātou i te parau i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e e mea iti roa tei ti'aturi i te mau parau tā rātou i ha'api'i atu.

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

- 13 'Āre'a rā, 'ua ravehia Aarona e te tahi pae o tōna mau taea'e 'e 'ua hurihia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu te toe 'o rātou i te fenua ra nō Midoni, e haere atu ra nā te mau retioni i reira.
- 14 'E 'ua fāri'i rātou 'o tei hurihia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a i te mau 'ati e rave rahi, 'e 'ua fa'aorahia rātou e te rima o Lamoni rāua 'o Amona, 'e 'ua fa'a'amuhia 'e 'ua fa'a'ahuhia ho'i rātou.
- 15 'E 'ua haere fa'ahou atu rātou nō te fa'a'ite haere i te parau ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'aorahia i te taime mātāmua mai roto atu i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e te reira ia te huru nō tō rātou mau 'ati.
- 16 'E 'ua haere atu rātou i te mau vāhi ato'a 'o tā te Vārua o te Fatu i arata'i ia rātou, i te porora'a atu i te parau a te Atua i roto i te mau sunago ato'a o te mau 'āti Amaleka, 'e i roto ato'a ho'i i te mau 'āmuira'a ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana i fa'ati'ahia ia rātou 'ia tomo atu.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu ia rātou, 'e nō reira e rave rahi tā rātou i fa'afāriu mai i te 'ite i te parau mau ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'apāpū maita'i atu rātou i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i tā rātou iho mau hara, 'e i te mau peu tumu tano 'ore a tō rātou ra mau metua.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i mai ra Amona rāua 'o Lamoni mai te fenua mai ra mai Midoni i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, 'oia ho'i, i tō rātou ra fenua 'āi'a.
- 19 'E 'aita te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni i fa'ati'a 'ia tāvini mai Amona iāna, 'e 'aore rā 'ia riro 'ei tāvini nōna.
- 20 'Āre'a rā 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia hāmanihia te mau sunago i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela ; 'e 'ua tītau 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'e i te mau ta'ata i raro a'e i tāna fa'aterera'a 'ia ha'aputupu 'āmui mai ia rātou.
- 21 'E 'ua 'oa'oa ihora 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'api'i atu 'oia ia rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi. 'E 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a atu 'oia ia rātou ē, e feiā rātou i raro a'e iāna, 'e e feiā ti'amā ho'i rātou, 'e 'ua ti'amā rātou i te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a a te ari'i, tōna metua tāne ; 'e 'ua hōro'a mai ho'i tōna metua tāne i te fa'aterera'a iāna i ni'a a'e i te mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, 'e te mau fenua ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e.
- 22 'E 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a atu 'oia ia rātou ē, e ti'amāra'a tō rātou 'ia ha'amori atu i te Fatu tō rātou Atua mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro, 'e i te mau vāhi ato'a tā rātou e pārahi, mai te mea ē tei roto rātou i te fenua i raro a'e i te fa'aterera'a a te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

23 'E 'ua a'o atu Amona i te mau ta'ata o te ari'i ra 'o Lamoni ; 'e i muri a'era, 'ua ha'api'i atu ra 'oia ia rātou i te mau mea ato'a nō ni'a i te parauti'a. 'E 'ua a'o atu 'oia ia rātou i te mau mahana ato'a, ma te itoito ; 'e 'ua fa'aro'o rātou i tāna parau, 'e 'ua itoito ho'i rātou i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

Alama 22

- 1 I teienei, 'a ha'api'i noa ai Amona i te mau ta'ata o Lamoni ma te fa'aea 'ore, e ho'i ia tātou i ni'a i te 'ā'amu o Aarona e tōna ra mau taea'e ; 'oia ho'i i muri iho i tōna fa'aru'era'a mai i te fenua ra nō Midoni, 'ua arata'ihia atu ra 'oia e te Vārua i te fenua ra nō Nephi, e tae atu ra i te fare o te ari'i 'o tē fa'atere ra i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'eiaha rā i te fenua nō Isema'ela ; 'e 'o 'oia ho'i te metua tāne o Lamoni.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra 'oia 'e tōna ra mau taea'e iāna ra i te aora'i o te ari'i, 'e 'ua pi'o ihora 'oia iho i mua i te aro o te ari'i, 'e 'ua parau atu ra iāna : Inaha, e te ari'i ē, e mau taea'e mātou nō Amona, 'o tā 'oe i fa'aora i rāpae i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 3 'E i teienei, e te ari'i ē, mai te mea e fa'aora noa 'oe ia mātou, e tāvini ia mātou ia 'oe. 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i ia rātou : 'A ti'a mai i ni'a, 'e e vaiiho noa vau ia 'outou 'ia ora noa, 'e 'e 'ore roa ho'i au e fa'ati'a 'ia riro 'outou 'ei mau tāvini nō'u ; e ani rā vau ia 'outou 'ia tauturu mai iā'u nei ; 'ua ahoaho ri'i ho'i tō'u nei mana'o nō te here 'e te faufa'a rahi o te mau parau a tō 'oe taea'e ra 'o Amona ; 'e 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite i te tumu nō te aha 'aita 'oia i haere mai i rāpae i te fenua nō Midoni nā muri ia 'oe.
- 4 'E 'ua parau atu ra Aarona i te ari'i : Inaha, 'ua pi'i te Vārua o te Fatu iāna 'ia haere atu i te hō'ē vāhi 'ē ; 'ua reva atu 'oia i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, nō te ha'api'i atu i te mau ta'ata o Lamoni.
- 5 I teienei, 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i ia rātou : E aha teie tā 'outou i parau iho nei nō ni'a i te Vārua o te Fatu ? Inaha, 'o teie te mea i fa'aahoaho iā'u nei.
- 6 'E 'oia ato'a, e aha ho'i teie tā Amona i parau a'enei ē—Mai te mea e tātarahapa 'outou, e fa'aorahia ia 'outou, 'e mai te mea 'aita 'outou e tātarahapa, e ti'avaruhia ia 'outou 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra ?
- 7 'E 'ua pāhono atu ra Aarona iāna, 'e nā 'ō atu ra : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, tē vai ra te hō'ē Atua ? 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i : 'Ua 'ite au ē, tē parau ra te mau 'āti Amaleka ē, tē vai ra te Atua, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a vau ia rātou 'ia patu i te mau fare mo'a, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'aputupu ia rātou iho nō te ha'amori iāna. 'E i teienei, mai te mea tē parau nei 'oe ē, tē vai ra te hō'ē Atua, inaha, e ti'aturi ia vau.

Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

- 8 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Aarona i te reira, 'ua 'oa'oa ihora tōna 'ā'au, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia : Inaha, 'oia mau, mai ia 'oe e te ari'i e ora nei, tē vai mau ra te Atua.
- 9 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i : 'O te Atua ānei taua Vārua Rahi ra, 'o tei arata'i mai i tō tātou mau metua mai te fenua mai ra mai Ierusalemā ?
- 10 'E 'ua parau atu ra Aarona iāna : 'Ē, 'o 'oia ia taua Vārua Rahi ra, 'e nāna ho'i i hāmani i te mau mea ato'a tō ni'a i te ra'i 'e tō roto i te fenua. Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe i te reira ?
- 11 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'Ē, tē ti'aturi nei au ē, nā taua Vārua Rahi ra i hāmani i te mau mea ato'a, 'e tē hina'aro nei au 'ia fa'a'ite mai 'oe i taua mau mea ra, 'e e ti'aturi atu ia vau i tā 'oe ra mau parau.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era Aarona ē, e ti'aturi te ari'i i tāna mau parau, 'ua ha'amata atu ra 'oia i te tai'o atu i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a i te ari'i nō ni'a i te hāmanira'a o Adamu—e mea nāhea tō te Atua hāmanira'a i te ta'ata 'ia au i tōna iho hōho'a, 'e tō te Atua hōro'ara'a i te mau fa'auera'a iāna, 'e nā roto i te 'ōfatira'a i te ture, 'ua hi'a te ta'ata.
- 13 'E 'ua ha'amāramarama atu ra Aarona i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a iāna, mai te hāmanira'ahia o Adamu, te ha'amāhorahorara'a atu i mua iāna i tō te ta'ata hi'ara'a, 'e tō rātou hina'aro i tō te tino nei 'e 'oia ato'a te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, 'o tei fa'a'ineinehia mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei, nā roto i te Mesia, nō te mau ta'ata ato'a e ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa.
- 14 'E mai te taime i hi'a ai te ta'ata nei 'aita roa e ti'a iāna 'ia fāri'i i te faufa'a nōna iho ; 'āre'a rā nā te mau mamae 'e te pohera'a o te Mesia i ha'amatarā'a i tā rātou mau hara, nā roto i te fa'aro'o 'e te tātarahapa, 'e tē vai atu ra ; 'e nāna ho'i i hahae i te mau tā'amu nō te pohe, 'ia 'ore tō te mēnema e rē, 'e 'ia horomi'ihia te tara o te pohe i roto i te ti'aturira'a nō te hanahana ; 'e 'ua ha'amāramarama atu Aarona i teie mau mea ato'a i te ari'i.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Aarona ha'amāramaramara'a atu i teie mau mea iāna, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te ari'i : E aha tā'u e rave 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fāri'i i teie ora mure 'ore 'o tā 'oe e parau nei ? 'Oia ia, e aha tā'u e rave 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fānauhia i te Atua ra, 'e 'ia 'iriti-'ē-hia atu teie nei vārua parauti'a 'ore i rāpae i tō'u nei 'ōuma 'e 'ia fāri'i i tōna ra Vārua, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ihia i te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ia 'ore au e ti'avaruhia i te mahana hope'a ra ? Inaha, 'ua parau ato'a mai ra 'oia, e fa'aru'e au i tā'u mau faufa'a ato'a, 'oia ia, e fa'aru'e au i tō'u nei bāsileia, 'ia roa'a iā'u nei teie 'oa'oa rahi.
- 16 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Aarona iāna : Mai te mea e hina'aro 'oe i teie nei mea, mai te mea e pi'o 'oe i raro i mua i te Atua, 'oia ia, mai te mea e tātarahapa 'oe i tā 'oe mau hara ato'a, 'e 'ia pi'o i raro i mua i te Atua, 'e 'ia pi'i atu i tōna ra i'oa ma te fa'aro'o, ma te ti'aturi ē e fāri'i 'oe, 'ei reira ia 'oe e fāri'i ai i te ti'aturira'a tā 'oe i hina'aro.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Aarona paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua tu'u ihora te ari'i i tōna turi i raro i mua i te Fatu, 'oia ia, 'ua tārava ihora 'oia i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua ti'aoro māite atura, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 18 E te Atua, 'ua fa'a'ite mai Aarona iā'u nei ē, tē vai ra te Atua ; 'e mai te mea ē tē vai ra te Atua, 'e 'o 'oe taua Atua ra, 'a fa'a'ite mai na 'oe ia 'oe iho iā'u nei, 'e e ha'apae atu vau i tā'u ato'a ra mau hara 'ia 'ite au ia 'oe na, 'e 'ia fa'ati'ahia vau mai te pohe mai, 'e 'ia fa'aorahia i te mahana hope'a ra. 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te ari'i i teie mau parau, 'ua tā'irihia ihora 'oia, e riro ihora 'oia mai te mea ra 'ua pohe roa.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo ti'a atu ra tōna ra mau tāvini e fa'a'ite atu ra i te ari'i vahine i te mau mea i tupu i ni'a i te ari'i. 'E 'ua haere ti'a mai ra 'oia i roto i pīha'i iho i te ari'i ; 'e 'ia 'ite ihora 'oia iāna i te tāravara'a mai te mea ra ē, 'ua pohe roa 'oia, 'e 'ia Aarona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e ho'i i te ti'a-noa-ra'a mai te mea ra ē, 'o rātou te tumu nō tōna topara'a i raro, 'ua riri a'era 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra i tōna mau tāvini, 'oia ho'i te mau tāvini o te ari'i, 'ia rave ia rātou 'e 'ia taparahi ia rātou.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

20 I teienei, 'ua 'ite te mau tāvini i te tumu i topa'i te ari'i i raro, nō reira 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia fa'atae atu i tō rātou rima i ni'a ia Aarona e tōna ra mau taea'e ; 'e 'ua ui atu ra rātou i te ari'i vahine, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : E aha ho'i 'oe i fa'aue mai ai 'ia taparahi mātou i teie mau ta'ata, 'E inaha, 'ua hau te pūai o te hō'ē 'o rātou i tō mātou ato'a ra ? Nō reira e pau roa ia mātou i te pohe i mua ia rātou.

21 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te ari'i vahine i te mata'u o te mau tāvini, 'ua mata'u rahi ato'a ihora 'oia, 'o te ma'iri mai te tahi 'ino i ni'a iho iāna. 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tōna mau tāvini 'ia haere atu rātou e ti'i i te mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia taparahi ia Aarona 'e tōna ato'a ra mau taea'e.

22 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Aarona i te 'ōpuara'a a te ari'i vahine, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i 'oia i te 'eta'eta o te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata, 'ua mata'u ihora 'oia 'o te ha'aputupu mai te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'o te tupu te mārōra'a rahi 'e te fifi rahi i rotopū ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tōna rima, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a a'era i te ari'i mai te repo mai ra, 'e 'ua parau atu ra iāna : 'A ti'a na. 'E 'ua ti'a a'era 'oia i ni'a i tōna nā 'āvae, 'e 'ua fāri'i ihora i tōna pūai.

23 I teienei, 'ua ravehia teie i mua i te aro o te ari'i vahine 'e te mau tāvini e rave rahi. 'E 'ia 'ite a'era rātou i te reira, 'ua māere roa ihora rātou, 'e 'ua mata'u ihora. 'E 'ua ti'a mai ra te ari'i i ni'a, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te ha'api'i atu ia rātou. 'E 'ua ha'api'i atu 'oia ia rātou, 'e nō reira 'ua fa'afāriuhia mai tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a i te Fatu.

24 I teienei, e rave rahi ta'ata tei ha'aputupu 'āmui mai nā roto i te fa'auera'a a te ari'i vahine, 'e 'ua tupu ihora te amuamura'a rahi i rotopū ia rātou nō Aarona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e.

25 'Āre'a rā, 'ua ti'a mai ra te ari'i i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua a'o mai ra ia rātou. 'E 'ua hau roa ihora rātou ia Aarona 'e te feiā ato'a i pe'e iāna.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te ari'i ē, 'ua hau te mau ta'ata, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia ia Aarona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e 'ia ti'a mai rātou i rōpū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia a'o atu i te parau ia rātou.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atae atu ra te ari'i i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ato'a, i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata pā'āto'a tē pārahi ra i ni'a i tōna mau fenua ato'a, 'e tei pārahi i roto i te mau retioni pā'āto'a ē 'ati noa a'e, i te pae fenua i te hiti o te miti, i te hiti'a o te rā 'e i te tō'o'a o te rā, 'e tei tā'ōti'ahia i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela e te hō'ē mēdēbara oaoa, tei haere roa atu mai te miti i te hiti'a o te rā ē tae roa atu i te miti i te tō'o'a o te rā ra, 'e nā tahatai noa ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e nā pīha'i iho i te hiti o te mēdēbara i te pae apato'erau ra, i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, nā roto i te mau hiti i Maniti ra, nā te vāhi tumu o te 'ānāvai Sidona ra, mai te hiti'a o te rā ē tae noa atu i te tō'o'a o te rā—e mea nā-reira-hia ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti Nephi i te fa'ata'a-'ē-ra'a-hia.

28 I teienei, 'ua pārahi te pae rahi o te mau ta'ata fa'atau o te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua ora noa rātou i roto i te mau ti'ahapa ; 'e 'ua ha'apurara-roa-hia rātou i roto i te mēdēbara i te tō'o'a o te rā, i te fenua nō Nephi ra ; 'oia ia, 'e i te pae ato'a i te tō'o'a o te rā i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i te mau 'ōti'a nō te pae miti, 'e i te tō'o'a o te rā i roto i te fenua ra nō Nephi, i te vāhi nō te fenua 'āi'a mātāmua o tō rātou mau metua, 'e 'ua nā reira noa te 'ōti'a i te haere nā te pae miti.

29 'E e rave rahi ato'a ho'i mau 'āti Lamana tei te pae i te hiti'a o te rā i tahatai, i te vāhi i tiāhahia ai rātou e te mau 'āti Nephi ra. 'E nō reira 'ua fātata roa te mau 'āti Nephi i te ha'a'atihia e te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'āre'a rā 'ua riro i te mau 'āti Nephi te fenua pā'āto'a i te pae apato'erau ra, i te hiti o te mēdēbara i te vāhi tumu o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, mai te hiti'a o te rā ē tae roa atu i te tō'o'a o te rā, i te pae mēdēbara ra, 'e i te pae apato'erau e tae roa atu i te fenua ra i parauhia 'o 'Auhune.

30 'E 'ua tāpiri te reira i te fenua ra i parauhia 'o Ano, tei te pae apato'erau 'e 'ua tae roa atu ia i te fenua i ta'atahahia na 'e i ha'amouhia na ho'i ; 'o tō rātou te mau ivi i parauhia na e mātou, 'e tei 'itehia ho'i 'e te mau ta'ata o Zarahemela ra, 'o te vāhi ho'i ia nō tō rātou tāpera'a mātāmua.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

31 'E 'ua haere mai rātou mai reira mai i ni'a i te mēdēbara i te pae apato'a. 'E 'ua parauhia te fenua i te pae apato'erau ra 'o Ano, 'e te fenua i te pae apato'a 'ua parauhia ia o 'Auhune, 'o te mēdēbara ia i i te mau huru 'ānimara taehae ato'a ra ; 'e 'ua haere mai te tahi pae o te reira i reira nō 'ō mai i te fenua i te pae apato'erau nō te 'imi haere i te mā'a.

32 'E i teienei, mai te miti i te hiti'a o te rā ē tae roa atu i te miti i te tō'o'a o te rā, 'o te vāhi ia e haerehia e te mau 'āti Nephi nō te hō'ē mahana 'e te 'āfa, mai te mea e nā te 'ōti'a o 'Auhune ra 'e te fenua nō Ano i te haere'a mai te miti i te hiti'a o te rā ē tae roa atu i te miti i te tō'o'a o te rā ; 'e te fenua nō Nephi ra e te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'ua ha'a'atihia ia i te miti, maori rā 'o te hō'ē vāhi iti toe ; tē vai ra te hō'ē ma'a fenua iti oaoa i rōpū i te fenua i te pae apato'erau 'e te fenua i te pae apato'a.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pārahia te fenua ra nō 'Auhune e te mau 'āti Nephi, mai te miti i te hiti'a o te rā ē tae roa atu i te miti i te tō'o'a o te rā ; 'e nā roto i te pa'ari o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua ha'a'ati tō rātou mau tīa'i 'e tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i te mau 'āti Lamana i te pae apato'a, 'ia 'ore rātou e fāri'i fa'ahou i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'ia 'ore ho'i rātou 'ia purara atu i ni'a i te fenua i te pae apato'erau.

34 Nō reira 'aita roa e roa'a fa'ahou te tahi atu ā mau fenua i te mau 'āti Lamana, maori rā 'o te fenua nō Nephi ra, 'e te mēdēbara ē 'ati noa a'e i reira. I teienei, e 'ohipa 'aravihi teie i ravehia e te mau 'āti Nephi—'e nō te mea e 'enemi te mau 'āti Lamana nō rātou, 'aita rātou i fa'ati'a i tō rātou mau 'ati 'ia tae i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, 'e 'aore rā 'ia roa'a ia rātou te hō'ē fenua, e ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia horo atu i reira, mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro.

35 'E i teienei, 'ia oti a'era teie nei parau iā'u, e ho'i fa'ahou vau i ni'a i te parau tuatāpapa a Amona 'e Aaron, Omonera 'e Himeni, 'e tō rātou ra mau taea'e.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

Alama 23

- 1 Inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atae atu ra te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te hō'ē fa'auera'a i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata ato'a, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē, 'eiaha tō rātou rima e rave noa atu ia Amona, 'e ia Aarona, 'e ia Omonera, 'e ia Himeni, 'e i tō rātou ato'a ho'i mau taea'e, 'o tē poro haere i te parau a te Atua, i te mau vāhi ato'a tā rātou e haere ē hope roa a'e tō rātou fenua.
- 2 'Oia ia, 'ua fa'atae atu 'oia i te hō'ē fa'auera'a mana ia rātou, 'eiaha tō rātou rima e rave noa atu ia rātou nō te ru'uru'u ia rātou, 'e 'aore rā nō te huri ia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'eiaha ato'a rātou e tūtuhia i te huare i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'eiaha e tā'iri ia rātou, 'eiaha e huri ia rātou i rāpae i tō rātou mau sunago, 'eiaha e papa'i ia rātou, 'eiaha ho'i e pēhi ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i, 'ia vaihohia rā rātou 'ia haere noa i roto i tō rātou mau fare, 'e tō rātou mau hiero, 'e tō rātou mau fare mo'a ho'i.
- 3 'Ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia haere 'e 'ia poro haere i te parau mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro, inaha 'ua fa'afāriuhia te ari'i i te Fatu, 'e tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a ; nō reira 'ua fa'atae atu 'oia i tāna fa'auera'a i tōna mau ta'ata ē 'ati noa a'e taua fenua ra, 'eiaha roa 'ia pāto'ihia te parau a te Atua, 'ia ha'apararehia rā te reira ē 'ati noa a'e taua fenua ato'a ra, 'ia 'ite pāpū tōna mau ta'ata i te mau peu tumu parauti'a 'ore a tō rātou mau metua, 'e 'ia 'ite pāpū ato'a rātou ē, e mau taea'e ana'e rātou pā'āto'a, 'e 'eiaha roa rātou 'ia taparahi i te ta'ata, 'ia haru, 'ia 'eiā, 'ia fa'aturi, 'e 'ia rave noa atu ho'i i te mau huru 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore ato'a.
- 4 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i tō te ari'i fa'ataera'a atu i teie fa'auera'a, 'ua haere atu ra Aarona 'e tōna mau taea'e i terā 'oire 'e i terā 'oire, 'e i terā fare purera'a 'e i terā fare purera'a, i te fa'ati'ara'a i te mau 'ēkālesia, 'e i te fa'ata'ara'a i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua, nō te a'o 'e nō te ha'api'i i te parau a te Atua i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te manuia rahi.
- 5 'E e rave rahi tauatini tei fa'afāriuhia mai i te 'ite i te Fatu, 'oia ia, e rave rahi tauatini tei fa'afāriuhia 'ia ti'aturi i te mau peu tumu a te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'ua ha'api'ihia rātou i te mau pāpa'a parau 'e te mau parau tohu i tu'uhia mai ē tae roa mai i taua taime ra.

Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

6 'E tē ora mau nei te Fatu, 'e 'o rātou e rave rahi 'o tei ti'aturi, 'e 'o rātou e rave rahi 'o tei fa'afāriuhia mai i te 'ite i te parau mau ra, nā roto i te a'ora'a a Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e, mai te au i te vārua nō te heheura'a 'e nō te tohu, 'e te mana ho'i o te Atua tei rave i te mau semeio i roto ia rātou ra—'oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, tē ora mau nei te Fatu, 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi i tā rātou a'ora'a, 'e tei fa'afāriuhia i te Fatu ra, 'aita roa ia rātou i tāiva.

7 'E 'ua riro ho'i rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a ; 'ua vaiiho rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'ōrurehau i raro, 'e 'aita rātou i tama'i fa'ahou i te Atua, 'e 'aita ato'a i tō rātou mau taea'e.

8 I teienei, 'o rātou teie tei fa'afāriuhia i te Fatu :

9 Te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Lamana i pārahi na i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela ;

10 'E te mau ta'ata ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana i pārahi na i te fenua ra nō Midoni ;

11 'E te mau ta'ata ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana i pārahi na i te 'oire ra nō Nephi ;

12 'E te mau ta'ata ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana i pārahi na i te fenua ra nō Siloma, 'e tei pārahi na ho'i i te fenua ra nō Semelona, 'e i te 'oire ra nō Lemuela, 'e i te 'oire ra ho'i nō Simaniloma.

13 'E teie te mau i'oa o te mau 'oire o te mau 'āti Lamana tei fa'afāriuhia mai i te Fatu ; 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie tei vaiiho i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'ōrurehau i raro, 'oia ia, i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i ato'a ; 'e e mau 'āti Lamana ana'e ho'i rātou ato'a.

14 'E 'aita te mau 'āti Amaleka i fa'afāriuhia mai, maori rā hō'ē noa iho ; 'e 'aita ato'a te hō'ē o te mau 'āti Amulona ; 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rā rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e te 'ā'au ato'a ho'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i taua tufa'a nō te fenua i pārahihia e rātou ra ; 'oia ia, tō rātou mau 'oire ri'i pā'āto'a 'e tō rātou mau 'oire rarahi pā'āto'a.

15 Nō reira, 'ua fa'ahiti mātou i te i'oa o te mau 'oire ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana 'o tei tātarahapa 'e tei fāri'i i te 'ite nō te parau mau, 'e tei fa'afāriuhia mai.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

16 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua hina'aro ihora te ari'i 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i tei fa'afāriuhia mai 'ia fāri'i i te hō'ē i'oa, 'ia ta'a-maita'i-hia rātou i tō rātou mau taea'e ; nō reira 'ua paraparau atu te ari'i ia Aarona 'e i tō rātou mau tahu'a e rave rahi, nō ni'a i te i'oa 'o tā rātou e ma'iri i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'ia ta'a-maita'i-hia rātou e te tahi atu mau ta'ata.

17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i tō rātou i'oa o Aneti-Nepi-Lehi ; 'e 'ua parauhia rātou i taua i'oa ra, 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i parau-fa'ahou-hia e mau 'āti Lamana.

18 'E 'ua riro a'era rātou 'ei feiā itoito ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei hoa nō te mau 'āti Nepi ; nō reira, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te fa'ahoa ia rātou, 'e 'aita roa te 'anatemara'a a te Atua i ma'iri fa'ahou mai i ni'a ia rātou.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nepi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

Alama 24

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'atupuhia te riri i roto i te mau 'āti Amaleka, 'e te mau 'āti Amulona, 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o tei pārahi i te fenua ra nō Amulona, 'e i te fenua ato'a ra i Helama, 'e tei pārahi ato'a i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem, 'oia ho'i, tei pārahi i te mau fenua ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e, 'o tei 'ore i fa'afāriuhia 'e tei 'ore i rave i te i'oa o Aneti-Nephi-Lehi i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'oia ia, 'ua fa'ati'arepu te mau 'āti Amaleka 'e te mau 'āti Amulona i te riri i roto i tō rātou ra mau taea'e.
- 2 'E 'ua rahi roa tō rātou 'ino'ino ia rātou, 'e nō reira 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te mārō atu i tō rātou ari'i, 'e nō reira 'aita atu ra rātou i hina'aro 'ia riro noa 'oia 'ei ari'i nō rātou ; nō reira, 'ua rave ihora rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i te mau ta'ata o Aneti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 3 I teienei, 'ua hōro'a atu ra te ari'i i te mana nō tōna bāsileia i ni'a i tāna tamaiti, 'e 'ua ma'iri atu ra 'oia i tōna i'oa 'o Aneti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 4 'E 'ua pohe ihora te ari'i i taua ihora matahiti i ha'amata ai te mau 'āti Lamana i te fa'aineine ia rātou iho nō te 'aro mai i te mau ta'ata o te Atua.
- 5 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e 'e rātou ato'a i pīha'i iho iāna ra i te mau fa'aineinera'a a te mau 'āti Lamana nō te ha'amou i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'ua haere atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Midiana, 'e i reira 'ua fārerei atu ra Amona i tōna ato'a ra mau taea'e ; e mai reira 'ua haere atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'atupu i te hō'ē 'āpo'ora'a 'e Lamoni 'e tōna taea'e ato'a o Aneti-Nephi-Lehi, nō te fa'anaho i te mau mea tā rātou e rave nō te pārruru ia rātou iho i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 6 I teienei, 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e ta'ata i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei fa'afāriuhia i te Fatu i hina'aro 'ia rave i te mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'oia ia, 'aita roa rātou i hina'aro 'ia fa'aineine nō te 'arora'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aue ato'a mai ra tō rātou ari'i ia rātou ē 'eiaha rātou e nā reira.

Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

7 I teienei, 'o teie te mau parau tāna i parau atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata nō ni'a i taua mea ra : Tē ha'amāuruuru nei au i tō'u Atua, e tō'u mau ta'ata here, nō te maita'i o tō tātou Atua rahi 'ua tonu mai 'oia i teie mau taea'e tō tātou, te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te a'o mai ia tātou, 'e nō te fa'a'ite pāpū mai ia tātou nō ni'a i te mau peu tumu a tō tātou mau metua parauti'a 'ore.

8 'E inaha, tē ha'amāuruuru nei au i tō'u Atua rahi nō te mea 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te hō'ē tufa'a nō tōna Vārua ia tātou nei nō te tamarū i tō tātou 'ā'au, i ti'a ai ia tātou 'ia fa'ahoa atu i teie mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Nephi.

9 'E inaha, tē ha'amāuruuru ato'a nei au i tō'u Atua, i te mea ē nā roto i teie fa'ahoara'a 'ua fa'a'ite-pāpū-hia mai tātou nō ni'a i tā tātou mau hara, 'e nō te mau taparahira'a ta'ata tā tātou i rave.

10 'E tē ha'amāuruuru ato'a nei au i tō'u Atua, 'oia ia, i tō'u Atua rahi, 'o 'oia i fa'ati'a mai ia tātou 'ia tātarahapa i teie mau mea, 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua fa'a'ore 'oia i tā tātou mau hara e rave rahi 'e te mau taparahira'a ta'ata tā tātou i rave, 'e 'ua 'iriti 'ē atu 'oia i te hara i tō tātou 'ā'au, nā roto i te mau maita'i rahi o tāna ra Tamaiti.

11 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, nō te mea 'o te reira ana'e tē ti'a 'ia tātou 'ia rave ('a riro ai tātou 'ei mea 'ino roa atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a ra) nō te tātarahapa i tā tātou mau hara ato'a 'e te mau taparahira'a ta'ata e rave rahi tā tātou i rave, 'e nō te ani atu i te Atua 'ia 'iriti 'ē atu i te reira mau hara i tō tātou nei 'ā'au, nō te mea 'o te reira ana'e ho'i tē ti'a 'ia tātou 'ia rave nō te tātarahapa māite i mua i te Atua 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia horoi atu i tō tātou tāfetafeta—

12 I teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here rahi, nō te mea 'ua horoi atu te Atua i tō tātou mau tāfetafeta, 'e 'ua riro mai ia tā tātou mau 'o'e 'ei mea 'ana'ana, nō reira 'eiaha tātou e fa'atāfetafeta fa'ahou i tā tātou mau 'o'e i te toto o tō tātou ra mau taea'e.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

13 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'Eiaha roa, 'a tāpe'a noa tātou i tā tātou mau 'o'e 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia vi'ivi'i i te toto o tō tātou mau taea'e ; 'e penei a'e, mai te mea e fa'atāfetafeta fa'ahou tātou i tā tātou mau 'o'e, e'ita roa te reira e ti'afa'ahou 'ia horoi-'ana'ana-hia i te toto o te Tamaiti a tō tātou Atua rahi, 'o tē ha'amani'ihia 'ei tāra'ehara nō tā tātou mau hara.

14 'E 'ua aroha mai te Atua rahi ia tātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai i teie mau mea ia tātou 'ia 'ore tātou 'ia pohe ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ātea mai 'oia i teie mau mea ia tātou, nō te mea 'ua here 'oia i tō tātou vārua mai tāna i here ato'a i tā tātou mau tamari'i ; nō reira, nā roto i tōna ra aroha, 'ua tonono mai 'oia i tāna mau melahi ia tātou nei, nō te fa'a'ite mai i te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a ia tātou nei ē tae noa atu i te mau u'i i mua nei.

15 'Auē ho'i te aroha o tō tātou Atua ē ! 'E i teienei, inaha, nō te mea 'ua horoi-'ē-hia atu tō tātou mau tāfetafeta ia tātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ana'anahia tā tātou mau 'o'e, 'ia huna tātou i te reira, 'ia vai 'ana'ana noa, 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū i tō tātou Atua i te mahana hope'a, 'oia te mahana e arata'ihia ai tātou 'ia ti'a i mua iāna 'ia ha'avāhia, 'e 'aita tātou i fa'atāfetafeta i tā tātou mau 'o'e i te toto o tō tātou mau taea'e mai te mahana mai ā i fa'a'ite mai ai 'oia i tāna parau ia tātou 'e i tāmā ai ia tātou.

16 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, mai te mea e tītou tō tātou mau taea'e 'ia ha'amou ia tātou, inaha, e huna tātou i tā tātou mau 'o'e, 'oia ia, e tanu tātou i te reira i raro roa i te repo, 'ia vai 'ana'ana noa te reira, 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū i te mahana hope'a 'e 'aita roa tātou i fa'a'ohipa i te reira ; 'e mai te mea e ha'amou tō tātou mau taea'e ia tātou, inaha, e haere atu tātou i tō tātou Atua 'e e fa'aorahia ho'i i reira.

17 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā te ari'i paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui mai ra te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua rave ihora rātou i tā rātou mau 'o'e, 'e te mau mauha'a tama'i ato'a i ravehia nō te ha'amani'ira'a i tō te ta'ata toto, 'e 'ua tanu ihora rātou i te reira i raro roa i te repo.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

18 'E 'ua nā reira rātou ma te mana'o ē, e fa'a'itera'a pāpū te reira i te Atua, 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i ē, 'e 'a'ita roa rātou e fa'a'ohipa fa'ahou i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te ha'amani'i i te toto o te ta'ata; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou ma te tapu 'e ma te fafau i te Atua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē, e mea maita'i a'e ia rātou 'ia hōro'a i tō rātou iho ora, i te ha'amani'i i te toto o tō rātou mau taea'e; 'e e mea maita'i a'e ho'i ia rātou i te hōro'a atu i te hō'ē mea nā tō rātou taea'e, i te rave mai i te reira mai 'ō mai iāna ra; 'e e mea maita'i a'e ho'i ia rātou 'ia rave rahi i te 'ohipa i tō rātou iho rima, i te ha'amāu'a i tō rātou mau mahana i roto i te fa'atau.

19 'E nō reira 'ua 'ite ho'i tātou ē, i tō te mau 'āti Lamana fa'afāriuhia 'ia ti'aturi 'e 'ia 'ite i te parau mau, 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i rātou, 'e 'ua ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i te māuiui ē tae roa atu i te pohera'a, ma te rave 'ore i te hara; 'e nō reira 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua tanu rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a nō te hau, 'oia ho'i 'ua tanu rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i 'ia tupu te hau.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aineine tō rātou mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Lamana nō te 'arora'a, 'e 'ua haere atu rātou i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi nō te 'ōpua 'ia taparahi i te ari'i, 'e nō te tu'u i te tahi 'ē 'ei mono nōna, 'e nō te ha'amou ato'a i te mau ta'ata o Aneti-Nephi-Lehi i ni'a i te fenua.

21 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata ē, tē haere mai ra rātou nō te tama'i ia rātou, 'ua haere atu ra rātou nō te fārerei ia rātou, 'e 'ua tāhopu ihora rātou i raro i te repo i mua ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te pi'i atu i te 'ioa o te Fatu; 'e 'ua nā reira ho'i rātou 'a ha'amata ai te mau 'āti Lamana i te tā'iri mai ia rātou 'e i te taparahi mai ia rātou i te 'o'e.

22 'E 'a'ita roa rātou i 'aro atu, 'e nō reira 'ua taparahi rātou hō'ē tauatini 'e e pae o tō rātou mau ta'ata; 'e 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua ha'amaita'ihia rātou, i te mea ē 'ua haere atu rātou e pārahi i pīha'i iho i tō rātou ra Atua.

23 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē 'a'ita roa tō rātou mau taea'e e horo 'ē atu i te 'o'e, 'e 'a'ita ato'a rātou e fāriu i te rima 'atau 'e i te rima 'au'i, 'āre'a rā 'ua tīpapa noa rātou i raro 'e 'ia pohe, 'e 'ia ha'amaita'i noa i te Atua 'a pohe ai rātou i te 'o'e ra—

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

24 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana i te reira, 'ua fa'aea ihora rātou i te taparahi ia rātou ; 'e e rave rahi 'o tei 'oto rahi tō rātou 'ā'au nō tō rātou mau taea'e i pohe i te 'o'e, 'e 'ua tātarahapa ihora rātou i te mau mea tā rātou i rave.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aru'e ihora rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i i raro, 'e 'aita rātou e rave fa'ahou i te reira, nō te mea 'ua putapū roa rātou nō te mau taparahira'a ta'ata tā rātou i rave ; 'e 'ua tāhopu ihora rātou mai tō rātou mau taea'e i tāhopu ra, ma te ti'aturi i te aroha o te feiā i fa'ateitei i tō rātou rima nō te taparahi mai ia rātou.

26 'E i muri a'era, i taua mahana ra, 'ua hau atu te rahi o te mau ta'ata i 'āmui mai i te feiā o te Atua i te mau ta'ata i taparahihia ; 'e te feiā i taparahihia e feiā parauti'a ia rātou, nō reira 'ua 'ite pāpū tātou ē 'ua fa'aorahia rātou.

27 'E 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata parauti'a 'ore i taparahihia i rotopū ia rātou ; 'āre'a rā 'ua hau atu i te tauatini ta'ata tei fa'afāriuhia mai i te 'ite i te parau mau ; nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, tē 'ohīpa ra te Fatu nā roto i te mau rāve'a e rave rahi nō te fa'aorara'a i tōna mau ta'ata.

28 I teienei, te pae rahi roa o te mau 'āti Lamana i taparahi i tō rātou ra mau taea'e, e mau 'āti Amaleka 'e e mau 'āti Amulona rātou, 'e nō te fa'anahora'a a tō Nehora ho'i te pae rahi o rātou.

29 I teienei, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a i 'āmui mai i te mau ta'ata o te Fatu, 'aita roa ia te hō'ē nō roto mai i te mau 'āti Amaleki, 'e te mau 'āti Amulona, 'e nō te fa'anahora'a a Nehora, e mau hua'ai mau rā rātou nō Lamana 'e Lemuela.

30 'E nō te reira tē 'ite pāpū nei tātou ē, 'ia ha'amāramarama-ana'e-hia te tahi mau ta'ata e te Vārua o te Atua, 'e 'ia noa'a ia rātou te 'ite rahi i te mau mea nō te parauti'a, 'e i muri iho 'a topa ai i roto i te hara 'e te 'ōfatira'a ture, e riro rātou 'ei feiā 'eta'eta atu, 'e e riro tō rātou huru 'ei mea 'ino roa atu i tō rātou huru hou rātou i 'ite ai i teie nei mau mea.

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

Alama 25

- 1 'E inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua rahi roa te riri o taua mau 'āti Lamana ra nō te mea 'ua taparahi rātou i tō rātou mau taea'e ; nō reira 'ua tapu ihora 'ia tāho'o atu i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'aita a'era rātou i tāmata fa'ahou 'ia taparahi i te mau ta'ata o te Aneti-Nepi-Lehi i taua taime ra.
- 2 'Āre'a rā 'ua arata'i mai ra rātou i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i te mau hiti nō te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua 'aro atu ra rātou i te mau ta'ata e pārahi ra i te fenua ra nō Amoniha 'e 'ua ha'amou ia rātou.
- 3 'E i muri iho i te reira, e rave rahi tā rātou mau tama'ira'a i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia 'e 'ua taparahihia ho'i rātou.
- 4 'E i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana i taparahihia, nō roto mai ia te pae rahi roa i te hua'ai o Amulona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e, 'e e mau tahu'a ho'i rātou nā Noa, 'e 'ua taparahihia rātou e te rima o te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 5 'E 'ua horo atu ra te toe'a 'o rātou i te mēdēbara i te hiti'a o te rā, 'e i muri iho i tō rātou harura'a i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i ni'a a'e i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua ha'amou ihora rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi i te auahi nō tō rātou ti'aturira'a—
- 6 Nō te pae rahi ho'i o rātou, i muri iho i tō rātou mau pau rahi 'e te mau 'ati e rave rahi ho'i, 'ua tūra'ihia rātou 'ia ha'amana'o i te mau parau tā Aarona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e i a'o atu ia rātou i tō rātou ra fenua ; nō reira 'ua tupu ihora tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore i te mau peu tumu a tō rātou ra mau metua, 'e 'ia ti'aturi i te Fatu, 'e nāna i hōro'a mai i te mana rahi i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e nō reira e rave rahi tō rātou tei fa'afāriuhia i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra rātou, 'oia ho'i te mau tāvana nō te toe'a nō te hua'ai o te mau tamari'i a Amulona ra, 'ia taparahihia rātou, 'oia ia, te mau ta'ata ato'a i ti'aturi i taua mau mea nei.
- 8 I teienei, nā taua taparahira'a ra i fa'ati'arepu i te riri i roto i tō rātou mau taea'e e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua tupu ihora te mārōra'a i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'imi i te hua'ai o Amulona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te taparahi ia rātou, 'e 'ua horo atu ra rātou i roto i te mēdēbara i te hiti'a o te rā.

Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nepi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

9 'E inaha, 'ua 'imihia rātou e te mau 'āti Lamana i teie nei mahana. Nō reira 'ua tupu mau atu ra te mau parau a Abinadi, 'o tāna i parau nō ni'a i te hua'ai o te mau tahu'a 'o tei tītau 'ia ha'apohe iāna i te auahi.

10 'Ua parau ho'i 'oia ia rātou : Tā 'outou e rave mai iā'u nei, e taīpe ia nō te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.

11 'E i teienei, 'o Abinadi te ta'ata mātāmua i pohe i te auahi nō tōna ti'aturi i te Atua ; i teienei o teie te aura'a nō tāna parau, 'e e rave rahi te ta'ata e pohe i te auahi mai iāna i pohe ra.

12 'E 'ua parau atu 'oia i te mau tahu'a o Noa, 'e nā tō rātou hua'ai e taparahi i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi mai iāna e taparahihia ra, 'e e ha'apurara-roa-hia rātou 'e e taparahihia ho'i, mai te māmoe tīa'i 'ore i a'ua'uhia 'e i taparahihia ho'i e te mau 'ānimara taehae ra ; 'e i teienei, inaha, 'ua tupu mau atu ra taua mau parau nei, 'ua ti'avaruhia rātou e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua a'ua'uhia, 'e 'ua taparahihia.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'aita roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'avī atu i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra rātou i tō rātou iho fenua ; 'e e rave rahi tō rātou tei haere mai e pārahi i te fenua ra nō Isema'ela, 'e i te fenua ra nō Nephi ; 'e 'ua 'āmui mai rātou i te mau ta'ata o te Atua, 'oia ho'i i te mau ta'ata nō Aneti-Nepi-Lehi.

14 'E 'ua tanu ato'a ihora rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, mai tā tō rātou mau taea'e i nā reira, 'e 'ua riro a'era rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a ; 'e 'ua haere rātou nā te 'ē'a o te Fatu, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o ho'i i tāna mau fa'auera'a 'e tāna mau ture.

15 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'apa'o rātou i te ture a Mose ; 'e e mea ti'a roa ho'i ia rātou 'ia ha'apa'o noa i te ture a Mose, nō te mea 'aita ā te reira i fa'atupuhia. 'E 'a vai noa ai rātou i raro a'e i te ture a Mose, tē hi'o ra rātou i mua i te taera'a mai o te Mesia, i te mana'ora'a ē, e taīpe te ture a Mose nō tōna taera'a mai, 'e i te ti'aturira'a ē, 'ia ha'apa'o ā rātou i taua mau 'ohipa ra e 'itehia e te mata e ti'a ai, ē tae noa atu i te tau e fa'a'itehia mai ai 'oia ia rātou ra.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nepi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

16 I teienei, 'aita rātou i mana'o ē, e tae mai te fa'aorara'a nā roto i te ture a Mose ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ha'apūai te ture a Mose i tō rātou fa'aro'o i te Mesia ; 'e nō te reira 'ua tāpe'a rātou i te ti'aturi nā roto i te fa'aro'o ē tae noa atu i te fa'aorara'a mure 'ore, ma te ti'aturi i te vārua nō te tohu, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.

17 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua 'oa'oa rahi roa Amona, 'e Aaronā, 'e Omonera, 'e Himeni, 'e tō rātou mau taea'e, nō te 'ohipa manuia tā rātou i rave i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, i te 'itera'a ē, 'ua hōro'a mai te Fatu ia rātou i tei au i tā rātou mau pure, 'e 'ua fa'atupu mau ho'i 'oia i tāna parau ia rātou i roto i te mau mea ato'a.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

Alama 26

- 1 'E i teienei, 'o teie te mau parau a Amona i tōna ra mau taea'e, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E tō'u mau taea'e, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e aha te tumu rahi 'ua 'oa'oa tātou ; e ti'a ānei ia tātou 'ia mana'o ē, mai tō tātou ha'amatarā'a mai mai te fenua mai ra i Zarahemela, 'e e hōro'a noa mai te Atua i te tahi mau ha'amaita'ira'a rahi roa ia tātou nei ?
- 2 'E i teienei, tē ui nei au, e aha ia te mau ha'amaita'ira'a rahi tāna i hōro'a mai ia tātou nei ? E ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia fa'a'ite mai ?
- 3 Inaha, e pāhono ia vau nō 'outou ; i vai na ho'i tō tātou mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te pōiri, 'oia ia, i te 'āpo'o pōiri ta'ota'o roa, inaha rā, e hia rahira'a tō rātou tei fa'afāriuhia mai 'ia 'ite i te māmarama māere o te Atua ! 'E 'o teie te ha'amaita'ira'a i hōro'ahia mai ia tātou nei, 'o tātou i riro 'ei mau mauha'a i roto i te rima o te Atua nō te fa'atupu i teie 'ohipa rahi.
- 4 Inaha, e rave rahi tauatini tō rātou e 'oa'oa nei, 'e tei fa'afāriuhia mai i roto i te nana a te Atua.
- 5 Inaha, 'ua ineine te 'āua nō te 'auhune, 'e e ao ho'i tō 'outou i te mea ē 'ua fa'a'ohipa 'outou i te mauha'a 'ō'oti, 'e 'ua 'ō'oti ma tō 'outou pūai, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua rave 'outou i te 'ohipa i te mahana tā'āto'a ; 'e 'a hi'o na i te rahi o tā 'outou mau ruru sītona ! 'E e ha'apu'ehia te reira i roto i te mau fare vaira'a mā'a, 'ia 'ore 'ia māu'a.
- 6 'Oia ia, e'ita rātou e ha'ama'irihia i raro e te vero i te mahana hope'a ra ; 'oia ia, e'ita ato'a ho'i e mahiti i te mau pūāhiohio ; 'āre'a rā 'ia tae mai te vero e ha'apu'e-'āmui-hia rātou i tō rātou vāhi, 'ia 'ore te vero 'ia tae noa mai i roto ia rātou ra ; 'oia ia ; 'e e 'ore ho'i rātou e puhipuhia e te mau mata'i pūai i te vāhi tā te 'enemi e hina'aro 'ia 'āfa'i atu ia rātou.
- 7 Inaha rā, tei roto rātou i te rima o te Fatu nō te 'auhune, 'e nōna ho'i rātou, 'e nāna rātou e fa'ati'a i ni'a i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 8 'Ia fa'ahanahanahia te i'oa o tō tātou Atua ; 'ia hīmene tātou nō te 'āruē iāna, 'oia ia, 'ia ha'amaita'i tātou i tōna ra i'oa mo'a, e 'ohipa parauti'a tāna e rave i teie nei ē a muri noa atu.

Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

- 9 'Āhiri ho'i 'aita tātou i haere mai i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'ua 'ī roa ā ia tō tātou mau taea'e here-rahi-hia, 'o tei here rahi mai ia tātou nei, i te 'ino'ino ia tātou i teienei ā, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua vai noa ho'i ia rātou 'ei mau ta'ata 'ē i te Atua i teienei ā.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Amona i te parau i teie nei mau parau, 'ua 'avau mai ra tōna taea'e o Aaronā iāna, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : E Amona, tē mata'u nei au 'o te 'umehia 'oe e tō 'oe na 'oa'oa i te fa'aahaahara'a.
- 11 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : 'Aita vau i fa'aahaaha i tō'u iho nei pūai, 'e 'aore ho'i i tō'u iho nei pa'ari ; inaha rā, 'ua 'ī au i te 'oa'oa, 'oia ia, 'ua 'ī roa tō'u nei 'ā'au i te 'oa'oa, 'e tē pou pou nei au i tō'u ra Atua.
- 12 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite au ē, e mea faufa'a 'ore au ; i tō'u nei pūai e mea paruparu vau ; nō reira, e 'ore roa vau e fa'aahaaha i roto iā'u iho, e fa'ahanahana rā vau i tō'u ra Atua, nā roto ho'i i tōna ra pūai 'ua ti'a iā'u 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a ; 'oia ia, inaha, e rave rahi mau semeio tā tātou i rave i teie nei fenua, 'e nō reira e 'ārue tātou i tōna i'oa ē a muri noa atu.
- 13 Inaha, e hia rahira'a tauatini o tō tātou mau taea'e tei tātarahia mai e ana i te mau 'ati o hade ra ; 'e 'ua roa'a ia rātou te hina'aro 'ia hīmene i te aroha fa'aora, nō te mea tei roto ia tātou nei te mana nō tāna ra parau ; nō reira, 'aita ānei e tumu rahi e ti'a ai ia tātou 'ia 'oa'oa ?
- 14 'Oia ia, tē vai nei te tumu 'ua ti'a roa ia tātou ia 'ārue iāna ē a muri noa atu, 'o 'oia ho'i te Atua Teitei Roa, 'e nāna i tātara mai i tō tātou mau taea'e i te ru'uru'ura'a nō te mau fifi o hade ra.
- 15 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'a'ati-roa-hia na rātou i te pōiri 'e te pohe mure 'ore ; inaha rā, 'ua arata'i mai 'oia ia rātou i roto i tōna ra māramarama mure 'ore, 'oia ia, i roto i te fa'aorara'a mure 'ore ; 'e 'ua ha'a'ati-roa-hia rātou i te maita'i fāito 'ore o tōna ra aroha ; 'oia ia, i riro na ho'i tātou 'ei mau mauha'a i roto i tōna ra rima i te ravera'a i teie 'ohipa rahi 'e te māere.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

- 16 Nō reira, 'ia fa'ahanahana tātou, 'oia ia, e fa'ahanahana tātou i te Fatu ; 'oia ia, e 'oa'oa tātou, i te mea 'ua 'i roa tō tātou 'ā'au i te 'oa'oa ; 'oia ia, e 'āruē tātou i tō tātou Atua ē a muri noa atu. Inaha, 'o vai ia te ti'a iāna 'ia fa'arahi roa atu i te fa'ahanahana'ā i te Fatu ? 'Oia ia, 'o vai ho'i ia tē ti'a 'ia fa'arahi roa atu i te parau maita'i nō tōna ra mana rahi, 'e tōna ra aroha, 'e tōna ra fa'a'oroma'ira'a roa i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e 'ore roa e ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te hō'ē vāhi iti a'e nō tō'u nei mana'o.
- 17 'O vai ia te ta'ata i mana'o na ē, 'ua aroha rahi roa mai te Atua ia tātou, 'e nō reira 'ua haru mai 'oia ia tātou mai roto mai i tō tātou huru 'ino rahi, 'e te hara, 'e te vi'ivi'i ?
- 18 Inaha, 'ua haere ti'a noa atu tātou i roto i te riri 'ū'ana, 'e te parau ha'amata'u rahi nō te ha'amou i tāna 'ēkālesia.
- 19 'E teienei, nō te aha ho'i ia 'aita 'oia i tu'u noa atu ia tātou i te pohe ri'ari'a, 'oia ia, nō te aha ho'i 'aita 'oia i tu'u noa mai i te 'o'e nō tāna ra parauti'a 'ia ma'iri mai i ni'a iho ia tātou, 'e 'ia huri atu ia tātou i roto i te 'ati mure 'ore ?
- 20 'Auē ho'i ē, e au atu ra ē tē fa'ata'a-'ē-hia nei tō'u nei 'ā'au i tō'u nei mana'ora'a. Inaha, 'aita roa 'oia i fa'atae mai i tāna ra utu'a parauti'a i ni'a iho ia tātou, nā roto rā i tōna ra aroha rahi 'ua arata'i mai 'oia ia tātou i rāpae i taua 'āpo'o mure 'ore nō te pohe 'e te mamae, ē tae atu ai i te fa'aorara'a o tō tātou vārua.
- 21 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'o vai ho'i ia te ta'ata nei tei 'ite i teie mau mea ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'aita roa ia e ta'ata tei 'ite i teie mau mea, maori rā 'o te ta'ata 'ā'au tātarahapa.
- 22 'Oia ia, 'o 'oia 'o tē tātarahapa 'e tē fa'a'ohipa i te fa'aro'o, 'e 'o tē fa'atupu mai i te 'ohipa maita'i, 'e 'o tē pure tāmāu noa ma te fa'aea 'ore—e hōro'ahia ia iāna 'ia 'ite i te mau parau 'aro a te Atua ; 'oia ia, e hōro'ahia ia iāna 'ia heheu mai i te mau mea 'o tei 'ore ā i heheuhia mai ; 'oia ia, 'e e hōro'ahia mai ia iāna 'ia fa'afāriu mai i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini i te tātarahapara'a, mai tei hōro'ahia mai ia tātou 'ia fa'afāriu mai i teie mau taea'e tō tātou i te tātarahapara'a.

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

23 I teienei, tē ha'amana'o ra ānei 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e ē, 'ua parau atu tātou i tō tātou mau taea'e i te fenua ra nō Zarahemla, 'e e haere atu tātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi, nō te a'o atu i tō tātou mau taea'e i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua 'ata'ata mai ra rātou ma te tāhitohito mai ia tātou ?

24 'E 'ua parau mai ho'i rātou ia tātou ē : tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'afāriu mai i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia 'ite i te parau mau ? Tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'afāriu mai i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia 'ite i te tano 'ore nō te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua, 'a riro ai rātou 'ei feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta ; tei 'oa'oa tō rātou 'ā'au 'ia ha'amani'i i te toto ; e tei rave noa i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino roa i te mau mahana nō tō rātou orara'a ; 'e tō rātou mau 'ē'a 'o te 'ē'a ia o te ta'ata 'ōfati ture mai te ha'amatara'a mai ā ? I teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'a ha'amana'o 'outou ē, 'o teie ia tā rātou parau.

25 'E 'oia fa'ahou, 'ua parau ato'a mai rātou : E rave tātou i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu ia rātou, 'ia ha'amou tātou ia rātou 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i te fenua nei, 'o te tae mai rātou nō te ha'avī 'e nō te ha'amou ia tātou.

26 Inaha rā, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua haere mai tātou i roto i te mēdēbara nei, 'eiaha nō te 'ōpua 'ia taparahi i tō tātou mau taea'e, nō te 'ōpua rā penei a'e 'o te fa'aora tātou i te tahi pae iti o rātou.

27 I teienei, 'ua 'oto a'era tō tātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua fātata a'era tātou i te ho'i, inaha, 'ua tāmāhanahana mai ra te Fatu ia tātou, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : 'A haere atu i rotopū i tō 'outou mau taea'e i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'a fa'a'oroma'i i tō 'outou mau 'ati, 'e nā'u 'outou e ha'amanuia i reira.

28 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua haere mai nei tātou, 'e tei rotopū ho'i tātou ia rātou ; 'e 'ua fa'a'oroma'i māite ho'i tātou i tō tātou mau 'ati, 'e 'ua fa'a'oroma'i tātou i te mau huru pohe ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua hāhaere ho'i tātou i terā fare 'e i terā fare, i te ti'aturira'a i te aroha o tō teie nei ao—'eiaha i te aroha o teie nei ao ana'e, i te aroha rā o te Atua.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

29 'E 'ua tomo atu tātou i roto i tō rātou mau fare 'e 'ua ha'api'i ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'api'i tātou ia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau aroā ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'api'i tātou ia rātou i ni'a i tō rātou mau 'āivi ; 'e 'ua tomo ato'a atu tātou i roto i tō rātou mau hiero 'e tō rātou mau sunago 'e 'ua ha'api'i ia rātou ; 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia tātou i rāpae, 'e 'ua vahavahahia, 'e 'ua tūtuhahia mai tātou, 'e 'ua tā'irihia tō tātou mau pāpāri'a ; 'e 'ua pēhiahia tātou i te 'ōfa'i, 'e 'ua ru'uru'uhia i te mau taura pa'ari, 'e 'ua hurihia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e nā roto i te mana 'e te pa'ari o te Atua 'ua fa'aora-fa'ahou-hia mai tātou nei.

30 'E 'ua fa'a'oroma'i tātou i te mau huru 'ati ato'a, penei a'e 'o te riro tātou 'ei rāve'a nō te fa'aora i te tahi mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua mana'o ihora tātou ē, e 'i roa tātou i te 'oa'oa mai te mea e riro noa atu tātou 'ei rāve'a nō te fa'aora i te tahi mau ta'ata.

31 I teienei, inaha, e ti'a ia tātou 'ia hi'o atu 'e 'ia 'ite i te mau hotu nō tā tātou mau 'ohipa ; e mea iti ānei te reira ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa, e rave rahi rā, 'oia ia e ti'a ia tātou 'ia 'ite i tō rātou ha'avare 'ore, nō tō rātou here i tō rātou mau taea'e 'e ia tātou ato'a ho'i.

32 Inaha ho'i, 'ua ti'a roa ia rātou 'ia pūpū i tō rātou ihora ora, i te taparahi atu i te hō'ē noa atu o tō rātou 'enemi ; 'e 'ua tanu rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i i raro roa i te repo, nō tō rātou i here i tō rātou ra mau taea'e.

33 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, tē vai ra ānei te aroha rahi mai te reira i te fenua ato'a nei ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'Aita, 'aita roa ia e aroha rahi mai te reira i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi.

34 Inaha ho'i, e rave rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'aita rātou i tu'u ia rātou iho 'ia taparahihia. Inaha rā, e hia rahira'a tō teie nei mau ta'ata tei tu'u ia rātou iho 'ia taparahihia ; 'e 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua reva atu rātou i tō rātou ra Atua, nō tō rātou aroha 'e te au 'ore i te hara.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

35 I teienei, 'aita ānei e tumu ti'a roa ia tātou 'ia 'oa'oa ? 'Oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'aita roa e ti'a i te mau ta'ata mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei 'ia 'oa'oa mai tā tātou e 'oa'oa nei ; 'oia ia, tē tupu noa ra tō'u 'oa'oa ē tae atu i te fa'ateiteira'a i tō'u ra Atua ; tei iāna ho'i te mana pā'āto'a, 'e te pa'ari pā'āto'a, 'e te 'ite pā'āto'a ; 'ua māramarama 'oia i te mau mea pā'āto'a, 'e e Atua aroha 'oia, ē tae atu i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou 'o tē tātarahapa 'e tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa.

36 I teienei, mai te mea e parau fa'ateitei te reira, e nā reira ā vau i te fa'ateitei ; o teie ho'i tō'u ora 'e tō'u māramarama, tō'u 'oa'oa 'e tō'u fa'aorara'a, 'e te rāve'a nō te fa'aora iā'u i te 'ati mure 'ore. 'Oia ia, 'ia fa'ahanahanahia te i'oa o tō'u ra Atua 'o tei ha'amana'o i teie nei feiā, te hō'ē 'āma'a nō te tumu rā'au o 'Īserā'ela, 'e tei mo'e na i te tumu mau i te hō'ē fenua 'ē ; 'oia ia, tē parau nei au, 'ia fa'ahanahanahia te i'oa o tō'u ra Atua 'o tei ha'amana'o māite ia tātou, te mau ta'ata purutia i te hō'ē fenua 'ē.

37 I teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, tē 'ite nei tātou ē, tē ha'amana'o ra te Atua i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mau fenua ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua tai'ohia tōna ra mau ta'ata e ana, 'e tei ni'a iho tōna ra 'ā'au aroha i te mau fenua ato'a. I teienei, 'o teie tō'u nei 'oa'oa, 'e tā'u ra ho'i ha'amāuruurura'a rahi ; 'oia ia, e ha'amāuruuru atu ā vau i tō'u ra Atua ē a muri noa atu. 'Āmene.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

Alama 27

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia hope a'era te mau 'arora'a e rave rahi tā te mau 'āti Lamana i 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi nō te ha'amou ia rātou, 'ua 'ite a'era rātou ē, e mea faufa'a 'ore 'ia tītau 'ia ha'amou ia rātou, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou a'era rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri roa a'era te mau 'āti Amaleka nō tō rātou pau rahi. 'E 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'āita roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia tāho'o i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te fa'ati'arepu i te mau ta'ata 'ia riri atu i tō rātou mau taea'e, i te mau ta'ata o Aneti-Nephi-Lehi ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora rātou i te taparahi ia rātou.
- 3 I teienei, 'ua pāto'i fa'ahou teie feiā 'ia rave i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'ua vaiiho noa rātou ia rātou iho 'ia taparahihia mai te au i te hina'aro o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi.
- 4 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e i te 'ohipa taparahira'a e ravehia ra i rotopū i te feiā i here-rahi-hia e rātou ra, 'e te feiā ho'i i here rahi mai ia rātou—'e 'ua hāmani-maita'i-hia ho'i rātou mai te mea ē, e mau melahi rātou i tonohia mai nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra nō te fa'aora ia rātou i te pohe mure 'ore—no reira, 'ia 'ite a'era Amona 'e tōna mau taea'e i taua 'ohipa taparahira'a rahi ra, 'ua tupu ihora tō rātou aroha i roto ia rātou, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra rātou i te ari'i :
- 5 E ha'aputupu'āmuī mai tātou i teie nei mau ta'ata o te Fatu, e haere atu tātou i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i tō tātou ra mau taea'e i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ia ma'ue 'ē atu i te rima o tō tātou ra mau 'enemi, 'ia 'ore tātou 'ia taparahihia.
- 6 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i ia rātou : Inaha, e ha'amou te mau 'āti Nephi ia mātou, nō te mau hara 'e te taparahira'a ta'ata tā mātou i rave ia rātou ra.
- 7 'E 'ua parau atu ra Amona : E haere au e ani atu i te Fatu, 'e mai te mea e parau mai 'oia ia tātou, 'a haere atu i raro i tō tātou ra mau taea'e, e haere mai ānei 'outou ?
- 8 'E 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i iāna : 'Ē, mai te mea e parau mai te Fatu ia mātou 'ia haere, e haere ia mātou i raro i tō tātou ra mau taea'e, 'e e fa'ariri mātou ia mātou 'ei tītī nā rātou ē tae noa atu 'ua fa'a'āfaro mātou i te mau 'ohipa taparahira'a ta'ata e rave rahi 'e te mau hara e rave rahi tā mātou i rave i ni'a iho ia rātou.

Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

- 9 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Amona iāna : 'Aita teie i au i te ture a tō tātou mau taea'e, 'o tei fa'ati'ahia e tō'u ra metua tāne, 'oia ho'i, 'ia vai tītī te ta'ata i rotopū ia rātou ; nō reira, e haere tātou i raro ma te tī'aturi i te aroha o tō tātou mau taea'e.
- 10 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau mai ra te ari'i iāna : 'A ani atu i te Fatu, 'e mai te mea e parau mai 'oia ia mātou 'ia haere, e haere ia mātou, 'e 'ia 'ore 'ia nā-reira-hia, e pohe ia mātou i te fenua nei.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Amona, 'e 'ua ani atu ra i te Fatu, 'e 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iāna :
- 12 'A arata'i 'ē atu i teie nei feiā i rāpae i teie nei fenua, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia pohe ; nō te mea 'ua mau māite Sātane i te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Amaleka, 'o tei fa'ati'arepu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia riri atu i tō rātou mau taea'e nō te taparahi ia rātou ; nō reira, 'a haere 'ē atu 'outou i rāpae i teie nei fenua ; e ao ho'i tō teie nei feiā i teie nei u'i, 'e nā'u ho'i rātou e fa'aora.
- 13 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i mai ra Amona 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra i te ari'i i te mau parau ato'a tā te Fatu i parau mai iāna ra.
- 14 'E 'ua ha'aputupu i hora rātou i tō rātou ra mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'oia ia, te mau ta'ata ato'a o te Fatu, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu ato'a rātou i tā rātou mau nana māmoē ato'a 'e te mau nana pua'atoro ato'a, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i rāpae i taua fenua ra, 'e 'ua tae atu ra i roto i te mēdēbara, tei fa'ata'a 'ē i te fenua ra nō Nephi i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, ē tae roa atu ra i te mau hiti o taua fenua ra.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra Amona ia rātou : Inaha, e haere au 'e tō'u nei mau taea'e i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e e fa'aea noa 'outou i'ō nei ē tae noa atu 'ua ho'i mai mātou ; 'e e tāmata mātou i te 'ā'au o tō mātou mau taea'e, mai te mea e fa'ati'a rātou 'ia haere mai 'outou i tō rātou ra fenua.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'a haere atu ai Amona i taua fenua ra, 'ua fārerei atu ra 'oia 'e tōna mau taea'e ia Alama, i te vāhi i parauhia i mua a'enei ; 'e inaha, e fārereira'a 'oa'oa rahi te reira.
- 17 I teienei, 'ua 'ī roa i hora Amona i te 'oa'oa rahi, 'oia ia, 'ua horomi'ihia 'oia i roto i te 'oa'oa i tōna ra Atua, ē tae noa atu 'ua pau roa tōna ra pūai ; 'e 'ua ma'iri fa'ahou i hora 'oia i raro i te repo.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

18 I teienei, e 'ere ānei teie i te 'oa'oa rahi ? Inaha, 'o te 'oa'oa teie 'o tei 'ore roa i roa'a i te ta'ata nei, maori rā i te ta'ata tātarahapa mau 'e te ta'ata tūtau ha'eha'a i te 'oa'oa.

19 I teienei, 'ua rahi roa tō Alama 'oa'oa i te fārereira'a i tōna ra mau taea'e, 'e mai te reira ato'a te 'oa'oa o Aarona, o Omonera, 'e o Himeni ; inaha rā 'aita tō rātou 'oa'oa i hau atu i tō rātou pūai.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua arata'i mai ra Alama i tōna ra mau taea'e i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i tōna ihora fare. 'E 'ua haere atu ra rātou 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra i te ha'avā rahi i te mau mea ato'a i tupu i ni'a ia rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi, i rotopū i tō rātou mau taea'e, i te mau 'āti Lamana.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aparare atu ra te ha'avā rahi i te hō'ē fa'auera'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, i te tītaura'a 'ia 'ite i te reo o te mau ta'ata nō te fāri'i mai i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'oia ho'i i te mau ta'ata nō Aneti-Nephi-Lehi.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te mau ta'ata, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : Inaha, e hōro'a atu tātou i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, i te pae i te hiti'a o te rā i te pae miti, i tū'atihia atu i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune i te pae apato'a o te fenua ra nō 'Auhune ; 'e teie fenua ra nō Ieresona 'o tā tātou ia e hōro'a atu i tō tātou mau taea'e 'ei fenua 'āi'a nō rātou.

23 'E inaha, e tu'u atu tātou i tō tātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i rōpū i te fenua ra nō Ieresona 'e te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'ia ti'a ia tātou 'ia pāruu i tō tātou mau taea'e i te fenua ra nō Ieresona ; e teie tā tātou e rave nō tō tātou mau taea'e, nō te mea 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia rave fa'ahou i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e 'o te hara rātou ; 'e 'ua tae mai teie mata'u rahi nō tā rātou tātarahapara'a rahi i rave, nō tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino rahi.

24 'E i teienei, inaha, teie tā tātou e rave nō tō tātou mau taea'e, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia pārahi i te fenua ra nō Ieresona ; 'e nā tō tātou mau nu'u fa'ehau e pāruu ia rātou i tō rātou mau 'enemi, mai te mea e hōro'a mai rātou i te tahi tufa'a nō tā rātou mau tao'a nō te tauturu ia tātou 'ia ti'a ia tātou 'ia tāpe'a noa i tō tātou mau nu'u fa'ehau.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

25 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Amona i te reira, 'ua ho'i atu ra 'oia 'e 'o Alama ato'a i te mau ta'ata nō Aneti-Nephi-Lehi i roto i te mēdēbara, i te vāhi tā rātou i fa'ati'a i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra ia rātou i taua mau mea ra. 'E 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a atu ra Alama ia rātou i tōna fa'afāriura'ahia mai, 'e tō Amona, 'e tō Aaronā, 'e tō tōna ato'a ra mau taea'e.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu ihora te 'oa'oa rahi i rotopū ia rātou. 'E 'ua haere atu ra rātou i raro i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, 'e 'ua pārahi ihora i taua fenua ra nō Ieresona ; 'e 'ua parauhā rātou e te mau 'āti Nephi, te mau ta'ata o Amona ; nō reira 'ua 'itehia rātou i taua 'oa ra mai te reira atu taime.

27 'E tei rotopū rātou i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e 'ua tai'o-ato'a-hia mai rātou i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia a te Atua. 'Ua 'itea-ato'a-hia rātou nō tō rātou itoito i tā te Atua, 'e i tā te ta'ata ho'i ; e feiā parauti'a mau 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i ho'i rātou i te mau mea ato'a ra ; 'e 'ua tāmau māite rātou i te fa'aro'o i te Mesia, ē tae noa atu i te hope'a.

28 'E 'ua hi'o atu rātou i te ha'amani'ira'a i te toto o tō rātou mau taea'e 'ei mea au 'ore rahi ; 'e 'aita roa i ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave fa'ahou i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'e 'aita roa rātou i hi'o atu i te pohe ma te hō'ē vāhi iti ri'ari'a a'e, nō te mea tē vai ra tō rātou ti'aturira'a 'e te fa'aro'o i te Mesia 'e te ti'afa'ahourā'a ; nō reira 'ua horomi'ihia te pohe nō rātou nā roto i te rē i roa'a i te Mesia ra.

29 Nō reira, e fāri'i rātou i te pohe ma te ri'ari'a rahi 'e te māuiui rahi 'o tē tu'uhia mai i ni'a ia rātou e tō rātou ra mau taea'e, nā mua rātou e rave ai i te 'o'e 'e te simetera nō te taparahi mai ia rātou.

30 'E 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā itoito 'e te herehia, 'e 'ei feiā ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia ho'i e te Fatu.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

Alama 28

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tō te feiā o Amona fa'ati'ara'a i tō rātou fa'aeara'a i te fenua ra nō Ieresona ; 'e i te fa'ati'a-ato'a-ra'a i te hō'ē 'ēkālesia i te fenua i Ieresona ; 'e 'ua ha'a'ati a'era te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi i te fenua ra nō Ieresona ē 'ati noa a'e, 'oia ia, i te mau hiti ato'a nō te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; inaha, 'ua pe'e mai te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i tō rātou mau taea'e i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 2 'E 'ua tupu te hō'ē 'arora'a rahi ; 'oia ia, 'aita te reira huru fāito i 'itehia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i ni'a iho i te fenua mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai Lehi i Ierusalemā ; 'oia ia, 'ua hau te 'ahuru o te tauatini o te mau 'āti Lamana i taparahihia 'e i ha'apurarahia i te ātea.
- 3 'Oia ia, e rave rahi ato'a tei taparahihia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'āre'a rā 'ua tīahihia 'e 'ua ha'apurara-'ē-hia te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ho'i fa'ahou te mau ta'ata o Nephi i tō rātou iho fenua.
- 4 'E i teienei, 'o te hō'ē tau teie i fa'aro'ohia ai te 'oto rahi 'e te auē rahi ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua tā'āto'a, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o Nephi—
- 5 'Oia ia, te 'auē a te mau vahine 'ivi ma te autā nō tā rātou mau tāne, 'e 'oia ato'a i te autā a te mau metua nō tā rātou mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e te autā a te tamāhine nō te taea'e ; 'oia ia, te autā a te taea'e nō te metua tāne ; 'e 'ua fa'aro'ohia te 'auē nō te autā i rotopū ia rātou ato'a ; te autā nō tō rātou mau fēti'i i taparahihia.
- 6 'E i teienei, e mahana 'oto rahi teie ; 'oia ia, e taime mana'o 'oto, 'e te taime nō te ha'apaera'a mā'a rahi 'e te pure rahi.
- 7 'E 'o te hope'a ia nō te matahiti hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma pae nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 8 'E 'o teie te 'ā'amu o Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e, nō tō rātou mau haere'a nā roto i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'e tō rātou mau fifi i taua fenua ra, 'e tō rātou mau 'oto, 'e tō rātou mau 'ati, 'e tō rātou 'oa'oa fāito 'ore, 'e te tomora'a 'e te pārahira'a hau o te mau taea'e i te fenua ra nō Ieresona. 'E i teienei, 'ia ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu, te Tāra'ehara o te mau ta'ata ato'a, i tō rātou mau vārua ē a muri noa atu.

Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

9 'E 'o te 'ā'amu teie nō te mau tama'i 'e te mau mārorā'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e te mau tama'i ato'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua hope ihora te 'ahuru ma pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

10 'E mai te matahiti mātāmua ē tae roa mai i te matahiti hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma pae, 'ua pohe te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini ; 'oia ia, 'ua tupu te ha'amani'ira'a toto ri'ari'a rahi.

11 'E 'ua vaiihohia te mau tino e rave rahi tauatini i raro roa i te repo, 'a pē ai te mau tino e rave rahi tauatini i roto i te mau ha'apu'era'a i ni'a i te fenua ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi tauatini 'o rātou tei autā nō te pohe o tō rātou mau fēti'i, nō te mea tē vai ra tō rātou tumu nō te mata'u, mai te au i te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'ua tu'uhia rātou nō te fāri'i i te 'oto hope 'ore.

12 'E 'ua autā te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini nō te pohe o tō rātou mau fēti'i, 'āre'a rā 'ua 'oa'oa rātou 'e 'ua 'ūmere ho'i i te ti'aturi 'e i te 'ite, mai te au i te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu, 'e 'ua fa'ateiteihia rātou 'ia pārahi i te rima 'atau o te Atua, 'e i reira 'a fāri'i noa ai i te 'oa'oa hope 'ore.

13 'E nō reira 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua rahi roa te 'aifāito 'ore o te tahi pae ta'ata i te tahi atu, nō te hara 'e te ha'apa'o 'ore, 'e te mana o te diabolō i tae mai nā roto i te mau 'ōpuara'a ha'avare o tāna i fa'atupu nō te mārei i te 'ā'au o te ta'ata nei.

14 'E nō reira 'ua 'ite tātou ē, e mea ti'a roa 'ia rave itoito te ta'ata i te 'ohipa i roto i te mau 'ō vine a te Fatu ; 'e nō reira 'ua 'ite tātou i te tumu rahi nō te 'oto 'e nō te 'oa'oa ato'a—te 'oto nō te pohe 'e te ha'amoura'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e te 'oa'oa nō te māmarama o te Mesia ē tae atu ai i te ora.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

Alama 29

- 1 'Āhiri au e melahi, 'e e roa'a mai ho'i iā'u te hina'aro o tō'u nei 'ā'au, e ti'a ai iā'u 'ia haere 'e 'ia parau ma te pū a te Atua ra, 'e ma te reo e rurutaina ai te fenua nei, 'e 'ia a'o atu i te parau nō te tātarahapa i te mau ta'ata ato'a !
- 2 'Oia ia, e fa'a'ite māite atu vau i te mau ta'ata tāta'itahi ato'a, ma te reo o te pātiri i te parau nō te tātarahapa 'e te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, 'ia tātarahapa rātou 'e 'ia haere mai i tō tātou Atua, 'ia 'ore roa te 'oto 'ia vai fa'ahou nā roto i te ao ato'a nei.
- 3 Inaha rā, e ta'ata noa vau nei, 'e tē hara nei au i roto i tō'u nei hina'aro ; e mea ti'a ho'i iā'u 'ia māuruuru i te mau mea tā te Fatu i hōro'a mai iā'u nei.
- 4 E'ita roa ho'i i te mea ti'a iā'u nei 'ia fa'aahoaho i tō'u nei mau hina'aro i te fa'auera'a mana a te Atua parauti'a, 'e 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te ta'ata nei i tei au i tō rātou hina'aro, i te pohe 'e 'aore rā i te ora ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te ta'ata nei, 'oia ia, 'ua hōro'a 'oia i te mau fa'auera'a mana ia rātou 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia, mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro, te fa'aorara'a 'e 'aore rā te pohe.
- 5 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite au ē, 'ua tae mai te maita'i 'e te 'ino i mua i te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e 'ite i te maita'i 'e te 'ino ra, e 'ore roa ia 'oia e fa'ahapahia ; 'o 'oia rā 'o tē 'ite i te maita'i 'e te 'ino, e hōro'ahia mai ia iāna i tei au i tōna mau hina'aro, i te maita'i 'e 'aore rā i te 'ino, i te ora 'e 'aore rā i te pohe, i te 'oa'oa 'e 'aore rā i te 'ā'au taiā.
- 6 I teienei, nō te mea 'ua 'ite mau vau i teie mau mea, nō te aha ia vau i hina'aro rahi atu ai i te tahi atu ā, i te 'ore e rave noa i te 'ohipa i pi'ihia ai au ra ?
- 7 Nō te aha vau e hina'aro ai 'ia riro 'ei melahi, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia parau atu i te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei ?
- 8 Inaha ho'i, tē hōro'a ra te Fatu i te mau nūna'a ato'a, te ta'ata nō roto i tō rātou iho nūna'a 'e tō rātou iho reo, 'ia ha'api'i atu i tāna ra parau ; 'oia ia, 'o te mau mea ato'a tāna e mana'o i roto i tōna pa'ari e au ia rātou ; nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, tē feruri ra te Fatu ma te pa'ari i tei au i tā te parauti'a 'e te parau mau.

Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

- 9 'Ua 'ite au i tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai iā'u ra, 'e tē 'oa'oa nei au i te reira. 'Aita vau i 'oa'oa iā'u iho, tē 'oa'oa nei rā vau i tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai iā'u ; 'oia ia, 'e 'o teie ia tō'u 'oa'oa, penei a'e 'o te riro vau 'ei mauha'a i te rima o te Atua nō te arata'i i te tahi mau ta'ata i te tātarahapara'a ; 'e 'o te reira ia tō'u 'oa'oara'a.
- 10 'E inaha, 'ia 'ite au i tō'u ra mau taea'e e rave rahi ma te 'ā'au tātarahapa mau ra, 'e i te haerera'a mai i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'ua 'ī roa ihora tō'u 'ā'au i te 'oa'oa i reira ; 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ihora ho'i au i tā te Fatu i rave nō'u ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oia i tā'u ra pure ; 'oia ia, 'e i reira 'ua ha'amana'o ihora vau i tōna ra rima aroha i fa'atorohia mai iā'u nei ra.
- 11 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ato'a vau i te fa'atitira'ahia tō'u ra mau metua ; 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū ho'i au ē, 'ua fa'aora te Fatu ia rātou i te fa'atitira'a, 'e nā roto i te reira 'oia i fa'ati'a ai i tāna 'ēkālesia ; 'oia ia, nā te Fatu te Atua, te Atua nō Aberahama, te Atua nō Isaaka, 'e te Atua ho'i nō Iakoba, i fa'aora ia rātou i te fa'atitira'a.
- 12 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'amana'o noa vau i te fa'atitira'ahia tō'u ra mau metua ; 'e nā taua ato'a iho Atua i fa'aora ia rātou i te rima o tō 'Aiphiti i fa'aora ato'a ia rātou i te fa'atitira'a.
- 13 'Oia ia, nā taua ato'a iho Atua ra i fa'ati'a i tāna 'ēkālesia i rotopū ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e nā taua ato'a iho Atua ra i pi'i iā'u i teie nei pi'ira'a mo'a, 'ia a'o atu i te parau i teie nei feiā ; 'e 'ua ha'amanuia maita'i mai 'oia iā'u, 'e i roto i te reira i 'ī ai tō'u 'oa'oa.
- 14 'Āre'a rā 'aita vau i 'oa'oa nō tō'u ana'e iho manuiara'a, 'ua rahi atu ā rā tō'u nei 'oa'oa nō te manuiara'a ato'a o tō'u ra mau taea'e, 'o tei haere atu i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi.
- 15 Inaha, 'ua rave itoito rātou i te 'ohipa, 'e 'ua fa'ahotu mai i te hotu rahi ; 'e 'ua rahi ho'i tā rātou utu'a maita'i !
- 16 I teienei, 'ia ha'amana'o ana'e au i te manuia o tō'u ra mau taea'e, 'ua hōpoi-'ē-hia ia tō'u ra vārua, 'e 'ua riro ia mai te mea ra ē, 'ua ta'a 'ē te tino i te vārua, nō te rahi o tō'u ra 'oa'oa.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

17 'E i teienei, 'ia ha'amaita'i mai te Atua i tō'u ra mau taea'e, 'ia pārahi rātou i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i tā rātou i fa'afāriu mai nā roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haere fa'ahou i rāpae, 'ia 'āruē rā rātou iāna ē a muri noa atu. 'E 'ia fa'ati'a mai ho'i te Atua 'ia ravehia te reira mai te au i tā'u ra mau parau, 'oia ia, mai tā'u i parau ra. 'Āmene.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

Alama 30

- 1 Inaha, i teie nei, i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō te mau ta'ata o Amona pārahira'a i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, 'oia ia, i muri iho i tō te mau 'āti Lamana ti'avarura'ahia i rāpae i te fenua, 'e te tanura'ahia tō rātou feiā pohe 'e te mau ta'ata o te fenua ra—
- 2 'Aita ho'i i ti'a 'ia tai'ohia tō rātou feiā pohe nō te rahi ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i tō te mau 'āti Nephi feiā pohe i tai'ohia—'e i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā rātou tanura'a i tō rātou feiā pohe ra, 'e i muri iho i te mau mahana nō te ha'apaera'a mā'a, 'e nō te 'oto, 'e nō te pure, ('o te 'ahuru ma ono ia o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata o Nephi) 'ua tupu tāmāu ihora te hau i ni'a i te fenua tā'ato'a.
- 3 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'apa'o māite ihora te mau ta'ata i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu ; 'e 'ua ha'apa'o māite rātou i te mau 'ōro'a a te Atua, mai te au i te ture a Mose ra ; 'ua ha'api'ihia ho'i rātou 'ia ha'apa'o i te ture a Mose ē tae noa atu 'ua fa'ati'ahia te reira.
- 4 'E 'aita atu ra e pe'ape'a i tupu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nō te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma ono matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te ha'amatarā'a nō te 'ahuru 'e ma hitu matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua vai tāmāu noa te hau.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, i te pae hope'a nō te 'ahuru 'e ma hitu matahiti, 'ua tae mai te hō'ē ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e e Aneti-Mesia ho'i 'oia, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te a'o atu i te mau ta'ata ma te pāto'i atu i te mau parau tohu i parauhia e te mau peropheta, nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Mesia.
- 7 I teienei, 'aita roa e ture nō ni'a i te huru o te fa'aro'o o te hō'ē ta'ata ; 'e e mea au 'ore ho'i i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua 'ia vai te hō'ē noa atu ture tei fa'atupu i te au-ore-ra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata.
- 8 Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a : 'A fa'ata'a na 'outou i teie nei mahana i tā 'outou e ha'amori.
- 9 I teienei, mai te mea e hina'aro te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia ha'amori i te Atua, e ti'a ia iāna ; 'oia ia, mai te mea ē 'ua ti'aturi 'oia i te Atua, e ti'a ato'a ia iāna 'ia ha'amori iāna ; 'āre'a rā mai te mea ē 'aita 'oia e ti'aturi atu iāna, 'aita ia e ture nō te fa'au'u'a iāna.

Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

- 10 'Ia taparahi rā 'oia i te hō'ē ta'ata, 'ua fa'autu'ahia ia 'oia i te utu'a pohe ; 'e 'ia rave huna noa 'oia, 'ua fa'autu'a-ato'a-hia ia 'oia ; 'e 'ia 'eiā 'oia, 'ua fa'autu'a-ato'a-hia ia 'oia ; 'e 'ia fa'aturi 'oia, 'ua fa'autu'a-ato'a-hia ia 'oia ; 'oia ia, nō teie mau 'ohipa 'I'ino ato'a 'ua fa'autu'ahia rātou.
- 11 Nō te mea tē vai ra iho ā te hō'ē ture 'ia fa'autu'ahia te mau ta'ata mai tei au i tā rātou mau hara. 'Āre'a rā, 'aita e ture nō te fa'ahapa i te ta'ata nō ni'a i tōna ti'aturira'a ; 'e nō reira, 'ua fa'autu'ahia te ta'ata nō te mau hara ana'e tāna i rave ; nō reira 'ua 'aifāito te mau ta'ata ato'a i mua i te ture.
- 12 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora teie Aneti-Mesia, 'o Korihora te 'i'oa, ('aore ho'i tā te ture e fa'ahapara'a iāna) i te a'o atu i te mau ta'ata 'e 'aita e Mesia. 'E 'ua a'o atu 'oia mai teie te huru, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 13 'Auē ho'i 'outou 'o tei tāpe'ahia i raro a'e i te ti'aturira'a ma'ama'a 'e te faufa'a 'ore, nō te aha ho'i 'outou i fa'azugo ai ia 'outou iho i terā ra mau mea ma'ama'a ? Nō te aha ho'i 'outou i tī'a i noa ai i te Mesia ? 'Aita roa ho'i e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia 'ite i te hō'ē mea e tupu i mua nei.
- 14 Inaha, teie mau mea tā 'outou e mana'o nei e mau parau tohu, 'e tā 'outou ho'i e parau nei e mea hōro'ahia mai nō 'ō mai i te mau peropheta mo'a, inaha, e mau peu tumu ma'ama'a te reira nā tō 'outou mau metua.
- 15 E mea nāhea 'outou i 'ite ai ē, e parau mau te reira ? Inaha, 'aita roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia māramarama i te mau mea 'o tei 'ore i 'ite-mata-hia e 'outou ; nō reira 'aita roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia 'ite ē, tē vai ra te Mesia.
- 16 Tē hi'o ātea noa na 'outou ma te parau ē, tē 'ite ra 'outou i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā 'outou ra mau hara. Inaha rā, e mana'o te reira nō te hō'ē ferurira'a ma'ama'a ; 'e teie mana'o ma'ama'a ra nō te mau peu tumu ia a tō 'outou mau metua, 'o tei arata'i ia 'outou 'ia ti'aturi i te mau mea ha'avare.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

17 'E 'ua rahi atu ā ho'i te mau mea mai te reira te huru 'o tāna i parau atu ia rātou, ma te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou ē 'aita roa e tāra'ehara nō tā te ta'ata nei mau hara, tē manuia ra rā te ta'ata tāta'itahi mai te au i tāna ha'apa'ora'a i tā te tino i teie nei orara'a ; nō reira te manuia ra te ta'ata tāta'itahi mai te au i tōna 'aravihi, 'e tē riro noa ra te rē i te ta'ata i tei au i tōna ra pūai ; 'e te mau mea ato'a tā te ta'ata i rave e'ita ia i te hara.

18 'E 'ua nā reira atu ra 'oia i te a'o atu ia rātou, i te arata'i-'ē-ra'a atu i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e nā te reira i fa'ateitei i tō rātou upo'o i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; 'oia ia, i te arata'i 'ē atu i te mau vahine e rave rahi, 'e te mau tāne ato'a ho'i, 'ia tai'ata—ma te parau ia rātou ē, 'ia pohe ana'e te ta'ata, 'o te hope'a iho ā ia i reira.

19 I teienei, 'ua haere ato'a atu teie nei ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, nō te a'o atu i teie mau mea i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Amona, e mau ta'ata ho'i rātou i te mātāmua ra nō te mau 'āti Lamana.

20 Inaha rā, 'ua hau tō rātou 'aravihi i tō te mau ta'ata e rave rahi o tē mau 'āti Nephi ; 'ua rave ihora ho'i rātou iāna, 'e 'ua ru'uru'u ihora, 'e 'ua 'āfa'i atu ra iāna i mua ia Amona, te tahu'a rahi i ni'a i taua mau ta'ata ra.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia hōpoi-'ē-hia 'oia i rāpae i te fenua. 'E 'ua tae mai ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Gideona, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora ho'i 'oia i te a'o ato'a atu ia rātou ; 'e 'aita 'oia i manuia rahi i reira, nō te mea 'ua ravehia 'oia 'e 'ua ru'uru'uhia 'e 'ua 'āfa'ihia i mua i te tahu'a rahi 'e te ha'avā rahi ato'a i ni'a iho i te fenua.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te tahu'a rahi iāna : Nō te aha 'oe i haere noa ai ma te ha'api'o i te mau haere'a o te Fatu ? Nō te aha ho'i 'oe i ha'api'i ai i teie nei feiā ē, 'aita e Mesia, 'ia fa'a'orehia tō rātou 'oa'oa ? Nō te aha 'oe i pātō'i atu ai i te mau parau tohu ato'a a te mau peropheta mo'a ra ?

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms —telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

Now this man went over to the land of Jerushon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

- 23 I teienei, te i'oa o taua tahu'a rahi ra, 'o Gidona ia. 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra Korihora iāna : Nō te mea 'aita vau e ha'api'i ra i te mau peu tumu ma'ama'a a tō 'outou mau metua, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'aita vau i ha'api'i i teie nei feiā 'ia tāpe'a rātou ia rātou iho i raro a'e i te mau 'ōro'a 'e te 'ohipa ma'ama'a i tu'uhia mai e te mau tahu'a tahito, nō te haru i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i ni'a iho ia rātou ra, nō te tāpe'a noa ia rātou i roto i te pōiri, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia fa'ateitei i tō rātou upo'o i ni'a, 'ia 'umehia rā rātou i raro 'ia au i tā 'oe nā mau parau.
- 24 Tē parau na 'outou ē, e feiā ti'amā teie. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ē, tei roto rātou i te fa'atitira'a. Tē parau na 'outou ē, e parau mau ana'e taua mau parau tohu tahito ra. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ē, 'aita 'outou i 'ite e parau mau te reira.
- 25 Tē parau na 'outou ē, e feiā hara 'e e feiā hi'a teie, nō te hara a te hō'ē metua. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ē, 'aita a te tamari'i e hara nō tōna ra nā metua.
- 26 'E tē parau ato'a na 'outou ē, e tae mai te Mesia. Inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ē, 'aita 'outou i 'ite ē tē vai ra te Mesia. 'E tē parau ato'a na 'outou ē, e taparahihia 'oia nō te mau hara a tō te ao nei—
- 27 'E tē nā reira ra 'outou i te arata'i 'ē atu i teie nei feiā 'ia pe'e atu i te mau peu tumu ma'ama'a a tō 'outou mau metua, 'e mai te au ho'i i tō 'outou na mau hina'aro ; 'e tē tāpe'a ra 'outou ia rātou i raro ē tae roa ho'i i te fa'atitira'a, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fāna'o i te orara'a fa'ahiahia nā roto i te mau 'ohipa a tō rātou mau rima, 'ia 'ore 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia hi'o i ni'a ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i rātou 'ia fa'ati'ahia 'ia fāri'i i tō rātou ti'amāra'a 'e te mau mea e maita'i ai rātou.
- 28 'Oia ia, 'ua mata'u ho'i rātou 'ia rave i tā rātou iho, 'o te 'ino'ino mai tō rātou mau tahu'a ia rātou, 'e 'o te fa'ateimaha mai ia rātou i te zugo mai tei au i tō rātou ra mau hina'aro, 'e 'ua aratō ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi ē, nā roto i tā rātou mau peu tumu 'e tā rātou mau moemoeā 'e tā rātou mau parau faufa'a 'ore 'e tā rātou mau 'ōrama 'e tā rātou mau fa'ahuara'a i te mau parau 'aro, e māheaitu ia ia rātou, mai te mea ē 'aita rātou i rave mai te au i tā rātou mau parau, te tahi atu mea ora tei mana'ohia e rātou ē, 'o te Atua—'oia ho'i te hō'ē mea ora rahi tei 'ore i hi'ohia 'e tei 'ore ato'a i 'iteahia, 'o tei 'ore i vai na 'e tē 'ore ho'i e vai ē a muri noa atu.

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

29 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te tahu'a rahi 'e te ha'avā rahi i te 'eta'eta o tōna ra 'ā'au, 'oia ia, i tō rātou 'itera'a ē, 'ua fa'a'ino 'oia i te Atua, 'aita atu ra rātou i pāhono atu i tāna ra mau parau ; 'ua fa'aue atu ra rā rātou ia ru'uru'uhia 'oia ; 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra rātou iāna i te rima o te feiā tōro'a, 'e 'ua hōpoi atu ra iāna i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'ia 'āfa'ihia 'oia i mua ia Alama, 'e te ha'avā rahi, 'oia ho'i te tāvana i ni'a i te fenua ato'a ra.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'āfa'ihia 'oia i mua i te aro o Alama 'e te ha'avā rahi, 'ua tāmau noa ihora 'oia i tāna huru parau mai tei parauhia e ana i te fenua ra nō Gideona ; 'oia ia, 'ua tāmau noa 'oia i te fa'a'ino i te Atua.

31 'E 'ua fa'ahiti ihora 'oia i te mau parau pūai rahi i mua ia Alama, 'e 'ua fa'a'ino i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua ; ma te pari ha'avare ia rātou ē tē arata'i 'ē ra rātou i te mau ta'ata 'ia pe'e atu i te mau peu tumu ma'ama'a a tō rātou mau metua, 'ia fāna'o rātou i te orara'a fa'ahiahia nā roto i te mau 'ohipa a te mau ta'ata.

32 I teienei, 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : Tē 'ite na 'oe ē, 'aita roa mātou i tītau 'ia fāna'o i te orara'a fa'ahiahia nā roto i te mau 'ohipa a teie mau ta'ata ; inaha ho'i, i rave na vau i te 'ohipa i tō'u iho rima nō te tauturu iā'u iho mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā ē tae roa mai i teienei, noa atu ā ho'i te rahi o tō'u mau tere nā te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, nō te a'o atu i te parau a te Atua i tō'u ra mau ta'ata.

33 'E noa atu ā te rahi o te 'ohipa tā'u i rave i roto i te 'ēkālesia, 'aita roa vau i fāri'i i te hō'ē senine iti nō te 'ohipa tā'u i rave ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i te hō'ē a'e o tō'u ra mau taea'e, maori rā i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; 'e 'ua 'aufauhia mātou nō te reira mai te au i te ture nō tō mātou taime.

34 'E i teienei, 'aita mātou i fāri'i i te hō'ē a'e mea nō tā mātou mau 'ohipa i roto te 'ēkālesia, e aha ia tā mātou faufa'a ia 'ohipa mātou i roto i te 'ēkālesia, maori rā 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te parau mau, 'ia roa'a ia mātou te 'oa'oa i roto i te 'oa'oa o tō mātou mau taea'e ?

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

35 'E nō te aha ho'i 'oe i parau ai ē, tē a'o nei mātou i teie nei feiā 'ia roa'a te faufa'a ia mātou, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe iho na ē, 'aita roa mātou e fāri'i nei i te faufa'a ? 'E i teienei, tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, 'ua ha'avare mātou i teie nei feiā i tupu ai te 'oa'oa i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au ?

36 'E 'ua pāhono mai ra Korihora iāna, 'Oia ia.

37 'E 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, tē vai ra te Atua ?

38 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia, 'Aita roa.

39 I teienei, 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : E huna fa'ahou ānei 'oe ē tē vai ra te Atua, 'e e huna ato'a ānei 'oe ē tē vai ra te Mesia ? Inaha ho'i, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na ē, 'ua 'ite au ē tē vai ra te Atua, 'e e tae mai ho'i te Mesia.

40 'E i teienei, e aha ho'i tā 'oe parau fa'a'ite pāpū ē 'aita e Atua, 'e 'aore rā 'aita te Mesia e tae mai ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na ē, 'aita roa ia tā 'oe, maori rā 'o tā 'oe ana'e iho parau.

41 Inaha rā ho'i, 'ua riro te mau mea ato'a 'ei 'itera'a pāpū nō'u ē, e parau mau teie mau mea ; 'e 'ua riro ato'a te mau mea ato'a 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū ia 'oe ē, e parau mau iho ā ia ; e huna ānei 'oe i te reira mau mea ? Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe ē, e parau mau teie mau mea ?

42 Inaha, 'ua 'ite au ē, tē ti'aturi nei 'oe, 'āre'a rā tei roto ia 'oe na te vārua ha'avare, 'e 'ua tute 'ē atu 'oe i te Vārua o te Atua 'ia 'ore tōna e vāhi i roto ia 'oe na ; 'āre'a rā e mana tō te diablo i ni'a ia 'oe na, 'e tē arata'i noa ra 'oia ia 'oe na i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, ma te fa'a'ohipa i te tahi mau rāve'a 'ē 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia ha'amou i te mau tamari'i a te Atua.

43 'E i teienei 'ua nā 'ō mai ra Korihora ia Alama : Mai te mea e fa'a'ite mai 'oe i te hō'ē tāpa'o iā'u, 'ia 'ite mau vau ē, tē vai ra te Atua, 'oia ia, 'a fa'a'ite mai iā'u ē e mana tōna, 'ei reira e ti'aturi ia vau i te parau mau nō tā 'oe ra mau parau.

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

- 44 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : 'Ua nava'i tā 'oe mau tāpa'o i 'ite ; e aha ia 'oe e 'a'a ai i tō 'oe ra Atua ? E parau ānei 'oe ē, 'a fa'a'ite mai i te tāpa'o iā'u, 'e tei ia 'oe na ho'i te fa'a'itera'a pāpū a tō 'oe mau taea'e pā'āto'a, e tā te mau peropheta mo'a ato'a ho'i ? 'Ua tu'uhia mai te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a i mua ia 'oe na, 'oia ia, 'e te fa'a'ite māite nei te mau mea ato'a ē, tē vai ra te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'e te fenua ato'a, 'e te mau mea ato'a i ni'a iho i te reira, 'oia ia, 'e tōna fa'a'ohura'a ; 'oia ia, 'e te mau palaneta ato'a i tō rātou iho fa'aohura'a nā ni'a i tō rātou 'ē'a i ha'apa'ohia ra, tē fa'a'ite mai nei teie mau mea ē tē vai ra Tei Hamani i te mau mea ato'a ra.
- 45 'E noa atu i te reira tē hāhaere noa nei 'oe nō te arata'i 'ē atu i te 'ā'au o teie nei feiā, ma te parau atu ia rātou ē, 'aita e Atua ? 'E i teienei, e pāto'i noa ānei 'oe i teie mau fa'a'itera'a pāpū ? 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'Oia ia, e pāto'i ho'i au, maori rā 'ia fa'a'ite mai 'oe i te hō'ē tāpa'o iā'u nei.
- 46 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : Inaha, tē 'oto nei au nō te 'eta'eta rahi o tō 'oe nā 'ā'au, 'oia ia, nō te mea te pāto'i atu nei 'oe i te vārua nō te parau mau, 'ia ha'amouhia tō 'oe ra vārua.
- 47 Inaha rā, e mea maita'i a'e 'ia ha'amouhia tō 'oe na vārua, i te riro 'oe 'ei rāve'a nō te arata'i 'ē atu i te mau vārua e rave rahi i raro i te pohe, nā roto i tā 'oe parau ha'avare 'e tā 'oe mau parau tāvaimanino ; nō reira, 'ia huna fa'ahou ā 'oe na, inaha, e tā'iri te Atua ia 'oe 'ia vāvāhia, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'oe e hāmama fa'ahou i tō 'oe vaha, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'oe 'ia ha'avare fa'ahou i teie nei feiā.
- 48 I teienei, 'ua parau mai ra Korihora iāna : 'Aita vau i huna ē tē vai nei te Atua, 'aita rā vau e ti'aturi nei ē tē vai ra te Atua ; 'e te parau ato'a nei ho'i au ē, 'aita ato'a ho'i 'oe i 'ite ē, tē vai ra te Atua ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'oe 'ia fa'a'ite mai i te hō'ē tāpa'o iā'u, e'ita roa ia vau e ti'aturi.
- 49 I teienei, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Alama iāna : 'O teie tā'u e fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe na 'ei tāpa'o, e tā'iri-vāvā-hia 'oe, mai tā'u i parau a'enei, 'e tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'e nā roto i te i'oa o te Atua, e tā'iri-vāvā-hia 'oe, 'e e'ita roa 'oe e paraparau fa'ahou.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

50 I teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua tā'iri-vāvā-hia ihora Korihora, 'e 'aita atu ra i ti'a iāna 'ia paraparau, mai tā Alama i parau ra.

51 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te ha'avā rahi i te reira, 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tōna rima 'e 'ua pāpa'i ihora ia Korihora, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'Ua ti'aturi ānei 'oe i teienei i te mana o te Atua ? 'O vai tā 'oe i hina'aro ia Alama 'ia fa'a'ite atu i tāna ra tāpa'o ? 'Ua hina'aro ānei 'oe ia ha'amāuiui 'oia ia vetahi 'ē atu, nā roto i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te tāpa'o ia 'oe na ? Inaha, 'ua fa'a'ite iho nei 'oia i te tāpa'o ia 'oe na ; 'e i teienei, e ti'a ānei ia 'oe 'ia pāto'i noa mai ā ?

52 'E 'ua fa'atoro atu ra Korihora i tōna rima 'e 'ua pāpa'i ihora, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : Tē 'ite nei au ē, 'ua vāvāhia vau, 'e 'aita roa ho'i e ti'a iā'u 'ia paraparau ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'aita roa e mea, maori rā 'o te mana o te Atua tei fa'atupu i te reira i ni'a iā'u nei ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ite noa ato'a na vau ē, tē vai ra te Atua.

53 Inaha rā, i ha'avare na te diabolō iā'u nei ; 'e i fā mai na ho'i 'oia iā'u nei mai te hōho'a o te hō'ē melahi, ma te parau mai iā'u ē : 'A haere 'e 'a fa'afāriu mai i teie nei feiā, 'ua haere na rātou pā'āto'a nā te 'ē'a 'ē i te hō'ē Atua 'itea-'ore-hia. 'E 'ua parau mai ho'i 'oia iā'u : 'Aita e Atua ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'api'i mai 'oia iā'u i tā'u e parau atu. 'E 'ua ha'api'i atu vau i tāna ra mau parau ; 'e 'ua ha'api'i atu ho'i au i taua mau parau ra nō te mea e mea auhia te reira e te mana'o pae tino nei ; 'e 'ua ha'api'i atu vau ia rātou, ē tae noa atu 'ua manuia roa vau, 'e nō reira 'ua ti'aturi māite ho'i au i te reira 'ei parau mau ; 'e teie te tumu 'ua pāto'i au i te parau mau, ē tae roa atu 'ua fa'atae mai au i teie 'anatemara'a rahi i ni'a iho iā'u nei.

54 I teienei, 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a i te reira, 'ua tītau māite mai ra 'oia ia Alama 'ia pure i te Atua, 'ia rave-'ē-hia atu te 'anatemara'a mai ni'a atu iāna.

55 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : Mai te mea e rave-'ē-hia teie 'anatemara'a mai ni'a atu ia 'oe, e riro 'oe i te arata'i 'ē fa'ahou atu i te 'ā'au o teie nei feiā ; nō reira, 'ia vai noa te reira i ni'a iho ia 'oe na mai tā te Fatu e hina'aro.

56 'E i muri a'era, 'aita te 'anatemara'a i rave-'ē-hia atu mai ni'a atu ia Korihora ; 'ua ti'avaruhia atu rā 'oia, 'e 'ua hāhaere noa ihora 'oia i terā fare 'e i terā fare i te tāparura'a i te mā'a nāna.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

57 I teienei, 'ua purara 'oi'oi atu ra te parau nō ni'a i te mau mea i tupu i ni'a iho ia Korihora i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'ataehia atu ra te parau poro'i e te ha'avā rahi i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te fenua, i te fa'a'itera'a atu ia rātou 'o tei ti'aturi i te mau parau a Korihora 'ia rū rātou i te tātarahapa, 'o te tae ato'a mai te reira mau ha'avāra'a i ni'a iho ia rātou.

58 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite pāpū ihora rātou pā'āto'a i te mau 'ohipa 'Tino a Korihora ; nō reira 'ua fa'afāriu-fa'ahou-hia mai rātou pā'āto'a i te Fatu, 'e nā te reira i fa'ahope i te mau 'ohipa 'Tino a Korihora. 'E 'ua hāhaere noa ihora Korihora i terā fare 'e i terā fare i te tāparura'a i te mā'a nāna.

59 'E i muri a'era, 'a hāhaere noa ai 'oia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, i te mau ta'ata i fa'ata'a 'ē atu ia rātou iho i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e i pi'i ho'i ia rātou iho e mau 'āti Zorama, nō te mea 'ua arata'ihia rātou e te hō'ē ta'ata i parauhia 'o Zorama—'e 'a hāhaere noa 'oia i rotopū ia rātou, inaha, 'ua horo-noa-hia ihora nā ni'a iho iāna 'e 'ua ta'ata'ahihia 'oia ē tae noa atu 'ua pohe roa 'oia.

60 'E i teienei tē 'ite nei tātou i te hope'a o te ta'ata tei ha'api'o i te mau haere'a o te Fatu ; 'e i teienei tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'aita roa te diabolō e pāturu i tāna ra mau tamari'i i te mahana hope'a, e arata'i noa rā 'oia ia rātou i raro roa i hade.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

Alama 31

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia pohe a'era Korihora, 'ua fāri'i ihora Alama i te 'ite ē, tē ha'api'o ra te mau 'āti Zorama i te mau haere'a o te Fatu, 'e tē arata'i atu ra Zorama, tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere, i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata 'ia pi'o i raro i mua i te mau 'idolo vāvā ra, 'ua māuiui fa'ahou ihora tōna 'ā'au nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ta'ata.
- 2 'O te tumu ho'i ia nō te 'oto rahi o Alama 'ia 'ite i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua 'oto roa tōna 'ā'au nō te fa'ata'a-'ē-ra'a o te mau 'āti Zorama i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 3 I teienei, 'ua ha'aputupu te mau 'āti Zorama ia rātou iho i te fenua ra i ma'irihia e rātou i te i'oa ra 'o Anetionuma, tei te pae i te hiti'a o te rā i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, tāpiri i te pae miti, 'e tei te pae apato'a i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, tāpiri i te hiti o te mēdēbara i te pae apato'a, 'e 'ua 'ī roa taua mēdēbara ra i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 4 I teienei, 'ua mata'u roa te mau 'āti Nephi 'o te fa'ahoa atu te mau 'āti Zorama i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e roho' i te reira 'ei pau rahi nō te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 5 'E i teienei, nō te mea 'ua roho' i te porora'a i te parau 'ei rāve'a rahi nō te arata'i i te mau ta'ata 'ia rave i te 'ohipa tia—'oia ia, 'ua hau atu tō te reira mana i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te ta'ata i tō te 'o'e, 'e 'aore rā i tō te tahi atu mau mea ato'a, mai tei tae mai i ni'a ia rātou—no reira 'ua mana'o Alama e mea maita'i ia 'ia tāmata i te mana nō te parau a te Atua.
- 6 Nō reira 'ua rave 'oia ia Amona, 'e Aarona, 'e Omonera ; 'e 'ua vaiiho 'oia ia Himeni i roto i te 'ēkālesia i Zarahemela ; 'āre'a rā 'ua rave atu 'oia i nā ta'ata e to'otoru nā muri iho iāna, 'e 'oia ato'a ia Amuleka 'e Zeezeroma, 'o tē pārahi ra i Meleke ; 'e 'ua rave ato'a 'oia e piti o tāna ra mau tamari'i tamāroa.
- 7 I teienei, 'aita 'oia i rave i te matahiapo o tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa nā muri iho iāna, 'e 'o Helamana tōna i'oa ; 'āre'a rā te i'oa o nā tamaiti 'o tāna i rave nā muri iho iāna 'o Sibelona ia 'e Korianetona ; 'e 'o teie ia te mau i'oa o te mau ta'ata i haere atu nā muri iho iāna i rotopū i te mau 'āti Zorama, nō te a'o atu i te parau ia rātou.

Alma 31

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblōn and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

8 I teienei, e mau feiā 'ōrurehau te mau 'āti Zorama nō roto mai i te mau 'āti Nephi ; nō reira 'ua a'ohia atu te parau a te Atua ia rātou.

9 'Āre'a rā i ma'iri na rātou i roto i te mau hapa rahi, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e tāna mau ture, mai te au i te ture a Mose ra.

10 'E 'aita ato'a rātou e ha'apa'o i te mau 'ohipa a te 'ēkālesia, 'ia tāmau noa i te pure 'e i te ani i te Atua i te mau mahana ato'a 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ro'ohia i te fa'ahemara'a.

11 'Oia mau roa ia, 'ua ha'api'o rātou i te mau haere'a o te Fatu i te mau vāhi e rave rahi ; nō reira, teie ia te tumu i haere atu ai Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e i roto i taua fenua ra nō te a'o atu i te parau ia rātou.

12 I teienei, 'ia tae atu rā rātou i taua fenua ra, inaha, 'ua māere roa rātou 'a 'ite ai rātou ē, 'ua fa'ati'a te mau 'āti Zorama i te mau sunago, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu mai rātou ia rātou i te hō'ē mahana i te hepetoma, 'e 'ua parau rātou i taua mahana ra te mahana o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua ha'amori rātou i te ha'amorira'a huru 'ē roa, 'e 'o tei 'ore i 'itea ia Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e.

13 'Ua hāmani ho'i rātou i te hō'ē terōno i rōpū maita'i i tā rātou sunago, te hō'ē vāhi nō te ti'ara'a, 'e e mea teitei a'e i te upo'o ta'ata ; 'e i ni'a i te reira hō'ē noa iho ta'ata tē ti'a 'ia haere atu.

14 Nō reira, e mea ti'a i te ta'ata 'o tei hina'aro 'ia ha'amori 'ia haere atu 'e 'ia ti'a i ni'a iho i te reira, 'e 'ia fa'atoro atu i tōna rima i ni'a i te ra'i, 'e 'a ti'aoro ai ma te reo pūai, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

15 E te Atua mo'a, e te Atua mo'a ; 'ua ti'aturi mātou ē, 'o te Atua 'oe, 'e 'ua ti'aturi mātou ē, e mea mo'a 'oe, 'e i vai na 'oe 'ei vārua, 'e tē vai nei 'oe 'ei vārua, 'e e vai ā 'oe 'ei vārua ē a muri noa atu.

16 E te Atua mo'a ē, 'ua ti'aturi mātou ē, 'ua fa'ata'a 'ē atu 'oe ia mātou i tō mātou mau taea'e ; 'e 'aita mātou i ti'aturi i te peu tumu a tō mātou mau taea'e, tei tu'uhia mai ia rātou nā roto i te mau peu tamari'i a tō rātou mau metua ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ti'aturi mātou ē, 'ua mā'itihia mātou e 'oe na 'ia riro 'ei mau tamari'i mo'a nā 'oe na ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a mai 'oe ia mātou ē, 'aita e Mesia.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

- 17 'Āre'a rā hō'ē ā tō 'oe huru i nanahi ra, i teie nei mahana, ē a muri noa atu ; 'e 'ua mā'iti 'oe ia mātou 'ia fa'aorahia, 'a mā'itihia ai rātou ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e ia mātou nei 'ia hurihia e tō 'oe riri 'ū'ana i raro i hade ; 'e nō teie nei 'ohipa mo'a, e te Atua, tē ha'amāuruuru nei mātou ia 'oe ; 'e tē ha'amāuruuru ato'a nei mātou ia 'oe i te mea 'ua mā'iti 'oe ia mātou, 'ia 'ore mātou 'ia pe'e atu i te mau peu tumu ma'ama'a a tō mātou mau taea'e, 'o tei tāpe'a ia rātou i raro 'ia ti'aturi i te Mesia, 'e nā te reira i arata'i i tō rātou 'ā'au 'ia haere 'ē atu ia 'oe, e tō mātou Atua.
- 18 'E tē ha'amāuruuru fa'ahou nei mātou ia 'oe, e te Atua, i te mea e feiā mā'itihia 'e e feiā mo'a mātou. 'Āmene.
- 19 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Alama 'e tōna ra mau taea'e, 'e tāna nā tamari'i tamāroa i taua mau pure ra, 'ua māere roa ihora rātou.
- 20 Inaha ho'i, 'ua haere atu te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e 'ua pūpū atu i te hō'ē ā huru pure.
- 21 I teienei 'ua parauhia taua vāhi e rātou, 'o Rameumepitoma, 'e terā te aura'a 'ia 'iritihia, te terōno mo'a.
- 22 I teienei, i ni'a iho i teie terōno 'ua pure atu te mau ta'ata ato'a i te hō'ē ā huru pure i te Atua, ma te ha'amāuruuru atu i tō rātou Atua i te mea 'ua mā'itihia rātou e ana, 'e 'aita 'oia i arata'i 'ē atu ia rātou 'ia pe'e atu i te peu tumu a tō rātou mau taea'e ; 'e 'aita tō rātou 'ā'au i fa'afāriu-'ē-hia 'ia ti'aturi i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu, 'o tei 'ore i 'iteahia e rātou ra.
- 23 I teienei, i muri iho i tō te mau ta'ata pūpūra'a atu i tā rātou mau ha'amāuruurura'a mai te reira huru, 'ua ho'i atu ra rātou i tō rātou iho mau fare, 'e 'aita rātou i paraparau fa'ahou nō ni'a i tō rātou Atua ē tae roa atu 'ua ha'aputupu fa'ahou mai rātou i taua terōno mo'a ra, nō te ha'amāuruuru atu mai te au i tā rātou huru ravera'a.
- 24 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Alama i te reira, 'ua 'oto roa ihora tōna ra 'ā'au ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, e feiā parauti'a 'ore 'e e feiā ha'api'o rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, 'ua onono noa tō rātou 'ā'au i te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau huru tao'a maitata'i ato'a.
- 25 'Oia ia, 'ua 'ite ato'a 'oia ē, 'ua fa'ateiteihia tō rātou 'ā'au i te fa'aahaaha rahi i roto i tō rātou ra te'ote'o.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

- 26 'E 'ua fa'ateitei a'era 'oia i tōna reo i ni'a i te ra'i, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E aha te maoro, e te Fatu, 'o tā 'oe i hīna'aro 'ia ora noa tō 'oe mau tāvini i raro nei i te tino nei, nō te hi'o atu i teie nei mau 'ohipa 'ino rahi i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ?
- 27 Inaha, e te Atua, tē ti'aoro atu nei rātou ia 'oe ; 'ua horomi'ihia rā tō rātou 'ā'au i roto i tō rātou te'ote'o. Inaha, e te Atua, tē ti'aoro atu nei rātou ia 'oe i tō rātou vaha, 'ua 'ī roa rā rātou i te te'ote'o, i te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o te ao nei.
- 28 'A hi'o na, e tō'u Atua, i tō rātou 'ahu moni rahi, 'e tō rātou mau tāpe'a, 'e tō rātou mau fa'a'una'una rima, 'e tā rātou mau mea fa'a'una'unara'a 'auro, 'e tā rātou mau mea maitata'i ato'a nō te fa'a'una'una ia rātou ; 'e inaha, 'ua nounou tō rātou 'ā'au i te reira, 'e tē ti'aoro nei rā rātou ia 'oe, ma te parau ē—Tē ha'amāuruuru nei mātou ia 'oe, e te Atua, nō te mea e feiā mā'itihia mātou nō 'oe, e pohe ho'i te tahi atu pae.
- 29 'Oia ia, tē parau nei rātou ē, 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oe ia rātou ē 'aita e Mesia.
- 30 E te Fatu e te Atua ē, e aha te maorora'a tā 'oe e fa'a'oroma'i 'ia vai noa teie nei 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e teie nei hara i roto i teie nei feiā ? E te Fatu, 'a hōro'a mai i te pūai iā'u, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i tō'u nei mau paruparu ? E mea paruparu ho'i au, 'e nā roto i teie mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i rotopū i teie nei mau ta'ata tē māuiui nei tō'u nei vārua.
- 31 E te Fatu, tē 'oto rahi nei tō'u 'ā'au ; 'a ha'amāhanahana mai 'oe i tō'u nei vārua i roto i te Mesia ? E te Fatu, 'a hōro'a mai 'oe i te pūai iā'u, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i teie mau 'ati e tae mai i ni'a iā'u nei, nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a teie nei feiā.
- 32 E te Fatu, 'a ha'amāhanahana mai 'oe i tō'u nei vārua, 'e 'a ha'amanuia mai iā'u 'e te mau ta'ata rave 'ohipa i pīha'i iho iā'u nei—'oia ho'i ia Amona, 'e ia Aarona, 'e ia Omonera, 'e 'oia ato'a ia Amuleka, 'e ia Zeezeroma, 'e i tā'u nā tamari'i tamāroa to'opiti ato'a ho'i—'oia ia, 'a ha'amāhanahana mai 'oe ia rātou ato'a, e te Fatu. 'Oia ia, 'a ha'amāhanahana mai 'oe i tō rātou vārua i roto i te Mesia.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

- 33 'A tauturu mai 'oe ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te pūai, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i tō rātou mau 'ati 'o tē tae mai i ni'a ia rātou nō te mau 'ohipa 'T'ino a teie nei feiā.
- 34 E te Fatu, 'a tauturu mai 'oe ia mātou, 'ia manuia mātou 'ia arata'i fa'ahou mai ia rātou ia 'oe na i roto i te Mesia.
- 35 Inaha, e te Fatu, e mea faufa'a rahi tō rātou vārua, e mau taea'e ho'i rātou e rave rahi nō mātou, nō reira, 'a hōro'a mai ia mātou, e te Fatu, i te mana 'e te pa'ari 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia arata'i fa'ahou mai ia rātou, i tō mātou mau taea'e, ia 'oe na.
- 36 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua tu'u atu ra 'oia i tōna nā rima i ni'a iho ia rātou ato'a 'o tei pīha'i iho iāna ra. 'E inaha, 'a tu'u ai 'oia i tōna ra nā rima i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'ua 'i ihora rātou i te Vārua Mo'a.
- 37 'E i muri iho i tō rātou fa'ata'a-'ē-ra'a ia rātou iho te tahi 'e i te tahi, ma te feruri 'ore e aha tā rātou e 'amu, 'e e aha tā rātou e inu, 'e e aha tā rātou e 'ō'omo.
- 38 'E 'ua tauturu mai te Fatu ia rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia po'ia, 'ia 'ore ho'i ia po'ihā ; 'oia iā, 'ua hōro'a ato'a 'oia i te pūai i roto ia rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ro'ohia i te mau huru 'ati, maori rā 'ia horomi'ihia tō rātou mau 'ati i roto i te 'oa'oa o te Mesia. I teienei, 'ua au teie i te pure a Alama ; 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia iā, nō te mea 'ua pure 'oia ma te fa'aro'o.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

Alama 32

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te poro haere i te parau a te Atua i te mau ta'ata, ma te tomo atu i roto i tō rātou mau sunago, 'e i roto i tō rātou mau fare, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua poro ato'a atu ra rātou i te parau i roto i tō rātou mau aroā.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tā rātou mau 'ohipa rahi i rotopū ia rātou, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te manuia i rotopū i te pupu feiā veve ; inaha ho'i, 'ua hurihia rātou i rāpae i te mau sunago nō te nehenehe 'ore o tō rātou mau 'ahu.
- 3 Nō reira, 'aita rātou i fa'ati'ahia 'ia tomo atu i roto i tō rātou mau sunago nō te ha'amori i te Atua, nō te mea 'ua fa'arirohia rātou 'ei mea vi'ivi'i ; nō reira e feiā veve ho'i rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'arirohia rātou e tō rātou mau taea'e 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore ; nō reira e mea veve rātou i te mau mea o teie nei ao ; 'e 'oia ato'a e mea ha'eha'a rātou i te 'ā'au.
- 4 I teienei, 'a ha'api'i atu ai 'e 'a a'o atu ai Alama i te mau ta'ata i ni'a i te 'āivi ra o Onida, 'ua haere mai ra te hō'ē pupu ta'ata rahi iāna ra, 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie i parahia iho nei, 'oia ho'i, tei ha'eha'a te 'ā'au nō tō rātou veve i te mau mea o teie nei ao.
- 5 'E 'ua haere mai ra rātou ia Alama ra ; 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te ta'ata rahi mātāmua i rotopū ia rātou iāna : Inaha, e aha tā tō'u nei mau taea'e e rave, 'ua 'ino'inohia ho'i rātou e te mau ta'ata ato'a nō tō rātou ra veve ; 'oia ia, e tō mātou iho ho'i mau tahu'a ; 'e 'ua huri ho'i rātou ia mātou i rāpae i tō mātou ra mau sunago 'o tā mātou i hāmani i tō mātou iho rima nā roto i te 'ohipa rahi roa ; 'e 'ua huri rātou ia mātou i rāpae nō tō mātou veve rahi ; 'e 'aita tō mātou e vāhi nō te ha'amori i tō mātou Atua ; 'e inaha, nahea ia mātou nei ?
- 6 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Alama i te reira, 'ua fāriu ti'a atu ra tōna mata iāna, 'e 'ua hi'o atu ra 'oia ma te 'oa'oa rahi ; 'e 'ua 'ite ihora 'oia ē, nō tō rātou mau 'ati i ha'eha'a ai rātou, 'e tē fa'aineinehia ra rātou nō te fa'aro'o i te parau.
- 7 Nō reira 'aita 'oia i parau fa'ahou atu i te tahi atu pupu ta'ata ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tōna rima, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata tāna e 'ite ra, 'o tei tātarahapa mau, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou :
- 8 Tē 'ite nei au ē, 'ua ha'eha'a roa tō 'outou 'ā'au ; 'e mai te mea e parau mau te reira, e ao iā tō 'outou.

Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

- 9 Inaha, 'ua parau a'enei ho'i tō 'outou taea'e ē, Nāhea ia mātou nei ?—'ua hurihia ho'i mātou i rāpae i tō mātou mau sunago, 'e 'aita e ti'a ia mātou 'ia ha'amori i tō tātou Atua.
- 10 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, 'aita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ha'amori i te Atua, maori rā i roto i tō 'outou mau sunago ana'e ra ?
- 11 'E 'oia fa'ahou, e ui atu vau, tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, hō'ē noa iho tō 'outou ha'amorira'a i te Atua i te hepetoma hō'ē e ti'a ai ?
- 12 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mea maita'i tō 'outou hurira'ahia i rāpae i tō 'outou mau sunago, 'ia ha'eha'a 'outou, 'e 'ia ha'api'i ho'i 'outou i te pa'ari ; e mea ti'a ho'i 'ia ha'api'i 'outou i te pa'ari ; nō te mea 'ua hurihia 'outou i rāpae ra, i 'ino'inohia ai 'outou e tō 'outou mau taea'e, e nō tō 'outou veve rahi roa i fa'aha'eha'ahia ai tō 'outou 'ā'au ; e mea ti'a ho'i ia fa'aha'eha'ahia 'outou.
- 13 'E i teienei, nō te mea 'ua fa'aha'eha'ahia 'outou, e ao tō 'outou ; ia fa'aha'eha'ahia ho'i te ta'ata, e riro paha 'oia i te tātarahapa ; 'oia mau, 'o tē tātarahapa, e arohahia mai ia 'oia ; 'e 'o tē roa'a te aroha 'e tē tāmau māite ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e ora ia tōna.
- 14 'E i teienei, mai tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou na ē, nō te mea 'ua fa'aha'eha'ahia 'outou, e ao tō 'outou, 'aita ānei 'outou e mana'o nei ē, e ao rahi a'e tō rātou 'o tē fa'aha'eha'a mai ia rātou iho nō te parau ?
- 15 'Oia ia, 'o tē fa'aha'eha'a mau iāna ihora ma te tātarahapa i tāna mau hara, 'e te tāmau māite ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e ao ia tōna—'oia ia, e ao rahi a'e tōna i tō te ta'ata i fa'aha'eha'ahia nō tō rātou veve rahi ra.
- 16 Nō reira, e ao ho'i tō rātou 'o tei fa'aha'eha'a noa ia rātou iho ma te tūra'i-'ore-hia 'ia fa'aha'eha'a ; 'oia ia, e ao tōna 'o tē ti'aturi i te parau a te Atua, 'e 'o tē bāpetizohia ma te 'ā'au 'eta'eta 'ore ; 'oia ia, ma te arata'i-'ore-hia 'ia 'ite i te parau, 'e 'aore rā ma te tūra'i-'ore-hia 'ia 'ite, hou rātou e ti'aturi ai i te reira.
- 17 'Oia ia, e rave rahi tē parau mai ē : Mai te mea e fa'a'ite mai 'oe ia mātou i te hō'ē tāpa'o nō te ra'i mai, 'ei reira mātou e 'ite pāpū ai ; 'e 'ei reira mātou e ti'aturi ai.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?— for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

- 18 I teienei, tē ani nei au, e fa'aro'o ānei te reira ?
Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, e 'ere roa ia ;
nō te mea 'ia 'ite te ta'ata i te hō'ē mea, 'aita ia e tumu
nō te ti'aturi, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia.
- 19 'E i teienei, e aha atu ā ia te rahira'a o te
'anatemara'a o te ta'ata i 'ite i te hina'aro o te Atua 'e
'aita i ha'apa'o i te reira, i tō te ta'ata i ti'aturi noa ma
te 'ite 'ore, 'e 'ua 'ōfati i te ture ?
- 20 I teienei, 'ia ha'avā 'outou i te reira e ti'a ai. Inaha,
tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mea ta'a 'ē maita'i
tō te hō'ē ta'ata huru i tō te tahi ; 'e e fāri'i te ta'ata
tāta'itahi i tei au i tāna ra 'ohipa.
- 21 'E i teienei, mai tā'u i parau a'enei nō ni'a i te
fa'aro'o—E 'ere te fa'aro'o i te 'ite pāpū mau i te mau
mea e vai nei ; nō reira mai te mea e fa'aro'o tō 'oe, tē
ti'aturi ra ia 'oe i te mau mea 'aore i 'ite-mata-hia, 'o
tei riro rā 'ei parau mau.
- 22 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na,
'e 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, e aroha tō
te Atua i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa ;
nō reira tē hina'aro nei 'oia, i te mātāmua roa, 'ia
ti'aturi 'outou, 'oia ia, i tāna ra parau.
- 23 'E i teienei, tē fa'a'ite mai ra 'oia i tāna parau nā
roto i te mau melahi i te ta'ata nei ; 'oia ia, e 'ere i te
tāne ana'e, i te vahine ato'a rā. I teienei, e 'ere ia 'o
rātou ana'e ra ; 'ua hōro'ahia mai ho'i te mau parau i
te mau tamari'i ri'i e rave rahi taime, 'e 'ua
fa'aha'amā atu te reira i te feiā 'aravihi 'e te feiā 'ite.
- 24 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua ani mai
'outou iā'u nei ē, nāhea 'outou nō te mea 'ua 'atihia
'outou 'e 'ua hurihia ho'i i rāpae—i teienei, 'aita vau i
hina'aro 'ia mana'o 'outou ē, e ha'avā atu vau ia
'outou mai te au ana'e i te parau mau ra—
- 25 'E 'aita ho'i au i mana'o ē, 'ua tūra'ihia 'outou
pā'āto'a 'ia fa'aha'eha'a ia 'outou iho ; 'āre'a rā tē
ti'aturi nei au ē, tē vai ra te tahi pae i rotopū ia 'outou
'o tei fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho, noa atu ā ho'i tō rātou
huru.
- 26 I teienei, mai tā'u i parau nō ni'a i te fa'aro'o—e
'ere ia i te 'ite pāpū mau—'oia ato'a tā'u nei mau
parau. 'Aita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia 'ite pāpū roa i te
ha'amatarā'a, 'oia ato'a te fa'aro'o, e 'ere ato'a ia i te
'ite pāpū roa.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you,
Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause
to believe, for he knoweth it.

And now, how much more cursed is he that
knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he
that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and
falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say
unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on
the other; and it shall be unto every man according
to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to
have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye
have faith ye hope for things which are not seen,
which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that
ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all
who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in
the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on
his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto
men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is
not all; little children do have words given unto them
many times, which confound the wise and the
learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired
to know of me what ye shall do because ye are af-
flicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye
should suppose that I mean to judge you only ac-
cording to that which is true—

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been
compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe
that there are some among you who would humble
themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances
they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a
perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye
cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection,
any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

27 Inaha rā, mai te mea e ara 'outou 'e e fa'aaraara ho'i i tō 'outou mau mana'o, i te tāmata i tā'u nei mau parau, 'e i te fa'a'ohipa ho'i i te hō'ē vāhi iti ha'iha'i noa nō te fa'aro'o ; 'oia ia, noa atu 'aita i ti'a ia 'outou, maori rā 'o te hina'aro noa 'ia ti'aturi ; 'a vaiiho i taua hina'aro ra 'ia tupu i roto ia 'outou ē tae noa atu 'ua ti'aturi 'outou 'e 'ua ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fāri'i i te tahi tufa'a nō tā'u nei mau parau.

28 I teienei, e fa'au tātou i te parau i te hō'ē huero. I teienei, mai te mea e fa'ati'a 'outou 'ia tanuhia te hō'ē huero i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au, inaha, mai te mea e huero mau 'e 'aore rā e huero maita'i, 'e mai te mea 'aita 'outou e huri atu i te reira i rāpae nā roto i tō 'outou ti'aturi 'ore, 'e nā roto i te reira e pāto'i ai 'outou i te Vārua o te Fatu ra, inaha, e ha'amata ia te reira i te tupu rahi i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au ; 'e 'ia 'ite 'outou i te tupura'a rahi o te reira, e ha'amata 'outou i te parau i roto ia 'outou iho ē—e huero maita'i mau 'ia teie, 'e 'aore rā e parau maita'i teie, nō te mea 'ua ha'amata te reira i te fa'arahi i tō'u vārua ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'amata te reira i te ha'amāramarama i tō'u 'ite, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'amata te reira i te riro 'ei mea 'oa'oa roa i roto iā'u nei.

29 I teienei, inaha, 'aita ānei te reira e fa'arahi i tō 'outou fa'aro'o ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Oia roa ia ; 'aita rā te reira i riro 'ei 'ite pāpū roa.

30 Inaha rā, 'ia oru te huero, 'e 'ia 'ōteo, 'e 'ia ha'amata ho'i i te tupu, 'ei reira 'outou e parau ai ē, e huero maita'i ia ; inaha ho'i, tē 'oru nei, 'e tē 'ōteo nei, 'e tē tupu nei ho'i. 'E i teienei, inaha, 'aita ānei te reira e ha'apūai i tō 'outou fa'aro'o ? 'Oia ia, e ha'apūai te reira i tō 'outou fa'aro'o : 'e e parau ho'i 'outou ē, 'ua 'ite au e huero maita'i te reira ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ōteo mai 'e 'ua ha'amata i te tupu.

31 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua 'ite pāpū ānei 'outou ē, e huero maita'i te reira ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Oia roa ia ; e fa'ahotu mai ho'i te mau huero tāta'itahi ato'a i tōna ihora huru mau.

32 Nō reira, 'ia tupu te huero, e mea maita'i ia, 'āre'a rā 'ia 'ore e tupu, inaha e 'ere ia i te mea maita'i, nō reira e fa'aru'ehia ia.

33 'E i teienei, inaha, nō te mea 'ua tāmata 'outou i te reira, 'e 'ua tanu i te huero, 'e 'ua oru 'e 'ua 'ōteo, 'e 'ua tupu ho'i, 'ua 'ite pāpū ia 'outou ē, e huero maita'i ia te reira.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

34 'E i teienei, inaha, e mea pāpū maita'i ānei tō 'outou 'ite ? 'Oia ia, e mea pāpū maita'i tō 'outou 'ite i taua mea ra, 'e 'ua 'ore tō 'outou fa'aro'o ; nō te mea 'ua riro ia 'ei 'ite pāpū mau, 'ua 'ite ho'i 'outou ē, 'ua fa'a'oru te parau i tō 'outou vārua, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a 'outou ē, 'ua 'ōteo i ni'a, 'e te rahi ra tō 'outou māramarama, 'e te tupu rahi ra ho'i tō 'outou mana'o.

35 'E i teienei, e 'ere ānei te reira i te parau mau ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Oia roa ia, nō te mea 'o te māramarama ia ; 'e te mea māramarama ato'a ra, e mea maita'i ia, nō te mea te 'itehia ra, nō reira, e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia 'ite ē, e mea maita'i ia ; 'e i teienei, inaha, i muri iho i tō 'outou fāri'ira'a i teie māramarama, 'ua pāpū maita'i roa ānei tō 'outou 'ite i reira ?

36 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'Aita roa ia, e 'eiaha ho'i 'outou e ha'apae i tō 'outou fa'aro'o i te hiti, 'ua fa'a'ohipa noa ho'i 'outou i tō 'outou fa'aro'o nō te tanu i te huero, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia 'ite e mea maita'i ānei te huero.

37 'E inaha, 'a ha'amata ai te tumu rā'au i te tupu, e parau ia 'outou ē : E 'atu'atu māite tātou i te reira, 'ia a'ahia, 'ia tupu i ni'a, 'e 'ia fa'ahotu mai ho'i i te mā'a nā tātou. 'E i teienei, inaha, mai te mea e 'atu'atu māite 'outou i te reira, e a'ahia ia, 'e e tupu i ni'a, 'e e fa'ahotu mai ho'i i te mā'a.

38 'Āre'a rā 'ia ha'apa'o 'ore 'outou i te tumu rā'au, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'ia 'atu'atu maita'i, inaha, 'aita ia e a'ahia ; 'e 'ia tae mai te ve'ave'a o te mahana ra 'e 'ia ha'apa'apa'a i te reira, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'aita i a'ahia e 'ōriorio ia, 'e e 'ōhiti ho'i 'outou i te reira 'e 'a huri atu ai i rāpae.

39 I teienei, e 'ere nō te mea 'aita te huero i te mea maita'i, e 'ere ato'a nō te mea 'aita tōna mā'a i te mea hina'arohia ; nō te mea rā e fenua pāpāmarō tō 'outou, 'e 'aita 'outou e 'atu'atu i te tumu rā'au, nō reira 'aita 'outou e fāri'i i te hotu nō te reira.

40 'E nō reira, mai te mea 'aita 'outou e 'atu'atu i te parau, ma te hi'o atu i mua ma te 'ā'au fa'aro'o i te hotu nō te reira, e 'ore ia 'outou e pōfa'i mai i te hotu nō ni'a mai i te tumu rā'au nō te ora.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

41 'Āre'a rā mai te mea e 'atu'atu 'outou i te parau, 'oia ia, 'ia 'atu'atu i te tumu rā'au 'a 'ōteo mai ai te reira, nā roto i tō 'outou fa'aro'o 'e ma te itoito rahi, 'e te fa'a'oroma'i ho'i, ma te hi'o atu i mua i te hotu nō te reira, e a'ahia ia te reira ; 'e inaha, e riro te reira 'ei tumu rā'au 'o tē tupu noa i ni'a ē tae atu ai i te ora mure 'ore.

42 'E nō tō 'outou itoito, 'e tō 'outou fa'aro'o, 'e tō 'outou fa'a'oroma'i i te parau nō te 'atu'atura'a, 'ia a'ahia i roto ia 'outou na, inaha, 'aita e maoro e pōfa'i mai 'outou i te hotu nō te reira, 'o tei riro 'ei mea faufa'a rahi, 'e 'o tei hau tōna monamona i tō te mau mea monamona ato'a ra, 'e 'o tei riro 'ei mea teatea atu i te mau mea teatea ato'a ra ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua hau atu tōna māra'a i tō te mau mea mā ato'a ra ; 'e e rave 'outou i te fa'a'amu'a i tō reira hotu ē tae noa atu 'ua pa'ia maita'i 'outou, 'e 'aita 'outou e po'ia fa'ahou, 'e 'aita ho'i e po'ihā fa'ahou.

43 I reira, e tō'u mau taea'e, e 'ō'oti 'outou i te mau utu'a maita'i nō tō 'outou fa'aro'o, 'e tō 'outou itoito, 'e te fa'a'oroma'i, 'e te marū ma te tīa'i i te tumu rā'au 'ia fa'ahotu mai i te mā'a nā 'outou.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

Alama 33

- 1 I teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Alama i te parau i teie mau parau, 'ua tonu mai ra rātou i te hō'ē ve'a iāna nō tō rātou hina'aro 'ia 'ite e mea ti'a ānei ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi i te hō'ē noa iho Atua, 'ia roa'a mai ia rātou teie hotu 'o tāna i parau na, 'e nāhea ho'i rātou 'ia tanu i te huero, 'oia ho'i te parau o tāna i parau, 'o tāna ho'i i parau ē, 'ia tanuhia te reira i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au e ti'a ai ; 'oia ho'i, nāhea rātou 'ia fa'a'ohipa i tō rātou fa'aro'o.
- 2 'E 'ua parau atu ra Alama ia rātou : Inaha, 'ua parau mai 'outou ē, 'aita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ha'amori i tō 'outou Atua, nō te mea 'ua hurihia 'outou i rāpae i tō 'outou mau sunago. Inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai te mea tē mana'o na 'outou ē, 'aita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ha'amori i te Atua, e hape rahi ia tō 'outou i reira, 'e e mea ti'a ho'i 'ia 'imi 'outou i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ; 'e mai te mea tē mana'o na 'outou ē nā rātou i ha'api'i mai i te reira ia 'outou, 'aita ia 'outou i māramarama.
- 3 Tē ha'amana'o ra ānei 'outou i te tai'ora'a i tā Zenosa, te peropheta tahito, i parau nō ni'a i te pure 'e te ha'amorira'a ?
- 4 I nā 'ō na ho'i 'oia ē : E aroha tō 'oe, e te Atua, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o mai ho'i 'oe i tā'u ra pure, 'a pārahi ai au i roto i te mēdēbara ra ; 'oia ia, 'ua aroha mai 'oe iā'u, 'a pure atu ai au nō tō'u ra mau 'enemi, 'e 'ua fa'afāriu mai ho'i 'oe ia rātou iā'u nei.
- 5 'Oia ia, e te Atua, 'ua aroha mai 'oe iā'u 'a ti'aoro atu ai au ia 'oe i roto tā'u ra 'āua, 'e 'a ti'aoro atu ai au ia 'oe nā roto i tā'u ra pure, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oe iā'u.
- 6 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e te Atua, 'ia ho'i atu vau i tō'u ra fare, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oe i tā'u ra pure.
- 7 'E 'ia tomo a'era vau i roto i tō'u ra piha, 'e 'ia pure atu ia 'oe, e te Fatu, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oe iā'u.
- 8 'Oia ia, tē aroha mai ra 'oe i tā 'oe ra mau tamari'i, 'ia ti'aoro atu rātou ia 'oe, 'ia fa'aro'ohia rātou e 'oe 'eiaha rā e te ta'ata nei, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o ia 'oe ia rātou.
- 9 'Oia ia, e te Atua, 'ua aroha mai 'oe iā'u, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o mai ho'i i tā'u mau ti'aorora'a i rotopū i tō 'oe ra mau 'āmuira'a.

Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

- 10 'Oia ia, 'ua fa'aro'o ato'a mai 'oe ia'u 'a hurihia atu ai au i rapae 'e 'a 'ino'inohia ai ho'i au e to'u ra mau 'enemi; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oe i ta'u ra mau ti'aorora'a, 'e 'ua riri ho'i i to'u ra mau 'enemi, 'e 'ua taho'o 'oi'oi mai 'oe ia ratou i roto i to 'oe ra riri na roto i te ha'amoura'a.
- 11 'E 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oe ia'u no to'u ra mau 'ati 'e no to'u ra 'a'au ha'avare 'ore, 'e no ta 'oe Tamaiti i na reira ai 'oe i te aroha mai ia'u; no reira e ti'aoro atu vau ia 'oe i roto i to'u mau 'ati ato'a, 'e tei roto ho'i ia 'oe to'u ra 'oa'oa; 'e 'ua fa'afariu 'e atu 'oe i ta 'oe mau ha'avara'a ia'u nei, na roto i ta 'oe ra Tamaiti.
- 12 'E i teienei, 'ua parau atu ra Alama ia ratou: Te ti'aturi ra anei 'outou i taua mau papa'ira'a mo'a ra i papa'ihia e te feia i tahito ra?
- 13 Inaha, mai te mea e na reira 'outou, e ti'aturi ia 'outou i ta Zenosa i parau mai; inaha ho'i, te na 'o ra 'oia: 'Ua fa'afariu 'e atu 'oe i ta 'oe mau ha'avara'a na roto i ta 'oe ra Tamaiti.
- 14 I teienei, inaha, e to'u mau taea'e, e ui atu vau e 'ua tai'o anei 'outou i te mau papa'ira'a mo'a? Mai te mea e 'ua na reira 'outou, no te aha ia 'aita 'outou i ti'aturi i te Tamaiti a te Atua?
- 15 'Aore ho'i i papa'ihia e, 'o Zenosa ana'e tei parau mai i teie mau mea; 'are'a ra 'ua parau ato'a mai 'o Zenoke i teie mau mea—
- 16 Inaha ho'i, te na 'o ra 'oia: 'Ua riri 'oe, e te Fatu, i teie nei feia, no te mea 'aita ratou i hina'aro 'ia 'ite i to 'oe ra aroha, 'o ta 'oe i tu'u mai i ni'a ia ratou na roto i ta 'oe ra Tamaiti.
- 17 'E i teienei, e to'u mau taea'e, 'ua 'ite 'outou e, te fa'a'ite papu mai nei te piti o te peropheta tahito no ni'a i te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'e no te mea 'aita te mau ta'ata i mararama i tana ra mau parau, 'ua pehi ihora ratou iana i te 'ofa'i 'e 'ua pohe roa.
- 18 Inaha ra, e 'ere te reira ana'e; e 'ere 'o raua ana'e tei parau mai no ni'a i te Tamaiti a te Atua.
- 19 Inaha, 'ua parau ato'a Mose no ni'a iana, 'oia ia, 'E inaha, 'ua fa'ateiteihia te ho'e taibe i roto i te medebara, 'e 'o 'oia 'o te hi'o atu i ni'a i te reira e ora ia. 'E e rave rahi ho'i tei hi'o atu 'e 'ua ora.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

- 20 'Āre'a rā e mea iti roa te ta'ata i 'ite i te aura'a nō taua mau mea ra, nō te 'eta'eta ia o tō rātou 'ā'au. 'E e rave rahi ho'i tei 'ore i hi'o atu nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au, nō reira 'ua pohe rātou. I teienei, te tumu 'aita rātou i hi'o atu, nō te mea ia 'aita rātou i ti'aturi ē e fa'aora te reira ia rātou.
- 21 E tō'u mau taea'e ē, 'āhiri e fa'aorahia 'outou nā roto i te hi'o-noa-ra'a 'ia fa'aorahia 'outou, e'ita ānei ia 'outou e hi'o 'oi'oi atu, 'e 'aore rā e fa'a'eta'eta ānei 'outou i tō 'outou 'ā'au i roto i te ti'aturi 'ore 'e te fa'atau, 'e e'ita atu ra 'outou e nānā atu i tō 'outou mata, 'ia pohe atu 'outou na ?
- 22 'Ia nā reira 'outou, e tae mai te 'ati i ni'a ia 'outou ; 'ia 'ore rā 'outou 'ia nā reira, 'e 'ia nānā atu 'outou i tō 'outou mata, 'e 'ia ha'amata i te ti'aturi i te Tamaiti a te Atua ē, e haere mai 'oia nō te fa'aora i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e e ha'amāuiuihia 'oia 'e e pohe ho'i nō te ha'amatarā i tā rātou mau hara ; 'e e ti'a fa'ahou mai 'oia mai te pohe mai, 'ia tupu te ti'afa'ahourā'a, 'e e ti'a atu te mau ta'ata ato'a i mua iāna, 'ia ha'avāhia i te mahana hope'a 'e te mahana ha'avāra'a, mai te au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa.
- 23 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia tanu 'outou i teie nei parau i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au, 'e 'ia ha'amata a'era te reira i te 'oru, 'a 'atu'atu i te reira nā roto i tō 'outou fa'aro'o. 'E inaha, e riro te reira 'ei tumu rā'au, i te tupura'a i roto ia 'outou ē tae noa atu i te ora mure 'ore. 'E 'ia ha'amāmā mai te Atua i tā 'outou mau hōpoi'a, nā roto i te 'oa'oa i tāna ra Tamaiti. 'E e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia rave i teie mau mea ato'a mai te mea e hina'aro 'outou. 'Āmene.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

Alama 34

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a atu i teie nei mau parau ia rātou, 'ua pārahi ihora 'oia i raro i ni'a i te repo, 'e 'ua ti'a a'era Amuleka i ni'a 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te ha'api'i atu ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē :
- 2 E tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua mana'o vau ē, 'aita roa i ti'a 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia 'ite i te mau mea i parauhia nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'o tei ha'api'ihia e mātou ē, 'o te Tamaiti a te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua ha'api'i-rahi-hia teie nei mau mea ia 'outou na, hou tō 'outou tāivara'a ia mātou nei.
- 3 E nō te mea 'ua hina'aro 'outou 'ia fa'a'ite atu tō'u nei taea'e here ia 'outou i te mea e au ia 'outou 'ia rave nō tō 'outou mau 'ati ; 'e nō reira 'ua parau ri'i atu 'oia ia 'outou nō te fa'a'ineine i tō 'outou ferurira'a, 'ua fa'aitoito atu 'oia ia 'outou nō ni'a i te fa'aro'o e te fa'a'oroma'i—'
- 4 'Oia ia, 'ia rahi ho'i tō 'outou fa'aro'o 'e 'ia tanu 'outou i te parau i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au, 'e 'ia tāmata 'outou i tō te reira maita'i.
- 5 'E 'ua 'ite mātou ē, te uira'a rahi i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au na, teie ia, tei roto ānei i te Tamaiti a te Atua taua parau ra, 'e 'aita ānei e Mesia e vai ra.
- 6 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a 'outou ē, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu tō'u nei taea'e ia 'outou i te mau vāhi e rave rahi, 'e tei roto ia te parau i te Mesia e tae atu i te fa'aorara'a.
- 7 'Ua fa'ahiti atu tō'u nei taea'e i te mau parau a Zenosa, 'oia ho'i, e tae mai te fa'aorara'a nā roto i te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'e 'ua fa'ahiti ato'a atu 'oia i te mau parau a Zenoke ; 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua fa'ahiti atu 'oia i te mau parau a Mose nō te fa'a'ite pāpū ē, e parau mau teie nei mau mea.
- 8 'E i teienei, inaha, tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei au iho ia 'outou ē, e parau mau teie mau mea. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'ua 'ite au ē, e tae mai te Mesia i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, nō te rave i ni'a iāna iho i te mau hara a tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia riro 'oia 'ei tāra'ehara nō tō te ao nei ; 'e nā te Fatu te Atua i parau mai i te reira.

Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

9 'E e mea ti'a roa ho'i 'ia fa'ati'ahia te hō'ē tāra'ehara ; e mai te au ho'i i te 'ōpuara'a rahi a te Atua mure 'ore ra, e mea ti'a roa 'ia fa'ati'ahia te hō'ē tāra'ehara, 'e mai te mea ē 'aita, e pohe ia te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'eta'eta te ta'ata ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua hi'a te ta'ata ato'a 'e 'ua mo'e rātou, 'e 'ia pohe rātou e ti'a ai, maori rā nā roto i te tāra'ehara 'o tē mea ti'a roa 'ia fa'ati'ahia.

10 'E e mea ti'a roa ho'i 'ia vai te hō'ē tusia rahi 'e te hope'a ; 'oia ia, 'eiaha rā te tusia ta'ata, 'eiaha te 'ānimara, 'e 'eiaha te mau huru manu ato'a ; nō te mea e 'ore te reira e riro 'ei tusia ta'ata ; 'ia riro rā te reira 'ei tusia fāito 'ore 'e te mure 'ore e ti'a ai.

11 I teienei, 'aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia fa'atusia i tōna iho toto 'ia riro 'ei tāra'ehara nō te mau hara a te tahi 'ē atu ta'ata. I teienei, 'ia taparahi te ta'ata i te ta'ata, inaha, e tītāu ānei tā tātou ture, 'o tei riro 'ei mea parauti'a, i te ora o tōna ra taea'e ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'Aita roa ia.

12 Tē tītāu nei rā te ture i te ora o taua ta'ata i taparahi i te ta'ata ; nō reira 'aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē mea i iti iho i te tāra'ehara fāito 'ore 'ia fa'a'ore i te mau hara a tō te ao ato'a nei.

13 Nō reira, e mea ti'a roa 'ia vai te hō'ē tusia rahi 'e te hope'a ; 'e i reira e fa'aea ai, 'e 'aore rā e mea ti'a roa 'ia fa'aea te ha'amani'ira'a toto ; 'e i reira ho'i e fa'ati'ahia ai te ture a Mose ; 'oia ia, e fa'ati'ahia ai te reira ē hope roa a'e ; 'e 'ore roa te hō'ē iota 'e te hō'ē vāhi iti e mou.

14 'E inaha, teie te aura'a tā'āto'a nō te ture ; 'e tē fa'a'ite ātea nei ho'i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te reira i taua tusia rahi 'e te hope'a ; 'e taua tusia rahi 'e te hope'a ra, 'o te Tamaiti ia a te Atua, 'oia ia, e mea fāito 'ore 'e te mure 'ore ho'i.

15 'E nā reira 'oia i te fa'atae mai i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa ; 'o teie ia te tumu nō teie tusia hope'a, nō te fa'atupu i te aroha rahi, 'o tei mana i ni'a a'e i te parauti'a, 'e 'o tei fa'atae ato'a ho'i i te rāve'a i te ta'ata nei e ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te fa'aro'o e tae atu ai i te tātarahapara'a.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

16 'E nō reira, e ti'a ai i te aroha 'ia fa'atupu i te mau tītaura'a nō te parauti'a, 'e 'ia ha'a'ati i te ta'ata i te rima nō te hau, 'āre'a rā 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e fa'a'ohipa i te fa'aro'o e tae atu ai i te tātarahapara'a, e tu'uhia 'ia 'oia i te ture tā'āto'a nō te mau tītaura'a nō te parauti'a ; nō reira 'o 'oia ana'e e fa'aro'o tōna i te tātarahapara'a 'o 'oia 'ia te fāri'i i te 'ōpuara'a rahi 'e te mure 'ore nō te fa'aorara'a.

17 Nō reira, 'ia fa'ati'a mai te Atua ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ia ha'amata 'outou i te fa'a'ohipa i te fa'aro'o e tae atu ai i te tātarahapara'a, 'ia ha'amata 'outou i te ti'aoro atu i tōna ra i'oa mo'a, 'ia aroha mai 'oia ia 'outou.

18 'Oia 'ia, 'a ti'aoro atu 'outou iāna 'ia aroha mai ; e pūai rahi ho'i tōna nō te fa'aora mai.

19 'Oia 'ia, 'a fa'aha'eha'a 'outou ia 'outou iho, 'e 'a tāmāu noa i te pure atu iāna.

20 'A ti'aoro atu iāna 'a haere atu ai 'outou i roto i tā 'outou mau fa'a'apu ; 'oia 'ia, i ni'a ato'a i tā 'outou mau nana.

21 'A ti'aoro atu iāna i roto i tō 'outou mau fare, 'oia 'ia, nō tō 'outou 'utuāfare tā'āto'a, i te po'ipo'i, i te avatea, 'e i te ahiahi ato'a ho'i.

22 'Oia 'ia, 'a ti'aoro atu iāna 'ia pāruhūia 'outou i te mana o tō 'outou mau 'enemi.

23 'Oia 'ia, 'a ti'aoro atu iāna 'ia pāruhūia 'outou i te diabolō, 'oia ho'i i te 'enemi o te parauti'a ato'a ra.

24 'A ti'aoro atu iāna nō ni'a i tā 'outou mau fa'a'apu mā'a, 'ia manūia 'outou i te reira.

25 'A ti'aoro atu nō ni'a i tā 'outou mau nana i roto i tā 'outou mau 'āua, 'ia rahi rātou ra.

26 E 'ere rā i te reira ana'e ; e mea ti'a ia 'outou 'ia nīni'i atu i tō 'outou vārua i roto i tō 'outou mau piha, 'e i roto i tō 'outou mau vāhi mo'emo'e, 'e i roto i tō 'outou mēdēbara.

27 'Oia 'ia, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ti'aoro atu i te Fatu, 'ia 'i 'ia tō 'outou 'ā'au i te pure tu'utu'u 'ore iāna 'ia maita'i 'outou, 'e 'ia maita'i ato'a rātou tei piha'i iho ia 'outou.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

28 'E i teienei, inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'eiaha 'outou e mana'o ē, 'ua nava'i te reira ; nō te mea i muri iho i tō 'outou ravera'a i teie nei mau mea ato'a, 'e 'ia fa'aru'e 'outou i te feiā veve, 'e tei taha'a noa, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia utuutu i te feiā ma'i, 'e tei ro'ohia i te 'ati, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia 'ōpere i tā 'outou tao'a, mai te mea ē tē vai ra tā 'outou, i te feiā veve—tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, mai te mea ē 'aita 'outou e rave i taua mau mea nei, inaha, 'ua riro tā 'outou pure 'ei mea ma'ama'a 'e te faufa'a 'ore, 'e 'ua riro 'outou 'ei feiā ha'avare 'o tei huna i te fa'aro'o.

29 Nō reira, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fa'atupu i te aroha ma te hōro'a ato'a, 'ua riro ia 'outou mai te ota 'o tē fa'aru'ehia e te mau ta'ata tāmā moni, (e mea faufa'a 'ore ho'i te reira) 'e e tāta'ahihia e te 'āvae ta'ata.

30 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, i muri iho i tō 'outou fāri'ira'a i te mau fa'a'itera'a pāpū e rave rahi, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a i teie nei mau mea, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia haere mai 'outou 'e 'ia fa'atupu i te 'ohipa e au i te tātarahapa.

31 'Oia ia, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia haere mai 'outou, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fa'a'eta'eta ā i tō 'outou 'ā'au ; inaha ho'i, 'o te taime teie 'e te mahana ho'i nō tō 'outou fa'aorara'a ; 'e nō reira, 'ia tātarahapa 'outou 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'ia fa'a'eta'eta i tō 'outou 'ā'au, e fa'ataevave-hia mai te 'ōpuara'a rahi nō te fa'aorara'a ia 'outou na.

32 Inaha ho'i, 'o teie nei orara'a te taime 'ia fa'aineine te ta'ata nō te fārerei atu i te Atua ; 'oia ia, inaha, 'o te mahana nō teie nei orara'a 'o te mahana ia 'ia rave te ta'ata i tā rātou mau 'ohipa.

33 'E i teienei, mai tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou i te mātāmua, nō te mea 'ua tae mai te mau fa'a'itera'a pāpū e rave rahi ia 'outou, nō reira, tē a'o atu nei au ia 'outou, 'eiaha roa 'outou e fa'atāere i te mahana nō tā 'outou tātarahapara'a ē tae roa i te hope'a ; nō te mea i muri iho i teie nei mahana nō te orara'a, 'o tei hōro'ahia mai ia tātou nō te fa'aineine nō te tau mure 'ore ra, inaha, 'ia 'ore tātou 'ia fa'a'ohipa māite i tō tātou taime a ora ai tātou i te ao nei, i reira e tae mai ai te pō nō te pōiri rahi e 'aore roa te hō'ē 'ohipa e ti'a 'ia ravehia.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

34 E 'ore ho'i e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia parau, 'a arata'ihia ai 'outou i taua tau 'ati ri'ari'a ra, 'e e tātarahapa vau, 'e e ho'i atu vau i tō'u Atua. 'Aita roa ia, 'aita roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia parau i te reira ; nō te mea taua vārua ra 'o tei pārahi i roto i tō 'outou tino i te mahana 'a fa'aru'e mai 'outou i teie nei orara'a, e mana ato'a ia tō taua vārua ra 'ia pārahi i roto i tō 'outou tino i taua ao mure 'ore.

35 Inaha ho'i, mai te mea ē 'ua fa'atāere 'outou i te mahana nō tō 'outou tātarahapara'a ē tae noa atu i te pohera'a, inaha, tei raro a'e ia 'outou i te mana o te vārua o te diablo, 'e e tā'ati 'oia ia 'outou nōna iho ; nō reira 'ua fa'aātea 'ē atu te Vārua o te Fatu ia 'outou, 'e 'aita atu ra tōna e vāhi i roto ia 'outou, 'e tei te diablo ra ho'i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te mana i ni'a ia 'outou ; 'e 'o te huru hope'a teie o te feiā parauti'a 'ore.

36 'E 'ua 'ite au i te reira, nō te mea 'ua parau mai te Fatu ē, e 'ore roa 'oia e pārahi i roto i te mau hiero vi'ivi'i, 'āre'a rā e pārahi 'oia i roto i te 'ā'au o te feiā parauti'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua parau ato'a mai 'oia ē, e pārahi te feiā parauti'a i roto i tōna ra bāsileia, 'e 'aita rātou e haere fa'ahou i rāpae ē a muri noa atu ; e fa'ateateahia rā tō rātou mau 'ahu nā roto i te toto o te 'Ārenio.

37 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou i teie nei mau mea, 'e 'ia rave 'outou i te 'ohipa nō tō 'outou fa'aorara'a ma te mata'u i mua i te Atua, e 'eiaha roa 'outou e huna fa'ahou i te taera'a mai o te Mesia.

38 'Eiaha ho'i e pāto'i fa'ahou i te Vārua Maita'i, 'ia fāri'i rā 'outou iāna, 'e 'ia rave i te i'oa o te Mesia i ni'a ia 'outou iho ; 'e 'ia fa'aha'eha'a 'outou ia 'outou iho i raro i te repo, 'e 'ia ha'amori i te Atua ma te vārua 'e te parau mau i te mau vāhi ato'a e pārahihia e 'outou ; 'e 'ia pārahi 'outou ma te ha'amaita'i iāna i te mau mahana ato'a ra, nō te aroha 'e te mau ha'amaita'ira'a e rave rahi tāna i nīni'i mai i ni'a ia 'outou na.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

39 'Oia iā, tē fa'aitoito atu nei ho'i au ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ia ara 'outou ma te pure tu'utu'u 'ore, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia arata'i-'ē-hia e te mau fa'ahemara'a a te diabolō, 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia ha'avī ia 'outou, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia riro 'ei mau tāvini nōna i te mahana hope'a ra ; inaha ho'i, 'aita roa e utu'a maita'i tāna e hōro'a mai nā 'outou.

40 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē fa'aitoito atu nei au ia 'outou 'ia fa'a'oroma'i, 'e 'ia fa'a'oroma'i 'outou i te mau huru 'atī ato'a ; 'e 'eiaha 'outou e fa'a'ino ia rātou 'o tei ti'avaru atu ia 'outou i rāpae nō tō 'outou veve rahi, 'o te riro ho'i 'outou 'ei feiā hara mai ia rātou ato'a ra.

41 'Ia fa'a'oroma'i rā 'outou, 'e 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i teie nei mau 'atī, ma te ti'aturi pāpū ē tē vai ra te mahana e rave-'ē-hia atu tō 'outou mau 'atī ato'a.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

Alama 35

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Amuleka i teienei mau parau, 'ua fa'aātea 'ē atu ra rātou i taua mau ta'ata e rave rahi ra 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te fenua ra nō Ieresona.
- 2 'Oia ia, 'e 'ia fa'aoti a'era te toe'a o te mau taea'e i te a'ora'a i te parau i te mau 'āti Zorama ra, 'ua haere ato'a mai ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Ieresona.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō te pae rahi o te mau ta'ata tu'iro'o nō te mau 'āti Zorama paraparau-'āmui-ra'a nō ni'a iho i te mau parau i a'ohia atu ia rātou, 'ua riri ihora rātou i taua parau ra, nō te mea 'ua ha'afifi te reira i tā rātou 'ohipa ha'avare, nō reira 'aita rātou i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o atu i taua mau parau ra.
- 4 'E 'ua ha'aputupu ihora rātou i te mau ta'ata ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e taua fenua ra i te vāhi hō'ē, 'e 'ua 'āparau ihora rātou ia rātou nō ni'a i te mau parau i parauhia.
- 5 I teienei, 'aita tō rātou mau tāvana 'e tō rātou mau tahu'a 'e tō rātou mau 'orometua i fa'a'ite atu i te mau ta'ata i tō rātou mau hina'aro ; nō reira 'ua 'imi huna noa rātou i te mau mana'o o te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou i te mau mana'o o te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ua ti'avaru atu ra rātou i rāpae i taua fenua ra, i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei fāri'i i te mau parau tā Alama 'e tōna mau taea'e i parau atu ia rātou ; 'e rave rahi ho'i rātou ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Ieresona.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'api'i atu ra Alama 'e tōna mau taea'e ia rātou.
- 8 I teienei, 'ua riri ihora te mau 'āti Zorama i te mau ta'ata o Amona i pārahi i Ieresona ra, e ta'ata parauti'a 'ore ho'i te tāvana rahi o te mau 'āti Zorama, 'e 'ua tono atu ra 'oia i te hō'ē ve'a i te mau ta'ata o Amona ma te fa'a'ite atu i tōna hina'aro ia rātou 'ia ti'avaru atu rātou mai rotopū atu ia rātou i te mau ta'ata ato'a i haere mai i tō rātou fenua.

Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

9 'E 'ua fa'ahiti atu ra 'oia i te mau parau ha'amata'u e rave rahi ia rātou. 'E i teieni, 'aita te mau ta'ata o Amona i mata'u i tā rātou mau parau ; nō reira, 'aita rātou i ti'avaru atu ia rātou i rāpae, 'ua fāri'i rā rātou i te mau ta'ata veve ato'a o te mau 'āti Zorama i haere mai ia rātou ra ; 'e 'ua pāturu atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ahu ia rātou, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ho'i i te tahi mau fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō rātou ; 'e 'ua tauturu atu ho'i ia rātou mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro.

10 I teieni, 'ua fa'ati'arepu ihora te reira i te mau 'āti Zorama 'ia riri atu i te mau ta'ata o Amona, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te 'āmui atu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'ia fa'atupu ato'a i tō rātou riri ia rātou ra.

11 'E nō reira 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau 'āti Zorama 'e te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia fa'a'ineine nō te 'aro mai i te mau ta'ata o Amona, 'e i te mau 'āti Nephi ato'a ho'i.

12 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te 'ahuru ma hitu o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ra.

13 'E 'ua reva atu ra te mau ta'ata o Amona i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Meleke, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ra i te fenua ra nō Ieresona nō te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ia 'aro atu rātou i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau nu'u fa'ehau ho'i o te mau 'āti Zorama ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora te 'arora'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti Nephi i te 'ahuru ma va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā ; 'e e fa'a'itehia atu te 'ā'amu nō tā rātou mau 'arora'a i muri nei.

14 'E 'ua ho'i atu Alama, 'e Amona, 'e tō rāua mau taea'e, 'e nā tamaiti to'opiti ho'i a Alama i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i riro na ho'i rātou 'ei mau mauha'a i te rima o te Atua i te arata'ira'a mai i te mau 'āti Zorama e rave rahi i te tātarahapa ; 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i tātarahapa ra, 'ua ti'avaruhia ia rātou i rāpae i tō rātou ra fenua ; e fenua 'āi'a rā tō rātou i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, 'e 'ua rave rātou i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te pūruru ia rātou iho, 'e tā rātou mau vahine, 'e mau tamari'i, 'e tō rātou mau fenua.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

15 I teienei, 'ua 'oto ihora Alama nō te mau 'ohipa 'Tino a tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, nō te mau tama'i, 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto, 'e te mau mārōra'a ho'i i rotopū ia rātou ra ; 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua haere 'oia nō te a'o atu i te parau, 'e 'ua tonohia ho'i 'oia nō te a'o atu i te parau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a i roto i te mau 'oire ato'a, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua 'ite 'oia i te 'ā'au 'eta'eta o te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te riri nō te pāpū o te parau, 'ua pūai roa ihora te 'oto o tōna 'ā'au.

16 Nō reira, 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra 'oia i tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa ato'a, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia hōro'a atu i tāna parau poro'i ia rātou tāta'itahi, nō ni'a i te mau mea parauti'a. 'E tē vai ra te 'ā'amu nō tāna mau fa'auera'a, 'o tāna i tu'u atu ia rātou ra mai te au i tāna iho pāpa'a parau.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

Alama 36

- 1 E tā'u tamaiti, 'a fa'aro'o mai na tō 'oe tari'a i tā'u nei mau parau ; 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū atu nei ho'i au ia 'oe na, mai te mea e ha'apa'o māite 'oe i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e manuia ia 'oe i ni'a i te fenua.
- 2 'Ua hina'aro vau 'ia rave 'oe mai tā'u ho'i i rave, i te ha'amana'ora'a i te fa'atītira'ahia tō tātou mau metua ; i vai na rātou i roto i te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'aita roa e ta'ata i ti'a 'ia fa'aora ia rātou, maori rā 'o te Atua nō Aberahama, 'e te Atua nō Isaaka, 'e te Atua nō Iakoba ; 'e nāna ho'i rātou i fa'aora i roto i tō rātou mau 'ati.
- 3 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti e Helamana, inaha, tē vai 'āpī noa nei ā 'oe, 'e nō reira, tē a'o atu nei au ia 'oe ē, 'a fa'aro'o māite mai 'oe i tā'u nei mau parau 'e 'a ha'apī'i ho'i i tā'u nei parau ; 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'o rātou 'o tē ti'aturi i te Atua, e pāturuhia ia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau tāmatara'a, 'e tō rātou mau fifi, 'e tō rātou mau 'ati, 'e e fa'ateiteihia rātou i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 4 'E 'eiaha 'oe e mana'o ē, 'ua 'ite au i te reira nā roto iā'u iho—e'ita nā roto i te pae tino nei, nā roto rā i te pae vārua, e'ita ho'i nā roto i te 'ā'au ta'ata nei, nā roto rā i te Atua.
- 5 I teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, 'āhiri ē 'aita vau i fānauhia i te Atua ra, 'aita ia vau i 'ite i teie nei mau mea ; nā te Atua rā i fa'a'ite mai i teie nei mau mea iā'u nei, nā roto i te vaha o tāna melahi mo'a, 'e 'eiaha nā roto i te tahi maita'i i roto iā'u iho nei.
- 6 'Ua hāhaere noa ho'i au 'e te mau tamaiti a Mosia, i te tītaura'a 'ia ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ; inaha rā, 'ua tono mai te Atua i tāna ra melahi mo'a nō te tāpe'a ia mātou i ni'a i te 'ē'a e haerehia ra.
- 7 'E inaha, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia ia mātou mai te reo o te pātiri, 'e 'ua 'āueue ihora te fenua tā'āto'a i raro a'e i tō mātou 'āvae, 'e 'ua topa ana'e ihora mātou pā'āto'a i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua tae mai ra ho'i te mata'u o te Fatu i ni'a ia mātou.
- 8 Inaha rā, 'ua parau mai ra te reo iā'u : 'A tia. 'E 'ua ti'a a'era vau i ni'a, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra i te hō'ē melahi.

Alma 36

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

- 9 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia iā'u : Noa atu ē 'ua hina'aro 'oe iho na i te pohe, 'eiaha rā e 'imi fa'ahou i te rāve'a 'ia ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua topa fa'ahou ihora vau i raro i te repo, 'e nō te ārea e toru ao 'e e toru ru'i te maoro 'aita roa i ti'a iā'u 'ia hāmama i tō'u ra vaha, 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i i ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ohipa i tō'u nā rima 'e nā 'āvae.
- 11 'E 'ua parau mai ra te melahi i te tahi atu ā mau mea iā'u, 'o tei fa'aro'ohia e tō'u ra mau taea'e, 'aita rā vau i fa'aro'o i te reira ; inaha ho'i i tō'u fa'aro'ora' i te mau parau—Noa atu ē 'ua hina'aro 'oe iho na i te pohe, 'eiaha rā e 'imi fa'ahou i te rāve'a 'ia ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua—'ua ro'ohia ihora vau i te mata'u rahi 'e te māere, penei a'e 'o te pohe au, 'ua topa ihora vau i raro i te repo 'e 'aita atu ra vau i fa'aro'o fa'ahou.
- 12 'E 'ua ha'amāuiuihia vau i te māuiui mure 'ore, 'e 'ua ahoaho roa ihora tō'u vārua 'e 'ua ha'amāuiuihia nō tā'u ato'a ra mau hara.
- 13 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'amana'o ihora vau i tā'u ato'a ra mau hara 'e mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e 'ua ha'amāuiuihia ihora vau i te mau māuiui o hade ra ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite ihora vau ē, 'ua fa'aru'e atu vau i tō'u ra Atua, 'e 'aita vau i ha'apa'o i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a mo'a.
- 14 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua taparahi na vau i tāna mau tamari'i e rave rahi, 'oia ho'i 'ua arata'i 'ē atu vau ia rātou i te pohe ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua rahi roa atu ho'i tā'u mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i rave, 'e iā'u ho'i i mana'o ai nō te haere atu i mua i te aro o tō'u ra Atua, 'ua ha'amāuiui-rahī-hia tō'u vārua i te ri'ari'a fāito 'ore.
- 15 'E 'ua mana'o vau i roto iā'u iho, 'āhiri e ti'a iā'u 'ia ti'avaruhia 'e 'ia ha'amouhia ho'i i te vārua 'e te tino ato'a ho'i, 'ia 'ore au 'ia fa'ati'ahia atu i mua i te aro o tō'u ra Atua, 'ia ha'avāhia nō tā'u ra mau 'ohipa i rave.
- 16 'E i teienei, e toru ao 'e e toru ru'i 'ua ha'amāuiuihia vau, 'oia ia i te mau māuiui nō te hō'ē vārua i fa'ahapahia.

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā-reira-hia vau i te ha'amāuiui-rahi-hia, 'e 'ua ahoaho roa vau i te ha'amana'ora'a i tā'u ra mau hara e rave rahi, inaha, 'ua ha'amana'o vau i te fa'aro'ora'a i tō'u metua tāne i te tohura'a atu i te mau ta'ata nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te hō'ē ta'ata, 'o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'ei tāra'ehara nō tō te ao nei.
- 18 I teienei, 'a feruri ai au i teie nei mana'o, 'ua ti'aoro ihora vau i roto i tō'u iho 'ā'au : E Iesu ē, te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'a aroha mai iā'u nei, tei roto ho'i au i te au 'ava'ava 'e 'ua ru'uru'uhia ho'i te mau fifi mure 'ore nō te pohe i ni'a iā'u.
- 19 'E i teienei, inaha, i tō'u ferurira'a i te reira, 'aita vau i ha'amana'o fa'ahou i tō'u māuiui ; 'oia ia, 'aita vau i ahoaho fa'ahou i te ha'amana'ora'a i tā'u ra mau hara.
- 20 'Auē ho'i te 'oa'oa 'e te māramarama fa'ahiahia tā'u i 'ite ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'i roa tō'u 'ā'au i te 'oa'oa, 'e 'ua rahi te reira mai te fāito ato'a o tō'u ra māuiui !
- 21 'Oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, e tā'u tamaiti, 'aita roa e mea e tuea i te mamae ri'ari'a i tō'u ra mamae. 'Oia ia, 'e tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'oe na, e tā'u tamaiti, 'aita roa e mea e tuea i te 'oa'oa 'e te au maita'i i tō'u ra 'oa'oa.
- 22 'Oia ia, 'ua mana'o vau ē, tē 'ite ra vau, mai tā tō tātou metua tāne ra 'o Lehi i 'ite, i te Atua i te pārahira'a i ni'a i tōna ra terōno, ma te ha'a'atihia 'e te mau pupu melahi e'ita e hope 'ia tai'o, i te hīmenera'a 'e te 'ārūera'a i tō rātou ra Atua ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua hia'ai atu ra tō'u vārua 'ia pārahi ato'a i reira.
- 23 Inaha rā, 'ua pūai fa'ahou tō'u nā rima 'e tō'u nā 'āvae, 'e 'ua ti'a a'era vau i ni'a i tō'u 'āvae, ma te fa'a'ite atu i te mau ta'ata ē, 'ua fānauhia vau i te Atua ra.
- 24 'Oia ia, mai te reira mai taimē ē tae roa mai i teienei, 'ua rave au i te 'ohipa ma te fa'aea 'ore, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'afāriu mai i te mau ta'ata 'ia tātarahapa ; 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia arata'i mai ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te 'oa'oa rahi 'o tā'u i fāri'i ; 'ia ti'a ato'a ia rātou 'ia fānauhia i te Atua ra, 'e 'ia fa'a'ihia ho'i i te Vārua Maita'i.
- 25 'Oia ia, 'e i teienei, inaha, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua hōro'a mai te Fatu i te 'oa'oa rahi iā'u nei i te hotu nō tā'u ra mau 'ohipa.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

26 Nō te parau ho'i tāna i fa'a'ite mai iā'u nei, inaha, e rave rahi tei fānauhia i te Atua ra, 'e tei tāmata mai tā'u i tāmata, 'e tei 'ite mata 'e te mata mai tā'u ho'i i 'ite mata ; nō reira 'ua 'ite rātou i teie nei mau mea 'o tā'u i parau iho nei, mai tā'u ho'i i 'ite ; 'e te 'ite 'o tā'u i fāri'i nō 'ō mai ia i te Atua ra.

27 'E i tauturuhia na ho'i au i roto i tō'u mau 'ati 'e tō'u mau pe'ape'a e rave rahi ; 'oia ia, 'e i roto i te mau huru fifi ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aora te Atua iā'u mai roto mai i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e te mau ru'uru'ura'a, 'e te pohe ; 'oia ia, 'e te ti'aturi māite noa ra vau iāna, 'e e fa'aora ā 'oia iā'u nei.

28 'E 'ua 'ite au ē, e fa'ati'a mai 'oia iā'u i ni'a 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra, 'ia pārahi i pīha'i iho iāna ma te hanahana ; 'oia ia, 'e e 'āruē atu vau iāna ē a muri noa atu, 'e nāna ho'i tō tātou mau metua i arata'i mai i rāpae i 'Aiphiti, 'e 'ua horomi'i atu 'oia i te mau ta'ata 'Aiphiti i roto i te miti 'Ute'ute ; 'e 'ua arata'i 'oia ia rātou nā roto i tōna mana i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia rātou i te ha'afaora'a 'e i te fa'atītira'a i terā taime 'e i terā taime.

29 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua arata'i ato'a mai 'oia i tō tātou mau metua i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā ; 'e nā roto i tōna ra mana mure 'ore 'ua fa'aora ato'a 'oia ia rātou i te ha'afaora'a 'e te fa'atītira'a i terā tau 'e i terā tau, ē tae roa mai i teie nei mahana ; 'e 'ua tāmāu māite au i te ha'amana'o i tō rātou fa'atītira'a ; 'oia ia, 'e e mea ti'a ato'a ia 'oe 'ia tāmāu i te ha'amana'o i tō rātou fa'atītira'ahia mai tā'u ho'i i nā reira.

30 Inaha rā, e tā'u tamaiti, e 'ere te reira ana'e ; e mea ti'a ho'i ia 'oe na 'ia 'ite, mai tā'u i 'ite ē, mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'oe i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e manuia 'oe i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'e e mea ti'a ho'i ia 'oe 'ia 'ite ē, 'e mai te mea 'aita 'oe e ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e tāpū-'ē-hia atu 'oe mai mua atu i tōna ra aro. I teienei, 'ua au ho'i teie i tāna ra parau.

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

Alama 37

- 1 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti e Helamana, tē fa'ae atu nei au ia 'oe na 'ia rave 'oe i te mau pāpa'a parau i tu'uhia mai iā'u nei.
- 2 'E tē fa'ae ato'a atu nei au ia 'oe 'ia pāpa'i 'oe i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau nō teie nei feiā mai tā'u i nā reira, i ni'a iho i te mau 'api a Nephi ra, 'e 'ia tāpe'a i teie mau mea ato'a 'o tā'u i ha'apa'o na ma te mo'a, 'oia ia mai tā'u i ha'apa'o na i te reira ; 'e nō te hō'ē tumu pa'ari ho'i i ha'apa'ohia ai te reira.
- 3 'E tei ni'a ho'i i teie nei mau 'api veo teie mau 'ō'otira'a, 'e tei roto i te reira te mau pāpa'a parau nō te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, tei roto ato'a i te reira te tuatāpapara'a o tō tātou mau hui tupuna mai te mātāmua mai ā—
- 4 Inaha, i tohuhia na e tō tātou mau metua ē e mea ti'a roa i te reira 'ia ha'apa'ohia 'e 'ia hōro'ahia ho'i i terā u'i 'e i terā u'i, 'e 'ia ha'apa'ohia 'e 'ia fa'ahereherehia ho'i e te rima o te Fatu ē tae noa atu i te tau e tu'uhia atu ai i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a, 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ia 'ite rātou i te mau parau 'aro i roto ra.
- 5 'E i teienei, inaha, mai te mea e ha'apa'ohia te reira, e mea ti'a roa 'ia vai noa tō rātou 'ana'ana ; 'oia ia, e 'ana'ana noa mai ā te reira ; 'oia ia, 'e te mau 'api ato'a i pāpa'ihia i te parau mo'a ra.
- 6 I teienei 'ua mana'o paha 'oe ē, e mea ma'ama'a te reira iā'u nei ; inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, nā roto i te mau mea iti 'e te pāpū e fa'atupuhia ai te mau mea rarahi ; 'e nā te mau mea iti ho'i e fa'aha'amā pinepine atu i tei 'aravihi ra.
- 7 Tē 'ohipa noa nei ā te Fatu te Atua nā roto i te mau rāve'a nō te fa'atupu i tāna ra mau 'ōpuara'a rarahi 'e te mure 'ore ; 'e nā roto i te mau rāve'a iti roa e fa'aha'amā atu ai te Fatu i tei 'aravihi ra 'e e fa'atupu ai ho'i i te fa'aorara'a nō te mau ta'ata e rave rahi.
- 8 'E i teienei, i mua a'enei 'ua hina'aro te Atua 'ia fa'ahereherehia teie nei mau mea ; inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'arahi te reira i te mēharo o teie nei feiā, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'apāpū mai ho'i ia rātou e rave rahi i tā rātou mau hapa, 'e 'ua arata'i mai ho'i ia rātou i te 'ite i tō rātou Atua ē tae noa atu i te fa'aorara'a o tō rātou vārua.

Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

9 'Oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'āhiri 'aita teie nei mau mea i pāpa'ihia i roto i teie mau pāpa'a parau i ni'a i teie nei mau 'api, 'aita ia e ti'a ia Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e 'ia fa'afāriu 'ē i te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi tauatini i te peu tumu tano 'ore a tō rātou mau metua ; 'oia ia, nā teie nei mau pāpa'a parau 'e tā rātou mau parau ho'i i arata'i mai ia rātou i te tātarahapa ; 'oia ho'i, 'ua arata'ihia mai rātou i te 'ite i te Fatu, i tō rātou ra Atua, 'e 'ia 'oa'oa ho'i ia Iesu Mesia, i tō rātou Tāra'ehara.

10 'E 'o vai ho'i tē 'ite ē, 'e 'ore ānei te reira e riro 'ei rāve'a e arata'ihia mai ai rātou e rave rahi tauatini, 'oia ia, 'e rātou ato'a e rave rahi tauatini o tō tātou mau taea'e 'ā'au 'eta'eta ra, 'oia ho'i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'o tē fa'a'eta'eta noa nei ā i tō rātou 'ā'au i roto i te hara 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, i te 'ite i tō rātou ra Tāra'ehara ?

11 I teienei, 'aita ā teie nei mau parau 'aro i fa'a'ite-pāpū-hia mai iā'u nei ; nō reira 'ātirā ia i reira.

12 'E 'ua nava'i noa 'ia parau ana'e au ē, nō te 'ōpuara'a pa'ari i pāpa'ihia ai te reira, 'e tei te Atua ana'e ho'i te 'ite i taua 'ōpuara'a ra ; 'e tē feruri ra ho'i 'oia ma te pa'ari i ni'a i tāna mau 'ohipa ato'a, 'e e mea tītī'aifaro tōna mau 'ē'a, 'e e mea mure 'ore tōna haere'a.

13 'A ha'amana'o na, 'a ha'amana'o, e tā'u tamaiti e Helamana, e mea papu māite te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua. 'E tē nā 'ō ra ho'i 'oia : Mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, e manuia ia 'outou i ni'a i te fenua nei—ia 'ore rā 'outou e ha'apa'o i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia 'outou i tōna ra aro.

14 'E i teienei, 'a ha'amana'o na, e tā'u tamaiti, nā te Atua i hōro'a mai i teie nei mau mea ia 'oe na, 'e e mea mo'a te reira, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o noa na 'oia i te reira ma te mo'a, 'e 'oia ato'a, e ha'apa'o 'e e fa'aherehere 'oia i te reira nō te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a pa'ari iāna ra, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite mai i tōna ra mana i te mau u'i a muri atu.

15 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe nā roto i te vārua nō te tohu, mai te mea e 'ōfati 'oe i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, inaha, e rave-'ē-hia atu teie nei mau mea mo'a ia 'oe na e te mana o te Atua, 'e e tu'uhia atu 'oe ia Sātane ra, 'e e ha'apuehu 'oia ia 'oe mai te ota e puehu 'ē atu i te mata'i ra.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

- 16 'Ia ha'apa'o rā 'oe i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e 'ia rave ho'i i teie nei mau mea mo'a mai tā te Fatu e fa'aeue mai ia 'oe na, (e mea ti'a ho'i ia 'oe 'ia ani atu i te Fatu i te mau mea ato'a tā 'oe e rave i taua mau mea ra) inaha, 'aita roa e ti'a i te mana o te fenua 'e 'aore rā i tō hade 'ia rave atu i te reira ia 'oe na, tei te Atua ho'i te mana nō te fa'atupu i tāna ra mau parau ato'a.
- 17 'E e fa'atupu ho'i 'oia i tāna mau parau ato'a 'o tāna e fafau atu ia 'oe na, 'e 'ua fa'atupu ho'i 'oia i tāna mau parau 'o tāna i fafau atu i tō tātou ra mau metua.
- 18 'E 'ua fafau atu ho'i 'oia ia rātou ē, e fa'aherehere 'oia i teie nei mau mea nō te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a pa'ari iāna ra, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite mai i tōna ra mana i te mau u'i a muri atu.
- 19 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te tahi 'ōpuara'a, 'oia ho'i 'ua fa'aho'i fa'ahou 'oia i te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi tauatini 'ia 'ite i te parau mau ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a mai 'oia i tōna ra mana nā roto i teie mau mea, 'e e fa'a'ite mai ā ho'i 'oia i tōna ra mana nā roto i te reira i te mau u'i a muri atu ; nō reira e fa'ahereherehia te reira.
- 20 Nō reira, tē fa'aeue atu nei au ia 'oe na, e tā'u tamaiti, e Helamana, 'ia fa'aitoito 'oe i te fa'atupura'a i tā'u ato'a ra mau parau, 'e 'ia fa'aitoito ato'a ho'i 'oe i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua mai te au i tei pāpa'ihia ra.
- 21 'E i teienei, e parau atu vau ia 'oe nō ni'a i te mau 'api e piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha ra, 'ia ha'apa'o 'oe i te reira, 'ia fa'a'itehia i teie nei feiā te mau parau 'aro, 'e te mau 'ohipa pōiri, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna, 'oia ho'i te mau 'ohipa huna a taua feiā i ha'amouhia ra ; 'oia ia, 'ia fa'a'itehia tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e tā rātou 'eiāra'a, 'e tā rātou mau harura'a, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'T'ino ato'a 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a, i teie nei feiā ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ia fa'aherehere ho'i 'oe i teie nei mau 'iriti parau.
- 22 Inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite mai te Fatu ē, tē ha'amata ra tōna mau ta'ata i te rave i te 'ohipa pōiri, 'oia ia, i te rave huna ho'i i te 'ohipa taparahi ta'ata 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; nō reira, 'ua parau mai te Fatu ē, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa, e ha'amouhia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

- 23 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu : E fa'aineine au i te hō'ē 'ōfa'i nā tō'u tāvini ra nā Gazelema, 'o tē 'ana'ana mai i roto i te pōiri 'ia māramarama, 'ia fa'a'ite atu vau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata i tāvini mai iā'u nei, 'ia fa'a'ite atu vau ia rātou i te mau 'ohipa a tō rātou ra mau taea'e ; 'oia ia, tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa pōiri, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.
- 24 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua fa'aineinehia teie mau 'iriti parau nō te fa'atupu i te parau a te Atua, 'o tāna i parau mai, i te nā-ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 25 E hōpoi au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna ato'a 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a mai roto mai i te pōiri i te māramarama ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa, e ha'amou ia vau ia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei ; 'e e fa'a'ite atu vau i tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna ato'a 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a i te mau nūna'a ato'a 'o tē fāri'i i teie nei fenua a muri atu.
- 26 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua 'ite taua ē, 'aita rātou i tātarahapa, nō reira 'ua ha'amouhia rātou, 'e nō reira ē tae roa a'enei i teienei 'ua fa'atupuhia te parau a te Atua ra ; 'oia ia, 'ua hōpoihia tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna 'e te vi'ivi'i nō roto mai i te pōiri 'e 'ua fa'a'itehia mai ia tātou nei.
- 27 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'oe na 'ia tāpe'a 'oe i tā rātou ato'a ra mau tapura'a, 'e tā rātou mau fafaura'a, 'e tā rātou mau parau fa'aau i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna 'e te vi'ivi'i ; 'oia ia, 'e tā rātou ato'a ra mau tāpa'o 'e tā rātou ato'a ra mau piri, 'eiaha 'oe e fa'a'ite noa atu i teie nei feiā, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia 'ite i te reira, 'o te ma'iri ato'a rātou i roto i te pōiri 'e 'a ha'amouhia ai.
- 28 Inaha ho'i, tē vai nei te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho i teie nei fenua tā'āto'a ; e tae mai te ha'amoura'a i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata ato'a e rave i te 'ohipa pōiri i te taime 'ua 'i roa rātou i te reira, mai te au i te mana o te Atua ; nō reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ore teie nei feiā 'ia ha'amouhia.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

29 Nō reira, e tāpe'a noa 'oe i teie mau 'ōpuara'a huna nō tā rātou ra mau tapura'a 'e tā rātou mau fafaua'a i teie nei feiā, 'e teie ana'e tā 'oe e fa'a'ite atu ia rātou, 'oia ho'i, tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'e e ha'api'i atu ho'i 'oe ia rātou 'ia fa'aru'e atu i taua mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ra 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i 'e te mau taparahira'a ta'ata ; 'e e ha'api'i ato'a atu 'oe ia rātou ē, 'ua ha'amouhia teie mau ta'ata nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i 'e tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata.

30 Inaha ho'i, 'ua taparahi rātou i te mau peropheta ato'a a te Fatu i haere mai i rotopū ia rātou ra nō te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'e tē pi'i atu ra te toto o te feiā i taparahihia i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'ia tāho'ohia tei taparahi mai ia rātou ra ; 'e nō reira 'ua tae mai te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua i ni'a iho i taua feiā i rave i te 'ohipa pōiri 'e te mau pupu 'ohipa huna.

31 'Oia ia, 'ia 'anatemahia te fenua nei ē a muri ē a muri noa atu i te feiā e rave i te 'ohipa i roto i te pōiri 'e te mau pupu 'ohipa huna, ē tae noa atu i te ha'amoura'a, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou hou rātou e 'ī roa ai i te 'ino.

32 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'a ha'amana'o 'oe i te mau parau tā'u i parau atu ia 'oe na ; 'eiaha e tu'u noa atu i taua mau 'ōpuara'a huna ra i teie nei feiā, 'a ha'api'i rā ia rātou 'ia au 'ore atu i te hara 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.

33 'A a'o atu ia rātou i te tātarahapa, 'e te fa'aro'o i te Fatu ra ia Iesu Mesia ; 'a ha'api'i atu ia rātou 'ia fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho, 'ia marū 'e 'ia ha'eha'a ho'i te 'ā'au ; 'a ha'api'i atu ho'i ia rātou 'ia pāto'i atu i te mau fa'ahemara'a ato'a a te diabolō, ma tō rātou fa'aro'o i te Fatu ra ia Iesu Mesia.

34 'A ha'api'i atu ia rātou 'eiaha roa rātou e fiu i te mau 'ohipa maita'i, 'ia marū rā, 'e 'ia ha'eha'a te 'ā'au ; 'e e fāri'i rātou i te fa'afa'aeara'a nō tō rātou vārua.

35 'A ha'amana'o, e tā'u tamaiti, 'e 'a ha'api'i mai i te pa'ari i tō 'oe 'āpīra'a ; 'oia ia, 'a ha'api'i mai i roto i tō 'oe 'āpīra'a 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

36 'Oia ia, 'a ti'aoro atu i te Atua 'ia tauturu mai 'oia ia 'oe i te mau mea ato'a ra ; 'oia ia, 'e te mau mea ato'a tā 'oe e rave ra, 'ia ravehia ia nō te Fatu ra, 'e te mau vāhi tā 'oe e haere, 'ia haerehia ia nā roto i te Fatu ra ; 'oia ia, 'ia vai māite tō 'oe mau mana'o i te Fatu ra ; 'oia ia, 'ia tu'uhia te aroha o tō 'ā'au i ni'a i te Fatu ra ē a muri noa atu.

37 'A paraparau atu i te Fatu i te mau mea ato'a tā 'oe e rave ra, 'e nāna ho'i 'oe e arata'i i te maita'i ; 'oia ia, 'ia ta'oto 'oe i te ru'i ra, 'a ta'oto ia i te Fatu ra, 'ia tīa'i māite mai 'oia ia 'oe i tō 'oe nā ta'otora'a ; 'e 'ia ti'a mai 'oe i te po'ipo'i ra, 'ia 'ī tō 'oe 'ā'au i te ha'amaita'i i te Atua ra ; 'e 'ia rave 'oe i teie mau mea ra, e fa'ateiteihia ia 'oe 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra.

38 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, e parau ri'i tā'u e parau atu nō ni'a i te mea i parauhia e tō tātou mau metua e pōpō, 'e 'aore rā e 'avei'a—'e 'ua ma'iri tō tātou mau metua i te i'oa o te reira e Liahona, tōna aura'a 'ia 'iritihia e 'avei'a ia ; 'e nā te Fatu ho'i i fa'aineine i te reira.

39 'E inaha, 'aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia hāmani i te hō'ē 'ohipa mai te reira te huru o te fa'ahia. 'E inaha, 'ua hāmanihia te reira nō te fa'a'ite i tō tātou mau metua i te 'ē'a 'o tā rātou e haere atu nā roto i te mēdēbara.

40 'E 'ua arata'i te reira ia rātou mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o i te Atua ; nō reira, mai te mea e fa'aro'o tō rātou nō te ti'aturi ē e ti'a i te Atua 'ia fa'atano i nā nira i te 'ē'a e haerehia e rātou ra, inaha, 'ua nā-reira-hia ihora ; nō reira, 'ua fāri'i rātou i teie semeio, 'e e rave rahi atu ā mau semeio i ravehia e te mana o te Atua, i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana.

41 'Āre'a rā, nō te mea 'ua ravehia taua mau semeio ra nā roto i te rāve'a iti ra, i fa'a'itehia mai ai te 'ohipa 'ūmere rahi ia rātou ra. E mea fa'atau rātou, 'e 'ua mo'ehia ia rātou 'ia fa'a'ohipa i tō rātou fa'aro'o 'e te itoito, 'e nō reira 'ua fa'a'orehia taua mau 'ohipa 'ūmere ra, 'e 'ua ha'amaorohia tō rātou tere.

42 Nō reira, 'ua pārahi maoro rātou i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'aita rātou i haere 'āfaro atu, 'e 'ua ha'afifihia rātou e te po'ia 'e te po'ihā nō tā rātou mau hara.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

43 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia 'ite 'oe ē, e 'ere te reira i te mea faufa'a 'ore ; nō te fa'atau ho'i o tō tātou mau metua i te ha'apa'o i te arata'ira'a a teie nei 'avei'a (e mau mea teie o te tino nei) i 'ore ai rātou i manuia ; 'oia ato'a i tā te vārua.

44 Inaha ho'i, e mea 'ōhie 'ia ha'apa'o i te parau a te Mesia, 'o tē fa'a'ite mai ia 'oe i te 'ē'a tītī'aifaro e tae atu ai i te 'oa'oa mure 'ore ra, 'oia ato'a e mea 'ōhie tā tō tātou mau metua ha'apa'ora'a i te arata'ira'a a teie 'avei'a, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai ia rātou i te 'ē'a tītī'aifaro e tae atu ai i te fenua i fafauhia ra.

45 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au, 'aita ānei tō teie mea e taipe ? Mai tā teie 'avei'a ho'i i arata'i mai i tō tātou mau metua, nā roto i tō rātou pe'era'a i te 'ē'a i fa'a'itehia mai e te reira, e tae atu ai i te fenua i fafauhia ra, 'e nā reira ato'a te mau parau a te Mesia i te arata'i ia tātou, mai te mea e pe'e tātou i te reira, e tae atu ai i te tahi pae mai nō teie nei peho nō te 'oto i roto i te tahi fenua maita'i roa a'e i fafauhia mai.

46 E tā'u tamaiti, 'eiaha tātou e fa'atau noa nō te 'ōhie o te 'ē'a ; 'e 'ua nā reira ho'i tō tātou mau metua ; 'e 'ua tu'uhia mai ho'i te rāve'a ia rātou, 'e 'ia hi'o noa atu rātou, e ora ia rātou ; e mai te reira ato'a ho'i ia tātou nei. 'Ua fa'aineinehia te 'ē'a, 'e 'ia hi'o noa atu tātou, e ora ia tātou ē a muri noa atu.

47 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'a ha'apa'o maita'i 'oe i teie mau mea mo'a ; 'oia ia, 'a hi'o atu i te Atua 'e 'a ora. 'A haere atu i teie nei feiā 'e 'a fa'a'ite atu i te parau ma te ha'apa'o maita'i. E tā'u tamaiti, 'a pārahi.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

Alama 38

- 1 E tā'u tamaiti, 'a fa'aro'o mai na tō tari'a i tā'u nei mau parau, 'e tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe mai tā'u ho'i i parau atu ia Helamana ra, mai te mea e ha'apa'o māite 'oe i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e manuia 'oe i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'oe 'ia ha'apa'o māite i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e tāpū-'ē-hia atu 'oe i tōna ra aro.
- 2 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, tē ti'aturi nei au ē, e noa'a mai tō'u 'oa'oa rahi i roto ia 'oe na, nō tō 'oe 'āueue 'ore 'e tō 'oe ha'apa'o maita'i i tā te Atua ; inaha ho'i nō te mea 'ua ha'amata 'oe i tō 'oe 'āpīra'a 'ia ti'aturi atu i te Fatu ra i tō 'oe Atua, tē ti'aturi nei ho'i au ē, e tāmau noa 'oe i te ha'apa'o i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a ; e ao ho'i tōna 'o tē tāpe'a māite ē tae roa atu i te hope'a.
- 3 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua fāri'i na vau i te 'oa'oa rahi nō roto mai ia 'oe na, nō tō 'oe ha'apa'o maita'i 'e tō 'oe itoito, 'e nō tō 'oe marū 'e tō 'oe fa'a'oroma'i roa ho'i i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Zorama.
- 4 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua tāpe'ahia 'oe ra ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite ato'a vau ē, 'ua pēhīhia 'oe i te 'ōfa'i nō te parau ; 'e 'ua fa'a'oroma'i 'oe i teie mau mea ato'a nei ma te marū nō te mea tei pīha'i iho te Fatu ia 'oe ; 'e i teienei, 'ua 'ite 'oe ē, 'ua fa'aora te Fatu ia 'oe.
- 5 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, e Sibelona, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'oe ē, 'ia ti'aturi 'oe i te Atua, e fa'aora ia 'oia ia 'oe i roto i tō 'oe ra mau 'ati, 'e tō 'oe ra mau pe'ape'a, 'e tō 'oe ra mau fifi, 'e e fa'ateiteihia 'oe i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 6 I teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'aita vau i hina'aro 'ia mana'o 'oe ē, 'ua 'ite au i teie nei mau mea nā roto iā'u iho, nā roto rā i te Vārua o te Atua i roto iā'u nei 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i teie nei mau mea iā'u ; nō te mea 'āhiri 'aita vau i fānauhia i te Atua ra, 'aita ia vau i 'ite i teie nei mau mea.

Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

- 7 Inaha rā, 'ua tonu mai te Fatu, nā roto i tōna aroha rahi, i tāna melahi nō te fa'a'ite mai iā'u ē, e mea ti'a roa iā'u 'ia fa'aea i te 'ohipa ha'amoura'a i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite mata atu vau i te hō'ē melahi te mata 'e te mata, 'e 'ua parau mai 'oia iā'u, 'e mai te pātiri tōna ra reo, 'e 'ua fa'a'āueue te reira i te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, i roto i nā mahana e toru 'e nā pō e toru ra, 'ua fāri'i au i te māuiui rahi 'e te mamae rahi o te vārua ; 'e 'aita roa vau i fāri'i i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā'u ra mau hara ē tae roa 'ua ti'aoro atu vau i te Fatu ra ia Iesu Mesia 'ia aroha mai. 'E inaha, 'ua ti'aoro atu vau iāna, 'e 'ua fāri'i au i te hau i tō'u ra vārua.
- 9 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua fa'a'ite atu vau i teie ia 'oe na 'ia 'ite 'oe i te pa'ari, 'ia 'ite ho'i 'oe nā roto atu iā'u nei ē, 'aita atu e rāve'a e fa'aorahia ai te ta'ata, maori rā nā roto i te Mesia. Inaha, 'o 'oia te ora 'e te māmarama o te ao nei. Inaha, 'o 'oia te parau mau 'e te parauti'a.
- 10 'E i teienei, nō te mea 'ua ha'amata 'oe i te ha'api'i atu i te parau, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia tāmāu noa 'oe i te ha'api'i atu i te reira ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ato'a vau 'ia itoito 'e 'ia hitahita 'ore 'oe i roto i te mau mea ato'a.
- 11 Hi'o māite ē 'aita 'oe e fa'ateiteihia i te te'ote'o ; 'oia ia, 'a hi'o māite ē 'aita 'oe e fa'aahaaha i tō 'oe iho na pa'ari, 'e 'aita ho'i i tō 'oe iho pūai.
- 12 'A fa'a'ohipa i te mata'u 'ore, 'eiaha rā te ahaaha ; 'e 'a hi'o māite ē 'ua tāvaha 'oe i tō 'oe mau hina'aro pae tino ato'a, 'ia fa'a'ihia 'oe i te aroha ; 'e 'a hi'o ē 'aita 'oe e fa'atau.
- 13 'Eiaha 'oe e pure mai tā te mau 'āti Zorama e nā reira ra, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oe ē, tē pure ra rātou 'ia fa'aro'ohia e te ta'ata, 'e 'ia 'āruehia nō tō rātou 'aravihi.
- 14 'Eiaha 'oe e parau atu ē : E te Atua, tē ha'amāuruuru nei au ia 'oe nō te mea e mea maita'i a'e mātou i tō mātou mau taea'e ; 'ia parau atu rā 'oe ē : E te Fatu, 'a fa'a'ore mai i tō'u ti'amā 'ore, 'e 'a ha'amana'o i tō'u mau taea'e ma te aroha—'oia ia, 'a fa'a'ite atu i tō 'oe ti'amā 'ore i mua i te Atua i te mau taime ato'a.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

15 'E 'ia ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu i tō 'oe vārua, 'e 'ia fāri'i mai 'oia ia 'oe i roto i tōna ra bāsileia 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra, nō te pārahi i raro ma te hau. 'E i teienei, 'a haere, e tā'u tamaiti, 'e 'a ha'api'i atu i te parau i teie nei feiā. 'Ei ta'ata pāpū 'oe. E tā'u tamaiti, 'a pārahi.

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

Alama 39

- 1 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua rahi atu te mau mea tā'u e parau atu ia 'oe i tā'u i parau atu i tō 'oe taea'e, inaha ho'i, 'aita ānei 'oe i ha'apa'o i te huru 'āueue 'ore o tō 'oe taea'e, i tōna ha'apa'o maita'i 'e te itoito i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua ? Inaha, 'aita ānei 'oia i hōro'a mai i te hi'ora'a maita'i ia 'oe ?
- 2 'E 'aita ho'i 'oe i ha'apa'o māite i tā'u mau parau mai tā tō 'oe taea'e i ha'apa'o i rotopū i te mau 'āti Zorama. I teienei, teie tā'u parau fa'ahapa ia 'oe na ; 'ua tāmau noa 'oe i te fa'aahaaha i tō 'oe iho pūai 'e tō 'oe iho 'aravihi.
- 3 E 'ere ho'i 'o te reira ana'e, e tā'u tamaiti. 'Ua rave ho'i 'oe i te hō'ē mea 'oto roa iā'u nei ; i te mea 'ua fa'aru'e 'oe i te 'ohipa ha'api'i 'evanelia, 'e 'ua haere atu 'oe i te fenua ra nō Sirona i rōpū i te mau hiti fenua o te mau 'āti Lamana, i te vahine tai'ata ra 'o Isabela.
- 4 'Oia iā, 'ua haru 'ē atu 'oia i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'aore roa rā o 'oe 'ōtohera'a, e tā'u tamaiti. 'Āhiri 'oe i ha'apa'o i te tōro'a i hōro'ahia mai ia 'oe ra.
- 5 'Aita ānei 'oe i 'ite e tā'u tamaiti ē, e mea vi'ivi'i roa teie mau mea i mua i te aro o te Fatu ; 'oia iā, e mea vi'ivi'i roa a'e te reira i te mau huru hara ato'a, maori rā te ha'amani'ira'a i te toto hara 'ore 'e 'aore rā te hunara'a i te Vārua Maita'i ?
- 6 Inaha ho'i, mai te mea e huna 'oe i te Vārua Maita'i 'o tei pārahi na i roto ia 'oe, 'e 'ua 'ite 'oe ē 'ua huna 'oe i te reira, inaha, e hara matara 'ore ho'i te reira ; 'oia iā, 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē taparahi pohe i te ta'ata noa atu te mārāmarama 'e te 'ite nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra, e'ita roa iā i te mea 'ōhie iāna 'ia fāri'i i te fa'a'orera'a hara ; 'oia iā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, e tā'u tamaiti, e'ita roa iā i te mea 'ōhie iāna 'ia fāri'i i te fa'a'orera'a hara.
- 7 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, teie tō'u hina'aro rahi i te Atua, 'āhiri ho'i 'aita 'oe i hapa i taua hara rahi ra. E'ita vau e fa'aea noa i ni'a i tā 'oe mau hara nō te fa'aahoaho i tō 'oe na vārua 'āhiri e'ita te reira e riro 'ei maita'i nō 'oe.

Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

- 8 Inaha ho'i, 'aita e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia huna i tā 'oe mau hara i te Atua ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'oe e tātarahapa, e riro ia te reira 'ei 'itera'a pāpū i ni'a ia 'oe i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 9 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia tātarahapa 'oe 'e 'ia fa'aru'e 'ē atu i tā 'oe mau hara, 'e 'eiaha e pe'e fa'ahou atu i te mau hina'aro vi'ivi'i o tō 'oe mata, 'a ha'apae rā ia 'oe iho i roto i teie nei mau mea ato'a ; 'ia 'ore ho'i 'oe 'ia nā reira, e 'ore roa ia e roa'a ia 'oe te bāsileia o te Atua. 'A ha'amana'o na ia 'e 'a rave i te reira i ni'a ia 'oe, 'e 'a ha'apae ia 'oe iho i roto i taua mau mea nei.
- 10 'E tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'oe na, 'ia paraparau atu 'oe i tō 'oe nā tua'ana nō ni'a i tā 'oe mau 'ohipa e rave ra ; inaha ho'i, tē vai 'āpī nei ā 'oe, 'e 'ia fa'a'amu tō 'oe nā taea'e ia 'oe e au ai. 'E 'a fa'aro'o māite na 'oe i tā rāua parau a'o.
- 11 'Eiaha 'oe e vaiho ia 'oe 'ia arata'i-'ē-hia atu e te mea faufa'a 'ore 'e te ma'ama'a ; 'eiaha 'oe e fa'ati'a i te diabolō 'ia arata'i 'ē fa'ahou atu i tō 'oe 'ā'au 'ia pe'e atu i taua mau vahine tai'ata vi'ivi'i ra. Inaha, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua rahi roa te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino tā 'oe i fa'atae atu i ni'a i te mau 'āti Zorama ; i tō rātou 'itera'a i tō 'oe hi'ora'a tano 'ore, 'aita atu ra rātou i ti'aturi mai i tā'u ra mau parau.
- 12 'E i teienei, tē parau mai ra te Vārua o te Fatu iā'u : 'A fa'aue atu 'oe i tā 'oe mau tamari'i 'ia rave i te 'ohipa maita'i, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia arata'i 'ē atu i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i te pohe ; nō reira tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'oe na, e tā'u tamaiti, nō tō'u mata'u i te Atua ra, 'ia fa'aea 'oe i te rave i tā 'oe ra mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 13 'E 'ia fāriu mai 'oe i te Fatu ma tō 'oe 'ā'au ato'a, 'e tō 'oe mana ato'a, 'e tō 'oe pūai ato'a ; 'ia 'ore 'oe 'ia arata'i 'ē atu i te 'ā'au o te tahi atu ā mau ta'ata 'ia rave i te parauti'a 'ore ; 'ia ho'i fa'ahou rā 'oe ia rātou ra, 'e 'ia fā'i atu i tā 'oe mau hapa 'e te hape 'o tā 'oe i rave.
- 14 'Eiaha e 'imi i te mau tao'a 'e te mau mea faufa'a 'ore nō teie nei ao, inaha ho'i, 'aita e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia 'āfa'i atu i te reira nā muri iho ia 'oe.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

- 15 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, e parau rī'i atu ā vau ia 'oe na nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Mesia. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'o 'oia mau iho tē tae mai nō te hōpoi 'ē atu i te mau hara a tō te ao nei ; 'oia ia, e tae mai 'oia nō te fa'a'ite mai i te mau parau 'oa'oa nō te fa'aorara'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 16 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'o te tōro'a teie i pī'ihia ai 'oe ra, nō te a'o atu i teie nei mau parau 'oa'oa i teie nei feiā, nō te fa'aineine i tō rātou ferurira'a ; hau atu, 'ia tae mai ho'i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou ra, 'ia fa'aineine rātou i te ferurira'a o tā rātou ra mau tamari'i 'ia fa'aro'o i te parau i te taimē nō tōna ra taera'a mai.
- 17 'E i teienei, e ha'amarū vau i tō 'oe ferurira'a nō ni'a i teie nei tumu parau. Inaha, tē māere na 'oe i te mea ē, 'ua 'iteahia taua mau mea ra nā mua roa i te tupura'a. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, e 'ere ānei hō'ē ā te faufa'a rahi o te hō'ē vārua i te Atua i teie nei tau i tō te tahi atu vārua i te tau e tae mai ai 'oia ra ?
- 18 E 'ere ānei i te mea tī'a 'ia fa'a'itehia atu teie nei 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a i teie nei feiā, 'e i tā rātou ato'a ra mau tamari'i ?
- 19 E 'ere ānei i te mea 'ōhie i teie nei tau 'ia tonō mai te Fatu i tāna ra melahi nō te fa'a'ite mai i teie nei mau parau 'oa'oa ia tātou, 'e i tā tātou mau tamari'i ato'a, 'e i tō muri a'e i tōna ra taera'a mai ?

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

Alama 40

- 1 I teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, teie fa'ahou te tahi mau parau iti tā'u e parau atu ia 'oe ; 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, 'ua tapitapi tō 'oe ferurira'a nō ni'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra.
- 2 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'aita e ti'afa'ahoura'a—'oia ho'i, tē parau atu nei au, e'ita roa teie tino tāhuti e riro 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'e e'ita roa teie tino pohe noa e riro 'ei tino pohe 'ore—ē tae roa atu i te taera'a mai o te Mesia.
- 3 Inaha, e fa'atupu 'oia i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra. Inaha rā, e tā'u tamaiti, 'aita ā te ti'afa'ahoura'a i tupu. I teienei, e tātara atu vau i te hō'ē parau 'aro i mua ia 'oe ; tē vai noa ra rā te mau parau 'aro e rave rahi 'o tei tāpe'ahia, 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata i 'ite i te reira, maori rā 'o te Atua iho. E fa'a'ite atu rā vau ia 'oe i te hō'ē mea tā'u i ani māite i te Atua 'ia 'ite au—'e nō ni'a te reira i te ti'afa'ahoura'a.
- 4 Inaha, 'ua fa'ata'ahia te taime e ti'afa'ahou mai ai te ta'ata ato'a mai te pohe mai. I teienei, i te taera'a mai o taua taime ra, 'aita roa ia te ta'ata i 'ite ; 'ua 'ite rā te Atua i te taime i fa'ata'ahia.
- 5 I teienei, hō'ē taime ānei, e piti taime ānei, 'e 'aore rā e toru taime ānei e ti'afa'ahou mai ai te ta'ata mai te pohe mai, 'aita e pe'ape'a i te reira ; 'ua 'itea ho'i i te Atua teie mau mea ato'a ; 'ua nava'i noa iā'u 'ia 'ite ē, e tupu iho ā te reira—'oia ho'i, 'ua fa'ata'ahia te taime e ti'afa'ahou mai ai te mau ta'ata ato'a mai te pohe mai.
- 6 I teienei, e mea ti'a 'ia vai te hō'ē tau i rōpū i te pohera'a 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a.
- 7 'E i teienei, e ui atu vau, tei hea te vaira'a o te mau vārua o te mau ta'ata mai taua taime pohera'a nei ē tae noa atu i te taime i fa'ata'ahia nō te ti'afa'ahoura'a ?
- 8 I teienei, hō'ē noa iho ānei taime i fa'ata'ahia nō te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te ta'ata, 'aita e pe'ape'a nō te reira vāhi ; 'aita ho'i te mau ta'ata ato'a i pohe i te taime hō'ē ra ; 'e 'aita ato'a e pe'ape'a nō te reira vāhi ; i roto i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te reira hō'ē noa iho ia mahana i te Atua, 'e 'ua fāitohia te taime i te ta'ata ana'e ra.

Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

- 9 Nō reira, 'ua fa'ata'ahia te hō'ē taime nō te ta'ata 'ia ti'afa'ahou mai rātou mai te pohe mai ; 'e tē vai ra te hō'ē tau i rōpū i te taime nō te pohera'a 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a. 'E i teienei, nō ni'a i taua tau ra, tei hea roa ia te vaira'a o te mau vārua o te mau ta'ata i reira, 'o te mea ia 'o tā'u i ui māite atu i te Fatu 'ia 'ite ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au i te parau nō taua mea ra.
- 10 'E 'ia tae i te tau e ti'afa'ahou mai ai te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ei reira rātou e 'ite ai ē, 'ua 'ite te Atua i te mau tau ato'a i fa'ata'ahia nō te ta'ata.
- 11 I teienei, nō ni'a i te vaira'a o te vārua ta'ata i rōpū i te pohera'a 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a—Inaha, 'ua fa'a'itehia mai ia iā'u e te hō'ē melahi, 'o tei nā 'ō mai iā'u ē, 'ia reva atu te mau vārua o te mau ta'ata i teie tino tāhuti nei ; 'oia ia, te mau vārua o te mau ta'ata ato'a ra, te mea maita'i 'e te mea 'ino ato'a ho'i, e 'āfa'ihia ia rātou i mua i taua Atua ra 'o tei hōro'a mai i te ora nō rātou.
- 12 'E i reira, a muri a'era, e fāri'ihia te mau vārua o te feiā parauti'a i roto i te hō'ē vāhi 'oa'oa, 'o tei parauhia e pāradaiso, te hō'ē vāhi fa'afa'aeara'a, te hō'ē vāhi hau, 'e i reira rātou e fa'afa'aea ai i tō rātou pe'ape'a 'e te mau 'ati ato'a, 'e te 'oto ho'i.
- 13 'E i reira, a muri a'era, te mau vārua o te feiā parauti'a 'ore, 'oia ia, 'o tei riro 'ei mea vi'ivi'i—inaha ho'i, 'aita tā rātou e tufa'a 'e e vāhi i te Vārua o te Fatu ; inaha ho'i, 'ua mā'iti rātou i te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i 'aita i te maita'i ; nō reira 'ua tomo te vārua o te diablo i roto ia rātou, 'e 'ua rave i tō rātou ti'ahapa—'e e hurihia ia rātou i rāpae i roto i te pōiri ta'ota'o ; tei reira te 'oto, 'e te 'auē, 'e te 'au'aura'a niho ; 'e 'ua tupu te reira nō tā rātou iho mau 'ohipa 'ino, 'e 'ua arata'i-tī-tī-hia ho'i rātou e te hina'aro o te diablo.
- 14 I teienei, 'o te vaira'a teie o te mau vārua o te feiā parauti'a 'ore ; 'oia ia, i roto i te pōiri, 'e te hō'ē vaira'a ri'ari'a, 'e te mata'u, 'e te ferurira'a i te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua 'o tē tae i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua nā reira noa rātou i te vaira'a, 'e tei reira ato'a te vaira'a o te feiā parauti'a i roto i te pāradaiso, ē tae roa atu i te taime nō tō rātou ti'afa'ahoura'a.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

- 15 I teienei, 'ua mana'o te tahi pae ē, teie vaira'a nō te 'oa'oa 'e teie vaira'a nō te mamae o te vārua hou te ti'afa'ahoura'a, 'o tē ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua ia. 'Oia ia, 'ua ti'a iā'u 'ia parauhia te reira e ti'afa'ahoura'a ; 'oia te fa'ati'ara'a i te vārua 'e te tu'ura'a i te reira i te vaira'a nō te 'oa'oa 'e 'aore rā i te vaira'a nō te mamae, mai te au i te mau parau i parauhia ra.
- 16 'E inaha, 'ua fa'a'itehia mai ē, tē vai ra te ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua, te ti'afa'ahoura'a ho'i ia o rātou ato'a 'o tei vai na, 'e tē vai nei, 'e tē vai a muri atu, ē tae noa atu i tō te Mesia ti'afa'ahoura'a mai te pohe mai ra.
- 17 I teienei, 'aita tātou e mana'o nei ē, teie ti'afa'ahoura'a mātāmua i parauhia a'enei, 'o te fa'ati'a-fa'ahou-ra'a ia o te mau vārua 'e tō rātou tu'ura'ahia i te vaira'a nō te 'oa'oa 'e 'aore rā i te vaira'a nō te mamae. 'Eiaha roa 'oe 'ia mana'o ē, 'o te reira ia te aura'a.
- 18 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na ē, 'Aita roa ; 'o teie rā te aura'a, 'oia ho'i te 'āmui-fa'ahou-ra'a o te vārua i te tino, o te mau ta'ata mai te mahana mai o Adamu ē tae noa atu i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia.
- 19 I teienei, e 'āmui-fa'ahou-hia ānei te mau vārua 'e te mau tino o te feiā i parauhia a'enei i te hō'ē ā taime, tō te feiā parauti'a 'ore 'e tō te feiā parauti'a, 'aita tā'u e parau i te reira ; 'ātirā na, tē parau atu nei au ē, e hope roa rātou i te ti'afa'ahou mai ; 'oia ho'i, e nā mua tō rātou ti'afa'ahoura'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā i pohe i muri mai i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia.
- 20 I teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'aita vau i parau ē, e ti'afa'ahou mai rātou 'ia tae i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia ra ; inaha rā, 'ua mana'o vau ē, e 'āmui-fa'ahou-hia te mau vārua 'e te mau tino o te mau ta'ata parauti'a i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia 'e tōna revara'a atu i ni'a i te ra'i.
- 21 'Aita rā vau e parau ē, e tupu te reira i tōna ti'afa'ahoura'a 'e 'aore rā i muri a'e ; tē parau atu nei rā vau ē, tē vai nei te hō'ē tau i rōpū i te pohera'a 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te tino, 'e te hō'ē vaira'a ato'a o te vārua i roto i te 'oa'oa 'e 'aore rā i te mamae ē tae roa atu i te tau i fa'ata'ahia e te Atua e ti'afa'ahou mai ai te feiā pohe ra, 'e e tāhō'ēhia ai te vārua 'e te tino, 'e e 'āfa'ihia atu ai i mua i te Atua, 'e 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignation to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignation to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

22 'Oia ia, nā teie e fa'atupu i te fa'aho'ira'a o te mau mea ato'a i parauhia e te vaha o te mau peropheta ra.

23 'E e fa'aho'ihia te vārua i te tino, 'e te tino i te vārua ; 'oia ia, e fa'aho'ihia te 'āvae 'e te rima 'e te mau ponaivi ato'a i tōna tino ; 'oia ia, e 'ore ho'i te hō'ē 'i'o rouru o te upo'o e mo'e, e fa'aho'ihia rā te mau mea ato'a ra i tō rātou iho vāhi tano mau.

24 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'o te fa'aho'ira'a teie i parauhia e te vaha o te mau peropheta—

25 'E i reira te feiā parauti'a e 'ana'ana atu ai i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua.

26 Inaha rā, e tae mai te hō'ē pohe ri'ari'a i ni'a iho i te feiā parauti'a 'ore ; e pohe ho'i rātou i tā te parauti'a ; nō te mea e mea vi'ivi'i rātou, 'e 'aita roa ho'i e ti'a i te hō'ē mea vi'ivi'i 'ia o i te bāsileia o te Atua ra ; e ti'avaruhia rā rātou i rāpae, 'e e vaiihohia 'ia 'amu i te mau hotu nō tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa, 'oia ho'i i te mea 'ino ; 'e e inu rātou i te mau ota nō te 'āu'a 'ava'ava ra.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

Alama 41

- 1 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, e parau ri'i tā'u e parau atu ia 'oe nō ni'a i te fa'aho'ira'a mai i parauhia ra ; inaha ho'i, 'ua ruri 'ē te tahi pae i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, 'e 'ua haere 'ē atu rātou nō teie nei mea. 'E tē 'ite nei au ē, i tapitapi na ho'i tō 'oe 'ā'au nō teie mea. Inaha rā, e ha'amāramarama atu vau i te reira ia 'oe na.
- 2 Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua tītauhia te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aho'ira'a mai e te parauti'a a te Atua ra ; e mea tītauhia 'ia fa'aho'ihia te mau mea ato'a i tō rātou huru nahonaho. Inaha, e mea tītauhia ho'i 'e te ti'a, mai te au i te mana 'e te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia, 'ia fa'aho'ihia te vārua o te ta'ata i tōna tino, 'e 'ia fa'aho'ihia te mau melo ato'a o te tino i tōna huru mau.
- 3 'E 'ua tītauhia ho'i te reira 'ia au i tā te Atua ra parauti'a, 'ia ha'avāhia te mau ta'ata mai te au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa ; 'e mai te mea e mea maita'i tā rātou mau 'ohipa i roto i teie orara'a, 'e 'ua ti'a ho'i te mau hina'aro o tō rātou 'ā'au, e fa'aho'i-ato'a-hia ia ia rātou te mea maita'i 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 4 'E mai te mea e mea 'ino tā rātou mau 'ohipa, e fa'aho'ihia ia te reira 'ei mea 'ino ia rātou ra. Nō reira, e fa'aho'ihia te mau mea ato'a i tō rātou huru nahonaho, te mau mea ato'a i tō rātou huru mau—te mea tāhuti 'ei mea tāhuti 'ore, te mea pohe noa 'ei mea pohe 'ore—'ia fa'ati'ahia i te 'oa'oa hope 'ore nō te fāri'i i te bāsileia o te Atua ra, 'e 'aore rā i te mamae hope 'ore nō te fāri'i i te bāsileia o te diabolō ra, te hō'ē i te hō'ē pae, te tahi atu i te tahi atu pae—
- 5 E fa'ati'ahia te hō'ē i te 'oa'oa mai te au i tōna mau hina'aro i te 'oa'oa, 'e 'aore rā i te maita'i mai te au i tōna mau hina'aro i te maita'i ; 'e te tahi pae i te 'ino mai te au i tōna mau hina'aro i te 'ino ; mai tāna ho'i i hina'aro i te rave i te 'ino mai te po'ipo'i ē pō noa a'e ; mai te reira ā ho'i e roa'a iāna tāna utu'a 'ino 'ia tae i te pō.
- 6 'E mai te reira ā ho'i tō te tahi pae. Mai te mea 'ua tātarahapa 'oia i tāna mau hara, 'e 'ua tītau onono atu ho'i i te parauti'a ē tae roa atu i te hope'a o tōna rapu'e mahana, mai te reira iho ā ho'i 'oia i te fāri'i i te utu'a maita'i nō te parauti'a.

Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

- 7 'O rātou teie tei fa'aorahia e te Fatu ; 'oia ia, 'o rātou teie i rave-'ē-hia, 'e tei fa'aorahia i taua pō hope 'ore o te pōiri ra ; e nā reira rātou i te ti'a 'e 'aore rā i te hi'a ; inaha ho'i, 'o rātou iho tō rātou ha'avā nō te rave i te mea maita'i 'e 'aore rā i te mea 'ino.
- 8 I teienei, 'aita roa e ti'a 'ia fa'ahuru 'ē haere noa i te mau fa'auera'a mana a te Atua, nō reira, 'ua fa'aimeinehia te 'ē'a, 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē hina'aro 'ia pe'e i te reira, e fa'aorahia ia.
- 9 'E i teienei, inaha, e tā'u tamaiti, 'eiaha roa 'oe e rave i te hō'ē noa atu ā hapa i te Atua nō ni'a i taua mau ha'api'ira'a tumu nei, mai 'ati noa a'enei 'oe i te hara.
- 10 'Eiaha roa 'oe e mana'o ē, nō te mea 'ua parauhia na nō ni'a i te fa'aho'ira'a ra, e fa'aho'ihia mai ia 'oe mai roto mai i te hara i te 'oa'oa. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, e 'ere roa te 'ino i te 'oa'oa.
- 11 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, e mea hi'a te huru o te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ho'i, tei roto rātou i te huru pae tino, nō reira tei roto ia rātou i te au 'ava'ava 'e i te mau ru'uru'ura'a nō te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; 'ua 'ere rātou i te Atua i roto i te ao nei, 'e 'ua pāto'i rātou i te huru o te Atua ; nō reira, tē vai noa ra rātou i roto i te hō'ē vaira'a pāto'i i te huru mau o te 'oa'oa.
- 12 'E i teienei, inaha, 'o te aura'a ānei teie o te parau ra e fa'aho'ira'a, te ravera'a i te mea i tōna ra huru mau 'e te fa'arirora'a i te reira 'ei mea au 'ore i tōna huru mau, 'e 'aore rā te fa'arirora'a i te reira 'ei mea huru 'ē i tōna ra huru mau ?
- 13 E tā'u tamaiti, 'aita roa ia ; te aura'a ra o te parau fa'aho'ira'a, 'o te fa'aho'ira'ahia ia te 'ino 'ei 'ino, te huru tāhuti 'ei huru tāhuti, 'e te huru diabolō 'ei huru diabolō—'e te maita'i 'ei maita'i ; 'e te parauti'a 'ei parauti'a ; te mea tano 'ei mea tano ; 'e te aroha 'ei aroha.
- 14 Nō reira, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ia aroha 'oe i tō 'oe mau taea'e ; 'a ha'apa'o ia vetahi 'ē ma te au maita'i, 'a ha'avā ma te parauti'a, 'e 'a rave i te maita'i ma te tu'utu'u 'ore ; 'e 'ia rave 'oe i teie nei mau mea, e roa'a ia te utu'a maita'i ia 'oe ; 'oia ia, e fa'aho'i-fa'ahou-hia te aroha ia 'oe ra ; e fa'aho'i-fa'ahou-hia te parauti'a ia 'oe ra ; e fa'aho'i-fa'ahou-hia mai te ha'avāra'a parauti'a ia 'oe ra, 'e e fāri'i fa'ahou 'oe i te utu'a maita'i.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

15 Te mea ho'i 'o tā 'oe e hāpono atu, e ho'i fa'ahou
mai ia ia 'oe, 'e e fa'aho'ihia ia ; nō reira, nā tē parau
ra e fa'aho'ira'a, e fa'ahapa hope i te ta'ata hara, 'e e
'ore roa 'oia e fa'ati'a-noa-hia a'e.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto
you again, and be restored; therefore, the word
restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and
justifieth him not at all.

Alama 42

- 1 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, tē 'ite nei au ē, tē vai noa na te tahi atu ā mea 'o tē ha'ape'ape'a nei i tō 'oe ferurira'a, 'e 'aita i 'ite-pāpū-hia ia 'oe—'e nō ni'a te reira i te parauti'a o te Atua i te fa'au'ara'a mai i te feiā hara ; nō te mea tē mana'o nei 'oe ē, e 'ere i te mea ti'a 'ia tu'uhia atu te feiā hara i roto i te vāhi nō te mamae.
- 2 I teienei, inaha, e tā'u tamaiti, e ha'amāramarama atu vau i te reira ia 'oe na. Inaha ho'i, i muri iho i tō te Fatu te Atua ti'avarura'a atu i tō tātou nā metua mātāmua i rāpae i te 'ō i Edene ra, nō te fa'a'apu i te fenua nō reira mai ho'i rāua ra—'oia ia, 'ua tīahi atu ra 'oia i te ta'ata, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra i te pae nō te hiti'a o te rā i taua 'ō i Edene i te mau kerubi, 'e te hō'ē 'o'e ura 'o tē fāriuriu haere nō te tīa'i i taua tumu rā'au nō te ora ra—
- 3 I teienei, 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua riro te ta'ata mai te Atua te huru i te 'ite i te maita'i 'e te 'ino ; 'e nō te pāruru 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia fa'atoro atu i tōna rima nō te rave mai i tō te tumu rā'au nō te ora, 'e 'a 'amu ai 'e 'a ora noa ai ē a muri noa atu, 'ua tu'u mai ra te Fatu te Atua i te kerubi 'e te 'o'e ura, 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia 'amu i taua hotu ra—
- 4 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, tē vai ra te taime i hōro'ahia i te ta'ata nō te tātarahapa, 'oia ia, e taime tāmatara'a, e taime nō te tātarahapa 'e nō te tāvini i te Atua.
- 5 Inaha ho'i, 'āhiri Adamu i fa'atoro 'oi'oi atu i tōna rima nō te rave i tō te tumu rā'au nō te ora, 'ua ora ia 'oia ē a muri noa atu, mai te au i te parau a te Atua, 'e 'aita tōna e taime 'ia tātarahapa ; 'oia ia, 'ua faufa'a 'ore ia te parau a te Atua, 'e 'ua fa'a'orehia ho'i ia te 'ōpuara'a rahi nō te fa'aorara'a.
- 6 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'ata'ahia 'ia pohe te ta'ata—nō reira, mai ia rātou ho'i i tāpū-'ē-hia atu i te tumu rā'au nō te ora ra, 'ia tāpū-'ē-hia atu ho'i rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei—'e 'ua mo'e atu ra te ta'ata ē a muri noa atu, 'oia ia, 'ua riro ihora rātou 'ei feiā hi'a.
- 7 'E i teienei, tē 'ite nei 'outou ē, 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia tō tātou nā metua mātāmua i te pae tino 'e i te pae vārua ato'a mai mua mai i te aro o te Fatu ; 'e nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, e ti'amāra'a tō rāua 'ia pe'e i tō rāua iho hina'aro.

Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be con-signed to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

- 8 I teienei, inaha, e 'ere i te mea ti'a 'ia fa'aorahia te ta'ata i tōna pohe pae tino, nō te mea e fa'ore te reira i te 'ōpuara'a rahi nō te 'oa'oa.
- 9 Nō reira, nō te mea 'aita roa te vārua e pohe, 'e 'ua fa'atae mai ho'i te hi'ara'a i te pohe pae vārua 'e te pohe pae tino ato'a i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ho'i, 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia rātou mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu, e mea ti'a roa ia 'ia fa'aorahia te ta'ata i taua pohe pae vārua ra.
- 10 Nō reira, nō te mea 'ua riro rātou 'ei mea tāhuti noa, 'ei mea hina'aro i tā te tino, 'e i te huru diabolō, i roto i tō rātou nātura, 'ua riro atu ra teie nei vai-tāmata-ra'a 'ei vaira'a nō rātou nō te fa'aineine ; 'oia ho'i 'ei vaira'a fa'aineinera'a.
- 11 'E i teienei, 'a ha'amana'o na, e tā'u tamaiti, 'āhiri 'aita e 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a, ('ia ha'apaehia te reira) 'ia pohe atu te ta'ata, e vai ā te māuiui rahi nō tō rātou vārua, nō te tāpū-'ē-ra'a-hia mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu.
- 12 'E i teienei, 'aita atu ā e rāve'a e ora ai te ta'ata nei i taua hi'ara'a ra, 'o tā te ta'ata i fa'atae mai i ni'a iho iāna nō tōna iho ha'apa'o 'ore.
- 13 Nō reira, mai te au i te parauti'a, 'aita roa te 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'aorara'a e tupu, maori rā nā roto i tō te ta'ata tātarahapara'a i roto i teie vaira'a tāmatarā'a ; 'oia ia, teie vaira'a fa'aineinera'a ; 'e 'āhiri 'aita teie nei mau rāve'a, 'aita roa te aroha e upo'oti'a, maori rā e fa'ore te reira i te 'ohipa nō te parauti'a. I teienei, 'aita roa te 'ohipa nō te parauti'a e ti'a 'ia ha'amouhia ; 'e 'āhiri e ti'a 'ia nā-reira-hia, e'ita ia te Atua e riro 'ei Atua.
- 14 'E nō reira 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua hi'a te ta'ata ato'a, 'e tei roto rātou i te rima o te parauti'a ; 'oia ia, te parauti'a a te Atua, 'o tei tāpū 'ē atu ia rātou i tōna ra aro ē a muri noa atu.
- 15 'E i teienei, 'aita roa te 'ōpuara'a nō te aroha e tupu, maori rā nā roto i te hō'ē tāra'ehara ; nō reira 'ua riro te Atua iho 'ei tāra'ehara nō te mau hara a tō te ao nei, nō te fa'atupu i te 'ōpuara'a nō te aroha, nō te fa'ati'a i te mau tītaura'a nō te parauti'a, 'ia vai ā te Atua 'ei Atua maita'i roa, 'ei Atua parauti'a, 'e 'ei Atua aroha ho'i.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

- 16 I teienei, 'aita roa te tātarahapa e tae mai i te ta'ata nei, maori rā tē vai ra te hō'ē fa'autu'ara'a i te hō'ē pae, 'e te 'ōpuara'a nō te 'oa'oa i te tahi pae, 'o tei riro ato'a 'ei mea mure 'ore, mai te ora o te vārua e mea mure 'ore.
- 17 I teienei, nō te aha te ta'ata e tātarahapa ai, maori rā 'ua hara 'oia ? Nāhea 'oia e hara ai, mai te mea 'aita e ture ? Nāhea ho'i e ti'a ai 'ia vai te ture maori rā tē vai ra te fa'autu'ara'a ?
- 18 I teienei, 'ua fa'aauhia te fa'autu'ara'a, 'e 'ua tu'uhia mai ho'i te ture ti'a, 'e 'ua fa'atupu te reira i te māuiui i roto i te 'ā'au o te ta'ata.
- 19 I teienei, 'āhiri 'aita te ture i tu'uhia mai—'e 'ia taparahi pohe te ta'ata i te tahi atu ta'ata ra, e ha'apohe-ato'a-hia ia 'oia—e mata'u ānei 'oia i te pohe mai te mea ē, e taparahi 'oia i te ta'ata ?
- 20 'E 'oia ato'a, 'āhiri 'aita e ture nō te hara, 'aita ato'a ia te ta'ata e mata'u 'ia rave i te hara.
- 21 'E 'āhiri 'aita te ture i tu'uhia mai, 'e 'ua hara te ta'ata e aha ia tā te parauti'a 'e tā te aroha rāve'a, 'aita ho'i o te reira e mana i ni'a i te ta'ata ?
- 22 'Ua tu'uhia mai rā te ture, 'e 'ua fa'aauhia ho'i te fa'autu'ara'a, 'e 'ua hōro'ahia mai te tātarahapara'a ; 'e nā roto i te tātarahapara'a e roa'a ai tō te aroha mana ; 'e mai te mea ē 'aita, 'ua noa'a ia tō te parauti'a mana i ni'a i te ta'ata 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ho'i te reira i te ture, 'e nā te ture e fa'ati'a i te fa'autu'ara'a ; 'āhiri 'aita ra, 'ua 'ore ia te mau 'ohipa a te parauti'a, 'e e'ita ia te Atua e riro 'ei Atua.
- 23 'Āre'a rā e vai noa te Atua 'ei Atua, 'e e mana tō te aroha i ni'a i te feiā tātarahapa, 'e 'ua tae mai te aroha nā roto i te tāra'ehara ; 'e nā te tāra'ehara i fa'atae mai i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra ; 'e nā te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra e fa'aho'i atu i te ta'ata i mua i te aro o te Atua ; 'e nā reira rātou i te fa'aho'ihia atu i mua i tōna ra aro, 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā rātou mau 'ohipa ; mai te au ho'i i te ture 'e te parauti'a.
- 24 Inaha ho'i, tē tītau ra te parauti'a i tāna ihora, 'e e mana ho'i tō te aroha i ni'a i tāna ihora ; 'e nō reira, 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata e fa'aorahia, maori rā te feiā tātarahapa mau.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

25 E aha, tē mana'o ra ānei 'oe ē, e ti'a i te aroha 'ia haru i tā te parauti'a ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'Aita roa ; 'aita roa te hō'ē noa a'e vāhi iti. 'E 'āhiri ē 'oia, e'ita ia te Atua e riro 'ei Atua.

26 'E nō reira 'ua fa'atupu te Atua i tāna mau 'ōpuara'a rahi 'e te mure 'ore, 'o tei fa'aineinehia mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei. 'E nō reira e tae mai te fa'aorara'a 'e te ora o te ta'ata nei, 'e tō rātou ato'a pohe 'e te mamae.

27 Nō reira, e tā'u tamaiti, 'o tei hina'aro i te haere mai, e ti'a iāna 'ia haere mai 'e 'ia inu noa i te mau pape nō te ora ; 'e 'o tei 'ore e hina'aro 'ia haere mai, 'aita roa ia 'oia e ha'avīhia 'ia haere mai ; 'āre'a rā 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra e fa'aho'ihia mai ia tāna mai te au i tāna ra mau 'ohipa.

28 'E mai te mea 'ua hina'aro 'oia i te rave i te 'ino, 'e 'aita 'oia i tātarahapa i tōna ra pu'e mahana, inaha, e tāho'ohia 'oia i te 'ino, mai te au i te fa'aho'ira'a a te Atua ra.

29 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'eiaha 'oe e vaiiho i teie mau mea 'ia ha'ape'ape'a fa'ahou ia 'oe, 'e 'ia vaiiho i tā 'oe mau hara 'ia ha'ape'ape'a ia 'oe, 'oia i taua pe'ape'a ra 'o tē fa'aha'eha'a ia 'oe 'ia tātarahapa.

30 E tā'u tamaiti, 'ua hina'aro vau 'eiaha 'oe e huna fa'ahou i te parauti'a a te Atua. 'Eiaha roa ho'i 'oe e fa'ati'a ia 'oe iho i tā 'oe ra mau hara i te hō'ē vāhi iti noa a'e ma te huna i te parauti'a a te Atua ra ; 'āre'a rā 'a vaiiho i te parauti'a a te Atua, 'e tōna aroha, 'e tōna fa'a'oroma'ira'a roa 'ia fa'auru i tō 'oe 'ā'au ; 'e 'a vaiiho ato'a i te reira 'ia 'ume ia 'oe i raro i te repo i roto i te ha'eha'a.

31 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ua pi'ihia 'oe e te Atua 'ia a'o atu i te parau i teie nei feiā. 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'a haere i tō 'oe tere, 'e 'a a'o atu i te parau ma te parau mau 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i, 'ia ti'a ia 'oe 'ia arata'i mai i te mau ta'ata i te tātarahapa, 'ia roa'a ia rātou te mana nō te 'ōpuara'a rahi nō te aroha. 'E 'ia hōro'a mai te Atua ia 'oe mai te au i tā'u mau parau. 'Āmene.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

Alama 43

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Alama i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nō te poro atu i te parau ia rātou. 'E 'aita e ti'a ia Alama iho 'ia fa'aea noa, 'e 'ua haere ato'a atu ra 'oia.
- 2 I teienei, 'eiaha tātou e parau fa'ahou nō ni'a i tā rātou a'ora'a, maori rā 'ua a'o atu rātou i te parau, 'e te parau mau ho'i, mai te au i te vārua nō te tohu 'e te heheura'a ; 'e 'ua a'o atu rātou mai te au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua i mā'itihia ai rātou ra.
- 3 'E i teienei, e ho'i au i ni'a i te 'ā'amu nō te mau tama'i i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, i te matahiti hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma va'u nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, i muri a'era, 'ua riro mai te mau 'āti Zorama 'ei mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te matahiti hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma va'u 'ua 'ite atu ra te mau 'āti Nephi ē tē haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro mai ia rātou, nō reira, 'ua fa'aineine rātou nō te 'arora'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'aputu rātou i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i roto i te fenua ra nō Ieresona.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana 'e tō rātou mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra rātou i roto i te fenua ra nō Anetionuma, 'oia ho'i, i te fenua o te mau 'āti Zorama ; 'e tē vai ra te hō'ē ta'ata i ma'irihia te i'oa 'o Zerahemana, 'o tō rātou ia ta'ata fa'atere.
- 6 'E i teienei, nō te mea 'ua riro te mau 'āti Amaleka iho 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore a'e 'e te hina'aro rahi a'e i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia taparahi i te ta'ata, nō reira, 'ua mā'iti Zerahemana nō roto mai ia rātou i te mau ra'atira rahi nō te fa'atere i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e mau 'āti Amaleka 'e e mau 'āti Zorama ho'i ia rātou ato'a ra.
- 7 I teienei 'ua nā reira 'oia 'ia vai noa tō rātou 'ino'ino i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia 'ume mai ia rātou i raro a'e i tāna fa'aterera'a nō te fa'atupu i tāna mau 'ōpuara'a.
- 8 Inaha ho'i, 'o teie tāna mau 'ōpuara'a, nō te fa'ati'arepu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia riri atu i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia i te haru i te mana rahi i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ia noa'a ato'a te mana iāna i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi nā roto i te fa'atītira'a ia rātou.

Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

- 9 'E i teienei, 'o teie te 'ōpuara'a a te mau 'āti Nephi ; nō te pāroru i tō rātou mau fenua, 'e tō rātou mau fare, 'e tā rātou mau vahine, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, nō te fa'aora ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi ; 'e 'oia ato'a nō te pāroru i tō rātou ti'ara'a 'e te mau mea e maita'i ai rātou, 'oia ia, 'e tō rātou ti'amāra'a ato'a, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'amori i te Atua mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro.
- 10 'Ua 'ite ho'i rātou ē, 'ia ma'iri rātou i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana, e taparahi te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou ato'a 'o tē ha'amori i te Atua, i te Atua mau 'e te ora, nā roto i te vārua 'e te parau mau.
- 11 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a rātou i te 'ino'ino rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'oia ho'i, i te mau ta'ata o te Aneti-Nepi-Lehi, 'o tei parauhia te mau ta'ata o Amona—'e 'aita roa ho'i rātou e rave i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i ; 'oia ia, 'ua fafau rātou i te hō'ē fafaua'a 'e 'aita rātou i hina'aro 'ia 'ōfati i te reira—nō reira, 'ia ma'iri ana'e rātou i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana, e taparahihia rātou.
- 12 'E 'aita roa te mau 'āti Nephi i hina'aro 'ia taparahihia rātou ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a atu rātou i te tahi mau fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō rātou.
- 13 'E 'ua hōro'a atu te mau ta'ata o Amona i te mau 'āti Nephi i te tahi tufa'a rahi nō tā rātou tao'a nō te tauturu i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau ; 'e nō reira 'ua tama'i atu te mau 'āti Nephi ana'e i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'oia te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti Lemuela, 'e te mau tamari'i tamāroa Isema'ela, 'e rātou ato'a tei tāiva mai roto atu i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'oia ho'i te mau 'āti Amaleka 'e te mau 'āti Zorama, 'e te mau hua'ai o te mau tahu'a o Noa.
- 14 I teienei, 'ua fātata roa hō'ē ā huru te rahi o tō rātou hua'ai i te mau 'āti Nephi ; nō reira e mea ti'a i te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e ē tae noa atu i te ha'amani'ira'a i te toto.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'a putuputu ai te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te fenua ra nō Anetionuma, inaha, 'ua ineine te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou i te fenua ra nō Ieresona.
- 16 I teienei, te ta'ata fa'atere o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ho'i te ta'ata i mā'itihia 'ei ra'atira rahi i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi—i teienei tei taua ra'atira rahi ra te fa'atere i te mau nu'u fa'ehau ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi—'e 'o Moroni tōna i'oa.

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nepi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

- 17 'E tei ia Moroni te mana 'e te fa'aterera'a i tā rātou mau tama'i. 'E e piti 'ahuru ma pae ana'e iho tōna matahiti i mā'itihia ai 'oia 'ei ra'atira rahi i ni'a i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro 'oia i te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau 'ōti'a o Ieresona, 'e 'ua fa'aineinehia tōna ra mau ta'ata i te 'o'e, 'e te simetera, 'e te mau huru mauha'a tama'i ato'a.
- 19 'E 'ia 'ite mai ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'ua ineine te mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ho'i 'ua fa'aineine Moroni i tōna ra mau ta'ata i te mau pāruru 'ōuma 'e te mau pāruru rima, 'oia ia, 'e i te mau pāruru upo'o ato'a, 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua fa'a'ahuhia rātou i te mau 'ahu me'ume'u roa—
- 20 I teienei, 'aita roa te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Zerahemana i fa'aineinehia mai te reira te huru ; 'ua haere noa mai rātou 'e tā rātou mau 'o'e ana'e 'e tā rātou mau simetera, tā rātou mau fana 'e tā rātou mau te'a, tā rātou mau 'ōfa'i 'e tā rātou mā'a ; 'e 'ua vai taha'a noa rātou, maori rā 'ua tātuhia tō rātou tau'upu i te 'iri pua'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua vai taha'a noa rātou ato'a, maori rā te mau 'āti Zorama 'e te mau 'āti Amaleka.
- 21 'Aita rā rātou i fa'aineinehia i te pāruru 'ōuma, 'e i te mau pāruru—nō reira, 'ua mata'u roa rātou i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi nō tō rātou 'ahu tama'i, noa atu ē 'ua rahi atu rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 22 Inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau 'ōti'a o Ieresona ra ; nō reira 'ua haere atu rātou i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Anetionuma, 'e tae atu ra i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua ha'a'ati a'era rātou i te mēdēbara tei ni'a i te ha'amatarā'a o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia tae atu i te fenua ra nō Maniti, 'e 'ia rave i taua fenua ra ; nō te mea 'aita rātou i mana'o ē, e 'ite te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni i te vāhi e haerehia atu e rātou.

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

- 23 'E i muri a'era, i muri noa iho i tō rātou haerera'a atu i roto i te mēdēbara, 'ua tonono atu ra Moroni i te mau ta'ata tāmōemoe i roto i te mēdēbara nō te hi'o i tō rātou pūhapara'a ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a Moroni i te mau parau tohu a Alama, 'e 'ua tonono atu ra 'oia i te tahi mau ta'ata iāna ra, nō te tītau iāna 'ia ani atu 'oia i te Fatu i te vāhi tā te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi e ti'a 'ia haere nō te pāroru ia rātou iho i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te parau a te Fatu ia Alama, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra Alama i te mau ve'a a Moroni ē, tē ha'a'ati ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te mēdēbara, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia haere atu i te fenua ra nō Maniti, nō te ha'amata i te 'aro atu i te hō'ē pae paruparu o te mau ta'ata. 'E 'ua haere atu ra taua mau ve'a ra 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra i taua parau ra ia Moroni.
- 25 I teienei, 'ua vaiiho a'era Moroni i te tahi pae o tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau i te fenua ra nō Ieresona, penei a'e 'o te haere mai te tahi pae o te mau 'āti Lamana i taua fenua ra 'a haru ai i te 'oire, 'e 'ua rave ihora 'oia i te toe'a o tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te fenua ra nō Maniti.
- 26 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia ha'aputupu mai te mau ta'ata ato'a nō taua vāhi o te fenua ra, 'e 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana nō te pāroru i tō rātou mau fenua 'e tō rātou nūna'a, 'e tō rātou mau ti'ara'a 'e tō rātou ti'amāra'a ; nō reira 'ua ineine rātou nō te taera'a mai o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua huna ihora Moroni i tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau i roto i te peho i pīha'i iho i te pae o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, tei te pae hiti i te tō'o'a o te rā i te 'ānāvai ra Sidona i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 28 'E 'ua tonono atu ra Moroni i te mau ta'ata tāmōemoe ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua, 'ia 'ite 'oia i te taera'a mai o te pūhapara'a o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 29 'E i teienei, 'ua 'ite Moroni i te 'ōpuara'a a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e tā rātou 'ōpuara'a nō te ha'amou ia i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'e 'aore rā nō te ha'avī ia rātou 'e nō te fa'atitī ia rātou, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'ati'a i te hō'ē bāsileia nō rātou iho i ni'a i te fenua tā'ato'a.

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

30 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i 'oia ē, 'o te hina'aro hō'ē roa o te mau 'āti Nephi te pāroru-noa-ra'a i tō rātou mau fenua, 'e tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'e tā rātou 'ēkalesia, nō reira 'ua mana'o 'oia ē, e 'ere ia i te hara 'ia pāroru 'oia ia rātou nā roto i te rāmā ; nō reira, 'ua 'itea iāna, nā roto i tōna ra mau ta'ata tāmoemoe te 'ē'a e haerehia 'e te mau 'āti Lamana.

31 Nō reira, 'ua vāhi 'oia i tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua arata'i atu ra 'oia i te tahi pae i roto i te peho, 'e 'ua fa'atāpuni atu ra ia rātou i te pae i te hiti'a o te rā, 'e i te pae apato'a ho'i nō te 'āivi ra o Ripala.

32 'E 'ua fa'atāpuni atu ra 'oia i te toe'a i roto i te peho i te tō'o'a o te rā, tei te pae i te tō'o'a o te rā i te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, 'e tei raro i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua ra nō Maniti.

33 'E 'ua fa'atāpuni 'oia i tōna nu'u fa'ehau mai te au i tōna hina'aro, 'e 'ua ineine 'oia nō te 'aro atu ia rātou.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana nā te pae apato'erau o taua 'āivi i fa'atāpunihia ai te tahi pae o te nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni.

35 'E 'a ma'iri ai te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'āivi ra o Ripala, 'e 'a tae atu ai rātou i roto i te peho, 'e 'a ha'amata ai rātou i te haere nā roto i te 'ānāvai Sidona, 'ua haere mai ra te nu'u fa'ehau, 'o tei fa'atāpunihia i te pae apato'a o te 'āivi, 'e tei arata'ihia e te hō'ē ta'ata o Lehi tōna i'oa, 'e 'ua ha'a'ati a'era tōna nu'u fa'ehau i te mau 'āti Lamana i te pae hiti'a o te rā, nā muri atu ia rātou.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē tei muri te mau 'āti Nephi ia rātou, 'ua fāriu atu ra rātou 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te 'aro atu i te nu'u fa'ehau o Lehi.

37 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora te 'ohipa nō te pohe i nā pae e piti ato'a ra, 'ua hau rā te pohe i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e nō tō rātou vai-taha'a-noa-ra'a 'ua tā'iri-'ōhie-hia rātou i te mau tā'iri ha'apohe a te mau 'āti Nephi i tā rātou mau 'o'e 'e tā rātou mau simetera ho'i.

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

- 38 'E 'ua ma'iri ato'a te tahi pae iti o te mau ta'ata i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi i terā taimē 'e i terā taimē nā roto i tā rātou mau 'o'e 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto, nō te mea 'ua pāruruhia rātou e tā rātou mau pāruru 'ōuma, 'e tā rātou mau pāruru rima, 'e tā rātou mau pāruru upo'o i te mau vāhi e pohe 'ōhie ai te tino 'ia puta i te mau tā'irira'a a te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua nā reira noa te mau 'āti Nephi i te rave i te 'ohipa taparahi ta'ata i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 39 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu a'era tō te mau 'āti Lamana mata'u, nō te mea e pohe rahi tei rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te horo atu i te 'ānāvai Sidona.
- 40 'E 'ua a'ua'uhia atu ra rātou e Lehi 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua hōparahia atu ra rātou e Lehi i roto i te mau pape nō Sidona, 'e 'ua haere roa rātou i te tahi atu pae nō te pape ra o Sidona. 'E 'ua tāpe'a Lehi i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i ni'a i te hiti o te 'ānāvai Sidona 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haere i te tahi atu pae.
- 41 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro atu ra Moroni 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau i te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i taua peho ra, i te tahi pae mai o te 'ānāvai Sidona, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te 'aro ia rātou 'e i te taparahi ia rātou.
- 42 'E 'ua horo 'ē fa'ahou atu ra te mau 'āti Lamana mai mua atu ia rātou, i te fenua ra nō Maniti ; 'e 'ua 'aro-fa'ahou-hia mai rātou e te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni.
- 43 I teienei, 'ua 'aro 'ū'ana mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'aro mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ma te pūai rahi 'e te mata'u 'ore, 'aita, 'e 'aita te reira huru i 'iteahia na mai te mātāmua mai ā.
- 44 'E 'ua fa'aitoitohia rātou e te mau 'āti Zorama 'e e te mau 'āti Amaleka, 'o tei riro na 'ei mau ra'atira rahi 'e 'ei mau ta'ata fa'atere rahi nō rātou, 'e e Zerahemana ato'a, tō rātou ra'atira rahi, 'oia ho'i tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere rahi 'e ta'ata arata'i rahi ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'aro rātou mai te mau teni ra, 'e 'ua taparahihia te mau 'āti Nephi e rave rahi e tō rātou ra rima, 'oia ia, 'ua tāpū rātou i tō rātou mau pāruru upo'o e rave rahi nā rōpū, 'e 'ua pātia ato'a rātou i tō rātou mau pāruru 'ōuma e rave rahi, 'e 'ua tāpū rātou i tō rātou mau rima e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua nā reira te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'aro mai nā roto i tō rātou riri 'ū'ana rahi.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

45 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'aitoitohia te mau 'āti Nephi e te hō'ē mea maita'i a'e, 'aita rātou e 'aro ra 'ia roa'a te fa'aterera'a 'e te mana, tē aro ra rā rātou nō tō rātou mau 'utuāfare 'e tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'e tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'e tā rātou mau mea ato'a, 'oia ia, nō tā rātou mau rāve'a ha'amorira'a 'e tā rātou 'ēkālesia.

46 'E tē rave ra rātou i te mea i mana'ohia e rātou e 'ohipa nā rātou i tō rātou Atua ; nō te mea 'ua parau mai ho'i te Fatu ia rātou 'e i tō rātou ato'a mau metua i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Mai te mea ē 'aita 'outou i hape i te hape mātāmua, 'e 'aita ato'a i te piti, 'eiaha ia 'outou e fa'ati'a ia 'outou 'ia taparahihia e te rima o tō 'outou ra mau 'enemi.

47 'E teie fa'ahou ā, 'ua parau mai te Fatu ē : 'Ia pāruru 'outou i tō 'outou mau 'utuāfare e tae roa atu i te ha'amani'ira'a toto. Nō reira, 'o te tumu ho'i te reira i 'aro atu ai te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau 'āti Lamana, nō te pāruru ia rātou iho, 'e tō rātou mau 'utuāfare, 'e tō rātou mau fenua, 'e tō rātou nūna'a, 'e tō rātou ti'ara'a, 'e tā rātou ha'apa'ora'a.

48 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata o Moroni i te 'ōvirī rahi 'e te riri 'ū'ana o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua fātata ihora rātou i te fa'ae'e 'e i te horo 'ē atu mai mua atu ia rātou. 'E 'ia 'ite a'era Moroni i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a, 'ua fa'atupu ihora 'oia i teie nei mau mana'o i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au—'oia ia, i te mau mana'o nō ni'a i tō rātou mau fenua, i tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'oia ia, tō rātou ti'amāra'a i te fa'atūtira'a.

49 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fāriu atu ra rātou nō te 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra rātou ma te reo hō'ē i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, nō tō rātou ti'amā 'e tō rātou ti'amāra'a ho'i i te fa'atūtira'a.

50 'E 'ua 'aro atu ra rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana ma te pūai, 'e i taua iho hora ra i ti'aoro atu ai rātou i te Fatu nō tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau 'āti Lamana i te horo 'ē atu mai mua atu ia rātou ; 'e 'ua horo atu ra rātou ē tae roa atu ra i te mau pape nō Sidona.

51 I teienei, 'ua rahi atu te mau 'āti Lamana, 'oia ia, 'ua tāta'ipiti atu tō rātou rahi i tō te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'āre'a rā 'ua tiāhīhia atu rātou 'e nō reira 'ua ha'aputuputuhia rātou i roto i te hō'ē pupu ta'ata i roto i te peho, i te hiti nō te 'ānāvai Sidona.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

52 Nō reira 'ua ha'a'ati atu te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni ia rātou, 'oia ia, i nā pae e piti o te 'ānāvai pape, inaha ho'i, tei te pae i te hiti'a o te rā te mau ta'ata o Lehi.

53 Nō reira 'ia 'ite atu Zerahemana i te mau ta'ata o Lehi i te pae nō te hiti'a o te rā nō te 'ānāvai Sidona, 'e te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni i te pae tō'o'a o te rā nō te 'ānāvai Sidona, 'e 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou 'e te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua tupu ihora tō rātou mata'u rahi.

54 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Moroni i tō rātou ra mata'u rahi, 'ua fa'ae atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia fa'aea rātou i te ha'amani'i i tō rātou toto.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

Alama 44

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aea ihora rātou 'e 'ua fa'anū'u rī'i mai ra i muri mai ia rātou ra. 'E 'ua parau atu ra Moroni ia Zerahemana : Inaha, e Zerahemana, 'aita mātou i hina'aro 'ia riro 'ei mau ta'ata ha'amani'i toto. Tē 'ite nei 'outou ē, tei roto 'outou i tō mātou nei rima, 'aita rā mātou i hina'aro 'ia taparahi ia 'outou.
- 2 Inaha, 'aita mātou i haere mai nō te 'aro atu ia 'outou nō te ha'amani'i i tō 'outou toto 'ia roa'a te mana ia mātou ; 'aita ato'a ho'i mātou i hina'aro 'ia 'ume ia 'outou i raro a'e i te zugo nō te fa'atītira'a. 'O te tumu ho'i teie i haere mai ai 'outou nō te 'aro ia mātou nei ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua riri 'outou ia mātou nō tā mātou fa'aro'o.
- 3 'E i teienei, tē 'ite nei 'outou ē, tei pīha'i iho te Fatu ia mātou ; 'e tē 'ite nei ho'i 'outou ē, 'ua tu'u mai 'oia ia 'outou i roto i tō mātou nei rima. 'E i teienei, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, 'ua nā-reira-hia mātou nō tā mātou ha'apa'ora'a 'e tō mātou fa'aro'o i te Mesia. 'E i teienei, tē 'ite nei 'outou ē, 'aita roa e tī'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'a'ore i tō mātou nei fa'aro'o.
- 4 I teienei, tē 'ite nei 'outou ē, 'o te Atua te tumu nō teie fa'aro'o mau ; 'oia ia, tē 'ite nei 'outou ē, e pāturu te Atua ia mātou, 'e e tīa'i, 'e e fa'aherehere ho'i 'oia ia mātou, mai te mea e ha'apa'o maita'i mātou i tōna hina'aro, 'e i tō mātou fa'aro'o, 'e i tā mātou ha'apa'ora'a ; 'e 'aita roa te Fatu e fa'aru'e noa ia mātou 'ia ha'amouhia, maori rā 'ua topa mātou i roto i te hara 'e 'ua huna i tō mātou fa'aro'o.
- 5 'E i teienei, e Zerahemana, tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'oe, nā roto te i'oa o taua Atua manahope ra, 'o tei ha'apūai i tō mātou mau rima 'ia roa'a ia mātou te mana i ni'a iho ia 'outou, nā roto i tō mātou fa'aro'o, 'e tā mātou ha'apa'ora'a, 'e tā mātou mau rāve'a ha'amorira'a, 'e tā mātou 'ēkālesia, 'e te pāturura'a mo'a tei au ia mātou 'ia fa'a'ite i tā mātou mau vahine 'e tā mātou mau tamari'i, 'e i taua ti'amā ra tei tā'amu ia mātou i tō mātou mau fenua 'e tō mātou nūna'a ; 'oia ia, 'e 'oia ato'a nā roto i te fa'ahereherera'a i te parau mo'a a te Atua, 'e nō reira mai tō mātou 'oa'oa ato'a ; 'e i te mau mea ato'a i here-rahi-hia e mātou—

Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

6 'Oia ia, e 'ere te reira ana'e ; tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'outou, mai te au i tō 'outou ato'a ra hina'aro 'ia ora noa ; 'ia vaiiho mai 'outou i tā 'outou mau mauha'a tama'i ia mātou nei, 'e 'aita ia mātou e ha'amani'i i tō 'outou toto, e fa'aora rā mātou ia 'outou, mai te mea e haere atu 'outou i tō 'outou haere'a 'e 'aita 'outou e ho'i fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro mai ia mātou.

7 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia nā reira, inaha, tei roto ia 'outou i tō mātou nei rima, 'e e fa'aue au i tō'ū ra mau ta'ata 'ia tā'iri ia 'outou, 'e 'ia ha'aputa i tō 'outou tino i te puta pohe ra, 'ia mou roa 'outou ; 'ei reira tātou e 'ite ai ē, tei 'ia vai te mana i ni'a iho i teie nei feiā ; 'oia ia, e 'ite ia tātou ē, 'o vai te fa'atīthia ?

8 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Zerahemana i teie mau parau, 'ua ti'a mai ra 'oia e hōro'a mai ra i tāna 'o'e 'e tāna simetera, 'e tāna fana i roto i te rima o Moroni, 'e 'ua parau mai ra iāna : Inaha, teie tā mātou mau mauha'a tama'i ; tē hōro'a atu nei mātou i te reira ia 'outou, 'e 'aita rā mātou e fa'aoti i te hō'ē tapura'a ia 'outou na, 'ua 'ite ho'i mātou ē, e 'ōfathia te reira e mātou, 'e e tā mātou ato'a mau tamari'i ; 'a rave rā 'outou i tā mātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'a tu'u ia mātou 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'aore rā e tāpe'a mātou i tā mātou mau 'o'e, 'e e pau mātou 'e 'aore ia e upo'oti'a.

9 Inaha, e 'ere mātou nō tā 'outou fa'aro'o ; 'aita mātou i ti'aturi ē nā te Atua mātou i tu'u atu i roto i tō 'outou rima ; 'ua ti'aturi rā mātou ē, nā roto i tā 'outou mau rāve'a ha'avare i fa'aorahia ai 'outou i tā mātou mau 'o'e. Inaha, nā tā 'outou mau pārruru 'ōuma 'e tā 'outou mau pārruru tama'i ho'i i fa'aora ia 'outou.

10 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Zerahemana i te paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua fa'aho'i atu ra Moroni i te 'o'e 'e te mau mauha'a tama'i 'o tāna i fāri'i ia Zerahemana ra, i te nā-ō-ra'a atu ē : Inaha, e fa'aoti tātou i te tama'i.

11 I teienei, 'aita e ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ore i te mau parau 'o tā'u i parau iho nei, nō reira, mai te Fatu e ora ra, e'ita roa 'outou e ho'i atu, maori rā 'ia nā mua 'outou i te fa'aoti i te hō'ē tapura'a ē e'ita roa 'outou e ho'i fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro ia mātou. I teienei tei roto 'outou i tō mātou nei rima, 'e e ha'amani'i mātou i tō 'outou toto i ni'a i te repo, 'ia 'ore 'outou e ha'apa'o i te mau tītaura'a 'o tā'u i fa'aa'u atu.

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

- 12 'E i teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Moroni paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua tāpe'a ihora Zerahemana i tāna 'o'e, 'e 'ua riri mai ra ia Moroni, 'e 'ua haere rū mai ra 'oia nō te taparahi ia Moroni ; 'āre'a rā i tōna fa'ateiteira'a i tāna 'o'e, inaha, 'ua tā'irihia ihora te reira i raro i te repo e te hō'ē fa'ehau o Moroni, e fati ihora te tāpe'ara'a ; 'e 'ua tāpū ihora ho'i 'oia ia Zerahemana i tōna ra 'iri upo'o 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora te reira i raro i te repo. 'E 'ua fa'aātea 'ē atu ra Zerahemana mai mua atu ia rātou ē tae atu ra i rotopū i tōna mau ra fa'ehau.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora te fa'ehau, 'o tei ti'a i pīha'i iho 'e tei tāpū 'ē atu i te 'iri upo'o o Zerahemana, i taua 'iri upo'o ra nā te rouru mai raro mai i te repo, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra i ni'a i te muara'a o tāna 'o'e, 'e 'ua fa'atoro atu ra i mua ia rātou, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou ma te reo pūai :
- 14 Mai teie nei 'iri upo'o i ma'iri iho nei i raro i te repo, 'oia te 'iri upo'o o tō 'outou ra'atira, 'e mai te reira ho'i 'outou 'ia ma'iri i raro i te repo, maori rā 'ia hōro'a mai 'outou i tā 'outou mau mauha'a tama'i 'e 'a haere atu ai ma te fa'aoti i te hō'ē fafaura'a nō te hau.
- 15 I teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i teie mau parau 'e 'ia 'ite a'era ho'i rātou i te 'iri upo'o i ni'a iho i te 'o'e, 'ua mata'u ihora rātou ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra e rave rahi mau ta'ata 'e 'ua taora mai ra i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i i te pae 'āvae o Moroni, 'e 'ua fa'aoti ihora i te hō'ē fafaura'a nō te hau. 'E 'ua tu'u atu ra rātou i te mau ta'ata i fa'aoti i te fafaura'a 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 16 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua riri roa a'era Zerahemana, 'e 'ua fa'ati'arepu ihora 'oia i te toe'a o tōna ra mau fa'ehau 'ia riri, 'e 'ia 'aro pūai roa atu i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 17 'E i teienei, 'ua riri ihora Moroni nō te mana'o 'eta'eta o te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira, 'ua fa'ae atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou 'e 'ia taparahi ia rātou. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te taparahi atu ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua 'aro mai te mau 'āti Lamana ma te fa'a'ohipa i tā rātou mau 'o'e 'e tō rātou pūai.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

- 18 Inaha rā, 'aita e pāroru nō tō rātou ra mau 'iri vai taha'a 'e tō rātou mau upo'o tāpo'i-'ore-hia, 'e 'ua 'ōhie te reira 'ia tāpūhia e te mau 'o'e 'oi a te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'oia ia, inaha 'ua puta rātou 'e 'ua tāpūhia, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua pohe 'oi'oi ihora rātou i te mau 'o'e a te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te tā'irihia i raro mai tei tohuhia e te fa'ehau o Moroni.
- 19 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Zerahemana ē 'ua fātata roa rātou i te pau, 'ua ti'aoro 'ū'ana mai ra 'oia ia Moroni, ma te parau mai ē, e fafau 'oia 'e tōna ato'a ra mau ta'ata i te hō'ē fafau'a ia rātou, mai te mea e fa'aora noa rātou i te toe'a o rātou, ē e'ita roa rātou e ho'i fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro mai ia rātou.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aoti ihora Moroni 'ia fa'aea te 'ohipa taparahira'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata. 'E 'ua rave atu ra 'oia i te mau mauha'a tama'i a te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e i muri a'e i tō rātou fafau'a i te fafau'a nō te hau iāna ra, 'ua fa'ati'ahia atu ra rātou 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 21 I teienei, 'aita te rahira'a o tō rātou feiā pohe i tai'ohia nō te rahi o te reira ; 'oia ia, 'ua rahi roa ho'i tō rātou feiā pohe, tō te mau 'āti Nephi 'e tō te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a ho'i.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua huri atu ra rātou i tō rātou feiā pohe i roto i te mau pape nō Sidona ra, 'e 'ua pāinu noa atu ra rātou ē tae roa atu ra i roto i te mau vāhi hōhonu nō te moana.
- 23 'E 'ua ho'i atu ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ho'i tō Moroni, i tō rātou mau 'utuāfare 'e tō rātou mau fenua.
- 24 'E 'ua hope ihora te 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata o Nephi. 'E 'o te hope'a teie nō te pāpa'a parau a Alama, 'o tei pāpa'ihia i ni'a i te mau 'api a Nephi.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

Tē 'ā'amu o te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e tā rātou mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a, i te mau mabana o Helamana, mai te au i te pāpa'a parau a Helamana, 'o tāna i pāpa'i i tōna ra mau mabana.

Alama 45

- 1 Inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua 'oa'oa roa te mau ta'ata o Nephi i te mea ē 'ua fa'aora te Fatu ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi ; nō reira 'ua ha'amāuruuru rātou i te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'apae rahi rātou i te mā'a, 'e 'ua pure rahi rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amori ho'i rātou i te Atua ma te 'oa'oa rahi roa.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, i te 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua haere mai ra Alama i tāna tamaiti ra ia Helamana 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra iāna : Tē ti'aturi ra ānei 'oe i te mau parau tā'u i parau atu ia 'oe nō ni'a i taua mau pāpa'a parau ra i pāpa'ihia ?
- 3 'E 'ua parau mai ra Helamana iāna : 'Ē, 'ua ti'aturi au.
- 4 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra Alama : 'Ua ti'aturi ānei 'oe ia Iesu Mesia, 'o tē tae mai ?
- 5 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia : 'Ē, 'ua ti'aturi au i te mau parau ato'a 'o tā 'oe i parau mai.
- 6 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra Alama iāna : E ha'apa'o ānei 'oe i tā'u mau fa'auera'a ?
- 7 'E 'ua parau mai ra 'oia : 'Ē, e ha'apa'o vau i tā 'oe mau fa'auera'a ma tō'u 'ā'au ato'a.
- 8 'E 'ua parau atu ra Alama iāna : E ao tō 'oe ; 'e nā te Fatu e ha'amanuia mai ia 'oe i ni'a i teie nei fenua.
- 9 Inaha rā, e tohu ri'i tā'u ia 'oe na ; e tā'u e tohu ia 'oe na, 'eiaha roa 'oe e fa'a'ite haere noa atu ; 'oia ia, 'o tā'u e tohu atu ia 'oe na 'eiaha roa ia 'ia fa'a'ite-haere-hia, ē tae noa atu 'ua tupu taua tohura'a ra ; nō reira, 'a pāpa'i i te mau parau 'o tā'u e parau.
- 10 'E 'o teie ia taua mau parau ra : Inaha, tē 'ite nei au nā roto i te vārua nō te heheura'a i roto iā'u nei ē, e hope a'era te maha hānere o te matahiti i muri a'e i te tau e fa'a'ite mai ai Iesu Mesia iāna iho ia rātou ra, e paruparu ia te fa'aro'o o teie nei feiā, 'oia ho'i, te mau 'āti Nephi.

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.

Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

- 11 'Oia ia, 'e i reira rātou e 'ite ai i te mau tama'i 'e te mau ma'i, 'oia ia, i te o'e e te ha'amani'ira'a toto, ē tae roa atu 'ua ha'amou-roa-hia te mau ta'ata o Nephi—
- 12 'Oia ia, nō te mea e paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o 'e e topa ho'i i roto i te mau 'ohipa pōiri, 'e te tai'ata, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'ino ato'a ; 'oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, nō te mea e hara rātou i te māmarama rahi 'e i te 'ite rahi ; 'oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, mai taua mahana ra, e 'ore ho'i e hope te maha o te u'i i te ma'iri atu, e tae mai ai taua mau 'ohipa 'ino rahi ra.
- 13 'E 'ia tae mai taua mahana rahi ra, inaha, 'ua fātata roa ho'i te tau e tae mai ai, 'aita roa ia taua mau ta'ata ra 'e 'aore rā te hua'ai o taua mau ta'ata ra 'o tei tai'ohia i teie nei i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, e tai'o-fa'ahou-hia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 14 'Āre'a te toe'a 'o tē 'ore e pau i taua mahana rahi ri'ari'a ra, e tai'ohia ia rātou i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e riro ho'i mai ia rātou te huru, maori rā te tahi pae iti 'o tē parauhia e mau pipi nā te Fatu ; 'e 'ua tāpapa atu te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou ē tae roa 'ua pau roa rātou. 'E i teienei, nō te mau 'ohipa 'ino, e tupu iho ā teie nei tohura'a.
- 15 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a atu i teie mau mea ia Helamana, 'ua ha'amaita'i atu ra 'oia iāna, 'e i te tahi atu o tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa ; 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ato'a 'oia i te fenua nō te maita'i o te feiā parauti'a.
- 16 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia : Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu te Atua—E 'anatemahia te fenua nei, 'oia ia, teie nei fenua, i te mau nūna'a ato'a, i te mau 'ōpū ato'a, i te mau reo ato'a, 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'o tē rave i te parauti'a 'ore, 'e 'o tei 'i roa i te reira, 'e e ha'amouhia ia rātou ; 'e mai tā'u i parau a'enei, e nā-reira-hia ia ; e 'anatemara'a ho'i teie 'e te ha'amaita'ira'a ho'i nā te Atua i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e 'aita roa e ti'a i te Fatu 'ia hi'o noa atu i te hara ma te fa'ati'a i te hō'ē vāhi iti a'e nō te reira.
- 17 'E i teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Alama paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua ha'amaita'i atu ra 'oia i te 'ekālesia, 'oia ia, 'ia rātou ato'a 'o tei tāmau māite i te fa'aro'o, mai taua atu taime ra.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

- 18 E fa'aoti a'era Alama i te reira, 'ua reva atu ra 'oia i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, mai te mea ra ē, tē haere atu ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Meleke. 'E i muri a'era, 'aita e parau i fa'aro'o-fa'ahou-hia nō ni'a iāna ; 'aita ato'a mātou i 'ite i tōna pohera'a 'e tōna hunara'a.
- 19 Inaha, teie tā mātou i 'ite, e ta'ata parauti'a 'oia ; 'e 'ua parare atu ra te parau i roto i te 'ēkālesia ē 'ua 'āfa'i-ē-hia atu 'oia e te Vārua, 'e 'aore rā 'ua hunahia e te rima o te Fatu mai ia Mose ra. Inaha rā, tē nā 'ō mai ra te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ē, 'ua rave 'ē atu te Fatu ia Mose iāna ihora ; 'e tē mana'o nei mātou ē, 'ua rave-ato'a-hia Alama e te vārua iāna ihora ; nō reira, 'aita roa mātou i 'ite nō ni'a i tōna pohera'a 'e tōna hunara'a.
- 20 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua haere atu ra Helamana i rotopū i te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua poro haere atu ra i te parau ia rātou.
- 21 Inaha ho'i, nō tā rātou mau 'arora'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e tā rātou mau mārōra'a 'e te mau 'ōrurēhau ho'i i tupu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'ua ti'a roa 'ia a'ohia atu te parau a te Atua i rotopū ia rātou, 'oia ia, 'e 'ia fa'atupuhia te fa'a'āfarora'a i roto i te 'ēkālesia tā'āto'a.
- 22 Nō reira, 'ua haere atu ra Helamana e tōna mau taea'e e fa'ati'a fa'ahou i te 'ēkālesia i roto i te mau fenua ato'a, 'oia ia, i roto i te mau 'oire ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua i pārahia 'e te mau 'āti Nephi. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua mā'iti rātou i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua i roto i te mau 'āma'a ato'a o te 'ēkālesia.
- 23 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Helamana 'e tōna ra mau taea'e i te mā'iti i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua i roto i te mau 'āma'a o te 'ēkālesia, 'ua tupu te 'āmahamahara'a i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'aita rātou i ha'apa'o i te mau parau a Helamana 'e tā tōna ra mau taea'e.
- 24 'Āre'a rā 'ua tupu rahi tō rātou te'ote'o, 'e 'ua fa'ateitei ihora rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au nō tā rātou mau tao'a rahi roa ; nō reira 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā tao'a rahi i tō rātou iho hi'ora'a, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i ha'apa'o i tā rātou mau parau, 'e i haere ma te parauti'a i mua i te Atua.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

Alama 46

- 1 'E i muri a'era, te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei 'ore i fa'aro'o i te mau parau a Helamana 'e tā tōna ra ho'i mau taea'e, 'ua 'āmui-tāhō'ē-hia ia rātou nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e.
- 2 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua riri roa rātou, 'e nō reira 'ua 'ōpua ihora rātou 'ia taparahi atu ia rātou.
- 3 I teienei, te ta'ata fa'atere o taua mau ta'ata ra i riri atu i tō rātou ra mau taea'e, 'o te hō'ē ia ta'ata rahi 'e te pūai ho'i ; 'e 'o 'Amalikia tōna i'oa.
- 4 'E 'ua hina'aro roa 'Amalikia 'ia riro 'ei ari'i ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ato'a te mau ta'ata i riri 'ia riro 'oia 'ei ari'i nō rātou ; 'e te pae rahi o taua mau ta'ata ra e mau ha'avā ri'i rātou nō te fenua ; 'e tē tītau noa ra rātou 'ia roa'a ia rātou te mana.
- 5 'E 'ua arata'ihia ho'i rātou e te mau parau ha'avarevare a 'Amalikia, 'o tei nā 'ō ē, mai te mea e turu rātou iāna 'e e fa'ati'a ho'i iāna 'ei ari'i nō rātou, e fa'ariro ia 'oia ia rātou 'ei mau tāvana i ni'a i te mau ta'ata.
- 6 Nō reira, 'ua arata'i-ē-hia rātou e 'Amalikia i roto i te 'āmahamahara'a, noa atu ā te a'ora'a a Helamana 'e tōna ra mau taea'e, 'oia ia, noa atu ā tā rātou tīa'i-māite-ra'a i te 'ēkālesia, e mau tahu'a rahi ho'i rātou nō te 'ēkālesia.
- 7 'E tē vai ra e rave rahi i roto i te 'ēkālesia 'o tei ti'aturi i te mau parau tāvaimanino a 'Amalikia, nō reira 'ua tāiva atu ra rātou i te 'ēkālesia ; 'e nō reira ia te huru o te pāpū 'ore e te pe'ape'a rahi nō te mau 'ohipa i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, noa atu ā te rē rahi tā rātou i fāri'i i ni'a a'e i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e te 'oa'oa rahi ho'i tā rātou i fāri'i nō tō rātou fa'aorara'ahia e te rima o te Fatu.
- 8 Nō reira, tē 'ite nei tātou e mea 'oi'oi roa te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei i te ha'amo'e i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'oia ia, e mea 'oi'oi roa rātou i te rave i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e i te arata'i-ē-hia e te diablo.
- 9 'Oia ia, tē 'ite ato'a nei tātou i te parauti'a 'ore rahi e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata parauti'a 'ore e fa'atupu i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, in-somuch that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.

- 10 'Oia ia, tē 'ite nei ho'i tātou ē, tē fa'a'ohipa nei 'Amalikia i te mau rāve'a ha'avare 'e i te mau parau tāvaimanino, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia arata'i 'ē atu i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia rave i te parauti'a 'ore ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ia tītau ho'i 'ia ha'amou i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua, 'e 'ia ha'amou i te niu o te ti'amā tā te Atua i tu'u mai ia rātou ra, 'e 'aore rā i te ha'amaita'ira'a tā te Atua i fa'atae mai i ni'a i te fenua 'ei maita'i nō te feiā parauti'a.
- 11 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era Moroni, te ra'atira rahi o te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, i teie mau 'ohipa tāivara'a, 'ua riri ihora 'oia ia 'Amalikia.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pahae ihora 'oia i tōna ra perēue, 'e 'ua rave ihora 'oia i te hō'ē vāhi iti nō te reira, 'e 'ua pāpā'i ihora i ni'a iho i te reira—'Ei ha'amana'ora'a i tō tātou ra Atua, 'e tā tātou ha'apa'ora'a, 'e tō tātou ti'amāra'a, 'e tō tātou hau, 'e tā tātou mau vahine, 'e tā tātou mau tamari'i—'e 'ua tā'amu ihora 'oia i te reira i ni'a i te hope'a nō te hō'ē rā'au.
- 13 'E 'ua ha'amau ihora 'oia i tōna pāruru upo'o, 'e tōna pāruru 'ōuma, 'e tōna pāruru tama'i, 'e 'ua tātua ihora i tōna ha'ana tama'i i tōna tau'upu ; 'e 'ua rave ihora 'oia i te rā'au i tā'amuhia tōna ra perēue i te hope'a nō te reira, ('e 'ua ma'iri ihora 'oia i te i'oa nō te reira, te tāpa'o nō te ti'amāra'a) 'e 'ua tīpapa ihora 'oia i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua pure māite atu ra i tōna ra Atua nō te mau ha'amaita'ira'a nō te ti'amāra'a i ni'a iho i tōna ra mau taea'e, mai te mea tē vai ra te hō'ē pupu Cherisetiano e pārahi ra i ni'a i te fenua—
- 14 'O te reira ho'i tei ma'irihia i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi mau i te Mesia, 'e tei 'āmui i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua, e taua i'oa ra 'ua topahia ia i ni'a ia rātou e te feiā nō rāpae mai i te 'ēkālesia.
- 15 'E 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i te mau ta'ata nō te 'ēkālesia ; 'oia ia, 'ua rave rātou ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi mau i te Mesia i te i'oa o te Mesia i ni'a iho ia rātou ma te oaoa, 'oia ho'i 'ua parauhia rātou e mau Cherisetiano, nō tō rātou ti'aturi i te Mesia 'o tē tae mai.
- 16 'E nō reira, i teie taime, 'ua pure atu ra Moroni, 'ia ha'amanuiahia te 'ohipa a te mau Cherisetiano 'e te ti'amāra'a o te fenua.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i te pūpū atu i te hina'aro o tōna 'ā'au i te Atua, 'ua fa'ata'a atu ra 'oia i te mau fenua ato'a i te pae apato'a o te fenua ra 'o Ano ; 'oia ho'i i te mau fenua ato'a i te pae apato'erau 'e te pae apato'a ato'a ho'i—E fenua mā'itihia, 'e e fenua nō te ti'amāra'a.
- 18 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia : 'Oia mau roa, 'aita roa te Atua e vaiho noa ia tātou, 'o tei vahavahahia nō te mea 'ua rave tātou i ni'a ia tātou i te i'oa o te Mesia, 'ia ta'ata'ahihia 'e 'ia ha'amouhia, maori rā 'ia fa'atae mai tātou i te reira i ni'a ia tātou iho nō tā tātou iho mau hara.
- 19 'E 'ia fa'aoti a'era Moroni i te parau atu i taua mau parau nei, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra 'oia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, ma te tāhirihiri i te tufa'a i motu o tōna ra 'ahu i roto i te reva, 'ia ti'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia 'ite i te pāpa'ira'a 'o tāna i pāpa'i i ni'a i te tufa'a i motu ra, i te pi'ira'a atu ma te reo pūai, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 20 Inaha, te feiā 'o tē pāruru i teie nei tāpa'o i ni'a i te fenua, 'ia haere mai ia rātou ma te pūai o te Fatu, 'e 'ia fafau ho'i rātou 'ia pāruru i tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'e tā rātou ha'apa'ora'a, 'ia ti'a i te Fatu te Atua 'ia ha'amaita'i mai ia rātou.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Moroni porora'a atu i teie mau parau, inaha, 'ua horo 'āmui mai ra te mau ta'ata e tā rātou mau ha'ana tama'i i tātuahia i tō rātou tau'upu, e ma te pahae i tō rātou mau 'ahu 'ei tāpa'o, 'oia ho'i, 'ei fafaura'a ē 'aita roa rātou e fa'aru'e i te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'oia ho'i ia, mai te mea e 'ōfati rātou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e mai te mea e topa rātou i roto i te hara, 'e mai te mea e ha'amā rātou 'ia rave i ni'a iho ia rātou i te i'oa o te Mesia, i reira e pahae te Fatu ia rātou mai tā rātou i pahae i tō rātou mau 'ahu.
- 22 I teienei, 'o te fafaura'a teie tā rātou i fafau mai, 'e 'ua huri atu ra rātou i tō rātou mau 'ahu i te pae 'āvae o Moroni, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Tē fafau nei mātou i tō tātou Atua ē, e ha'amouhia mātou mai tō mātou mau taea'e i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, mai te mea e topa mātou i roto i te hara ; 'oia ia, e riro 'oia i te huri ato'a ia mātou i te pae 'āvae o tō mātou mau 'enemi, mai tā mātou i huri i tō mātou mau 'ahu i tō 'oe pae 'āvae, 'ia ta'ata'ahihia e te 'āvae, mai te mea e topa mātou i roto i te hara.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

- 23 'Ua parau atu ra Moroni ia rātou : Inaha, e toe'a tātou nō te hua'ai o Iakoba ; 'oia ia, e toe'a ho'i tātou nō te hua'ai o Iosepha, 'o tei pahaef'ā'ahu'ahu'a-hia tōna perēue e tōna ra mau taea'e ; 'oia ia, 'e i teienei, inaha, 'a ha'amana'o tātou i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'ia 'ore rā e pahaehia ia tō tātou mau 'ahu e tō tātou mau taea'e, 'e e hurihia tātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'aore rā e ho'ohia ; 'e 'aore rā e taparahihia.
- 24 'Oia ia, 'a pāruru ana'e tātou, te hō'ē toe'a nō te hua'ai o Iosepha, i tō tātou ti'amāra'a ; 'oia ia, 'a ha'amana'o tātou i te mau parau a Iakoba, hou 'oia i pohe ai, inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite na 'oia ē, 'ua fa'ahereherehia te tahi tufa'a nō te toe'a o te perēue o Iosepha 'e 'aita te reira i marau. 'E tē nā 'ō ra 'oia ē—Mai teie toe'a nō te 'ahu o tā'u nei tamaiti 'o tei fa'ahereherehia, 'oia ato'a ia e fa'ahereherehia te toe'a o te hua'ai o tā'u tamaiti e te rima o te Atua, 'e e ravehia atu iāna ra, 'a pohe noa atu ai te tahi toe nō te hua'ai o Iosepha, mai te toe'a o tōna ra 'ahu.
- 25 I teienei, inaha, tē 'oto nei tō'u 'ā'au nō te reira ; noa atu rā i te reira, 'ua 'oa'oa tō'u 'ā'au i tā'u tamaiti, nō te tahi tufa'a o tōna hua'ai 'o tē ravehia atu i te Atua ra.
- 26 I teienei, inaha, 'o teie ia te reo o Iakoba.
- 27 'E i teienei, 'o vai ho'i tei 'ite ē, penei a'e 'ua riro te toe'a o te hua'ai o Iosepha, 'o tei pohe atu mai tōna 'ahu i pāhaehia, 'ei mau ta'ata tei tāiva 'ē atu mai roto atu ia tātou nei ? 'Oia ia, 'e 'o tātou iho ho'i taua feiā ra, mai te mea ē 'aita tātou e tāpe'a māite i te fa'aro'o i te Mesia.
- 28 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Moroni i te parau i teie mau parau, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia, 'e 'ua tonono atu ra i te ve'a i te mau vāhi ato'a o te fenua tē vai ra te mau mārōra'a i reira, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei hina'aro 'ia pāruru i tō rātou ti'amāra'a, nō te 'aro atu ia 'Amalikia 'e ia rātou ho'i 'o tei tāiva, 'e 'o tei parauhia e mau 'āti 'Amalikia.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

29 'E i muri a'era, i tō 'Amalikia 'itera'a ē 'ua hau roa atu te rahi o te mau ta'ata o Moroni i tō te mau 'āti 'Amalikia—'e 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i 'oia ē 'ua tapitapi te mana'o o te mau ta'ata nō ni'a i te parauti'a nō te 'ōpuara'a tā rātou i ha'amata i te rave—nō reira, 'ua mata'u ihora 'oia 'o te 'ore te reira e manuia, 'ua rave ihora 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'o tei hina'aro i te pe'e atu iāna 'e 'ua reva atu ra 'oia 'e rātou ato'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi.

30 I teienei, 'ua mana'o ihora Moroni ē, 'aita i au 'ia rahi atu ā te pūai o te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira 'ua mana'o ihora 'oia 'ia fa'ata'a 'ē i te mau ta'ata o 'Amalikia, 'e 'aore rā 'ia rave ia rātou 'e 'ia fa'aho'i mai, 'e 'ia taparahi ia 'Amalikia ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, e riro 'oia i te fa'ati'arepu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia riri atu ia rātou, 'e e 'aro mai ai ia rātou ; 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, e nā reira 'Amalikia 'ia manuia tāna mau 'ōpuara'a.

31 Nō reira 'ua mana'o Moroni ē, e mea ti'a roa iāna 'ia arata'i i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'o tei ha'aputupu mai ia rātou iho, 'e tei fa'a'ahu ho'i ia rātou iho i te mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e tei fa'aoti i te fafaura'a 'ia fa'atupu i te hau—'e i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora 'oia i tōna nu'u fa'ehau 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'e tōna mau ti'ahapa i roto i te mēdēbara, nō te tāpū i te haere'a o 'Amalikia i roto i te mēdēbara.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave mau ihora 'oia mai tāna i 'ōpua, 'e 'ua haere ti'a atu ra 'oia i roto i te mēdēbara, i mua roa nō te tāpe'a i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o 'Amalikia.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra 'Amalikia 'e te tahi pae iti o tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua riro ihora te toe'a i roto i te rima o Moroni 'e 'ua fa'aho'ihia mai ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemla.

34 I teienei, nō te mea 'ua fa'ata'ahia te ta'ata ra 'o Moroni e te mau ha'avā rahi 'e e te reo o te mau ta'ata, nō reira e mana tōna 'ia rave mai te au i tōna hina'aro i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ia fa'anahonaho 'e 'ia fa'atere ia rātou.

35 'E i muri a'era, te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti 'Amalikia 'o tei 'ore i fafau 'ia turu i te tumu nō te ti'amāra'a, 'ia ti'a ho'i ia rātou 'ia ha'amau noa i te hō'ē hau ti'amā, 'ua fa'aue atu 'oia 'ia taparahihia rātou ; 'e e mea iti roa ho'i tei pāto'i i te fafaura'a nō te ti'amāra'a.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra ho'i 'oia 'ia hutihia te tãpa'o nã te ti'amãra'a i ni'a i te mau pare ato'a i te fenua i pãrahihia e te mau 'ãti Nephi e hope roa a'e ; 'e 'ua nã reira ho'i Moroni i te fa'ati'a i te reva nã te ti'amãra'a i rotopũ i te mau 'ãti Nephi.

37 'E 'ua tupu fa'ahou ihora te hau i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua nã reira rãtou i te fa'atupu i te hau i ni'a i te fenua e tae noa atu ra 'ua fãtata i te hope'a nã te hõ'ẽ 'ahuru 'e ma iva matahiti nã te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avã.

38 'E 'ua nã reira Helamana 'e te mau tahu'a rahi i te fa'atupu noa ato'a i te hau i roto i te 'ekãlesia ; 'oia ia, 'e nã te ãrea e maha matahiti te maoro 'ua fãri'i noa rãtou i te hau 'e te 'oa'oa rahi i roto i te 'ekãlesia.

39 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tei pohe ma te ti'aturi mãite e, 'ua fa'aorahia tã rãtou vãrua e te Fatu ra e Iesu Mesia ; nã reira, 'ua reva 'ẽ atu ra rãtou i teie nei ao ma te 'oa'oa.

40 'E tẽ vai ra te tahi pae i pohe i te fiva, 'o tei tupu pinepine i te tahi mau tau ri'i o te matahiti i ni'a i te fenua—'aita re'a rã i rahi tei pohe i te fiva, nã te mea tẽ vai ra te mau rã'au maitata'i i roa'a ia rãtou nã roto mai i te mau tumu rã'au e rave rahi 'e te mau a'a, 'o tã te Atua i fa'aîneine nã te fa'a'ore i te tumu o te mau ma'i i tae mai i ni'a i te mau ta'ata nã te huru o te fenua—

41 'Ãre'a rã e rave rahi tei pohe nã te ruhiruhiãra'a ; 'e 'o rãtou tei pohe ma te fa'aro'o i te Mesia ra, tẽ 'oa'oa ra ia rãtou iãna ra, 'e 'ia nã reira tãtou i te mana'o e ti'a ai.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

Alama 47

- 1 I teienei, e ho'i tātou i roto i tā tātou pāpa'a parau nō ni'a ia 'Amalikia 'e ia rātou ho'i 'o tei horo atu nā muri iho iāna i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'E inaha, 'ua rave 'oia ia rātou 'o tei haere mai nā muri iho iāna, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Nephi i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua fa'ati'arepu ihora 'oia i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia riri atu i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e nō reira 'ua fa'atae atu ra te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ē 'ati roa a'e tōna fenua ato'a, i tōna mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ia ha'aputupu fa'ahou mai rātou nō te haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era taua fa'auera'a ra i rotopū ia rātou, 'ua mata'u roa ihora rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia riri te ari'i, 'e 'ua mata'u ato'a rātou 'ia haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi 'o te taparahihia rātou. 'E i muri a'era, 'aita rātou, 'oia ho'i te pae rahi, i ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te ari'i.
- 3 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua riri roa ihora te ari'i nō tō rātou ha'apa'o 'ore ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a atu 'oia i te fa'aterera'a ia 'Amalikia nō ni'a i taua pae o tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau 'o tei ha'apa'o i tāna mau fa'auera'a, 'e 'ua fa'ae atu ra 'oia iāna 'ia haere atu e ha'avī ia rātou 'ia rave i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i.
- 4 I teienei inaha, 'o teie ia te hina'aro o 'Amalikia ; nō te mea e ta'ata 'aravihi 'oia i te rave i te 'ohipa 'ino, nō reira 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a i roto i tōna 'ā'au 'ia fa'a'ere i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i tōna terōno.
- 5 I teienei, 'ua noa'a iāna te fa'atere i te pae o te mau 'āti Lamana 'o tei hina'aro i te ari'i ; 'e 'ua tītau 'oia 'ia riri iāna te mana'o o te feiā 'o tei 'ore i ha'apa'o ; nō reira 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te vāhi i ma'irihia te i'oa 'o Onida, i horo atu na ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a i reira ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu rātou i te nu'u fa'ehau i te haerera'a mai, 'e 'ua mana'o rātou ē, tē haere mai ra rātou e ha'amou ia rātou, nō reira 'ua horo 'ē atu rātou i Onida, i te vāhi nō te mau mauha'a tama'i.
- 6 'E 'ua mā'iti rātou i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ei ari'i 'e 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō rātou, nō te mea 'ua pāpū tō rātou 'ā'au ma te mana'o 'āueue 'ore ē, e'ita roa rātou e haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi.

Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmu'atu ra rātou i ni'a i te tupua'i nō te hō'ē mou'a i ma'irihia te i'oa 'o Anitipa, 'e 'ua ineine rātou nō te 'arora'a.
- 8 I teienei, e 'ere te 'ōpuara'a a 'Amalikia te 'arora'a ia rātou mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te ari'i, inaha rā, 'ua hina'aro 'oia 'ia 'āfaro mai te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana iāna, 'e 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia riro 'ei upo'o fa'atere 'e 'ia fa'a'ere i te ari'i i tōna terōno, 'e 'ia roa'a iāna iho te bāsileia.
- 9 'E inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tōna nu'u fa'ehau 'ia fa'ati'a i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i roto i te hō'ē peho i pīha'i iho i te mou'a nō Anitipa.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho pō ra, 'ua tono atu ra 'oia i te mau ve'a huna i ni'a i te mou'a ra nō Anitipa, nō te ani atu i te ta'ata fa'atere o te mau ta'ata i ni'a i te mou'a, 'o Lihoniti tōna i'oa, 'ia haere mai 'oia i raro i te pae mou'a, nō te mea 'ua hina'aro 'oia 'ia paraparau atu iāna.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, i tō Lihoniti fāri'ira'a i taua parau ra, 'aita roa 'oia i hina'aro 'ia haere atu i raro i te pae mou'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tono fa'ahou atu ra 'Amalikia, i te piti o te taime, nō te ani iāna 'ia haere mai i raro. 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa 'o Lihoniti i nā reira; 'e 'ua tono fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te toru o te taime.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era 'Amalikia ē, 'aita roa e ti'a iāna 'ia tāparu ia Lihoniti 'ia haere mai i raro mai ni'a mai i te mou'a, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i ni'a i te mou'a, fātata roa i tō Lihoniti pūhapara'a; 'e 'ua tono fa'ahou atu ra 'oia, i te maha o te taime i tāna ve'a ia Lihoniti ra, ma te ani atu iāna 'ia haere mai i raro, 'e 'ia 'āfa'i mai i tōna mau fa'ehau tīa'i nā muri iho iāna.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae mai ra Lihoniti 'e tōna mau fa'ehau tīa'i ato'a i raro ia 'Amalikia ra, 'ua hina'aro 'Amalikia 'ia haere mai 'oia i tōna nu'u fa'ehau i raro i te pō, 'e 'ia ha'a'ati i te mau ta'ata i roto i tō rātou mau pūhapara'a, 'oia i te mau ta'ata tā te ari'i i fa'ariro iāna 'ei ra'atira nō rātou, 'e i reira 'oia e tu'u atu ai ia rātou i roto i tō Lihoniti rima, mai te mea e fa'ariro 'oia iāna (ia 'Amalikia) 'ei ta'ata fa'atere piti i ni'a i te nu'u fa'ehau pā'āto'a.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra Lihoniti 'e tōna mau ta'ata i raro 'e 'ua ha'a'ati a'era i te mau ta'ata o 'Amalikia, 'e hou tō rātou arara'a mai i te 'ā'ahiata, 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou e te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Lihoniti.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou, 'ua ani atu ra rātou ia 'Amalikia 'ia fa'ati'a ia rātou 'ia 'āmui atu i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia taparahihia. I teienei, 'o teie mau ho'i te mea tā 'Amalikia i hina'aro.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tu'u atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata, mai te au 'ore i te fa'auera'a a te ari'i. I teienei, 'o teie te mea tā 'Amalikia i hina'aro, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'atupu i tāna mau 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'a'ere i te ari'i i tōna ra terōno.
- 17 I teienei, teie te peu i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia taparahihia te ta'ata fa'atere rahi, e mā'itihia te ta'ata fa'atere piti 'ei ta'ata fa'atere rahi nō rātou.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'Amalikia i te hō'ē o tōna ra mau tāvini 'ia fa'a'amu ri'iri'i i te mea ta'ero ia Lihoniti, 'e 'ua pohe atu ra 'oia.
- 19 I teienei, 'ia pohe a'era Lihoniti, 'ua mā'iti ihora te mau 'āti Lamana ia 'Amalikia 'ei ta'ata fa'atere 'e 'ei ra'atira rahi nō rātou.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua arata'i atu ra 'Amalikia i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau ('ua manuia ho'i tōna hina'aro) i te fenua ra nō Nephi, i te 'oire ra nō Nephi, 'oia te 'oire rahi.
- 21 'E 'ua haere mai ra te ari'i 'e tōna mau fa'ehau tīa'i nō te fārerei iāna, i mana'o ho'i 'oia ē, 'ua ha'apa'o 'Amalikia i tāna mau fa'auera'a, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu 'Amalikia i teie nu'u fa'ehau rahi nō te haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 22 Inaha rā, 'a haere mai ai te ari'i e fārerei iāna, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'Amalikia i tōna mau tāvini 'ia haere atu e fārerei i te ari'i. 'E 'ua haere atu ra rātou 'e 'ua tīpapa ihora i raro i mua i te ari'i, mai te mea ra tē fa'ahanahana ra rātou iāna nō tōna ti'ara'a rahi.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atoro mai ra te ari'i i tōna rima nō te fa'ati'a ia rātou i ni'a, mai te au i te peu a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ei tāpa'o nō te hau, 'e e peu ho'i teie i ravehia mai e rātou nō 'ō mai i te mau 'āti Nephi ra.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'ati'a a'era 'oia i te ta'ata
mātāmua mai te repo mai, inaha, 'ua pātia atu ra 'oia
i te ari'i i te māfatu ; 'e 'ua marua ihora 'oia i raro i te
repo.

25 I teienei, 'ua horo atu ra te mau tāvini o te ari'i, 'e
'ua pi'i a'era te mau tāvini o 'Amalikia, i te nā-'ō-ra'a
ē :

26 Inaha, 'ua pātia tō te ari'i ra mau tāvini iāna i te
māfatu, 'e 'ua ma'iri 'oia i raro, 'e 'ua horo rātou ;
inaha, 'a haere mai na e hi'o.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue ihora 'Amalikia i tōna ra
mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia haere atu e hi'o i te mea i tupu i
te ari'i ; 'e 'ia tae atu ra rātou i taua vāhi ra, 'e 'ia 'ite
atu ra i te ari'i i te vai-noa-ra'a i roto i tōna ihora toto,
'e 'ua fa'ahua riri ihora o 'Amalikia, 'e 'ua nā 'ō a'era
'oia ē : 'O 'oia 'o tei here i te ari'i, 'a haere atu 'oia 'e 'a
a'ua'u i tōna ra mau tāvini 'e 'ia taparahihia rātou.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era rātou ato'a 'o tei
here i te ari'i i teie nei mau parau, 'ua haere atu ra
rātou 'e 'ua a'ua'u atu ra i te mau tāvini o te ari'i.

29 I teienei, 'ia 'ite mai ra te mau tāvini o te ari'i i te
hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau i te a'ua'ura'a mai ia rātou, 'ua
mata'u fa'ahou ihora rātou, 'e 'ua horo atu ra rātou i
roto i te mēdēbara, 'e tae atu ra i te fenua ra nō
Zarahemela, 'e 'ua 'āmui a'era ia rātou iho i te mau
ta'ata o Amona.

30 'E 'ua ho'i mai ra te nu'u fa'ehau i a'ua'u atu ia
rātou, i muri iho i tō rātou a'ua'ura'a atu ia rātou ma
te manuia 'ore ; 'e nō reira nā roto i tā 'Amalikia
'ohipa ha'avare, 'ua riro iāna te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata.

31 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua tomo atu ra 'oia i
roto i te 'oire ra nō Nephi 'e tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e
'ua haru ihora i te 'oire.

32 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te ari'i
vahine ē, 'ua taparahihia te ari'i—i tonu atu na ho'i
'Amalikia i te mau ve'a nō te fa'a'ite i te ari'i vahine ē,
'ua taparahihia te ari'i e tōna iho mau tāvini, 'e i
a'ua'u na ho'i 'oia 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau ia rātou, 'aita
rā rātou i manuia, 'e 'ua mahemo atu rātou—

And it came to pass that when he had raised the
first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to
the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants
of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him
to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; be-
hold, come and see.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded
that his armies should march forth and see what had
happened to the king; and when they had come to
the spot, and found the king lying in his gore,
Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said:
Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pur-
sue his servants that they may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the
king, when they heard these words, came forth and
pursued after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army
pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and
fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land
of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned,
having pursued after them in vain; and thus
Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the
people.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the
city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of
the city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she
had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah
had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that
the king had been slain by his servants, that he had
pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and
they had made their escape—

33 Nō reira, i tō te ari'i vahine fāri'ira'a i teie parau, 'ua tonu mai ra 'oia i te hō'ē ve'a ia 'Amalikia, nō te ani iāna 'ia fa'aora noa i te mau ta'ata o te 'oire ; 'e 'ua ani ato'a 'oia iāna 'ia haere mai iāna ra ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ato'a 'oia iāna 'ia 'āfa'i mai i te mau 'ite nā muri iho iāna nō te fa'a'ite pāpū i te huru nō te pohera'a o te ari'i.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora 'Amalikia i te tāvini iho i taparahi i te ari'i, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i pīha'i iho iāna, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te ari'i vahine ra, i te vāhi tāna e pārahi ra ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra rātou ato'a iāna ē, 'ua taparahihia te ari'i e tōna iho mau tāvini ; 'e 'ua parau ato'a atu rātou ē : 'Ua horo 'ē atu rātou ; 'aita ānei te reira e fa'ahapa mau nei ia rātou ? 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'atopa i te mana'o o te ari'i vahine nō ni'a i te pohera'a o te ari'i.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'imi ihora 'Amalikia i te rāve'a 'ia ti'aturi mai te ari'i vahine iāna, 'e 'ua rave ihora iāna 'ei vahine nāna ; 'e nā roto i tāna 'ohipa ha'avare 'e te tauturura'a a tōna mau tāvini 'ohipa 'ino, 'ua roa'a te bāsileia iāna ; 'oia ia, 'ua fāri'ihia 'oia 'ei ari'i i te fenua tā'āto'a ē 'ati noa a'e, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e tei roto ho'i i te reira te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti Lemuela 'e te mau 'āti Isema'ela, 'e te feiā 'ōrurehau ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi, mai te taime fa'aterera'a a Nephi ē tae roa mai i teie taime.

36 I teienei, 'ua fāri'i teie feiā 'ōrurehau i te hō'ē ā ha'api'ira'a 'e te hō'ē ā ha'amāramaramara'a nō 'ō mai i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ia, 'ua ha'api'ihia rātou i te hō'ē ā 'ite nō ni'a i te Fatu, terā rā, te mea māere 'ia parau atu, i muri noa a'e i tā rātou mau tāivara'a, 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā hau atu i te 'ā'au 'eta'eta 'e te tātarahapa 'ore, e hau atu i te 'ōviri, te parauti'a 'ore 'e te taehae, i te mau 'āti Lamana—'e 'ua rave noa mai rātou i te mau peu tumu a te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua riro 'ei feiā fa'atau, 'e te rave i te mau huru 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'amo'e roa rātou i te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

Alama 48

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i muri noa mai i te roa'ara'a mai ia 'Amalikia te bāsileia, 'ua fa'atupu ihora 'oia i te riri i roto i te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ia, 'ua mā'iti ihora 'oia i te tahi mau ta'ata nō te parau atu i te mau 'āti Lamana nā ni'a mai i tō rātou mau pare 'ia fa'ahapa atu i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 2 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia i te fa'atupu i te riri i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e nō reira i te pae hope'a nō te 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua manuia tāna mau 'ōpuara'a, 'oia ia, nō te mea 'ua riro 'oia 'ei ari'i i ni'a i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua tītau ato'a ihora 'oia 'ia fa'atere i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'oia ia, 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a iho i te fenua, te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a ho'i.
- 3 Nō reira, 'ua manuia tāna 'ōpuara'a, 'e 'ua fa'a'eta'eta 'oia i te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'ua ha'apōiri i tō rātou mana'o, 'e 'ua fa'atupu i tō rātou riri, 'e nō reira 'ua ha'aputupu ihora 'oia i te tahi nu'u fa'ehau rahi nō te haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 4 'E nō te rahi ho'i o tōna mau ta'ata, 'ua 'ōpua 'oia 'ia ha'avī i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e 'ia 'āfa'i ia rātou i raro a'e i te fa'atūtira'a.
- 5 'E nō reira 'ua mā'iti ihora 'oia i te tahi mau ra'atira rahi nō roto i te mau 'āti Zorama, 'o rātou ho'i tei 'ite maita'i i te pūai o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e tō rātou mau vāhi ha'apūra'a, 'e te mau vāhi paruparu roa o tō rātou mau 'oire ; nō reira 'ua mā'iti 'oia ia rātou 'ei mau ra'atira rahi nō tōna ra mau nu'u fa'ehau.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora rātou i tō rātou pūhapara'a, 'e 'ua fa'anū'u atu ra i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 7 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'a roa'a ai ia 'Amalikia te mana nā roto i te 'ohipa ha'avare 'e te fa'ahemara'a, tē fa'aineine ra ia Moroni i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata 'ia ha'apa'o maita'i i te hina'aro o te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

- 8 'Oia ia, tē ha'apūai ra 'oia i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e tē hāmani ra ho'i i te mau ha'apūra'a iti, 'oia ho'i i te mau vāhi ha'apūra'a ; ma te ha'apu'e fa'ateitei i te 'āua repo ē 'ati noa a'e nō te 'āua i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e ma te patu ato'a i te mau 'āua 'ōfa'i nō te ha'a'ati roa ia rātou 'e tō rātou mau 'oire 'e te mau 'ōti'a ho'i o tō rātou mau fenua ; 'oia ia, ē hope roa a'e tō rātou mau fenua.
- 9 'E i tō rātou mau pā paruparu roa, 'ua tu'u rahi 'oia i te mau ta'ata i reira ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia i te ha'apa'ari 'e i te ha'apūai i te fenua e pārahīhia ra e te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 10 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia i te fa'aineine nō te pāroru i tō rātou ti'amāra'a, tō rātou mau fenua, tā rātou mau vahine, 'e tā rātou mau tamarī'i, 'e tō rātou hau, 'ia ora rātou i te Fatu ra i tō rātou Atua, 'e 'ia fa'ati'a noa ho'i rātou i tei parauhīa e tō rātou mau 'enemi te 'ohīpa a te mau Cherisetiano.
- 11 E ta'ata pūai 'e te mana ho'i 'o Moroni ; e ta'ata 'ite mau ; 'oia ia, e ta'ata 'aita roa i 'oa'oa i te ha'amani'ira'a toto ; e ta'ata 'ā'au 'oa'oa ho'i i te ti'amāra'a 'e te hau maita'i ho'i o tōna ra fenua, 'e te ti'amāra'a e te tītī 'ore ho'i o tōna ra mau taea'e.
- 12 'Oia ia, e ta'ata 'ā'au 'i i te ha'amaita'i i tōna Atua, nō te mau maita'i 'e te ha'amaita'ira'a e rave rahi tāna i hōro'a mai i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; e ta'ata itoito ho'i i te 'ohīpa nō te maita'i 'e te pārorura'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 13 'Oia ia, e ta'ata mau māite 'oia i te fa'aro'o i te Mesia, 'e 'ua hōreo 'oia ma te tapu ē, e pāroru 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata, tōna ti'amāra'a, 'e tōna fenua, 'e tāna ha'apa'ora'a ē tae noa atu i te tahera'a o tōna ra toto.
- 14 I teienei, 'ua ha'api'ihīa te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia pāroru ia rātou iho i tō rātou mau 'enemi, e tae roa atu i te ha'amani'ira'a toto mai te mea e tītauhīa ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'api'i-ato'a-hīa ho'i rātou ē, 'eiaha roa e fa'a'ino, 'oia ia, 'e 'eiaha roa ho'i e fa'a'ohīpa i te 'o'e maori rā nō te pātō'i atu i te 'enemi, 'e nō te pāroru ia rātou iho.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

15 'E teie tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e 'ia nā reira rātou e ha'amanuia te Atua ia rātou i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'oia ho'i, 'ia itoito rātou i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e ha'amanuia 'oia ia rātou i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'oia ia, e fa'aara 'oia ia rātou 'ia horo 'ē atu, 'e 'aore rā 'ia fa'aineine nō te 'arora'a, mai te au i tō rātou ati.

16 'E 'oia ato'a, e fa'a'ite te Atua ia rātou i te vāhi tā rātou e haere atu nō te pāroru ia rātou iho i tō rātou mau 'enemi ; 'e 'ia nā reira rātou, e fa'aora te Fatu ia rātou ; 'e 'o tē fa'aro'o ia te reira o Moroni, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa ho'i tōna 'ā'au i te reira, 'eiaha i te ha'amani'ira'a toto, i te ravera'a rā i te maīta'i, 'e i te fa'aorara'a i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e i te pāto'ira'a i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino.

17 'Oia ia, 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'āhiri te mau ta'ata ato'a i ora na, 'e tē ora nei, 'e tē ora a muri atu mai ia Moroni ra te huru, inaha, 'ua 'āueue 'ē nā ia te mana o hade ē a muri noa atu, 'oia ia, e 'ore roa ia tō te diabolō e mana i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

18 Inaha, e ta'ata 'oia mai ia Amona ra te huru, 'oia ho'i te tamaiti a Mosia, 'oia ia, e mai te tahi atu mau tamaiti a Mosia ra ; 'oia ia, e mai ia Alama ho'i 'e tāna mau tamaiti, e mau ta'ata ho'i rātou ato'a nō te Atua.

19 I teienei, inaha, 'aita tā Helamana 'e tā tōna mau taea'e tauturura'a i te mau ta'ata i iti iho i tā Moroni ; 'ua a'o ato'a ho'i rātou i te parau a te Atua, 'e 'ua bāpetizo ho'i rātou i te mau ta'ata ato'a e tae atu ai i te tātarahapara'a, 'oia i te mau ta'ata ato'a i fa'aro'o i tā rātou mau parau.

20 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te rave i te 'ohipa, 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a te mau ta'ata ia rātou iho nō tā rātou ra mau parau, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amaita'ihia rātou e te Fatu, 'e 'aita a'era te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a i tupu i rotopū ia rātou, 'oia ia, nō te ārea e maha matahiti te maoro.

21 'Āre'a rā, mai tā'u i parau, 'ia tae a'era i te pae hope'a nō te 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti, 'oia ia, noa atu ā tō rātou hau i rotopū ia rātou iho, 'ua tūra'ihia rā rātou ma tō rātou hina'aro 'ore, 'ia 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e i te mau 'āti Lamana.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, inso-much that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

- 22 'Oia ia, 'aita roa tā rātou mau tama'ira'a i te mau 'āti Lamana i fa'aea nō te ārea e rave rahi matahiti te maoro, noa atu ā tō rātou hina'aro 'ore 'ia nā reira.
- 23 I teienei, 'ua 'oto rātou 'ia rave i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, nō te mea 'aita rātou i 'oa'oa 'ia ha'amani'i i te toto ; 'oia ia, e 'ere i te reira ana'e—ua 'oto rātou i te mea ē, 'ua riro rātou 'ei mauha'a nō te tono atu i tō rātou mau taea'e e rave rahi i rāpae i teie nei ao i roto i te hō'ē ao mure 'ore, ma te ineine 'ore 'ia fārerei i tō rātou Atua.
- 24 'Āre'a rā, 'aita roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia vaiiho noa 'ia taparahihia rātou, nō te mea e taparahihia tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i i te pohe ri'ari'a 'ino roa 'e te mau ta'ata 'o tei riro na 'ei mau taea'e nō rātou i te mātāmua, 'oia ia, 'e 'o tei tāiva 'ē atu i tā rātou 'ēkālesia, 'e tei fa'aru'e mai ia rātou 'e tei 'āmui atu i te mau 'āti Lamana nō te ha'amou ia rātou.
- 25 'Oia ia, 'aita roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i te mea tē 'oa'oa ra tō rātou mau taea'e i te taparahira'a i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'a vai noa ai te tahi mau ta'ata 'o tē ha'apa'o ra i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, nō te mea 'o teie ho'i te fafaura'a a te Fatu, mai te mea e ha'apa'o rātou i tāna mau fa'auera'a e manuia ia rātou i ni'a i te fenua nei.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

Alama 49

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te 'ahuru ma hō'ē o te 'āva'e, nō te 'ahuru ma iva o te matahiti, i te 'ahuru o te mahana nō te 'āva'e, 'ua 'itehia te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te tāpirira'a mai i te fenua ra nō Amoniha.
- 2 'E inaha, 'ua patu-fa'ahou-hia te 'oire, 'e 'ua ha'apārahi Moroni i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau i te mau 'ōti'a o te 'oire, 'e 'ua ha'apu'e ho'i rātou i te repo ē 'ati noa a'e nō te pāruru ia rātou i te mau te'a 'e te mau 'ōfa'i a te mau 'āti Lamana ; inaha ho'i, tē tama'i ra rātou ma te fa'a'ohipa i te mau 'ōfa'i 'e te mau te'a.
- 3 Inaha, 'ua parau na vau ē, 'ua patu-fa'ahou-hia te 'oire nō Amoniha. Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'oia ia, 'ua patu-fa'ahou-hia te tahi tufa'a ; 'e nō te mea 'ua vāvāhi te mau 'āti Lamana i te reira i te hō'ē taime nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ta'ata, 'ua mana'o rātou ē, e mea 'ōhie ia rātou 'ia haru fa'ahou i te reira.
- 4 Inaha rā, 'ua māere roa rātou ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ō te mau 'āti Nephi i te repo nō te 'āua ha'a'ati ia rātou, 'e e mea teitei roa te reira 'e 'aita atu ra i ti'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia ma'a mai i tā rātou mau 'ōfa'i 'e 'ia te'a mai i tā rātou mau te'a nō te ha'apēpē ia rātou, 'e 'aita ato'a i ti'a ia rātou 'ia haere mai e 'aro ia rātou, maori rā nā roto i tō rātou vāhi tomora'a mai.
- 5 I teienei, i teie taime, 'ua māere roa te mau ra'atira rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana, nō te 'aravihi o te mau 'āti Nephi i te fa'aineinera'a i tō rātou mau vāhi nō te pāruru ia rātou.
- 6 I teienei, 'ua mana'o te feiā fa'atere o te mau 'āti Lamana ē, nō te rahi o tō rātou mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, 'ua mana'o rātou ē, e upo'oti'a rātou 'ia haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi mai tā rātou i nā reira i te mātāmua ra ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua hāmani ato'a rātou i te mau pāruru, 'e te mau pāruru 'ōuma ; 'e 'ua fa'aineine rātou nō rātou iho i te mau 'ahu 'iri 'ānimara, 'oia ia, e mau 'ahu me'ume'u roa nō te tāpo'i i tō rātou tino vai taha'a noa.
- 7 'E nō te mea 'ua fa'aineinehia mai te reira, 'ua mana'o ihora rātou ē, e ha'avī 'ōhie 'e e hōpoi tīti 'ōhie rātou i tō rātou mau taea'e i raro a'e i te zugo nō te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'aore rā e taparahi 'ino ha'apohe roa ia rātou mai te au i tō rātou hina'aro.

Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

- 8 Inaha rā, 'ua māere roa rātou i te mea ē 'ua ineine te mau 'āti Nephi nō te 'aro mai ia rātou, 'ia au i te huru 'o tei 'ore roa i 'itea na i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a Lehi. I teienei, 'ua ineine rātou nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia au i te huru nō te mau arata'ira'a a Moroni.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua māere roa te mau 'āti Lamana, 'oia ho'i te mau 'āti 'Amalikia i te huru nō tā rātou fa'aaineinera'a nō te 'arora'a.
- 10 I teienei, 'āhiri te ari'i 'Amalikia i haere mai i raro i te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'ei upo'o fa'atere nō tōna nu'u fa'ehau, 'ua riro paha ia 'oia i te fa'auē atu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi i te 'oire ra nō Amoniha, inaha ho'i, 'aita 'oia e tāu'a ra 'ia pohe tōna mau ta'ata.
- 11 Inaha rā, 'aita 'Amalikia iho i haere mai i raro nō te tama'i. 'E inaha, 'aita roa tōna mau ra'atira rahi i hina'aro 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi i te 'oire ra nō Amoniha, nō te mea 'ua fa'ahuru 'ē Moroni i te fa'aterera'a i te mau 'ohipa i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua 'oto roa te mau 'āti Lamana nō tō rātou mau vāhi tāpunira'a, 'e 'aita ho'i i ti'a ia rātou 'ia haere atu e 'aro ia rātou.
- 12 Nō reira 'ua 'ōtohe atu ra rātou i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua hōpoi atu ra ho'i i tō rātou pūhapa'a, e haere atu ra nā te 'ē'a e tae atu ai i te fenua ra nō Noa, nō te mea 'ua mana'o rātou ē, 'o te reira te piti o te vāhi maīta'i roa nō te haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 13 'Aita ho'i rātou i 'ite ē, 'ua ha'apa'ari 'e 'ua hāmani Moroni i te mau ha'apūra'a i pāruru-maita'i-hia, nō te mau 'oire ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua ; nō reira, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra rātou i te fenua nō Noa ma te 'ōpuara'a pāpū ; 'oia ia, 'ua haere mai ra tō rātou mau ra'atira rahi ma te tapu ē, e ha'amou rātou i te mau ta'ata o taua 'oire ra.
- 14 Inaha rā, 'ua māere roa rātou nō te mea e mea paruparu roa te 'oire nō Noa i te mātāmua, 'e i teienei nā roto i te mau rāve'a a Moroni, 'ua riro te reira 'ei mea pa'ari roa ; 'oia ia, 'ua hau tōna pa'ari i tō te 'oire nō Amoniha.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

- 15 'E i teienei, inaha, tei roto ia Moroni te pa'ari ; 'e 'ua mana'o ho'i 'oia ē, e mata'u rātou i te 'oire ra nō Amonihā ; 'e nō te mea 'o te 'oire ra nō Noa te tufa'a paruparu roa a'e o te fenua i te mātāmua, nō reira e haere atu rātou i reira nō te 'aro atu ; 'e nō reira 'ua tupu mau atu ra mai te au i tōna mau hina'aro.
- 16 'E inaha, 'ua mā'iti Moroni ia Lehi 'ei ra'atira rahi i ni'a i te mau ta'ata i taua 'oire ra ; 'e 'o taua iho ā Lehi tei aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te peho nō te hiti'a o te rā i te 'ānāvai ra Sidona.
- 17 'E i teienei, inaha, i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'o Lehi te ra'atira rahi o taua 'oire ra, 'ua 'oto fa'ahou ihora rātou, nō te mea 'ua rahi tō rātou mata'u ia Lehi ; 'āre'a rā 'ua hōreo tō rātou mau ra'atira rahi ma te tapu 'ia haru atu i taua 'oire ra ; nō reira, 'ua 'āfa'i atu rātou i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau.
- 18 I teienei, inaha, 'aita roa i ti'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia tomo nā te tahi vāhi 'ē atu i roto i tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a i pāroru-maita'i-hia, maori rā nā roto i te 'ūputa tomora'a, nō te teitei o te 'āua i patuhia, 'e te hōhonu ho'i o te 'āpo'o i heruhia ē 'ati noa a'e, maori rā nā te 'ūputa.
- 19 'E 'ua nā reira te mau 'āti Nephi i te fa'aineine nō te ha'amou i te mau ta'ata ato'a e tāmata i te pa'uma i ni'a nō te tomo mai i roto i te ha'apūra'a 'eiaha nā te tahi atu 'ē'a, nā roto i te ma'ara'a i te mau 'ōfa'i 'e te te'ara'a i te mau te'a i ni'a ia rātou.
- 20 'E nō reira 'ua ineine rātou, 'oia ia, te tahi pae o tō rātou mau ta'ata pūai roa, 'e tā rātou mau 'o'e 'e tā rātou mau ma'a, nō te taparahi i te mau ta'ata ato'a e tāmata i te tomo mai i roto i tō rātou vāhi ha'apūra'a nā te 'ūputa ; 'e nō reira 'ua ineine rātou nō te pāroru ia rātou iho i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 21 'E i muri a'era 'ua arata'i mai ra te mau ra'atira o te mau 'āti Lamana i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i mua i te vāhi tomora'a, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te tomo atu i roto i tō rātou vāhi pāroru-maita'i-hia ; inaha rā, 'ua tūra'ihia rātou i muri i terā taime 'e i terā taime, 'e nō reira e rave rahi rātou tei taparahihia.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

- 22 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'aita rātou e upo'oti'a 'ia ha'avī i te mau 'āti Nephi nā te 'ūputa, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te ha'apararī i te 'āua repo, 'ia ti'a ia rātou ia fa'atomo i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'ia 'aifāito tō rātou ti'ara'a i tō te mau 'āti Nephi nō te tama'i ; inaha rā, i roto i teie mau tāmatarā'a, 'ua pau ia rātou i te mau 'ōfa'i i patahia mai 'e i te mau te'a i te'ahia mai i ni'a ia rātou ; 'aita rātou i fa'a'i i te mau 'āpo'o nā roto i te repo nō te 'āua tā rātou e ha'apararī ra, 'ua 'ī rā te reira i tō rātou mau tino pohe 'e tei puta ra.
- 23 'E 'ua roa'a te mana ato'a i te mau 'āti Nephi i ni'a i tō rātou mau 'enemi ; 'ua nā reira noa te mau 'āti Lamana i te tāmata i te ha'amou i te mau 'āti Nephi ē tae noa atu 'ua taparahihia tō rātou mau ra'atira rahi ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua hau atu i te tauatini o te mau 'āti Lamana i taparahihia ; 'āre'a rā te mau 'āti Nephi, 'aita roa te hō'e 'o rātou i taparahihia.
- 24 'Ua fātata i te pae 'ahuru tei pēpē 'e tei puta i te mau te'a a te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'ūputa, 'āre'a rā 'ua pāruruhia rātou 'e tā rātou mau pāruru, 'e tā rātou mau pāruru 'ōuma, 'e tā rātou mau pāruru upo'o, 'e nō reira 'ua puta tō rātou 'āvae ana'e, 'e e mea 'ino roa te tahi pae o te mau puta.
- 25 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'ua taparahihia tō rātou mau ra'atira rahi, 'ua horo atu ra rātou i roto i te mēdēbara. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Nephi, nō te fa'a'ite atu i te ari'i ra ia 'Amalikia, e 'āti Nephi ho'i 'oia i te fānaura'ahia, i tō rātou pau rahi.
- 26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri roa ihora 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata, nō te mea 'aita i roa'a te mea tāna i hina'aro i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'aita ho'i 'oia i manuia 'ia tu'u ia rātou i raro a'e i te zugo nō te fa'atūtira'a.
- 27 'Oia ia, 'ua riri roa 'oia, 'e 'ua tuhi atu ra ho'i 'oia i te Atua 'e ia Moroni ato'a ho'i, 'e 'ua hōreo 'oia ma te tapu ē, e inu 'oia i tōna toto ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia nō te mea 'ua ha'apa'o Moroni i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua i te fa'aineinera'a 'ia pāruruhia tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amāuruuru te mau 'āti Nephi i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, nō tōna mana fāito 'ore i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

29 'E 'ua hope a'era te 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

30 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua vai noa te hau i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua tupu te manuia rahi i roto i te 'ēkālesia nō tō rātou itoito 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i i te ha'apa'ora'a i te parau a te Atua, 'o tei fa'a'itehia mai ia rātou e Helamana, e Sibelona, e Korianetona, e Amona, 'e e tōna ra mau taea'e, 'oia ia, 'e nā roto i te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i 'o tei fa'atōro'ahia e te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua ra, 'e tei bāpetizohia nō te tātarahapara'a, 'e tei tonohia ho'i nō te a'o atu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblōn, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

Alama 50

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'aita Moroni i fa'aea i te fa'aineine nō te 'arora'a, 'e 'aore rā nō te pāruru i tōna mau ta'ata nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'ua fa'aue 'oia i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia ha'amata, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te piti 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ia 'ō 'e 'ia ha'apu'e i te repo 'ei 'āua i te mau 'oire ato'a i roto i te mau fenua ato'a e pārāhīhia ra e te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia tu'uhia te mau rā'au i ni'a i taua mau 'āua repo ra ; 'oia ia, 'ia hāmanihia te mau 'āua rā'au mai te roa o te hō'ē ta'ata i te teitei, 'e 'ia 'āuahia te mau 'oire.
- 3 'E 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia hāmanihia te tahi mau rā'au 'oe'oe 'e 'ia ha'amauhia te reira i ni'a i te mau 'āua rā'au ē 'ati noa a'e ; 'ei mea pa'ari 'e te teitei.
- 4 'E 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia hāmanihia te mau pare ma te fāriu atu i ni'a i te mau 'āua rā'au 'oe'oe, 'e 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia hāmanihia te mau vāhi pāruruhia i ni'a i taua mau pare ra, 'ia 'ore te mau 'ōfa'i 'e te mau te'a a te mau 'āti Lamana e ha'apēpē ia rātou.
- 5 'E 'ua ineine rātou 'e 'ua ti'a ia rātou 'ia ma'a i te mau 'ōfa'i mai ni'a mai i te reira, mai te au i tō rātou hina'aro 'e tō rātou pūai, 'e 'ia taparahi i te ta'ata e tāmata ra i te ha'afātata mai i te mau patu o te 'oire.
- 6 'E 'ua nā reira Moroni i te fa'aineine i te mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari i roto i te mau 'oire ato'a i te mau fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, nō te taera'a mai o tō rātou mau 'enemi.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Moroni i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia haere i te hiti'a o te rā nō te mēdēbara ; 'oia ia, 'ua haere rātou 'e 'ua tīahi atu ra i te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a i te hiti'a o te rā nō te mēdēbara i roto i tō rātou iho mau fenua, 'e tei te pae apato'a te reira i te fenua nō Zarahemela.
- 8 'E te fenua ra nō Nephi, 'ua haere 'āfaro noa tōna 'ōti'a mai te miti i te hiti'a o te rā ē tae noa atu i te tō'o'a o te rā.

Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

9 'E i muri a'era, i tō Moroni tīahira'a atu i te mau 'āti Lamana pā'āto'a i rāpae i te mēdēbara nō te hiti'a o te rā, 'e tei te pae apato'erau te reira i tō rātou iho mau fenua, 'ua fa'ae atu ra 'oia 'ia haere atu te mau ta'ata nō te fenua ra nō Zarahemela e tō te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e i roto i te mēdēbara nō te hiti'a o te rā, e tae atu i te mau fenua i te hiti o te miti ra, 'e 'ia rave mai i taua fenua ra.

10 'E 'ua tu'u ato'a atu ra 'oia i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i te pae apato'a, i te mau fenua i te hiti nō tō rātou mau fenua, 'e 'ua fa'ae atu ra ia rātou 'ia patu i te mau pā pa'ari 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia pāruu i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau 'e tō rātou ta'ata i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi.

11 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia i te tāpe'a i te mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari o te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te mēdēbara nō te hiti'a o te rā, 'oia ia, 'e tō te pae ato'a nō te tō'o'a o te rā, ma te ha'apa'ari i te 'ōti'a o te fenua i rōpū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, i rōpū i te fenua nō Zarahemela e te fenua nō Nephi ; mai te miti i te tō'o'a o te rā, ma te haere nā te vāhi tumu o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona—'e tei te mau 'āti Nephi ra te mau fenua tā'āto'a i te pae apato'erau ; 'oia ia, 'e te mau fenua tā'āto'a i te pae apato'erau i 'Auhune, mai te au i tō rātou hina'aro.

12 'E 'ua nā reira Moroni 'e tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i te 'imira'a i te tāpū 'ē atu i te pūai 'e te mana o te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a i tō rātou ato'a ra mau fenua, 'ia 'ore tō rātou mana i ni'a i tō rātou ato'a ra mau fenua, 'e 'ua tupu tōna ra mau nu'u fa'ehau i te rahi i te mau mahana ato'a nā roto i te pāpūra'a te pāruu'a i fa'atupuhia nā roto i tāna ra mau 'ohipa.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata te mau 'āti Nephi i te niu o te hō'ē 'oire, 'e 'ua ma'iri rātou i tō te 'oire i'oa 'o Moroni ; 'e tei te pae miti nō te hiti'a o te rā te reira ; 'e tei te pae apato'a i te 'ōti'a nō te mau fenua o te mau 'āti Lamana.

14 'E 'ua ha'amata ato'a rātou i te niu nō te hō'ē 'oire i rōpū i te 'oire nō Moroni e te 'oire nō Aarona, ma te tū'ati atu i te mau hiti 'ōti'a o nā 'oire ra nō Aarona 'e o Moroni ; 'e 'ua ma'iri rātou i te i'oa o te 'oire, 'e 'aore rā tō te fenua i'oa, 'o Nephiha.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephihah.

15 'E 'ua ha'amata ato'a rātou i taua iho matahiti ra i te patu i te mau 'oire e rave rahi i te pae apato'erau ; 'e te tahi e mea ta'a 'ē roa tōna huru 'o tā rātou i ma'iri i tōna i'oa 'o Lehi, 'e tei te pae apato'erau i pīha'i iho i te mau fenua i te hiti nō te pae miti.

16 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru o te matahiti.

17 'E mai teie te huru nō te manuia rahi o te mau ta'ata o Nephi i te ha'amatarā'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

18 'E 'ua manuia rahi rātou, 'e 'ua rahi roa tā rātou faufa'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua fānau rahi rātou 'e 'ua pūai roa ho'i rātou i ni'a i te fenua.

19 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou i te aroha 'e te parauti'a o te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu, nō te fa'atupu i tāna ra mau parau ato'a i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite tātou i teienei ē 'ua tupu mau tāna mau parau, 'o tāna i parau atu ia Lehi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

20 E ao tō 'oe 'e tō tā 'oe ra mau tamari'i ; 'e e ha'amaita'ihia rātou, 'e mai te mea e ha'apa'o rātou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a e manuia ia rātou i ni'a te fenua nei. 'Āre'a rā 'a ha'amana'o, mai te mea ē 'aita rātou e ha'apa'o i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, e tāpū-'ē-hia rātou mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu.

21 'E tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ua tupu mau taua mau parau ra i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e nō tā rātou mau tātama'ira'a 'e tā rātou mau mārōra'a, 'oia ia, tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e tā rātou mau harura'a, 'e tā rātou ha'amorira'a 'idolo, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa tai'ata, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i rotopū ia rātou iho, i tupu ai tā rātou mau tama'i 'e tō rātou mau pau.

22 'E rātou ato'a 'o tei itoito i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu, 'ua fa'aorahia rātou i te mau tau ato'a ; 'a fa'autu'ahia ai e rave rahi tauatini o tō rātou mau taea'e parauti'a 'ore i te fa'atitira'a, 'e 'aore rā i te pohe i te 'o'e ; 'e 'aore rā i te paruparura'a te fa'aro'o, 'e i te 'āmuira'a i te mau 'āti Lamana.

23 Inaha rā, 'aita atu e taime 'oa'oa roa atu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, mai te mau mahana mai o Nephi ē tae noa atu i te mau mahana o Moroni ; 'oia ia, ē tae noa mai i teie taime, 'oia te matahiti e piti 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrellings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope ato'a a'era te piti 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā ma te hau ; 'oia ia, 'e 'oia ato'a te piti 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti.

25 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua vai noa ato'a ia te hau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'āhiri 'aita te mārōra'a i tupu i rotopū ia rātou nō ni'a i te fenua nō Lehi, 'e te fenua nō Morianetona, 'o tei tū'atihia i ni'a i te mau hiti fenua nō Lehi ; 'e tei te pae tahatai nā fenua ato'a e piti ra.

26 Inaha ho'i, 'ua tītau te feiā i fāri'i i te fenua ra nō Morianetona, i te hō'ē tufa'a nō te fenua ra nō Lehi ; nō reira 'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē mārōra'a rahi i rotopū ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua rave ihora te mau ta'ata o Morianetona i te mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'e 'ua fa'aoti rātou 'ia taparahi atu ia rātou i te 'o'e.

27 Inaha rā, 'ua horo atu ra te feiā i fāri'i i te fenua ra nō Lehi i te pūhapara'a o Moroni, 'e 'ua ani atu iāna nō te tauturura'a ; 'e inaha e 'ere ho'i rātou tei hapa.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata o Morianetona, 'o tei arata'ihia e te hō'ē ta'ata 'o Morianetona tōna i'oa ē, 'ua horo atu te mau ta'ata o Lehi i te pūhapara'a o Moroni, 'ua mata'u rahi roa a'era rātou 'o te haere mai tō Moroni nu'u fa'ehau e ha'amou ia rātou.

29 Nō reira, 'ua fa'atupu ihora Morianetona i te mana'o i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au 'ia horo atu rātou i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e e rave rahi tō reira mau pape rarahi, 'e 'ia rave i te fenua i te pae apato'erau.

30 'E inaha, e rave fa'aoti rātou i teie 'ōpuara'a, ('o tē riro ho'i 'ei tumu e tupu ai te 'oto) inaha rā, nō te mea e ta'ata 'iriā 'ōhie noa 'o Morianetona, nō reira 'ua tupu ihora tōna riri i te hō'ē o tōna ra mau tāvini vahine, 'e 'ua fa'atae atu ra 'oia i tōna rima i ni'a iāna 'e 'ua taparahi roa ihora iāna.

31 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo atu ra taua tāvini vahine ra, 'e 'ua tae atu ra i te pūhapara'a o Moroni, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra ia Moroni i te mau mea ato'a i tupu, 'e nō ni'a ato'a i tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a nō te horo atu i te fenua i te pae apato'erau.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

- 32 I teienei, inaha, 'ua mata'u ihora te mau ta'ata i 'Auhune, 'o Moroni iho ā rā, 'o te fa'aro'o atu rātou i te mau parau a Morianetona 'e 'o te 'āmui atu ho'i rātou i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e nā roto i te reira e roa'a ai iāna taua mau tufa'a fenua ra, 'o tē fa'atupu i te mau pe'ape'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'oia ia, 'e nā roto i taua mau pe'ape'a ra e mou ai tō rātou ti'amāra'a.
- 33 Nō reira 'ua tono atu ra Moroni i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau 'e tō rātou mau pūhapara'a, 'ia tae nā mua roa mai i te mau ta'ata o Morianetona, nō te tāpe'a i tō rātou horora'a i te fenua ra i te pae apato'erau.
- 34 'E i muri a'era, 'aita rātou i tae nā mua mai i te mau ta'ata o Morianetona ē tae roa atu 'ua tae rātou i te mau 'ōti'a nō te fenua ra nō Ano ; 'e i reira nā mua atu ra rātou i te mau ta'ata o Morianetona, nā te vāhi oaoa nā te pae miti e tae atu ai i te fenua i te pae apato'erau ; 'oia ia, tei rōpū te reira i te miti, i te pae tō'o'a o te rā 'e te pae hiti'a o te rā.
- 35 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro ihora te nu'u fa'ehau i tonohia atu e Moroni, 'e 'o tei arata'ihia e te hō'ē ta'ata o Teanekuma tōna i'oa, i te mau ta'ata o Morianetona ; 'e nō te mana'o 'eta'eta o te mau ta'ata o Morianetona, ('o tei fa'aitoitohia e tāna iho mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau parau tāvaimanino) 'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē 'arora'a i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora Teanekuma ia Morianetona, 'e 'ua vī ihora tōna nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua rave ihora ia rātou 'ei mau 'āuri, 'e 'ua ho'i atu ra i te pūhapara'a o Moroni. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 36 'E 'ua nā-reira-hia te fa'aho'ira'ahia mai o te mau ta'ata o Morianetona. 'E i muri iho i tō rātou fafaua'a i te fa'atupu noa i te hau, 'ua fa'aho'ihia rātou i te fenua ra nō Morianetona, 'e 'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē tāhō'ēra'a i roto ia rātou 'e te mau ta'ata o Lehi ; 'e 'ua fa'aho'i-ato'a-hia atu ra rātou i tō rātou mau fenua.
- 37 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra 'a tupu fa'ahou ai te hau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua pohe ihora Nephiha, te piti o te ha'avā rahi, 'e 'ua rave māite 'oia i tōna ti'ara'a ha'avā ma te parauti'a i mua i te Atua.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephihah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

38 'Āre'a rā, 'aita 'oia i hina'aro 'ia fāri'i i te mau pāpa'a parau 'e te mau mea i hi'ohia e Alama 'e tōna mau metua 'ei mea mo'a roa ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a atu Alama i teie mau mea i tāna tamaiti ra ia Helamana.

39 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua mā'itihia te tamaiti a Nephiha 'ei ha'avā, nō te mono i tōna metua tāne ; 'oia ia, 'ua mā'itihia 'oia 'ei ha'avā rahi 'e 'ei tāvana i ni'a a'e i te mau ta'ata, ma te hōreo 'e te fa'auera'a mo'a 'ia ha'avā ma te parauti'a, 'e 'ia fa'atupu noa i te hau 'e te ti'amāra'a o te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia fa'ati'a ia rātou 'ia ha'apa'o i tō rātou mau ti'ara'a mo'a 'ia ha'amori i te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ia pāturu 'e 'ia fa'ati'a i te 'ohipa a te Atua ē hope roa a'e tōna mau mahana, 'e 'ia fa'autu'a i te feiā parauti'a 'ore 'ia au i tā rātou hara.

40 I teieni, inaha, 'o Pahorana tōna i'oa. 'E 'ua riro Pahorana 'ei mono nō tōna metua tāne, 'e 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te fa'atere i te mau ta'ata o Nephi i te hope'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

Alama 51

- 1 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a a'e i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua fa'atupu rātou i te hau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Lehi 'e te mau ta'ata o Morianetona nō ni'a i tō rātou mau fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti ma te hau.
- 2 'Āre a rā, 'aita rātou i tāpe'a maoro i te hau i ni'a te fenua, 'ua tupu ihora te mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nō ni'a i te ha'avā rahi ra 'o Pahorana ; inaha ho'i, tē vai ra te tahi pae o te mau ta'ata 'o tei hina'aro 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia te tahi mau vāhi iti ta'a 'ē nō te ture.
- 3 Inaha rā, e'ita 'o Pahorana e fa'ahuru 'ē 'e 'aore rā e fa'ati'a 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia te ture ; nō reira, 'aita 'oia i fa'aro'o i te feiā 'o tei fa'atae i tō rātou mau hina'aro nā roto i tā rātou mau parau anira'a nō ni'a i te fa'ahuru-'ē-ra'a i te ture.
- 4 Nō reira, 'ua riri a'era te feiā 'o tei hina'aro 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia te ture iāna, 'e 'ua hina'aro ihora rātou 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia vai noa 'ei ha'avā rahi i ni'a i te fenua ; nō reira 'ua tupu ihora te mārōra'a rahi nō ni'a i te reira, 'aita rā te ha'amani'ira'a toto.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'o rātou 'o tei hina'aro 'ia 'iritihia Pahorana mai ni'a mai i te pārahira'a ha'avā, 'ua parauhia iā rātou e mau ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i, nō te mea 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia te ture, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'amou i te hau ti'amā 'e 'ia fa'ati'a i te ari'i i ni'a i te fenua.
- 6 'E 'o rātou 'o tei hina'aro 'ia fa'aea noa 'o Pahorana 'ei ha'avā rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'ua ma'iri rātou i tō rātou i'oa e feiā-ti'amā ; 'e mai te reira ho'i te fa'ata'a-'ē-ra'a i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e 'ua tapu te feiā-ti'amā 'e 'ua fafau ho'i 'ia tāpe'a noa i tō rātou ti'amāra'a 'e te mau mea e maita'i ai tā rātou ha'apa'ora'a nā roto i te hō'ē hau ti'amā.

Alma 51

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'āfarohia tā rātou mārōra'a nā roto i te reo o te nūna'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te nūna'a 'ia ravehia te hina'aro o te feiā-ti'amā, 'e 'ua fa'aea noa Pahorana i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avā, 'e 'ua fa'atupu te reira i te 'oa'oa i rotopū i te mau taea'e o Pahorana, 'e i te mau ta'ata nō te ti'amā ato'a ho'i, 'e 'ua ha'amāmū te reira i te mau ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i, 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i pāto'i mai, 'ua tītauhia rā rātou 'ia tāpe'a noa i te tumu nō te ti'amāra'a.

8 I teienei, te feiā i hina'aro 'ia mā'itihia te mau ari'i, 'o te feiā ti'ara'a teitei ia ; 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia fa'aari'ihia rātou ; 'e 'ua turuhia ho'i rātou e te mau ta'ata tei tītau i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata.

9 Inaha rā, e taime fifi roa teie 'ia vai te reira huru mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'ati'arepu fa'ahou 'Amalikia i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro i te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e tē ha'aputupu mai ra 'oia i te mau fa'ehau nō te mau vāhi ato'a o tōna ra fenua, 'e tē tātua ra ia rātou i te mauha'a tama'i, 'e tē fa'aineine ra ia rātou nō te 'aro atu ma te itoito rahi ; i tapu na ho'i 'oia 'ia inu i te toto o Moroni.

10 Inaha rā, e 'ite tātou ē, 'ua parau rū noa 'oia ma te feruri 'ore 'a tapu ai 'oia ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua fa'aineine 'oia iāna iho 'e i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau nō te haere mai e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi.

11 I teienei, 'aita tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i rahi roa atu mai tō te mātāmua ra, nō te mea e rave rahi tauatini tei taparahia e te rima o te mau 'āti Nephi ; noa atu ā tō rātou rahira'a i pohe, 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui mai 'o 'Amalikia i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau rahi roa, 'e nō reira 'aita atu ra 'oia i mata'u 'ia haere mai i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.

12 'Oia ia, 'ua haere mai 'Amalikia iho i raro 'ei upo'o fa'atere nō te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E tei te piti 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā ; 'e tei taua ihora ho'i taime i ha'amata ai rātou i te fa'ahau i te mau 'ohipa nō tā rātou ra mau mārōra'a nō ni'a i te ha'avā rahi ra 'o Pahorana.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata i parauhia e mau ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i ē, tē haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana i raro nō te 'aro mai ia rātou, 'ua 'oa'oa a'era tō rātou 'ā'au ; 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i hina'aro 'ia rave i te mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'ua riri roa a'era ho'i rātou i te ha'avā rahi, 'e i te mau ta'ata nō te ti'amā, 'e 'aita atu ra ia rātou i rave i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te pāruru i tō rātou fenua.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era Moroni i te reira, 'e 'ia 'ite ato'a a'era ho'i 'oia ē, tē haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua, 'ua riri rahi a'era 'oia nō te 'eta'eta o taua mau ta'ata ra 'o tāna i fa'aitoito ma te 'ana'anatae 'ia fa'aora ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua riri rahi a'era 'oia ; 'ua 'i roa a'era tōna vārua i te riri ia rātou.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atae atu ra 'oia i te anira'a i te tāvana rahi o te fenua, nā roto i te reo o te nūna'a, i te anira'a iāna 'ia tai'o 'oia i te reira, 'e 'ia hōro'a mai 'oia i te mana iāna (ia Moroni) nō te ha'avī atu i te feiā 'ōrurehau 'ia pāruru i tō rātou fenua, 'e 'aore rā 'ia taparahi atu ia rātou.
- 16 'O tāna ho'i teie 'ōpuara'a mātāmua 'ia fa'a'ore i te mau mārōra'a 'e te mau tāivara'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; inaha ho'i, nā te reira i fa'atupu a'enei i te mau ha'amoura'a ato'a i tupu i ni'a ia rātou. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'ahia mai te reira mai te au i te reo o te nūna'a.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Moroni i tōna nu'u fa'ehau 'ia haere atu rātou e 'aro i taua mau ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i ra, 'ia hutihia i raro tō rātou ra te'ote'o 'e tō rātou mana'o ari'i 'e 'ia fa'aha'aha'a-roa-hia rātou i raro i te repo, 'e 'aore rā 'ia rave rātou i te mau mauha'a tama'i 'e 'ia pāturu i te 'ohipa nō te ti'amāra'a e ti'a ai.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau nō te 'aro atu ia rātou ; 'e 'ua huti i raro i tō rātou ra te'ote'o e tō rātou ra mana'o ari'i ; 'e nō reira 'a fa'ateitei mai ai rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro mai i te mau ta'ata o Moroni, 'ua tāpūhia rātou i raro 'e 'ua fa'aha'aha'a-roa-hia i raro i te repo.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua noa'ahia e maha tauatini o taua feiā 'ōrurehau ra tei tāpūhia i raro i te 'o'e ; 'e tō rātou feiā fa'atere tei 'ore i taparahihia i roto i te 'arora'a, 'ua ravehia ia rātou 'e 'ua tu'uhia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'aita ho'i e taime nō te ha'avā ia rātou i taua taime ra.

20 'E te toe'a o taua feiā 'ōrurehau ra, 'ua fāri'i ia rātou i te reva nō te ti'amāra'a, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tā'irihia i raro i te repo i te 'o'e, 'e 'ua fa'auehia rātou 'ia huti i te reva nō te ti'amāra'a i ni'a iho i tō rātou mau pare, 'e i roto i tō rātou mau 'oire, 'e 'ia rave i te mauha'a tama'i nō te pāruru i tō rātou fenua.

21 'E 'ua nā reira Moroni i te ha'amou i taua mau ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i ra, 'e 'aita atu ra e ta'ata toe nō roto mai i taua pupu ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i ra ; 'e 'ua nā reira ho'i 'oia i te fa'a'ore i te 'eta'eta 'e te te'ote'o o taua mau ta'ata ra, 'o tei poro na ē, e toto ari'i tō rātou ; 'āre'a rā 'ua tu'uhia rātou i raro 'ia fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho mai tō rātou mau taea'e, 'e 'ia tama'i pūai atu nō tō rātou ti'amāra'a i te fa'atitira'a.

22 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'a rave noa ai Moroni i te rāve'a nō te fa'a'ore i te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'a ha'avī ai ia rātou i te hau 'e i te peu maitata'i, 'e 'a fa'aineine ai 'oia i te mau fa'aturera'a nō te fa'aineine ia rātou 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, inaha ho'i, 'ua tae a'ena mai te mau 'āti Lamana i te fenua ra nō Moroni, 'e tei te mau fenua te reira nā te pae miti.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'aita atu ra i nava'i te pūai o te mau 'āti Nephi i te 'oire nō Moroni ; nō reira 'ua tīahi 'ē atu ra 'Amalikia ia rātou, ma te taparahi e rave rahi. 'E i muri a'era 'ua haru noa ihora 'Amalikia i te 'oire ; 'oia ia, 'e tō rātou ra mau pā pa'ari ato'a.

24 'E 'o rātou ho'i 'o tei horo 'ē atu i rāpae i te 'oire ra nō Moroni, 'ua tae atu ia i te 'oire ra nō Nephiha ; e 'oia ato'a 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui mai ra te mau ta'ata o te 'oire ra nō Lehi ia rātou iho, 'e 'ua fa'aineine ihora 'ia ineine nō te fārerei i te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te 'arora'a.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephihah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

- 25 'Āre'a rā, i muri a'era, 'aita 'Amalikia i fa'ati'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia haere nō te 'aro atu i te 'oire ra nō Nephiha, 'ua tāpe'a rā ia rātou i raro 'ia pārahi noa i te pae miti, ma te vaiiho noa i te tahi mau ta'ata i roto i te mau 'oire nō te tāpe'a noa 'e nō te pāruru i te reira.
- 26 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia i te haere atu ma te haru i te mau 'oire e rave rahi, te 'oire ra nō Nephiha, 'e te 'oire ra nō Lehi, te 'oire ra nō Morianetona, 'e te 'oire ra nō Omonera, 'e te 'oire ra nō Gida, 'e te 'oire ra nō Muleka, 'e tei te mau fenua nō te pae hiti'a o te rā taua mau 'oire ra i te pae miti.
- 27 'E i nā reira ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana i te noa'ara'a te mau 'oire e rave rahi nā roto i te ha'avare a 'Amalikia, 'e nā roto ho'i i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau e rave rahi, 'ua 'āua-pa'ari-hia taua mau 'oire ra mai te au i te mau pā pa'ari a Moroni ra ; 'e 'ua riro te reira 'ei mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari nō te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra rātou i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, ma te tīahi atu i te mau 'āti Nephi mai mua atu ia rātou 'e ma te taparahi e rave rahi o rātou.
- 29 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, 'ua 'arohia mai rātou e Teanekuma 'o tei taparahi na ia Morianetona, 'e tei haere ho'i i mua roa nō te tāpe'a i tō te reira mau ta'ata i tō rātou horora'a.
- 30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra 'oia i mua 'e 'ua tāpe'a ato'a ihora ia 'Amalikia, 'a haere ti'a atu ai 'oia 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau rahi 'ia roa'a iāna te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, 'e te fenua ato'a i te pae apato'erau.
- 31 Inaha rā, 'aita 'oia i manuia, nō te mea 'ua tūra'ihia 'oia i muri e Teanekuma 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata ; e mau 'aito rahi ho'i rātou ; 'e 'ua hau atu ho'i tō te mau ta'ata ato'a o Teanekuma pūai 'e te 'aravihi i te 'ohipa 'aro i tō te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e nō reira 'ua upo'oti'a rātou i ni'a a'e i te mau 'āti Lamana.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephihah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'ape'ape'a noa rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e nō reira 'ua taparahi noa atu ra ia rātou ē tae noa atu i te pō. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora Teanekuma 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa nā te mau fenua i te hiti nō te fenua nō 'Auhune ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ato'a ihora 'Amalikia i tōna ra mau ti'ahapa nā te mau fenua i te pae tahatai i te pae miti, 'e 'ua nā reira noa atu ra rātou i te tīahihia.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae mai ra te pō, 'ua haere huna atu ra Teanekuma 'e tōna ra tāvini i rāpae mai i te pō, e haere ti'a atu ra i te pūhapa o 'Amalikia ; 'e inaha, 'ua vare'ahia rātou i te ta'oto, nō tō rātou rohirohi i te 'ohipa 'e te ve'ave'a rahi o te mahana.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere huna atu ra Teanekuma i roto i te ti'ahapa o te ari'i, 'e 'ua pātia ihora i tōna māfatu i te taverō ; 'ua taparahi pohe 'oi'oi' oia i te ari'i, 'e 'aita roa a'era 'oia i fa'aara i tōna ra mau tāvini.

35 'E 'ua ho'i huna fa'ahou mai ra 'oia i tōna ihora pūhapara'a, 'e inaha, tē ta'oto noa ra tōna mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aara a'era 'oia ia rātou 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra ia rātou i te mau mea ato'a 'o tāna i rave.

36 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia vai ineine māite rātou, 'o te ara mai te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'o te haere mai rātou e 'aro mai ia rātou.

37 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e 'o te hope'a ho'i te reira nō te mau mahana o 'Amalikia.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, in-
somuch that they did slay them even until it was
dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men
did pitch their tents in the borders of the land
Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the
borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this
manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come,
Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by
night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and
behold, sleep had overpowered them because of
their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors
and heat of the day.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into
the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart;
and he did cause the death of the king immediately
that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp,
and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke
them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in
readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and
should come upon them.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the
reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and
thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

Alama 52

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, inaha, 'ia ara a'era te mau 'āti Lamana i te po'ipo'i mātāmua nō te 'āva'e mātāmua, inaha, 'ua 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'ua pohe roa 'Amalikia i roto i tōna ihora ti'ahapa; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a rātou ē, 'ua ineine Teanekuma nō te haere mai e 'aro ia rātou i taua mahana ra.
- 2 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana i te reira, 'ua mata'u roa ihora rātou; 'e 'ua fa'a'ore ihora rātou i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a nō te haere ti'a atu i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e 'ua 'ōtohe atu ra rātou 'e tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau ato'a i te 'oire ra nō Muleka, 'ia pāroruhia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau pā pa'ari.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua mā'itihia te taea'e o 'Amalikia 'ei ari'i i ni'a i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'o Amorona tōna i'oa; nō reira 'ua mā'itihia te ari'i ra o Amorona, 'oia te taea'e o te ari'i ra o 'Amalikia, nō te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia, 'ia tāpe'a noa tōna mau ta'ata i te mau 'oire i haruhia e rātou nā roto i te ha'amani'ira'a toto; 'aore ho'i rātou i haru mai i te hō'ē 'oire, maori rā 'ua pau rahi tō rātou toto.
- 5 'E i teienei, 'ua 'ite ihora Teanekuma ē 'ua 'ōpua te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia tāpe'a noa i taua mau 'oire ra i haruhia mai e rātou, 'e taua mau tufa'a o te fenua ra i noa'a ia rātou, 'e i tōna 'itera'a atu i te rahi o tō rātou mau ta'ata, 'ua mana'o ihora Teanekuma e mea faufa'a 'ore 'ia tāmata i te 'aro atu ia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a.
- 6 'Āre'a rā 'ua tāpe'a noa 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata i reira, mai te mea ra ē, tē fa'aineine ra 'oia nō te tama'i; 'oia ia, 'e 'oia mau tē fa'aineine ra 'oia nō te pāroru iāna iho ia rātou ra, nā roto i te hāmanira'a i te mau 'āua ē 'ati noa a'era, 'e te fa'aineinera'a i te mau vāhi ha'apūra'a.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira noa 'oia i te fa'aineine nō te tama'i, ē tae noa atu 'ua tonono mai Moroni e rave rahi mau ta'ata nō te ha'apūai i tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau.

Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

8 'E 'ua fa'atae ato'a mai ra Moroni i te mau fa'auera'a iāna, 'ia tāpe'a noa 'oia i te feiā mau-'āuri ato'a e ma'iri mai i roto i tōna rima ; nō te mea 'ua tāpe'a te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi mau ta'ata 'ei feiā mau-'āuri, e mea ti'a iāna 'ia tāpe'a ato'a i te mau mau-'āuri ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana 'ei ho'o nō rātou 'o tei tāpe'ahia 'e te mau 'āti Lamana.

9 'E 'ua fa'atae ato'a mai ra 'oia i te mau fa'auera'a iāna 'ia ha'apa'ari 'oia i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, 'e 'ia rave mai ho'i i te fenua iti oaoa, ē tae atu ai i te fenua ra i te pae apato'erau, 'o te roa'a taua vāhi ra i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'o te roa'a ato'a te pūai ia rātou nō te ha'ape'ape'a mai ia rātou nā te mau pae ato'a ra.

10 'E 'ua fa'auere ato'a mai ra Moroni iāna, ma te hina'aro iāna 'ia ha'apa'o maita'i 'oia i taua pae o te fenua ra, 'e 'ia 'imi 'oia i te mau rāve'a ato'a nō te ha'apau i te mau 'āti Lamana i taua vāhi ra, mai te au i tōna mana, penei a'e 'o te roa'a fa'ahou iāna nā roto i te rāmā 'e 'aore rā nā roto i te tahi rāve'a 'ē atu, taua mau 'oire ra i haruhia mai roto mai i tō rātou mau rima ; 'e 'ia pāruru ato'a 'e 'ia ha'apūai ho'i 'oia i te mau 'oire ē 'ati noa a'e, 'o tei 'ore i riro i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana.

11 'E 'ua parau ato'a atu 'oia iāna : E haere ato'a atu vau ia 'oe na, inaha rā, tē aro nei te mau 'āti Lamana ia mātou i te mau 'ōti'a nō te fenua i te pae miti i te pae tō'o'a o te rā ; 'e inaha, e haere atu vau e 'aro atu ia rātou, nō reira 'aita e ti'a iā'u 'ia haere atu ia 'oe na.

12 I teienei, 'ua fa'aru'e atu te ari'i (Amorona) i te fenua ra nō Zarahemla, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu 'oia i te ari'i vahine nō ni'a i te pohe o tōna ra taea'e, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu'ua 'oia i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'ua haere ti'a atu rātou e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau fenua i te pae miti nō te pae tō'o'a o te rā.

13 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia i te tāmata i te ha'ape'ape'a i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e i te huti i te tahi pae o tō rātou nu'u fa'ehau 'ia haere i taua pae o te fenua ra, 'e 'ua fa'auere atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata i vaiihohia i te mau 'oire i haruhia mai e ana, 'ia ha'ape'ape'a ato'a atu rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau fenua i te pae miti nō te pae hiti'a o te rā ; 'e 'ia haru rātou i tō rātou mau fenua mai te au i tō rātou mana, 'e mai te au i te mana o tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

14 'E mai te reira te huru nō te mau 'ati rahi i fāri'ihia e te mau 'āti Nephi i te hope'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

15 Inaha rā, i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua fa'ananahono Moroni i te mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia pāroru i nā 'ōti'a o taua fenua ra i te pae apato'a 'e te pae tō'o'a o te rā, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te haere atu i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, 'ia ti'a iāna 'e tōna mau ta'ata 'ia tauturu atu ia Teanekuma 'ia haru fa'ahou mai i te mau 'oire i haruhia atu mai ia rātou ra—

16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fāri'i Teanekuma i te mau fa'auera'a 'ia 'aro atu i te 'oire ra nō Muleka, 'e 'ia haru fa'ahou mai i te reira mai te mea e ti'a 'ia nā reira.

17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aîneine ihora Teanekuma nō te 'aro atu i te 'oire ra nō Muleka, 'e 'ia haere ti'a atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'āre'a rā 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, 'aita roa e ti'a iāna 'ia ha'avā atu ia rātou 'a pārahi ai rātou i roto mai i tō rātou mau pā pa'ari ; nō reira 'ua fa'a'ore ihora 'oia i tāna mau 'ōpuara'a 'e 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra i te 'oire ra nō 'Auhune, nō te tī'a i te taera'a mai o Moroni, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fāri'i i te pūai nō tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra Moroni 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, i te pae hope'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma hitu matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

19 'E i te ha'amatarā'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma va'u matahiti, 'ua fa'atupu 'o Moroni rāua 'o Teanekuma 'e te mau ra'atira rahi e rave rahi i te hō'ē 'āpo'ora'a 'arora'a—nō ni'a i te mau mea tā rātou e rave nō te fa'ahaere mai i te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro ia rātou ; 'e 'aore rā 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'avarevare atu ia rātou 'ia haere mai i rāpae i tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia upo'oti'a i ni'a a'e ia rātou 'e 'ia haru fa'ahou mai i te 'oire ra nō Muleka.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonu atu ra rātou i te tahi mau ve'a i te nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o tei pāroru i te 'oire ra nō Muleka, 'oia ho'i i tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere o Iakoba tōna i'oa, 'e 'ua tītāu atu ra iāna 'ia haere mai 'oia e tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i rāpae nō te 'aro mai ia rātou i ni'a i te mau fenua pāpū, i rōpū i nā 'oire e piti ra. Inaha rā, 'aita roa 'o Iakoba, te hō'ē ta'ata 'āti Zorama, i haere mai i rāpae 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau nō te 'aro mai ia rātou i ni'a i te mau fenua pāpū.

21 'E i muri a'era, nō te mea 'aita Moroni i manuia nō te 'aro atu ia rātou i ni'a i te hō'ē vāhi pāpū maita'i, nō reira 'ua fa'atupu ihora 'oia i te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a nō te fa'ahaere mai i te mau 'āti Lamana i rāpae i tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari.

22 Nō reira, 'ua fa'ae atu ra 'oia ia Teanekuma 'ia rave i te tahi pae iti o te mau ta'ata 'e 'ia haere atu i raro ma te ha'afātata i te pae miti ; 'e i te pō 'ua haere atu Moroni 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau i roto i te mēdēbara i te pae tō'o'a o te rā nō te 'oire ra nō Muleka ; 'e 'ia po'ipo'i a'e, 'ia 'ite mai te mau tīa'i o te mau 'āti Lamana ia Teanekuma, 'ua horo atu ra rātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra ia Iakoba, tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere.

23 'E inaha, 'ua haere mai ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro mai ia Teanekuma, i mana'o ho'i rātou ē, nō tō rātou rahi e vī Teanekuma ia rātou nō te mea e mea iti rātou. 'E 'ia 'ite atu ra Teanekuma i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te haerera'a mai nō te 'aro iāna, 'ua ha'amata 'oia i te 'ōtohe atu i raro i te hiti o te miti, i te pae apato'erau.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana iāna i te 'ōtohera'a, 'ua itoito ihora rātou 'e 'ua tāpapa mai ra ia rātou ma te pūai. 'E 'a arata'i 'ē atu ai Teanekuma i te mau 'āti Lamana i tāpapa noa mai ia rātou ma te faufa'a 'ore, inaha, 'ua fa'ae atu ra Moroni i te tahi pae o tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau i pīha'i iho iāna ra 'ia haere atu i roto i te 'oire 'e 'ia haru mai i te reira.

25 'E 'ua nā reira rātou, 'e 'ua taparahi i te mau ta'ata ato'a i vaiihohia mai nō te pāroru i te 'oire ; 'oia ia, i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē 'ore e fa'aru'e i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

26 E mea nā reira te roa'ara'a mai te 'oire nō Muleka ia Moroni 'e i te tahi pae o tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau, 'a haere atu ai 'oia 'e te toe'a o tōna nu'u fa'ehau nō te 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana 'a ho'i mai ai rātou mai tā rātou a'ua'ura'a ia Teanekuma.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia Teanekuma ē tae noa atu 'ua fātata rātou i te 'oire nō 'Auhune, 'e i muri iho 'ua 'arohia mai rātou e Lehi 'e te tahi nu'u fa'ehau iti i vaiihohia nō te pāruru i te 'oire ra nō 'Auhune.

28 'E i teieni, inaha, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ra'atira rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana ia Lehi 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau i te haerera'a mai nō te 'aro ia rātou, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou ma te 'āhuehue rahi, ma te pe'ape'a 'o te 'ore te 'oire nō Muleka e roa'a ia rātou nā mua rātou e roa'ahia ai ia Lehi ; 'e 'ua rohirohi ho'i rātou nō tō rātou haere-noa-ra'a, 'āre'a rā te mau ta'ata o Lehi ra 'ua itoito ia rātou.

29 I teieni, 'aita te mau 'āti Lamana i 'ite ē, tei muri mai ia rātou 'o Moroni 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau ; 'e 'o tā rātou i mata'u 'o Lehi ia 'e tōna mau ta'ata.

30 I teieni, 'aita Lehi i hina'aro 'ia roa'a rātou iāna ē tae roa atu 'ua fārerei rātou ia Moroni 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau.

31 'E i muri a'era, nā mua te mau 'āti Lamana i 'ōtohe ai i muri roa, 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou e te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e te mau ta'ata o Moroni i te hō'ē pae, 'e te mau ta'ata o Lehi i te tahi pae, 'e 'ua itoito 'e 'ua pūai maita'i ho'i rātou ato'a i reira ; 'āre'a rā te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua rohirohi ia rātou nō te maoro o tō rātou haere-noa-ra'a.

32 'Ua fa'aue atu ra Moroni i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou ē tae roa atu 'ua hōro'a mai rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua arata'i mai ra Iakoba, tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere, e 'āti Zorama 'oia, 'e e ta'ata 'ā'au vī 'ore ho'i, i te mau 'āti Lamana ma te riri 'ū'ana nō te 'aro mai ia Moroni.

34 Nō te mea tei mua iho Moroni ia rātou i tō rātou 'ē'a haerera'a, nō reira 'ua 'ōpua ihora Iakoba 'ia taparahi ia rātou, 'e 'ia rave i taua 'ē'a ra e tae atu ai i te 'oire ra nō Muleka. Inaha rā, e mea pūai roa a'e Moroni 'e tōna mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'aita roa atu rātou i 'ōtohe i mua i te mau 'āti Lamana.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro ihora rātou nā pae e piti
ato'a ra ma te riri 'ū'ana rahi ; 'e e rave rahi tei
taparahihia i nā pae e piti ato'a ra ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua puta
ihora Moroni 'e 'ua taparahi-pohe-roa-hia ihora
Iakoba.

36 'E 'ua 'aro mai ra Lehi 'e tōna mau ta'ata pūai ia
rātou nā te pae i muri ma te riri 'ū'ana rahi, 'e 'ua
hōpoi mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana nō te pae i muri i tā
rātou mau mauha'a tama'i ; 'e nō te 'āhuehue rahi
'āita atu ra te toe'a 'o rātou i 'ite ē, e horo ānei rātou 'e
'aore rā e 'aro atu ānei rātou.

37 I teienei, i tō Moroni 'itera'a i tō rātou 'āhuehue,
'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Mai te mea e hōpoi mai
'outou i tā 'outou mau mauha'a tama'i, inaha, e fa'aea
mātou i te ha'amani'i i tō 'outou toto i reira.

38 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te mau 'āti Lamana
i teie mau parau, 'ua haere mai ra tō rātou mau
ra'atira rahi ato'a 'o tei 'ore i taparahihia, 'e 'ua taora
mai ra i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i i raro i te pae
'āvae o Moroni, 'e 'ua fa'ae ato'a atu ra i tō rātou
mau ta'ata 'ia nā reira ato'a.

39 Inaha rā, e rave rahi tei 'ore i nā reira ; 'e 'o rātou 'o
tei 'ore i hōpoi mai i tā rātou mau 'o'e, 'ua haruhia 'e
'ua ruru'uhia rātou, 'e 'ua ravehia ho'i tā rātou mau
mauha'a tama'i mai ia rātou mai, 'e 'ua ha'avīhia
rātou 'ia haere nā muri i tō rātou mau taea'e i te
fenua ra nō 'Auhune.

40 'E i teienei, 'ua rahi atu te feiā mau-'āuri i noa'a
mai i tei taparahihia ; 'oia ia, 'ua rahi atu rātou i tei
pohe i nā pae e piti ato'a ra.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands
with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on
both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob
was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury
with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear
delivered up their weapons of war; and the remain-
der of them, being much confused, knew not
whither to go or to strike.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto
them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and
deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding
your blood.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had
heard these words, their chief captains, all those who
were not slain, came forth and threw down their
weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also com-
manded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and
those who would not deliver up their swords were
taken and bound, and their weapons of war were
taken from them, and they were compelled to march
with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken
exceeded more than the number of those who had
been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain
on both sides.

Alama 53

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ata'a ihora rātou i te mau fa'ehau tīa'i i te feiā mau-āuri nō te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ha'avī atu ra ia rātou 'ia haere atu e huna i tō rātou feiā pohe ; 'oia ia, 'e te feiā pohe ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi i taparahihia ; 'e 'ua fa'ata'a atu ra Moroni i te mau ta'ata i ni'a ia rātou nō te tīa'i ia rātou 'a rave ai rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa.
- 2 'E 'ua haere atu ra Moroni rāua 'o Lehi i roto i te 'oire ra nō Muleka, 'e 'ua rave ihora i te fa'aterera'a nō te 'oire, e hōro'a atu ra i te reira ia Lehi. I teienei, inaha, 'o taua Lehi nei, 'o te hō'ē ia ta'ata i pīha'i iho ia Moroni i te pae rahi o te taimē nō tāna mau 'arora'a ; 'e 'ua au tōna huru i tō Moroni, 'e e mea 'oa'oa rāua i tō rāua ataata 'ore, te tahi i te tahi ; 'oia ia, 'ua here rāua te tahi i te tahi, 'e 'ua here-ato'a-hia rāua e te feiā ato'a o Nephi ra.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te mau 'āti Lamana i te tanu i tō rātou feiā pohe 'e i te feiā pohe ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua fa'aho'ihia atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune ; 'e nā roto i te mau fa'auera'a a Moroni, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Teanekuma ia 'ō rātou i te hō'ē 'āpo'o ē 'ati noa 'e te fenua, 'oia ho'i te 'oire ra nō 'Auhune.
- 4 'E 'ua fa'aue 'oia ia rātou 'ia hāmani i te hō'ē 'āua rā'au i ni'a i te pae roto o taua 'āpo'o ra, 'e 'ua ha'apu'e mai ra rātou i te repo nō roto mai i te 'āpo'o i pīha'i iho i te 'āua rā'au ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'arave i te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'ohipa ē tae noa atu 'ua ha'a'ati roa rātou i te 'oire ra nō 'Auhune i te 'āua pa'ari i hāmanihia i te rā'au 'e te repo, 'e e mea teitei ho'i te reira.
- 5 'E 'ua riro a'era teie 'oire 'ei ha'apūra'a pa'ari roa mai taua taimē atu ra ; 'e 'ua ha'apa'o noa rātou i te feiā mau-āuri o te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i teie nei 'oire ; 'oia ia, i roto i te 'āua tā rātou i fa'aue i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia hāmani i tō rātou iho rima. I teienei, e mea ti'a roa ia Moroni 'ia fa'aue i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia rave i te 'ohipa, nō te mea e mea 'ōhie 'ia ha'apa'o ia rātou 'a rave ai rātou i te 'ohipa ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ho'i 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata pā'āto'a i te taimē 'oia e 'aro atu ai i te mau 'āti Lamana.

Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

6 'E i muri a'era, e mea nā reira Moroni i te upo'oti'a i ni'a a'e i te hō'ē o te mau nu'u fa'ehau rahi roa a'e o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua roa'a iāna te 'oire ra nō Muleka, 'o te hō'ē ia o te mau vāhi pa'ari roa a'e o te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te fenua ra nō Nephi; 'e 'ua hāmani ato'a 'oia i te hō'ē ha'apūra'a pa'ari nō te tāpe'a i tāna feiā mau-'āuri.

7 'E i muri a'era, 'aita 'oia i tāmata fa'ahou 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana i taua matahiti ra, 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'a'ohipa 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata nō te fa'aineine noa nō te 'aro atu; 'oia ia, 'e nō te hāmani i te mau pā nō te pāruru ia rātou iho i te mau 'āti Lamana; 'oia ia, nō te fa'aora i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i i te o'e 'e te 'ati, 'e nō te fāri'i i te mā'a nā tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau.

8 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, tē pārahi ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te pae apato'a nō te miti i te pae tō'o'a o te rā, 'e tei te ātea 'ē 'o Moroni; 'e nō te mau 'ohipa tāviri i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua tupu ihora te mau mārōra'a i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua roa'a ihora i te mau 'āti Lamana te mana ri'i i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua roa'a ia rātou e rave rahi o tō rātou mau 'oire i taua pae fenua ra.

9 'E nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i rotopū ia rātou iho, 'oia ia, nō te mau mārōra'a 'e te 'ohipa tāviri i rotopū ia rātou iho, i ro'ohia ai rātou i te mau fifi rahi roa.

10 'E i teienei, inaha, e parau ri'i tā'u nō ni'a i te feiā o Amona, i riro na ho'i rātou i te mātāmua 'ei mau 'āti Lamana; 'āre'a rā nā roto ia Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e, 'e 'aore rā, nā roto i te mana o te parau a te Atua 'ua fa'afāriuhia mai rātou i te Fatu; 'e 'ua arata'ihia rātou i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e mai reira atu 'ua pāuruhia rātou e te mau 'āti Nephi.

11 'E nō tā rātou tapura'a, 'ua tāpe'ahia rātou 'eiaha rātou e rave i te mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e; nō te mea 'ua tapu rātou ē, 'aita roa rātou e ha'amani'i fa'ahou i te toto; 'e mai te au i tā rātou ra tapu, e pohe rātou, 'oia ia, e fa'ati'a rātou ia rātou iho 'ia ma'iri i roto i te rima o tō rātou mau taea'e, 'āua'a a'e rā te aroha 'e te here rahi o Amona 'e tō tōna mau taea'e ia rātou.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

- 12 Nō te reira tumu i arata'ihia mai ai rātou i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemla ; 'e mai te reira mai taime 'ua pāroru-noa-hia rātou e te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 13 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou i te pe'ape'a, 'e te mau 'ati 'e te ahoaho 'o tā te mau 'āti Nephi i amo nō rātou, 'ua tupu ihora tō rātou aroha 'e 'ua hina'aro ihora rātou 'ia rave i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te pāroru i tō rātou fenua.
- 14 Inaha rā, 'a fātata ai rātou i te rave i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'ua fa'aro'o ihora rātou i te mau parau tāparu a Helamana 'e tōna mau taea'e, 'e 'ua fātata roa ho'i rātou i te 'ōfati i te tapu tā rātou i tapu.
- 15 'E 'ua mata'u Helamana 'o te mou tō rātou vārua 'ia nā reira rātou ; nō reira 'ua tītauhia ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei fa'aoti i taua fafaura'a ra, 'ia hi'o noa atu i tō rātou mau taea'e i te haerera'a nā roto i tō rātou mau 'ati, i roto i tō rātou mau pe'ape'a rahi i teie taime.
- 16 Inaha rā, i muri a'era, e rave rahi tā rātou mau tamari'i tamāroa tei 'ore i fafau i taua fafaura'a ra, 'oia ho'i, 'aita rātou e rave i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te pāroru ia rātou iho i tō rātou mau 'enemi ; nō reira 'ua putuputu 'āmui mai ra rātou i teie taime, 'o rātou ato'a 'o tei ti'a 'ia rave i te mau mauha'a tama'i ; 'e 'ua parau rātou ia rātou iho e mau 'āti Nephi.
- 17 'E 'ua fafau rātou i te hō'ē fafaura'a 'ia 'aro nō te ti'amāra'a o te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'oia ia, 'ia pāroru i te fenua ē tae noa atu i te hōro'ara'a i tō rātou iho ora ; 'oia ia, 'ua fafau ho'i rātou ē e 'ore roa rātou e fa'aru'e i tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'āre'a rā e tama'i noa rātou nō te pāroru i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e ia rātou iho i te fa'atītira'a.
- 18 I teienei, inaha, e piti tauatini rahira'a mau taure'are'a tāne teie 'o tei fa'aoti i teie fafaura'a 'e tei rave i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te pāroru i tō rātou fenua.
- 19 'E i teienei, inaha, 'aita tō te mau 'āti Nephi e pe'ape'a ia rātou i te tau i ma'iri a'enei, i teienei rā 'ua riro rātou 'ei tauturura'a rahi ato'a ; 'e 'ua rave ho'i rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia riro Helamana 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō rātou.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

- 20 E mau taure'are'a tāne 'āpī roa rātou ato'a, 'e 'ua hau rahi roa tō rātou itoito, 'e tō rātou pūai ato'a 'e tā rātou ho'i 'ohipa ; inaha rā, e 'ere i te reira ana'e—e mau tāne 'ohipa parau mau rātou i te mau taime ato'a 'e i roto i te mau mea ato'a e tītauhia ia rātou.
- 21 'Oia ia, e mau ta'ata parau mau rātou 'e te ha'apa'o maita'i, 'e 'ua ha'apī'ihia ho'i rātou 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua 'e 'ia haere ma te parauti'a i mua iāna.
- 22 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Helamana i mua roa i tōna mau fa'ehau 'āpī roa e piti tauatini, nō te tauturu i te mau ta'ata i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua i te pae apato'a, i pīha'i iho i te miti i te tō'o'a o te rā.
- 23 'E oti a'era te matahiti e piti 'ahuru 'e ma va'u nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alama 54

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te mau ha'avā, 'ua tonono mai ra Amorona i te ve'a ia Moroni ma te ani atu iāna 'ia tauī 'oia i te feiā mau-āuri.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua māuruuru roa ihora Moroni i tā Amorona anira'a iāna, 'ua hina'aro 'oia i te mā'a 'o tāna e hōro'a nā te feiā mau-āuri 'āti Lamana, 'ei tauturu nō tōna iho mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ato'a 'oia i tōna iho mau ta'ata nō te ha'apūai i tōna nu'u fa'ehau.
- 3 I teienei, 'ua rave atu te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau vahine e rave rahi 'e te mau tamari'i e rave rahi, 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e vahine 'e te hō'ē a'e tamari'i i rotopū i te feiā mau-āuri ato'a a Moroni, 'e 'aore rā i te feiā mau-āuri tei ravehia e Moroni ; nō reira, 'ua 'ōpua ihora Moroni i te hō'ē rāve'a 'ia roa'a mai e rave rahi feiā mau-āuri o te mau 'āti Nephi nō 'ō mai i te mau 'āti Lamana ra, mai te mea e ti'a 'ia nā reira.
- 4 Nō reira 'ua pāpa'i 'oia i te hō'ē 'episetole, 'e 'ua hāpono atu ra i te reira nā roto i tōna tāvini ra ia Amorona, taua iho tāvini ra 'o tei 'āfa'i mai i te 'episetole ia Moroni ra. I teienei, 'o teie te mau parau tāna i pāpa'i ia Amorona, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē :
- 5 Inaha, e Amorona, 'ua pāpa'i poto noa atu vau ia 'oe na nō ni'a i teie nei 'arora'a tā 'oe i aro mai i tō'u nei mau ta'ata ; 'e 'aore rā 'o tā tō 'oe tua'ana i 'aro mai ia rātou, 'e tā 'oe ho'i e 'ōpua noa nei ā 'ia rave i muri mai i tōna ra pohera'a.
- 6 Inaha, e fa'a'ite poto noa atu vau ia 'oe na nō ni'a i tō te Atua ra parauti'a, 'e te 'o'e nō tōna ra riri 'ū'ana manahope 'o tē tautau ra i ni'a a'e ia 'oe na, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'oe 'e 'ia fa'aho'i 'ē atu i tō 'oe mau nu'u fa'ehau i roto i tō 'outou iho mau fenua, 'e 'aore rā i te fenua tei roa'a ia 'outou, 'oia ho'i te fenua nō Nephi.
- 7 'Oia ia, e fa'a'ite atu vau i teie mau mea ia 'oe na, mai te mea e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia ha'apa'o i te reira ; 'oia ia, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'oe na nō ni'a i taua hade ri'ari'a ra 'o tē tā'i ra nō te fāri'i mai i te feiā taparahi ta'ata mai ia 'oe na 'e tō 'oe tua'ana te huru, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou 'e 'ia fa'āore i tā 'outou mau 'ōpuara'a taparahi ta'ata, 'e 'ia ho'i atu 'e tō 'outou ra mau nu'u fa'ehau i tō 'outou iho mau fenua.

Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

- 8 'E nō te mea 'ua pāto'i atu 'outou i teie mau mea, 'e 'ua 'aro mai ho'i i te mau ta'ata o te Fatu ra, 'ua mana'o ia vau e nā reira fa'ahou ā 'outou.
- 9 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua ineine mātou nō te fārerei ia 'outou na ; 'oia ia, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fa'a'ore i tā 'outou ra mau 'ōpuara'a, inaha, e fa'atae mai 'outou i ni'a ia 'outou i te riri 'ū'ana o taua Atua ra 'o tā 'outou i pāto'i atu, ē tae noa atu ho'i 'ua ha'amouhia 'outou.
- 10 'Āre'a rā, mai te Fatu e ora nei, e tae mau atu tō mātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i ni'a ia 'outou, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fa'aātea 'ē atu, 'e e tāho'o-vave-hia 'outou e te pohe, nō te mea e tāpe'a noa mātou i tō mātou mau 'oire 'e tō mātou mau fenua ; 'oia ia, e tāpe'a māite mātou i tā mātou ha'apa'ora'a 'e te 'ohipa a tō mātou Atua.
- 11 Inaha rā, 'ua mana'o a'era vau ē, e mea faufa'a 'ore tā'u nei mau parau ia 'oe na ; 'ua mana'o a'era ho'i au ē, e tamari'i 'oe nō hade ; nō reira e fa'aoti au i tā'u nei 'episetole i te fa'a'itera'a atu ia 'oe na ē, e'ita roa vau e tau i te feiā mau-'āuri, maori rā 'ua ti'a 'ia fa'aho'i mai 'outou i te hō'ē tāne 'e tāna vahine 'e tāna mau tamari'i, nō te hō'ē ta'ata mau-'āuri ; 'e mai te mea e nā reira 'oe, e tau i vau i reira.
- 12 'E inaha, mai te mea ē 'aita 'outou e nā reira, e haere atu vau 'e tō'u ra mau nu'u fa'ehau e 'aro ia 'outou ; 'oia ia, e fa'a'ahu vau i tā'u mau vahine 'e tā'u mau tamari'i i te mauha'a tama'i, 'e e haere atu vau e 'aro atu ia 'outou, 'e e tāpapa atu vau ia 'outou ē tae roa atu i tō 'outou iho fenua, 'oia tō tātou fenua 'āi'a mātāmua ; 'oia ia, e roa 'ei toto nō te toto, 'ei ora nō te ora ; 'e e 'aro atu mātou ia 'outou ē tae roa atu 'ua ha'amou-roa-hia 'outou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.
- 13 Inaha, tei roto vau nei i tō'u riri, 'e mai te reira ato'a tō'u nei mau ta'ata ; 'ua tītau 'outou 'ia taparahi ia mātou, 'e 'ua tītau noa rā mātou 'ia pārruru ia mātou iho. Inaha rā, mai te mea ē 'ua tītau ā 'outou 'ia ha'amou ia mātou nei, 'ei reira mātou e tītau ai 'ia ha'amou ia 'outou na ; 'oia ia, e tītau ā mātou i tō mātou fenua, te fenua nō tō mātou 'āi'a mātāmua.
- 14 I teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u 'episetole. 'O Moroni au ; 'o vau te ta'ata fa'atere nō te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

- 15 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fāri'i a'era Amorona i teie 'episetole, 'ua riri ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua pāpa'i fa'ahou mai ra 'oia i te tahi 'episetole ia Moroni, 'e teie te mau parau tāna i pāpa'i mai, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 16 'O Amorona vau, te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'o vau te teina o 'Amalikia tā 'outou i taparahi. Inaha, e tāho'o atu vau i tōna ra toto i ni'a iho ia 'outou, 'oia ia, e haere atu vau 'e tō'u ra mau nu'u fa'ehau e 'aro ia 'outou, 'e 'aita ho'i au e mata'u i tā 'outou mau parau ha'amata'u.
- 17 Inaha ho'i, 'ua hāmani 'ino tō 'outou mau metua i tō rātou ra mau taea'e, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'a'ere rātou ia rātou i tō rātou ti'amāra'a nō te hau fenua 'e 'o rātou ho'i tei ti'a mau 'ia fāri'i i te reira.
- 18 'E i teienei, inaha, mai te mea e ha'apae 'outou i tā 'outou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'a auraro ai i te feiā 'o tē tano mau 'ia fāri'i i te hau fenua, 'ei reira vau e fa'aue ai i tō'u mau ta'ata 'ia ha'apae i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i 'e 'eiaha roa e 'aro fa'ahou.
- 19 Inaha, 'ua parau mai 'oe i te mau parau ha'amata'u e rave rahi i ni'a iā'u e i tō'u nei mau ta'ata ; inaha rā 'aita roa mātou i mata'u i tā 'oe mau parau ha'amata'u.
- 20 'Āre'a rā, e fa'ati'a vau ma te 'oa'oa 'ia tau i te feiā mau-'āuri mai te au i tā 'oe anira'a, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aherehere i tā'u mā'a nā tō'u mau fa'ehau ; 'e e fa'atupu mātou i te hō'ē 'arora'a 'o tē riro 'ei mea mure 'ore, ē tae noa atu 'ua auraro te mau 'āti Nephi i tō mātou mana fa'atere 'e 'aore rā 'ua fāri'i i tō rātou ha'amoura'a mure 'ore.
- 21 'E nō ni'a i taua Atua ra 'o tā 'oe i parau ē, 'ua pāto'ihia e mātou nei, inaha, 'aita roa mātou i 'ite i te reira huru ta'ata, 'aita ato'a ho'i 'outou i 'ite ; 'āre'a rā mai te mea ē tē vai ra te reira ra huru ta'ata, 'aita roa ia mātou i 'ite, 'āre'a rā penei a'e nāna i hāmani ia mātou 'e ia 'outou ato'a ho'i.
- 22 'E mai te mea ho'i ē tē vai ra te diabolō 'e te hade, inaha, 'aita ānei 'oia e tonono atu ia 'oe i reira, 'ia pārahi i pīha'i iho i tō'u ra tua'ana 'o tā 'outou i taparahi, 'e 'o tei parauhia e 'oe ē, 'ua haere atu 'oia i taua vāhi ra ? Inaha rā, 'aita tō teie mau mea e faufa'a.
- 23 'O Amorona vau, 'e e hua'ai au nō Zorama, 'o tei ha'avīhia e tō 'outou mau metua 'e tei hōpoiha mai ho'i mai Ierusalemā mai.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

24 'E inaha, i teienei, e ta'ata 'āti Lamana mata'u 'ore
au ; inaha, 'ua fa'atupuhia ho'i teie nei 'arora'a nō te
tāho'o i tō rātou mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a-hia, 'e nō te
tāpe'a noa 'e nō te fāri'i i tō rātou ti'amāra'a nō te hau
fenua ; 'e tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u nei 'episetole ia
Moroni.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold,
this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs,
and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the gov-
ernment; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

Alama 55

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, i tō Moroni fāri'ira'a i teie 'episetole, 'ua riri roa ihora 'oia, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, 'ua 'ite pāpū Amorona i tāna iho mau 'ohipa ha'avare ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, 'ua 'ite na Amorona ē, e 'ere i te mea ti'a 'ia fa'atupu 'oia i te 'arora'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 2 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia : Inaha, e'ita roa vau e tauri i te feiā mau-'āuri ia Amorona, maori rā 'ia fa'a'ore 'oia i tāna ra 'ōpuara'a, mai tā'u i fa'a'ite atu i roto i tā'u 'episetole ; 'e e'ita roa ho'i au e fa'ati'a 'ia roa'a rahi atu ā tōna mana, maori rā 'o tei roa'a iāna i teienei.
- 3 Inaha, 'ua 'ite au i te vāhi tā te mau 'āti Lamana e tāpe'a ra i tō'u mau ta'ata 'o tā rātou i rave 'ei feiā mau-'āuri ; 'e nō te mea 'aita Amorona i fa'ati'a i tā'u anira'a i roto i tā'u 'episetole, inaha, e rave au mai te au i tā'u ra mau parau ; 'oia ia, e tītau vau 'ia taparahi ia rātou ē tae roa atu 'ua tītau mai rātou i te hau.
- 4 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Moroni paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia 'imihia i rotopū i tōna ra mau ta'ata, penei a'e 'o te 'itehia mai te hō'ē ta'ata e hua'ai nō Lamana i rotopū ia rātou ra.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'itehia a'era te hō'ē ta'ata, 'o Lamana tōna i'oa ; 'e 'o 'oia te hō'ē o te mau tāvini o te ari'i i taparahihia e 'Amalikia.
- 6 I teienei 'ua fa'aue atu ra Moroni ia Lamana 'e te tahi pae iti o tōna ra mau ta'ata 'ia haere atu i te mau tīa'i 'o tē ha'apa'o ra i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 7 I teienei 'ua tāpe'ahia te mau 'āti Nephi i roto i te 'oire ra nō Gida ; nō reira 'ua mā'iti Moroni ia Lamana 'e te tahi pae iti o tōna ra mau ta'ata 'ia haere rātou nā muri iho iāna.
- 8 'E 'ia pō ihora, 'ua haere atu ra Lamana i te mau tīa'i e ha'apa'o ra i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e inaha, 'ua 'ite mai ra rātou iāna i te haerera'a atu, 'e 'ua tuō mai ra rātou iāna ; 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : 'Eiaha e mata'u ; inaha, e 'āti Lamana vau. Inaha, 'ua ora mai nei mātou mai roto mai i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e tē ta'oto ra rātou ; e inaha ; 'ua rave mātou i tā rātou uaina 'e 'ua hōpoi mai mātou i te reira nā muri ia mātou.

Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

- 9 I teienei 'ia fa'aro'o a'era te mau 'āti Lamana i teie mau parau, 'ua fāri'i mai ra rātou iāna ma te 'oa'oa ; 'e 'ua parau mai ra rātou iāna : 'A hōro'a mai na i tā 'outou uaina, 'ia inu mātou ; 'ua māuruuru mātou i te mea 'ua hōpoi mai 'outou i te uaina 'e 'ua rohirohi ho'i mātou.
- 10 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra Lamana ia rātou : E vāiho noa tātou i tā tātou uaina ē tae roa atu 'ua haere atu tātou e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi. 'Ua fa'arahi atu rā teie parau i tō rātou hina'aro 'ia inu i te uaina.
- 11 'E 'ua parau mai ra rātou : 'Ua rohirohi tātou, nō reira 'ia inu tātou i te uaina, e'ita e maoro e roa'a fa'ahou ia tātou te uaina nō tā tātou tufa'a, 'e nā te reira e ha'apūai ia tātou 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 12 'E 'ua parau atu ra Lamana ia rātou : 'A rave mai te au i tō 'outou mau hina'aro.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua inu noa ihora rātou i te uaina ; 'e e mea au roa ho'i i tō rātou inura'a, nō reira 'ua inu rahi noa rātou ; 'e e mea pūai te reira, 'e 'ua fa'arahi-roa-hia ho'i tōna pūai.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua inu rātou 'e 'ua 'ārearea, 'e 'aita i maoro 'ua ta'ero roa ihora rātou pā'āto'a.
- 15 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Lamana 'e tōna mau ta'ata ē 'ua ta'ero rātou pā'āto'a, 'e 'ua ro'ohia ho'i i te ta'oto rahi, 'ua ho'i mai ra rātou ia Moroni ra 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra iāna i te mau mea ato'a i tupu.
- 16 'E i teienei, 'ua au te reira i tā Moroni 'ōpuara'a. 'E 'ua fa'aineine Moroni i tōna mau ta'ata i te mau mauha'a tama'i ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te 'oire ra nō Gida, 'a ro'ohia ai te mau 'āti Lamana i te ta'oto rahi 'e te ta'ero ho'i, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu i te mau mauha'a tama'i i te feiā mau-'āuri, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fāri'i rātou pā'āto'a i te mau mauha'a tama'i.
- 17 'Oia iā, 'e tae noa atu i tā rātou mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i pā'āto'a 'o tei ti'a 'ia fa'a'ohipa i te mauha'a tama'i, i te taime 'a hōro'a atu ai Moroni i te mauha'a tama'i i te feiā mau-'āuri pā'āto'a ; 'e 'ua ravehia taua mau mea ato'a ra ma te māniania 'ore.
- 18 'Āre'a rā 'āhiri rātou i fa'aara i te mau 'āti Lamana, inaha 'ua ta'ero rātou 'e 'ua ti'a i te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia taparahi ia rātou.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, inso-much that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

- 19 Inaha rā, e 'ere te reira i tō Moroni hina'aro ; 'aita ho'i 'oia i 'oa'oa i te taparahi i te ta'ata 'e 'aore rā i te ha'amani'i toto, 'ua 'oa'oa rā 'oia i te fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata i te pohe ; 'e nō teie tumu 'aita 'oia i fa'atae mai i te parauti'a 'ore i ni'a iāna, 'aita ato'a ho'i 'oia i haere atu e taparahi i te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i tō rātou ta'ero.
- 20 'Āre'a rā 'ua manuia tōna mau hina'aro ; 'ua hōro'a 'oia i te mau mauha'a tama'i i te feiā mau-'āuri o te mau 'āti Nephi 'o tei tāpe'ahia i roto i te 'āua o te 'oire, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu 'oia i te mana ia rātou 'ia haru i taua mau tufa'a i roto i te mau 'āua.
- 21 'E i reira 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia fa'aātea 'ē ri'i atu ia rātou, 'e 'ia ha'a'ati i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 22 I teienei, inaha, 'ua ravehia teie i te taime pō, 'e 'ia ara a'era te mau 'āti Lamana i te po'ipo'i, 'ua 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou e te mau 'āti Nephi i rāpae mai, 'e 'ua fāri'i tā rātou feiā mau-'āuri i roto mai i te mauha'a tama'i.
- 23 'E nō reira 'ua 'ite ihora rātou ē, e mana tō te mau 'āti Nephi i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e i roto i taua mau 'ati ra, 'ua 'ite ihora rātou ē, e mea faufa'a 'ore 'ia tama'i atu i te mau 'āti Nephi ; nō reira 'ua tītau atu tō rātou mau ra'atira rahi 'ia hōpoiha mai tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'ua hōpoi mai rātou i te reira 'e 'ua huri mai ra i te pae 'āvae o te mau 'āti Nephi, ma te ani mai 'ia aroha atu ia rātou.
- 24 I teienei, inaha, 'o teie te hina'aro o Moroni. 'Ua rave ihora 'oia ia rātou 'ei feiā mau-'āuri tau tama'i, 'e 'ua rave ato'a ho'i i taua 'oire ra, 'e 'ua fa'ati'amā ihora i te feiā mau-'āuri 'āti Nephi pā'āto'a ; 'e 'ua 'āmui mai ra rātou i roto i te nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni, 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei pūai rahi nō tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau.
- 25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i te mau 'āti Lamana 'o tāna i rave mai 'ei feiā mau-'āuri, 'ia ha'amata rātou i te rave i te 'ohipa nō te fa'a'eta'eta i te mau pā pa'ari ē 'ati noa a'e te 'oire ra nō Gida.
- 26 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i te ha'apa'ari i te 'oire ra nō Gida, mai te au i tōna ra mau hina'aro, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia arata'ihia tāna feiā mau-'āuri i te 'oire ra nō 'Auhune ; 'e 'ua pārunu ato'a 'oia i taua 'oire ra i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau pūai roa.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira rātou, noa atu ā te mau 'ohipa ha'avarevare a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua tāpe'a 'e 'ua pāroru rātou i te feiā mau-'āuri ato'a 'o tā rātou i rave mai, 'e 'ua tāpe'a noa ato'a rātou i te mau fenua ato'a 'e te mau mea ato'a ho'i i roa'a ia rātou ra.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora te mau 'āti Nephi i te upo'oti'a, 'e i te fāri'i fa'ahou i tō rātou ti'amāra'a 'e te mau mea e maita'i ai rātou.

29 E rave rahi taime 'ua tāmata te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia ha'a'ati ia rātou i te pō, 'āre'a rā i roto i teie mau tāmatarā'a, e rave rahi fa'ahou ā tō rātou i riro mai 'ei feiā mau-'āuri.

30 'E e rave rahi taime 'ua tāmata rātou 'ia fa'ainu i te mau 'āti Nephi i tā rātou uaina, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'apohe ia rātou i te mea ta'ero 'e 'aore rā 'ia fa'ata'erohia i te 'ava.

31 Inaha rā, 'aita roa te mau 'āti Nephi i tō'aru'aru i te ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua i roto i tō rātou taime ati. 'Aita roa rātou i topa i roto i tā rātou mau mārei ; 'oia ia, 'aita rātou e inu i tā rātou uaina, maori rā 'ua hōro'a rātou i te tahi nā mua i te feiā mau-'āuri 'āti Lamana.

32 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te hi'o māite 'ia 'ore te hō'ē mea ta'ero 'ia fa'ainuhia ia rātou ; 'i te mea ho'i, mai te mea e fa'ata'ero tā rātou uaina i te hō'ē ta'ata 'āti Lamana, e fa'ata'ero ato'a ia te reira i te hō'ē ta'ata 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te hi'opo'a i tā rātou mau huru 'ava ato'a.

33 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, e mea ti'a roa ia Moroni 'ia fa'aaineine nō te haru i te 'oire ra nō Morianetona ; inaha ho'i, nā roto i tā rātou iho mau 'ohipa, 'ua ha'apa'ari te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'oire ra nō Morianetona ē tae noa atu 'ua riro te reira 'ei ha'apūra'a pa'ari roa.

34 'E 'ua tāmāu noa rātou i te 'āfa'i mai i te feiā tama'i 'āpī i roto i taua 'oire ra, 'e i te mau mā'a 'āpī ato'a ho'i.

35 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alama 56

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, i te piti o te mahana nō te 'āva'e mātāmua, 'ua fāri'i Moroni te hō'ē 'episetole nō 'ō mai ia Helamana ra, ma te fa'a'ite mai i te huru o te mau 'ohipa a te mau ta'ata i taua tufa'a fenua ra.
- 2 'E 'o teie te mau parau tāna i pāpa'i, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E tō'u taea'e here-rahi-hia, e Moroni, tō'u taea'e i te Fatu 'e i roto te mau 'ati nō tā tātou mau 'arora'a ; inaha, e tō'u taea'e herehia, e parau ri'i tā'u e fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe nō ni'a i tā mātou mau 'arora'a i teie pae nō te fenua.
- 3 Inaha, tē vai nei e piti tauatini mau tamari'i tamāroa a taua mau ta'ata ra tei arata'ihia mai e Amona mai te fenua mai ra o Nephi—i teienei 'ua 'ite na ho'i 'oe ē, e mau hua'ai teie nō Lamana, te tamaiti matahiapo a tō tātou metua tāne ra 'o Lehi.
- 4 I teienei 'aita e faufa'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe i tā rātou mau peu tumu 'e tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore, 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe i taua mau mea nei—
- 5 Nō reira, 'ua nava'i noa iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'oe ē, 'ua rave teie feiā 'āpī tāne e piti tauatini i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'ua hina'aro ho'i rātou iā'u 'ia riro 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō rātou ; 'e 'ua haere mai mātou nō te pāruru i tō tātou fenua.
- 6 'E i teienei 'ua 'ite ato'a 'oe i te fafaura'a i fafauhia 'e tō rātou mau metua, 'oia ho'i e'ita rātou e rave fa'ahou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e nō te ha'amani'i i te toto.
- 7 'Āre'a rā i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'a 'ite ai rātou i tō tātou mau 'ati 'e tō tātou mau ahoaho nō rātou, 'ua fātata roa rātou i te 'ōfati i te fafaura'a tā rātou i fafau 'e 'ia rave i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te pāruru ia tātou.
- 8 'Āre'a rā 'aita vau i fa'ati'a ia rātou 'ia 'ōfati i teie fafaura'a 'o tā rātou i fafau, i ti'aturi ho'i au e ha'apūai mai te Atua ia tātou nei, 'e nō reira ho'i e 'ore roa tātou e māuiui rahi atu ā nō te ha'apa'ora'a rātou i te tapu 'o tā rātou i tapu.

Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

- 9 Inaha rā, teie te hō'ē mea e 'oa'oa rahi ai tātou. Inaha ho'i, i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'ua arata'i atu vau, 'o Helamana, i teie feiā 'āpī tāne e piti tauatini i te 'oire ra nō Iudea, nō te tauturu ia Anitipusa, 'o tā 'oe i fa'ata'a 'ei ta'ata fa'atere i ni'a a'e i te mau ta'ata nō taua pae o te fenua ra.
- 10 'E 'ua 'āmui atu vau i tā'u mau tamaiti e piti tauatini, (ua au ho'i 'ia parauhia rātou e mau tamaiti) i te nu'u fa'ehau o Anitipusa, 'e 'ua oaoa roa Anitipusa nō teie ha'apūaira'a ; inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'aitihia tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau 'e te mau 'āti Lamana nō te mea 'ua taparahi tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i tō mātou mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e nō te reira 'ua 'oto mātou.
- 11 'Āre'a rā, 'ua ti'a ia tātou ia tāmāhanahana ia tātou iho i te mea ē, 'ua pohe rātou nō te aroha i tō rātou ra fenua 'e nō tō rātou Atua, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa rātou.
- 12 'E 'ua tāpe'a noa ato'a ho'i te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi feiā mau-'āuri, 'e e mau ra'atira rahi ana'e rātou, 'e 'aita roa rātou i fa'aora noa ia vetahi 'ē atu. 'E tē mana'o nei mātou ē, tei te fenua ra nō Nephi rātou i teienei ā ; 'o te reira ia mai te mea 'aita rātou i taparahihia.
- 13 'E i teienei o teie te mau 'oire tei roa'a i te mau 'āti Lamana nā roto i te ha'amani'ira'a i te toto o tō mātou mau ta'ata mata'u 'ore e rave rahi :
- 14 Te fenua ra nō Maniti, 'oia ho'i, te 'oire ra nō Maniti, te 'oire ra nō Zeezeroma, te 'oire ra nō Kumeni, 'e te 'oire ra nō Anetipara.
- 15 'E 'o teie te mau 'oire tei roa'a ia rātou 'a tae atu ai au i te 'oire ra nō Iudea ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau ia Anitipusa 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata i te 'ohipara'a ma tō rātou pūai ato'a nō te ha'apa'ari i te 'oire.
- 16 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua teimaha rātou i te tino 'e te vārua ato'a ho'i, 'e 'ua tama'i pūai rātou i te ao 'e 'ua 'ohipa pūai i te pō nō te tāpe'a noa i tō rātou mau 'oire ; 'e 'ua nā reira ho'i rātou i te fa'a'oroma'i i te mau huru 'ati rahi ato'a ra.
- 17 'E i teienei 'ua 'ōpua pāpū rātou 'ia upo'oti'a i taua vāhi ra 'e 'aore rā 'ia pohe ; nō reira e ti'a iho ā ia ia 'oe 'ia mana'o ē, nā teie nu'u fa'ehau iti tā'u i arata'i mai nā muri iā'u, 'oia ia, teie mau tamaiti nā'u ra, i fa'aitoito rahi ia rātou 'e i fa'a'oa'oa rahi ia rātou.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'ua fāri'i Anitipusa i te pūai rahi nō tāna nu'u fa'ehau, 'ua fa'auehia rātou e te mau parau a Amorona, 'eiaha rātou e haere mai e 'aro i te 'oire ra nō Iudea, 'oia ho'i ia mātou.
- 19 'E 'ua nā-reira-hia mātou i te arohahia e te Fatu ; 'e 'āhiri ho'i rātou i 'aro mai ia mātou i tō mātou vai-paruparu-ra'a, 'ua ha'amou paha ia rātou i tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau iti ; 'ua nā-reira-hia rā mātou i te fa'aorahia.
- 20 'Ua fa'auehia ho'i rātou e Amorona 'ia tāpe'a noa i taua mau 'oire i roa'a mai ia rātou. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti. 'E 'ia tae a'era i te ha'amatarā'a nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti 'ua fa'aîneine mātou i tō mātou 'oire 'e ia mātou ato'a iho nō te pāroru atu.
- 21 I teienei 'ua hina'aro mātou 'ia haere mai te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro ia mātou ; 'e 'aita roa mātou i hina'aro 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonu atu mātou i te mau ta'ata tāmoe ē 'ati noa a'e, nō te tāmoe i te mau haere'a o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haere nā tō mātou vāhi i te pō 'e 'aore rā i te ao, nō te 'aro atu i te tahi atu o tō tātou mau 'oire i te pae apato'erau.
- 23 'Ua 'ite ho'i mātou ē, e 'ere taua mau 'oire ra i te mea pūai roa nō te 'aro atu ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua hina'aro mātou ē mai te mea e haere mai rātou nā tō mātou vāhi, e 'aro atu ia mātou ia rātou nā muri atu, 'e nō reira e 'arohia atu rātou nā muri atu 'e i taua ato'a ihora taime e 'arohia mai rātou nā mua mai. 'Ua mana'o mātou ē, e ti'a ia mātou 'ia ha'avī ia rātou ; inaha rā, 'ua māere roa mātou i roto i tō mātou nei hina'aro.
- 24 'Ua mata'u rātou 'ia haere mai nā tō mātou nei vāhi 'e tō rātou nu'u fa'ehau tā'āto'a, 'e 'ua mata'u ato'a rātou 'ia 'āfa'i mai i te tahi pae, 'o te 'ore e nava'i tō rātou pūai 'e 'o te mou atu rātou.
- 25 'Ua mata'u ato'a rātou 'ia haere atu e 'aro i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemla ; 'e 'ua mata'u ato'a ho'i rātou 'ia haere atu i te tahi pae mai nō te ha'amatarā'a o te 'ānāvai ra Sidona, ē tae atu ai i te 'oire ra nō Nephihā.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

26 'E nō reira, ma tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ua 'ōpua pāpū rātou 'ia tāpe'a noa i taua mau 'oire i noa'a mai ia rātou.

27 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i te piti o te 'āva'e o taua matahiti ra, 'ua 'āfa'ihia mai ia mātou te mau mā'a e rave rahi nō 'ō mai i te mau metua o taua mau tamaiti e piti tauatini ra.

28 'E 'oia ato'a 'ua tonohia mai e piti tauatini ta'ata ia mātou ra nō te fenua mai ra o Zarahemela. 'E nō reira 'ua ineine mātou 'e tō mātou mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini, 'e te mau huru mā'a nā rātou, 'e nā tā rātou ato'a mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i.

29 'E 'ia 'itea a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē tē rahi noa atu ra tō mātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana, 'e tē tae mai ra te mau huru mā'a ato'a nō te tauturu ia mātou, 'ua mata'u ihora rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te haere 'oi'oi mai nō te 'aro mai, penei a'e 'o te tāpe'a te reira i te mau mā'a 'e te pūai 'o tā mātou e fāri'i ra.

30 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era mātou ē tē tupu ra tō te mau 'āti Lamana tapitapi i te reira, 'ua hina'aro ihora mātou 'ia fa'atupu i te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a nō te rāmā ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua fa'ae mai Anitipusa 'ia haere atu vau 'e tā'u mau tamaiti iti i te hō'ē 'oire tāpiri mai, ma te fa'ahua ē tē hōpoi ra mātou i te mā'a i te 'oire tāpiri mai.

31 'E 'ia haere atu mātou nā pīha'i iho i te 'oire ra nō Anetipara, ma te fa'ahua ē tē haere ra mātou i te tahi atu 'oire, i te mau fenua i te hiti nō te pae miti.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra mātou ma te fa'ahua ē tē hōpoi ra mātou i te mā'a, i taua 'oire ra.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Anitipusa 'e te tahi pae o tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau, ma te vaiiho atu i te tahi pae nō te tāpe'a noa i te 'oire. 'Āre'a rā 'aita 'oia i haere mai, ē tae roa atu 'ua fātata atu tō'u ra nu'u fa'ehau iti i te 'oire ra nō Anetipara.

34 'E i teienei, i roto i te 'oire ra nō Anetipara 'ua tu'uhia te nu'u fa'ehau pūai roa a'e o te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'oia ia, te mea rahi roa atu.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'a'itehia te reira ia rātou e tō rātou mau ta'ata hi'ohi'o, 'ua haere mai ra rātou 'e tō rātou nu'u fa'ehau nō te 'aro ia mātou.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra mātou i te pae apato'erau mai mua atu ia rātou. 'E 'ua nā reira ho'i mātou i te arata'i 'ē atu i te nu'u fa'ehau pūai roa o te mau 'āti Lamana.

37 'Oia ia, e tae atu i te vāhi ātea roa, 'e nō reira ho'i i tō rātou 'itera'a atu i te nu'u fa'ehau o Anitipusa i te tāpapara'a mai ia rātou, ma tō rātou pūai ato'a, 'aita rātou i tīpu'u i te pae 'atau 'e 'aita ato'a i te pae 'aui, 'ua tāpapa 'āfaro noa mai rātou nā muri ia mātou ; 'e 'ua mana'o mātou, tē 'ōpua ra rātou 'ia taparahi ia mātou hou rātou e roa'ahia mai ai e Anitipusa, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i rātou 'ia ha'a'atihia 'e tō mātou ra mau ta'ata.

38 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Anitipusa i tō mātou fifi, 'ua fa'a'oi'oi mai ra 'oia i te haerera'a mai o tōna nu'u fa'ehau. Inaha rā, 'ua tae mai te pō, nō reira 'aita mātou i roa'ahia ia rātou, 'e 'aita ato'a rātou i roa'ahia ia Anitipusa ; nō reira 'ua fa'ati'a ihora mātou i tō mātou ti'ahapa i taua pō ra.

39 'E i muri a'era, i te 'ā'ahiata roa nō taua po'ipo'i ra, inaha, 'ua tāpapa mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia mātou. I teienei 'aita roa i nava'i tō mātou pūai nō te 'aro atu ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'aita roa vau i hina'aro 'ia ma'iri atu tā'u mau tamaiti 'āpī i roto i tō rātou rima ; nō reira 'ua tāmāu noa mātou i tō mātou haere'a, 'e 'ua haere atu mātou i roto i te mēdēbara.

40 I teienei 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia tīpu'u i te pae 'atau 'e i te pae 'aui 'o te ha'a'atihia rātou ; 'e 'aita ato'a vau i tīpu'u i te pae 'atau 'e i te pae 'aui 'o te roa'ahia mātou ia rātou, 'e 'aita ho'i e ti'a ia mātou 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou, nō te mea e taparahihia mātou 'e e ora atu rātou ; 'e 'ua nā reira atu ra mātou i te horo atu i taua mahana ato'a ra i roto i te mēdēbara, ē tae noa atu 'ua pōiri.

41 'E i muri a'era, teie fa'ahou ā, 'ia hiti mai ra te māmarama o te po'ipo'i 'ua 'ite atu ra mātou i te mau 'āti Lamana i te ha'afātātara'a mai ia mātou, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra mātou mai mua atu ia rātou.

42 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, 'aita rātou i tāpapa ātea mai ia mātou 'e 'ua fa'aea ihora ; 'e 'o te po'ipo'i teie nō te toru o te mahana nō te hitu o te 'āva'e.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

43 'E i teienei, 'aita mātou i 'ite ē 'ua roa'ahia ānei
rātou ia Anitipusa, 'āre'a rā 'ua parau atu ra vau i tō'u
mau ta'ata : Inaha, 'aita tātou i 'ite ē 'ua fa'aea ānei
rātou 'ei 'ōpuara'a 'ia haere atu tātou e 'aro ia rātou,
'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia haru ia tātou i roto i tā rātou mārei.

44 Nō reira, e aha tā 'outou parau, e tā'u mau tamaiti,
e haere ānei 'outou e 'aro atu ia rātou ?

45 'E tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, e tō'u taea'e herehia e
Moroni, 'aita ā vau i 'ite atu ra i te itoito rahi mai te
reira, 'aita, 'aita roa i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi ato'a.

46 Mai tā'u ho'i i pi'i ia rātou e mau tamaiti nā'u (e
mea 'āpī roa ho'i rātou pā'āto'a) 'oia ato'a 'ua parau
mai rātou iā'u : 'E tō mātou metua, inaha, tei pīha'i
iho tō tātou Atua ia tātou, 'e e'ita roa 'oia e vaiiho ia
tātou 'ia ma'iri ; haere ana'e ia i mua ; e'ita tātou e
taparahi i tō tātou mau taea'e 'āhiri 'ua vaiiho noa
mai rātou ia tātou, nō reira haere ana'e, 'o te ha'avī
rātou i te nu'u fa'ehau o Anitipusa.

47 I teienei 'aita ā rātou i tama'i, 'aita rā rātou i mata'u
i te pohe ; 'e 'ua feruri rahi atu rātou i te ti'amāra'a o
tō rātou mau metua i tō rātou iho ora ; 'oia ia, 'ua
ha'api'ihia rātou e tō rātou mau metua vahine, 'e mai
te mea 'aita rātou e fē'a'a, e fa'aora te Atua ia rātou.

48 'E 'ua fa'ati'a mai ra rātou iā'u i te mau parau a tō
rātou mau metua vahine, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'Aita
roa mātou i fē'a'a ē 'ua 'ite tō mātou mau metua
vahine i te reira.

49 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i atu vau e tā'u mau tamaiti e
piti tauatini nō te 'aro i teie mau 'āti Lamana 'o tei
a'ua'u noa mai ia mātou. 'E i teienei inaha, 'ua
roa'ahia rātou e te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Anitipusa, 'e
'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē 'arora'a rahi roa.

50 'Ua rohirohi te nu'u fa'ehau o Anitipusa, nō te mea
e mea ātea te vāhi i haerehia mai e rātou i roto i te
hō'ē taime poto, 'e 'ua fātata roa rātou i te ma'iri atu i
roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'āhiri 'aita vau
i ho'i atu e tā'u mau tamaiti e piti tauatini 'ua manuia
tā rātou 'ōpuara'a.

51 'Ua pohe ho'i Anitipusa i te 'o'e 'e tōna ato'a mau
ta'ata fa'atere e rave rahi, nō tō rātou rohirohi i tō
rātou haere-'oi'oi-ra'a—no reira 'ua hepohepo roa te
mau ta'ata o Anitipusa nō te pohe o tō rātou mau
ra'atira rahi, 'e 'ua 'ōtohe rātou mai mua atu i te mau
'āti Lamana.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus
we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we
know not but they have halted for the purpose that
we should come against them, that they might catch
us in their snare;

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against
them to battle?

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother
Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay,
not amongst all the Nephites.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they
were all of them very young) even so they said unto
me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will
not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we
would not slay our brethren if they would let us
alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower
the army of Antipus.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear
death; and they did think more upon the liberty of
their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they
had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not
doubt, God would deliver them.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their
mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew
it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two
thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued
us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had over-
taken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their
long march in so short a space of time, were about to
fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not
returned with my two thousand they would have ob-
tained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of
his leaders, because of their weariness, which was
occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore
the men of Antipus, being confused because of the
fall of their leaders, began to give way before the
Lamanites.

52 'E i muri a'era, 'ua itoito ihora te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te a'ua'u mai ia rātou ; 'e nō reira 'ua a'ua'u pūai mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou 'a 'aro atu ai Helamana 'e tōna mau ta'ata e piti tauatini i te mau ta'ata i muri, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te taparahi pūai atu ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'aea ihora te nu'u fa'ehau pā'āto'a o te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'ua fāriu mai ra nō te 'aro ia Helamana.

53 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata o Anitipusa ē, 'ua fāriu te mau 'āti Lamana i muri, 'ua ha'aputupu ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua haere atu ra nā muri atu i te mau 'āti Lamana.

54 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'a'ati ihora mātou, te mau ta'ata o Nephi, te mau ta'ata o Anitipusa, 'e 'o vau 'e tā'u mau tamaiti e piti tauatini ato'a ho'i, i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua taparahi atu ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i, 'ua ha'avīhia rātou 'ia hōro'a mai i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i 'e ia rātou iho ho'i 'ei feiā mau-'āuri tau tama'i.

55 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i tō rātou tu'ura'a mai ia rātou iho i roto i tō mātou rima, inaha, 'ua tai'o ihora vau i taua feiā 'āpī tāne ra tei 'aro atu nā muri iho iā'u ; nō tō'u mata'u ē 'ua pohe rātou e rave rahi i te taparahihia.

56 Inaha rā, 'ua 'oa'oa roa vau, i te mea ē 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e o rātou i ma'iri i raro i te repo ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'aro rātou mai te mea ra ē, tei roto ia rātou te pūai o te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'aita roa i 'itea na te mau ta'ata pūai rahi māere i te tama'i mai ia rātou ; 'e ma te pūai rahi roa 'ua 'aro atu rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ha'amata'u roa atu ia rātou ; 'e nō reira 'ua hōro'a mai te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou iho 'ei feiā mau-'āuri tau tama'i.

57 'E nō te mea 'aita tā mātou e vāhi nō tā mātou feiā mau-'āuri, 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia tāpe'a ia rātou nō te pārruru ia rātou i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana, nō reira 'ua hōpoi atu ra mātou ia rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e te tahi pae o te mau ta'ata nō Anitipusa 'o tei 'ore i taparahihia nā muri ia rātou ; 'e 'ua rave ihora vau i te toe'a 'e 'ua 'āmui atu ra ia rātou i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'āpī nō te mau 'āti Amona, 'e 'ua ho'i atu ra mātou i te 'oire ra nō Iudea.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

Alama 57

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua fāri'i au i te hō'ē 'episetole nō 'ō mai i te ari'i ra ia Amorona, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, mai te mea e tu'u atu vau i te feiā mau-'āuri tau tama'i i haruhia mai e mātou i roto i te 'arora'a, e hōro'a mai ia 'oia i te 'oire ra nō Anetipara ia mātou.
- 2 'Āre'a rā 'ua hāpono atu vau i te hō'ē 'episetole i te ari'i, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē, 'ua 'ite pāpū mātou ē, 'ua nava'i tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau nō te haru mai i te 'oire ra nō Anetipara nā roto i tō mātou pūai ; 'e 'ia tu'u atu mātou i tā mātou feiā mau-'āuri 'ei tau i nō taua 'oire ra, e riro mātou 'ei feiā pa'ari 'ore i tō mātou iho mana'ora'a, 'e 'aita mātou e tu'u atu i tā mātou feiā mau-'āuri, maori rā e tu'u mai rātou i tā rātou 'ei tau i.
- 3 'E 'ua pāto'i mai Amorona i tā'u 'episetole, 'e 'aita ho'i 'oia i hina'aro 'ia tau i te feiā mau-'āuri ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata mātou i te fa'a'ineine nō te haere atu e 'aro i te 'oire ra nō Anetipara.
- 4 'Āre'a rā 'ua fa'aru'e te feiā o Anetipara i te 'oire, 'e 'ua horo atu ra i te tahi atu o tō rātou mau 'oire, 'o tei roa'a ia rātou, nō te ha'apa'ari i te reira ; 'e nō reira 'ua roa'a mai i roto i tō mātou rima te 'oire ra nō Anetipara.
- 5 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a o te piti 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti, 'ua fāri'i mātou i te mā'a 'e te mau ta'ata nō tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau, nō te fenua mai o Zarahemla ; 'e nō te fenua mai ē 'ati noa a'e, 'oia ho'i, e ono tauatini ta'ata, ta'a 'ē noa atu te ono 'ahuru tamari'i tamāroa nō te mau 'āti Amona ra, 'o tei haere mai nō te 'āmui mai i tō rātou mau taea'e, i tā'u pupu fa'ehau iti e piti tauatini. 'E i teienei, inaha, e mea pūai roa mātou, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua rahi te mā'a i hōpoiha mai ia mātou.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hina'aro mātou 'ia 'aro atu i te nu'u fa'ehau i fa'ata'ahia nō te pāruru i te 'oire ra nō Kumeni.
- 8 'E i teienei, inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'oe ē, 'ua 'oi'oi roa tō mātou hina'aro i te manuia ; 'oia ia, ma tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau rahi, 'oia ho'i i te tahi tufa'a nō tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau rahi, 'ua ha'a'ati mātou i te 'oire ra nō Kumeni i te pō, nā mua noa a'e rātou i fāri'i ai i te mā'a.

Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pūhapa ihora mātou ē 'ati noa a'e te 'oire i te mau pō e rave rahi ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ta'oto mātou 'e tā mātou mau 'o'e i pīha'i iho ia mātou, 'e 'ua fa'ata'ahia te mau tīa'i, 'ia 'ore te mau 'āti Lamana e haere mai i ni'a ia mātou i te pō nō te taparahi ia mātou, 'e 'ua tāmata rātou e rave rahi taime ; 'āre'a rā i te mau taime e rave rahi tā rātou i tāmata, 'ua ha'amani'ihia tō rātou toto.

10 Ē maoro a'era, 'ua tae mai ra tā rātou mā'a, 'e tē tomo ra rātou i roto i te 'oire i te pō. 'E 'o mātou nei rā, e 'ere ĩa i te mau 'āti Lamana, e mau 'āti Nephi ; nō reira 'ua rave mai atu ra mātou ia rātou 'e tā rātou mau mā'a.

11 'E noa atu ā 'ua tūpūhia te mau 'āti Lamana i tā rātou tauturura'a mai teie te huru, 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia tāpe'a noa i te 'oire ; nō reira 'ua ti'a roa ia mātou 'ia rave i taua mau mā'a ra 'e 'ia hāpono atu i te reira i Iudea, 'e 'ia tono atu ho'i i tā mātou feiā mau-'āuri i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'aita i rahi te mau mahana i ma'iri i muri, 'ua paruparu a'era tō te mau 'āti Lamana mana'o nō te fāri'i i te tauturura'a ; nō reira 'ua tu'u mai ra rātou i te 'oire i roto i tō mātou rima ; 'e nō reira 'ua manuia a'era tā mātou mau 'ōpuara'a 'ia noa'a mai ia mātou te 'oire ra nō Kumeni.

13 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, 'ua rahi roa tā mātou feiā mau-'āuri, e noa atu ā ho'i te rahi o tō mātou mau ta'ata, 'ua ti'a roa 'ia fa'a'ohipahia tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau tā'āto'a nō te tīa'i ia rātou, 'e 'aore rā nō te taparahi ia rātou.

14 Inaha ho'i, e riro e rave rahi i te ora atu, 'e i te 'aro mai ma te fa'a'ohipa i te mau 'ōfa'i, 'e te mau rā'au tā'iri, 'e te mau mea e ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave i tō rātou rima ; 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua taparahi mātou e piti tauatini ti'ahapa ta'ata i muri iho i tō rātou tu'ura'a mai ia rātou iho 'ei feiā mau-'āuri tau tama'i.

15 Nō reira 'ua tītau-roa-hia ia mātou 'ia taparahi ia rātou ; 'e 'aore rā 'ia tīa'i ia rātou ma te 'o'e i te rima 'a arata'ihia ai rātou i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; 'e 'aita ho'i i nava'i tā mātou mā'a nā tō mātou iho mau ta'ata, ta'a 'ē noa atu ā te mā'a 'o tā mātou i rave mai nō 'ō mai i te mau 'āti Lamana ra.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, in-somuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

16 'E i teienei, i taua mau taime fifi rahi roa ra, 'ua fifi rahi ato'a te mana'o nō ni'a i tā mātou e rave i taua feiā mau-'āuri tau tama'i ra, 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'aoti mātou 'ia arata'i ia rātou i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; nō reira 'ua mā'iti mātou i te tahi pae o tō mātou ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'ariro ia rātou 'ei tīa'i i tā mātou feiā mau-'āuri e arata'ihia ra i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.

17 'Āre'a rā, i muri a'era, 'ia po'ipo'i a'e 'ua ho'i mai ra rātou. 'E i teienei, inaha, 'aita mātou i ui atu ia rātou nō ni'a i te feiā mau-'āuri ; inaha ho'i, 'ua ho'i mai rātou i te taime tano nō te fa'aora ia mātou 'ia 'ore 'ia ma'iri atu i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana 'o tei tae mai i ni'a ia mātou. Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'atae atu Amorronea i te tufa'a mā'a 'āpī nō te tauturu ia rātou, 'e te hō'ē ato'a nu'u ta'ata rahi.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai taua mau ta'ata tā mātou i tonono atu nō te tīa'i i te feiā mau-'āuri ra, i te taime tano, nō te tāpe'a atu ia rātou 'a fātata ai rātou i te ha'avī mai ia mātou.

19 Inaha rā, 'ua 'aro 'ū'ana atu tā'u pupu fa'ehau iti, 'oia ho'i te mau ta'ata e piti tauatini 'e e ono 'ahuru ; 'oia ia, e mea pūai roa rātou i mua i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua taparahi atu ia rātou ato'a 'o tei aro mai ia rātou.

20 'E 'a fātata ai te toe'a o tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau i te 'ōtohe i mua i te mau 'āti Lamana, inaha, 'ua 'aro pūai noa teie mau ta'ata e piti tauatini 'e e ono 'ahuru ma te mata'u 'ore.

21 'Oia ia, 'ua auraro 'e 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i rātou i te mau parau 'e te mau fa'auera'a ato'a ma te hapa 'ore ; 'oia ia, 'e mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o i te ravera'ahia i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ihora vau i te mau parau tā rātou i parau mai iā'u, 'o tā tō rātou mau metua vahine i ha'api'i mai ia rātou.

22 'E i teienei, inaha, nā roto i tā'u mau tamari'i tamāroa nei, 'e taua mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i i mā'itihia nō te arata'i atu i te feiā mau-'āuri, i upo'oti'a ai mātou ; 'e nā rātou ho'i i ha'avī atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira 'ua tūra'ihia atu rātou i muri i te 'oire ra nō Maniti.

23 'E 'ua tāpe'a noa mātou i tō tātou 'oire ra nō Kumeni, 'e 'aita ho'i mātou pā'āto'a i pau roa i te 'o'e ; 'āre'a rā e rave rahi tō mātou i pau.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

- 24 'E i muri a'era, i te horora'a atu te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua hōro'a 'oi'oi atu ra vau i te tahi mau fa'auera'a 'ia ravehia tō'u mau ta'ata i puta mai roto mai i te feiā pohe, 'e 'ia fa'ate'ahia tō rātou ra mau puta.
- 25 'E i muri a'era, tē vai ra e piti hānere ta'ata i roto i tō'u mau ta'ata e piti tauatini 'e e ono 'ahuru 'o tei matapōirihia nō te pau rahi o tō rātou toto ; 'āre'a rā nā roto i te hāmani maita'i o te Atua 'aita roa te hō'ē noa a'e o rātou i pohe ; 'e i tō mātou māere rahi, 'e 'oia ato'a i te 'oa'oa o tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau pā'āto'a, 'oia ia, 'aita ato'a ho'i te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū ia rātou 'o tei 'ore i puta i te mau puta e rave rahi.
- 26 'E i teienei, tō rātou fa'aorara'ahia, e mea māere rahi roa ia i tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau ato'a, 'oia ia, 'ua ora rātou, 'a taparahihia ai tō mātou mau taea'e hō'ē tauatini. 'E 'ua ti'a roa tā mātou parau ē, nō te mana ta'a 'ē o te Atua ia te reira, 'e nō tō rātou fa'aro'o rahi 'ia ti'aturi i tei ha'apī'ihia ia rātou—'oia ho'i, tē vai ra te Atua parauti'a ; 'e 'o rātou 'o tē 'ore e fē'a'a, e fa'aorahia rātou e tōna mana ta'a 'ē.
- 27 I teienei, 'o teie ia te fa'aro'o o rātou 'o tā'u i parau iho nei ; e mea 'āpī rātou, 'e e mea mau pāpū tō rātou mana'o, 'e 'ua tu'u tāmāu noa rātou i tō rātou ti'aturira'a i ni'a i te Atua.
- 28 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā mātou utuutura'a i tō mātou mau ta'ata i puta, 'e te hunara'a i tō mātou feiā pohe 'e te feiā pohe ato'a o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e rave rahi ho'i rātou, inaha, 'ua ui atu ra mātou ia Gida i te parau nō ni'a te feiā mau-'āuri tā rātou i ha'amata i te arata'i atu i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.
- 29 I teienei, 'o Gida te ra'atira rahi i ni'a i te pupu fa'ehau i mā'itihia nō te tīa'i ia rātou 'a arata'ihia ai rātou i taua fenua ra.
- 30 'E i teienei, teie te mau parau tā Gida i parau mai iā'u : Inaha, 'ua ha'amata mātou i te haere i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela 'e te feiā mau-'āuri. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fārerei a'era mātou i te mau ta'ata tāmōemoe o tō tātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'o tei tonohia atu nō te hi'o i te pūhapara'a o te mau 'āti Lamana.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

- 31 'E 'ua pi'i mai ra rātou ia mātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
Inaha, tē haere ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti
Lamana i te 'oire ra nō Kumeni ; 'e inaha, e 'aro atu
rātou i tō Kumeni, 'oia ia, e ha'amou i tō tātou mau
ta'ata.
- 32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aro'o ihora tā mātou feiā
mau-'āuri i tā rātou pi'ira'a, 'e 'ua fa'atupu te reira i
tō rātou itoito ; 'e 'ua 'ōrure mai ra rātou ia mātou.
- 33 'E i muri a'era, nō tō rātou 'ōrurera'a 'ua tā'iri
mātou ia rātou i tā mātou mau 'o'e. 'E i muri a'era,
'ua horo pupu noa mai ra rātou i ni'a i tā mātou mau
'o'e, 'e 'ua taparahihia ihora te pae rahi o rātou ; 'e
'ua ora atu ra te toe'a 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu mai roto atu ia
mātou.
- 34 'E inaha, i tō rātou horo-'ē-ra'a atu 'e 'aita rātou i
roa'ahia ia mātou, 'ua haere 'oi'oi mai ra mātou i te
'oire nō Kumeni ; 'e inaha, 'ua tae mai mātou i te
taime tano i ti'a ai ia mātou 'ia tauturu i tō tātou mau
taea'e 'ia pāruru noa i te 'oire.
- 35 'E inaha, 'ua ora fa'ahou tātou i te rima o tō tātou
mau 'enemi. 'E 'ia ha'amaita'ihia te i'oa o tātou Atua ;
inaha ho'i, nāna i fa'aora ia tātou ; 'oia ia, nāna i rave
i teie mea rahi nō tātou.
- 36 I teienei, i muri a'era, i to'u, 'o Helamana,
fa'aro'ora'a i teie mau parau a Gida, 'ua 'ī roa a'era
vau i te 'oa'oa rahi nō tō te Atua hāmani maita'i i te
fa'aorara'a ia mātou, 'ia 'ore mātou 'ia pohe ; 'oia ia,
'e tē ti'aturi nei au ē, 'ua ō atu te mau vārua 'o tei
taparahihia i roto i te fa'aeara'a o tō rātou ra Atua.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the
armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the
city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them,
yea, and will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear
their cries, which caused them to take courage; and
they did rise up in rebellion against us.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we
did cause that our swords should come upon them.
And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon
our swords, in the which, the greater number of
them were slain; and the remainder of them broke
through and fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not
overtake them, we took our march with speed to-
wards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in
time that we might assist our brethren in preserving
the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the
hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our
God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea,
that has done this great thing for us.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had
heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding
joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us,
that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the
souls of them who have been slain have entered into
the rest of their God.

Alama 58

- 1 'E inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, tā mātou 'ōpuara'a i muri iho 'o te rave mai ia i te 'oire ra nō Maniti ; inaha rā, 'aita roa tā mātou e rāve'a nō te arata'i ia rātou i rāpae i taua 'oire ra nā roto i tā mātou mau pupu fa'ehau iti. Inaha ho'i, 'ua ha'amana'o rātou i tā mātou i rave na ; nō reira 'aita roa e ti'a ia mātou 'ia rāmā atu ia rātou 'ia haere i rāpae i tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari.
- 2 'E e mea rahi roa atu rātou i tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau iti, 'e nō reira 'ua mata'u mātou 'ia haere atu e 'aro ia rātou i roto i tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari.
- 3 'Oia ia, e mea tītāu-roa-hia ia mātou 'ia fa'a'ohipa i tō mātou mau ta'ata nō te ha'apa'o i taua mau tufa'a nō te fenua i roa'a mai 'ei 'āi'a nō mātou ; nō reira e mea ti'a roa ia mātou ia tīa'i i te tau e fāri'i ai mātou i te tahi atu ā mau nu'u fa'ehau nō te fenua Zarahemela mai 'e te tautura'a ato'a nō te pae mā'a.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonu atu ra vau i te hō'ē ve'a i te tāvana o tō tātou fenua nō te fa'a'ite atu iāna i te huru o te mau 'ohipa nō ni'a i tō mātou mau ta'ata. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tīa'i mātou nō te fāri'i i te mā'a 'e te nu'u fa'ehau nō te fenua mai o Zarahemela.
- 5 Inaha rā, e 'ere te reira i te mea faufa'a rahi roa nō mātou ; nō te mea 'ua fāri'i ato'a te mau 'āti Lamana i te nu'u fa'ehau i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana, 'e i te mau mā'a e rave rahi ; 'e te reira ia tō mātou huru i taua taime ra.
- 6 'E tē aro mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia mātou i terā taime 'e i terā taime, ma te 'ōpua 'ia ha'amou ia mātou nā roto i tā rātou rāmāra'a ; 'aita rā i ti'a ia mātou 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou, nō te pa'ari o tō rātou mau vāhi tāpunira'a 'e tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pārahi noa mātou i roto i taua mau huru 'ati ra nō te ārea e rave rahi 'āva'e te maoro, ē tae noa atu 'ua fātata roa mātou i te pohe nō te mā'a 'ore.
- 8 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, 'ua fāri'i mātou i te mā'a 'o tei hōpoiha mai e te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau, e piti tauatini ta'ata, nō te tauturu ia mātou ; 'e 'o teie ana'e te tauturura'a tā mātou i fāri'i, nō te pārruru ia mātou iho 'e tō tātou fenua, 'ia 'ore 'ia mā'iri atu i roto i te rima o tō tātou mau 'enemi ; 'oia ia, nō te 'aro atu i te 'enemi 'o tē 'ore e hope 'ia tai'o.

Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

- 9 'E i teienei, te tumu nō tō mātou mau fifi, 'oia ho'i te tumu 'aita rātou i fa'atae mai i te tahi atu ā nu'u fa'ehau, 'aita roa ia mātou i 'ite ; nō reira 'ua 'oto roa mātou 'e 'ua mata'u ho'i 'o te tae mai te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua i ni'a iho i tō tātou fenua, nō te ha'avī 'e nō te ha'amou roa ho'i ia tātou.
- 10 Nō reira 'ua pure atu ra mātou i te Atua ma tō mātou 'ā'au ato'a, 'ia ha'apūai mai 'e 'ia fa'aora mai ho'i 'oia ia mātou i te rima o tō tātou mau 'enemi ; 'oia ia, 'ia hōro'a mai 'oia i te pūai 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia tāpe'a noa i tō tātou mau 'oire, e tō tātou mau fenua, e tā tātou mau tao'a, nō te pāturu i tō tātou mau ta'ata.
- 11 'Oia ia, 'e i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai ra te Fatu tō tātou Atua ē, e fa'aora 'oia ia mātou ; 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua parau mai ra 'oia i te parau hau i tō mātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te fa'aro'o rahi ia mātou, 'e 'ua fa'aitoito mai ra 'oia ia mātou 'ia ti'aturi iāna nō tō mātou fa'aorara'a.
- 12 'E 'ua fāri'i mātou i te itoito nō te nu'u fa'ehau iti i roa'a ia mātou, 'e 'ua 'ōpua pāpū ho'i mātou 'ia ha'avī i tō tātou mau 'enemi, 'e 'ia tāpe'a noa i tō tātou mau fenua, 'e tā tātou mau tao'a, 'e tā tātou mau vahine, 'e tā tātou mau tamari'i, 'e te tumu nō tō tātou ti'amāra'a.
- 13 'E 'ua nā reira mātou i te haere i mua ma tō mātou pūai ato'a nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o tei pārahi i roto i te 'oire ra nō Maniti ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa i te pae mēdēbara, fātata atu i te 'oire.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ia 'ite mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ē, tē pārahi ra mātou i te mau fenua i te hiti nō te mēdēbara, fātata atu i te 'oire, 'ua tono mai ra rātou i tō rātou mau ta'ata tāmoemoe ē 'ati noa a'e ia mātou, 'ia 'ite rātou i te rahi 'e te pūai ho'i o tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, e 'ere mātou i te mea pūai, 'ia au i tō mātou rahira'a, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua mata'u rātou 'o te tāpe'a mātou i te taturura'a tā rātou e fāri'i ra, maori rā 'ia haere mai rātou e 'aro ia mātou 'e 'ia taparahi ia mātou ; 'e nō tō rātou ho'i mana'ora'a ē, e mea 'ōhie ia rātou 'ia taparahi ia mātou nō te rahi o tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, nō reira 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te fa'aineine nō te haere mai e 'aro ia mātou.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

- 16 'E 'ia 'ite a'era mātou ē, tē fa'aineine ra rātou nō te haere mai e 'aro mai ia mātou, inaha, 'ua fa'aeu atu ra vau ia Gida 'e te tahi pupu ta'ata iti 'ia tāpuni iāna iho i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ia Teomenera ato'a 'e te tahi pupu ta'ata iti 'ia tāpuni ato'a ia rātou iho i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 17 I teienei, tei te pae 'atau Gida 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e tei te pae 'aui te tahi pae ; 'e 'ia tāpuni a'era rātou ia rātou iho, inaha, tē pārahi ra vau 'e te toe'a o tō'u ra nu'u fa'ehau i taua iho vāhi tā mātou i fa'ati'a mātāmua i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa, nō te fa'aineine i te taime e haere mai ai te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro mai ia mātou.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana 'e tō rātou nu'u fa'ehau rahi nō te 'aro mai ia mātou. 'E 'ua tae mai ra rātou 'e 'ua fātata ho'i i te taparahi ia mātou i te 'o'e, 'ua fa'aeu atu ra vau i tō'u mau ta'ata, 'o rātou 'o tei fa'aea mai i pīha'i iho iā'u, 'ia 'ōtohe atu i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana ia mātou ma te 'oi'oi rahi, 'e 'ua hina'aro roa rātou 'ia roa'ahia mātou 'e 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia taparahi ia mātou ; nō reira 'ua a'ua'u mai rātou ia mātou i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'e 'ua haere atu mātou nā rōpū ia Gida 'e Teomenera, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita roa rātou i 'itehia e te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ia mahemo ri'i a'era te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'aore rā ia mahemo ri'i a'era te nu'u fa'ehau, 'ua ti'a a'era Gida 'e Teomenera mai tō rāua mau vāhi tāpunira'a, 'e 'ua tāpe'a ihora i te mau ta'ata tāmoe o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ho'i atu i te 'oire.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho tō rātou tāpe'ara'a ia rātou, 'ua horo atu ra rātou i te 'oire 'e 'ua taparahi ihora i te mau ti'a'i i vaiihohia nō te ti'a'i i te 'oire, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua taparahi ihora rātou ia rātou 'e 'ua haru ihora i taua 'oire.
- 22 I teienei 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te mea 'ua fa'ati'a te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia arata'ihia tō rātou nu'u fa'ehau pā'ato'a i roto i te mēdēbara, maori rā te tahi noa mau ti'a'i.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, inasmuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

23 'E i muri a'era, nā roto i te reira 'ua roa'a ia Gida 'e ia Teomenera tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari. 'E i muri a'era, 'ia maoro a'era tō mātou haerera'a i roto i te mēdēbara, 'ua ha'amata ihora mātou i te haere i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.

24 'E 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, tē haere ti'a ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'ua mata'u roa ihora rātou, penei a'e tē vai ra te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a i mana'ohia nō te ha'amou ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te 'ōtohe fa'ahou i roto i te mēdēbara, 'oia ia, nā ni'a i taua iho 'ē'a tā rātou i haere mai.

25 'E inaha, 'ua pō 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa, 'e 'ua mana'o ho'i te mau ra'atira rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana ē, 'ua rohirohi te mau 'āti Nephi nō tō rātou haerera'a ; 'e nō tō rātou ho'i mana'ora'a ē, 'ua tīahi 'ē atu rātou i tō rātou nu'u fa'ehau tā'āto'a, nō reira 'aita atu ra rātou i feruri nō ni'a i te 'oire ra nō Maniti.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae mai te pō, 'ua fa'aue atu ra vau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'eiaha rātou e ta'oto, 'āre'a rā 'ia haere rātou nā te tahi 'ē'a 'ē atu e tae atu ai i te 'oire ra nō Maniti.

27 'E nō tō mātou haerera'a i te pō, inaha, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua tae mai mātou i teie pae o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tae mātou nā mua ia rātou i te 'oire ra nō Maniti.

28 'E nō reira, i muri a'era, nā roto i taua rāve'a 'aravihi ra 'ua roa'a mai ia mātou te 'oire ra nō Maniti ma te ha'amani'i 'ore i te toto.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fātata mai ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'oire, 'e 'ia 'ite mai ra ho'i ē 'ua ineine mātou nō te 'aro atu ia rātou, 'ua māere roa ihora rātou 'e 'ua ro'ohia ihora rātou i te mata'u rahi, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou i roto i te mēdēbara.

30 'Oia ia, i muri a'era, 'ua horo 'ē atu ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i rāpae i taua pae fenua ato'a ra. Inaha rā, 'ua hōpoi atu ra rātou i te mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i e rave rahi i rāpae i taua fenua ra.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

- 31 'E taua mau 'oire ra i haruhia 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, tei roto ia i tō mātou rima i teienei ; 'e tē ho'i mai ra ho'i tō mātou mau metua, 'e tā mātou mau vahine, 'e tā mātou mau tamari'i i tō rātou mau fare, maori rā 'o rātou 'o tei ravehia 'ei feiā mau-'āuri 'e 'o tei hōpoi-tītī-hia atu e te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 32 Inaha rā, e mea iti ho'i tō mātou mau nu'u fa'ehau nō te tāpe'a noa i teie mau 'oire e rave rahi 'e te mau fenua rahi ato'a ho'i.
- 33 Inaha rā, tē ti'aturi nei mātou i tō tātou Atua 'o tei hōro'a mai ia mātou i te rē i ni'a iho i taua mau fenua nei, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua roa'a mai ia tātou taua mau 'oire ra 'e taua mau fenua ra, 'e nō tātou iho ho'i te reira.
- 34 I teienei, 'aita mātou i 'ite i te tumu i 'ore ai te hau fenua i hōro'a rahi mai i te nu'u fa'ehau nō te tauturu ia mātou ; 'e 'aita ato'a te mau ta'ata i haere mai ia mātou ra i 'ite ē nō te aha 'aita mātou i fāri'i rahi i te nu'u fa'ehau nō te tauturu ia mātou.
- 35 Inaha, 'aita mātou i 'ite ē, 'ua manuia ānei 'outou, 'e 'ua arata'i atu ho'i 'outou i te mau nu'u fa'ehau i terā pae o te fenua ; 'e mai te mea ē 'o te reira iho ā, 'aita mātou i hina'aro 'ia amuamu.
- 36 'E mai te mea ē 'aita rā, inaha, tē mata'u nei mātou penei a'e tē vai ra te 'āmahamaha i roto i te hau fenua, nō reira 'aita rātou i tonon rahi mai i te ta'ata nō te tauturu ia mātou ; 'ua 'ite ho'i mātou ē, e mea rahi roa atu rātou i tā rātou i tonon mai.
- 37 'Āre'a rā, inaha, 'aita e pe'ape'a—tē ti'aturi nei mātou e fa'aora te Atua ia mātou, noa atu ā te paruparu o tō mātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'oia ia, e fa'aora 'oia ia mātou i te rima o tō tātou mau 'enemi.
- 38 Inaha, 'o te pae hope'a teie o te matahiti e piti 'ahuru 'e ma iva, 'e 'ua roa'a mai ia mātou tō tātou mau fenua ; 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu te mau 'āti Lamana i te fenua ra nō Nephi.
- 39 'E tei iā'u nei i te 'oire nō Maniti te mau tamaiti a te mau ta'ata o Amona, 'o tei parau-maita'i-hia e au ra ; 'e 'ua tauturu mai te Fatu ia rātou, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua fa'aora ho'i ia rātou i te 'o'e, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e ta'ata i taparahihia.

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

40 Inaha rā, 'ua fāri'i rātou e rave rahi mau puta ;
'āre'a rā 'ua tāpe'a māite rātou i te ti'amāra'a tā te
Atua i fa'ati'amā ia rātou ; 'e 'ua itoito rātou i te
ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua i terā mahana 'e i
terā mahana ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'apa'o tāmāu māite rātou
i tāna mau ture, 'e tāna mau parau, 'e tāna mau
fa'auera'a ; 'e e mea pūai ho'i tō rātou fa'aro'o i te
mau parau tohu nō ni'a i te mau mea e tupu a muri
atu.

41 'E i teienei, e tō'u taea'e here, e Moroni, 'ia tāpe'a
māite noa te Fatu ra tō tātou Atua, 'o tei fa'aora 'e 'o
tei fa'ati'amā ia tātou, 'ia 'oe i mua i tōna ra aro ; 'oia
ia, 'e 'ia ha'amaita'i mai 'oia i teie nei feiā, 'e 'ia
manuia 'oe nō te fāri'i mai i te mau fenua ato'a tā te
mau 'āti Lamana i rave 'ē atu mai ia tātou nei, 'o tei
riro ho'i 'ei tauturu nō tātou. 'E i teienei, inaha, te
fa'aoti nei au i tā'u 'episetole. 'O vau o Helamana, te
tamaiti a Alama.

But behold, they have received many wounds;
nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith
God has made them free; and they are strict to re-
member the Lord their God from day to day; yea,
they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judg-
ments, and his commandments continually; and
their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning
that which is to come.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the
Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us
free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and
may he favor this people, even that ye may have suc-
cess in obtaining the possession of all that which the
Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our
support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am
Helaman, the son of Alma.

Alama 59

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, i te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, i muri a'e i tō Moroni fāri'ira'a 'e te tai'ora'a i te 'episetole a Helamana, 'ua 'oa'oa roa ihora 'oia nō te 'ohipa maita'i, 'oia ia, nō te manuia rahi o Helamana i te ravera'a mai i taua mau fenua i mahere mai iāna ra.
- 2 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu 'oia i te reira i tōna mau ta'ata ato'a, i te mau fenua ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e i te vāhi tāna e pārahi ra, 'ia 'oa'oa ato'a rātou.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hāpono 'oi'oi atu ra 'oia i te hō'ē 'episetole ia Pahorana, ma te ani iāna 'ia ha'aputupu'ū 'āmui mai i te tahi mau ta'ata nō te ha'apūai ia Helamana, 'oia ho'i i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Helamana, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia tāpe'a 'ōhie noa i taua pae o te fenua i roa'a iāna ma te manuia nā roto i te hō'ē semeio rahi.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hāpono atu ra Moroni i teie nei 'episetole i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora 'oia i te fa'atupu i te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fāri'i i te toe'a o taua mau fenua ra 'e te mau 'oire ho'i 'o tā te mau 'āti Lamana i haru atu mai ia rātou ra.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'a fa'aineine ai Moroni nō te haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana, inaha, 'ua 'aro atu te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau ta'ata o Nephiha, 'o tei ha'aputupu'ū 'āmui-hia mai nō roto mai i te 'oire ra nō Moroni, 'e te 'oire ra nō Lehi, 'e te 'oire ra nō Morianetona.
- 6 'Oia ia, 'o rātou ato'a tei tīahihia i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Maniti, 'e te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, 'ua haere mai ia rātou e tauturu i te mau 'āti Lamana i teie pae atu o te fenua.
- 7 'E nō te mea e mea rahi roa rātou, 'oia ia, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua fāri'i rātou i te pūai i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana, nā roto i te fa'aterera'a a Amorona, 'ua haere mai ra rātou e 'aro i te mau ta'ata o Nephiha, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te taparahi ia rātou i te taparahira'a rahi 'ū'ana.
- 8 'E e mea rahi roa tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra te toe'a o te feiā o Nephiha mai mua atu ia rātou ; 'e 'ua haere mai ho'i rātou 'e 'ua 'āmui atu ra i te nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni.

Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephihah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephihah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephihah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

9 'E teienei, nō te mea 'ua mana'o Moroni ē, e mea ti'a 'ia tonohia te mau ta'ata i te 'oire ra nō Nephaha nō te tauturu i te mau ta'ata 'ia tāpe'a noa i taua 'oire ra, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, e mea 'ōhie a'e 'ia tāpe'a noa i te 'oire 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia ma'iri atu i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana, i te haru fa'ahou mai i te reira mai ia rātou, 'ua mana'o ihora 'oia ē, e mea 'ōhie ia rātou 'ia tāpe'a noa i taua 'oire ra.

10 Nō reira, 'ua tāpe'a noa 'oia i tōna nu'u fa'ehau pā'āto'a nō te pāruru i te mau vāhi tāna i haru fa'ahou mai.

11 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Moroni ē, 'ua riro te 'oire ra nō Nephaha, 'ua 'oto roa ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te tapitapi, 'o te ma'iri atu rātou i roto i te rima o tō rātou mau taea'e, nō te parauti'a 'ore o te mau ta'ata.

12 I teienei, 'ua nā reira ho'i tōna ra mau ra'atira rahi pā'āto'a. 'Ua tapitapi ihora 'e 'ua māere ato'a ihora ho'i rātou nō te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino a te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'o teie ia te tumu, 'oia ho'i, nō te manuiara'a te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a ia rātou.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri ihora Moroni i te hau fenua, nō tō rātou ha'apa'o 'ore i te ti'amāra'a o tō rātou fenua.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephahah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephahah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

Alama 60

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāpa'i fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te tāvana rahi o te fenua, 'oia ho'i, ia Pahorana, 'e teie te mau parau tāna i pāpa'i atu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Inaha, tē fa'atae 'āfaro nei au i tā'u 'episetole ia Pahorana, i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemla, 'e 'o 'oia ho'i te ha'avā rahi 'e te tāvana rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'e ia rātou ato'a 'o tei mā'itihia e teie nei feiā nō te fa'atere 'e nō te fa'anahonaho i te mau 'ohipa nō teie tama'i.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, tē parau atu nei au ia rātou nā roto i te fa'ahapa ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite 'outou iho ē, 'ua mā'itihia 'outou nō te ha'aputupu 'āmui i te mau ta'ata 'e nō te hōro'a i te 'o'e, 'e te simetera, 'e te mau huru mauha'a tama'i ato'a ia rātou, 'e 'ia tonu atu ia rātou nō te 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana, i te mau vāhi ato'a e tae mai ai rātou i roto i tō tātou iho nei fenua.
- 3 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'ua fa'a'oroma'i au iho nei, 'e tō'u ato'a mau ta'ata, 'e Helamana ato'a 'e tōna ho'i mau ta'ata, i te mau 'ati rahi roa ; 'oia ia, i te po'ia, 'e te po'ihā, 'e te rohirohi, 'e te mau huru 'ati ato'a.
- 4 Inaha rā, 'āhiri ē 'o teie nei mau mea ana'e tā mātou i fa'a'oroma'i, 'aita ia mātou e amuamu 'e e 'ōhumu.
- 5 Inaha rā, e rave rahi te feiā i taparahihia i rotopū i tō mātou mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi tauatini tei taparahihia i te 'o'e, 'aita rā ho'i te reira e tupu i ni'a i tō mātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'āhiri 'outou i tauturu mai i tei au ia rātou. 'Oia ia, e mea rahi tā 'outou ha'apa'o 'ore ia mātou.
- 6 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua hina'aro mātou 'ia 'ite i te tumu nō teie ha'apa'o-ore-ra'a mai ; 'oia ia, 'ua hina'aro mātou 'ia 'ite i te tumu nō tō 'outou mana'o-ore-ra'a mai.
- 7 E ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia feruri 'a pārahi noa ai 'outou i ni'a i tō 'outou mau terōno ma te tāu'a 'ore, 'a fa'atupu ai tō 'outou mau 'enemi i te 'ohipa taparahi ta'ata i te mau vāhi ē 'ati noa a'e ia 'outou na ? 'Oia ia, 'a taparahi noa ai rātou e rave rahi tauatini o tō 'outou ra mau taea'e—

Alma 60

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

8 'Oia ia, 'ia rātou ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi ia 'outou nō te tauturura'a, 'oia ia, 'o tei tu'u ia 'outou i ni'a i te hō'ē vāhi e ti'a ai ia 'outou 'ia tauturu mai ia rātou, 'oia ia, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tonu mai i te mau nu'u fa'ehau ia rātou, nō te ha'apūai ia rātou, 'e nō te fa'aora i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini i te pohe i te 'o'e.

9 Inaha rā, e 'ere o teie ana'e—'ua tāpe'a 'outou i tā 'outou mau mā'a ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua 'aro atu rātou e rave rahi, 'e 'ua pohe rātou ma te mani'i tō rātou toto nō tō rātou hina'aro rahi 'ia maita'i teie nei feiā ; 'oia ia, 'ua nā reira rātou 'a fātata'i rātou i te pohe nō te po'ia, nō te mea 'ua ha'apa'o 'ore 'outou ia rātou.

10 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here—e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia herehia ; 'oia ia, e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia fa'aitoito ia 'outou iho nō te maita'i 'e te ti'amāra'a o teie nei feiā ; inaha rā, 'ua fa'aru'e 'outou ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i e tae mai te toto o teie mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini 'ei tāho'ora'a i ni'a iho i tō 'outou upo'o ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'itea i te Atua tā rātou mau ti'aorora'a ato'a, 'e tō rātou mau 'ati ato'a—

11 Inaha, e ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia mana'o ē, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia pārahi noa i ni'a i tō 'outou mau terōno, ma te rave 'ore i te hō'ē 'ohipa, 'e nō te maita'i rahi o te Atua e fa'aora 'oia ia 'outou ? Inaha, mai te mea ē 'ua nā reira 'outou i te mana'o, 'ua faufa'a 'ore ia tō 'outou mana'o.

12 Tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, 'ua taparahihia tō 'outou mau taea'e e rave rahi nō tō rātou parauti'a 'ore ? Tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, mai te mea ē 'ua nā reira 'outou i te mana'o, 'ua faufa'a 'ore ia tō 'outou mana'o ; 'e tē parau atu nei ho'i au ia 'outou na, e rave rahi tei taparahihia i te 'o'e ; 'e inaha, e fa'ahapahia 'outou nō te reira.

13 'Ua vaiho noa ho'i te Fatu i te feiā parauti'a 'ia taparahihia, 'ia tae tāna parauti'a 'e te ha'avāra'a i ni'a i te feiā 'I'ino ; nō reira 'eiaha 'outou e mana'o ē, 'ua mo'e roa te feiā parauti'a i te mea 'ua taparahihia rātou ; inaha rā, e o atu rātou i roto i te fa'aeara'a o te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

14 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'ua mata'u roa vau 'o te tae mai te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua i ni'a iho i teie nei feiā, nō tō rātou fa'atau rahi ; 'oia ia, 'e te fa'atau o tō tātou hau fenua, 'e tā rātou ha'apa'o 'ore rahi i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'oia ia, 'ia rātou 'o tei taparahihia.

15 'Āhiri ho'i 'aita te parauti'a 'ore i ha'amata mātāmua i roto i tō tātou upo'o, 'ua ti'a ia ia tātou 'ia 'aro atu i tō tātou mau 'enemi 'e 'aita roa rātou e fāri'i i te mana i ni'a ia tātou.

16 'Oia ia, 'āhiri 'aita te 'arora'a i tupu i rotopū ia tātou iho ; 'oia ia, 'āhiri 'aita teie mau ta'ata-hina'arori'i, 'o tei fa'atupu i te ha'amanira'a toto rahi i rotopū ia tātou iho ; 'oia ia, 'āhiri tātou i tāhō'ē i tō tātou iho pūai i taua tau i tama'i ai tātou ia tātou iho, mai tei tāhō'ēhia i muta'a ihora ; 'oia ia, 'āhiri 'aita teie mau ta'ata-hina'arori'i i fa'atupu i te hina'aro 'ia fāri'i i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i ni'a ia tātou ; 'āhiri rātou i fa'ati'a noa i te parau nō te ti'amāra'a, 'e i tāhō'ē mai ia tātou, 'e i haere atu e 'aro i tō tātou mau 'enemi, 'e 'aita i rave i tā rātou 'o'e nō te 'aro mai ia tātou nei, 'oia te tumu nō te ha'amānira'a toto rahi i rotopū ia tātou iho ; 'oia ia, 'āhiri tātou i haere atu ma te pūai o te Fatu, 'ua ti'a ia ia tātou 'ia ha'apurara atu i tō tātou mau 'enemi ; 'ua tupu ia te reira mai te au i tāna ra parau.

17 Inaha rā, tē haere mai nei te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro ia tātou, ma te haru i tō tātou mau fenua, 'e tē taparahi nei rātou i tō tātou mau ta'ata i te 'o'e, 'oia ia, i tā tātou mau vahine 'e tā tātou mau tamari'i, 'e tē 'āfa'i tīti ato'a atu ra ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'atupu i te mau huru 'ati ato'a i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te 'ohipa 'ino rahi a te feiā 'o tei tītau i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a, 'oia ia, te mau ta'ata-hina'arori'i.

18 'E nō te aha vau i parau rahi ai nō ni'a i teie nei mea ? 'Aita ho'i mātou i 'ite, 'āre'a rā tē tītau noa nei 'outou i te ha'amanara'a. 'Aita ato'a mātou i 'ite, e 'ere 'outou i te mau ta'ata ha'avare i tō 'outou fenua.

19 'E 'aore rā, 'ua fa'aru'e ānei 'outou ia mātou nō te mea tei te pū o te fenua 'outou 'e tē pārahi na 'outou ma te hau, 'e nō reira 'aita 'outou i hāpono mai i te mā'a nā mātou, 'aita ato'a i tonono mai i te mau ta'ata nō te ha'apūai i tō tātou mau nu'u fa'ehau ?

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

- 20 'Ua mo'ehia ānei ia 'outou te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu tō 'outou Atua ? 'Oia ia, 'ua mo'ehia ānei ia 'outou te fa'atitira'ahia tō tātou mau metua ? 'Ua mo'ehia ānei ia 'outou tō tātou fa'aorara'ahia e rave rahi taime i te rima o tō tātou ra mau 'enemi ?
- 21 'E 'aore rā, tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, e fa'aora ā te Fatu ia tātou, 'a pārahi noa ai tātou i ni'a i tō tātou mau terōno ma te fa'a'ohipa 'ore i te mau rāve'a tā te Fatu i hōro'a mai nā tātou ?
- 22 'Oia ia, e pārahi fa'atau noa ānei 'outou, 'a ha'a'atihia ai 'outou i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini, 'oia ia, i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ahuru tauatini 'o tei pārahi noa ato'a ma te fa'atau, 'a taparahihia ai e rave rahi tauatini i te mau vāhi ē 'ati noa a'e, i te mau 'ōti'a o te fenua, i te 'o'e, 'oia ia, 'ua puta rātou 'e tē tahe noa ra te toto ?
- 23 Tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, e hi'o noa mai te Atua ia 'outou 'ei feiā hara 'ore 'a pārahi noa ai 'outou 'e 'a hi'o noa atu ai i teie nei mau mea ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'Aita roa. I teienei, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, 'ua parau mai te Atua ē, 'ia tāmāhia i roto i te fāri'i nā mua, 'e i muri iho e tāmā-ato'a-hia ai i rāpae i te fāri'i.
- 24 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa i te mea tā 'outou i rave ra, 'e 'a fa'aitoito ai i te rave i te 'ohipa, 'e i te hāpono mai i te mā'a 'e te ta'ata ia mātou nei, 'e 'ia Helamana ato'a, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia pāturu ā i taua mau tufa'a o tō tātou fenua i roa'a mai iāna ra, 'e 'ia ti'a ato'a ia mātou 'ia fāri'i fa'ahou mai i te toe'a o tō tātou mau fenua i teie nei pae, inaha, e mea ti'a roa ia tātou 'ia fa'aea i te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ē tae noa atu 'ua tāmā tātou nā mua i roto i tā tātou fāri'i, 'oia ia, te upo'o rahi o tō tātou hau fenua.
- 25 'E 'ia 'ore 'oe 'ia fāri'i i te anira'a nō tā'u nei 'episetole, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite mai iā'u ē, tei roto ia 'oe te vārua mau nō te ti'amāra'a, 'e 'ia tāmata māite i te ha'apūai 'e i te ha'apa'ari i tō tātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ia hāpono mai i te mā'a nō te tauturu ia rātou, inaha, e vaiiho ia vau i te tahi pae o tō'u feiā-ti'amā nō te tāpe'a noa i teie tufa'a o tō tātou fenua, 'e e vaiiho ho'i au i te pūai 'e te ha'amaita'ira'a a te Atua i ni'a ia rātou, 'ia 'ore roa e ti'a i te hō'ē a'e mana 'ia 'aro mai ia rātou—
- 26 'E teie, nō tō rātou ia fa'aro'o rahi, 'e tō rātou fa'a'oroma'i i roto i tō rātou mau 'ati—

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

- 27 'E e haere atu vau ia 'outou na, 'e mai te mea tei rotopū ia 'outou te tahi pae 'o tei hina'aro i te ti'amāra'a, 'oia ia, mai te mea tē vai ra te hō'ē pura iti noa a'e nō te ti'amāra'a e toe ra, inaha, e fa'ati'arepu vau i te pāto'ira'a i rotopū ia 'outou na, ē tae roa atu 'ua ha'amou-roa-hia te mau ta'ata ato'a i hina'aro 'ia haru i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a.
- 28 'Oia ia, 'aita roa vau i mata'u i tō 'outou mana 'e tō 'outou ha'amanara'a, 'āre'a rā 'o tō'u iho Atua 'o tā'u e mata'u ; 'e nō tāna ra mau fa'auera'a i rave ai au i tā'u 'o'e nō te pāruru i tō'u fenua, 'e nō tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i fāri'i ai mātou i te pohe rahi.
- 29 Inaha, 'ua tae i te taime, 'oia ia, 'ua fātata roa te taime, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fa'aitoito ia 'outou iho nō te pāruru i tō 'outou fenua 'e tā 'outou mau tamari'i ri'i, e tautau mai ia te 'o'e nō te parauti'a i ni'a ia 'outou ; 'oia ia, e ma'iri ia te reira i ni'a iho ia 'outou nō te tā'iri ia 'outou ē tae noa atu 'ua ha'amou-roa-hia 'outou.
- 30 Inaha, e tīa'i au i te tauturura'a nō 'ō nā mai ia 'outou na ; 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tauturu mai ia mātou, inaha, e tae atu vau ia 'outou na, 'oia ho'i, i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e e tā'iri au ia 'outou i te 'o'e, 'ia 'ore roa tō 'outou mana nō te tāpe'a i te haerera'a i mua o teie nei feiā i roto i te tumu o tō tātou ti'amāra'a.
- 31 Inaha ho'i, e'ita roa te Fatu e fa'ati'a 'ia ora 'outou 'e 'ia pūai rahi 'outou i roto i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino nō te ha'amou i tōna mau ta'ata parauti'a.
- 32 Inaha, e ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia mana'o ē, e fa'aora te Fatu ia 'outou 'e e fa'atae mai 'oia i te ha'avāra'a i ni'a i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o te mau peu tumu ho'i a tō rātou mau metua i fa'atupu i tō rātou 'ino'ino ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua fa'arahihia te reira e te feiā tei tāiva ia tātou, 'a tupu ai tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino nō tō 'outou hina'aro rahi i te hanahana 'e i te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o te ao nei ?
- 33 'Ua 'ite 'outou ē, 'ua 'ōfati 'outou i te mau ture a te Atua, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a 'outou ē, tē ta'ata'ahi noa na 'outou i te reira i raro a'e i tō 'outou 'āvae. Inaha, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu iā'u : Mai te mea ē 'aita rātou 'o tā 'outou i mā'iti 'ei mau tāvana nō 'outou e tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e haere atu 'outou i ni'a nō te 'aro atu ia rātou.

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

34 'E i teienei, inaha, e tītaura'a teie i ni'a iā'u, 'o Moroni, mai te au i te fafaura'a tā'u i fafau 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a tō'u Atua ; nō reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia ha'apa'o 'outou i te parau a te Atua, 'e 'ia fa'atae vave mai iā'u i te hō'ē tufa'a nō tā 'outou mau mā'a 'e mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia Helamana ato'a ho'i.

35 'E inaha, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia nā reira, e haere vave atu vau ia 'outou na ; inaha ho'i, 'aita roa te Atua e fa'ati'a 'ia pohe mātou i te po'ia ; nō reira e hōro'a mai 'oia i te tahi vāhi nō tā 'outou mau mā'a nā mātou, noa atu mai te mea e tītauhia 'ia fa'a'ohipa i te 'o'e. I teienei, 'a hi'opo'a māite 'outou nō te fa'atupu i te parau a te Atua.

36 Inaha, 'o Moroni au, tō 'outou ra'atira rahi. 'Aita vau e tītau nei i te mana, tē tītau nei rā vau 'ia huti mai i te reira i raro. 'Aita vau e tītau nei i te tura o teie nei ao, i te hanahana rā o tō'u Atua, 'e te ti'amāra'a 'e te maita'i ho'i o tō'u ra fenua. 'E nō reira tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u nei 'episetole.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

Alama 61

- 1 Inaha, i teie nei, i muri a'era, i muri noa iho i tō Moroni hāponora'a atu i tāna 'episetole i te tāvana rahi, 'ua fāri'i 'oia i te hō'ē 'episetole nō 'ō mai ia Pahorana, te tāvana rahi. 'E teie te mau parau tāna i fāri'i :
- 2 'O vau, 'o Pahorana, te tāvana rahi nō teie nei hau fenua, 'e te hāpono atu nei au i teie nei mau parau ia Moroni, te ra'atira rahi i ni'a a'e i te nu'u fa'ehau. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, e Moroni, 'aita vau i 'oa'oa i tō 'outou mau 'ati rahi ; 'oia ia, 'ua 'oto roa tō'u 'ā'au i te reira.
- 3 Inaha rā, tē vai ra te feiā 'o tei 'oa'oa i tō 'outou mau 'ati ; 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ti'a mai rātou i ni'a nō te 'ōrure mai iā'u nei, 'e i te feiā-ti'amā ho'i o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, e mea rahi roa ho'i rātou 'o tei 'ōrure mai.
- 4 'E 'o te feiā teie tei tītau 'ia rave 'ē atu i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a iā'u 'e 'o tei fa'atupu i teie mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino rahi ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ohipa rātou i te parau tāvaimanino rahi, 'e 'ua arata'i 'ē atu rātou i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e nā te reira i fa'atupu i te 'ati rahi i rotopū ia tātou ; 'ua tāpe'a ho'i rātou i tā mātou mā'a, 'e 'ua ha'amata'u ho'i i tō mātou feiā-ti'amā, 'e nō reira 'aita rātou i tae atu ia 'outou na.
- 5 'E inaha, 'ua tīahi rātou iā'u mai mua atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua horo atu vau i te fenua ra nō Gideona, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i tei hina'aro i te pe'e mai iā'u ra.
- 6 'E inaha, 'ua hāpono atu vau i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ē 'ati noa a'e teie tufa'a o te fenua ; 'e inaha, tē ta'iruru mai ra rātou i pīha'i iho ia mātou i te mau mahana ato'a, i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, nō te pāruru i tō rātou fenua 'e tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'e nō te tāho'o atu i te hape i ravehia i ni'a ia mātou.
- 7 'E 'ua tae mai ra rātou ia mātou nei, 'e nō reira ho'i, 'o rātou 'o tei ti'a mai nō te 'ōrure mai ia mātou nei, 'ua matapū'a'ahia rātou, 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua mata'u rātou ia mātou 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i haere mai nō te 'aro mai ia mātou.

Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 'E 'ua roa'a ia rātou te fenua, 'oia ho'i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela ; 'ua fa'ata'a rātou i te hō'ē ari'i i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua pāpa'i atu 'oia i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua fa'aau atu 'oia i te parau iāna ; 'e i roto taua fa'aaura'a ra, 'ua fa'aoti 'oia e tāpe'a noa i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela, 'e nā roto i te tāpe'a-noa-ra'a i te reira, 'ua mana'o 'oia ē, e ti'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia ha'avī i te toe'a o te fenua, 'e i reira 'oia e fa'ata'ahia ai 'ei ari'i i ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'ia ha'avīhia rātou i raro a'e i te mau 'āti Lamana.

9 'E i teienei, i roto i tā 'oe 'episetole 'ua fa'ahapa mai 'oe iā'u, 'ātīrā atu ia ; 'aita vau i riri, tē 'oa'oa nei rā vau i te aroha rahi o tō 'oe na 'ā'au. 'Aita vau, 'o Pahorana, e tītau nei i te mana nō'u, maori rā 'ia tāpe'a noa i tō'u pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia pāroru noa i te mana 'e te ti'amāra'a o tō'u nei mau ta'ata. Tē tāmau māite nei ā tō'u 'ā'au i roto i taua ti'amāra'a ra i fa'ati'amāhia ai tātou e te Atua.

10 'E i teienei, inaha, e pāto'i atu tātou i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ē tae roa atu i te ha'amani'ira'a i te toto. E'ita tātou e ha'amani'i i te toto o te mau 'āti Lamana 'āhiri e pārahi noa rātou i tō rātou iho fenua.

11 E'ita tātou e ha'amani'i i te toto o tō tātou mau taea'e 'āhiri 'aita rātou e ti'a mai i ni'a nō te 'ōrure mai ia tātou ma te rave i te 'o'e.

12 E tu'u tātou ia tātou iho i raro a'e i te zugo nō te fa'atīrā'a 'āhiri ē 'ua au te reira i te parauti'a a te Atua, 'e 'āhiri ē 'ua fa'aue mai 'oia ia tātou 'ia nā reira.

13 Inaha rā, 'aita 'oia i fa'aue mai ia tātou 'ia tu'u ia tātou i raro a'e i tō tātou mau 'enemi, 'ia ti'aturi rā tātou iāna, 'e nāna tātou e fa'aora.

14 Nō reira, e tō'u taea'e here, e Moroni, pāto'i ana'e i te 'ino, 'e te mau mea 'ino 'o tē 'ore e ti'a ia tātou 'ia pāto'i i tā tātou mau parau, 'oia ia, mai te 'ōrure hau 'e te tāivara'a, pāto'i ana'e ia i te reira i tā tātou mau 'o'e, 'ia ti'a ia tātou 'ia tāpe'a noa i tō tātou ti'amāra'a, 'ia ti'a ia tātou 'ia 'oa'oa noa i te tufa'a maita'i 'o tā tātou 'ēkālesia, 'e i te 'ohipa a tō tātou Tāra'ehara 'e tō tātou Atua.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

- 15 Nō reira, 'a haere vave mai iā'u nei 'e te tahi pae o tō 'outou mau ta'ata, 'e 'a vaiiho i te toe'a 'ia ha'apa'ohia e Lehi rāua 'o Teanekuma ; 'a hōro'a atu i te mana ia rāua nō te fa'atere i te 'arora'a i taua tufa'a nō te fenua, mai te au i te Vārua o te Atua, 'oia ato'a ho'i te vārua nō te ti'amāra'a i roto ia rātou.
- 16 Inaha, 'ua hāpono atu vau i te mā'a ia rātou, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia pohe ē tae noa atu 'ua tae mai 'oe iā'u nei.
- 17 'A ha'aputupu 'āmui i te mau ta'ata e roa'a ia 'oe 'a haere mai ai 'oe iā'u nei, 'e e haere vave atu tātou ma te pūai o tō tātou Atua nō te 'aro atu i taua feiā 'ōrurēhau ra, mai te au i te fa'aro'o i roto ia tātou nei.
- 18 'E e haru tātou i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela, 'ia roa'a mai ia tātou te mā'a nō te hāpono atu ia Lehi rāua 'o Teanekuma ; 'oia ia, e haere atu tātou nō te 'aro ia rātou ma te pūai o te Fatu, 'e e fa'a'ore roa tātou i teie nei mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino rahi.
- 19 'E i teienei, e Moroni, tē 'oa'oa nei au i te fāri'ira'a i tā 'oe ra 'episetole, i tapitapi ri'i ho'i au nō ni'a i te mau mea tā mātou e rave, e 'ohipa ti'a ānei ho'i ia mātou 'ia haere atu e 'aro i tō tātou mau taea'e.
- 20 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau mai 'oe : 'Ia 'ore rātou e tātarahapa, 'ua fa'ae mai te Fatu ia 'oe 'ia haere atu e 'aro atu ia rātou.
- 21 Hī'o ē 'ua ha'apūai 'oe i te fa'aro'o o Lehi 'e Teanekuma i te Fatu ; 'a parau atu ia rāua 'eiaha e mata'u, nā te Atua rāua e fa'aora ; 'oia ia, 'e 'o rātou ato'a tei tāmau māite i roto i taua ti'amāra'a ra i fa'ati'amāhia ai rātou e te Atua. 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u 'episetole i tō'u taea'e here, 'o Moroni.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

Alama 62

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i tō Moroni fāri'ira'a i teie 'episetole, 'ua itoito ihora tōna 'ā'au, 'e 'ua 'ī ihora 'oia i te 'oa'oa rahi roa nō te ha'apa'o maita'i o Pahorana, 'e nō te mea 'aita 'oia i riro 'ei ta'ata fa'a'ino i te ti'amāra'a o tōna ra fenua.
- 2 'Āre'a rā 'ua 'oto rahi roa 'oia nō te mau 'ohipa 'Tino rahi a te feiā i tīahi atu ia Pahorana mai ni'a mai i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; 'oia ia, nō te feiā i 'ōrure i tō rātou fenua e tei pāto'i i tō rātou Atua.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ihora Moroni i te tahi pae iti o tōna mau ta'ata, mai te au i tō Pahorana hina'aro, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ra i te fa'aterera'a ia Lehi 'e Teanekuma i ni'a i te toe'a o tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te fenua ra nō Gideona.
- 4 'E 'ua fa'ati'a ihora 'oia i te reva nō te ti'amāra'a i te mau vāhi ato'a tāna i tomo atu, 'e 'ua fāri'i mai 'oia i te mau nu'u fa'ehau tē ti'a iāna 'ia fāri'i mai i tōna haerera'a i te fenua ra nō Gideona.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tauatini tei ta'iruru mai i pīha'i iho i tāna ra reva, 'e 'ua rave ihora i tā rātou mau 'o'e nō te pāroru i tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia fa'atīhia.
- 6 'E nō reira, 'ia oti a'era tā Moroni ha'aputuputura'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a i roa'a mai iāna i tōna haere'a, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Gideona ; 'e i 'āmuihia tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau 'e tō Pahorana ato'a, 'ua riro atu ra rātou 'ei mea pūai roa, 'oia ia, hau atu i te pūai i tō Pakusa, 'oia te ari'i nō te feiā 'ōrurehau i ti'avaru i te feiā-ti'amā i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela 'e tei haru ho'i i taua fenua ra.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Moroni rāua 'o Pahorana 'e tō rāua mau nu'u fa'ehau ato'a i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e tae a'era rātou i te 'oire, 'e 'ua fārerei atu ra i te mau ta'ata o Pakusa ra, 'e nō reira 'ua 'aro rātou.
- 8 'E inaha, 'ua taparahihia 'o Pakusa 'e 'ua ravehia tōna ra mau ta'ata 'ei feiā mau-'āuri, 'e 'ua fa'aho'ihia Pahorana i ni'a i tōna pārahira'a ha'avāra'a.

Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

9 'E 'ua fāri'i te mau ta'ata o Pakusa i tō rātou ha'avāra'a, mai te au i te ture, 'e te mau ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i ato'a 'o tei ravehia 'e tei hurihia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e 'ua taparahihia rātou mai te au i te ture ; 'oia ia, te mau ta'ata o Pakusa 'e te mau ta'ata-hina'aro-ari'i, 'e rātou ato'a ho'i 'o tē 'ore e rave i te mau mauha'a tama'i nō te pāruru i tō rātou fenua, 'o tei tama'i mai rā i te reira, 'ua taparahihia ia rātou.

10 'E nō reira, e mea ti'a roa 'ia ha'apa'o-māite-hia taua ture ra nō te maita'i o tō rātou fenua ; 'oia ia, 'e 'o rātou 'o tei 'itehia ē 'ua huna i tō rātou ti'amāra'a, 'ua taparahi-vave-hia ia rātou mai te au i te ture.

11 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e 'ua fa'atupu Moroni e Pahorana i te hau i ni'a i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i rotopū i tō rāua mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua ha'apohe ho'i i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei 'ore i ha'apa'o maita'i i te parau nō te ti'amāra'a.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te ha'amatarā'a nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua fa'atae vave atu ra Moroni i te mā'a, 'e 'oia ato'a i te tahi nu'u fa'ehau, e ono tauatini ta'ata, 'ia Helamana ra, nō te tauturu iāna 'ia tāpe'a noa i taua pae o te fenua ra.

13 'E 'ua tonu ato'a atu ra 'oia i te tahi nu'u fa'ehau, e ono tauatini ta'ata, 'e 'ua hāpono ato'a atu i te mā'a e nava'i nā te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Lehi 'e Teanekuma. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā-reira-hia nō te pāruru i te fenua i te mau 'āti Lamana.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua vaiiho Moroni rāua 'o Pahorana i te tahi pupu ta'ata rahi i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'e te tahi pupu ta'ata rahi i te fenua ra nō Nephiha, nō te mea 'ua 'ōpua rāua 'ia ha'amou i te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i taua 'oire ra.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'a haere atu ai rātou i taua fenua ra, 'ua haru ihora rātou i te tahi pupu ta'ata rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora e rave rahi i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua haru ho'i i tā rātou mau mā'a 'e tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

16 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rātou harura'a i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua tītau atu ra rātou i taua mau 'āti Lamana ra 'ia fa'aoti i te hō'ē fafaura'a ē, e 'ore roa rātou e rave fa'ahou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te 'aro mai i te mau 'āti Nephi.

17 'E i muri iho i tō rātou fa'aotira'a i taua fafaura'a ra, 'ua tonohia atu ra rātou 'ia pārahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Amona, 'e 'ua fātata i te maha tauatini 'o tei 'ore i taparahihia.

18 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rātou fa'ahaerera'a atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora rātou i tō rātou tere i te fenua ra nō Nephiha. 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era rātou i te 'oire ra nō Nephiha, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i ni'a i te mau fenua pāpū ra o Nephiha, tei fātata atu i te 'oire ra nō Nephiha.

19 I teienei, 'ua hina'aro roa Moroni 'ia haere mai te mau 'āti Lamana i rāpae nō te 'aro mai ia rātou i ni'a i te mau fenua pāpū ; 'āre'a rā nō te mea 'ua 'ite mai te mau 'āti Lamana i tō rātou itoito rahi, 'e 'ua 'ite mai ho'i i tō rātou rahi, nō reira 'ua mata'u ihora rātou 'ia haere mai i rāpae nō te 'aro ia rātou ; 'e nō reira 'aita rātou i haere mai nō te 'aro ia rātou i taua mahana ra.

20 'E 'ia tae mai ra te pō, 'ua haere atu ra Moroni i te taimē pōiri roa nō te pō, e pa'uma a'era i ni'a iho i te patu nō te tāmōemoe ē tei hea te pae o te 'oire i pūhapahia e te mau 'āti Lamana 'e tō rātou nu'u fa'ehau.

21 'E i muri a'era, tē pārahi ra rātou i te pae nō te hiti'a o te rā, fātata i te 'ūputa ; 'e 'ua vare'ahia rātou pā'āto'a i te ta'oto. 'E i teienei 'ua ho'i mai ra Moroni i tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra ia rātou 'ia fa'aaineine 'oi'oi i te tahi mau taura pa'ari 'e te tahi mau 'ē'a, 'e 'ia tu'uhia atu te reira mai ni'a atu i te patu i te pae roto o te patu.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Moroni i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia haere atu rātou, 'e 'ia pa'uma i ni'a i te patu, 'e 'ia ha'apou ia rātou i raro i te pae o te 'oire, 'oia ia, i te pae tō'o'a o te rā, i te vāhi 'aita i pūhapahia e te mau 'āti Lamana 'e tō rātou ra mau nu'u fa'ehau.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tu'uhia rātou pā'āto'a i raro i roto i te 'oire i te pō, ma te fa'a'ohipa i tā rātou mau taura pa'ari 'e tā rātou mau 'ē'a ; 'e nō reira 'ia tae a'era i te ao tei roto mai rātou pā'āto'a i te patu o taua 'oire ra.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephiah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephiah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephiah, which is near the city of Nephiah.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

24 'E i teienei, 'ia ara a'era te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ia 'ite atu rātou i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni i roto i te 'āua, 'ua mata'u roa ihora rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua horo atu ra rātou i rāpae nā roto i te 'ūputa.

25 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Moroni ē, tē horo 'ē atu ra rātou mai mua atu iāna, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia haere e 'aro ia rātou, 'e 'ua taparahi ia rātou e rave rahi, 'e 'ua ha'a'ati i te tahi pae e rave rahi, 'e 'ua haru ia rātou 'ei feiā mau-'āuri ; 'e 'ua horo atu ra te toe'a i te fenua ra nō Moroni, i te mau fenua i te hiti nō te pae tahatai.

26 'E 'ua nā reira Moroni rāua 'o Pahorana i te haru mai i taua 'oire ra nō Nephiha, 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata i pohe ; 'e e rave rahi ho'i tō te mau 'āti Lamana i taparahihia.

27 I teienei, e rave rahi feiā mau-'āuri 'āti Lamana tei hina'aro 'ia 'āmui atu i te mau ta'ata o Amona 'e 'ia riro 'ei feiā ti'amā.

28 'E i muri a'era, te mau ta'ata ato'a e rave rahi 'o tei hina'aro, 'ua fa'ati'ahia atu te reira mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro.

29 Nō reira, 'ua 'āmui atu te feiā mau-'āuri o te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a i te mau ta'ata o Amona, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te rave i te 'ohipa ma te itoito rahi, i te fa'aainera'a i te repo, i te fa'atupura'a i te mau huru sītona ato'a, 'e te fa'amura'a i te mau huru nana māmoe ato'a 'e te mau huru nana pua'atoro ato'a ; 'e nō reira, 'ua fa'aitihia ia te hōpoi'a rahi i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aitihia tā rātou hōpoi'a nō ni'a i te feiā mau-'āuri o te mau 'āti Lamana.

30 I teienei, i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō Moroni ravera'a mai i te 'oire ra nō Nephiha, 'e i muri iho i tōna ravera'a mai i te feiā mau-'āuri e rave rahi, 'o tei fa'aiti roa ho'i i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e i muri iho i tōna fāri'ira'a mai i te mau 'āti Nephi e rave rahi 'o tei hōpoi'ia 'ei feiā mau-'āuri, 'e 'o tei ha'apūai i te nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni ; nō reira 'ua haere atu ra Moroni mai te fenua ra nō Nephiha ē tae atu i te fenua ra nō Lehi.

31 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ia Moroni i te haerera'a mai e 'aro ia rātou, 'ua mata'u fa'ahou ihora rātou 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra mai mua atu i te nu'u fa'ehau o Moroni.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra Moroni 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau ia rātou i terā 'oire 'e i terā 'oire, ē tae noa atu 'ua fāreirehia mai rātou e Lehi rāua 'o Teanekuma ; 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra te mau 'āti Lamana mai mua atu ia Lehi rāua 'o Teanekuma i te mau 'ōti'a i te pae tahatai, ē tae roa atu ra i te fenua ra nō Moroni.

33 'E 'ua ha'aputputuhia te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te vāhi hō'ē, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua riro rātou pā'āto'a 'ei nu'u fa'ehau hō'ē i te fenua ra nō Moroni. I teienei tei rotopū ato'a ho'i ia rātou te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o Amorona.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pūhapa ihora Moroni, 'e Lehi, 'e Teanekuma 'e tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua i te hiti nō te fenua ra nō Moroni, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'a'atihia te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau fenua i te hiti nō te mēdēbara i te pae apato'a 'e i te mau fenua ho'i i te hiti nō te mēdēbara i te pae nō te hiti'a o te rā.

35 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te pūhapa i taua pō ra. Inaha ho'i, 'ua rohirohi te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a nō te maoro o tō rātou tere ; nō reira, 'aita rātou i fa'atupu i te rāmā i taua pō ra, maori rā 'o Teanekuma ; 'e 'ua riri roa ho'i 'oia ia Amorona, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua mana'o ihora 'oia ē, nā Amorona 'e 'Amalikia, tōna taea'e, i fa'atupu i taua 'arora'a rahi 'e te maoro i rotopū ia rātou 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o te reira ho'i te tumu nō te 'arora'a rahi 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto, 'oia ia, 'e te o'e rahi ho'i.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Teanekuma ma tōna riri rahi i roto i te pūhapara'a o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua tu'u ihora iāna iho i raro nā ni'a mai i te mau patu o te 'oire. 'E 'ua haere atu ra 'oia ma te taura i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, 'e 'ua 'itehia a'era iāna te ari'i, 'e 'ua pātia atu ra iāna i te tāvero, 'e 'ua puta 'oia i te vāhi fātata i te māfatu. Inaha rā, 'ua fa'aara te ari'i i tōna mau tāvini nā mua 'oia i pohe ai, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua a'ua'u atu rātou ia Teanekuma, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora iāna.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

37 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era Lehi 'e Moroni ē 'ua pohe roa Teanekuma, 'ua 'oto roa rāua ; inaha ho'i, e ta'ata teie 'o tei 'aro māite nō tōna nūna'a, 'oia ia, e hoa mau 'oia nō te ti'amāra'a ; 'e 'ua fāri'i 'oia e rave rahi mau 'ati rahi. Inaha rā, 'ua pohe 'oia, 'e i haere na ho'i 'oia nā te 'ē'a o te ao ato'a nei.

38 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Moroni i te po'ipo'i a'e nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua taparahi ia rātou e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua ti'avaru atu ho'i ia rātou i rāpae i taua fenua ra ; 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou, 'e 'aita a'era rātou i ho'i fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi.

39 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e nō reira 'ua vai noa te mau tama'i, 'e te mau ha'amani'ira'a toto, 'e te o'e, 'e te 'ati, nō te ārea e rave rahi matahiti te maoro.

40 'E 'ua tupu ho'i te mau taparahira'a ta'ata, te mau mārōra'a, 'e te mau 'āmahamahara'a, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'āre'a rā nō te parauti'a, 'oia ia, te mau pure a te feiā parauti'a, 'ua fa'aorahia ia rātou.

41 Inaha rā, nō te maoro rahi o te 'arora'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, e rave rahi tei fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, nō te maoro rahi o te 'arora'a ; 'e e rave rahi tei fa'aha'eha'ahia nō tō rātou mau 'ati, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'aha'eha'a rātou ia rātou iho i mua i te Atua, ma te ha'eha'a rahi roa.

42 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō Moroni ha'apa'arira'a i taua mau tufa'a nō te fenua i te pae fātata atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, ē tae noa atu 'ua pa'ari maita'i te reira, 'ua ho'i mai ra 'oia i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela ; 'e 'ua ho'i ato'a mai ra Helamana i tōna ra fenua 'āi'a ; 'e 'ua tupu fa'ahou te hau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

43 'E 'ua hōro'a atu ra Moroni i te fa'aterera'a o te mau nu'u fa'ehau i roto i te rima o tāna tamaiti, 'o Moroniha tōna 'oia ; 'e 'ua ho'i mai ra 'oia i tōna ihora 'utuāfare 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia ora noa i te toe'a o tōna pu'e mahana i roto i te hau.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, inso-much that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, inso-much that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moroniha; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

44 'E 'ua ho'i mai ra ho'i Pahorana i ni'a i tōna pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; 'e 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou Helamana i te a'o i te parau a te Atua i te mau ta'ata ; nō te mau 'arora'a e rave rahi 'e te mau mārōra'a e rave rahi 'ua ti'a roa 'ia fa'atupu-fa'ahou-hia te fa'a'āfarora'a i roto i te 'ēkālesia.

45 Nō reira, 'ua haere atu Helamana 'e tōna mau taea'e, 'e 'ua a'o atu i te parau a te Atua ma te mana rahi, i te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a atu i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e 'ua tātarahapa ihora rātou i tā rātou mau hara, 'e 'ua bāpetizohia ho'i i te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

46 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a-fa'ahou-hia te 'ēkālesia a te Atua ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua.

47 'Oia ia, 'e 'ua ravehia te mau arata'ira'a nō ni'a i te mau ture. 'E 'ua mā'itihia tō rātou mau ha'avā, 'e tō rātou mau ha'avā rahi.

48 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata o Nephi i te manuia fa'ahou i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te tupu i te rahi 'e 'ia riro fa'ahou 'ei feiā pūai roa i ni'a i te fenua. 'E 'ua riro ho'i rātou 'ei feiā tao'a rahi roa.

49 'E noa atu ā tā rātou mau tao'a rahi, 'e 'aore rā tō rātou pūai, 'e 'aore rā tō rātou manuia, 'aita roa rātou i fa'ateiteihia i te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i tāere i te ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'aha'eha'a māite rātou ia rātou iho i mua iāna.

50 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'amana'o rātou i te mau mea rahi tā te Fatu i rave nō rātou, 'oia ho'i, 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia rātou i te pohe, 'e i te fa'atīfira'a, 'e i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e i te mau huru 'ati ato'a, 'e 'ua fa'aora ho'i 'oia ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi.

51 'E 'ua pure tāmāu noa rātou i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amaita'i mai te Fatu ia rātou, mai te au i tāna parau, 'e nō reira 'ua pūai roa rātou 'e 'ua manuia ho'i i ni'a i te fenua.

52 'E i muri a'era, 'ua oti teie mau mea ato'a i te ravehia. 'E 'ua pohe atu ra Helamana i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alama 63

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatara'a nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua rave ihora Sibelona i taua mau mea mo'a ra 'o tā Alama i hōro'a atu ia Helamana.
- 2 'E e ta'ata parauti'a ho'i 'oia, 'e 'ua haere 'oia ma te parauti'a i mua i te Atua ; 'e 'ua tāmāu māite 'oia i te ha'apa'o i te 'ohipa maita'i, i te ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu tōna Atua ; 'e 'ua nā reira ato'a tōna ra taea'e.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ato'a ihora Moroni. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, tē vai ra te hō'ē pupu ta'ata rahi roa, 'oia ho'i e pae tauatini 'e e maha hānere tāne, 'e tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'o tei fa'aru'e mai i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela nō te haere atu i te fenua i te pae apato'erau ra.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, e ta'ata tūtau 'ite roa 'o Hagota, nō reira 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua hāmani ihora i te hō'ē pahī rahi i te hitu o te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, i pīha'i iho i te fenua ra nō Ano, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra i te reira i roto i te moana i te pae tō'o'a o te rā, i pīha'i iho i te fenua iti oaoa e tae atu ai i te fenua i te pae apato'erau.
- 6 'E inaha, e rave rahi ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi tei tomo atu i roto, 'e 'ua reva atu 'e te mau mau huru mā'a e rave rahi, 'e e rave rahi ato'a mau vahine 'e mau tamari'i ; 'e 'ua reva atu rātou i tō rātou tere i te pae apato'erau. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti.
- 7 'E 'ia tae a'era i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti, 'ua hāmani taua ta'ata nei i te tahi atu ā mau pahī. 'E 'ua ho'i mai te pahī mātāmua, 'e 'ua tomo atu e rave rahi atu ā mau ta'ata i roto i te reira ; 'e 'ua rave ato'a rātou i te mau huru mā'a e rave rahi, 'e 'ua tere fa'ahou atu ra i te fenua i te pae apato'erau.

Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa te hō'ē parau i fa'aro'o-fa'ahou-hia nō ni'a ia rātou. 'E 'ua mana'o mātou ē, 'ua paremo rātou i roto i te hōhonura'a nō te moana. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tere fa'ahou atu ra te tahi fa'ahou ā pahī ; 'e te vāhi i haerehia e te reira, 'aita roa mātou i 'ite.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, i taua matahiti ra, e rave rahi mau ta'ata i haere atu i te fenua i te pae apato'erau. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua pohe ato'a ihora Sibelona, 'e 'ua tere atu Korianetona i te fenua i te pae apato'erau nā ni'a i te pahī, nō te hōpoi atu i te mā'a i te mau ta'ata i haere atu i taua fenua ra.
- 11 Nō reira e mea ti'a roa ia Sibelona 'ia hōro'a atu i taua mau mea mo'a ra, hou 'oia e pohe ai, i te tamaiti a Helamana, 'o tei pi'ihia o Helamana, 'e 'ua pi'ihia ho'i 'oia i te i'oa o tōna ra metua tāne.
- 12 I teienei, inaha, 'ua pāpa'ihia taua mau 'ō'otira'a ato'a ra 'o tei vai na ia Helamana, 'e 'ua hāponohia atu i rotopū i te mau tamarī'i a te ta'ata nei i te mau fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, maori rā taua mau tufa'a i fa'auehia e Alama ē 'eiaha roa 'ia fa'a'itehia.
- 13 'Āre'a rā, 'ia ha'apa'ohia teie mau mea 'ei mea mo'a e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia hōro'ahia atu i terā u'i 'e i terā u'i ; nō reira, i taua matahiti ra, 'ua hōro'ahia atu te reira ia Helamana, hou te pohera'a o Sibelona.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, i taua matahiti ra, tē vai ra te tahi mau ta'ata 'ōrurehau 'o tei haere atu i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'arepu i te riri i roto ia rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 15 'E i roto ato'a i taua iho matahiti ra, 'ua haere mai rātou 'e te tahi mau nu'u fa'ehau rahi roa nō te 'aro i te mau ta'ata o Moroniha, 'oia ia, i te nu'u fa'ehau o Moroniha, 'e 'ua vī rātou 'e 'ua tūra'i-fa'ahou-hia atu rātou i muri i tō rātou ihora mau fenua ma te pau rahi.
- 16 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 17 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te 'ā'amu a Alama, 'e tā tāna ra tamaiti o Helamana, 'e tā Sibelona ato'a ho'i, te tahi ato'a o tāna tamaiti.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblōn died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblōn to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblōn.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblōn, who was his son.

Te Buka a Helamana

Te 'ā'amu nō te mau 'āti Nephi. Tā rātou mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a, 'e tā rātou mau 'āmabamabara'a. 'E te mau tobura'a ho'i a te mau peropheta mo'a e rave rahi, hou te taera'a mai o te Mesia, mai te au i te mau pāpa'a parau a Helamana, te tamaiti a Helamana, 'e 'ia au ato'a i te mau pāpa'a parau a tāna mau tamari'i tamāroa ē tae noa atu i te taera'a mai o te Mesia. E rave rahi ato'a te mau 'āti Lamana i fa'afāriubia mai. Te 'ā'amu nō tō rātou fa'afāriura'ahia mai. Te 'ā'amu nō te parauti'a o te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'obipa parauti'a 'ore 'e te mau 'obipa vi'ivi'i a te mau 'āti Nephi, mai te au i te pāpa'a parau a Helamana 'e tā tāna ra mau tamari'i tamāroa, ē tae roa mai i te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'e te tabi atu ā ho'i mau parau, 'e 'ua paraubia te reira te buka a Helamana.

Helamana 1

- 1 'E i teienei, inaha, i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te maha 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'ua tupu te hō'ē fifi rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, 'ua pohe 'o Pahorana, 'e i haere na ho'i 'oia nā te 'ē'a o te ao ato'a nei ; nō reira 'ua tupu a'era te hō'ē mārōra'a rahi 'o vai tē tano 'ia fāri'i i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a i rotopū i te mau taea'e, 'oia ho'i i rotopū i te mau tamaiti a Pahorana.
- 3 I teienei o teie te mau i'oa 'o tei mārō 'ia roa'a te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'e 'o tei fa'atupu ato'a ho'i i te mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata : Pahorana, Paanaki, 'e Pakumeni.
- 4 I teienei e 'ere 'o teie ana'e iho te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Pahorana (e rave rahi tāna), 'āre'a rā 'o rātou teie 'o tei mārō nō te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; nō reira, 'ua fa'a'āmahamaha rātou i te mau ta'ata i roto e toru pupu.
- 5 'Āre'a rā, i muri a'era, 'ua mā'itihia Pahorana nā roto i te reo o te mau ta'ata 'ia riro 'ei ha'avā rahi 'e 'ei tāvana rahi i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era Pakumeni ē 'aita roa e roa'a iāna te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'ua 'āmui atu ra 'oia i te reo o te mau ta'ata.

The Book of Helaman

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.

Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

7 Inaha rā, 'ua riri roa a'era Paanaki, 'e te tahi pae o te mau ta'ata 'o tei hina'aro iāna 'ei tāvana rahi nō rātou ; nō reira, 'ua fātata roa 'oia i te manuia i te tāvaimanino i taua mau ta'ata ra 'ia 'aro atu i tō rātou ra mau taea'e.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fātata roa 'oia i te nā reira, inaha, 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu ra 'oia, 'e 'ua ha'avāhia ihora 'oia mai te au i te reo o te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'auto'ahia atu ra 'oia 'ia pohe ; 'e 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te 'ōrurehau 'e 'ua tītau 'ia fa'a'ore i te ti'amāra'a o te mau ta'ata.

9 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata i hina'aro iāna 'ei tāvana rahi nō rātou 'e 'ua fa'auto'ahia 'oia 'ia pohe, nō reira 'ua riri rātou, 'e inaha, 'ua tonu atu ra rātou i te hō'ē ta'ata 'o Kisakumena i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a o Pahorana, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora ia Pahorana 'a pārahi noa ai 'oia i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a.

10 'E 'ua a'ua'uhia atu ra 'oia e te mau tāvini o Pahorana ; inaha rā, nō te 'oi'oi o tō Kisakumena horora'a, 'aita atu ra 'oia i roa'ahia i te ta'ata.

11 'E 'ua horo atu ra 'oia i te feiā i tonu atu iāna, 'e 'ua fa'aa'u a'era rātou pā'āto'a i te hō'ē fafau'a, 'oia ia, ma te tapu nā roto i Tei Hamani ia rātou 'e tei mure 'ore ho'i ē, e'ita roa rātou e fa'a'ite noa atu i te ta'ata ē, nā Kisakumena i taparahi ia Pahorana.

12 Nō reira, 'aita 'o Kisakumena i 'itea i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, nō te mea 'ua huna 'oia i tōna hōho'a mata 'a taparahi ai 'oia ia Pahorana. 'Ua fafau atu ho'i Kisakumena 'e tāna pupu fa'ehau iāna, 'e 'ua 'āmui haere atu rātou ia rātou iho i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia 'iteahia ; 'o tei 'itehia rā, 'ua fa'auto'ahia ia rātou 'ia pohe.

13 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua fa'ata'ahia a'era Pakumeni, mai te au i te reo o te mau ta'ata, 'ei ha'avā rahi 'e 'ei tāvana rahi i ni'a i te mau ta'ata, nō te fa'atere 'ei mono i tōna ra taea'e ia Pahorana ; 'e nōna mau taua tōro'a ra. 'E 'ua ravehia teie mau mea ato'a i te maha 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā ; 'e 'o te hope'a ia nō te reira.

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

14 'E i muri a'era, i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau rahi roa, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ra i te mau mauha'a tama'i ia rātou, te mau 'o'e, te mau simetera, te mau fana, 'e te mau te'a, 'e te mau pāruru upo'o, 'e te mau pāruru 'ōuma, 'e te mau huru pāruru tama'i ato'a.

15 'E 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra rātou i raro nō te 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi. 'E 'ua arata'ihia mai rātou e te hō'ē ta'ata i parauhia o Korianetumera ; 'e e hua'ai 'oia nō Zarahemela ; 'e e ta'ata 'ōrurehau 'oia nō rotopū mai i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e e ta'ata rahi 'oia 'e te pūai ho'i.

16 Nō reira, 'o Tubalota te i'oa o te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e tamaiti 'oia nā Amorona, 'e 'ua mana'o 'oia ē, nō te mea e ta'ata pūai o Korianetumera, e ti'a ia iāna 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi, ma tōna pūai 'e tōna ato'a 'aravihi rahi, 'e nō reira ho'i nā roto i te tonora'a atu iāna, e roa'a iāna te mana i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi—

17 Nō reira 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i tō rātou riri, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua fa'ariro a'era ia Korianetumera 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō rātou, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra ia rātou 'ia haere atu i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi.

18 'E i muri a'era, nō te mārōra'a rahi 'e te mau fifi rahi i tupu i roto i te hau fenua, 'aita rātou i tāpe'a rahi i te mau fa'ehau tīa'i i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela ; i mana'o ho'i rātou ē, e mata'u te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia haere mai i rotopū i tō rātou mau fenua nō te tama'i mai i taua 'oire rahi ra o Zarahemela.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra Korianetumera ma te arata'i i tōna ra nu'u fa'ehau rahi, 'e 'ua 'aro mai ra i te mau ta'ata o te 'oire, 'e e mea 'oi'oi roa tō rātou haerera'a mai, 'e nō reira 'aita a'era i nava'i te taime nō te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia ha'aputupu 'āmui i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

- 20 Nō reira, 'ua taparahi ihora Korianetumera i te mau fa'ehau tīa'i i te 'ūputa o te 'oire, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau pā'āto'a i roto roa i te 'oire, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora rātou i te feiā ato'a i 'aro mai ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua noa'a ia rātou te 'oire tā'āto'a.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo atu ra Pakumeni, 'oia ho'i te ha'avā rahi mai mua atu ia Korianetumera, e tae atu i te 'āua o te 'oire ra. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tūpa'i ihora Korianetumera iāna i ni'a i te 'āua, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua pohe roa atu ra 'oia. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira o te mau mahana o Pakumeni.
- 22 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era Korianetumera ē, 'ua roa'a iāna te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ia 'ite ato'a ho'i 'oia ē 'ua horo 'ē atu te mau 'āti Nephi mai mua atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua taparahihia, 'e 'ua ravehia, 'e 'ua hurihia ho'i i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ua roa'a iāna te ha'apūra'a rahi i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'ua itoito ihora tōna 'ā'au, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fātata 'oia i te 'aro atu i tō te mau fenua ato'a.
- 23 'E i teienei, 'aita 'oia i pārahi noa i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'āre'a rā 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau rahi 'e tae atu ra i te 'oire ra nō 'Auhune ; 'e 'ua 'ōpua ho'i 'oia 'ia haere atu nā tōna 'ē'a ma te fa'ā'ohipa i te 'o'e 'ia roa'a iāna te mau tufa'a fenua i te pae apato'erau.
- 24 'E nō te mea ho'i 'ua mana'o 'oia ē, tei roto roa i te fenua tō rātou pūai rahi, nō reira 'ua haere atu ra 'oia, 'e 'aita a'era tō rātou e taime nō te ha'aputupu ia rātou, maori rā te tahi mau pupu rī'i noa ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te 'aro atu i i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e i te taparahi ia rātou 'ia ma'iri i raro i te repo.
- 25 Inaha rā, nā roto i tō Korianetumera haerera'a nā roto roa i te fenua i upo'oti'a rahi ai Moroniha i ni'a ia rātou, noa atu ā te nūmera rahi o te mau 'āti Nephi i taparahihia.
- 26 Inaha ho'i, 'ua mana'o Moroniha ē, 'aita roa te mau 'āti Lamana e haere nā roto roa i te fenua nō te mata'u, e 'aro mai rā rātou i te mau 'oire i te pae hiti o tō rātou fenua mai tā rātou i nā reira i te mātāmua ra ; nō reira 'ua vaiho Moroniha i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau pūai 'ia tāpe'a noa i te mau vāhi i te pae hiti fenua.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moroniha great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moroniha had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moroniha had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

- 27 Inaha rā, 'aita te mau 'āti Lamana i mata'u mai te au i tōna mana'o, 'ua haere mai rā rātou i roto roa i te fenua, 'e 'ua haru rātou i te 'oire rahi ra o Zarahemela, 'e 'ua haere noa rātou i te mau vāhi ta'ata rahi o te fenua, ma te taparahi rahi i te mau ta'ata, te mau tāne, te mau vahine, 'e te mau tamari'i, 'e ma te haru i te mau 'oire e rave rahi 'e te mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari e rave rahi.
- 28 'Āre'a rā 'ia 'ite a'era Moroniha i te reira, 'ua tono 'oi'oi atu ra 'oia ia Lehi 'e te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau nōna ra 'ia tae i mua mai ia rātou, hou rātou e tae atu ai i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune.
- 29 'E 'ua nā reira 'oia ; 'e 'ua tae 'oia i mua roa i te mau 'āti Lamana hou rātou i tae atu ai i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, 'e 'ua 'aro atu ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amata rātou i te 'ōtohe atu i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela.
- 30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae Moroniha i mua ia rātou i tō rātou 'ōtohera'a, 'e 'ua 'aro atu ra ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua riro te reira 'ei tama'ira'a ha'amani'ira'a toto rahi roa ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi tei taparahihia, 'e i roto i te mau ta'ata i taparahihia tē vai ato'a ra 'o Korianetumera.
- 31 'E i teieni, inaha, 'aita a'era i ti'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia 'ōtohe i te hō'ē a'e vāhi, 'aita i te pae apato'erau, 'aita i te pae apato'a, 'aita i te pae hiti'a o te rā, 'aita i te pae tō'o'a o te rā, 'e 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou i te mau pae ato'a e te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 32 'E 'ua nā reira Korianetumera i te fa'ahaere atu i te mau 'āti Lamana i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e nō reira ho'i tei roto rātou i te mana o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua taparahihia 'oia iho, 'e 'ua riro atu te mau 'āti Lamana i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua roa'a fa'ahou ia Moroniha te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a 'oia i te mau 'āti Lamana i roa'a iāna 'ei feiā mau-'āuri 'ia haere atu i rāpae i te fenua ma te hau.
- 34 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te maha 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Helamana 2

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, i muri iho i tō Moroniha fa'atupu-fa'ahou-ra'a i te hau i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, inaha 'aita roa e ta'ata nō te pārahi i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; nō reira 'ua tupu fa'ahou a'era te mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ē 'o vai te pārahi i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua mā'itihia 'o Helamana, 'oia te tamaiti a Helamana, nā roto i te reo o te mau ta'ata 'ia pārahi i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a.
- 3 Inaha rā, 'ua tāmoemoe Kiskumena, 'o tei taparahi ia Pahorana, 'ia taparahi ato'a ia Helamana ; 'e 'ua tauturuhia 'oia 'e tōna pupu ta'ata, 'o tei fa'aoti i te fafaura'a ē 'eiaha roa te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia 'ite i tāna 'ohipa 'ino.
- 4 Tei reira ho'i te hō'ē ta'ata 'o Gadianetona tōna i'oa, 'e e ta'ata 'aravihi roa 'oia i te mau parau e rave rahi, 'e 'oia ato'a i roto i tāna iho 'ohipa 'ino, nō te rave i te 'ohipa huna nō te taparahi ta'ata 'e te 'eiā tao'a ; nō reira 'ua riro mai ra 'oia 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō te pupu ta'ata o Kiskumena.
- 5 Nō reira 'ua tāvaimanino 'oia ia rātou 'e ia Kiskumena ato'a ho'i, 'oia ho'i, mai te mea e tu'u rātou iāna i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, e hōro'a atu 'oia i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i te mau ta'ata i roto i tāna pupu ta'ata i ni'a te mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua tītau Kiskumena 'ia taparahi ia Helamana.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'a haere atu ai 'oia i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a nō te taparahi ia Helamana, inaha, tē vai ra te hō'ē tāvini o Helamana 'o tei haere i rāpae i te pō ma te fa'ahua ta'ata 'ē, 'e 'ua roa'a iāna te 'ite nō taua mau 'ōpuara'a i fa'anahonahohia e teie pupu ta'ata nō te taparahi ia Helamana—
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fārerei ihora 'oia ia Kiskumena, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra 'oia i te hō'ē tāpa'o iāna ; nō reira 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra Kiskumena iāna i te 'ōpuara'a 'o tāna e hina'aro ra, ma te hina'aro ho'i 'ia arata'i atu 'oia iāna i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia taparahi ia Helamana.

Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

8 'E 'ia 'ite a'era te tāvini o Helamana i te mau mana'o ato'a i roto i te 'ā'au o Kiskumena, 'e i tāna 'ōpuara'a nō te taparahi ta'ata, 'e 'oia ato'a i tāna 'ōpuara'a nō ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a i roto i tāna pupu ta'ata nō te taparahi ta'ata, 'e te 'eiāra'a i te tao'a, 'e te tītaura'a i te mana ('o teie ho'i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a huna, 'e tā rātou pupu 'ohipa huna) 'ua nā 'ō atu ra te tāvini o Helamana ia Kiskumena : Mai e haere taua i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a.

9 I teienei, 'ua māuruuru roa atu ra Kiskumena, i mana'o ho'i 'oia ē, e manuia tāna 'ōpuara'a ; inaha rā, 'a haere atu ai rāua i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'ua pātia ihora te tāvini o Helamana ia Kiskumena i te māfatu, 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora 'oia i raro 'e pohe roa atu ra ma te autā 'ore. 'E 'ua horo atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra ia Helamana i te mau mea ato'a tāna i 'ite mata, i fa'aro'o, 'e i rave.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tonono atu ra Helamana i te tahi mau ta'ata nō te haru mai i taua pupu ta'ata 'eiā ra 'e te mau ta'ata taparahi huna, 'ia taparahihia rātou mai te au i te ture.

11 Inaha rā, 'ia 'ite a'era Gadianetona ē, 'aita Kiskumena i ho'i mai, 'ua mata'u ihora 'oia 'o te pohe roa 'oia ; nō reira 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia pe'e mai tāna pupu ta'ata iāna. 'E 'ua horo atu rātou i rāpae i te fenua nā te hō'ē 'ē'a mo'e ē tae atu ra i te mēdēbara ; 'e nō reira 'ia tonono atu Helamana nō te haru ia rātou, 'aita roa rātou i 'itehia.

12 E riro te tahi atu ā mau parau i te parauhia nō ni'a i teie Gadianetona a muri atu. 'E 'o te hope'a teie nō te maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

13 'E inaha, 'ia tae i te hope'a o teie nei buka, e 'ite ai 'outou ē, 'o taua Gadianetona nei, 'o te tumu mau ia i pau ai, 'oia ia, i pau ai fātata te tā'āto'ara'a nō te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

14 Inaha, 'aita vau e parau nei nō te hope'a o te buka a Helamana, 'āre'a rā tē parau nei au nō te hope'a o te buka a Nephi, 'e nō reira mai ho'i te mau 'ā'amu ato'a tā'u i pāpa'i.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

Helamana 3

- 1 'E i teieni, i muri a'era, i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'aita roa e mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, maori rā 'o te te'ote'o ri'i i roto i tō te 'ēkālesia, i tupu ai te tahi mau 'āmahamahara'a ri'i i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'a'āfarohia taua mau 'ohipa ra i te hope'a nō te maha 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti.
- 2 'E 'aita roa e mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti ; 'aita ato'a i rahi te mārōra'a i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'oia ia, 'ua tupu te mārōra'a rahi 'e te 'āmahamahara'a e rave rahi ; 'e nā roto i te reira 'ua reva atu ra te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua haere atu ra rātou i te fenua i te pae apato'erau nō te pārahi i taua fenua ra.
- 4 'E 'ua haere atu rātou i te vāhi ātea roa, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tae atu ra i te vāhi pape rahi roa 'e te mau 'ānāvai pape e rave rahi.
- 5 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'apurara atu ra rātou nā ni'a i te mau vāhi ato'a o te fenua, i te mau vāhi ato'a i 'ore i fa'aanohia, 'e i 'ore i pau te rā'au i te ta'ata i pārahi i te fenua i muta'a ihora.
- 6 'E i teieni, 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e vāhi o te fenua i ano roa, maori rā nō te rā'au ; 'e nō te rahi ho'i o te pau o te feiā i pārahi na i ni'a te fenua i muta'a ihora i parauhia ai te fenua e fenua ano.
- 7 'E e mea iti roa te mau rā'au i ni'a i te fenua, nō reira 'ua riro atu ra te feiā i haere i reira 'ei feiā 'aravihi i te hāmani i te tīmā ; nō reira, 'ua patu rātou i te mau fare tīmā 'ei fare fa'aeara'a nō rātou.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau rahi rātou, 'e 'ua purara a'era i ni'a te fenua, 'e 'ua haere atu rātou mai te fenua i te pae apato'a ē tae atu i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e 'ua purara noa a'era 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te tae atu i te mau vāhi o te fenua tā'āto'a, mai te moana i te pae apato'a ē tae atu i te moana i te pae apato'erau, 'e mai te moana i te pae tō'o'a o te rā ē tae atu i te moana i te hiti'a o te rā.

Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

9 'E te feiā i haere atu i te fenua i te pae apato'erau 'ua pārahi rātou i roto i te mau ti'ahapa 'e i roto i te mau fare tīmā, 'e 'ua vaiho noa rātou i te mau rā'au e 'ōteo mai i ni'a i te fenua 'ia tupu noa, 'ia roa'a ia rātou a muri atu te mau rā'au nō te hāmani i tō rātou mau fare, 'oia ia, tō rātou mau 'oire, 'e tō rātou mau hiero, tō rātou mau sunago, 'e tō rātou mau fare mo'a, 'e te mau huru fare ato'a ho'i.

10 'E i muri a'era, nō te iti o te rā'au i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'ua ani atu rātou 'ia fa'autahia mai te mau rā'au e rave rahi nā ni'a i te pahī.

11 'E nō reira i ti'a ai i te feiā i te fenua i te pae apato'erau 'ia patu i te mau 'oire e rave rahi i te rā'au 'e i te tīmā ato'a ho'i.

12 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi mau ta'ata o Amona, e mau 'āti Lamana rātou i te fānaura'a, tei haere atu i taua fenua ra.

13 'E i teienei, e rave rahi te mau pāpa'a parau i pāpa'ihia e teie nei mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e nō ni'a te reira i te mau mea i ravehia e teie nei feiā, 'e e mau mea ta'a 'ē roa 'e te rahi nō ni'a iho ia rātou.

14 Inaha rā 'aita roa e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia i roto i teie nei buka te hō'ē tufa'a nō te hānerera'a o te mau mea i ravehia e teie nei feiā, 'oia ia, te 'ā'amu nō te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e tā rātou mau 'arora'a, 'e tā rātou mau mārōra'a, 'e tā rātou mau tāivara'a, 'e tā rātou a'ora'a, 'e tā rātou mau tohura'a, 'e tā rātou mau fa'autara'a tao'a nā ni'a i te pahī, 'e tā rātou hāmanira'a i te mau pahī, 'e tā rātou patura'a i te mau hiero, 'e te mau sunago, 'e te mau fare mo'a, 'e nō tō rātou parauti'a, 'e nō tō rātou parauti'a 'ore, 'e tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e tā rātou mau 'eiāra'a tao'a, 'e tā rātou haru-noa-ra'a i te tao'a, 'e nō te mau huru 'ohipa huna 'e te vi'ivi'i ato'a, 'e te mau 'ohipa tai'ata.

15 Inaha rā, tē vai ra e rave rahi mau buka e mau huru pāpa'a parau ato'a, 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia te pae rahi o te reira 'e te mau 'āti Nephi.

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robberies, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

16 'E 'ua hōro'ahia te reira e te mau 'āti Nephi mai te hō'ē u'i i te tahi, ē tae noa mai 'ua ma'iri rātou i roto i te hara 'e 'ua taparahi-pohe-roa-hia rātou, 'e 'ua haru-noa-hia tā rātou tao'a, 'e 'ua a'ua'uhia, 'e 'ua tīahi-ē-hia, 'e 'ua tā'irihia, 'e 'ua ha'apurarahia i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e 'ua 'āno'i-noa-hia rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana ē tae noa atu 'aita rātou i parau-fa'ahou-hia e mau 'āti Nephi; 'ua riro rā rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore, 'e te 'ōviri, 'e te taehae ho'i, 'oia ia, 'ua riro rātou 'ei mau 'āti Lamana.

17 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i fa'ahou vau i tā'u 'ā'amu; nō reira, te mau mea i parauhia na e au 'ua tupu ia i muri a'e i te mau mārōra'a e rave rahi, 'e te mau fifi, 'e te mau tama'i, 'e te mau tāivara'a ho'i, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

18 'E 'o te hope'a ia nō te maha 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

19 'E i muri a'era, tē vai noa ra ā te mārōra'a rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, 'e 'oia ato'a i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti.

20 'Āre'a rā 'ua pārahi noa Helamana i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ma te parauti'a 'e te fāito ti'a; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i 'oia i te mau ture, 'e te mau parau, 'e te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua; 'e 'ua rave tāmāu noa 'oia i te mea au i mua i te aro o te Atua; 'e 'ua pe'e māite 'oia i te mau haere'a o tōna ra metua tāne, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua manuia 'oia i ni'a i te fenua.

21 'E i muri a'era, e to'opiti āna tamari'i tamāroa. 'Ua topa 'oia i tō te matahiapo i'oa o Nephi, 'e tō te hope'a i'oa o Lehi. 'E 'ua ha'amata a'era rāua i te tupu māite i mua i te Fatu.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aea ri'i ihora te mau tama'i 'e te mau mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, i te pae hope'a nō te maha 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

23 'E i muri a'era, i te maha 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua vai tāmāu noa te hau i ni'a i te fenua, maori rā nō te mau pupu 'ohipa huna i fa'ati'ahia e Gadianetona te ta'ata 'eiā tao'a, i te mau vāhi ta'ata rahi o te fenua; 'e i taua tau ra, 'aita roa rātou i 'itehia e te feiā fa'atere o te hau fenua; nō reira 'aita rātou i ha'amouhia i ni'a i te fenua.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

- 24 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra 'ua manuia rahi roa tō te 'ēkālesia, 'e nō reira ho'i e rave rahi tauatini i 'āmui ia rātou iho i roto i te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ua bāpetizohia nō te tātarahapara'a.
- 25 'E nō te manuia rahi o te 'ēkālesia, 'e nō te rahi o te mau ha'amaita'ira'a i nīni'ihia mai i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata, i māere roa atu ai te mau tahu'a rahi 'e te mau 'orometua.
- 26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua manuia maita'i te 'ohipa a te Fatu i te bāpetizora'a 'e te tāhō'ēra'a mai i te mau vārua e rave rahi 'ahuru tauatini i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua.
- 27 Nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, tē vai nei tō te Fatu aroha i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ti'aoro atu i tōna ra i'oa mo'a ma te 'ā'au hina'aro mau.
- 28 'Oia ia, nō reira tē 'ite ato'a nei tātou ē, tē vai-'iriti-noa-hia nei te 'ūputa o te ao ra i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e 'ia rātou ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i te i'oa o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua.
- 29 'Oia ia, tē 'ite ato'a nei tātou ē, 'o rātou 'o tē hina'aro, e ti'a ia rātou 'ia tāpe'a mai i te parau a te Atua, 'o tei riro 'ei mea ora 'e te pūai rahi, 'e 'o tē fa'ata'a 'ē i te mau mea ha'avare ato'a 'e te mau mārei ato'a 'e te mau 'ōpuara'a 'ino ato'a a te diabolō, 'e 'o tē arata'i i te ta'ata o te Mesia nā ni'a i te 'ē'a piriha'o 'e te oaoa e tae ai i terā pae mai o taua 'ābuso mure 'ore nō te mamae, 'o tei fa'aineinehia nō te horomi'i i te feiā parauti'a 'ore—
- 30 'E e tāpae tō rātou vārua, 'oia ia, tō rātou vārua tāhuti 'ore, i te rima 'atau o te Atua, i te bāsileia o te ao ra, nō te pārahi i raro i pīha'i iho ia Aberahama, 'e Isaaka, 'e Iakoba, 'e i pīha'i iho i tō tātou mau metua mo'a ato'a ra, 'e e 'ore roa e haere fa'ahou i rāpae.
- 31 'E i taua matahiti nei 'ua vai tāmāu noa te 'oa'oa i ni'a i te fenua nō Zarahemela, 'e i roto i te mau retioni ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e i roto i te mau fenua ato'a i pārahia e te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua vai noa te hau 'e te 'oa'oa rahi i roto i te toe'a nō te maha 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua vai noa ato'a te hau 'e te 'oa'oa rahi i te pae 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, inso-much that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto re-pentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

- 33 'E i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua vai noa te hau, maori rā nō te te'ote'o tei ha'amata i te tae ri'i mai i roto i te 'ēkālesia—'eiaha i roto i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua, i roto rā i te 'ā'au o te feiā i fa'ahua melo nō te 'ēkālesia a te Atua—
- 34 'E 'ua fa'ateiteihia rātou i roto i te te'ote'o ē tae noa atu i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a i tō rātou mau taea'e e rave rahi. I teienei e 'ino rahi teie, i ro'ohia ai te pae rahi o te feiā ha'eha'a i te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a rahi, 'e i haere ai rātou nā roto i te mau 'ati e rave rahi.
- 35 'Āre'a rā 'ua ha'apae pinepine 'e 'ua pure pinepine rātou, 'e 'ua tupu pūai roa a'era tō rātou ha'eha'a, 'e 'ua pa'ari roa a'era tō rātou fa'aro'o i te Mesia, ē tae noa atu 'ua 'ī tō rātou vārua i te 'oa'oa 'e te hau, 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu 'ua mā roa 'e 'ua mo'a tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua noa'a mai taua mo'ara'a ra nō te mea 'ua hōro'a rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i te Atua.
- 36 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope ato'a te pae 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti i roto i te hau, maori rā 'o te te'ote'o rahi tei ō i roto i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata ; 'e nō tā rātou mau tao'a rahi roa 'e tō rātou manuia i ni'a i te fenua i tupu ai te reira ; 'e 'ua tupu noa te reira i ni'a iho ia rātou i terā mahana 'e i terā mahana.
- 37 'E i muri a'era, i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua pohe ihora Helamana, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora tāna tamaiti matahiapo ra 'o Nephi i te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a atu 'oia i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ma te parauti'a 'e te fāito tia ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i 'oia i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, 'e 'ua haere 'oia i te mau haere'a o tōna ra metua tāne.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

Helamana 4

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti 'ua tupu te mau 'āmahamahara'a e rave rahi i roto i te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ua tupu ato'a te mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tupu te ha'amani'ira'a rahi i te toto.
- 2 'E 'ua taparahihia 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia te mau ta'ata 'ōrurehau i rāpae i te fenua, 'e 'ua haere atu rātou i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāmata a'era rātou 'ia fa'ati'arepu i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi; inaha rā, 'ua mata'u roa te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita roa rātou i fa'aro'o i te mau parau a taua feiā 'ōrurehau ra.
- 4 'Āre'a rā, i muri a'era, i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua haere atu ra te tahi mau ta'ata 'ōrurehau nō roto mai i te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau 'āti Lamana; 'e 'ua manuia ihora rātou 'e tō rātou mau hoa ato'a i te fa'atupura'a i tō rātou riri i te mau 'āti Nephi; 'e tē fa'aineine ra rātou pā'āto'a i taua matahiti ra nō te 'aro atu.
- 5 'E i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, 'ua haere mai ra rātou e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te 'ohipa nō te pohe; 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua roa'a ia rātou te fenua ra nō Zarahemela; 'oia ia, 'e te mau fenua ato'a ē tae noa atu i te fenua i fātata i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune.
- 6 'E 'ua tīahihia atu te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Moroniha ē tae roa atu i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune.
- 7 'E i taua vāhi ra 'ua ha'apa'ari rātou nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, mai te moana i te tō'o'a o te rā ē tae noa atu i te moana i te hiti'a o te rā; e hō'ē mahana tā'āto'a nō te hō'ē ta'ata 'āti Nephi 'ia haere atu i reira, i te vāhi tā rātou i ha'apa'ari 'e i ha'aputupu i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau nō te pāruru i tō rātou fenua i te pae apato'erau.
- 8 'E nō reira 'ua roa'a i te mau ta'ata 'ōrurehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, nā roto i te tauturura'a a te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana fenua ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi i te pae apato'a. 'E 'ua tupu teie mau mea i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma va'u 'e i te pae 'ahuru 'e ma i va o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

9 'E i muri a'era i te ono 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua manuia o Moroniha ma te tauturuhia e tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia rave mai i te mau tufa'a e rave rahi o te fenua ; 'oia ia, 'ua roa'a fa'ahou ia rātou te mau 'oire e rave rahi i ma'iri i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana.

10 'E i muri a'era, i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua manuia rātou 'ia fāri'i fa'ahou mai i te 'āfara'a o tō rātou mau fenua.

11 I teienei, teie pau rahi o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e te rahi ho'i o te mau ta'ata i taparahihia i rotopū ia rātou, e'ita roa ia te reira e tupu 'āhiri ē 'aita te parauti'a 'ore 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i vai na i rotopū ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e tei rotopū ato'a ho'i te reira ia rātou 'o tei parau ē, nō roto rātou i te 'ēkālesia a te Atua.

12 'E nō te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au, nō tā rātou mau tao'a rahi, 'oia ia, nō tā rātou hāmani-'ino-ra'a i te feiā veve, nō tā rātou tāpe'ara'a i tā rātou mā'a i tei po'ia, nō tā rātou tāpe'ara'a i tō rātou 'ahu i tei taha'a noa, 'e nō tā rātou motora'a i tō rātou mau taea'e ha'eha'a i te pāpāri'a, nō tō rātou tahitohitora'a i tei mo'a ra, nō tā rātou hunara'a i te Vārua nō te tohu 'e te heheura'a, nō te taparahira'a i te ta'ata, te harura'a i te tao'a, te ha'avarera'a, te 'eiāra'a, te fa'aturi, te fa'atupura'a i te mau mārōra'a rahi, 'e nō te fa'aru'era'a nō te haere atu i te fenua ra nō Nephi, i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana—

13 'E nō tō rātou parauti'a 'ore rahi, 'e tā rātou fa'aahaahara'a i tō rātou iho pūai, i vaiihohia ai rātou i tō rātou iho pūai ; nō reira 'aita rātou i manuia, 'ua ro'ohia rā rātou i te 'ati 'e 'ua tā'irihia, 'e 'ua tīahi 'ē-hia atu i mua i te mau 'āti Lamana, ē tae noa atu 'ua riro 'ē atu te pae rahi o tō rātou mau fenua.

14 Inaha rā, 'ua a'o atu Moroniha i te mau mea e rave rahi i te mau ta'ata nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'e 'ua a'o ato'a atu 'o Nephi rāua 'o Lehi, nā tamaiti a Helamana, i te mau mea e rave rahi i te mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua tohu atu rāua i te mau mea e rave rahi ia rātou nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e i te mau mea e tupu i ni'a ia rātou mai te mea 'aita rātou e tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tātarahapa rātou, e mai te au i tā rātou tātarahapara'a, 'ua ha'amata rātou i te manuia.
- 16 Nō te mea i tō Moroniha 'itera'a ē 'ua tātarahapa rātou, 'ua tāmata 'oia i te arata'i atu ia rātou i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, 'e i terā 'oire 'e i terā 'oire, ē tae noa atu 'ua roa'a fa'ahou ia rātou te hō'ē 'āfara'a nō tā rātou mau tao'a 'e te hō'ē 'āfara'a nō tō rātou mau fenua.
- 17 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te ono 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'aita a'era i roa'a fa'ahou mai ia Moroniha te mau vāhi i riro na i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 19 Nō reira 'ua fa'a'ore rātou i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a 'ia rave mai i te toe'a o tō rātou mau fenua, nō te rahi ho'i o te mau 'āti Lamana 'aita atu ra i ti'a i te mau 'āti Nephi 'ia fāri'i i te mana i ni'a ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua fa'a'ohipa Moroniha i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau ato'a nō te pāruru i te mau vāhi i roa'a mai iāna ra.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, nō te rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ua tupu ihora tō te mau 'āti Nephi mata'u rahi, 'o te ha'avīhia rātou, 'e 'o te ta'ata'ahihia i raro, 'e 'o te taparahihia, 'e 'o te ha'amouhia.
- 21 'Oia ia, 'ua ha'amana'o ihora rātou i te mau parau tohu a Alama, 'e te mau parau ato'a a Mosia ; 'e 'ua 'ite a'era rātou ē, e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta rātou, 'e 'ua ha'afaufa'a 'ore rātou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.
- 22 'E 'ua fa'ahuru 'ē 'e 'ua ta'ata'ahi rātou i raro a'e i tō rātou 'āvae i te mau ture a Mosia, 'e 'aore rā i tā te Fatu i fa'aue atu iāna 'ia hōro'a atu i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua 'ite rātou ē, 'ua ha'avi'ivi'ihia tā rātou mau ture, 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua riro rātou 'ei mea parauti'a 'ore mai te mau 'āti Lamana ra.
- 23 'E nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'ua ha'amata te 'ēkālesia i te paruparu ; 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te ti'aturi 'ore i te vārua nō te tohu 'e te vārua nō te heheura'a, 'e tei mua ti'a atu te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua i tō rātou aro.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inas-much as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

- 24 'E 'ua 'ite rātou ē, 'ua paruparu rātou mai tō rātou ra mau taea'e, i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'aita atu ra te Vārua o te Fatu i fa'aherehere ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aātea 'ē atu te reira ia rātou nō te mea e 'ore roa te Vārua o te Fatu e pārahi i roto i te mau hiero vi'ivi'i—
- 25 Nō reira 'ua fa'aea te Fatu i te fa'aherehere ia rātou nā roto i tōna mana semeio 'e te mana fāito 'ore ; nō te mea 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā ti'aturi 'ore 'e te parauti'a 'ore rahi ; 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a rātou ē, 'ua rahi roa atu te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia 'ati māite atu i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, e pau roa ia rātou i te pohe e ti'a ai.
- 26 Inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite rātou ē, 'ua au tō te mau 'āti Lamana pūai i tō rātou, tō te hō'ē ta'ata i tō te hō'ē ta'ata. 'E nō reira 'ua topa rātou i roto i teie nei hara rahi ; 'oia ia, nō reira 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā paruparu, nō tā rātou hara, 'e 'aita ho'i te mau matahiti i pau 'a hope ai teie nei mau mea i te tupu.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

Helamana 5

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra, inaha, 'ua hōro'a atu ra Nephi i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a i te hō'ē ta'ata, 'o Kezorama tōna i'oa.
- 2 'Ua fa'ati'ahia ho'i tā rātou mau ture 'e tō rātou mau hau fenua nā roto i te reo o te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'o rātou tei mā'iti i te 'ino, 'ua hau ia i te rahi i tei mā'iti i te maita'i ; nō reira 'ua ineine rātou nō te ha'amoura'a, nō te mea 'ua ha'avi'ivi'ihia te mau ture.
- 3 'Oia ia, e 'ere i te reira ana'e ra ; e feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta ho'i rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita rātou e ti'a 'ia fa'aterehia e te ture 'e te parauti'a, maori rā 'ia ha'amouhia rātou.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fiu Nephi i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; 'e 'ua ha'apae atu ra 'oia i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'e 'ua 'ōpua 'oia i te a'o atu i te parau a te Atua ē hope roa a'e tōna ra mau mahana ; 'e 'ua nā reira ato'a tōna taea'e o Lehi, ē hope roa a'e tōna ra mau mahana.
- 5 'Ua ha'amana'o ho'i rāua i te mau parau tā tō rāua metua tāne o Helamana i parau ia rāua. 'E 'o teie te mau parau tāna i parau mai :
- 6 Inaha, e tā'u nā tamaiti, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia ha'amana'o 'ōrua 'ia ha'apa'o maita'i i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua ; 'e tē hina'aro nei au 'ia a'o atu 'ōrua i teie mau parau i te mau ta'ata. Inaha, 'ua topa atu vau i te i'oa o tō tātou nā metua mātāmua i ni'a iho ia 'ōrua, 'e 'ua haere mai rātou mai te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā ; 'e 'ua nā reira vau, nō te mea 'ia ha'amana'o 'ōrua i tō 'ōrua i'oa e ha'amana'o ato'a 'ōrua i tā rāua mau 'ohipa ; 'e 'ia ha'amana'o 'ōrua i tā rāua mau 'ohipa, e 'ite ato'a 'ōrua i tei parauhia 'e tei pāpa'ihia ho'i, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, e nā ta'ata maitata'i rāua.
- 7 Nō reira, e tā'u nā tamaiti, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia rave 'ōrua i te mea maita'i, 'ia parauhia 'e 'ia pāpa'i-ato'a-hia te parau nō ni'a ia 'ōrua mai tei parauhia 'e tei pāpa'ihia nō ni'a ia rāua.

Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

8 'E i teienei, e tā'u nā tamaiti, inaha, tē hina'aro nei au i te tahi atu mau mea ia 'ōrua, 'e teie taua hina'aro ra, 'eiaha roa 'ōrua e rave i teie mau mea nō te fa'ate'ote'o ia 'ōrua, 'ia rave rā 'ōrua i teie mau mea nō te ha'apu'e i te tao'a rahi nā 'ōrua i te ao ra, 'oia ia, 'o tei riro 'ei mea mure 'ore, 'e tē 'ore roa e māhe'ahe'a atu ; 'oia ia, 'ia roa'a ia 'ōrua taua hōro'ara'a fa'ahiahia roa nō te ora mure 'ore, 'o tā tātou ho'i i mana'o ē 'ua hōro'ahia i tō tātou mau metua.

9 'A ha'amana'o, 'a ha'amana'o e tā'u nā tamaiti, i te mau parau tā te ari'i Beniamina i parau atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'a ha'amana'o ē 'aita atu e rāve'a e ti'a ai i te mau ta'ata 'ia fa'aorahia, maori rā nā roto i te toto tāra'ehara nō Iesu Mesia, 'o tē haere mai ; 'oia ia, 'a ha'amana'o, e haere mai 'oia nō te fa'aora i tō teie nei ao.

10 'E 'a ha'amana'o ato'a i te mau parau tā Amuleka i parau atu ia Zeezeroma i roto i te 'oire ra nō Amoniha ; 'e 'ua parau atu 'oia iāna ē, e haere mai te Fatu nō te fa'aora i tōna mau ta'ata ; 'āre'a rā 'aita 'oia e haere mai nō te fa'aora ia rātou i roto i tā rātou mau hara, e fa'aora rā 'oia ia rātou mai roto mai i tā rātou ra mau hara.

11 'E e mana tōna i hōro'ahia mai iāna e te Metua nō te fa'aora ia rātou i tā rātou mau hara maoti ho'i te tātarahapara'a ; nō reira, 'ua tonu mai 'oia i tāna mau melahi nō te fa'a'ite mai i te mau parau tumu nō te tātarahapara'a, e tae ai rātou i raro a'e i te mana nō te Tāra'ehara, 'e i te fa'aorara'a o tō rātou vārua.

12 'E i teienei, e tā'u nā tamaiti, 'a ha'amana'o, 'a ha'amana'o, e mea ti'a roa ia 'ōrua 'ia ha'amaui i tō 'ōrua niu i ni'a i te papa o tō tātou Tāra'ehara, 'o te Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua ; 'e 'ia fa'atae mai te diabolō i tāna ra mau mata'i 'ū'ana, 'oia ia, 'e tāna mau 'ohe nā roto i te pūāhiohio, 'oia ia, 'e 'ia ma'iri mai te tā'āto'ara'a nō tāna ra ūa pa'ari, 'e tāna vero rahi i ni'a iho ia 'ōrua, 'aita roa tō te reira e mana i ni'a iho ia 'ōrua, nō te huti ia 'ōrua i raro i te 'ābuso nō te mamae 'e te 'oto hope 'ore, maoti ho'i te papa i ni'a iho 'ōrua i te patuhia, e niu pāpū ho'i, 'e mai te mea e patu te ta'ata ia rātou i ni'a i taua niu ra, e 'ore ia rātou e ma'iri i raro.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'o teie te mau parau tā Helamana i ha'api'i atu i tāna nā tamaiti ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'api'i 'oia ia rāua i te mau mea e rave rahi 'o tei 'ore i pāpa'ihia, 'e i te mau mea e rave rahi ato'a 'o tei pāpa'ihia.
- 14 'E 'ua ha'amana'o rāua i tāna mau parau ; 'e nō reira 'ua haere atu ra rāua ma te ha'apa'o maita'i i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, nō te ha'api'i i te parau a te Atua i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, ma te ha'amata i te 'oire ra nō 'Auhune ;
- 15 'E mai reira mai ē tae atu i te 'oire nō Gida ; 'e mai te 'oire mai o Gida ē tae atu i te 'oire nō Muleka ;
- 16 'E mai te tahi 'oire i te tahi 'oire, ē tae noa atu 'ua tae rāua i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o Nephi i te fenua i te pae apato'a ; 'e mai reira atu i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'o atu rāua ma te mana rahi, 'e nō reira 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu rāua i te hape o rātou e rave rahi tei 'ōrurehau 'e 'o tei haere mai mai roto mai i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e nō reira 'ua haere mai ra rātou 'e 'ua fā'i mai ra i tā rātou mau hara 'e 'ua bāpetizohia nō te tātarahapara'a, 'e 'ua ho'i 'oi'oi atu ra i te mau 'āti Nephi ra nō te tāmata 'ia fa'a'ore i te mau mea hape 'o tā rātou i rave.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'o atu ra Nephi rāua 'o Lehi i te mau 'āti Lamana ma te mana rahi 'e te ha'amanara'a rahi, 'e 'ua hōro'ahia te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a ia rāua 'ia ti'a ia rāua 'ia paraparau atu ; 'e 'ua hōro'a-ato'a-hia mai ia rāua te mau mea tā rāua e parau atu—
- 19 Nō reira 'ua paraparau atu rāua, i tupu ai tō te mau 'āti Lamana māere rahi, 'e i fa'afāriuhia mai ai rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua bāpetizohia ihora nō te tātarahapara'a te mau 'āti Lamana e va'u tauatini nō te fenua ra nō Zarahemela 'e tō reira mau fenua, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū ihora rātou i te parauti'a 'ore nō te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, mai reira atu 'ua haere atu ra Nephi rāua 'o Lehi i te fenua ra nō Nephi.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haruhia ihora rāua e te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua hurihia atu ra i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'oia ia, i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a i hurihia ai Amona 'e tōna ra mau taea'e ato'a e te mau tāvini o Limehi ra.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

- 22 'E i muri iho i tō rāua hurira'ahia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a nō nā mahana e rave rahi ma te mā'a 'ore, inaha, 'ua haere mai ra rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a nō te rave ia rāua 'e nō te taparahi ia rāua.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'a'ati-roa-hia ihora Nephi rāua 'o Lehi i te hō'ē mea mai te auahi ra te huru, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua mata'u a'era rātou 'ia haru mai ia rāua, 'o te 'ama rātou iho. 'Āre'a rā 'aita roa atu Nephi rāua 'o Lehi i 'ama noa a'e ; 'e tē ti'a ra rāua mai te mea ra ē, tei roto roa rāua i te auahi, 'e 'aita roa rāua i 'ama noa a'e.
- 24 'E 'ia 'ite a'era rāua ē, 'ua ha'a'atihia rāua i te pou auahi, 'e 'aita rāua e 'ama ra, 'ua itoito a'era tō rāua 'ā'au.
- 25 'Ua 'ite ho'i rāua ē, tē mata'u ra te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia haru mai ia rāua ; 'e tē mata'u ato'a ra ho'i rātou 'ia ha'afātata mai ia rāua, 'āre'a rā 'ua ti'a noa rātou mai te mea ra ē, 'ua tā'iri-vava-hia rātou i te māere rahi.
- 26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a a'era Nephi rāua 'o Lehi, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te parau atu ia rātou, nā 'ō atu ra : 'Eiaha e mata'u, inaha ho'i, nā te Atua i fa'a'ite mai i teie mea ta'a 'ē ia 'outou na, 'e tē fa'a'ite ra ho'i te reira ē, e 'ore roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'atae mai i tō 'outou rima i ni'a ia māua nō te taparahi ia māua.
- 27 'E inaha, 'ia oti a'era tā rāua paraura'a mai i teie mau parau, 'ua 'āueue roa ihora te fenua, 'e 'ua 'āueue ho'i te mau papa'i o te fare tāpe'ara'a, mai te mea ra ē 'ua fātata roa te reira i te ma'iri i raro i te repo ; inaha rā, 'aita te reira i ma'iri i raro. 'E inaha, 'o rātou tei roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a 'o te mau 'āti Lamana ia, 'e te mau 'āti Nephi tei 'ōrurehau.
- 28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāpo'ihia rātou e te hō'ē ata pōiri, 'e 'ua tae mai te mata'u ahoaho rahi i ni'a ia rātou.
- 29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē reo mai te mea ra ē nō ni'a mai ia i taua ata pouri ra, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'A tātarahapa 'outou, 'a tātarahapa 'outou, 'eiaha e tītau fa'ahou 'ia ha'amou i tō'u mau tāvini, 'o tā'u i tonu atu ia 'outou nō te fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou i te mau parau maitata'i.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era rātou i teie nei reo, 'e 'ia 'ite a'era ē, e 'ere ia i te reo mai te pātiri, 'e e 'ere ato'a ho'i i te reo mai te hō'ē haruru rahi ra ; inaha rā e reo ha'iha'i 'e te marū roa, mai te mea ra ē, 'o te hō'ē parau iti ha'iha'i nei, 'e 'ua ha'aputa roa te reira i te vārua—

31 'E noa atu ā te marū o te reo, inaha, 'ua 'āueue rahi te fenua, 'e 'ua 'āueue fa'ahou te mau papa'i o te fare tāpe'ara'a, mai te mea ra ē, 'ua fātata te reira i te ma'iri i raro i te repo ; 'e inaha, 'aita roa te ata pōiri 'o tei tāpo'i ia rātou i pe'e 'ē atu—

32 'E inaha, 'ua tae fa'ahou mai ra te reo, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'A tātarahapa 'outou, 'a tātarahapa 'outou, tē fātata mai nei ho'i te bāsileia o te ao ra ; 'e 'eiaha e tītau fa'ahou 'ia ha'amou i tō'u mau tāvini. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'āueue fa'ahou ihora te fenua, 'e 'ua 'āueue te mau papa'i fare.

33 'E 'ua tae fa'ahou mai ra te reo i te toru o te taime, 'e 'ua parau mai ra i te tahi mau parau fa'ahiahia ia rātou 'o tē 'ore e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia fa'ahiti ; 'e 'ua 'āueue fa'ahou ihora te mau papa'i fare, 'e 'ua 'āueue te fenua mai te mea ē, 'ua fātata te reira i te 'āfāfā.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa e ti'a i te mau 'āti Lamana 'ia horo nō te ata pōiri 'o tē tāpo'i ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e 'aita ato'a e ti'a ia rātou 'ia haere nō te mata'u i tae mai i ni'a ia rātou.

35 I teienei, tē vai ra te hō'ē i rotopū ia rātou 'o tei fānauhia e 'āti Nephi, i riro na ho'i 'oia i te mātāmua 'ei melo nō te 'ekālesia a te Atua, 'ua tāiva rā 'oia ia rātou.

36 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fāriu mai ra 'oia, 'e inaha, 'ua 'ite 'oia nā roto i te ata pōiri i te mata o Nephi rāua 'o Lehi ; 'e inaha, 'ua 'ana'ana rahi mai te reira mai te mata o te mau melahi ra. 'E 'ua 'ite 'oia ē tē nānā atu ra rāua i tō rāua mata i ni'a i te ra'i ; 'e tē ti'a ra rāua mai te mea ra ē, tē paraparau ra 'e 'aore rā tē fa'ateitei ra rāua i tō rāua reo i te hō'ē mea e hi'ohia ra e rāua.

37 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro a'era teie nei ta'ata i te mau ta'ata 'ia fāriu mai rātou 'e 'ia hi'o. 'E inaha, 'ua hōro'ahia mai te mana ia rātou 'ia fāriu 'e 'ia hi'o ; 'e 'ua hi'o a'era rātou i te mata o Nephi rāua 'o Lehi.

38 'E 'ua nā 'ō a'era rātou i taua ta'ata ra : Inaha, e aha te aura'a o teie nei mau mea pā'āto'a 'e 'o vai teie tā teie nā ta'ata e paraparau ra ?

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

39 I teienei, 'o Aminadaba te i'oa o taua ta'ata ra. 'E 'ua parau atu ra Aminadaba ia rātou nā 'ō atu ra : Tē paraparau ra rāua i te mau melahi a te Atua.

40 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana iāna : E aha tā tātou e rave, 'ia 'iriti-'ē-hia atu teie nei ata pōiri 'o tē tāpo'i nei ia tātou ?

41 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Aminadaba ia rātou : 'Ia tātarahapa 'outou e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia ti'aoro atu i te reo ra ē tae noa atu 'ua roa'a ia 'outou te fa'aro'o i te Mesia, 'o tei ha'api'ihia mai ia 'outou e Alama rātou 'o Amuleka, 'e 'o Zeezeroma ; 'e 'ia nā reira 'outou, e 'iriti-'ē-hia atu teie nei ata pōiri 'o tē tāpo'i nei ia 'outou.

42 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou pā'āto'a i te ti'aoro atu i te reo nōna 'o tei fa'a'āueue i te fenua ; 'oia ia, 'ua ti'aoro a'era rātou ē tae roa atu 'ua pe'e 'ē atu te ata pōiri.

43 'E i muri a'era, 'ia nānā a'era rātou i tō rātou mata, 'e 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'ua pe'e 'ē atu te ata pōiri 'o tei tāpo'i ia rātou, inaha, 'ua 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou tāta'ihō'ē, 'oia ia te ta'ata tataitāhō'ē, 'e te hō'ē pou auahi.

44 'E tei rotopū Nephi rāua 'o Lehi ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou ē 'ati noa a'e ; 'oia ia, e au ra ē tei roto rātou i te hō'ē auahi 'ama, 'aita rā rātou i pa'apa'a, 'e 'aita ato'a te papa'i fare o te fare tāpe'ara'a i pa'apa'a ; 'e 'ua 'i roa rātou i taua 'oa'oa ra 'o tē 'ore roa e ti'a 'ia parauhia 'e 'o tei 'i ho'i i te hanahana.

45 'E inaha, 'ua pou mai ra te Vārua Mo'a o te Atua mai te ra'i mai, 'e 'ua ō mai ra i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua 'i ihora rātou i te mea mai te auahi ra te huru, 'e 'ua ti'a a'era ia rātou 'ia parau i te mau parau fa'ahiahia.

46 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē reo ia rātou, 'oia ia, te hō'ē reo au roa, 'e mai te mea ra ē, e reo marū iti ha'iha'i, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :

47 'Ei hau, 'ei hau tō 'outou, nō tō 'outou fa'aro'o i tā'u Here Rahi ra, 'o tei vai na mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei.

48 'E i teienei, 'ia fa'aro'o a'era rātou i te reira, 'ua nānā a'era rātou i tō rātou mata i ni'a 'e 'ua hi'o atu ra i te vāhi nō reira mai taua reo ra ; 'e inaha, 'ua 'ite atu ra rātou i te mau ra'i i te vēteara'a ; 'e 'ua pou mai ra te mau melahi nō te ra'i mai 'e 'ua poihere mai ra ia rātou.

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

49 E toru hānere ti'ahapa ta'ata i hi'o ee i fa'aro'o i taua mau mea ra ; 'e 'ua fa'auehia mai ra rātou 'ia haere atu 'e 'eiaha e māere, 'e 'eiaha ato'a rātou e fē'a'a.

50 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou, 'e 'ua ha'api'i atu ra i te mau ta'ata, ma te fa'a'ite atu ē 'ati noa a'e te mau retioni ato'a i te mau mea tā rātou i fa'aro'o 'e i hi'o, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ti'aturi te pae rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana i te reira, nō te rahi o te mau 'ite i noa'a mai ia rātou ra.

51 'E 'ua ha'apae ihora te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi mai i tā rātou parau i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e i tō rātou au 'ore 'e te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua.

52 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hōro'a atu ra rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi i tō rātou ra mau fenua.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

Helamana 6

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope a'era te ono 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua tupu ihora teie nei mau mea, 'e 'ua riro ihora te pae rahi o te mau 'āti Lamana 'ei feiā parauti'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua hau atu tō rātou parauti'a i tō te mau 'āti Nephi, nō tō rātou ha'apa'o maīta'i 'e tō rātou itoito i roto i te fa'aro'o.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, e rave rahi tō te mau 'āti Nephi tei riro 'ei feiā 'eta'eta 'e te tātarahapa 'ore 'e te parauti'a 'ore, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua pāto'i rātou i te parau a te Atua 'e te mau parau ato'a i a'ohia 'e i tohuhia 'o tei tae mai i rotopū ia rātou.
- 3 'Āre'a rā, 'ua rahi roa te 'oa'oa o te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia nō te mea 'ua fa'afāriuhia mai te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'oia ia, nō te mea 'ua fa'ati'ahia te 'ēkālesia a te Atua i rotopū ia rātou. 'E 'ua aupuru rātou te tahi i te tahi, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa te tahi i te tahi, 'e 'ua fāri'i i te 'oa'oa rahi.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana e rave rahi i raro i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra i te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi i te huru o tō rātou fa'afāriura'ahia mai, 'e 'ua a'o mai ra ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te fa'aro'o 'e 'ia tātarahapa.
- 5 'Oia ia, e rave rahi tei a'o mai ma te mana rahi 'e te ha'amanara'a rahi, ē tae roa atu 'ua fa'ahaerehia e rave rahi i raro roa i te ha'eha'a, 'ia riro 'ei mau ta'ata ha'eha'a 'o tei pe'e atu i te Atua 'e te 'Ārenio.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi te mau 'āti Lamana tei haere i te fenua i te pae apato'erau ; 'e 'ua haere ato'a atu 'o Nephi rāua 'o Lehi i te fenua i te pae apato'erau nō te a'o atu i te mau ta'ata. 'E nō reira 'o te hope'a te reira nō te ono 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti.
- 7 'E inaha, 'ua tupu te hau i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua haere noa te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau vāhi ato'a 'o tā rātou i hina'aro, i rotopū ānei i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e 'aore rā i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere ato'a te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau vāhi tā rātou i hina'aro, i rotopū ānei i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'aore rā i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e nō reira 'ua fārerei noa atu te tahi i te tahi, 'ua ho'o mai 'e 'ua ho'o atu, 'e 'ua noa'a te tao'a mai te au i tō rātou hina'aro.

Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, inso-much that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, inso-much that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, inso-much that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riro atu ra rātou 'ei feiā tao'a rahi, te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te mau 'āti Nephi ato'a ho'i ; 'e 'ua rahi roa tā rātou 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau huru metalo maitata'i ato'a, i te fenua i te pae apato'a 'e i te fenua i te pae apato'erau ato'a ho'i.
- 10 I teienei, 'ua pi'ihia te fenua i te pae apato'a 'o Lehi, 'e 'ua pi'ihia te fenua i te pae apato'erau 'o Muleka, 'ia au i te i'oa o te tamaiti a Zedekia ; 'e 'ua arata'i mai ho'i te Fatu ia Muleka i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e 'ia Lehi i te fenua i te pae apato'a.
- 11 'E inaha, tē vai ra te mau huru 'auro ato'a i ni'a i teie nā fenua e piti, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau huru 'ōfa'i metalo ato'a ; 'e tei reira ato'a te mau ta'ata 'aravihi i te rave i te 'ohipa, 'e 'ua 'ohipa rātou i te mau huru 'ōfa'i metalo ato'a 'e 'ua tāmā roa i te reira ; 'e nō reira 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā 'ona.
- 12 'E 'ua fa'a'apu rahi rātou i te sītona i te fenua i te pae apato'erau 'e i te pae apato'a ato'a ; 'e 'ua ruperupe maita'i te reira i te fenua i te pae apato'erau 'e i te pae apato'a ato'a ho'i. 'E 'ua tupu rātou i te rahi 'e i te pūai roa i ni'a i te fenua. 'E 'ua fa'a'amu rātou e rave rahi mau nana māmoe 'e mau nana pua'atoro, 'oia ia, 'e e rave rahi mau pua'atoro poria.
- 13 Inaha, 'ua rave tā rātou mau vahine i te 'ohipa 'e 'ua nino rātou, 'e 'ua hāmani rātou i te mau huru 'ahu ato'a, 'e te 'ahu paruai maita'i roa 'e te mau huru 'ahu ato'a nō te fa'a'ahu i tō rātou tino vai taha'a noa. 'E nō reira 'ua hope a'era te ono 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti ma te hau.
- 14 'E 'ia tae a'era i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti 'ua fāri'i rātou i te 'oa'oa rahi 'e te hau ; 'oia ia, te mau a'ora'a e rave rahi 'e te mau tohura'a e rave rahi nō ni'a i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu. 'E nō reira 'ua hope a'era te ono 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, inaha, 'ua taparahihia ihora Kezorama e te rima 'itea-ore-hia 'a pārahi noa ai 'oia i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a. 'E i muri a'era, i taua ato'a iho matahiti ra, 'ua taparahi-ato'a-hia tāna tamaiti, 'o tei mā'itihia e te mau ta'ata 'ei mono nōna. 'E nō reira 'ua hope a'era te ono 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

16 'E i te ha'amatarā'a nō te ono 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, 'ua ha'amata te ta'ata i te pūai fa'ahou i roto i te parauti'a 'ore roa.

17 Inaha ho'i, 'ua ha'amaita'i maoro te Fatu ia rātou i te mau tao'a rahi nō teie nei ao, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i fa'ati'arepuhia 'ia fa'atupu i te riri, i te mau tama'i, 'e i te ha'amani'i i te toto ; nō reira, 'ua ha'amata ihora tō rātou 'ā'au i te nounou i tā rātou iho mau tao'a ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te tītau rahi atu ā i te faufa'a 'ia fa'ateiteihia rātou te tahi i ni'a a'e i te tahi ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te taparahi huna noa i te ta'ata, 'e i te rave huna noa 'e i te haru noa, 'ia roa'a tā rātou faufa'a.

18 'E i teienei inaha, nō roto mai teie mau ta'ata taparahi ta'ata 'e teie mau ta'ata 'eiā haru i te hō'ē pupu ta'ata i fa'anahonahohia e Kiskumena rāua 'o Gadianetona. 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, tē vai nei e rave rahi ta'ata, ē tae noa atu i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi iho, nō roto mai i te pupu a Gadianetona. Inaha rā, te pae rahi roa o taua mau ta'ata ra, nō roto ia i te feiā parauti'a 'ore roa o te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E 'ua parauhia rātou te mau ta'ata 'eiā haru 'e te mau ta'ata taparahi ta'ata nā Gadianetona.

19 'E nā rātou ho'i i taparahi i te ha'avā rahi ra 'o Kezorama, 'e tāna ho'i tamaiti, 'a pārahi noa ai rāua i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; 'e inaha, 'aita roa rātou i 'itehia.

20 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Lamana ē, tē vai ra te feiā 'eiā haru i rotopū ia rātou 'ua 'oto roa ihora rātou ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ohipa rātou i te mau rāve'a ato'a i roto i tō rātou mana nō te ha'amou ia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.

21 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'ati'arepu Sātane i te 'ā'au o te pae rahi o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua 'āmui atu ra rātou i te mau pupu 'eiā haru, 'e 'ua fa'aaui ihora i tā rātou mau fafaura'a 'e tā rātou mau tapura'a, 'ia pāroru 'e 'ia fa'aora te tahi i te tahi i te mau vāhi i fifihia ai rātou ra, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tāho'ohia nō tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e tā rātou mau 'eiā-haru-ra'a, 'e tā rātou mau 'eiāra'a.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianon. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianon's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianon's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

22 'E i muri a'era, tē vai ra tā rātou mau tāpa'o, 'oia ia, tā rātou mau tāpa'o huna, 'e tā rātou mau parau huna ; 'e 'ua ravehia te reira 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia 'ite pāpū i te taea'e i tomo atu i roto i te fafaura'a, 'e 'ia rave noa atu tōna taea'e i te parauti'a 'ore 'aita 'oia e tāho'ohia e tōna taea'e, 'e 'aita ato'a 'oia e tāho'ohia e te mau ta'ata i roto i tāna pupu, 'o tei fa'aoti ato'a i teie fafaura'a.

23 'E nō reira 'ua ti'a ia rātou 'ia taparahi noa i te ta'ata, 'ia 'eiā haru, 'ia 'eiā, 'e 'ia rave i te mau 'ohipa tai'ata 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a, 'o tei 'ore i au i te mau ture nō tō rātou fenua 'e i te mau ture ato'a a tō rātou Atua.

24 'E te ta'ata i roto i tā rātou pupu 'o tē fa'a'ite i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi' i tō te ao nei, e ha'avāhia ia 'oia, 'eiaha 'ia au i te mau ture nō tō rātou fenua, 'ia au rā i te mau ture nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'o tei hōro'ahia mai e Gadianetona rāua 'o Kisakumena.

25 I teienei inaha, 'o teie te mau tapura'a huna 'e te mau fafaura'a huna 'o tā Alama i fa'aue i tāna tamaiti 'eiaha roa 'ia fa'ataehia nā roto i te ao, 'o te riro te reira 'ei rāve'a nō te ha'amou i te mau ta'ata.

26 I teienei inaha, 'aita taua mau tapura'a huna 'e te mau fafaura'a huna i tae mai ia Gadianetona nā roto mai i te mau pāpa'a parau i hōro'ahia mai ia Helamana ; inaha rā, 'ua tu'uhia mai te reira i roto i te 'ā'au o Gadianetona e taua iho ta'ata ra i fa'ahema i tō tātou nā metua mātāmua 'ia 'amu i te mā'a i rāhuihia ra—

27 'Oia ia, nā taua iho ta'ata ra 'o tei fa'aau i te 'ōpuara'a huna ia Kaina ē, mai te mea e taparahi 'oia i tōna taea'e ia Abela e'ita roa te reira e 'itehia e tō te ao nei. 'E 'ua fa'aau 'oia i te 'ōpuara'a huna ia Kaina 'e te mau ta'ata tei pe'e iāna mai te reira mai taime.

28 'E 'oia ato'a nā taua iho ta'ata ra 'o tei tu'u i roto i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata 'ia patu i te hō'ē pare teitei roa ē tae atu ai rātou i ni'a i te ra'i. 'E nā taua iho ta'ata ra 'o tei arata'i 'ē i te mau ta'ata 'o tei haere mai nā taua pare ra i teie nei fenua ; 'o tei ha'aparare i te mau 'ohipa nō te pōiri 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi' i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, ē tae noa atu 'ua 'ume 'oia i te mau ta'ata i raro 'ia ha'amouhia rātou pā'āto'a, ē tae atu ai i te hade mure 'ore.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

29 'Oia iā, nā taua iho ta'ata ra 'o tei tu'u i roto i te 'ā'au o Gadianetona 'ia rave ā i te 'ohipa nō te pōiri, 'e nō te taparahi huna i te ta'ata; 'e 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te reira mai te ha'amatarā'a mai o te ta'ata ē tae roa mai i teie taime.

30 'E inaha, 'o 'oia te tumu nō te mau hara ato'a. 'E inaha, tē rave noa nei ā 'oia i tāna mau 'ohipa nō te pōiri 'e te taparahi huna i te ta'ata, 'e tē tu'u noa mai ra 'oia i tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a huna, 'e tā rātou mau tapura'a, 'e tā rātou mau fafaura'a, 'e tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a nō te parauti'a 'ore rahi, mai terā u'i i terā u'i mai te au i tōna mana 'ia haru i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

31 'E i teienei inaha, 'ua roa'a iāna te pae rahi o te 'ā'au o te mau 'āti Nephi; 'oia iā, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore roa; 'oia iā, 'ua fāriu 'ē atu tō rātou pae rahi i te 'ē'a nō te parauti'a, 'e 'ua ta'ata'ahi rātou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua i raro a'e i tō rātou 'āvae, 'e 'ua fāriu atu rātou i tō rātou ihora mau 'ē'a, 'e 'ua hāmani i te mau 'īdolo nō rātou iho i tā rātou 'auro 'e tā rātou 'ārio.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'aita i rahi te mau matahiti i muri iho, 'ua tae mai ra teie mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tae mai te pae rahi nō te reira ia rātou i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

33 'E 'ua tupu rahi rātou i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i roto i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma va'u ato'a o te matahiti, i 'oto rahi ai 'e i auē ai te feiā parauti'a.

34 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ua ha'amata te fa'aro'o o te mau 'āti Nephi i te paruparu, 'e 'ua tupu rahi tō rātou parauti'a 'ore 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'āre'a te mau 'āti Lamana 'ua tupu rahi tō rātou 'ite i tō rātou Atua; 'oia iā, 'ua ha'amata rātou i te ha'apa'o maita'i i tāna mau ture 'e te mau fa'auera'a, 'e i te haere i roto i te parau mau 'e te parauti'a i mua iāna ra.

35 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ua ha'amata te Vārua o te Fatu i te fa'aātea 'ē atu i te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te parauti'a 'ore 'e te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au.

36 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ua ha'amata te Fatu i te nīni'i mai i tōna Vārua i ni'a i te mau 'āti Lamana, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o 'ōhie 'e tō rātou hina'aro mau 'ia ti'aturi i tāna mau parau.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianon to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

37 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'imi haere te mau 'āti Lamana i te pupu 'eiā haru o Gadianetona ; 'e 'ua a'o atu ra rātou i te parau a te Atua i rotopū ia rātou 'o tei hau atu i te parauti'a 'ore, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amou-roa-hia teie pupu 'eiā haru mai rotopū atu i te mau 'āti Lamana.

38 'E i muri a'era, i te vāhi 'ē, 'ua tauturu atu 'e 'ua pāturu atu te mau 'āti Nephi ia rātou, ma te ha'amata i te feiā parauti'a 'ore roa, ē tae roa 'ua ha'aparare rātou i te reira i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'ahema i te pae rahi o te feiā parauti'a 'ia ti'aturi i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'e 'ia fāri'i i te mau tao'a haruhia mai e rātou ra, 'e 'ia 'āmui mai ia rātou i roto i tā rātou mau taparahi-huna-ra'a ta'ata 'e tā rātou mau pupu 'ohipa huna.

39 'E nō reira 'ua noa'a ia rātou te fa'aterera'a tā'āto'a nō te hau fenua ; 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ta'ata'ahi noa rātou i raro a'e i tō rātou 'āvae 'e 'ua tā'iri 'e 'ua hahae 'e 'ua fāriu 'ē atu i tō rātou tua i te feiā veve 'e te marū, 'e i te mau ta'ata ha'eha'a i pe'e atu i te Atua.

40 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, tei roto rātou i te ti'ara'a ri'ari'a, 'e 'ua ineine roa nō te pohe mure 'ore.

41 'E i muri a'era, 'o te hope'a te reira nō te ono 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianon; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

TE PARAU TOHU A NEPHI, TE TAMAITI A
 HELAMANA—'Ua fa'aara mai te Atua i te mau ta'ata o
 Nephi ē, e fa'atae mai 'oia i tōna riri i ni'a ia rātou, nō te
 ha'amou roa ia rātou, maori rā 'ia tātarabapa rātou i tā
 rātou mau 'obīpa 'īno. E tā'iri te Atua i te mau ta'ata o
 Nephi i te ma'i rabi ; 'ua tātarabapa rātou 'e 'ua fāriu
 mai ra iāna. 'Ua tobu atu Samuela, te 'āti Lamana, i te
 mau 'āti Nephi.

Helamana 7

- 1 Inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, i te ono 'ahuru 'e ma iva
 o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i
 te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua ho'i mai ra Nephi, te tamaiti a
 Helamana, i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela mai te fenua
 mai i te pae apato'erau.
- 2 I haere na ho'i 'oia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i ora na i
 te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e 'ua poro haere ho'i 'oia
 i te parau a te Atua ia rātou, 'e 'ua tohu i te mau mea e
 rave rahi ia rātou.
- 3 'E 'ua pāto'i atu ra rātou i tāna mau parau ato'a, 'e
 nō reira ho'i 'aita a'era i ti'a iāna 'ia pārahi i rotopū ia
 rātou, 'āre'a rā 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te fenua
 'oia i fānauhia ai.
- 4 'E 'ite a'era 'oia i te mau ta'ata i te vai-noa-ra'a i
 roto i te mau 'ohipa 'īno e rave rahi, 'e i te feiā 'eiā
 haru o Gadianetona i ni'a i te mau pārahira'a
 ha'avāra'a—o tei haru i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a
 nō te fenua ; 'o tei ha'apae i te mau fa'auera'a a te
 Atua i te hiti, 'e 'aita roa rātou i au maita'i i mua
 iāna ; 'o tei 'ore i fa'aau i te parauti'a i te mau tamari'i
 a te ta'ata nei ;
- 5 'O tei fa'ahapa noa i te feiā parauti'a nō tō rātou
 parauti'a ; 'o tei vaiiho noa i te feiā hara 'e te feiā
 parauti'a 'ore 'ia haere noa ma te fa'autu'a-'ore-hia
 nō tā rātou moni ; 'e 'oia fa'ahou 'ia fāri'i i te tōro'a i
 te upo'o o te hau fenua, nō te fa'atere 'e nō te rave
 mai te au i tō rātou mau hina'aro, 'ia roa'a ia rātou te
 faufa'a 'e te hanahana o te ao nei ; 'e 'oia fa'ahou, 'ia
 ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave 'ōhie noa i te fa'aturi, te 'eiā, 'e te
 taparahi ta'ata, 'e 'ia rave mai te au i tō rātou iho mau
 hina'aro—

THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN—
 God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them
 in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent
 of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with
 pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a
 Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.

Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth
 year of the reign of the judges over the people of the
 Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned
 to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were
 in the land northward, and did preach the word of
 God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto
 them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that
 he could not stay among them, but returned again
 unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful
 wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the
 judgment-seats—having usurped the power and au-
 thority of the land; laying aside the commandments
 of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing
 no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their right-
 eousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go un-
 punished because of their money; and moreover to
 be held in office at the head of government, to rule
 and do according to their wills, that they might get
 gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they
 might the more easily commit adultery, and steal,
 and kill, and do according to their own wills—

6 I teienei 'ua tae mai teie mau 'ohipa 'i'ino i ni'a i te mau 'āti Nephi i roto i te tahi noa iho mau matahiti ; 'e 'ia 'ite a'era Nephi i te reira, 'ua 'oru ihora tōna 'ā'au i te 'oto i roto i tōna 'ōuma ; 'e 'ua 'auē noa a'era 'oia i te māuiui o tōna vārua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a :

7 'Auē, 'āhiri i ora na vau i tō'u nei mau mahana i te mau mahana 'a tae mātāmua mai ai tō'u metua tāne ra 'o Nephi mai te fenua mai ra mai Ierusalem, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia 'oa'oa i pīha'i iho iāna i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e i taua taime ra e mea ti'aturi 'ōhie roa tōna mau ta'ata, e mea ha'apa'o maita'i i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, e mea tāere 'ia arata'ihia 'ia rave i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; 'e e mea 'oi'oi 'ia fa'aro'o i te mau parau a te Fatu—

8 'Oia iā, 'āhiri au i ora na i tō'u nei mau mahana i taua mau mahana ra, 'ua 'oa'oa iā tō'u vārua i te parauti'a o tō'u ra mau taea'e.

9 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'ata'ahia ē 'o teie tō'u mau mahana, 'ia 'i tō'u vārua i te 'oto, nō te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino a tō'u ra mau taea'e.

10 'E inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, tei ni'a 'oia i te hō'ē pare, i roto i te 'ō a Nephi ra, 'e tei pīha'i iho taua 'ō ra i te purūmu ē tae atu ai i te mātete rahi i roto i te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela ; 'e tē pi'o ra Nephi i raro i ni'a i taua pare ra i roto i te 'ō, 'e tei pīha'i ato'a iho taua pare ra i te 'ūputa nō te 'ō e tae atu ai i te purūmu.

11 'E i muri a'era, tē haere ra te tahi mau ta'ata nā reira, 'e 'ua 'ite a'era rātou ia Nephi i ni'a i te pare 'e tē pure māite ra 'oia, ma te nīni'i atu i tōna vārua i te Atua ; 'e 'ua horo atu ra rātou 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra i te mau ta'ata i te mau mea tā rātou i 'ite, 'e 'ua haere ha'aputupu'āmui mai ra te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia 'ite rātou i te tumu nō tōna 'oto rahi i te parauti'a 'ore o te mau ta'ata.

12 'E i teienei, 'ia ti'a a'era Nephi i ni'a, 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia i te mau pupu ta'ata 'o tei ha'aputupu'āmui mai.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hāmama atu ra 'oia i tōna vaha 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou : Inaha, nō te aha 'outou i ha'aputupu'āmui mai ai ? 'ia fa'a'ite atu ānei au ia 'outou i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ?

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

14 'Oia ia, nō te mea 'ua pa'uma mai au i ni'a i tō'u pare nō te nini'i atu i tō'u vārua i tō'u ra Atua, nō te 'oto rahi o tō'u nei 'ā'au i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino !

15 'E nō tā'u nei 'otora'a 'e te auēra'a i ha'aputupu'ū 'āmui mai ai 'outou, 'e i māere ai ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia māere ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ti'a mau ia 'outou 'ia māere, nō te mea 'ua fa'aru'ehia 'outou 'e nō reira 'ua roa'a i te diabolō te hō'ē vāhi rahi i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au.

16 'Oia ia, nō te aha 'outou i fa'ati'a ai ia 'outou 'ia fa'ahemahia e ana 'o tei tītau 'ia huri i tō 'outou vārua i raro i te mamae mure 'ore 'e te 'oto hope 'ore ?

17 'A tātarahapa 'outou, 'a tātarahapa 'outou ! Nō te aha ho'i 'outou e pohe ai ? 'A fāriu mai 'outou, 'a fāriu mai 'outou i te Fatu ra i tō 'outou Atua. Nō te aha ho'i 'oia i fa'aru'e ai ia 'outou ?

18 Nō te mea 'ua fa'a'eta'eta 'outou i tō 'outou 'ā'au ; 'oia ia, 'e 'aita 'outou i fa'aro'o noa atu i te reo o te tīa'i māmoē maita'i ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'atupu 'outou i tōna riri ia 'outou.

19 'E inaha, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e'ita 'oia e ha'aputupu'ū ia 'outou, inaha, e ha'apurara 'oia ia 'outou 'ia riro 'outou 'ei mā'a nā te mau 'ūrī 'e te mau 'ānimara taehae.

20 'Auē, nāhea e ti'a ai ia 'outou ia ha'amo'e i tō 'outou Atua i te mahana iho 'oia i fa'aora ai ia 'outou ?

21 Inaha rā, nō te fāri'i ia i te faufa'a, 'ia 'āruehia e te ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te 'auro 'e te 'ārio. 'E 'ua ha'amau 'outou i tō 'outou 'ā'au i ni'a i te mau tao'a 'e te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o teie nei ao ; nō reira, te taparahi na 'outou i te ta'ata, tē haru ra i te tao'a, tē 'eiā ra, 'e tē pari ha'avare ra i tō 'outou ta'ata tupu, 'e tē rave ra i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a.

22 'E nō te reira tumu, e tae mai te pohe i ni'a iho ia 'outou 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa. Nō te mea 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, inaha, e rave-'ē-hia teie nei 'oire rahi, 'e te mau 'oire rahi ato'a ē 'ati noa a'e, i roto i te fenua i fatuhia e tātou nei, 'e e 'ore roa 'outou e pārahi fa'ahou i roto i te reira ; inaha ho'i, e 'ore roa te Fatu e hōro'a mai i te pūai ia 'outou, mai tāna i nā reira i te mātāmua, nō te pāroru ia 'outou i tō 'outou mau 'enemi.

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

- 23 Inaha ho'i, te nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : E 'ore au e fa'a'ite i tō'u pūai i te feiā parauti'a 'ore, 'ia hau tei 'itea i te hō'ē i tei 'itea i te tahi, maori rā ia rātou 'o tei tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara, 'e 'o tei fa'aro'o ho'i i tā'u mau parau. I teienei, nō reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e, e maita'i a'e tō te mau 'āti Lamana i tō 'outou, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou.
- 24 Inaha ho'i, e mea parauti'a a'e rātou ia 'outou, 'aita ho'i rātou i hara i taua 'ite rahi ra 'o tā 'outou i fāri'i ; nō reira e aroha te Fatu ia rātou ; 'oia ia, e fa'aroaroa 'oia i tō rātou mau mahana 'e e fa'arahi i tō rātou hua'ai, 'a ha'amou-roa-hia ai 'outou ra, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou.
- 25 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'outou ē, nō taua mea vi'ivi'i rahi i tae mai i rotopū ia 'outou na ; 'e 'ua 'āmui atu 'outou ia 'outou iho i te reira ; 'oia ia, i taua pupu ta'ata huna 'o tei fa'ati'ahia e Gadianetona !
- 26 'Oia ia, e tae mai te 'ati i ni'a ia 'outou nō taua te'ote'o ra 'o tā 'outou i fa'ati'a ia 'o mai i roto i tō 'outou na 'ā'au ; 'o tei fa'ateitei ia 'outou i ni'a a'e i te mea maita'i, nō tā 'outou mau tao'a rahi !
- 27 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'outou ē, nō tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i !
- 28 'E 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e pohe roa 'outou ; 'oia ia, e rave-'ē-hia tō 'outou mau fenua ia 'outou na, 'e e ha'amouhia 'outou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.
- 29 Inaha, i teienei, 'aita vau iho e parau nei ē, e tupu teie mau mea, nō te mea 'aita vau i 'ite i teie nei mau mea nā roto iā'u iho ; inaha rā, 'ua 'ite au ē, e parau mau teie mau mea nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite mai te Fatu te Atua i te reira iā'u nei, nō reira tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei au ē, e tupu te reira mau mea.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Helamana 8

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Nephi paraura'a i teie mau parau, inaha, tei reira te tahi mau ta'ata, e mau ha'avā rātou, 'e nō roto mai rātou i te pupu huna a Gadianetona, 'e 'ua riri rātou, 'e 'ua pi'i fa'ahapa mai ra rātou iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu i te mau ta'ata : Nō te aha 'aita 'outou i haru i teie ta'ata 'e 'a arata'i mai ai iāna, 'ia fa'ahapahia 'oia mai te au i te hara tāna i rave ?
- 2 Nō te aha 'outou i hi'o noa atu ai i teie nei ta'ata, 'e i fa'aro'o atu ai iāna, 'a fa'a'ino mai ai 'oia i teie nei feiā 'e i tā tātou ture ?
- 3 Inaha ho'i, 'ua parau atu Nephi ia rātou nō ni'a i te mau mea vi'ivi'i o tā rātou ture ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi te mau mea tā Nephi i parau atu 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia ; 'e 'aita roa atu e mea 'o tāna i parau 'o tei fa'ahapa i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua.
- 4 'E 'ua riri taua mau ha'avā ra iāna nō te mea 'ua parau pāpū atu 'oia ia rātou nō ni'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna nō te pōiri ; 'āre'a rā, 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia haru atu iāna, nō te mea 'ua mata'u rātou i te mau ta'ata 'o te parau fa'ahapa mai rātou ia rātou.
- 5 Nō reira 'ua ti'aoro atu rātou i te mau ta'ata, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : Nō te aha 'outou i fa'ati'a ai i teie ta'ata 'ia fa'a'ino mai ia tātou nei ? Inaha ho'i, tē fa'ahapa ra 'oia i teie mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia ha'amouhia ; 'oia ia, 'e 'oia ato'a 'ia rave-'ē-hia atu tō tātou mau 'oire rahi mai ia tātou atu nei, 'e 'ia 'ore tō tātou e vāhi i reira.
- 6 'E i teienei, 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'aita roa te reira e tupu, inaha ho'i, e feiā pūai roa tātou, 'e e mea rarahi tō tātou nei mau 'oire, nō reira 'aita roa tō tō tātou mau 'enemi e mana i ni'a ia tātou.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'arepu rātou i te mau ta'ata 'ia riri atu ia Nephi, 'e 'ua fa'atupu ihora i te mau mārōra'a i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e tē vai ra te tahi pae i parau ē : 'A vaiho noa i teie nei ta'ata, e ta'ata maita'i ho'i 'oia, 'e e tupu mau ā te mau mea ato'a 'o tāna i parau, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa tātou.

Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

- 8 'Oia ia, inaha, e tae mai te mau ha'avāra'a i fa'a'itehia mai e ana i ni'a ia tātou ; 'ua 'ite ho'i tātou ē, 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oia ia tātou i te parau mau nō ni'a i tā tātou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino. 'E inaha, e rave rahi ho'i te reira, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia i te mau mea ato'a e ma'iri mai i ni'a ia tātou nei, mai tāna i 'ite i tā tātou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino.
- 9 'Oia ia, 'e inaha, 'āhiri e'ita 'oia i te peropheta, e'ita ia e ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite mai i taua mau mea ra.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'aita a'era i ti'a ia rātou, 'o tei tītau 'ia ha'apohe ia Nephi, 'ia fa'atae atu i tō rātou rima i ni'a iāna, nō tō rātou mata'u ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora 'oia i te parau atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia 'e 'ua auhia mai 'oia e te tahi pae, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua mata'u te toe'a o rātou.
- 11 Nō reira 'ua tītauhia 'oia 'ia parau fa'ahou atu ā ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : Inaha, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'aita ānei 'outou i tai'o ē, 'ua hōro'a mai te Atua i te mana i te hō'ē ta'ata, 'oia ho'i ia Mose, nō te tā'iri i ni'a i te mau pape nō te miti 'Ute'ute, 'e 'ua vetea ihora te reira i te tahi pae 'e i te tahi pae, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'ati 'Īserā'ela, 'oia ho'i tō tātou mau metua, nā roto i te reira ē tae roa mai ra i ni'a i te repo marō, 'e 'ua ho'i fa'ahou ihora taua mau pape ra i ni'a i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o tō 'Aiphiti ra 'e 'ua horomi'i roa ihora ia rātou ?
- 12 'E i teienei, inaha, mai te mea ē 'ua hōro'a mai te Atua i taua huru mana ra i teie ta'ata, nō te aha ia 'outou i mārō ai i rotopū ia 'outou iho, 'e i parau ai ho'i ē, 'aita 'oia i hōro'a mai i te mana iā'u 'ia 'ite au i te mau ha'avāra'a e tae mai i ni'a ia 'outou, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou ?
- 13 'Āre'a rā, inaha, 'aita 'outou i huna i tā'u ana'e mau parau, 'āre'a rā 'ua huna ato'a 'outou i te mau parau ato'a 'o tei parauhia mai e tō tātou mau metua, 'e te mau parau ato'a i parauhia mai e teie nei ta'ata, 'o Mose, 'o tei fāri'i i te mana rahi i hōro'ahia mai iāna, 'oia ia, te mau parau 'o tāna i parau nō ni'a i te taera'a mai te Mesia.
- 14 'Oia ia, 'aita ānei 'oia i fa'a'ite ē, e tae mai te Tamaiti a te Atua ? 'E mai iāna i fa'ateitei i te 'ōphī veo i roto i te mēdēbara, 'oia ato'a e fa'ateiteihia 'oia 'o tē haere mai.

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

15 'E 'o rātou e rave rahi 'o tē hi'o atu i taua 'ōphī ra e ora ia, 'e mai te reira ato'a rātou e rave rahi 'o tē hi'o atu i te Tamaiti a te Atua ma te fa'aro'o, 'e te vārua tātarahapa, e ora ia, ē tae noa atu i te ora mure 'ore ra.

16 'E i teienei, inaha, 'aita Mose i fa'a'ite pāpū atu nō ni'a i teie ana'e mau mea, 'ua nā reira ato'a rā te mau peropheta mo'a ato'a, mai tōna ra mau mahana ē tae noa atu i te mau mahana o Aberahama.

17 'Oia ia, 'e inaha, 'ua 'ite Aberahama i tōna taera'a mai, 'e 'ua 'i 'oia i te 'oa'oa 'e 'ua poupou.

18 'Oia ia, 'e inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'aita Aberahama i 'ite i teie ana'e mau mea, 'āre'a rā tē vai ra e rave rahi atu ā nā mua atu i te mau mahana o Aberahama 'o tei pi'ihia i te fa'anahora'a a te Atua ; 'oia ia, 'ia au i te fa'anahora'a a tāna Tamaiti ; 'e i nā-reira-hia, 'ia fa'a'itehia i te mau ta'ata, i te mau matahiti e rave rahi tauatini nā mua i tōna taera'a mai, 'e 'ia tae mai te fa'aorara'a ia rātou.

19 'E i teienei, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, i muri mai i te mau mahana o Aberahama, e rave rahi te mau peropheta i fa'a'ite pāpū mai i taua mau mea ra ; 'oia ia, 'e inaha, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai te peropheta ra 'o Zenosa ma te mata'u 'ore ; 'e nō te reira ho'i i taparahihia ai 'oia ra.

20 'E inaha, 'o Zenoke ato'a, 'e Eziasa ato'a, 'e Isaia ato'a, 'e Ieremia ato'a, (Ieremia, te peropheta iho i fa'a'ite mai i te ha'amoura'a o Ierusalem), 'e i teienei, 'ua 'ite tātou ē, 'ua ha'amouhia Ierusalem mai te au i te mau parau a Ieremia ra. 'E i teienei, nō te aha ia 'aita te Tamaiti a te Atua e tae mai, 'ia au i tāna ra tohura'a ?

21 'E i teienei, e aha 'outou i mārō ai ē 'ua ha'amouhia 'o Ierusalem ? E ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia parau ē, 'aita te mau tamar'i tamāroa a Zedekia i taparahihia, te tā'ato'ara'a maori rā 'o Muleka ana'e ra ? 'Oia ia, 'aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, tei pīha'i iho ia tātou nei te hua'ai a Zedekia, 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia rātou i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem ? Inaha rā, e 'ere te reira te hope'a—

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

22 'Ua ti'avaruhia tō tātou metua tāne ra 'o Lehi i rāpae ia Ierusalemā nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū 'oia i teie mau mea. 'Ua fa'a'ite pāpū ato'a Nephi i teie mau mea ; 'e te pae rahi ato'a o tō tātou mau metua, ē tae noa mai i teie nei taime ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū rātou nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'e 'ua hi'o rātou i mua, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa rātou i tōna ra mahana 'o tē tae mai a muri atu.

23 'E inaha, 'o 'oia te Atua, 'e tei pīha'i iho 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai iāna iho ia rātou, 'e 'ua fa'aorahia rātou e ana ; 'e 'ua fa'ahanahana atu rātou iāna, nō te mea e tupu a muri atu.

24 'E i teienei, nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'outou i teie mau mea 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'outou 'e e'ita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia huna, maori rā e ha'avare 'outou, nō reira 'ua hara 'outou i taua mea nei, nō te mea 'ua pāto'i 'outou i teie mau mea ato'a, noa atu ā te mau fa'a'itera'a pāpū e rave rahi tā 'outou i fāri'i ; 'oia ia, 'ua fāri'i 'outou i te mau mea ato'a, te mau mea i roto i te ra'i 'e te mau mea ato'a i ni'a i te fenua, 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū ē, e parau mau te reira.

25 Inaha rā, 'ua pāto'i 'outou i te parau mau, 'e 'ua fa'aru'e i te Atua mo'a ; e i teie nei taime, 'aita 'outou e ha'apu'e nei i te mau tao'a nā 'outou i te ao ra, i te vāhi e 'ore ai e 'ino i te hō'ē mea, 'e e 'ore ai ho'i e tomohia mai e te mea vi'ivi'i ra, tē ha'apu'e nei rā 'outou i te riri 'ū'ana nō 'outou iho i te mahana nō te ha'avāra'a.

26 'Oia ia, 'e i teie nei taime 'ua ineine roa 'outou nō te pohe mure 'ore, nō tā 'outou mau taparahira'a ta'ata e tā 'outou poreneia 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e tae vave mai te reira ia 'outou.

27 'Oia ia, inaha, 'ua fātata mai te reira i tō 'outou pae 'ūputa ; 'oia ia, 'a haere 'outou i tō 'outou pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'e 'a 'imi ; 'e inaha, 'ua taparahihia tō 'outou ha'avā, 'e tē tārava ra 'oia i roto i tōna toto ; 'e 'ua taparahihia 'oia e tōna ra taea'e, 'o tei hina'aro 'ia pārahi i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a.

28 'E inaha, nō roto rāua e piti ato'a i tā 'outou pupu huna, 'e 'o Gadianetona te fa'atere nō te reira 'e te diabolō 'o tei tītau 'ia ha'amou i te mau vārua o te ta'ata nei.

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianon and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

Helamana 9

- 1 Inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Nephi paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua horo atu ra te tahi mau ta'ata mai rotopū atu ia rātou i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; 'oia ia, e pae ho'i tei haere atu, 'e 'ua nā 'ō ihora rātou i rotopū ia rātou iho, 'a haere atu ai rātou :
- 2 Inaha, i teienei, e 'ite pāpū tātou ē, e peropheta ānei teie ta'ata 'e 'ua fa'aue ānei te Atua iāna 'ia tohu i teie mau mea ta'a 'ē ia tātou nei. Inaha, 'aita tātou i ti'aturi ē, 'ua nā reira 'oia ; 'oia ia, 'aita ho'i tātou i ti'aturi ē, e peropheta 'oia ; 'āre'a rā, mai te mea e parau mau teie mea 'o tāna i parau iho nei nō ni'a i te ha'avā rahi, 'oia ho'i 'ua pohe 'oia, i reira e ti'aturi ia tātou ē e parau mau te tahi atu mau parau tāna i parau mai.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo pūai atu ra rātou ē tae atu ra i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a ; 'e inaha, 'ua ma'iri te ha'avā rahi i raro i te repo, 'e tē tārava ra 'oia i roto i tōna toto.
- 4 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou i te reira, 'ua māere roa ihora rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i raro i te repo ; 'aita ho'i rātou i ti'aturi na i te mau parau tā Nephi i parau mai nō ni'a i te ha'avā rahi.
- 5 'Āre'a rā i teienei, i tō rātou 'itera'a 'ua ti'aturi ihora rātou, 'e 'ua tae mai ra te mata'u i ni'a ia rātou, 'o te tae mai te mau ha'avāra'a i parauhia mai e Nephi i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata ; nō reira 'ua rurutaina ihora rātou, 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i raro i te repo.
- 6 I teienei, i muri noa iho i tō te ha'avā taparahira'ahia—i pātiahia ho'i 'oia e tōna taea'e 'o tei 'ō'omo i te 'ahu nō te huna i tōna hōho'a mata, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra 'oia, 'e 'ua horo atu ra ho'i te mau tāvini 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra i te mau ta'ata, ma te pi'i haere i te parau nō te taparahira'a ta'ata i tupu i rotopū ia rātou ra.
- 7 'E inaha 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui ihora te mau ta'ata ia rātou i te vāhi nō te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a—'e inaha, 'ua 'ite atu ra rātou ma te māere i taua mau ta'ata ra e pae 'o tei ma'iri i raro i te repo.

Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

- 8 'E i teienei, inaha, 'aita roa te mau ta'ata i 'ite nō ni'a i taua rahira'a ta'ata i ha'aputupu mai i te 'ō nō Nephi ra ; nō reira 'ua parau a'era rātou i rotopū ia rātou iho ē : Teie te mau ta'ata tei taparahi i te ha'avā, 'e nā te Atua i tā'iri ia rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia horo 'ē atu ia tātou nei.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haru atu ra rātou ia rātou, 'e 'ua ru'uru'u ihora ia rātou 'e 'ua huri atu ra ia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a. 'E 'ua fa'ataehia atu ra te hō'ē parau fa'a'ite ē 'ati noa a'e ē 'ua taparahihia te ha'avā, 'e 'ua haruhia mai te mau ta'ata i taparahi iāna 'e 'ua hurihia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ia po'ipo'i a'era 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui ihora te mau ta'ata ia rātou nō te 'oto 'e nō te ha'apae i te mā'a, i te hunara'a o te ha'avā rahi 'o tei taparahihia.
- 11 'E 'ua nā reira ato'a taua mau ha'avā ra 'o tei pārahi na i te 'ō o Nephi ra, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o rātou i tāna mau parau, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui ato'a mai rātou i te vāhi hunara'a.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ani atu ra rātou i te mau ta'ata, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Tei hea atu ra te mau ta'ata e pae i tonohia nō te ui i te parau nō te ha'avā rahi ē, 'ua pohe ānei 'oia ? 'E 'ua pāhono mai ra rātou, nā 'ō mai ra : Nō nia i teie e pae 'o tā 'outou i parau mai ē 'ua tononā mai 'outou, 'aita roa mātou i 'ite ; tē vai nei rā e pae 'o tei taparahi iāna, 'e 'o tā mātou i huri atu i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hina'aro ihora te mau ha'avā 'ia arata'ihia mai rātou ; 'e 'ua arata'ihia mai ra rātou, 'e inaha 'o rātou teie e pae i tonohia mai ; 'e inaha 'ua ui atu ra te mau ha'avā ia rātou nō ni'a i te mea i tupu, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra rātou ia rātou i tā rātou i rave, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 14 'Ua horo atu mātou 'e 'ua tae atu ra i te vāhi nō te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a, 'e i tō mātou 'itera'a i te mau mea ato'a i tupu mai tā Nephi i fa'a'ite mai, 'ua māere ihora mātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ma'iri ihora mātou i raro i te repo ; 'e 'ia ara a'era mātou i tō mātou māere rahi, inaha, 'ua huri ihora rātou ia mātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

15 I teienei, nō te ta'ata i taparahi i teie nei ta'ata, 'aita roa mātou i 'ite ē 'o vai tei rave i te reira, tūrārā te vāhi tā mātou i 'ite, 'ua horo atu mātou 'e tae atu ra i reira mai tā 'outou i hina'aro, 'e inaha 'ua pohe roa 'oia, mai te au i te mau parau a Nephi.

16 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua ha'amāramarama atu ra te mau ha'avā i taua mea ra i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua pari atu ra ia Nephi, nā 'ō atu ra : Inaha, 'ua 'ite mātou ē, 'ua fa'aau na Nephi i te parau i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia taparahi i te ha'avā, 'e i muri iho 'a fa'a'ite mai ai ia tātou, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'afāriu atu ia tātou i tāna ra ha'apa'ora'a, 'e 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'ateitei iāna iho 'ei ta'ata rahi, 'ei mea mā'itihia e te Atua, 'e 'ei peropheta.

17 'E i teienei, inaha, e hi'opo'a mātou i teie nei ta'ata, 'e e fā'i mai 'oia i tāna ra hapa 'e e fa'a'ite ato'a mai ia tātou i te ta'ata mau i taparahi i taua ha'avā ra.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tu'uhia atu ra taua mau ta'ata e pae ra i te mahana nō te hunara'a. 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'ahapa atu ra rātou i te mau ha'avā i te mau parau tā rātou i pari atu ia Nephi ra, 'e 'ua mārō atu ra ia rātou tāta'itahi, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua māmū ihora rātou.

19 'Āre'a rā, 'ua fa'aue atu ra rātou 'ia tāpe'ahia 'e 'ia ru'uru'uhia Nephi, 'e 'ia 'āfa'ihia i mua i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te uiui mai iāna i te mau huru uira'a e rave rahi 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'afifi iāna, 'e 'ia roa'a tā rātou parira'a au nō te ha'apohe iāna—

20 I te nā-'ō-ra'a atu iāna : Tei roto 'oe i te hō'ē pupu 'ohipa huna ; 'o vai teie ta'ata i taparahi i teie nei ta'ata ? 'A fa'a'ite mai ia mātou, 'e 'a fā'i mai i tā 'oe ra hapa ; i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē, inaha, teie te moni, 'e e hōro'a atu ho'i mātou i tō 'oe ora mai te mea e fa'a'ite mai 'oe ia mātou, 'e e fā'i mai ho'i i te parau tā 'oe i fa'aau atu iāna ra.

21 'Āre'a rā 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Nephi ia rātou : 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te mau ta'ata ma'ama'a ; 'outou e te feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta ; 'outou e te mau ta'ata matapō, 'e 'outou e te feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta, 'ua 'ite ānei 'outou i te maorora'a tā te Fatu te Atua e fa'ati'a 'ia haere noa 'outou nā tō 'outou 'ē'a hara ra ?

22 E mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia ha'amata i te 'auē 'e i te 'oto nō te pohe rahi i fātata i te tae mai i ni'a ia 'outou, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

23 Inaha, tē parau nei 'outou ē, 'ua fa'aau vau i te parau i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia taparahi ia Seezorama, tō 'outou ha'avā rahi. Inaha rā, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua nā reira 'outou nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu vau ia 'outou 'ia roa'a tō 'outou 'ite i taua mea ra ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ia riro ho'i te reira 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū ia 'outou na, 'ua 'ite au i te 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i rotopū ia 'outou na.

24 'E nō te mea 'ua nā reira vau, nō reira 'ua parau mai 'outou ē, 'ua fa'aau vau i te parau i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia rave i te reira ; 'oia ia, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i teie tāpa'o, 'ua riri 'outou iā'u, 'e 'ua tītau 'ia ha'amou i tō'u ora.

25 'E i teienei, inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i te tahi atu ā tāpa'o, 'e i reira e 'ite ai au ē, e tītau ānei 'outou 'ia ha'apohe iā'u nō taua mea nei.

26 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na : 'A haere atu i te fare o Seanetuma, i te taea'e o Seezorama, 'e 'a parau atu iāna—

27 'Ua fa'aau ānei Nephi, te ta'ata fa'ahua peropheta, 'o tei tohu mai i te 'ino rahi nō ni'a i teie nei feiā, i te parau ia 'oe, nō reira 'oe i taparahi ai ia Seezorama, tō 'oe taea'e ?

28 'E inaha, e parau mai 'oia ia 'outou na ē, 'Aita roa.

29 'E i reira, e parau atu 'outou iāna : 'Ua taparahi ānei 'oe i tō 'oe taea'e ?

30 'E i reira, e ti'a noa mai 'oia ma te mata'u, 'e 'aita e ta'a iāna e aha tāna e parau mai. 'E inaha, e riro 'oia i te huna i mua ia 'outou ; 'e e fa'ahua māere rahi roa 'oia ; e parau mai rā 'oia ē, 'aita 'oia i hara.

31 Inaha rā, e hi'opo'a 'outou iāna, 'e e 'itea ia 'outou te toto i ni'a i tōna hiti 'ahu.

32 'E 'ia 'itea te reira ia 'outou, 'a parau atu iāna : Nō hea mai teie nei toto ? 'Aita ānei mātou i 'ite ē, 'o te toto teie o tō 'oe ra taea'e ?

33 'E i reira e rurutaina 'oia, 'e e māhe'ahe'a tōna mata mai te mea ra ē, 'ua tae mai te pohe i ni'a iāna.

34 'E i reira 'outou e parau atu ai iāna : Nō tenā na mata'u 'e tenā na māhe'ahe'a i tae mai i ni'a i tō 'oe mata, inaha, 'ua 'ite mātou ē, 'ua hara mau 'oe.

35 'E i reira e tae mai te mata'u rahi a'e i ni'a iāna ; 'e i reira ho'i 'oia e fā'i mai ai ia 'outou, 'e 'aita roa 'oia e huna fa'ahou ē nāna i taparahi iāna.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

36 'E i reira, e parau mai 'oia ia 'outou ē, 'aita vau, 'o Nephi, i 'ite i te hō'ē a'e mea nō ni'a i taua 'ohipa ra, maori rā 'ua fa'a'itehia mai te reira iā'u nā roto i te mana o te Atua. 'E i reira 'outou e 'ite pāpū ai ē, e ta'ata parau mau vau, 'e 'ua tonohia mai au ia 'outou nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra.

37 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou 'e 'ua nā reira, mai te au i tā Nephi i parau atu ia rātou ra. 'E inaha, te mau parau tāna i parau ra, e parau mau ia ; mai te au i tāna mau parau, 'ua huna 'oia ; 'e mai te au ato'a i tāna mau parau, 'ua fā'i mai 'oia.

38 'E 'ua arata'ihia mai ra 'oia nō te fa'a'ite ē, nāna iho i taparahi, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tu'uhia atu ra nā ta'ata to'opae 'e 'o Nephi ato'a ho'i.

39 'E tē vai ra te tahi pae o te mau 'āti Nephi i ti'aturi i te mau parau a Nephi ; 'e tē vai ato'a ra te tahi pae i ti'aturi nā roto i te 'itera'a pāpū o nā ta'ata to'opae ra, 'e 'ua fa'afāriuhia rātou 'a pārahi ai rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.

40 'E i teienei, tē vai ra te tahi pae i rotopū i te mau ta'ata 'o tei parau ē, e peropheta 'o Nephi.

41 'E tē vai ra ho'i te tahi pae tei parau ē : Inaha, e atua 'oia, 'āhiri ho'i e'ita 'oia i te atua, 'aita ia e ti'a iāna 'ia 'ite i te mau mea ato'a. Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oia i te mau mana'o o tō tātou nei 'ā'au, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a mai 'oia i te tahi mau mea ato'a ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a mai 'oia i te ta'ata mau i taparahi i tō tātou ha'avā rahi.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

Helamana 10

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu a'era te 'āmahamahara'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ta'a 'ē noa a'era rātou i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, 'e 'ua haere a'era rātou i tō rātou mau haere'a, vaiiho noa mai ra ia Nephi ana'e iho, 'a ti'a noa ai 'oia i rotopū ia rātou.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Nephi i tōna haere'a i tōna ihora fare, ma te feruri hōhonu i te mau mea tā te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai iāna ra.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'a feruri hōhonu noa ai 'oia—'ua 'oto noa 'oia nō te 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi, tā rātou mau 'ohipa huna nō te pōiri, 'e tā rātou mau taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e tā rātou mau harura'a i te tao'a, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a—'e i muri a'era, 'a nā reira noa ai 'oia i te feruri hōhonu i roto i tōna 'ā'au, inaha, 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē reo iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 4 E ao tō 'oe, e Nephi, nō taua mau mea tā 'oe i rave ra ; 'ua 'ite ho'i au ia 'oe i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te parau tā'u i hōro'a atu ia 'oe i teie nei feiā ma te tu'utu'u 'ore. 'E 'aita 'oe i mata'u ia rātou, 'e 'aita ato'a 'oe i fa'aherehere i tō 'oe iho ora, 'ua tītau rā i tō'u hina'aro, 'e 'ua ha'apa'o ho'i i tā'u ra mau fa'auera'a.
- 5 'E i teienei, nō te mea 'ua rave 'oe i te reira ma te tu'utu'u 'ore, inaha, e ha'amaita'i au ia 'oe ē a muri noa atu ; 'e e fa'ariro vau ia 'oe 'ei ta'ata pūai i te parau 'e i te 'ohipa, i te fa'aro'o 'e i te ravera'a i te mau 'ohipa ; 'oia ia, 'e e tupu te mau mea ato'a mai te au i tā 'oe parau, nō te mea e 'ore 'oe e ani i tei au 'ore i tō'u nei hina'aro.
- 6 Inaha, 'o Nephi 'oe, 'e 'o vau te Atua. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe i mua i te aro o tā'u ra mau melahi ē, e mana tō 'oe i ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'e nā 'oe e tā'iri i te fenua i te o'e, 'e i te ma'i rahi, 'e te pohe, mai te au i te parauti'a 'ore o teie nei feiā.
- 7 Inaha, e hōro'a atu vau i te mana ia 'oe, 'o tā 'oe e tā'ati i te ao nei, e tā'ati-ato'a-hia ia i te ao ra ; 'e tā 'oe e tātara i te ao nei e tātara-ato'a-hia ia i te ao ra ; e nā reira 'oe i te fāri'i i te mana i rotopū i teie mau ta'ata.
- 8 'E nō reira, mai te mea e parau atu 'oe i teie nei hiero 'ia pararī nā te 'āfara'a, e nā-reira-hia ia.

Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

- 9 'E mai te mea e parau atu 'oe i teie nei mou'a, 'ia hurihia 'oe i raro 'e 'ia riro 'ei fenua pāpū, e nā-reira-hia ia.
- 10 'E inaha, mai te mea e parau atu 'oe ē, e tā'iri te Atua i teie nei feiā, e tupu mau ia te reira.
- 11 'E i teienei, inaha, tē fa'aue atu nei au ia 'oe 'ia haere 'e 'ia fa'a'ite i teie nei feiā ē, tē nā 'ō mai nei te Fatu te Atua, 'oia te Manahope : 'Ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e tā'irihia 'outou ē e pau roa atu.
- 12 'E inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā te Fatu paraura'a mai i teie mau parau ia Nephi, 'ua fa'aea ihora 'oia 'e 'aita a'era i haere atu i tōna ihora fare, 'ua ho'i mai ra rā i pīha'i iho i te mau pupu ta'ata i ha'apurarahia i ni'a te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i te parau a te Fatu 'o tei parauhia mai iāna, nō ni'a i tō rātou ha'amoura'a 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa.
- 13 I teienei, inaha, noa atu ā taua semeio rahi i ravehia e Nephi nō te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i te pohera'a o te ha'avā rahi ra, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au 'e 'aita a'era rātou i fa'aro'o mai i te mau parau a te Fatu.
- 14 Nō reira, 'ua fa'a'ite atu Nephi i te parau a te Fatu ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, e tā'irihia 'outou ē tae roa atu i te ha'amoura'a.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Nephi fa'a'itera'a atu i te parau ia rātou, inaha, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta noa ā rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au 'e 'aita rātou i fa'aro'o i tāna ra mau parau ; nō reira 'ua fa'a'ino mai rātou iāna, 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia haru iāna, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia huri iāna i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 16 Inaha rā, tei roto iāna te mana o te Atua, 'e 'aita roa a'era i ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave iāna 'e 'ia huri iāna i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, i ravehia ho'i 'oia e te Vārua 'e 'ua 'āfa'i-ē-hia mai rotopū mai ia rātou.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira 'oia i te haere atu nā roto i te Vārua, mai terā pupu ta'ata i terā pupu ta'ata, i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te parau a te Atua, ē tae noa atu 'ua fa'a'ite atu 'oia i te reira ia rātou pā'āto'a, 'e 'aore rā 'ua fa'ataehia atu te reira i rotopū i te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa rātou i hina'aro 'ia fa'aro'o i tāna mau parau ; 'e 'ua tupu ihora te mārōra'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'ata'a 'ē a'era rātou ia rātou iho 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te taparahi te tahi i te tahi i te 'o'e.
- 19 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helamana 11

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'ua tupu rahi roa te mau mārōra'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tupu te mau 'arora'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o Nephi ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 2 'E nā teie pupu huna nō te feiā 'eiā haru i fa'atupu i teie nei 'ohipa nō te pohe 'e te parauti'a 'ore. 'E 'ua tupu noa teie 'arora'a i te tā'āto'ara'a nō taua matahiti ra ; 'e i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti 'ua hope ihora te reira.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, i teie matahiti 'ua ti'aoro atu ra Nephi i te Fatu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 4 E te Fatu, 'eiaha e vaiho i teie nei feiā 'ia ha'amouhia i te 'o'e ; 'āre'a rā e te Fatu, 'a fa'atae mai i te o'e i ni'a i te fenua, nō te fa'aитоito ia rātou 'ia ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e penei a'e 'o te tātarahapa rātou 'e 'o te fāriu mai ia 'oe na.
- 5 'E 'ua nā-reira-hia mai te au i tā Nephi mau parau. 'E 'ua tupu ihora te o'e rahi i ni'a i te fenua, i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o Nephi. 'E nō reira i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti 'ua vai noa te o'e, 'e 'ua fa'aea ihora te 'ohipa nō te pohe i te 'o'e 'e 'ua rahi roa atu te pohe i te o'e.
- 6 'E 'ua vai tāmāu noa ato'a teie 'ohipa nō te pohe ē tae roa atu i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti. 'Ua tā'irihia ho'i te fenua 'e 'ua marō, 'e 'aita a'era i fa'ahotu mai te sītona i te 'anotau mau nō te sītona ; 'e 'ua tā'irihia te fenua tā'āto'a, i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e i rotopū ato'a i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua tā'irihia rātou 'e 'ua pohe roa te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tauatini i roto i te mau vāhi parauti'a 'ore roa o te fenua.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata ē, 'ua fātata roa rātou i te pohe i te o'e ra, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te ha'amana'o i te mau parau a Nephi.
- 8 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata i te tāparu atu i tō rātou mau ha'avā rahi e tō rātou mau ta'ata fa'atere, 'ia parau atu rātou ia Nephi ē : Inaha, 'ua 'ite mātou ē, e ta'ata 'oe nō te Atua, e nō reira, 'a ti'aoro atu i te Fatu ra i tō tātou Atua 'ia hōpoi 'ē atu 'oia i teie nei o'e ia tātou nei, 'o te tupu mau te mau parau ato'a tā 'oe i parau nō ni'a i tō mātou ha'amoura'a.

Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te mau ha'avā ia Nephi, mai te au i te mau parau i hina'arohia ra. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite a'era Nephi ē, 'ua tātarahapa te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho i roto i te 'ahu 'oto ra, 'ua ti'aoro fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te Fatu, nā 'ō atu ra :
- 10 E te Fatu, inaha, 'ua tātarahapa teie nei mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua ha'amou roa rātou i te pupu ta'ata o Gadianetona i rotopū ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua mou roa rātou, 'e 'ua hunahia tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a huna i roto i te repo.
- 11 I teienei, e te Fatu, nō tō rātou ha'eha'a i teienei, 'ia tamarūhia tō 'oe nā riri nō te ha'amou i te mau ta'ata parauti'a 'ore 'o tā 'oe na i ha'apohe.
- 12 E te Fatu, 'a fa'afāriu 'ē atu 'oe i tō 'oe na riri, 'oia ia, tō 'oe na riri 'ū'ana, 'e 'ia fa'a'ore 'oe i te o'e i ni'a i teie nei fenua.
- 13 E te Fatu, 'a fa'aro'o mai na 'oe iā'u nei, 'e 'ia nā-reira-hia mai te au i tā'u nei mau parau, 'e 'a ha'ama'iri mai na i te ua i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'ia fa'ahotu mai te reira i tōna mā'a e tōna sītona i te tau mau nō te sītona.
- 14 E te Fatu, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'oe i tā'u nei mau parau 'a parau ai au ē, 'a tu'u mai i te o'e, 'ia fa'a'orehia te 'ati rahi nō te 'o'e ra ; 'e 'ua 'ite au ē, e fa'aro'o mai 'oe i tā'u nei mau parau, ē tae roa mai i teie taime, nō te mea 'ua parau mai na ho'i 'oe ē : Mai te mea e tātarahapa teie nei feiā, e fa'aora vau ia rātou.
- 15 'Oia ia, e te Fatu, 'e tē 'ite nei 'oe ē, 'ua tātarahapa rātou, nō te o'e 'e te ma'i rahi 'e te pohe i tae mai i ni'a ia rātou.
- 16 'E i teienei, e te Fatu, 'a fa'afāriu 'ē atu na 'oe i tō 'oe na riri, 'e 'a tāmata fa'ahou ia rātou nō te hi'o e tāvini ānei rātou ia 'oe na ? 'E mai te mea ē 'oia mau roa, e te Fatu, e ti'a ia 'oe i te ha'amaita'i mai ia rātou mai te au i tā 'oe i parau ra.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'ua fa'afāriu 'ē atu ra te Fatu i tōna riri i taua feiā ra, 'e 'ua ha'ama'iri ihora i te ua i ni'a i te fenua, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'ahotu mai ra te fenua i te mā'a i te 'anotau mau nō te mā'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ahotu mai i te sītona i te 'anotau o te sītona ra.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

- 18 'E inaha, 'ua 'oa'oa 'e 'ua fa'ahanahana te mau ta'ata i te Atua, 'e 'ua 'i roa te fenua tā'āto'a i te 'oa'oa ; 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i tītau fa'ahou 'ia ha'apohe ia Nephi, 'ua mana'o rā rātou ē, e peropheta rahi 'oia, 'e e ta'ata ho'i nō te Atua, 'e 'ua hōro'ahia mai te mana rahi 'e te ha'amanara'a rahi iāna nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra.
- 19 'E inaha, 'aita roa 'o Lehi, tōna taea'e, i hemo ri'i a'e iāna i te parauti'a.
- 20 'E nō reira, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata o Nephi i te manuia fa'ahou i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te patu i te mau vāhi ano ra, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te tupu rahi 'e 'ua purara a'era, ē tae noa atu 'ua 'i roa te fenua tā'āto'a, te pae apato'erau 'e te pae apato'a ato'a, mai te miti i te pae nō te tō'o'a o te rā ē tae roa atu i te miti nō te pae nō te hiti'a o te rā.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, i te hope'a nō te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti 'ua vai noa te hau. 'E 'ua ha'amata a'era te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti ma te hau ; 'e 'ua tupu noa a'era te 'ēkālesia i te rahi i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a ; 'e 'ua riro te pae rahi o te mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a ho'i, 'ei melo nō te 'ēkālesia ; 'e 'ua fāri'i rātou i te hau rahi i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'o te hope'a te reira nō te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti.
- 22 'E 'oia ato'a 'ua fāri'i rātou i te hau i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti, maori rā nō te tahi mau mārōra'a ri'i nō ni'a i te mau tufa'a nō te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu i ha'api'ihia e te mau peropheta.
- 23 'E i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti 'ua tupu ihora te mārōra'a rahi. 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, 'ua ha'api'i atu Nephi 'e Lehi 'e tō rāua mau taea'e e rave rahi i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i rātou i te parau mau nō ni'a i te mau tufa'a nō te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, nō te mea 'ua fāri'i rātou i te mau heheura'a i te mau mahana ato'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'a'ore rātou i tā rātou mārōra'a i taua iho matahiti ra.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

- 24 'E i muri a'era, i te va'u 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, tē vai ra ho'i te tahi feiā 'ōrurehau nō roto mai i te mau ta'ata o Nephi 'o tei 'āmui atu i te mau 'āti Lamana i te tahi mau matahiti nā mua atu, 'e 'o tei rave ho'i i te i'oa o te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e tē vai ato'ra te tahi mau hua'ai mau nō te mau 'āti Lamana 'o tā rātou 'oia ho'i 'o tā te feiā 'ōrurehau i fa'ati'arepu 'ia riri, 'e nō reira 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau taea'e.
- 25 'E 'ua taparahi rātou i te ta'ata 'e 'ua haru i te tao'a ; 'e i muri iho 'ua 'ōtohe atu ra rātou i roto i te mau mou'a, 'e i roto i te mēdēbara 'e te mau vāhi tāpunira'a, 'e 'ua tāpuni rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia 'iteahia, 'e 'ua haere noa tō rātou pupu i te rahi i te mau mahana ato'a, nō te mea tē vai ra te mau ta'ata 'ōrurehau 'o tei haere mai ia rātou ra.
- 26 'E i roto i te hō'ē taime poto, 'oia ia, i roto i te tahi noa mau matahiti ri'i, 'ua riro rātou 'ei pupu 'eiā haru rahi roa ; 'e 'ua 'imi māite rātou i te mau 'ōpuara'a huna ato'a a Gadianetona ; 'e nō reira 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā 'eiā haru nā Gadianetona.
- 27 I teienei, inaha, 'ua fa'atupu teie feiā 'eiā haru i te pe'ape'a rahi, 'oia ia, i te ha'amoura'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e i rotopū ato'a i te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 28 'E i muri a'era, e mea ti'a roa 'ia fa'a'orehia teie 'ohipa nō te ha'amoura'a ; nō reira 'ua tonono atu rātou i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau tāne pūai i roto i te mēdēbara 'e i ni'a i te mau mou'a nō te 'imi i teie pupu ta'ata 'eiā haru, 'e 'ia ha'amou ia rātou.
- 29 Inaha rā, i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra, 'ua tūra'ihia atu rātou i muri i roto i tō rātou iho mau fenua. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te va'u 'ahuru matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o Nephi.
- 30 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra rātou e 'aro i teie pupu ta'ata 'eiā haru, 'e 'ua ha'amou ia rātou e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua ro'o-ato'a-hia rātou i te pohe rahi.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

31 'E 'ua fa'ahapo-fa'ahou-hia rātou 'ia ho'i atu i tō rātou iho mau fenua mai roto mai i te mēdēbara 'e te mau mou'a, nō te rahi o te mau ta'ata 'eiā haru i pārahi haere i roto i te mau mou'a 'e te mēdēbara.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'o te hope'a ia o teie matahiti. 'E tē rahi noa atu ra 'e tē pūai noa atu ra te mau ta'ata 'eiā haru, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua 'aro mai ra rātou i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e tō te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a ; 'e 'ua fa'atae mai ra rātou i te mata'u rahi i ni'a i te mau ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a nei.

33 'Oia ia, 'ua tāho'o atu rātou i te mau tufa'a e rave rahi o te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'atae atu ra i te ha'amoura'a rahi i ni'a ia rātou ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua taparahi i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'ua hōpoi tītī atu ra ia vetahi 'ē i roto i te mēdēbara, 'oia ia, i tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i.

34 I teienei, nā teie 'ino rahi 'o tei tae mai i ni'a i te mau ta'ata nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, i fa'aitoito fa'ahou ia rātou 'ia ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua.

35 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

36 'E i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou rātou i te ha'amo'e i te Fatu tō rātou Atua. 'E i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti, 'ua ha'amata rātou i te pūai i roto i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino. 'E i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti, 'aita rātou i fa'atītī'aifaro i tō rātou mau haere'a.

37 'E i muri a'era, i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti 'ua pūai roa a'era rātou i roto i tō rātou te'ote'o, 'e i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'e nō reira 'ua ineine fa'ahou rātou nō te ha'amoura'a.

38 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, inso-much that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

Helamana 12

- 1 'E nō reira e ti'a ia tātou 'ia 'ite i te hape 'e te pāpū 'ore o te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'oia ia, e 'ite ato'a tātou ē, nā roto i tō te Fatu maita'i rahi 'e te fāito 'ore 'ua ha'amaita'i mai 'e 'ua ha'amanuia mai 'oia i te feiā i ti'aturi iāna.
- 2 'Oia ia, 'e tē 'ite ato'a nei tātou ē, i te tau i ha'amanuia mai ai 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, i te fa'arahira'a i tā tō rātou mau 'āua, tā rātou mau nana māmoe 'e tā rātou mau nana pua'atoro, 'e te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te mau mea maitata'i ato'a i tō rātou mau huru ato'a ra ; 'e i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou, 'e te 'iritira'a mai ia rātou i rāpae i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi ; i te ha'amarūra'a i te 'ā'au o tō rātou mau 'enemi 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia 'aro mai ia rātou ; 'oia ia, i te ravera'a i te mau mea ato'a e maita'i ai 'e e 'oa'oa ai tōna mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'o te tau teie e fa'a'eta'eta ai rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e e ha'amo'e ai i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e 'a ta'ata'ahi noa ai i Tei Mo'a i raro a'e i tō rātou 'āvae—'oia ia, 'e te tumu nō te reira nō tō rātou ia fa'aeara'a maita'i, 'e tō rātou mau manuia rahi.
- 3 'E nō reira tē 'ite ato'a nei tātou ē, 'ia 'ore te Fatu 'ia tā'iri i tōna mau ta'ata i te mau 'ati e rave rahi ; 'oia ia, 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia fa'atae mai i te pohe 'e te mata'u i ni'a ia rātou, 'e te o'e 'e te mau huru ma'i rahi ato'a ra, 'aita roa rātou e ha'amana'o iāna.
- 4 'Auē ho'i te ma'ama'a ē, 'auē ho'i te faufa'a 'ore ē, 'auē ho'i te 'ino ē, 'e te huru diablo, 'e te 'oi'oi i te rave i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'e te tāere i te rave i te 'ohipa maita'i, o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'oia ia, 'auē ho'i tō rātou 'oi'oi i te fa'aro'o i te mau parau a te diablo, 'e i te tu'u i tō rātou 'ā'au i ni'a i te mau mea faufa'a 'ore nō teie nei ao !
- 5 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i te 'oi'oi i te fa'ateiteihia i roto i te te'ote'o ; 'oia ia, 'auē ho'i te 'oi'oi i te fa'aahaaha, 'e i te rave i te mau huru 'ohipa 'i'ino ato'a ra ; e 'auē ho'i tō rātou tāere i te ha'amana'o i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e i te fa'aro'o i tāna mau a'ora'a, 'oia ia, 'auē ho'i te tāere i te haere nā te mau haere'a o te pa'ari ra !
- 6 Inaha, 'aita rātou i hina'aro i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'o tei hāmani ia rātou, 'ia fa'atere 'e 'ia ari'i i ni'a a'e ia rātou ; noa atu ā tōna maita'i rahi 'e tōna aroha ia rātou ; 'ua ha'afaufa'a 'ore rātou i tāna mau a'ora'a, 'e 'aita rātou i hina'aro 'ia riro 'oia 'ei arata'i nō rātou.

Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

7 'Auē ho'i te rahi o te faufa'a 'ore o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'oia ia, noa atu e mea iti a'e rātou i te repo puehu o te fenua.

8 Inaha ho'i, e haere te repo puehu o te fenua i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, ē tae noa atu i te fa'ata'a-'ē-ra'a, 'ia au te fa'auera'a a tō tātou Atua mure 'ore rahi.

9 'Oia ia, inaha, i tōna reo e rurutaina ai 'e e 'āueue ai te mau 'āivi 'e te mau mou'a.

10 'E nā roto i te mana o tōna reo e pararī rātou, 'e 'a riro ai 'ei fenua pāpū, 'oia ia mai te peho ra te huru.

11 'Oia ia, nā roto i te mana o tōna reo, e 'āueue te fenua ato'a nei.

12 'Oia ia, nā roto i te mana o tōna reo, e 'āueue noa te mau niu 'ōfa'i, ē tae noa atu i roto roa.

13 'Oia ia, 'e 'ia parau atu 'oia i te fenua nei—'A fa'anu'u—'ua fa'anu'uhia ia te reira.

14 'Oia ia, 'ia parau atu 'oia i te fenua nei—'A ho'i atu 'oe i muri, 'e 'ia fa'aroahia te mahana nō te mau hora e rave rahi—e nā-reira-hia ia.

15 'E nō reira, mai te au i tāna parau, 'ua ho'i te fenua i muri, 'e 'ua au atu ra i te mana'o o te ta'ata nei ē, 'ua fa'aea noa te mahana ; 'oia ia, 'e inaha, e parau mau te reira ; 'oia mau roa 'o te fenua tei fa'anu'u, e 'ere te mahana.

16 'E inaha, 'oia ato'a, mai te mea e parau atu 'oia i te mau pape rahi o te moana hōhonu—'ia marō 'oe—e nā-reira-hia ia.

17 Inaha, mai te mea e parau atu 'oia i teie nei mou'a—'ia 'āfa'ihia 'oe i ni'a, 'e 'ia haere mai 'e 'ia ma'iri ho'i i ni'a i terā 'oire 'e 'ia tāpo'ihia te reira— inaha, e nā-reira-hia ia.

18 'E inaha, mai te mea e huna te hō'ē ta'ata i te tao'a rahi i roto i te repo, 'e 'ia parau mai te Fatu ē—'ia 'anatemahia te reira, nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te ta'ata i huna i te reira, inaha, e 'anatemahia te reira.

19 'E mai te mea e parau mai te Fatu ē—'ia 'anatemahia 'oe, 'ia 'ore te ta'ata 'ia 'ite ia 'oe mai teie nei taime ē a muri noa atu—inaha, e 'ore roa te ta'ata e 'ite fa'ahou i te reira ē a muri noa atu.

20 'E inaha, mai te mea e parau mai te Fatu i te hō'ē ta'ata ē—Nō tā 'oe mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e 'anatemahia 'oe ē a muri noa atu—e nā-reira-hia ia.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.

- 21 'E mai te mea e parau mai te Fatu ē—Nō tā 'oe mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e tāpū-'ē-hia 'oe mai mua atu i tō'u nei aro—e fa'atupu mau iho ā 'oia i te reira.
- 22 E 'ati ho'i tōna 'o tāna e parau atu i te reira, 'e e tupu ho'i te reira iāna 'o tē rave i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e 'aita roa 'oia e fa'aorahia ; nō reira, 'o teie te tumu i a'ohia ai te parau nō te tātarahapara'a, 'ia ti'a i te mau ta'ata 'ia fa'aorahia.
- 23 Nō reira, e ao tō rātou 'o tē tātarahapa 'e 'o tē ha'apa'o i te reo o te Fatu tō rātou Atua ; 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie 'o tē fa'aorahia.
- 24 'E 'ia fa'ati'a mai te Atua, nā roto i tōna ra 'īra'a rahi, 'ia arata'ihia te mau ta'ata i te tātarahapara'a 'e i te mau 'ohipa maitata'i, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'aho'ihia i raro a'e i te maita'i nō te maita'i, mai te au i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa.
- 25 'E 'ua hina'aro vau i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia fa'aorahia. 'Āre'a rā 'ua tai'o tātou ē, 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a tē vai ra te tahi pae 'o tē hurihia i rāpae, 'oia ia, 'o tē hurihia i rāpae mai mua mai i te aro o te Fatu.
- 26 'Oia ia, 'o tē tu'uhia i te vāhi nō te mamae hope 'ore, nō te fa'atupu i te mau parau e parau nei ē : 'O rātou 'o tei rave i te 'ohipa maita'i ra, e fāri'i ia i te ora mure 'ore ; 'e 'o rātou 'o tei rave i te 'ohipa 'ino ra, e fāri'i ia i te pohe mure 'ore. 'E 'ua nā-reira-hia. 'Āmene.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

Tē parau tohu a Samuela, te 'āti Lamana, i te mau 'āti Nephi.

Helamana 13

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'ua vai noa ā te mau 'āti Nephi i roto i te parauti'a 'ore, 'oia ia, i roto i te parauti'a 'ore rahi, 'āre'a te mau 'āti Lamana ra tē ha'apa'o maita'i noa ra ia rātou i te mau fa'auera'a a te Atua, mai te au i te ture a Mose ra.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, i teie nei matahiti tē vai ra te hō'ē ta'ata 'o Samuela, e 'āti Lamana 'oia, 'e 'ua haere mai ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te a'o atu i te mau ta'ata. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'o atu 'oia i te mau mahana e rave rahi i te parau nō te tātarahapara'a i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ti'avaru atu rātou iāna i rāpae, 'e 'ua fātata roa 'oia i te ho'i atu i tōna ihora fenua.
- 3 Inaha rā, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu iāna ra, 'ia ho'i fa'ahou atu 'oia, 'e 'ia tohu atu i te mau ta'ata i te mea 'o tē tae mai i roto i tōna ra 'ā'au.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa rātou i fa'ati'a 'ia tomo mai 'oia i roto i te 'oire ; nō reira 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua pa'uma atu ra i ni'a i te patu o te 'oire, 'e 'ua fa'atoro atu ra i tōna rima 'e 'ua pi'i atu ra ma te reo pūai, 'e 'ua tohu ihora i te mau ta'ata i te mau mea tā te Fatu i tu'u mai i roto i tōna ra 'ā'au.
- 5 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, tē parau atu nei au, 'o Samuela, te 'āti Lamana, 'ia 'outou i te mau parau a te Fatu 'o tāna i tu'u mai i roto i tō'u nei 'ā'au ; 'e inaha, 'ua tu'u mai 'oia i te reira i roto i tō'u nei 'ā'au nō te parau atu i teie nei feiā ē, tē tautau nei te 'o'e nō te parauti'a i ni'a i teie nei feiā ; e 'ore e ma'iri te mau matahiti e maha hānere ra, e ma'iri mai ai te 'o'e nō te parauti'a i ni'a i teie nei feiā.
- 6 'Oia mau, tē vai atu ra te pohe rahi e tae mai i ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'e e tae mai iho ā te reira i ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'e 'aita atu e rāve'a e ora ai teie nei feiā, maori rā nā roto i te tātarahapara'a 'e te fa'aro'o i te Fatu ra ia Iesu Mesia, 'o tē haere mai iho ā i roto i te ao nei, 'e 'o tē fāri'i i te 'ati nō te mau mea e rave rahi, 'e 'o tē taparahihia nō tōna ra mau ta'ata.

The prophecy of Samuel, the Lamanite, to the Nephites.

Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

- 7 'E inaha, nā te hō'ē melahi a te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai i te reira iā'u nei, 'e 'ua fa'atae mai 'oia i te mau parau 'oa'oa i tō'u nei vārua. 'E inaha, 'ua tonohia mai au ia 'outou na nō te fa'a'ite ato'a atu ho'i ia 'outou, 'ia roa'ia ia 'outou te mau parau 'oa'oa ; inaha rā, 'aita roa 'outou i fāri'i mai iā'u.
- 8 Nō reira, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : Nō te 'eta'eta o te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi, e rave 'ē atu vau i tā'u nei parau mai ia rātou, 'e e fa'aātea 'ē atu vau i tō'u Vārua ia rātou, 'e e 'ore roa vau e fa'a'oroma'i ā ia rātou, 'e e fa'afāriu vau i te 'ā'au o tō rātou mau taea'e 'ia 'ino'ino mai ia rātou, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou.
- 9 'E e 'ore e ma'iri te maha hānere matahiti, e fa'ati'a vau 'ia tā'irihia rātou ; 'oia ia, e tāho'o vau ia rātou i te 'o'e 'e te o'e 'e te mau ma'i rahi.
- 10 'Oia ia, e tāho'o vau ia rātou i roto i tō'u riri 'ū'ana, 'e tē vai ra te tahi pae o tō 'outou mau 'enemi nō te maha o te u'i 'o tē ora noa nō te 'ite atu i tō 'outou ha'amou-roa-ra'a-hia ; 'e e tupu mau iho ā teie, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu ; 'e nā tō te maha o te u'i e tāho'o ia 'outou 'ia ha'amou-roa-hia.
- 11 'Āre'a rā, mai te mea e tātarahapa 'outou ma te fāriu mai i te Fatu ra i tō 'outou Atua, e fa'afāriu 'ē atu ia vau i tō'u riri, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu ; 'oia ia, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : E ao tō rātou 'o tē tātarahapa 'e 'o tē fāriu mai iā'u ra, 'āre'a rā e 'ati tōna 'o tē 'ore e tātarahapa.
- 12 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i tō teie nei 'oire rahi o Zarahemela ; inaha ho'i, nō te feiā parauti'a i roto ra i fa'ahereherehia ai te reira ; 'oia ia, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, 'auē ho'i tō teie nei 'oire rahi nō te mea tē 'ite nei au ē, tē vai nei e rave rahi, 'oia ia, te pae rahi o teie nei 'oire rahi, 'o tē fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au i mua iā'u nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.
- 13 'Āre'a rā e ao tō rātou 'o tē tātarahapa, 'e 'o rātou ho'i tā'u e fa'aora. Inaha rā, 'āhiri ho'i 'aita e feiā parauti'a i roto i teie nei 'oire rahi, inaha, 'ua riro ia vau i te ha'ama'iri mai i te auahi mai ni'a mai i te ra'i nō te ha'amou i te reira.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

- 14 Inaha rā, nō te ta'ata parauti'a i fa'ahereherehia ai te reira. Inaha rā, tē vai ra te taime, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, 'ia tīahi 'ē atu 'outou i te feiā parauti'a mai rotopū atu ia 'outou, i reira 'ua ineine 'outou nō te pohe, 'oia ia, e 'ati tō teie nei 'oire rahi, nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i roto i taua 'oire ra.
- 15 'Oia ia, e 'ati tō taua 'oire ra nō Gideona, nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i roto i taua 'oire ra.
- 16 'Oia ia, e 'ati tō te mau 'oire ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi ē 'ati noa a'e te fenua, nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i roto i taua mau 'oire ra.
- 17 'E inaha, e tae mai te 'anatemara'a i ni'a i te fenua, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota, nō te mau ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'oia ia, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu Sabaota, 'oia ia, tō tātou Atua rahi mau, 'o tē huna i te mau tao'a rahi i roto i te repo, e 'ore roa ia te reira e 'itea-fa'ahou-hia iāna, nō te 'anatemara'a rahi i ni'a i te fenua, maori rā 'ia riro 'oia 'ei ta'ata parauti'a 'e 'ia huna 'oia i te reira i te Fatu ra.
- 19 Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu, 'o tō'u ia hina'aro 'ia huna rātou i tā rātou mau tao'a rahi nō'u nei ; 'e 'ia 'anatemahia rātou 'o tē 'ore e huna i tā rātou mau tao'a rahi nō'u nei ; 'e 'aita ho'i e ta'ata e huna i tā rātou mau tao'a rahi nō'u nei ; maori rā, 'o te ta'ata parauti'a ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e huna i tāna mau tao'a rahi nō'u nei, e 'anatemahia ia 'oia, 'e te tao'a rahi ato'a, 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē e fa'aorahia nō te 'anatemara'a i fa'ataehia i ni'a i te fenua nei.
- 20 'E tē vai ra te mahana e huna 'ē atu ai rātou i tā rātou mau tao'a rahi, nō te mea 'ua ha'amau rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i ni'a i te mau tao'a rahi ; 'e nō te mea 'ua ha'amau rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i ni'a i tā rātou mau tao'a rahi, 'e 'a huna 'ē atu ai i tā rātou mau tao'a rahi, 'ia horo atu ai rātou nā mua i tō rātou ra mau 'enemi ; nō te mea 'aita rātou e huna i te reira nō'u nei, e 'anatemahia rātou 'e tā rātou ato'a mau tao'a rahi ; 'e i taua mahana ra e tā'irihia ai rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

- 21 Hi'o mai 'outou te mau ta'ata o teie nei 'oire rahi, 'e 'a ha'apa'o mai i tā'u nei mau parau ; 'oia ia, 'a ha'apa'o i te mau parau 'o tā te Fatu i parau mai ; inaha ho'i, 'ua parau mai 'oia ē, 'ua 'anatemahia 'outou nō tā 'outou mau tao'a rahi, 'e 'ua 'anatemala-to'a-hia tā 'outou mau tao'a rahi, nō te mea 'ua ha'amau 'outou i tō 'outou 'ā'au i ni'a i te reira, 'e 'aita ho'i i ha'apa'o i te mau parau a tei hōro'a mai i te reira ia 'outou na.
- 22 'Aita 'outou i ha'amana'o i te Fatu ra i tō 'outou Atua i roto i te mau mea 'o tāna i ha'amaita'i mai ia 'outou na, 'āre'a rā 'ua ha'amana'o noa 'outou i tā 'outou mau tao'a rahi, 'e 'aita i ha'amāuruuru i te Fatu ra i tō 'outou Atua nō te reira ; 'oia ia, 'aita tō 'outou 'ā'au e tītau nei i te Fatu, 'āre'a rā tē rahi ra te te'ote'o, te fa'aahaaha, te fa'arahi-atu-ā-ra'a, te fe'i'i, te mārōra'a, te tāiroiro, te hāmani 'ino, te taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a ra.
- 23 Nō te reira ho'i te Fatu te Atua i fa'atae mai ai i te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho i te fenua nei, 'e i ni'a ato'a iho i tā 'outou mau tao'a rahi, nō tā 'outou ia mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 24 'Oia ia, e 'ati tō teie nei feiā, nō teie tau i taehia mai nei, 'e 'ua tīahi 'ē atu 'outou i te mau peropheta, 'e 'ua vahavaha atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua pēhi atu ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i, 'e 'ua taparahi atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua rave i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a i ni'a ia rātou, mai tā rātou i nā reira i te 'anotau tahito ra.
- 25 'E i teienei, 'ia paraparau 'outou, e nā 'ō ia 'outou ē : 'Āhiri tō mātou mau mahana i riro na mai te mau mahana o tō mātou mau metua i tahito ra, e'ita paha ia mātou e taparahi i te mau peropheta ; 'e e'ita paha ia mātou e pēhi ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i, 'e e'ita paha ia mātou e tīahi atu ia rātou i rāpae.
- 26 Inaha, e mea 'ino roa atu 'outou ia rātou ; mai te Fatu e ora ra, 'āhiri ē haere mai te hō'ē peropheta i rotopū ia 'outou na ma te a'o mai ia 'outou i te parau a te Fatu, 'o tē fa'a'ite pāpū mai ia 'outou i tā 'outou mau hara 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, e tupu ia tō 'outou riri iāna, 'e e tīahi 'ē atu 'outou iāna ma te 'imi i te rāve'a 'ia pohe 'oia ; 'oia ia, e riro ho'i 'outou i te parau ē, e peropheta ha'avare 'oia, 'e e ta'ata hara 'oia, 'e nō te diabolō 'oia, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai 'oia ē, e 'ohipa 'ino ana'e tā 'outou.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

- 27 Inaha rā, mai te mea e haere mai te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū ia 'outou na, e riro ia 'outou i te parau ē : 'A rave i teie, e 'ere ia i te mea 'ino ; 'a rave i terā, 'e 'aita 'outou e fa'autu'ahia ; 'oia ia, e riro ho'i 'oia i te parau mai ē : 'A haere noa nā roto i te te'ote'o o tō 'outou iho 'ā'au ; 'oia ia, 'a haere noa nā roto i te te'ote'o o tō 'outou mata, 'e 'a rave noa i te hina'aro o tō 'outou 'ā'au—'e mai te mea e haere mai te hō'ē ta'ata i rotopū ia 'outou ma te parau mai i te reira, e fāri'i ia 'outou iāna, ma te parau ē, e peropheta 'oia.
- 28 'Oia ia, e fa'ateitei 'outou iāna, 'e e 'ōpere 'outou i tā 'outou tao'a iāna ; e hōro'a atu 'outou i te tahi tufa'a nō tā 'outou 'auro 'e te 'ārio nāna, 'e e fa'a'ahu 'outou iāna i te 'ahu moni rahi ; 'e nō te mea tē parau mai ra 'oia i te mau parau tāvaimanino ia 'outou, 'e tē parau mai ra 'oia ē, 'ua maita'i tātou, 'e nō reira 'aita atu ra 'outou i 'ite i te hapa i roto iāna ra.
- 29 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te u'i parauti'a 'ore 'e te ha'api'o ē ; 'o 'outou e te feiā 'ā'au pa'ari 'e te feiā 'ā'au 'eta'eta, e aha ia te maorora'a 'o tā 'outou i mana'o ē, e fa'a'oroma'i noa te Fatu ia 'outou na ? 'Oia ia, e aha ia te maorora'a tā 'outou i 'ōpua 'ia vaiiho noa ia 'outou 'ia arata'ihia e te feiā arata'i ma'ama'a 'e te matapō ra ? 'Oia ia, e aha ia te maorora'a tā 'outou i hina'aro nō te mā'iti 'ia fa'aea noa i roto i te pōiri 'e 'eiaha i roto i te māmarama ?
- 30 'Oia ia, inaha, 'ua tupu a'ena te riri o te Fatu ia 'outou na ; inaha, 'ua 'anatema 'oia i te fenua nō tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 31 'E inaha, e tae mai te taimē e 'anatema ai 'oia i tā 'outou mau tao'a rahi, 'e e mahere 'ē noa atu te reira ia 'outou, 'e 'aita atu ra e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tāpe'a noa i te reira ; 'e i te mau mahana nō tō 'outou vevera'a, e 'ore roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tāpe'a noa i te reira.
- 32 'E i te mau mahana nō tō 'outou vevera'a, e ti'aoro atu 'outou i te Fatu ; 'e e faufa'a 'ore tā 'outou ra ti'aorora'a, nō te mea 'ua tae a'ena mai tō 'outou fa'aanora'a i ni'a ia 'outou, 'e 'ua pāpū maita'i tō 'outou ha'amoura'a ; 'e i reira 'outou e 'oto ai 'e 'e 'auē ai i taua mahana ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra. 'E i reira ho'i 'outou e 'oto ai, 'e e parau mai ai ē :

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

- 33 'Āhiri vau i tātarahapa na, 'e 'āhiri 'aita vau i taparahi na i te mau peropheta, 'e i pēhi ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i ra, 'e i tiāhi 'ē atu ia rātou. 'Oia ia, i taua mahana ra, e riro ai 'outou i te parau mai ē : 'Āhiri tātou i ha'amana'o na i te Fatu i tō tātou Atua i te mahana 'oia i hōro'a mai ai i tā tātou mau tao'a rahi, 'aita ia te reira i riro 'ei mea mahere noa 'e mo'e atu ai ia tātou nei ; inaha ho'i, 'ua reva 'ē roa tā tātou ra mau tao'a ia tātou nei.
- 34 Inaha, 'ia ha'apae tātou i te mauha'a rave 'ohipa i teie nei vāhi, e ananahi 'ua mo'e roa te reira ; 'e inaha, 'ua rave-'ē-hia tā tātou mau 'o'e ia tātou i te mahana i 'imi ai tātou i te reira nō te 'arora'a.
- 35 'Oia ia, 'ua huna tātou i tā tātou mau tao'a rahi 'e 'ua rave-'ē-hia atu te reira ia tātou nei, nō te 'anatemara'a i tae mai i ni'a i te fenua nei.
- 36 'Āhiri ho'i tātou i tātarahapa i te mahana i tae mai ai te parau a te Fatu ia tātou nei ; inaha ho'i, 'ua 'anatemahia te fenua nei, 'e 'ua riro te mau mea ato'a 'ei mea mahere noa, 'e 'aita roa e ti'a ia tātou 'ia tāpe'a noa mai i te reira.
- 37 Inaha, 'ua ha'a'atihia tātou e te mau demoni, 'oia ia, 'ua ha'a'atihia tātou e te mau melahi a te diablo 'o tei tītau 'ia ha'amou i tō tātou vārua. Inaha, 'ua rahi roa tā tātou mau 'ohipa 'Ī'ino. E te Fatu, 'aita ānei e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia fa'afāriu 'ē atu i tō 'oe riri ia mātou nei ? 'E nā reira ho'i 'outou i te parau i taua mahana ra.
- 38 Inaha rā, 'ua ma'iri tō 'outou mau mahana tāmatarā'a ; 'ua fa'atāere noa 'outou i te mahana nō tō 'outou fa'aorara'a e tae roa 'ua tāere roa, 'e 'ua pāpū tō 'outou pohe ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua tītau noa 'outou i te tā'āto'ara'a o te mau mahana nō tō 'outou orara'a i te mau mea 'o tē 'ore e noa'a ia 'outou ; 'e 'ua tītau 'outou i te 'oa'oa nā roto i te ravera'a i te mau 'ohipa 'Ī'ino, 'e 'aita ho'i te reira i au i te huru nō taua parauti'a nei i roto i tō tātou Upo'o Fa'atere mure 'ore rahi.
- 39 E te mau ta'ata nō teie nei fenua ē, 'ia fa'aro'o mai 'outou i tā'u nei mau parau ! 'E tē pure nei au 'ia fa'afāriu-'ē-hia atu te riri o te Fatu ia 'outou na, 'e 'ia tātarahapa 'outou 'e 'ia fa'aorahia.

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

Helamana 14

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua tohu Samuela, te 'āti Lamana, i te tahi atu ā mau mea e rave rahi 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia.
- 2 'E inaha, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau i te hō'ē tāpa'o ia 'outou na ; i roto e pae matahiti toe, 'e inaha, 'ei reira te Tamaiti a te Atua e tae mai ai nō te fa'aora i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa.
- 3 'E inaha, 'o teie te tāpa'o tā'u e fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou nō te taime nō tōna taera'a mai ; inaha ho'i, e 'itehia te mau māramarama rahi i ni'a i te ra'i, 'e nō reira ho'i i te ru'i nā mua 'oia e tae mai ai 'aita roa ia e pōiri, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua riro te reira i te ta'ata nei mai te mea ra ē, tē vai noa ra te mahana.
- 4 Nō reira, e 'itehia te hō'ē mahana 'e te hō'ē pō 'e te hō'ē mahana, mai te mea ra ē, e 'itehia te hō'ē mahana 'e 'aita e pō ; 'e e riro ia teie 'ei tāpa'o nā 'outou ; 'e e 'ite ho'i 'outou i te hitira'a mai o te mahana 'e tōna ato'a ma'irira'a i raro ; nō reira e 'ite pāpū ai rātou ē, tē vai ra e piti mahana e hō'ē pō ; 'āre'a rā e'ita te pō e ha'apōirihia ; 'e 'o te pō ho'i ia nā mua 'oia e fānauhia mai ai.
- 5 'E inaha, e hiti mai te hō'ē feti'a 'āpī, 'e 'aita ā ho'i 'outou i 'ite atu ra i te hō'ē mai te reira te huru ; e riro ato'a teie 'ei tāpa'o nā 'outou.
- 6 'E inaha, e 'ere 'o teie ana'e iho, tē vai atu ra e rave rahi atu ā mau tāpa'o 'e mau 'ohipa 'ūmerehia tē 'itea i ni'a i te ra'i.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, e māere 'outou, 'e e 'ūmere ho'i, 'e nō reira ho'i e ma'iri 'outou i raro i te repo.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'o rātou 'o tē ti'aturi i te Tamaiti a te Atua ra, 'o rātou ato'a ia 'o tē fāri'i i te ora mure 'ore.
- 9 'E inaha, 'ua nā reira mai te Fatu i te fa'aue mai iā'u nā roto i te vaha o tāna ra melahi, 'ia haere mai au 'e 'ia fa'a'ite atu i teie mea ia 'outou na ; 'oia ia, 'ua fa'aue mai 'oia iā'u 'ia tohu atu vau i teie mau mea ia 'outou na ; 'oia ia, 'ua nā 'ō mai 'oia iā'u ē : 'A ti'aoro atu i teie mau ta'ata, 'a tātarahapa 'e 'a fa'aaineine i te 'ē'a o te Fatu.

Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

- 10 'E i teienei, nō te mea e 'āti Lamana vau, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i te mau parau tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai iā'u ra, 'e nō te mea ho'i e fa'ahapara'a pūai te reira ia 'outou, 'ua riri 'outou iā'u 'e 'ua tītau 'ia taparahi iā'u, 'e 'ua tīahi 'ē atu iā'u mai rotopū atu ia 'outou na.
- 11 'E e fa'aro'o mai 'outou i tā'u nei mau parau, 'e 'o teie ho'i te tumu vau i tae mai ai i ni'a i te mau patu nō teie nei 'oire, 'ia fa'aro'o 'outou 'e 'ia 'ite ho'i 'outou i te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua 'o tē tīa'i nei ia 'outou nō tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e 'ia 'ite ato'a 'outou i te mau tītaura'a nō te tātarahapara'a.
- 12 'E 'ia 'ite ato'a 'outou i te taera'a mai o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, te Metua nō te ra'i 'e nō te fenua nei, 'o Tei Hamani i te mau mea ato'a ra mai te mātāmua mai ā ; 'e 'ia 'ite 'outou i te mau tāpa'o nō tōna taera'a mai, 'e 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ti'aturi i tōna ra i'oa.
- 13 'E mai te mea e ti'aturi 'outou i tōna ra i'oa, e tātarahapa ia 'outou i tā 'outou mau hara ato'a, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fāri'i i te ha'amatarara'a nō te reira nā roto i tōna ra mau maita'i rahi.
- 14 'E inaha, e fa'a'ite fa'ahou atu vau i te tahi atu ā tāpa'o ia 'outou ; 'oia ia, te tāpa'o nō tōna pohera'a.
- 15 Inaha ho'i, e mea ti'a roa iāna 'ia pohe 'ia ti'a i te fa'aorara'a 'ia tae mai ; 'oia ia, e mea ti'a roa 'e 'ua tītauhia iāna 'ia pohe nō te fa'atupu i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra, 'e nā roto ho'i i te reira e ti'a ai i te mau ta'ata 'ia 'āfa'ihia atu i mua i te aro o te Fatu.
- 16 'Oia ia, inaha, nā teie pohe e fa'atupu i te ti'afa'ahoura'a, 'e e fa'aora i te mau ta'ata ato'a i te pohe mātāmua—i taua pohe pae vārua ra ; nō te mea 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia te mau ta'ata ato'a mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu, nā roto i te hi'ara'a o Adamu, 'e 'ua fa'arirohia rātou 'ei feiā pohe i te mau mea pae tino nei 'e i te mau mea pae vārua ho'i.
- 17 Inaha rā, nā te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia e fa'aora i te ta'ata nei, 'oia ia i tō te ao ato'a nei, 'e nā te reira ho'i e fa'aho'i atu ia rātou i mua i te aro o te Fatu.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

- 18 'Oia ia, 'e e fa'atupu te reira i te tītaura'a nō te tātarahapara'a, terā ia, 'o 'oia 'o tē tātarahapa ra, e 'ore roa ia 'oia e tāpūhia i raro 'e e hurihia i roto i te auahi ; 'āre'a rā 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e tātarahapa ra, e tāpūhia ia 'oia i raro 'e e hurihia i roto i te auahi ; 'e e tae fa'ahou mai te pohe pae vārua i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'oia ia, te pohe piti, 'e e tāpū-'ē-fa'ahou-hia ho'i rātou i te mau mea nō te parauti'a ra.
- 19 Nō reira, 'a tātarahapa 'outou, 'a tātarahapa 'outou, 'o te fa'ahapahia 'outou, 'a ro'ohia ai i taua pohe piti ra, 'o 'outou i 'ite i taua mau mea ra 'e 'aita i ha'apa'o.
- 20 Inaha rā, mai tā'u i parau na ia 'outou nō ni'a i te tahi atu tāpa'o, 'oia ho'i te tāpa'o nō tōna pohera'a, inaha, i taua mahana ra 'a pohe ai 'oia ra, e riro te mahana i te ha'apōirihia, 'e e 'ore te reira e ha'amāramama mai ia 'outou na ; 'e mai te reira ato'a te 'āva'e 'e te mau feti'a ; 'e 'aita roa te māramarama e tae mai i ni'a i te fenua nei nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro, mai te taimē 'oia e pohe ai ē tae noa atu i te mahana 'oia e ti'a fa'ahou mai ai mai te pohe mai.
- 21 'Oia ia, i te taimē 'oia e pohe ai e 'itehia te mau pātiri 'e te mau uira nō te ārea e rave rahi hora te maoro, e 'āueue 'e e rurutaina te fenua ; 'e te mau mato i ni'a i te fenua, tō ni'a iho 'e tō raro a'e i te fenua, 'o tei 'itea ia 'outou na i teie taimē e mea pa'ari, 'e 'aore rā te pae rahi a'e nō te reira 'o te hō'ē ia mea pa'ari, e vāvāhilia ia.
- 22 'Oia ia, e pararī te reira nā te 'āfara'a, 'e e 'itea te reira i roto i te mau vāhi 'afā 'e i roto i te mau ārea, 'e i roto i te mau hu'ahu'a i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'oia ia, i ni'a iho 'e i raro a'e i te fenua.
- 23 'E inaha, e tupu te mau vero rarahi, 'e e fa'aha'eha'ahia te mau mou'a e rave rahi mai te pehora te huru, e rave rahi te mau vāhi e parauhia nei i teienei e mau peho, e riro ia 'ei mau mou'a teitei roa.
- 24 E rave rahi te mau purūmu 'o tē vāvāhilia, 'e e fa'aanohia te mau 'oire e rave rahi.
- 25 'E e 'iritihia te mau mēnema e rave rahi, 'e e tu'u mai te reira i tō rātou feiā pohe e rave rahi ; e rave rahi te feiā mo'a 'o tē fā mai i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

26 'E inaha, 'ua nā reira te melahi i te parau mai iā'u ;
'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ho'i 'oia iā'u ē, e 'itehia te mau pātiri
'e te mau uira nō te ārea e rave rahi hora te maoro.

27 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai 'oia iā'u ē, 'a vai noa ai te pātiri 'e
te uira, 'e te vero, e tupu teie nei mau mea, 'e e tāpo'i
noa te pōiri i te fenua tā'āto'a nō te ārea e toru
mahana te maoro.

28 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te melahi iā'u ē, e rave rahi
'o tē 'ite atu i te mau mea rahi a'e i teie, 'ia ti'a ia rātou
'ia ti'aturi ē e tupu mau iho ā teie mau tāpa'o 'e teie
mau 'ohipa 'ūmehia i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'ia 'ore roa
te tumu nō te ti'aturi 'ore i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a
te ta'ata nei—

29 'E teie te tumu nō te reira, 'ia fa'aorahia te mau
ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi, 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tē 'ore e
ti'aturi, 'ia fa'ataehia mai ia te ha'avāra'a parauti'a i
ni'a iho ia rātou ; 'e 'oia ato'a mai te mea e
fa'ahapahia rātou ra, nā rātou iho ia e fa'atae mai i tō
rātou iho fa'ahapara'a i ni'a iho ia rātou iho.

30 'E i teieni, 'a ha'amana'o, 'a ha'amana'o, e tō'u
mau taea'e, 'o 'oia 'o tē pohe ra, e pohe ia iāna iho, 'e
'o 'oia 'o tē rave i te mau 'ohipa 'I'ino ra, tē rave ra ia
'oia i te reira iāna iho ; inaha ho'i, e feiā ti'amā
'outou ; 'ua ti'a ia 'outou 'ia mā'iti nō 'outou iho ;
inaha ho'i, 'ua hōro'a mai te Atua i te 'ite ia 'outou, 'e
'ua fa'ati'amā ho'i ia 'outou.

31 'E 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te 'ite ia 'outou 'ia ti'a ia
'outou 'ia 'ite i te maita'i 'e te 'ino, 'e 'ua hōro'a mai
ho'i 'oia i te ti'amāra'a ia 'outou 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia
mā'iti i te ora 'e 'aore rā i te pohe ; 'e e ti'a ia 'outou i
te rave i te maita'i 'ia fa'aho'ihia i te mea maita'i, 'e
'aore rā 'ia fa'aho'ihia mai te mea maita'i ia 'outou
na ; 'e 'aore rā, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia rave i te 'ino, 'e 'ia
fa'aho'ihia mai te mea 'ino ia 'outou na.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me;
for he said unto me that there should be thunderings
and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and
the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these
things should be, and that darkness should cover the
face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see
greater things than these, to the intent that they
might believe that these signs and these wonders
should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to
the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief
among the children of men—

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe
might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe,
a righteous judgment might come upon them; and
also if they are condemned they bring upon them-
selves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that
whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and
whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for
behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for your-
selves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowl-
edge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good
from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might
choose life or death; and ye can do good and be re-
stored unto that which is good, or have that which is
good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have
that which is evil restored unto you.

Helamana 15

- 1 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ore 'outou e tātarahapa, e riro tō 'outou mau fare i te fa'aanoahia nō 'outou.
- 2 'Oia ia, 'ia 'ore 'outou e tātarahapa, e fāri'i tā 'outou mau vahine i te 'oto rahi i te mahana rātou e fa'a'ote ai i te mau tamari'i ri'i ra ; e tāmata ho'i 'outou i te horo, 'e 'aita roa ho'i e vāhi nō te ha'apūra'a ; 'oia ia, e 'ati ho'i tō te mau vahine hapū ra, e teiaha ho'i rātou 'e 'aita e mara'a 'ia horo ; nō reira, e ta'ata'ahihia rātou i raro 'a vaiiho-noa-hia ai 'ia pohe.
- 3 'Oia ia, e 'ati ho'i teie feiā i parauhia, te mau ta'ata o Nephi, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou, 'a 'ite ai rātou i teie nei mau tāpa'o 'e teie mau 'ohipa 'ūmehia 'o tē fa'a'itehia ia rātou ra ; inaha ho'i, i riro na rātou 'ei feiā mā'itihia nō te Fatu ; 'oia ia, 'ua here 'oia i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e 'ua 'avau ho'i 'oia ia rātou ; 'oia ia, i te mau mahana 'a rave ai rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i 'avau ai 'oia ia rātou nō te mea 'ua here 'oia ia rātou.
- 4 Inaha rā, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua 'ino'ino 'oia i te mau 'āti Lamana nō te mea 'ua rave tāmāu noa rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'e teie te tumu nō te reira, 'oia ho'i nō te mau peu tumu 'ī'ino a tō rātou mau metua. Inaha rā, 'ua tae atu te fa'aorara'a ia rātou nā roto i te a'ora'a a te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'o teie ho'i te tumu 'ua ha'amaoro te Fatu i tō rātou ra mau pu'e mahana.
- 5 'E tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite atu 'outou ia rātou, 'oia ho'i i te pae rahi 'o tē haere ra nā ni'a i te 'ē'a au i tā rātou 'ohipa, 'e tē haere ra rātou ma te ha'apa'o maita'i i mua i te Atua, 'e tē ha'apa'o ra rātou i tāna mau fa'auera'a, 'e tāna mau ture, 'e tāna mau fa'aotira'a mai te au i te ture a Mose.
- 6 'Oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, tē rave nei te pae rahi o rātou i te reira, 'e tē tūtava nei rātou ma te tu'utu'u 'ore 'e te itoito 'ia fa'a'ite i te parau mau i te toe'a o tō rātou mau taea'e ; nō reira tē 'āmui noa mai ra te mau ta'ata e rave rahi ia rātou i te mau mahana ato'a.

Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

7 'E inaha, 'o 'outou iho tei 'ite, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū 'outou iho i te reira, 'e 'o rātou 'o tei fa'afāriuhia mai i te 'ite i te parau mau ra, 'e i te 'ite i te mau peu tumu parauti'a 'ore 'e te vi'ivi'i a tō rātou mau metua, 'e 'o rātou tei arata'ihia 'ia ti'aturi i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ra, 'oia ia, i te mau parau tohu a te mau peropheta mo'a 'o tei pāpa'ihia, 'e 'o tei arata'i ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te fa'aro'o i te Fatu, 'e i te tātarahapara'a, 'e nā taua fa'aro'o ra 'e te tātarahapara'a ra e fa'atupu i te hō'ē tauria'a o te 'ā'au i roto ia rātou—

8 Nō reira, 'o rātou 'o tei fāri'i i te reira, 'ua 'ite ia 'outou iho ē, 'ua tāpe'a māite rātou ma te 'āueue 'ore i te fa'aro'o 'e te mau mea i fa'ati'amā ia rātou.

9 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a ia 'outou ē, 'ua huna rātou i tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia rave fa'ahou i te reira, 'o te hara rātou ; 'oia ia, tē 'ite ra 'outou i tō rātou ra mata'u 'ia rave i te hara—inaha ho'i, e fa'ati'a noa rātou 'ia ta'ata'ahinoahia 'e 'ia taparahihia e tō rātou ra mau 'enemi, 'e 'aita roa rātou e rave i tā rātou mau 'o'e nō te 'aro atu ia rātou ; nō te mea tē vai ra tō rātou fa'aro'o i te Mesia.

10 'E i teienei, nō tō rātou itoito i te ti'aturira'a i taua mea ra 'o tā rātou i ti'aturi na, 'e nō tō rātou ha'apa'o maita'i i muri iho i tō rātou ha'amāramaramara'ahia, inaha, e ha'amaita'i 'e e ha'amaoro te Fatu i tō rātou mau mahana, noa atu ā tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino—

11 'Oia ia, noa atu ā te paruparu ra tō rātou fa'aro'o, e ha'amaoro ā te Fatu i tō rātou mau mahana, ē tae roa i te tau i parauhia e tō tātou ra mau metua, 'e 'oia ato'a e te peropheta ra 'o Zenosa, 'e e te tahi atu ā mau peropheta e rave rahi, nō ni'a i te fa'aho'ira'ahia o tō tātou mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia 'ite fa'ahou i te parau mau—

12 'Oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou ē, i te mau tau hope'a ra e fa'ataehia mai te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu i tō tātou mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e noa atu ā te mau 'ati e rave rahi tā rātou e fāri'i, 'e noa atu ā e ha'apurarahia rātou i terā vāhi 'e i terā i ni'a i te fenua nei, e a'ua'uhia, e tā'irihia, 'e e ha'apurara-haere-hia, 'e 'aita e vāhi ha'apūra'a, e aroha mai iho ā te Fatu ia rātou.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

- 13 'E 'ua au teie i tei tohuhia mai, 'oia ho'i, e fa'afāriuhia mai rātou i te 'ite mau ra, 'oia ho'i i te 'ite i tō rātou Tāra'ehara, 'e tō rātou tīa'i māmoe rahi mau, 'e 'ia tai'ohia i rotopū i tāna ra mau māmoe.
- 14 Nō reira tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e mea maita'i a'e nō rātou, 'eiaha rā nō 'outou, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa 'outou.
- 15 Inaha ho'i, 'āhiri te mau 'ohipa rarahi i fa'a'itehia atu ia rātou, mai tei fa'a'itehia atu ia 'outou na, 'oia ia, 'ia rātou 'o tei paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o nō te mau peu tumu a tō rātou ra mau metua, e 'ite ia 'outou iho ē, e 'ore roa rātou e topa fa'ahou i roto i te tī'aturi 'ore.
- 16 Nō reira, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu : E 'ore roa vau e ha'amou roa ia rātou, 'āre'a rā i te mahana e au iā'u ra, e fa'aho'i fa'ahou mai au ia rātou iā'u nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.
- 17 'E i teienei, inaha, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu nō ni'a i te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi : 'Ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia ha'apa'o i tō'u ra hina'aro, e ha'amou roa vau ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, nō tō rātou tī'aturi 'ore, noa atu ā te mau 'ohipa rarahi e rave rahi 'o tā'u i rave i rotopū ia rātou ra ; 'e mai te Fatu e ora ra, e tupu mau taua mau mea nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Helamana 16

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, e rave rahi tei fa'aro'o i te mau parau a Samuela, te 'āti Lamana, 'o tāna i parau atu 'a ti'a noa ai 'oia i ni'a iho i te mau patu o te 'oire. 'E te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'o tei ti'aturi i tāna ra parau, 'ua haere atu ra ia 'e 'ua 'imi ihora ia Nephi ; 'e 'ia 'itea a'era rātou iāna, 'ua fā'i atu ra rātou i tā rātou mau hara iāna 'e 'aore e vāhi i hunahia e rātou, 'e 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia bāpetizohia i te Fatu.
- 2 'E te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'o tei 'ore i ti'aturi i te mau parau a Samuela, 'ua riri ia rātou iāna ; 'e 'ua taora atu ra rātou i te mau 'ōfa'i i ni'a iāna a tia'i 'oia i ni'a iho i te patu, 'e e rave rahi ato'a tei te'a atu iāna a tia'i 'oia i ni'a iho i te patu ; 'āre'a rā tei pīha'i iho te Vārua o te Fatu iāna, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita roa 'oia i tano ia rātou i tā rātou mau 'ōfa'i e tā rātou mau te'a.
- 3 I teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'aita 'oia e tano ia rātou, e rave rahi atu ā tei ti'aturi i tāna ra mau parau, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua haere atu ra rātou ia Nephi ra 'ia bāpetizohia.
- 4 Inaha ho'i, tē bāpetizo ra Nephi, 'e tē tohu ra ho'i, 'e tē a'o ra ho'i, 'e tē poro ra i te parau nō te tātarahapara'a i te mau ta'ata ; 'e tē fa'a'ite ra i te mau tāpa'o 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ūmehia ; 'e tē rave ra i te mau semeio i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'ia 'ite rātou ē, 'ua fātata roa te Mesia i te tae mai—
- 5 Tē fa'a'ite ato'a ra 'oia ia rātou i te mau mea 'o tei fātata roa i te tupu, 'ia 'ite 'e 'ia ha'amana'o rātou i te tau e tupu mai ai te reira, 'e 'ua fa'a'itehia na ia rātou taua mau mea ra nā mua roa, nō te mana'ora'a ē, e ti'aturi rātou ; nō reira, 'o rātou e rave rahi 'o tei ti'aturi i te mau parau a Samuela ra, 'ua haere atu ia iāna ra 'ia bāpetizohia, 'e 'ua haere atu ra rātou ma te tātarahapa 'e te fā'i i tā rātou mau hara.
- 6 'Āre'a rā, 'aita tō rātou pae rahi i ti'aturi i te mau parau a Samuela ; nō reira, 'ia 'ite a'era rātou ē, 'aita 'oia i tano i tā rātou mau 'ōfa'i 'e tā rātou mau te'a, 'ua pi'i atu ra rātou i tō rātou mau ra'atira, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'A rave atu i teie ta'ata 'e 'a ru'uru'u iāna, inaha ho'i, e diabolō tōna ; 'e nō te mana o te diabolō i roto iāna i 'ore ai 'oia i tano i tā rātou mau 'ōfa'i 'e tā rātou mau te'a ; nō reira, 'a rave iāna 'e 'a ru'uru'u iāna, 'e 'a hōpoi 'ē atu iāna.

Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

7 E 'a haere atu ai rātou nō te haru iāna, inaha, 'ua
 'ōu'a atu ra 'oia i raro mai ni'a mai i te patu, 'e 'ua
 horo 'ē atu ra i rāpae i tō rātou mau fenua, 'oia ia, 'e
 tae atu ra i tōna ihora fenua mau, 'e 'ua ha'amata
 ihora i te a'o atu 'e i te tohu atu i rotopū i tōna ihora
 mau ta'ata.

8 'E inaha, 'aita te hō'ē parau i fa'aro'o-fa'ahou-hia
 nō ni'a iāna i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e teie ia te
 huru nō te mau 'ohipa nō ni'a i taua feiā ra.

9 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma ono o
 te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te
 mau ta'ata o Nephi.

10 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma hitu
 o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, 'e 'ua
 vai noa te pae rahi o te mau ta'ata i roto i tō rātou
 te'ote'o 'e te parauti'a 'ore, 'e te pae iti ra 'ua haere
 noa ia ma te ha'apa'o maita'i i mua i te Atua.

11 'E teie ato'a te mau huru i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma va'u
 o te matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā.

12 'E i te va'u 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti nō te
 fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, e mea iti roa te tauira'a
 nō ni'a i te huru nō te mau 'ohipa a te ta'ata, maori rā
 tē tupu 'eta'eta noa ra te mau ta'ata i roto i te mau
 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e i te rave rahi atu i tei au 'ore i te mau
 fa'auera'a a te Atua.

13 'E i muri a'era, i te iva 'ahuru o te matahiti nō te
 fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā, e rave rahi mau tāpa'o
 rarahi 'e mau 'ohipa 'ūmerehia i fa'a'itehia mai i te
 mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau parau a te
 mau peropheta i te tupu.

14 'E 'ua fā mai ra te mau melahi i te mau ta'ata, i te
 feiā 'aravihi ra, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra i te mau parau
 'oa'oa nō te 'oa'oa rahi ; nō reira i taua matahiti nei te
 tupura'a te mau parau i pāpa'ihia i roto i te mau
 pāpa'ira'a mo'a.

15 'Āre'a rā, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata i te
 fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'o rātou pā'āto'a, maori rā
 te feiā tei roto ia rātou te fa'aro'o huru rahi, tō te mau
 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a ho'i, 'e 'ua
 ha'amata rātou i te ti'aturi i tō rātou iho pūai 'e tō
 rātou iho 'aravihi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

16 'Ua tano paha te tahi mau mea i mana'o-noa-hia e
 rātou i roto i teie mau mea e rave rahi, inaha rā, 'ua
 'ite pāpū tātou ē, e'ita roa teie mau 'ohipa rahi 'e te
 māere, 'o tei parauhia na, e ti'a 'ia tupu.

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him,
 behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and
 did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own
 country, and began to preach and to prophesy
 among his own people.

And behold, he was never heard of more among
 the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the
 reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of
 the reign of the judges, the more part of the people
 remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the
 lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty
 and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of
 the people, save it were the people began to be more
 hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that
 which was contrary to the commandments of God, in
 the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the
 reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto
 the people, and wonders; and the words of the
 prophets began to be fulfilled.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and
 did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus
 in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their
 hearts, all save it were the most believing part of
 them, both of the Nephites and also of the
 Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own
 strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Some things they may have guessed right, among
 so many; but behold, we know that all these great
 and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which
 has been spoken.

17 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te feruri 'e i te mārō i rotopū ia rātou iho, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

18 E 'ere te reira i te mana'o ti'a ē e tae mai te hō'ē ta'ata mai te Mesia te huru ; 'āhiri e parau mau, 'e e Tamaiti 'oia nā te Atua, te Metua nō te ra'i 'e te fenua mai tei parauhia na, nō te aha ia 'aita 'oia e fa'a'ite mai iāna iho ia tātou nei 'e ia rātou ato'a 'o tē pārahi ra i Ierusalemā ?

19 'Oia ia, nō te aha ho'i 'aita 'oia e fa'a'ite mai iāna iho i ni'a i teie nei fenua 'e i te fenua ato'a nō Ierusalemā ?

20 Inaha rā, 'ua 'ite tātou ē, e peu tumu parauti'a 'ore teie 'o tei tu'uhia mai ia tātou nei e tō tātou mau metua, nō te fa'atupu i tō tātou mana'o 'ia ti'aturi i te tahi mau mea rahi 'e te māere 'o tē tupu, 'eiaha i rotopū ia tātou nei, i ni'a rā i te hō'ē fenua ātea roa, te hō'ē fenua 'ite-'ore-hia e tātou nei ; nō reira e tāpe'a noa te reira ia tātou i roto i te pōiri, 'e e'ita ho'i e ti'a ia tātou 'ia hi'o mata atu ē e parau mau ānei te reira.

21 'E e riro ato'a rātou, nā roto i te mau rāve'a pa'ari 'e te mau rāve'a mo'emo'e a te vārua 'ino ra, i te fa'atupu i te tahi mau mea rahi 'e te mo'emo'e 'o tei 'ore roa i 'itehia e tātou nei, e nā te reira e tāpe'a ia tātou i raro 'ei tāvini nō tā rātou mau parau, 'e 'ei mau tāvini ato'a nō rātou, 'e e ti'aturi ho'i tātou ia rātou nō te ha'api'i mai ia tātou i te parau ; 'e nā reira ho'i rātou i te tāpe'a ia tātou i roto i te pōiri i te mau mahana ato'a nō tō tātou nei orara'a, mai te mea e auraro tātou ia rātou.

22 'E e rave rahi atu ā te mau mea tā te mau ta'ata i mana'o noa i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e e mau mea ma'ama'a 'e te faufa'a 'ore te reira ; 'e 'ua pe'ape'a rahi ho'i rātou, nō te mea 'ua fa'atupu Sātane i te mana'o i roto ia rātou 'ia rave tāmau noa i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ; 'oia ia, 'ua haere noa 'oia ma te ha'aparare i te mau parau ha'avare 'e te mau mārōra'a i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'eta'eta i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata 'ia pāto'i atu i te maita'i 'e i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.

23 'E noa atu ā te mau tāpa'o 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ūmehia i ravehia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te Fatu, 'e te mau semeio e rave rahi tā rātou i rave, 'ua roa'a iho ā ia Sātane te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

24 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te iva 'ahuru o te matahiti
nō te fa'aterera'a a te mau ha'avā i ni'a i te mau ta'ata
o Nephi.

And thus ended the ninetyeth year of the reign of
the judges over the people of Nephi.

25 'E 'o te hope'a teie nō te buka a Helamana, mai te
au i te pāpa'a parau a Helamana 'e tāna ra mau
tamari'i tamāroa.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according
to the record of Helaman and his sons.

Toru Nephi

Te Buka a Nephi

te Tamaiti a Nephi, 'Oia te Tamaiti a Helamana

E tamaiti Helamana nā Helamana, 'oia te tamaiti a Alama, 'oia te tamaiti a Alama, 'e e bua'ai 'oia nō Nephi 'oia te tamaiti a Lehi, 'o tei haere mai mai Ierusalemā mai i te matahiti mātāmua nō te fa'aterera'a a Zedekia, 'oia te ari'i nō Iuda.

3 Nephi 1

- 1 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri a'era te iva 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti, 'e 'o te ono hānere o te matahiti mai te taime i fa'aru'e ai Lehi i Ierusalemā ; 'e 'o te matahiti ho'i teie i riro ai Lakoneusa 'ei ha'avā rahi 'e 'ei tāvana i ni'a iho i te fenua.
- 2 'E 'ua haere atu o Nephi, te tamaiti a Helamana, i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Zarahemela, ma te hōro'a atu i te fa'aterera'a i tāna tamaiti ra ia Nephi, 'oia ho'i tāna tamaiti matahiapo, nō ni'a i te mau 'api veo, 'e te mau pāpa'a parau ato'a i ha'apa'ohia na, 'e te mau mea ato'a i ha'apa'ohia nā ma te mo'a, mai te taime i fa'aru'e ai Lehi i Ierusalemā.
- 3 E i reira 'ua haere atu 'oia i rāpae i te fenua, 'e te vāhi tāna i haere atu, 'aita roa e ta'ata i 'ite ; 'e 'ua ha'apa'o noa tāna tamaiti ra o Nephi i te mau pāpa'a parau 'ei mono nōna, 'oia ia, te pāpa'a parau nō tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'aa nō te iva 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti, inaha, 'ua tupu mau ihora te mau parau tohu a te mau peropheta ; 'e 'ua rahi te mau tāpa'o 'e te mau semeio i ravehia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata.
- 5 'Āre'a rā tē parau ra te tahi pae ē, 'ua ma'iri te tau nō te tupura'a o te mau parau i parauhia na e Samuela, te 'āti Lamana.
- 6 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te oaoa nō ni'a i tō rātou mau taea'e, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Inaha, 'ua ma'iri 'ē te tau, 'e 'aita te mau parau a Samuela i tupu ; nō reira, 'ua faufa'a 'ore tō 'outou oaoa e tō 'outou fa'aro'o nō ni'a i taua mea ra.

Third Nephi

The Book of Nephi

the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son of Helaman

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atupu rātou i te ti'arepu rahi i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e ; 'e 'ua 'oto roa ihora te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei ti'aturi i te reira, penei a'e e'ita roa taua mau mea ra 'o tei parauhia na e tupu.
- 8 Inaha rā, 'ua tīa'i māite noa rātou nō taua mahana ra e taua pō ra e taua mahana ra, 'e 'ua riro te reira mai te hō'ē mahana 'aita e pō, 'e nā roto i te reira rātou e 'ite ai ē, e 'ere tō rātou fa'aro'o i te mea faufa'a 'ore.
- 9 I teienei, i muri a'era, tē vai ra te hō'ē mahana i fa'ata'ahia e te feiā ti'aturi 'ore nō te taparahi i te mau ta'ata ato'a i ti'aturi i taua mau peu tumu ra, maori rā 'ia tupu te tāpa'o 'o tei fa'a'itehia mai e te peropheta ra o Samuela.
- 10 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era Nephi, te tamaiti a Nephi, i teie parauti'a 'ore o tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ua 'oto rahi ihora tōna 'ā'au.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i rāpae 'e 'ua tīpapa ihora i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua ti'aoro 'ū'ana atu ra i tōna Atua nō tōna mau ta'ata, 'oia ia, nō te mau ta'ata 'o tei fātata i te taparahihia nō tō rātou ti'aturi i te mau peu tumu a tō rātou mau metua.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro 'ū'ana atu ra 'oia i te Fatu i te tā'āto'ara'a nō taua mahana ra ; 'E inaha, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu iāna, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 13 'A fa'ateitei i tō 'outou upo'o i ni'a 'e 'a fa'aitoito ; inaha ho'i, 'ua fātata te taime, 'e i teie pō e fa'a'itehia atu ai te tāpa'o, e ananahi e tae mai ai au i te ao nei, nō te fa'a'ite i tō te ao nei ē, e fa'atupu vau i te mau mea ato'a tā'u i fa'aue ia parauhia e te vaha o tō'u mau peropheta mo'a.
- 14 Inaha, e haere mai au i tō'u ihora, nō te fa'atupu i te mau mea ato'a o tā'u i fa'a'ite atu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei, 'e 'ia rave i te hīna'aro o te Metua 'e te Tamaiti—to te Metua nō'u nei, e tō te Tamaiti nō tō'u nei tino. 'E inaha, 'ua fātata te taime, 'e i teie nei ru'i e fa'a'itehia mai ai te tāpa'o.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu mau atu ra te mau parau i fa'ataehia mai ia Nephi ra, mai te au i tei parauhia mai ; inaha ho'i, i te ma'irira'a te mahana i raro, aita e pōiri ; 'e 'ua māere ihora te mau ta'ata nō te mea 'aita e pōiri i tae mai i te taera'a mai te ru'i.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

- 16 'E tē vai ra e rave rahi tei 'ore i ti'aturi i te mau parau a te mau peropheta 'o tei ma'iri i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua riro ihora mai te mea ra ē, 'ua pohe rātou, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i rātou ē, 'ua fa'a'orehia tā rātou 'ōpuara'a rahi nō te ha'amoura'a, 'o tā rātou i 'ōpua nō te feiā i ti'aturi i te mau parau a te mau peropheta ; 'ua tupu ho'i te tāpa'o i parauhia na.
- 17 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te 'ite ē, 'ua fātata roa te Tamaiti a te Atua i te fā mai ; 'oia ia, 'ua māere roa te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a i te fenua pā'āto'a mai te tō'o'a o te rā e tae atu i te hiti'a o te rā, tō ni'a i te fenua i te pae apato'erau e tae atu i te fenua i te pae apato'a, 'e 'ua ma'iri rātou i raro i te repo.
- 18 'Ua 'ite ho'i rātou ē, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai na te mau peropheta i taua mau mea nei e rave rahi a'enei matahiti, 'e te tāpa'o i fa'a'itehia ra 'ua tupu ia ; 'e 'ua tupu a'era tō rātou mata'u nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino e tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'aita e pōiri i taua ru'i ato'a ra, 'āre'a rā 'ua māramarama te reira mai te mahana i te avatea. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hiti fa'ahou mai ra te mahana i te po'ipo'i, mai te au i tōna fa'anahora'a tano mau ; 'e 'ua 'ite ihora rātou ē, 'o te mahana teie e fānauhia mai ai te Fatu, nō te mea 'ua tupu te tāpa'o i fa'a'itehia.
- 20 'E 'ua tupu mau atu ra te mau mea ato'a, 'oia ia, 'aita e vāhi toe, mai te au i te mau parau a te mau peropheta.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hiti mai ra te hō'ē feti'a 'āpī, mai te au i te parau.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, mai teie taime atu 'ua fa'atupu Sātane i te tahi mau ha'avarera'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, nō te fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ti'aturi i taua mau tāpa'o ra 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ūmerehia tā rātou i 'ite ; e noa atu ā teie mau ha'avarera'a e teie mau fa'ahemara'a 'ua ti'aturi noa te pae rahi o te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'afāriuhia rātou i te Fatu.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Nephi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua nā reira ato'a e rave rahi mau ta'ata, ma te bāpetizo i tei tātarahapa, 'e nō reira 'ua rahi roa te ha'amatarara'a nō te mau hara. E nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou te mau ta'ata i te fāri'i i te hau i ni'a i te fenua.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

24 E 'aita atu ra ho'i e mau mārōra'a, maori rā tē vai ra te tahi pae iti 'o tei ha'amata i te a'o, ma te tāmata i te fa'a'ite nā roto i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ē, 'aita e faufa'a 'ia ha'apa'o i te ture a Mose. I teienei, i roto i taua mea nei, 'ua hape rātou, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i māmarama i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a.

25 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, 'ua fa'afāriu-'oi'oi-hia mai rātou, 'e 'ua 'ite ihora rātou i te mau hape tā rātou i topa na i roto, nō te mea 'ua fa'a'itehia mai ia rātou ē, 'aita ā te ture i fa'ati'ahia, 'e e fa'ati'ahia te reira 'aita e vāhi toe; 'oia ia, 'ua tae mai te parau ia rātou ē, e fa'ati'ahia te reira; 'oia ia, e 'ore roa te hō'ē iota 'e te hō'ē vāhi iti e mou nā mua te reira e tupu ai; nō reira i teie iho matahiti 'ua fa'a'itehia ihora rātou i tā rātou hape 'e 'ua fa'i atu ra rātou i tā rātou ra mau hape.

26 'E nō reira 'ua hope ihora te iva 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti, 'e 'ua tae mai te mau parau 'oa'oa i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nō te mau tāpa'o i tupu, mai te au i te mau parau nō te parau tohu a te mau peropheta mo'a ato'a.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope ato'a a'era te iva 'ahuru 'e ma toru matahiti ma te hau, maori rā 'o te feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona, 'o tei pārahi i ni'a i te mau mou'a, 'e 'o tei fa'a'ino roa i te fenua; 'e nō te pa'ari o tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a e tō rātou mau vāhi tāpunira'a, 'aita i ti'a i te mau ta'ata 'ia ha'avī atu ia rātou; nō reira 'ua rahi roa atu ra tā rātou mau taparahira'a i te ta'ata, 'e 'ua taparahi rahi rātou i te ta'ata.

28 'E i muri a'era, i te matahiti e iva 'ahuru 'e ma maha, 'ua tupu rahi roa rātou, nō te mea e rave rahi te feiā 'ōrurehau o te mau 'āti Nephi i horo atu ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua fa'atupu te reira i te 'oto rahi i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'o tei fa'aea mai i taua fenua ra.

29 'E tē vai ato'a ra te tumu nō te 'oto rahi i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana; inaha ho'i, e rave rahi tā rātou mau tamari'i tei tupu i te pa'ari, 'e tei mā'iti i tō rātou iho hina'aro, 'e 'ua arata'i-'ē-hia rātou nā te tahi pae o te mau 'āti Zorama, nā roto i tā rātou mau ha'avare e tā rātou mau parau tāvaimanino, 'ia 'āmui atu i te feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona.

30 'E 'ua nā reira ato'a te mau 'āti Lamana i te fāri'i i te mau ati, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te ha'aparuparu i tō rātou fa'aro'o e tō rātou parauti'a, nō te parauti'a 'ore o te u'i 'āpī ra.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

3 Nephi 2

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope ato'a a'era te iva 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti, 'e 'ua ha'amata te mau ta'ata i te ha'amo'e i taua mau tāpa'o ra 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ūmerekia tā rātou i fa'aro'o na, 'e 'ua haere iti noa tō rātou māere i te tāpa'o 'e i te 'ohipa 'ūmerekia nō te ra'i mai, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amata rātou i te fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e i te ha'apōiri i tō rātou mau mana'o, 'e 'aita rātou i ti'aturi fa'ahou i te mau mea ato'a tā rātou i fa'aro'o e i 'ite—
- 2 'E 'ua mana'o noa rātou i te tahi mau mea ma'ama'a i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au ē, nā te ta'ata e nā te mana o te diablo i fa'atupu i te reira, nō te arata'i 'ē 'e nō te faahema i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata ; e mea nā reira ho'i Sātane i te haru fa'ahou i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amatapō 'oia i tō rātou mata 'e 'ua arata'i 'ē ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi ē, e mea ma'ama'a 'e e mea faufa'a 'ore te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu a te Mesia.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te tupu rahi i roto i te parauti'a 'ore e i roto i te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ; 'e 'aita rātou i ti'aturi ē, e fa'a'itehia mai ā te tahi mau tāpa'o 'e te mau 'ohipa 'ūmerekia ; 'e 'ua hāhaere noa atu ra Sātane, ma te arata'i 'ē atu i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata, e ma te fa'ahema ia rātou 'ia rave i te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore rahi i ni'a i te fenua.
- 4 'E nō reira 'ua ma'iri te iva 'ahuru 'e ma ono matahiti ; e 'oia ato'a te iva 'ahuru 'e ma hitu matahiti ; e 'oia ato'a te iva 'ahuru 'e ma va'u matahiti ; e 'oia ato'a te iva 'ahuru 'e ma iva matahiti.
- 5 'E 'oia ato'a 'ua ma'iri te hō'ē hānere matahiti mai te mau mahana mai o Mosia, 'oia te ari'i i ni'a i te mau ta'ata o te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 6 'E 'ua ma'iri te ono hānere e ma iva matahiti mai tō Lehi fa'aru'era'a i Ieruselema.
- 7 'E 'ua ma'iri e iva matahiti mai te taime i fa'a'itehia ai te tāpa'o, 'o tei tohuhia nā 'e te mau peropheta, nō ni'a i te taera'a mai o te Mesia i roto i te ao nei.
- 8 I teieni, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau 'āti Nephi i te tai'o i tō rātou taime mai te tau i fa'a'itehia mai ai te tāpa'o ra, 'oia ho'i mai te taera'a mai o te Mesia ; nō reira, 'ua ma'iri e iva matahiti.

3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

- 9 E aita roa o Nephi, te metua tane o Nephi, 'o tei fari'i i te mau papa'a parau, i ho'i mai i te fenua ra no Zarahemela, 'e 'aita roa ho'i 'oia i 'iteahia i ni'a i te fenua e 'ati noa a'e.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua vai noa te mau ta'ata i roto i te parauti'a 'ore, noa atu a te a'ora'a rahi 'e te parau tohu rahi i fa'ataehia atu i rotopu ia ratou ; 'e no reira 'ua ma'iri ato'a ihora te 'ahuru o te matahiti ; 'e te 'ahuru 'e ma ho'e ato'a o te matahiti no to ratou rave-noa-ra'a i te mau 'ohipa 'ino.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, i te 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti, 'ua tupu ihora te mau tama'i 'e te mau marora'a i ni'a i te fenua ta'ato'a ; 'e 'ua rahi roa ho'i te feia 'eia haru o Gadianetona, 'e 'ua taparahi ratou i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'ua ha'amou i te mau 'oire e rave rahi, 'e 'ua taparahi rahi i te ta'ata 'e 'ua ha'amani'i rahi i te toto i ni'a i te fenua e 'ati noa a'e, 'e no reira 'ua ti'a roa i te mau ta'ata ato'a, i te mau 'ati Nephi 'e te mau 'ati Lamana 'ia rave i ta ratou mau mauha'a tama'i no te 'aro atu ia ratou.
- 12 No reira, 'ua amui atu te mau 'ati Lamana ato'a 'o tei fa'afariuhia mai i te Fatu, i to ratou mau taea'e, i te mau 'ati Nephi, 'e 'ua ti'a roa ia ratou 'ia rave i ta ratou mau mauha'a tama'i no te 'aro atu i taua feia 'eia haru o Gadianetona, no te paruru i to ratou ora e ta ratou mau vahine e ta ratou mau tamari'i, 'oia ia, 'e no te paruru i to ratou ti'ara'a, 'e te maia'i o ta ratou 'ekalesia 'e ta ratou ha'amorira'a, 'e to ratou ti'amara'a 'e to ratou ti'ara'a ha'av-'ore-hia.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, na mua a'e i te hopera'a o teie matahiti ho'e 'ahuru 'e ma toru, 'ua fatata roa te mau 'ati Nephi i te ha'amouhia no teie nei 'arora'a, 'e 'ua riro ho'i ia 'ei mea 'ati rahi roa.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, taua mau 'ati Lamana ra 'o tei tahoe atu i te mau 'ati Nephi ra, 'ua tai'ohia ia ratou i rotopu i te mau 'ati Nephi.
- 15 'E 'ua 'iriti-'e-hia atu ra te 'anatemara'a i fa'ataehia mai i ni'a ia ratou, 'e 'ua riro ihora to ratou iri 'ei mea 'uo'uo mai to te mau 'ati Nephi ra.
- 16 E to ratou feia 'api tane e ta ratou mau tamahine 'api, 'ua riro ia 'ei feia mata nehenehe, 'e 'ua tai'ohia ratou i rotopu i te mau 'ati Nephi, 'e 'ua parauhia ho'i ratou e mau 'ati Nephi. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira no te 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

17 'E i muri a'era, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti, te tupu noa ra te 'arora'a i rotopū i te feiā 'eiā haru 'e te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e 'ua riro ho'i ia 'ei mea 'ati rahi roa ; 'āre'a rā, e mea manuia a'e te mau 'āti Nephi i te feiā 'eiā haru, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tīahi 'ē atu ra rātou ia rātou i rāpae i tō rātou mau fenua ē tae roa atu ra i roto i te mau mou'a e i tō rātou mau vāhi tāpunira'a.

18 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e maha o te matahiti. E i te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti 'ua haere mai ra rātou nō te 'aro i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ta'ata o Nephi, e tā rātou mau mārōra'a e rave rahi 'e te mau 'āmahamahara'a e rave rahi, 'ua rahi atu ra tō te feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona manuiara'a i ni'a ia rātou.

19 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti, 'e nō reira 'ua vai noa te mau ta'ata i roto i te mau 'ati e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua tautau noa mai te 'o'e nō te ha'amoura'a i ni'a a'e ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fātata rātou i te tā'irihia e te reira, 'e te tumu nō tā rātou ia mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

3 Nephi 3

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti i muri a'e i te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'ua fāri'i Lakoneusa, te tāvana o te fenua, i te hō'ē 'episetole nō 'ō mai i te ta'ata fa'atere 'e te tāvana nō te pupu 'eiā haru ; e teie te mau parau i pāpa'ihia, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē :
- 2 E Lakoneusa, te tāvana fa'ahiahia rahi o te fenua, inaha, tē pāpa'i atu nei au i teie nei 'episetole ia 'oe na, 'e tē 'ārue rahi nei au ia 'oe nō tō 'oe ha'apa'o maita'i, 'e nō te ha'apa'o maita'i ato'a o tō 'oe mau ta'ata, i te tāpe'a-māite-ra'a i tei mana'ohia e 'outou nō tō 'outou ti'ara'a 'e ti'amāra'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua tāpe'a māite 'outou, mai te mea ra ē, 'ua turuhia 'outou e te rima o te hō'ē atua, nō te pāruru i tō 'outou ti'amāra'a, 'e tā 'outou tao'a, 'e tō 'outou fenua, 'e 'aore rā 'o tei parauhia e 'outou ē, nō 'outou mau iho ā.
- 3 'E tē 'oto nei au ia 'oe, e te ta'ata fa'ahiahia rahi e Lakoneusa, 'o 'oe i riro 'ei mea ma'ama'a i te mana'ora'a ē, e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia 'aro mai i te mau ta'ata pūai e rave rahi i raro a'e i tā'u nei fa'aterera'a, 'o tei ineine i teienei 'e tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'o tē tia'i ra ma te 'ana'anatae rahi i te parau ē—'A haere atu i raro 'e 'a 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e 'a ha'amou ia rātou.
- 4 'E 'ua 'ite au i tō rātou vārua vī 'ore, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai rātou i tō rātou iho huru i ni'a i te tahua 'arora'a, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a vau i tō rātou 'ino'ino mure 'ore ia 'outou, nō te mau mea hape e rave rahi tā 'outou i rave i ni'a ia rātou, nō reira mai te mea e haere mai rātou e 'aro ia 'outou, e ha'amou roa rātou ia 'outou.
- 5 Nō reira, 'ua pāpa'i au i teie nei 'episetole, ma te tītiro i te reira i tō'u iho rima, ma te aroha ia 'outou nō tō 'outou 'āueue 'ore i te ti'aturira'a i te mea 'o tā 'outou i ti'aturi e mea ti'a, 'e nō tō 'outou 'ā'au itoito i ni'a i te tahua nō te 'arora'a.
- 6 Nō reira tē pāpa'i atu nei au ia 'oe na, ma te hina'aro 'ia tu'u mai 'outou ia 'outou i roto i te rima o tō'u nei feiā, 'e tō 'outou mau 'oire, 'e tō 'outou mau fenua, 'e tā 'outou mau tao'a, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haere mai e 'aro ia 'outou i tā rātou 'o'e 'e 'a fa'atae atu ai i te ha'amoura'a i ni'a ia 'outou.

3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

- 7 Terā te tahi parau, 'a tu'u mai ia 'outou iho ia mātou nei, 'e 'a 'āmuī mai ia mātou nei 'e 'a ha'amātau ia 'outou i tā mātou mau 'ohīpa huna, e fa'arīro ia 'outou 'ei mau taea'e nō mātou 'e 'ia riro mai ia mātou nei te huru—'eīaha 'ei mau tītī nā mātou, 'ei mau taea'e rā 'e 'ei mau hoa nō mātou i te pae'au nō tā mātou mau tao'a ato'a.
- 8 'E inaha, tē tapu nei au i te hō'ē tapura'a ia 'oe, mai te mea e nā reira 'outou, e 'ore roa 'outou e ha'amouhia ; 'ia 'ore rā 'outou e nā reira, tē tapu nei au i te hō'ē tapura'a ia 'outou, 'ia tae i te 'āva'e i mua nei e fa'aue atu vau i tō'u nei mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia haere atu e 'aro ia 'outou, e 'ore roa rātou e tāpe'a i tō rātou rima 'e e 'ore roa ho'i rātou e fa'aora noa ia 'outou, e taparahi rā rātou ia 'outou, 'e e ha'ama'iri mai rātou i te 'o'e i ni'a ia 'outou ē tae roa 'ua mou roa 'outou.
- 9 'E inaha, 'o vau nei 'o Gidiani ; 'e 'o vau nei te tāvana nō teie pupu 'ohīpa huna a Gadianetona ; 'e 'ua 'ite au e mea maita'i te mau 'ohīpa a teie pupu ; 'e nō te 'anotau tahito mai te reira 'e 'ua fa'atae-roa-hia mai te reira ia mātou nei.
- 10 'E tē pāpa'i atu nei au i teie nei 'episetole ia 'oe na, e Lakoneusa, 'e tē ti'aturi nei au e hōro'a mai 'outou i tō 'outou mau fenua 'e tā 'outou mau tao'a, 'ia 'ore te toto 'ia ha'amani'ihia, 'e 'ia roa'a fa'ahou mai i tō'u nei mau ta'ata tō rātou ti'amāra'a 'e te fa'aterera'a hau fenua, 'o rātou teie 'o tei tāiva 'ē ia 'outou nō tā 'outou mau 'ohīpa 'ī'ino i te ravera'a atu i tō rātou ti'amāra'a nō te fa'atere i te hau fenua, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia rave i te reira, e tāho'o atu vau i tā rātou ra mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a. 'O vau nei 'o Gidiani.
- 11 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i tō Lakoneusa fāri'ira'a i teie 'episetole, 'ua māere roa ihora 'oia nō te mata'u 'ore o Gidiani i te tītaura'a 'ia hōro'a atu i te fenua o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'oia ato'a ho'i nō te ha'amata'ura'a ho'i i te mau ta'ata 'e nō te tāho'ora'a i te mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a i te feiā 'o tei 'ore i hāmani-'ino-hia ra, maori rā 'ua hāmani 'ino rātou ia rātou iho nā roto i tā rātou tāiva-'ē-ra'a 'e te 'āmuira'a atu i te mau ta'ata 'eīā haru parauti'a 'ore 'e te vi'ivi'i.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianon; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

- 12 I teienei, inaha, 'ua riro teie ta'ata 'o Lakoneusa, te tāvana rahi, 'ei ta'ata parauti'a, 'e 'aita 'oia i mata'u i te mau tūtaura'a 'e te mau parau ha'amata'u a te ta'ata 'eiā haru ; nō reira 'aita 'oia i ha'apa'o i te 'episetole a Gidiani, te tāvana o te feiā 'eiā haru, 'ua fa'aue rā 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia ti'aoro atu i te Fatu nō te fāri'i i te pūai i te taime e pou mai ai te feiā 'eiā haru i raro nō te 'aro mai ia rātou.
- 13 'Oia ia, 'ua fa'atae 'oia i te hō'ē fa'a'itera'a mana i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'ia ha'aputupu mai rātou i tā rātou mau vahine, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'e tā rātou mau nana māmoē 'e tā rātou mau nana pua'atoro, 'e tā rātou mau tao'a ato'a i te vāhi hō'ē, maori rā tō rātou fenua.
- 14 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia patuhia te mau pā ma te ha'a'ati ia rātou, 'e 'ia rahi roa tō te reira pa'ari. 'E 'ua fa'aue ato'a atu ra 'oia 'ia fa'ata'ahia te tahi mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'aore rā ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei tai'ohia i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ia fa'ata'ahia rātou 'ei mau tīa'i nō te pāroru ia rātou, 'e nō te tīa'i ia rātou i te pō 'e te ao i te feiā 'eiā haru.
- 15 'Oia ia, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Mai te Fatu e ora ra, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a, 'e 'ia ti'aoro atu i te Fatu, e 'ore roa 'outou e fa'aorahia i te rima o te feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona.
- 16 E mea rahi roa 'e e mea fa'ahiahia roa te mau parau 'e te mau tohura'a a Lakoneusa 'e 'ua fa'atae atu te reira i te mata'u i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a ; 'e 'ua fa'aитоito a'era rātou ma tō rātou pūai 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau parau a Lakoneusa.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua mā'iti Lakoneusa i te mau ra'atira rahi i ni'a i te mau nu'u fa'ehau ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te fa'atere ia rātou i te taime e tae mai ai te feiā 'eiā haru i raro, mai te mēdēbara mai, nō te 'aro ia rātou.
- 18 I teienei, 'ua mā'itihia te ra'atira rahi roa atu i rotopū i te mau ra'atira rahi ato'a 'e te mau ta'ata fa'atere rahi ato'a o te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e tōna i'oa ra o Gidigidoni ia.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

- 19 I teienei, e peu mātauhia i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi ato'a 'ia mā'iti i tō rātou mau ra'atira rahi, te hō'ē ta'ata tei roto iāna te vārua nō te heheura'a 'e nō te tohura'a ato'a (maori rā i te mau tau nō tō rātou parauti'a 'ore); nō reira, 'o teie Gidigidoni te hō'ē peropheta rahi i rotopū ia rātou, mai te ha'avā rahi ato'a ho'i.
- 20 I teienei, 'ua parau atu ra te mau ta'ata ia Gidigidoni: 'A pure i te Fatu, 'e haere ana'e tātou i ni'a i te mau mou'a 'e i roto i te mēdēbara, 'ia ti'a ia tātou 'ia 'aro atu i te feiā 'eiā haru, 'e 'ia ha'amou ia rātou i roto i tō rātou iho mau fenua.
- 21 'Āre'a rā 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Gidigidoni ia rātou: 'Ua 'ōpani te Fatu; 'e mai te mea e haere atu tātou nō te 'aro atu ia rātou, e tu'u atu ia te Fatu ia tātou i roto i tō rātou rima; nō reira e fa'aineine ia tātou ia tātou iho i rōpū mau i tō tātou mau fenua, 'e e ha'aputupu'āmui mai tātou i tō tātou mau nu'u fa'ehau pā'āto'a, 'e 'aita tātou e haere atu e 'aro ia rātou, e tīa'i noa rā tātou ē tae noa atu 'ua haere mai rātou e 'aro ia tātou nei; nō reira, mai te Fatu e ora nei, mai te mea e nā reira tātou i te rave, e tu'u mai 'oia ia rātou i roto i tō tātou nei rima.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, i te pae hope'a o te matahiti, 'ua tae te fa'a'itera'a mana a Lakoneusa i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e 'ua rave mai rātou i tā rātou mau pua'ahorofenua, 'e tā rātou mau pere'o'o, 'e tā rātou mau pua'atoro, 'e tā rātou mau nana māmoe pā'āto'a, 'e tā rātou mau nana pua'atoro, 'e tā rātou sītona, 'e tā rātou mau tao'a pā'āto'a, 'e 'ua haere atu rātou nā roto i te mau pupu hō'ē tauatini, 'e te mau pupu hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini, ē tae noa atu 'ua hope rātou pā'āto'a i te haere atu i te vāhi i fa'ata'ahia nō te ha'aputupu'āmui ia rātou, nō te pāruru atu ia rātou iho i tō rātou mau 'enemi.
- 23 'E te fenua i fa'ata'ahia 'o te fenua ia o Zarahemela, 'e te fenua i rōpū i te fenua nō Zarahemela 'e te fenua nō 'Auhune, 'oia ia, 'e te 'ōti'a i rōpū i te fenua nō 'Auhune 'e te fenua nō Ano.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

24 'E tē vai ra e rave rahi tauatini ta'ata 'o tei parauhia e mau 'āti Nephi, 'o tei ha'aputupu 'āmui mai ia rarou i teie nei fenua. I teienei 'ua fa'aue Lakoneusa ia rātou 'ia ha'aputupu 'āmui mai rātou i te fenua i te pae apato'a, nō te 'anatemara'a rahi i tae mai i ni'a i te fenua i te pae apato'erau.

25 'E 'ua pāroru ha'apa'ari rātou ia rātou iho i tō rātou mau 'enemi ; 'e 'ua pārahi ihora rātou i te fenua hō'ē 'e i roto i te pupu hō'ē, 'e 'ua mata'u ho'i rātou i te mau parau i parauhia e Lakoneusa ra, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tātarahapa rātou i tā rātou mau hara ato'a ; 'e 'ua fa'atae atu ra rātou i tā rātou mau pure i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'ia fa'aora mai 'oia ia rātou i te taime e tae mai ai tō rātou mau 'enemi nō te 'aro ia rātou.

26 'E 'ua 'oto rahi rātou nō tō rātou mau 'enemi. 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra Gidgiddoni 'ia hāmani rātou i te mau mauha'a tama'i e rave rahi te huru, 'e 'ia pūai maita'i rātou i te 'ahu tama'i 'e i te mau pāroru tama'i rahi, 'e i te mau pāroru tama'i iti, 'e 'ia au i te huru nō tāna ha'api'ira'a ia rātou.

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

3 Nephi 4

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te pae hope'a nō te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti, 'ua fa'aineine taua mau pupu feiā 'eiā haru ra nō te 'arora'a, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te haere mai i raro ma te rū mai ni'a mai i te mau 'āivi, 'e i rāpae i te mau mou'a, 'e te mau mēdēbara, 'e tō rātou mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari, 'e tō rātou mau vāhi tāpunira'a, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te haru i te mau fenua, te fenua i te pae apato'a 'e te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te haru i te mau fenua ato'a 'o tei fa'aru'ehia e te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e te mau 'oire ato'a i fa'aru'ehia.
- 2 Inaha rā, 'aita e mau 'ānimara 'ōviri 'e 'aita ato'a e manu 'ōviri i taua mau fenua ra i fa'aru'ehia mai e te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'aita e manu 'ōviri nā te mau ta'ata 'eiā haru, maori rā i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 3 'E 'aita roa e ti'a i te feiā 'eiā haru 'ia ora noa nō te mea 'aita e mā'a, maori rā i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'ua vaiiho ano noa te mau 'āti Nephi i tō rātou mau fenua, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu i tā rātou mau nana māmoe 'e tā rātou nana pua'atoro 'e tā rātou mau huru tao'a ato'a i te vāhi hō'ē i reira rātou i pārahi ai.
- 4 Nō reira, 'aita roa e rāve'a e ti'a ai i te feiā 'eiā haru 'ia 'eiā nō te fāri'i i te mā'a, maori rā 'ia haere atu rātou e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'ua ha'aputupu'ehia te mau 'āti Nephi i te vāhi hō'ē, 'e e rave rahi rātou, 'e 'ua ha'aputu ato'a rātou i te mau huru mā'a ato'a nā rātou, 'e te mau pua'ahorofenua, 'e te mau pua'atoro, 'e te mau huru nana 'ānimara ato'a, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ora noa nō te ārea e hitu matahiti te maoro, 'e i roto i taua taime ra 'ua ti'aturi rātou 'ia ha'amou roa i te feiā 'eiā haru i ni'a i te fenua ē hope roa a'e ; 'e 'o te hope'a te reira nō te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, i te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti 'ua 'ite ihora 'o Gidiani ē, e mea ti'a iāna 'ia haere atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi ; nō te mea 'aita atu e rāve'a e ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia ora noa, maori rā 'ia haru i te tao'a, 'ia 'eiā 'e 'ia taparahi i te ta'ata.
- 6 'E 'aita roa rātou i hina'aro 'ia ha'apurara ia rātou nā ni'a i te fenua 'e 'ia fa'a'apu i te sītona, 'o tē haere mai te mau 'āti Nephi e taparahi ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a atu Gidiani i te hō'ē fa'auera'a i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia haere e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi i taua matahiti ra.

3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra rātou nō te 'aro ; 'e 'o te ono teie o te 'āva'e ; 'e inaha, e mahana rahi 'e te ri'ari'a ia 'a tae mai ai rātou nō te 'aro ; 'e 'ua tātuahia rātou mai te au i te peu a te feiā 'eiā haru ra ; e 'iri fanau'a māmoē tō rātou tau'upu, 'e 'ua paraihia te reira i te toto, 'e 'ua hahuhia tō rātou mau upo'o, e mau pāruru upo'o tō ni'a ia rātou ; e mea rahi 'e te ri'ari'a te huru o te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Gidiani 'ia hi'ohia atu nō tō rātou 'ahu tama'i 'e nō tō rātou paraira'ahia i te toto.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi i te huru o te nu'u fa'ehau o Gidiani, 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou pā'āto'a i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua fa'ateitei a'era i tō rātou reo i te Fatu i tō rātou ra Atua, 'ia fa'aherehere 'oia ia rātou 'e 'ia fa'aora ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Gidiani i te reira, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te pi'i ma te reo rahi roa, nō tō rātou 'oa'oa, nō te mea 'ua mana'o rātou ē, 'ua ma'iri te mau 'āti Nephi i te mata'u nō te ri'ari'a rahi o tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau.
- 10 'Āre'a rā 'ua hape roa rātou i taua mana'o ra, 'aita ho'i te mau 'āti Nephi i mata'u ia rātou ; 'ua mata'u rā rātou i tō rātou Atua 'e 'ua tāparu rātou iāna nō te fāri'i i te pārurura'a ; nō reira, i te haere-rū-ra'a mai te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Gidiani i ni'a ia rātou, 'ua ineine rātou nō te 'aro atu ia rātou ; 'oia ia, nā roto i te pūai o te Fatu 'ua 'aro atu rātou ia rātou.
- 11 'E 'ua ha'amata taua 'arora'a i te ono o te 'āva'e ; e mea rahi 'e te ri'ari'a taua 'arora'a ra, 'oia ia, 'e e mea rahi 'e te ri'ari'a te taparahira'a ta'ata nā roto i taua 'arora'a ra, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita roa e taparahira'a ta'ata rahi i 'itehia mai teie te huru i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o Lehi mai te tau i fa'aru'e ai 'oia i Ierusalem.
- 12 'E noa atu ā te mau parau ha'amata'u 'e te mau tapura'a tā Gidiani i tapu, inaha, 'ua upo'oti'a te mau 'āti Nephi i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ōtohe rātou mai mua atu ia rātou.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Gidigidoni i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau 'ia a'ua'u ia rātou ē tae noa atu i te mau hiti nō te mēdēbara, 'e 'eiaha roa rātou e fa'aora noa i tei ma'iri mai i roto i tō rātou rima nā te pae 'ē'a ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te a'ua'u 'e i te taparahi ia rātou, ē tae noa atu i te mau hiti o te mēdēbara, 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu 'ua fa'ahope rātou i te fa'auera'a a Gidigidoni.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'o Gidiani tei ti'a mai 'e tei 'aro mai ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e 'ua a'ua'uhia 'oia i tōna horora'a atu ; 'e nō tōna rohirohi i te tama'i-'ū'ana-ra'a, 'ua roa'ahia 'oia 'e 'ua taparahihia. 'E 'o te hope'a teie nō te ta'ata 'eiā haru ra o Gidiani.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi i tō rātou vāhi ha'apūra'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'o te hope'a ia nō te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti, 'e 'aita te feiā 'eiā haru i haere fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro ; 'e 'aita ato'a rātou i haere fa'ahou mai i te piti 'ahuru o te matahiti.
- 16 'E i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti 'aita rātou i haere mai nō te 'aro, 'āre'a rā 'ua haere mai rātou nā te mau pae ato'a nō te ha'a'ati i te mau ta'ata o Nephi ; 'e 'ua mana'o ho'i rātou ē, mai te mea e fa'ata'a 'ē rātou i te mau ta'ata o Nephi i tō rātou mau fenua, 'e mai te mea e ha'a'ati noa rātou ia rātou i te mau pae ato'a, 'e mai te mea e fa'ata'a 'ē rātou ia rātou i te mau tauturura'a ato'a nō rāpae mai, e riro ia rātou i te hōro'a mai ia rātou iho mai te au i tō rātou ihora mau hina'aro.
- 17 I teienei, 'ua mā'iti rātou i te tahi atu ā ta'ata fa'atere nō rātou iho, 'o Zemenariha tōna 'ioa ; nō reira nā Zemenariha i fa'aue 'ia fa'atupuhia teie harura'a.
- 18 Inaha rā, e mea maita'i teie nō te mau 'āti Nephi ; nō te mea 'aita roa e ti'a i te feiā 'eiā haru 'ia tāpe'a ha'amaoro noa atu ā i te ha'a'atira'a i te mau 'āti Nephi nō te fa'atupu i te tahi fifi, nō te mea 'ua ha'aputu rahi rātou i te mā'a nā rātou.
- 19 'E nō te mea ho'i e mea iti roa te mā'a a te feiā 'eiā haru ; inaha ho'i, 'aita tā rātou e mā'a, maori rā 'o te 'i'o 'ānimara ana'e 'o tei roa'a ia rātou i roto i te mēdēbara.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, e mea iti roa te 'ānimara 'ōviri i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fātata roa te feiā 'eiā haru i te pohe nō te poia.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnariyah; therefore it was Zemnariyah that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

- 21 'E 'ua hāhaere tāmāu noa te mau 'āti Nephi nā rāpae i te ao 'e i te pō, ma te 'aro atu i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e ma te taparahi ia rātou ta'ihō'ē tauatini e ta'iahuru tauatini.
- 22 'E nō reira, 'ua tupu a'era te hina'aro o te mau ta'ata o Zemenariha 'ia fa'a'ore i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a, nō te pau rahi i tae mai i ni'a ia rātou i te pō 'e i te ao ato'a ho'i.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Zemenariha i tōna mau ta'ata ia 'ōtohe mai rātou mai te vāhi i haruhia, 'e 'ia haere atu i te mau tufa'a hope'a roa nō te fenua i te pae apato'erau.
- 24 'E i teienei, nō te mea 'ua 'ite Gidigidoni i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a, 'e nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia i tō rātou paruparu nō te mā'a 'ore, 'e te pau rahi o te mau ta'ata i taparahihia i rotopū ia rātou, nō reira 'ua tonu atu ra 'oia i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i te pō, 'e 'ua tāpū i te 'ē'a nō tō rātou 'ōtohera'a, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i te 'ē'a nō tō rātou 'ōtohera'a.
- 25 'E 'ua rave rātou i te reira i te pō, 'e 'ua haere noa rātou e ma'iri atu i te feiā 'eiā haru, 'e 'ia ao a'era, 'a ha'amata ai te feiā 'eiā haru i te haere atu, 'ua 'arohia mai rātou e te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi i mua 'e i muri ato'a ho'i.
- 26 'E te feiā 'eiā haru i te pae apato'a, 'ua tāpū-fa'ata'a-'ē-hia ia i tō rātou mau vāhi 'ōtohera'a. 'E 'ua ravehia teie mau mea ato'a nā roto i te fa'auera'a a Gidigidoni.
- 27 'E e rave rahi tauatini 'o tei hōro'a mai ia rātou iho 'ei feiā mau-'āuri nā te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e te toe'a o rātou ra, 'ua taparahihia ia.
- 28 'E 'ua ravehia tō rātou ta'ata fa'atere, 'o Zemenariha, 'e 'ua tārihia i ni'a i te hō'ē tumu rā'au, 'oia ia, i ni'a roa i te tumu rā'au ē tae noa atu 'ua pohe roa 'oia. 'E i tō rātou tāri'a iāna ē tae roa atu 'ua pohe roa 'oia, 'ua tāpū ihora rātou i te tumu rā'au 'ia ma'iri i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua pi'i atu ra rātou ma te reo pūai, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 29 'Ia fa'aherehere te Fatu i tōna ra mau ta'ata i roto i te parauti'a 'e te 'ā'au mo'a, 'e 'ia ha'ama'irihia rātou pā'āto'a i raro i te repo, rātou 'o tē tītau 'ia taparahi nō te hina'aro ti'a 'ore i te mana 'e te mau pupu 'ohipa huna ; mai teie nei ta'ata i ma'iri i raro i te repo.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthest parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

- 30 'E 'ua 'oa'oa rātou 'e 'ua ti'aoro fa'ahou atu ra ma te reo hō'ē, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ia pāroru mai te Atua nō Aberahama, 'e te Atua nō Isaaka, 'e te Atua nō Iakoba i teie nei feiā i roto i te parauti'a, 'a tāmāu noa ai rātou i te ti'aoro atu i te i'oa o tō rātou ra Atua nō te pārorura'a.
- 31 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāhō'ē rātou pā'āto'a i te hīmenera'a 'e i te 'ārūera'a i tō rātou Atua nō te mea rahi tāna i rave nō rātou ra, nō te fa'ahereherera'a ia rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ma'iri atu i roto i te rima o tō rātou ra mau 'enemi.
- 32 'Oia iā, 'ua ti'aoro atu rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Hosana i te Atua Teitei Roa. 'E 'ua ti'aoro rātou i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Ia fa'ahanahanahia te i'oa o te Fatu te Atua Manahope, 'oia te Atua Teitei Roa ra.
- 33 'E 'ua 'ī roa tō rātou 'ā'au i te 'oa'oa, ē tae noa atu 'ua tahe noa tō rātou mau roimata nō te maita'i rahi o te Atua, i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi ; 'e 'ua 'ite rātou ē, nō tā rātou tātarahapara'a 'e tō rātou ha'eha'a i fa'aorahia ai rātou i te pohe mure 'ore ra.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

3 Nephi 5

- 1 'E i teienci, inaha, 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e ta'ata ora i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o Nephi i fē'a'a noa a'e i te mau parau 'o tā te mau peropheta mo'a ato'a i parau ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite rātou ē, 'ia tupu mau ia te reira e ti'a ai.
- 2 'E 'ua 'ite rātou ē, e mea ti'a roa i te Mesia 'ia tae mai, nō te mau tāpa'o e rave rahi i fa'a'itehia, mai te au i te mau parau a te mau peropheta ; 'e nō te mau mea i tupu a'ena, 'ua 'ite rātou ē, e mea ti'a roa i te mau mea ato'a 'ia tupu mai te au i tei parauhia na.
- 3 Nō reira, 'ua fa'aru'e rātou i tā rātou mau hara pā'āto'a, 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, e tā rātou mau 'ohipa tai'ata, 'e 'ua tāvini atu ra i te Atua ma te itoito i te ao 'e i te pō.
- 4 'E i teienci, i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rātou ravera'a i te feiā 'eiā haru 'ei feiā mau-'āuri, 'aita te hō'ē ta'ata i toe 'aore i taparahihia, 'e 'ua huri atu ra i te feiā mau-'āuri i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ua a'o atu ra i te parau a te Atua ia rātou ; 'e 'o rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara 'e 'o tei fa'aoti i te hō'ē fafau'a ē 'aita roa rātou e taparahi fa'ahou i te ta'ata, 'ua hōro'ahia ia tō rātou ti'amāra'a 'ia haere.
- 5 'Āre'a rā 'o rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei 'ore i fa'aoti i te hō'ē fafau'a, 'e 'o tei tāpe'a noa i tō rātou mau mana'o huna i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au nō te taparahi i te ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'e 'o rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei 'itea i te paraura'a i te mau parau ha'amata'u i tō rātou mau taea'e, 'ua fa'ahapahia ia rātou 'e 'ua fa'au'ahia mai te au i te ture.
- 6 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te ha'amou i taua mau pupu 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore, 'e te 'ohipa huna, 'e te 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e i roto ato'a i te reira tē vai ra te mau 'ohipa 'T'ino rahi 'e te mau taparahira'a ta'ata e rave rahi.
- 7 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti, 'e te piti 'ahuru 'e ma toru ato'a o te matahiti, 'e te piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha, 'e te piti 'ahuru 'e ma pae ; 'e nō reira 'ua hope roa te matahiti e piti 'ahuru 'e ma pae.

3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

- 8 E rave rahi te mau mea i tupu, 'e i roto i te hi'ora'a o te tahi pae, e mea rahi ia 'e te fa'ahiahia ; 'āre'a rā, 'āita te reira e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia i roto i teie nei buka ; 'oia ia, 'aita e ō i roto i teie nei buka te hānerera'a o te tufa'a nō te mau mea i ravehia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi i roto i te ārea nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma pae matahiti.
- 9 Inaha rā, tē vai ra te mau pāpa'a parau 'e tei roto i te reira te mau 'ohipa i tupu i ni'a i teie mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia ho'i te tahi 'ā'amu poto 'e te parau mau nō te reira e Nephi.
- 10 Nō reira, 'ua pāpa'i au i tā'u nei pāpa'a parau nō teie nei mau mea mai te au i te pāpa'a parau a Nephi ra, 'o tei 'ō'otihia i ni'a i te mau 'api i parauhia, te mau 'api a Nephi.
- 11 'E inaha, tē pāpa'i nei au i teie nei pāpa'a parau i ni'a i te tahi mau 'api 'o tā'u i hāmani i tō'u iho nā rima.
- 12 'E inaha, 'ua parauhia vau 'o Moromona, 'e 'ua topahia i ni'a iā'u te i'oa o te fenua ra nō Moromona, 'oia te fenua tā Alama i fa'ati'a i te 'ēkālesia i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, te 'ēkālesia mātāmua i fa'ati'ahia i rotopū ia rātou i muri a'e i tō rātou 'ōfatira'a i te ture.
- 13 Inaha, e pipi au nā Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua. 'Ua pi'ihia vau e āna 'ia a'o atu i tāna parau i rotopū i tōna mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te ora mure 'ore.
- 14 'E 'ua ti'a roa, mai te au i tō te Atua hina'aro—'ia manuia te mau pure a te mau ta'ata i pohe na mai te au i tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e e mau ta'ata mo'a ana'e ho'i rātou—'ia pāpa'i au i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau nō teie mau mea i ravehia.
- 15 'Oia ia, i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau iti nō te mau mea i tupu mai te taime Lehi i fa'aru'e ai i Ieruselema ē tae roa mai i teie taime.
- 16 Nō reira tē pāpa'i nei au i tā'u nei pāpa'a parau nō roto mai i te mau 'ā'amu i pāpa'ihia 'e te mau ta'ata nā mua atu iā'u nei, ē tae roa mai i tō'u iho nei mahana.
- 17 'E i reira ho'i e pāpa'i ai au i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau nō te mau mea i 'itea e tō'u iho nei mata.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

- 18 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e mea ti'a 'e e parau mau te pāpa'a parau tā'u i pāpa'i ; 'āre'a rā tē vai ra e rave rahi mau mea 'aita e ti'a ia mātou 'ia pāpa'i nō te huru o tō mātou reo.
- 19 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u parau i te mau mea nō ni'a iā'u iho nei, 'e e tāmata vau i te pāpa'i i tā'u 'ā'amu nō ni'a i te mau mea i tupu 'ē nā mua iā'u.
- 20 'O Moromona vau nei, 'e e hua'ai mau vau nō Lehi. 'E 'ua ti'a roa iā'u 'ia 'āruē i tō'u Atua 'e tō'u Fa'aora 'o Iesu Mesia, i te mea ē 'ua arata'i mai 'oia i tō mātou mau metua i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem, ('e 'aore ia i 'iteahia i te ta'ata, maori rā 'o 'oia 'e te feiā 'o tāna i arata'i mai i rāpae i taua fenua ra) 'e 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia iā'u 'e i tō'u mau ta'ata i te 'ite rahi nō ni'a i te fa'aorara'a o tō mātou nei vārua.
- 21 'Oia mau roa, 'ua ha'amaita'i mai 'oia i te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, 'e 'ua aroha mai ho'i 'oia i te hua'ai o Iosepha.
- 22 'E no reira ho'i 'a ha'apa'o maita'i ai te hua'ai o Lehi i tāna ra mau fa'auera'a, 'ua ha'amaita'i mai 'oia ia rātou 'e 'ua ha'amanuia ia rātou mai te au i tāna ra parau.
- 23 'Oia ia, e fa'atae fa'ahou 'oia i te hō'ē toe'a o te hua'ai o Iosepha i te 'ite i te Fatu tō rātou Atua.
- 24 'E 'oia mau roa mai te Fatu e ora nei, e ha'aputupu mai 'oia mai nā tufa'a e maha o te ao nei i te toe'a o te hua'ai o Iakoba, 'o tei ha'apurarahia i te ātea nā roto i te ao ato'a nei.
- 25 'E mai tāna i fafau atu i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o Iakoba, e riro ia te fafaura'a tāna i fafau atu i te 'utuāfare o Iakoba i te tupu i tōna tau mau ra, e tae atu ai i te fa'aho'ira'ahia te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o Iakoba i te 'ite nō te fafaura'a 'o tāna i fafau atu ia rātou ra.
- 26 'E i reira rātou e 'ite ai i tō rātou Tāra'ehara, 'oia ia Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua ; 'e i reira rātou e ha'aputupuahia mai ai mai nā tufa'a e maha o te ao nei i ni'a i tō rātou iho mau fenua, i te vāhi nō reira mai ho'i rātou i te ha'apurarara'ahia ; 'oia ia, mai te Fatu e ora ra, e nā-reira-hia ia. 'Āmene.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

3 Nephi 6

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i atu te mau ta'ata ato'a o te mau 'āti Nephi i tō rātou iho mau fenua i te matahiti e piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono, te ta'ata tāta'itahi, 'e tōna 'utuāfare, tāna mau nana māmoe 'e tāna mau nana pua'atoro, tāna mau pua'ahorofenua 'e tāna mau pua'atoro, 'e tā rātou mau mea ato'a ra.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'aita i pau roa tā rātou mau mā'a i te 'amuhia ; nō reira 'ua rave rātou i te mau mea ato'a 'o tei 'ore i 'amuhia e rātou ra, i tā rātou mau huru huero sītona ato'a, 'e tā rātou 'auro, 'e tā rātou 'ārio, 'e tā rātou mau tao'a faufa'a rahi, 'e 'ua ho'i atu rātou i tō rātou ihora mau fenua 'e tō rātou mau 'āi'a, i te pae apato'erau 'e i te pae apato'a, i te fenua i te pae apato'erau 'e i te fenua i te pae apato'a.
- 3 'E 'ua hōro'a atu rātou nā te feiā 'eiā haru 'o tei fa'aoti i te hō'ē fafaura'a 'ia fa'atupu noa i te hau i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'o tei hina'aro 'ia riro noa 'ei mau 'āti Lamana, te tahi mau fenua mai te au i tō rātou rahira'a, 'ia roa'a tā rātou mā'a nā roto i te ravera'a i te 'ohipa ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'atupu i te hau i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 4 'E 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou rātou i te manuia 'e i te tupu i te rahi ; 'e 'ua hope a'era te piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono 'e te piti 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, 'e 'ua vai noa te hau rahi i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua fa'anahonaho rātou i tā rātou mau ture mai te au i te fāito ti'a 'e te parauti'a.
- 5 'E i teienei, 'aita roa te hō'ē mea i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a 'o tei tāfifi i te mau ta'ata 'ia manuia noa, maori rā 'ia topa rātou i roto i te hara.
- 6 'E i teienei, nā Gidgiddoni, 'e te ha'avā ra 'o Lakoneusa, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei mā'itihia 'ei feiā fa'atere, i fa'ati'a i teie hau rahi i ni'a i te fenua.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hāmani ihora rātou e rave rahi mau 'oire 'āpī, 'e 'ua fa'a'āpī fa'ahou rātou e rave rahi mau 'oire tahito.
- 8 'E 'ua hāmani rātou e rave rahi mau purūmu rarahi, 'e 'ua hāmani ato'a rātou i te mau purūmu nō te haere i terā 'oire 'e i terā 'oire, 'e i terā fenua 'e i terā fenua, 'e i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi.
- 9 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te piti 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti, 'e 'ua vai noa te mau ta'ata i roto i te hau.

3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

10 'Āre'a rā i muri a'era, i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti 'ua tupu a'era te tahi mau mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua fa'ateitei te tahi pae ia rātou i roto i te te'ote'o 'e te fa'aahaahara'a, nō tā rātou mau tao'a rahi roa, 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu i tā rātou mau hāmani-'ino-ra'a rahi.

11 Nō te mea tē vai ra e rave rahi mau ta'ata ho'o tao'a i ni'a i te fenua, 'e e rave rahi ato'a mau pāroru ture, 'e e rave rahi ato'a mau ta'ata tōro'a.

12 'E 'ua ha'amata te mau ta'ata i te fa'ata'a 'ē ia rātou i roto i te tahi mau pupu mai te au i te rahi o tā rātou mau tao'a 'e tō rātou 'ite ; 'oia ia, e mea pōiri te tahi pae nō tō rātou veve, 'e 'ua fāri'i te tahi pae i te 'ite rahi nō te rahi o tā rātou mau tao'a.

13 'Ua fa'ateiteihia te tahi pae i roto i te te'ote'o, 'e e mea ha'eha'a roa te tahi pae ; te fa'a'ino fa'ahou ra te tahi pae i tei fa'a'ino mai ia rātou, 'āre'a te tahi pae ra, tē fa'a'oroma'i ra rātou i te mau huru fa'a'inora'a 'e te hāmani-'ino-ra'a, 'e te mau huru 'ati ato'a, 'e 'aita rātou e fa'a'ino fa'ahou atu, 'āre'a rā 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā ha'eha'a 'e te 'ā'au tātarahapa mau i mua i te Atua.

14 'E nō reira 'ua tupu rahi roa te 'aifāito 'ore i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e nō reira 'ua ha'amata te 'ēkālesia i te pararī ; 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i i te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti, 'ua pararī te 'ēkālesia i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, maori rā i rotopū noa i te tahi mau 'āti Lamana 'o tei fa'afāriuhia mai i te fa'aro'o mau ; 'e 'aita roa ia rātou e fa'aru'e i te reira, e feiā mau pāpū ho'i rātou, 'e te pa'ari, 'e te 'āueue 'ore, 'e 'o tei hina'aro ma te itoito ato'a 'ia ha'apa'o i te mau fa'auera'a a te Fatu.

15 I teienei, te tumu nō teie mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ta'ata, 'o teie ia—e mana rahi tō Sātane i te fa'ati'arepura'a i te mau ta'ata 'ia rave i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a, 'e i te fa'arahira'a i tō rātou te'ote'o, 'e i te fa'atupura'a i te mana'o i roto ia rātou 'ia tītau i te mana, 'e te ha'amanara'a, 'e te mau tao'a rahi, 'e te mau mea faufa'a 'ore o te ao nei.

16 'E 'ua nā reira Sātane i te arata'i 'ē atu i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata 'ia rave i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a ; nō reira e mea iti roa te mau matahiti nō tō rātou 'oa'ora'a i roto i te hau.

But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

- 17 'E nō reira, i te ha'amatarā'a nō te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti—i vai maoro na te mau ta'ata 'e i arata'i-'ē-hia na rātou e te mau fa'ahemara'a a te diabolō i te mau vāhi tāna i hina'aro nō te arata'i atu ia rātou, 'e 'ia rave i te mau 'ohīpa 'T'ino 'o tāna i hina'aro ia rātou—'e nō reira, i te ha'amatarā'a nō teie nei matahiti, 'oia ho'i te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti, 'ua vai noa rātou 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore rahi.
- 18 I teienei, 'aita rātou i rave i te hara ma te 'ite 'ore, 'ua 'ite ho'i rātou i tō te Atua hina'aro ia rātou, nō te mea 'ua ha'api'ihia te reira ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua pāto'i atu rātou i te Atua ma te hina'aro mau.
- 19 'E i teienei, 'o te mau mahana ia teie o Lakoneusa, te tamaiti a Lakoneusa, 'e nā Lakoneusa ho'i i mono i te pārahira'a o tōna metua tāne 'e 'ua fa'atere 'oia i te mau ta'ata i taua matahiti ra.
- 20 'E 'ua fa'auruhia ihora te tahi mau ta'ata mai te ra'i mai 'e 'ua tonohaere-hia atu ra rātou, 'e 'ua ti'a atu ra rātou i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i roto i te mau fenua ato'a, i te a'ora'a atu 'e te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a atu i te mau hara 'e te mau 'ohīpa 'T'ino a te mau ta'ata ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e te fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a atu ia rātou i te parau nō te fa'aorara'a 'o tā te Fatu e rave nō tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'oia ho'i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te Mesia ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu rātou ma te mata'u 'ore nō ni'a i tōna pohera'a 'e te mamae ma te mata'u 'ore.
- 21 I teienei, tē vai ra e rave rahi ta'ata tei riri roa mai ia rātou 'o tei fa'a'ite atu i taua mau mea nei, 'e teie mau ta'ata 'o tei riri ra, 'o te mau ha'avā rahi ia, 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tei riro na 'ei mau tahu'a rahi 'e 'ei mau pāroru ture ; 'oia ia, 'ua riri mai te mau pāroru ture ato'a i te feiā 'o tei fa'a'ite atu i taua mau mea nei.
- 22 I teienei, 'aita roa tō te pāroru ture 'e tō te ha'avā 'e tō te tahu'a rahi e mana 'ia fa'ahapa i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia pohe, maori rā 'ia tārimahia tā rātou parau fa'ahapara'a e te tāvana o te fenua.
- 23 I teienei, tē vai ra e rave rahi tei fa'a'ite māite i te mau parau nō ni'a i te Mesia 'e 'ua fa'a'ite māite rātou ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e 'ua taparahi-huna-hia rātou 'e te mau ha'avā, 'e 'aita roa te parau nō tō rātou pohera'a i tae atu i mua i te tāvana o te fenua ē tae noa atu 'ua pohe roa rātou.
- 24 I teienei, inaha, 'aita teie i tano i te mau ture o te fenua, 'ia taparahihia te ta'ata maori rā nā roto i te mana o te tāvana o te fenua—

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

- 25 Nō reira 'ua tae mai ra te parau fa'ahapara'a i te fenua ra nō Zarahemla, i te tāvana nō te fenua, i te fa'ahapara'a i taua mau ha'avā ra 'o tei fa'ahapa 'ia taparahi-pohe-hia te mau peropheta o te Fatu, ma te tano 'ore i te ture.
- 26 I teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ravehia rātou 'e 'ua arata'ihia mai ra i mua i te ha'avā, 'ia ha'avāhia nō te hapa tā rātou i rave, mai te au i te ture i fa'ata'ahia e te mau ta'ata.
- 27 I teienei, i muri a'era, e rave rahi tō taua mau ha'avā ra mau hoa 'e mau fēti'i ; 'e te toe'a, 'oia ia, te pae rahi o te mau pāroru ture 'e te mau tahu'a rahi, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmu rātou, 'e 'ua tāhō'ē atu rātou i te mau fēti'i o te mau ha'avā 'o tei fātata i te ha'avāhia mai te au i te ture.
- 28 'E 'ua fafau rātou te tahi i te tahi, 'oia ia, i te fafaura'a i ravehia e rātou i te 'anotau tahito ra, 'e 'ua hōro'ahia 'e 'ua fa'aterehia teie fafaura'a e te diabolō, 'ia tāhō'ē nō te 'aro atu i te tā'āto'ara'a o te parauti'a.
- 29 Nō reira 'ua tāhō'ē rātou nō te 'aro mai i te mau ta'ata o te Fatu, 'e 'ua fa'aoti rātou i te hō'ē fafaura'a nō te ha'amou ia rātou, 'e nō te fa'aora i te feiā 'o tei rave i te 'ohipa taparahi ta'ata i te rima nō te parauti'a, 'o tei fātata i te fa'aterehia 'ia au i te ture.
- 30 'E 'ua vahavaha atu rātou i te ture 'e te ti'amāra'a o tō rātou fenua ; 'e 'ua fafau rātou te tahi i te tahi 'ia taparahi i te tāvana, 'e 'ia fa'ati'a i te hō'ē ari'i i ni'a i te fenua, 'ia 'ore tō te fenua e ti'amāra'a, 'ia auraro rā i te mau ari'i.

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

3 Nephi 7

- 1 I teienei, inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou, 'aita rātou i fa'ati'a i te hō'ē ari'i i ni'a i te fenua ; 'āre'a rā i teie iho matahiti, 'oia ia, i te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti, 'ua taparahi pohe roa rātou i te ha'avā rahi o te fenua a pārahi ai 'oia i ni'a i te pārahira'a ha'avāra'a.
- 2 'E 'ua 'āmahamaha te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua fa'ata'a 'ē atu ra rātou te tahi i te tahi i roto i te tahi mau 'ōpū ; te ta'ata tāta'itahi 'e tōna 'utuāfare 'e tōna fēti'i 'e tōna mau hoa ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te ha'amou i te fa'aterera'a hau fenua.
- 3 'E nā te mau 'ōpū tāta'itahi i mā'iti i te ra'atira 'e 'aore rā i te ta'ata fa'atere i ni'a a'e ia rātou ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te rirora'a 'ei mau 'ōpū 'e 'ei mau ta'ata fa'atere nō te mau 'ōpū.
- 4 I teienei, inaha, 'aore roa e ta'ata i rotopū ia rātou e 'ere tōna 'utuāfare i te mea rahi, e tōna fēti'i 'e tōna mau hoa ; nō reira 'ua riro tō rātou mau 'ōpū 'ei mea rahi roa.
- 5 I teienei, 'ua oti pā'āto'a teie i te ravehia, 'e 'aita atu ra e tama'i i rotopū ia rātou i reira ; 'e 'ua tae mai teie mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a i ni'a i te mau ta'ata nō te mea 'ua auraro rātou i te mana o Sātane.
- 6 'E 'ua mou te mau arata'ira'a nō te hau fenua, te tumu nō te pupu 'ohipa huna ia a te mau hoa 'e te mau fēti'i o te mau ta'ata i taparahi i te mau peropheta.
- 7 'E 'ua fa'atupu rātou i te mārōra'a rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua riro te tufa'a rahi o te feiā parauti'a 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore ; 'oia ia, e mea iti roa te ta'ata parauti'a i rotopū ia rātou.
- 8 'E nō reira 'aita nā matahiti e ono i hope i fāriu 'ē atu ai te pae rahi o te mau ta'ata i tō rātou huru parauti'a, mai te 'ūrī e ho'i atu i tōna ra rūa'i, 'e 'aore rā mai te maia'a pua'a e ho'i atu i tōna ra tāvirivirira'a i roto i te vari.
- 9 I teienei, 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui mai teie pupu 'ohipa huna ia rātou iho, 'e nā rātou ho'i i fa'atae mai i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino rahi i ni'a i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua mā'iti rātou i te hō'ē ta'ata i parauhia e rātou 'o Iakoba 'ei upo'o fa'atere nō rātou.

3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

10 'E 'ua pi'i rātou iāna 'ei ari'i nō rātou ; nō reira 'ua riro 'oia 'ei ari'i i ni'a i teie pupu parauti'a 'ore ; 'e 'o 'oia ho'i te hō'ē ta'ata rahi 'o tei fa'a'ite i tōna mana'o fa'ahapa i te mau peropheta 'o tē fa'a'ite pāpū ra i te parau nō Iesu.

11 'E i muri a'era, e 'ere rātou i te mea rahi atu i tō te mau 'ōpū o te mau ta'ata, 'o tei 'āmui-tāhō'ē-hia, 'e nā tō rātou feiā fa'atere i fa'ati'a i tā rātou mau ture, 'ia au i tōna ihora 'ōpū ; 'āre'a rā e 'enemi rātou te tahi i te tahi, noa atu ā e 'ere rātou i te feiā parauti'a, 'e 'ua tāhō'ēhia ho'i rātou i roto i tō rātou 'ino'ino rahi i te feiā i fafau nō te ha'amou i te fa'aterera'a hau fenua.

12 Nō reira, 'ia 'ite a'era Iakoba ē 'ua rahi atu tō rātou mau 'enemi ia rātou, 'e nō te mea ho'i ē 'o 'oia te ari'i nō taua pupu ra, nō reira 'ua fa'aeu atu ra 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia horo atu rātou i te pae hope'a roa o te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e i reira 'a patu ai i te hō'ē bāsileia nō rātou iho, ē tae roa atu 'ua 'āmui mai te feiā 'ōrurehau ia rātou, ('e 'ua tāvaimanino atu 'oia ia rātou 'e tē vai ra e rave rahi feiā 'ōrurehau) 'e e riro rātou 'ei mea pūai roa nō te 'aro atu i te mau pupu o te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua nā reira atu ra rātou.

13 'E nō tō rātou haere-'oi'oi-ra'a atu, 'aita atu ra rātou i roa'ahia atu, 'e 'ua reva atu ra rātou i te vāhi 'aita rātou e roa'ahia e te mau ta'ata. 'E 'o te hope'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru o te matahiti ; 'e mai te reira te huru nō te mau 'ohipa a te mau ta'ata o Nephi.

14 'E i muri a'era, i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti, 'ua tātufa'ahia rātou i roto i te tahi mau 'ōpū, te ta'ata tāta'itahi mai te au i tōna ihora 'utuāfare, fēti'i 'e mau hoa ; 'āre'a rā 'ua tāhō'ē rātou i te parau ē 'aita rātou e haere atu e 'aro te tahi i te tahi ; 'aita rā rātou i tāhō'ēhia i roto i tā rātou mau ture 'e te huru nō te fa'aterera'a hau, nō te mea 'ua fa'ati'ahia te reira mai te au i te mau mana'o o tō rātou mau ra'atira 'e tō rātou feiā fa'atere. 'Ua fa'ati'a rā rātou i te mau ture pāpū 'ia 'ore te hō'ē 'ōpū 'ia ha'ape'ape'a atu i te tahi, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua vai te hau i ni'a i te fenua ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fāriu 'ē tō rātou 'ā'au i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'e 'ua pēhi rātou i te mau peropheta 'e 'ua ti'avaru atu ia rātou mai rotopū atu ia rātou.

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

15 'E i muri a'era, nō te mea 'ua fā mai te mau melahi ia Nephi—'e 'ua fa'aro'o ho'i 'oia i te reo o te Fatu, nō reira nō te mea 'ua 'ite mata 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū 'oia i te mau melahi, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua hōro'ahia mai te mana iāna 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia 'ite i te mau 'ohipa mo'a a te Mesia, 'e nō te mea 'ua 'ite mata 'oia i tō rātou haere-'oi-'oi-ra'a, mai te parauti'a mai ē tae atu ai i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'T'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ra.

16 Nō reira, nō tōna 'oto i te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au 'e te matapō o tō rātou 'ā'au—'ua haere atu ra 'oia i rotopū ia rātou i taua iho matahiti ra, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te fa'a'ite pāpū atu ma te mata'u 'ore i te parau nō te tātarahapara'a 'e te ha'amatarara'a i te mau hara nā roto i te fa'aro'o i te Fatu ra ia Iesu Mesia.

17 'E 'ua ha'api'i atu 'oia i te mau mea e rave rahi ia rātou ; 'e 'aita e ti'a i te mau mea ato'a 'ia pāpa'ihia, 'e 'aita ho'i e au 'ia pāpa'ihia te tahi pae ana'e ; nō reira 'aita te reira i pāpa'ihia i roto i teie nei buka. 'E 'ua ha'api'i atu Nephi ma te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a rahi.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri a'era rātou iāna, nō te mea 'ua hau atu tōna mana i tō rātou, 'e 'aita roa ho'i i ti'a ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi 'ore i tāna mau parau, 'e nō te rahi o tōna fa'aro'o i te Fatu ra ia Iesu Mesia 'ua tāvini te mau melahi iāna i te mau mahana ato'a.

19 'E nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, 'ua ti'avaru 'oia i te mau diablo 'e te mau vārua 'ino i rāpae ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'a mai 'oia i tōna taea'e mai te pohe mai i muri a'e i tōna pēhira'ahia i te 'ōfa'i e te mau ta'ata 'e tōna pohera'a.

20 'E 'ua 'ite mata 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū te mau ta'ata i te reira, 'e 'ua riri a'era rātou iāna nō tōna mana ; 'e 'ua rave ato'a 'oia i te tahi atu ā mau semeio e rave rahi i mua i te aro o te mau ta'ata, nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope ihora te toru 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti, 'e 'ua iti roa te ta'ata i fa'afāriuhia mai i te Fatu ; 'āre'a rā te pae rahi 'o tei fa'afāriuhia mai, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū rātou i te mau ta'ata ē 'ua tae mai te mana 'e te Vārua o te Atua i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e i vai na ho'i te reira i roto ia Iesu Mesia, 'o tā rātou i ti'aturi na.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

- 22 'E 'o rātou e rave rahi 'o tei ti'avaruhia te mau diabolō i rāpae ia rātou, 'e 'o tei fa'aorahia i tō rātou mau ma'i 'e tō rātou mau 'ati, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū atu ia rātou i te mau ta'ata ē, 'ua tae mai te Vārua o te Atua i ni'a ia rātou 'e 'ua ora rātou ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a atu rātou i te mau tāpa'o 'e 'ua rave ho'i i te mau semeio i rotopū i te mau ta'ata.
- 23 'E 'o te hope'a ato'a te reira nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti. 'E 'ua ti'aoro atu ra Nephi i te mau ta'ata i te ha'amatarara'a nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti ; 'e 'ua a'o atu 'oia ia rātou i te parau nō te tātarahapara'a 'e te ha'amatarara'a i te mau hara.
- 24 I teienei, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia ha'amana'o ato'a 'outou ē, 'o rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei tātarahapa 'ua bāpetizohia ia i te pape.
- 25 Nō reira, tē vai ra te mau ta'ata i fa'atōro'ahia e Nephi nō teie nei 'ohipa mo'a, 'ia ti'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē haere mai ia rātou 'ia bāpetizohia i te pape, 'ei 'ite 'e 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū i mua i te Atua, 'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i ē, 'ua tātarahapa rātou 'e 'ua fāri'i i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā rātou ra mau hara.
- 26 'E tē vai ra e rave rahi i te ha'amatarara'a nō teie matahiti 'o tei bāpetizohia nō te tātarahapara'a ; 'e nō reira 'ua hope te pae rahi o te matahiti.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

3 Nephi 8

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, mai te au i tā mātou pāpa'a parau, 'ua 'ite mātou ē, e parau mau tā mātou pāpa'a parau, inaha ho'i, nā te hō'ē ta'ata parauti'a i pāpa'i i te reira pāpa'a parau—'ua rave ho'i 'oia i te mau semeio e rave rahi nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu ; 'e 'aita roa atu ho'i e ta'ata 'o tē ti'a 'ia rave i te semeio nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, maori rā 'ua tāmā-roa-hia 'oia i tāna ra mau 'ohipa 'Ūino—
- 2 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, mai te mea ē 'aita e hape i ravehia e teie nei ta'ata nō te tai'ora'a i tō mātou nei taime, 'ua hope ia te toru 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti.
- 3 'E 'ua ha'amata te mau ta'ata i te hi'o māite atu ma te 'ana'anatae rahi i te tāpa'o i hōro'ahia mai e te peropheta ra 'o Samuela, te 'āti Lamana, 'oia ia, i te taime e tupu ai te pōiri nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a nei.
- 4 'E 'ua tupu te fē'a rahi 'e te mau mārōra'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, noa atu ā te mau tāpa'o e rave rahi i hōro'ahia mai na.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti, i te 'āva'e mātāmua, nō te maha o te mahana o te 'āva'e, 'ua tupu te hō'ē vero rahi roa, mai tei 'ore i 'itea i ni'a i te fenua mai te mātāmua mai ā.
- 6 'E 'ua tupu ato'a te hō'ē vero rahi 'e te ri'ari'a ; 'e 'ua tupu te hō'ē pātiri ri'ari'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'a'āueue te reira i te fenua tā'āto'a, mai te mea ra ē, 'ua fātata te reira i te 'āfāfā.
- 7 'E 'ua 'anapa mai te mau uira 'ana'ana, 'o tei 'ore ā i 'itea na i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 8 'E 'ua pa'apa'a ihora te 'oire ra nō Zarahemela i te auahi.
- 9 'E 'ua tomo roa ihora te 'oire ra nō Moroni i raro roa i te miti, 'e 'ua paremo ihora te mau ta'ata nō taua 'oire ra.
- 10 'E 'ua tāpo'ihia ihora te 'oire ra nō Moroniha i te repo fenua, 'e 'ua riro ihora te vāhi nō te 'oire 'ei mou'a rahi roa.
- 11 'E 'ua tupu te pau rahi 'e te ri'ari'a i ni'a i te fenua i te pae apato'a.

3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moroniha, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

- 12 Inaha rā, 'ua rahi roa atu te pau 'e te ri'ari'a i ni'a i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'ahuru-'ē-roa-hia te fenua tā'āto'a nō te vero 'e te mau pūāhiohio, 'e te mau pātiri 'e te mau uira, 'e te 'āueuera'a rahi o te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 13 'E 'ua pararī haere te mau purūmu rahi, 'e 'ua 'ino te mau purūmu pāpū, 'e 'ua pu'upu'u haere te mau vāhi pāpū.
- 14 'E 'ua tomo roa ihora te mau 'oire rahi 'e te tu'iro'o e rave rahi, 'e 'ua pa'apa'a te tahi pae i te auahi, 'e e rave rahi tei fa'a'āueuehia ē tae roa atu 'ua ma'iri te mau fare i raro i te repo, 'e 'ua taparahihia te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua vaiho-ano-noa-hia te mau vāhi i ti'ahia e rātou ra.
- 15 'E tē vai ra te tahi mau 'oire i toe noa mai ; 'āre'a rā 'ua rahi roa te mau vāhi 'ino nō te reira, 'e tē vai ra ho'i e rave rahi ta'ata tei pohe i roto.
- 16 'E tē vai ra te tahi pae 'o tei 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu nā roto i te pūāhiohio ; 'e te vāhi i 'āfa'ihia atu rātou ra, 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata i 'ite i te reira, maori rā 'ua 'ite rātou 'e 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu rātou.
- 17 'E 'ua nā reira te fenua tā'āto'a i te fa'ahuru-'ē-hia nā roto i te mau vero, 'e te mau pātiri, 'e te mau uira, 'e te 'āueuera'a fenua.
- 18 'E inaha, 'ua pararī te mau mato nā te 'āfara'a ; 'e 'ua pararī te reira i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua 'itehia te reira i roto i te mau hu'ahu'a i pararī, i roto i te mau vāhi 'afā 'e i roto i te mau ārea, i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aea te mau pātiri, 'e te mau uira, 'e te vero, 'e te mata'i rahi, 'e te mau 'āueuera'a fenua—inaha ho'i, 'ua tupu te reira e toru hora i te maoro ; 'e 'ua parau ho'i te tahi pae ē, 'ua roa atu ā te taime i te reira ; 'āre'a rā 'ua hope teie mau mea rahi 'e te ri'ari'a i te tupu i roto paha i te ārea e toru hora—'e inaha, 'ua vai mai te pōiri i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai te pōiri ta'ota'o rahi roa i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua 'ite te mau ta'ata 'o tei 'ore i pohe i te māhu pōiri.

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain.

And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.

And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

- 21 'E nō te pōiri, 'aita atu ra e ti'a 'ia tūtu'i i te hō'ē auahi, 'e 'aita ato'a te mōrī hinu, 'e 'aita ato'a te rama ; 'e 'aita ato'a e ti'a 'ia tahu i te auahi i te vahie maīta'i 'e te marō, 'e nō reira 'aita roa atu ra e ti'a 'ia vai te hō'ē noa atu huru māramarama.
- 22 'E 'aita roa te hō'ē māramarama i 'itehia, 'aita te auahi, 'aita te hō'ē 'ana'ana, 'aita te mahana, 'aita te marama, 'aita te mau feti'a, 'e 'ua rahi roa te māhu pōiri i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua vai noa te reira nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro 'e 'aita e māramarama i 'itehia ; 'e tē vai noa ra te 'oto rahi, 'e te 'auē, 'e te ta'i i rotopū i te mau ta'ata 'aore e fa'aea ; 'oia ia, 'ua rahi roa te autā o te mau ta'ata nō te pōiri 'e te pau rahi i tae mai i ni'a ia rātou.
- 24 'E i te hō'ē vāhi 'ua fa'aro'ohia tō rātou 'otora'a, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Āhiri tātou i tātarahapa hou teie mahana 'ino 'e te ri'ari'a rahi i tae mai ai, i reira 'ua fa'ahereherehia ia tō tātou mau taea'e, 'e 'aita ia rātou e pa'apa'a i roto i te 'oire rahi o Zarahemela.
- 25 'E i te tahi atu vāhi, 'ua fa'aro'ohia rātou i te ta'ira'a 'e te 'otora'a, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : 'Āhiri tātou i tātarahapa hou teie mahana 'ino 'e te ri'ari'a i tae mai ai, 'e 'āhiri 'aita tātou i taparahi 'e i pēhi i te mau peropheta i te 'ōfa'i, 'e i tīahi atu ia rātou i rāpae ; i reira 'ua fa'ahereherehia ia tō tātou mau metua vahine, 'e tā tātou mau tamāhine nehenehe, 'e tā tātou mau tamari'i, 'e 'aita ia rātou i tāpo'ihia i roto i taua 'oire rahi ra o Moroniha. 'E 'ua nā reira te mau ta'ata i te autā rahi ma te ri'ari'a.

And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moroniha. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

3 Nephi 9

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aro'ohia te hō'ē reo i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o te ao nei, i ni'a i teie fenua ē hope roa a'e, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 2 'Auē ho'i ē, 'auē ho'i ē, 'auē ho'i teie nei feiā ē ; 'auē ho'i te mau ta'ata o te ao ato'a nei 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa ; te 'ata'ata ra ho'i te diabolō, 'e tē 'oa'oa ra ho'i tāna mau melahi nō te pohe o te mau tamāroa 'e te mau tamāhine nehenehe a tō'u nei feiā ; 'e nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ho'i i pohe ai rātou ra !
- 3 Inaha, 'ua pau taua 'oire rahi ra o Zarahemela iā'u i te auahi, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a ho'i i roto ra.
- 4 'E inaha, taua 'oire rahi ra o Moroni, 'ua fa'atomohia ia e au i raro i te miti hōhonu, 'e 'ua paremo te mau ta'ata i roto ra.
- 5 'E inaha, taua 'oire rahi ra o Moroniha, 'ua tāpo'ihia ia e au i te repo fenua, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i reira, 'ia hunahia tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i mai mua atu i tō'u aro, 'ia 'ore te toto o te mau peropheta 'e te feiā mo'a e pi'i fa'ahou mai iā'u nō te fa'ahapa ia rātou.
- 6 'E inaha, te 'oire ra nō Gilagala 'ua fa'atomohia ia e au, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i roto ra, 'ua hunahia ia e au i raro roa i te mau hōhonura'a o te fenua.
- 7 'Oia ia, 'e te 'oire ra nō Oniha 'e te mau ta'ata i roto ra, 'e te 'oire ra nō Mokuma 'e te mau ta'ata i roto ra, 'e te 'oire ra nō Ierusalemā 'e te mau ta'ata i roto ra ; nā'u i ha'apu'e i te mau pape i ni'a iho ia rātou nō te huna i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i mai mua atu i tō'u nei aro, 'ia 'ore te toto o te mau peropheta 'e tō te feiā mo'a 'ia pi'i fa'ahou mai iā'u nō rātou.
- 8 'E inaha, te 'oire ra nō Gadianedi, 'e te 'oire ra nō Gadiomena, 'e te 'oire ra nō Iakoba, 'e te 'oire ra nō Gimigimino, 'ua fa'atomohia ia rātou ato'a e au, 'e te mau 'āivi 'e te mau peho 'o tā'u ia i tu'u i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e te mau ta'ata i reira, 'o tā'u ia i tanu i raro roa a'e i te fenua, nō te tāpo'i i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i mai mua atu i tō'u nei aro, 'ia 'ore te toto o te mau peropheta 'e tō te feiā mo'a 'ia pi'i fa'ahou mai iā'u nō te fa'ahapa atu ia rātou.

3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimigimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 'E inaha ; taua 'oire rahi ra o Iakobugata, 'o tei pārahia e te feiā nō te ari'i ra o Iakoba, 'ua pau ia iā'u i te auahi, nō tā rātou mau hara 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'o tei hau atu i te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a a tō te ao ato'a nei, nō tā rātou mau taparahira'a huna i te ta'ata 'e nō te mau pupu 'ohipa huna ; 'e nā rātou ho'i i ha'amou i te hau o tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'e te fa'aterera'a hau o te fenua ; nō reira 'ua pau rātou iā'u i te auahi, nō te ha'amou ia rātou mai mua i tō'u nei aro, 'ia 'ore te toto o te mau peropheta 'e te feiā mo'a e pi'i fa'ahou mai iā'u nō te fa'ahapa atu ia rātou.

10 'E inaha, te 'oire ra nō Lamana, 'e te 'oire ra nō Iosa, 'e te 'oire ra nō Gada, 'e te 'oire ra nō Kiskumena, 'ua pau ia iā'u i te auahi 'e te ta'ata ho'i i roto ra, nō tā rātou 'ohipa 'ī'ino i te ti'avarura'a atu i te mau peropheta i rāpae, 'e nō tā rātou pēhira'a atu i te 'ōfa'i i te feiā 'o tā'u i tono atu nō te fa'a'ite atu ia rātou i tā rātou 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.

11 'E nō te mea 'ua ti'avaru atu rātou ia rātou pā'ato'a i rāpae, 'e nō reira 'aita e ta'ata parauti'a fa'ahou i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'ama'iri atu vau i te auahi i raro nō te ha'amou ia rātou, 'ia hunahia tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i mai mua atu i tō'u nei aro, 'ia 'ore te toto o te mau peropheta 'e te feiā mo'a 'o tā'u i tono atu i rotopū ia rātou ra 'ia pi'i fa'ahou mai mai te repo mai iā'u nei nō te fa'ahapa atu ia rātou.

12 'E e rave rahi te mau ha'amoura'a 'o tā'u i ha'ama'iri atu i ni'a iho i teie nei fenua 'e i ni'a iho i teie nei feiā, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.

13 'E 'outou tei fa'ahereherehia mai te pohe mai nō te mea 'ua hau tō 'outou parauti'a i tō rātou, 'aita ānei 'outou e fāriu mai iā'u i teienei, 'e 'ia tātarahapa ho'i i tā 'outou mau hara, 'e 'ia fa'afāriuhia mai, 'ia fa'aorahia 'outou e au ra ?

14 'Oia ia, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia haere mai 'outou iā'u nei ra, e roa'a ia ia 'outou te ora mure 'ore. Inaha, 'ua fa'atorohia atu tō'u nei rima nō te aroha ia 'outou na, 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē haere mai iā'u nei ra, 'o tā'u ia e fāri'i ; 'e e ha'amaita'ihia rātou 'o tē haere mai iā'u nei.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

- 15 Inaha, 'o vau nei 'o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua. Nā'u i hāmani i te mau ra'i 'e te fenua nei, 'e te mau mea ato'a i roto ra. Tei te Metua ra vau i te mātāmua ra. Tei roto vau i te Metua, 'e tei roto te Metua iā'u ; 'e nā roto iā'u nei 'ua fa'ahanahana te Metua i tōna i'oa.
- 16 I haere mai na vau i tō'u ihora mau ta'ata, 'e 'aita tō'u ihora mau ta'ata i fāri'i mai iā'u nei. 'E 'ua tupu te mau parau i roto i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a nō tō'u ra taera'a mai.
- 17 'E 'o rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei fāri'i mai iā'u ra, 'o rātou ia tā'u e hōro'a atu 'ia riro 'ei mau tamari'i tamāroa nā te Atua ; 'e e nā reira ato'a atu vau i te feiā ato'a e ti'aturi i tō'u ra i'oa, inaha ho'i, nā roto iā'u e tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a, 'e nā roto ho'i iā'u nei e fa'ati'ahia ai te ture a Mose ra.
- 18 'O vau te māmaramama 'e te ora o te ao nei. 'O vau te Alepha 'e te Omega, te mātāmeha'i 'e te fa'ahope'a.
- 19 'Eiaha 'outou e pūpū fa'ahou mai iā'u nei i te tusia ha'amani'ira'a toto ; 'oia ia, 'ia fa'a'orehia tā 'outou mau tusia 'e tā 'outou mau ō tāauahi, e 'ore roa ho'i au e fāri'i fa'ahou i tā 'outou mau tusia 'e tā 'outou mau ō tāauahi.
- 20 'E e pūpū mai 'outou iā'u nei i te tusia nō te 'ā'au 'oto 'e te vārua tātarahapa. 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē haere mai iā'u nei ma te 'ā'au 'oto 'e te vārua tātarahapa ra, 'o tā'u ia e bāpetizo i te auahi 'e te Vārua Maita'i mai te mau 'āti Lamana ra 'o tei bāpetizohia i te auahi 'e i te Vārua Maita'i, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o iā'u nei i te tau i fa'afāriuhia mai ai rātou ra, 'aita rā rātou i 'ite i te reira.
- 21 Inaha, 'ua haere mai au i roto i te ao nei nō te 'āfa'i mai i te fa'aorara'a i tō te ao nei, nō te fa'aora i tō te ao nei i tā rātou mau hara.
- 22 Nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē tātarahapa 'e 'o tē haere mai iā'u nei mai te hō'ē tamari'i 'aru'aru ra, 'o 'oia ia tā'u e fāri'i, 'e nōna ho'i te bāsileia o te Atua ra. Inaha, nō rātou 'ua tu'u vau i tō'u nei ora i raro, 'e 'ua rave fa'ahou mai au i te reira ; nō reira 'a tātarahapa, 'e 'a haere mai iā'u e tō te mau hope'a o te fenua nei, 'e 'ia fa'aorahia 'outou.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

3 Nephi 10

- 1 'E i teienei, inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aro'o te mau ta'ata ato'a o te fenua i teie mau parau, 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei 'ite nō te reira. 'E i muri a'e i teie mau paraura'a, 'ua vai te māniana 'ore i ni'a i te fenua nō te ārea e rave rahi hora te maoro.
- 2 Nō te māere rahi ho'i o te mau ta'ata, 'ua fa'aea ihora rātou i te 'oto 'e te 'auē nō te pohe o tō rātou mau fēti'i 'o tei taparahihia ; nō reira 'ua vai noa te māniana 'ore i ni'a i te fenua nō te ārea e rave rahi hora te maoro.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae fa'ahou mai ra te hō'ē reo i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o te mau ta'ata ato'a i te reira, 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei 'ite nō te reira, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 4 E te mau ta'ata nō teie mau 'oire rarahi i ha'amouhia ra, 'oia te mau hua'ai nō Iakoba, 'oia ia, nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, e rave rahi ho'i tō'u ha'aputuputura'a ia 'outou mai te moa e ha'aputupu i tōna mau fanau'a i raro a'e i tōna nā pererau, 'e e rave rahi ho'i tō'u fa'a'amura'a ia 'outou na.
- 5 'E 'oia fa'ahou, e rave rahi tō'u ha'aputuputura'a ia 'outou mai te moa i ha'aputupu i tōna mau fanau'a i raro a'e i tōna nā pererau, 'oia ia, 'e te mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela 'o tei topa ; 'oia ia, 'e te mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela tei pārahi i Ierusalem, 'e 'ia 'outou ato'a 'o tei topa ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi tō'u ha'aputuputura'a ia 'outou mai te moa i ha'aputupu i tōna mau fanau'a, 'e 'aita 'outou i nā reira.
- 6 'O 'outou te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'o tā'u i fa'aherehere, e rave rahi tō'u ha'aputuputura'a ia 'outou mai te moa e ha'aputupu i tōna mau fanau'a i raro a'e i tōna nā pererau, mai te mea e tātarahapa 'outou 'e e fāriu mai iā'u nei ma te 'ā'au hina'aro mau.
- 7 'Ia 'ore rā 'outou e nā reira, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, e fa'aanohia tō 'outou mau vāhi fa'aeara'a, ē tae noa atu i te taime e tupu ai te fafaura'a i fafauhia atu i tō 'outou ra mau metua.
- 8 'E i teienei, i muri iho i tō te mau ta'ata fa'aro'ora'a i taua mau parau ra, inaha, 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou a'era rātou i te 'oto 'e i te 'auē nō te pohe o tō rātou mau fēti'i 'e tō rātou mau hoa.

3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua hope ihora nā mahana e toru. E po'ipo'i a'era, 'ua pe'e 'ē atu ra te pōiri mai ni'a atu i te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'aea te 'āueuera'a o te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'aea te mau mato i te 'āfāfā, 'e 'ua fa'aea te mau autā ri'ari'a, 'e 'ua 'ore te mau haruru rahi roa ra.

10 'E 'ua piri fa'ahou ihora te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'aea noa ihora ; 'e 'ua 'ore a'era te autā, 'e te oto, 'e te 'auē a te feiā i fa'aorahia ra ; 'e 'ua riro a'era tā rātou autāra'a 'ei 'oa'oara'a, 'e tā rātou auēra'a 'ei 'āruera'a 'e 'ei ha'amaita'ira'a ho'i i te Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia, tō rātou Tāra'ehara.

11 Ē tae roa mai i teienei, 'ua tupu iho ā te mau mea i pāpa'ihia i roto i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a 'o tei parauhia e te mau peropheta.

12 'E 'o te tufa'a parauti'a roa o te mau ta'ata tei fa'aorahia, 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tei fāri'i i te mau peropheta 'e 'aore i pēhi ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i ; 'e 'o rātou ho'i 'o tei 'ore i ha'amani'i i te toto o te feiā mo'a tei fa'ahereherehia—

13 'E 'ua fa'ahereherehia rātou 'e 'aita rātou i fa'atomohia 'e i hunahia i raro a'e i te fenua ; 'e 'aita rātou i ha'aparemohia i raro i te hōhonura'a o te miti ; 'e 'aita rātou i pa'apa'a i te auahi, 'e 'aita ato'a rātou i ha'aperehuhia ē pohe roa atu ; 'e 'aita ato'a i 'āfa'ihia atu e te pūāhiohio ; 'e 'aita ato'a ho'i rātou i pohe i te māhu au auahi 'e te pōiri.

14 'E i teienei, 'o 'oia 'o tē tai'o i teie nei parau, 'ia māmarama ia 'oia ; 'o 'oia tei iāna te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, 'ia 'imi ia 'oia i te reira, 'ia 'ite 'e 'ia hi'o i taua mau pohe nei, 'e te mau pau i te auahi, 'e i te au auahi, 'e i te mau vero, 'e i te mau pūāhiohio, 'e i te 'āfāfāra'a o te fenua nō te fāri'i ia rātou, 'e taua mau mea ato'a ra, e 'ere ānei ia nō te fa'atupu-mau-ra'a i te mau parau tohu a te mau peropheta mo'a e rave rahi.

15 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na : 'Oia roa ia, e rave rahi tei fa'a'ite pāpū mai i teie mau mea nō te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'e 'ua taparahihia rātou nō tō rātou fa'a'ite-pāpū-ra'a mai i teie mau mea.

16 'Oia mau, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai te peropheta Zenosa i teie mau mea, 'e 'ua parau ato'a mai Zenoke nō ni'a i teie mau mea, nā rāua ho'i i fa'a'ite pāpū mai i te parau nō ni'a ia tātou, 'oia ho'i te hō'ē toe'a nō tō rāua hua'ai.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

17 Inaha, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū ato'a tō tātou metua tāne o Iakoba i te parau nō te hō'ē toe'a o te hua'ai o Iosepha. 'E inaha, e 'ere ānei tātou i te hō'ē toe'a nō te hua'ai o Iosepha ? 'E teie mau mea 'o tei fa'a'ite pāpū mai i te parau nō ni'a ia tātou nei, 'aita ānei te reira i pāpa'ihia i ni'a iho i te mau 'api veo i hōpoiha mai e tō tātou metua tāne ra o Lehi mai Ierusalemā mai ?

18 'E i muri a'era, i te hope'a nō te toru 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti, inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou e te mau ta'ata o Nephi 'o tei fa'ahereherehia, 'e 'ia rātou ato'a 'o tei parauhia e mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'o tei fa'ahereherehia, 'ua ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia ia rātou, 'e 'ua nini'ihia mai te mau mea maitata'i i ni'a iho i tō rātou upo'o, 'e nō reira ho'i, i muri noa iho i tō te Mesia haerera'a i ni'a i te ra'i, 'ua fa'a'ite mau 'oia iāna iho ia rātou—

19 'Ua fa'a'ite mai 'oia i tōna tino ia rātou, 'e 'ua tāvini 'oia ia rātou ; 'e e pāpa'ihia te 'ā'amu nō tāna ra tāvinira'a ia rātou i muri nei. Nō reira tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u mau parau i teie nei taime.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, inso-much that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

'Ua fa'a'ite atu Iesu Mesia iāna ibo i te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'a ha'aputupu'āmui mai ai te mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune, 'e 'a tāvini ai 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua nā reira ho'i 'oia i te fa'a'ite atu iāna ibo ia rātou.

3 Nephi 11

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui mai ra te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, nō te mau ta'ata o Nephi, ē 'ati noa a'e te hiero i te fenua ra nō 'Auhune; 'e tē māere ra 'e tē 'ūmere ra ho'i rātou iho, 'e tē fa'a'ite ra te tahi i te tahi i te fa'ahuru-'ē-ra'a rahi 'e te māere i tupu.
- 2 'E tē paraparau ato'a ra rātou nō ni'a i teie Iesu Mesia, nōna te tāpa'o i fa'a'itehia mai nō ni'a i tōna pohera'a.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'a paraparau noa ai rātou te tahi i te tahi, 'ua fa'aro'o a'era rātou i te hō'ē reo mai te mea ra ē, nō roto mai i te ra'i; 'e 'ua nānā atu ra rātou i tō rātou mata ē 'ati noa a'era, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i 'ite pāpū i te reo tā rātou i fa'aro'o; 'e 'ere ho'i te reira i te reo māniana; 'e 'ere ho'i i te reo pūai; 'āre'a rā, 'e noa atu ā e reo iti ha'iha'i te reira, 'ua ha'aputa roa te reira i te 'ā'au o te feiā i fa'aro'o, 'e nō reira ho'i, 'aita roa te hō'ē tufa'a nō tō rātou tino 'o tei 'ore i rurutaina; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'aputa roa te reira ia rātou i roto roa i te vārua, 'e 'ua fa'atupu te reira i te 'ahu i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aro'o fa'ahou a'era rātou i te reo, 'e 'aita rā rātou i 'ite i tōna aura'a.
- 5 'E 'ua fa'aro'o fa'ahou a'era i te reo i te toru o te taime, 'e 'ua ha'amahora ihora rātou i tō rātou tari'a nō te fa'aro'o i te reira; 'e 'ua hi'o atu ra tō rātou mata i te vāhi nō reira mai te haruru o te reo; 'e 'ua hi'o māite atu rātou i ni'a i te ra'i, i te vāhi nō reira mai te haruru o te reo.
- 6 'E inaha, i te toru o te taime 'ua ta'a atu ra rātou i te reo 'o tā rātou i fa'aro'o na; 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te reira ia rātou:
- 7 'A hi'o na i tā'u Tamaiti here, 'ua māuruuru roa vau iāna, 'e 'ua fa'ahanahana ho'i au i tō'u i'oa iāna—'a fa'aro'o mai iāna.

Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.

3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'a ti'a noa ai rātou ra 'ua nānā fa'ahou atu ra rātou i tō rātou mata i ni'a i te ra'i ; 'e inaha, 'ua 'ite atu ra rātou i te hō'ē ta'ata i te poura'ā mai, mai te ra'i mai ra ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ahuhia 'oia i te hō'ē 'ahu teatea ; 'e 'ua pou mai ra 'oia 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua fāriu atu ra te mata o te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a iāna, 'e 'aita roa ho'i i ti'a ia rātou 'ia hāmama noa atu i tō rātou vaha nō te parau atu i te tahi 'e i te tahi, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i 'ite i te aura'a, nō te mea 'ua mana'o ho'i rātou ē, 'ua fā mai te hō'ē melahi ia rātou.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tōna rima, 'e 'ua parau atu ra i te mau ta'ata, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

10 Inaha, 'o vau nei 'o Iesu Mesia, 'o tā te mau peropheta i fa'a'ite mai e tae mai i te ao nei.

11 'E inaha, 'o vau nei te māmarama 'e te ora o teie nei ao ; 'e 'ua oti tā'u inura'a i tō roto i te 'āu'a 'ava'ava i hōro'ahia mai e te Metua iā'u ra, 'e 'ua fa'ahanahana ho'i au i te Metua nā roto i te ravera'a i te mau hara a tō te ao nei i ni'a iho iā'u, 'e nā roto i te reira 'ua rave māite au i tō te Metua hina'aro i roto i te mau mea ato'a mai te mātāmua mai ā.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua ma'iri ihora te mau ta'ata ato'a i raro i te repo ; 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ihora rātou ē, 'ua tohu-'ē-hia na i rotopū ia rātou ē, e fa'a'ite mai te Mesia iāna iho ia rātou i muri iho i tōna haerera'a atu i ni'a i te ra'i.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē :

14 'A ti'a mai i ni'a, 'e 'a haere mai iā'u nei, 'ia tu'u mai i tō 'outou rima i tō'u nei 'ao'ao, 'e 'ia fāfā ato'a mai 'outou i te mau puta naero i tō'u nei nā rima 'e i tō'u nei nā 'āvae, 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, 'o vau nei te Atua nō 'Īserā'ela, 'e te Atua nō tō te ao ato'a nei, 'e i taparahihia na vau nō te mau hara a tō te ao nei.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra i tō rātou rima i tōna 'ao'ao, 'e 'ua fāfā atu ra i te mau puta naero i tōna nā rima 'e i tōna nā 'āvae ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou, ma te haere tāta'itahi atu ē hope roa a'e rātou pā'āto'a, 'e 'ua 'ite atu tō rātou mata 'e 'ua fāfā atu tō rātou rima, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū roa rātou 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū ho'i ē, 'o 'oia mau te reira, 'o tā te mau peropheta i pāpa'i ē, e haere mai.

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

16 'E 'ia hope a'era rātou pā'āto'a i te haere atu 'e te 'ite mata atu i te reira, 'ua pi'i a'era rātou ma te 'ā'au hō'ē, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

17 Hosana ! 'Ia ha'amaita'ihia te i'oa o te Atua Teitei Roa ! 'E 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i te pae 'āvae o Iesu, 'e 'ua ha'amori atu ra iāna.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia Nephi (tei rotopū ho'i Nephi i te mau ta'ata) 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'ia ha'afātata mai.

19 'E 'ua ti'a a'era Nephi i ni'a 'e 'ua haere mai ra, 'e 'ua pi'o ihora i mua i te Fatu 'e 'ua 'āpā ihora i tōna nā 'āvae.

20 'E 'ua fa'aue atu ra te Fatu iāna 'ia ti'a mai i ni'a. 'E 'ua ti'a a'era 'oia i ni'a 'e 'ua ti'a noa ihora i mua iāna.

21 'E 'ua parau atu ra te Fatu iāna : Tē hōro'a atu nei au i te mana ia 'oe, 'ia ti'a ia 'oe 'ia bāpetizo i teie nei feiā 'ia haere fa'ahou atu vau i ni'a i te ra'i.

22 'E 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra te Fatu ia vetahi 'ē mau ta'ata, e hō'ē ā 'ia tāna parau ia rātou ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ra i te mana ia rātou 'ia bāpetizo. 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : E mai teie ia te huru 'ia bāpetizo 'outou ; 'e 'eialha roa ho'i te mau mārōra'a 'ia vai i rotopū ia 'outou.

23 'Oia mau roa tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o 'oia 'o tē tātarahapa i tāna ra mau hara nā roto i tā 'outou mau parau, 'e 'o tē hina'aro 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa, e mai teie ia te huru 'ia bāpetizo 'outou ia rātou—Inaha, e haere atu 'outou i raro i te pape 'a ti'a noa ai, 'e nā roto i tō'u ra i'oa e bāpetizo ai 'outou ia rātou.

24 'E i teienei, inaha, teie te mau parau tā 'outou e parau, i muri iho i te fa'ahitira'a i tō rātou i'oa, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

25 Nō te mana i tu'uhia mai iā'u e Iesu Mesia, tē bāpetizo nei au ia 'oe nā te i'oa o te Metua, 'e nō te Tamaiti, 'e nō te Vārua Maita'i. 'Āmene.

26 'E i reira 'outou e utuhi ai iāna i raro i te pape, 'e 'a haere fa'ahou mai ai i rāpae i te pape.

27 'E nā reira 'outou i te bāpetizo i roto i tō'u ra i'oa ; 'e inaha, 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o te Metua, 'e te Tamaiti, 'e te Vārua Maita'i, 'ua hō'ē ia rātou ; 'e tei roto vau i te Metua, 'e tei roto te Metua iā'u, 'e te Metua 'e 'o vau nei 'ua hō'ē ia.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them— Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

- 28 'E e bāpetizo 'outou mai te au i tā'u i fa'aue atu ia 'outou na. 'E 'eiaha roa te mau mārōra'a 'ia vai i rotopū ia 'outou na, mai tei tupu a'enei ; 'eiaha ato'a te mau mārōra'a 'ia vai i rotopū ia 'outou na nō ni'a i te mau tufa'a nō tā'u mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, mai tei tupu a'enei.
- 29 Nō te mea 'oia mau, 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o 'oia tei roto iāna te vārua nō te mārō ra, e 'ere ia 'oia i tā'u, nō te diabolo rā, 'oia te metua nō te mārō, 'e 'ua fa'ati'arepu 'oia i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata 'ia mārō ma te riri i te tahi 'e i te tahi.
- 30 Inaha, e 'ere teie i tā'u nei mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, te fa'ati'arepura'a i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata 'ia riri i te tahi 'e i te tahi ; teie rā tā'u mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, 'ia fa'aru'e-ē-hia atu taua mau mea ra.
- 31 Inaha, 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i tā'u mau ha'api'ira'a tumu.
- 32 'E 'o teie tā'u mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, 'e 'o te mau ha'api'ira'a tumu ia tā te Metua i hōro'a mai iā'u ; 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei au nō ni'a i te Metua, 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei te Metua nō ni'a iā'u, 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei te Vārua Maita'i nō ni'a i te Metua 'e iā'u nei ; 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei au ē, tē fa'aue ra te Metua i te mau ta'ata ato'a, i te mau vāhi ato'a, 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia ti'aturi mai iā'u.
- 33 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi mai iā'u ra 'e 'o te bāpetizohia ra, e fa'aorahia ia 'oia ; 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie 'o tē fāri'i i te bāsileia o te Atua ra.
- 34 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi mai iā'u ra, 'e 'o tē 'ore e bāpetizohia ra, e fa'ahapahia ia.
- 35 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o teie tā'u mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, 'e tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei au ē nō 'ō mai te reira i te Metua ra ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi mai iā'u ra, e ti'aturi ato'a ia 'oia i te Metua, 'e nā te Metua e fa'a'ite pāpū atu iāna nō ni'a iā'u ; 'e e hō mai ho'i 'oia i te auahi 'e te Vārua Maita'i iāna.
- 36 'E nā reira te Metua i te fa'a'ite pāpū atu nō ni'a iā'u, 'e e fa'a'ite pāpū atu ho'i te Vārua Maita'i iāna nō ni'a i te Metua 'e iā'u ato'a nei ; 'e te Metua, 'e 'o Vau, 'e te Vārua Maita'i ra, 'ua hō'ē ia.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

- 37 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia tātarahapa 'outou, 'e 'ia riro 'outou mai te hō'ē tamari'i ri'i, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia 'ore ra, e'ita roa ia 'outou e fāri'i i teie mau mea.
- 38 'E tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia tātarahapa 'outou, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa e ti'a ai, 'e 'ia riro mai te hō'ē tamari'i ri'i e ti'a ai ; 'e 'ia 'ore ra, e 'ore roa ia 'outou e fāri'i i te bāsileia o te Atua ra.
- 39 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o teie tā'u mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, 'e 'o rātou 'o tē patu ia rātou i ni'a iho i te reira ra, tē patu ra ia i ni'a iho i tā'u nei papa, 'e e 'ore roa rātou e noa'a i te mau 'ūputa o hade ra.
- 40 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'arahi 'e 'aore rā 'o tē fa'aiti i te reira, 'e 'o tē fa'ariro ho'i i te reira 'ei mau ha'api'ira'a tumu nā'u ra, nō roto mai ia te reira i te 'ino, 'e 'aore ho'i i patuhia i ni'a iho i tā'u ra papa, 'ua patu rā 'oia i te reira i ni'a iho i te niu one, 'e te vai-'iriti-noa-hia ra te mau 'ūputa o hade nō te fāri'i mai iāna, 'ia tae mai te mau pape pu'e 'e 'ia farara mai te mau mata'i i ni'a iho ia rātou.
- 41 Nō reira, 'a haere atu 'outou i teie feiā nei, 'e 'a fa'a'ite atu i te mau parau tā'u i parau a'enei, ē tae noa atu i te mau hope'a o te fenua.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

3 Nephi 12

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau ia Nephi, 'e 'ia rātou 'o tei pi'ihia, ('e te rahira'a ta'ata i pi'ihia 'e tei fāri'i i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a 'ia bāpetizo i te ta'ata, hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti ia) 'e inaha, 'ua fa'atoro atu ra 'oia i tōna rima i nī'a i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua parau atu ra ia rātou ma te reo pūai, i te nā-ō-ra'a atu ē : E ao tō 'outou mai te mea e ha'apa'o 'outou i te mau parau a teie nei tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'o tā'u i mā'iti mai rotopū mai ia 'outou nō te tāvini ia 'outou, 'e 'ia riro 'ei mau tāvini nō 'outou ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu vau i te mana ia rātou 'ia bāpetizo ia 'outou i te pape ; 'e 'ia oti 'outou i te bāpetizohia i te pape, inaha, nā'u ia 'outou e bāpetizo i te auahi 'e i te Vārua Maita'i ; nō reira e ao tō 'outou mai te mea e ti'aturi 'outou iā'u 'e 'ia bāpetizohia, i muri iho i tō 'outou hi'ora'a mai iā'u nei 'e te 'itera'a ho'i ē, tē vai mau nei au.
- 2 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e maita'i atu ā tō rātou 'o tē ti'aturi mai i tā 'outou mau parau 'a fa'a'ite pāpū atu ai 'outou ē, 'ua 'ite mata 'outou iā'u, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'outou ē, tē vai mau nei au. 'Oia ia, e ao tō rātou 'o tē ti'aturi i tā 'outou mau parau, 'e 'o tē fa'aha'eha'a roa ia rātou 'e 'o tē bāpetizohia, nō te mea e fa'a'ihia rātou i te auahi 'e i te Vārua Maita'i, 'e e fāri'i i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā rātou ra mau hara.
- 3 'Oia ia, e ao tō tei ha'eha'a te 'ā'au 'o tē haere mai iā'u nei, nō rātou ho'i te bāsileia o te ao ra.
- 4 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e ao tō tei 'oto, e tāmāhanahanahia ho'i rātou.
- 5 E ao tō tei marū, e riro ho'i ia rātou te fenua.
- 6 E ao tō tei hia'ai 'e tō tei poiā i te parauti'a, e fa'a'ihia ho'i rātou i te Vārua Maita'i.
- 7 E ao tō tei aroha ia vetahi 'ē ra ; e aroha-ato'a-hia mai rātou.
- 8 E ao tō tei mā te 'ā'au, e 'ite ho'i rātou i te Atua.
- 9 E ao tō tei fa'atupu i te parau hau ra, e parauhia rātou 'ei mau tamari'i nā te Atua.
- 10 E ao tō tei hāmani-'ino-hia nō tō'u ra i'oa, nō rātou ho'i te bāsileia o te ao ra.

3 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

- 11 E ao tō 'outou 'ia fa'a'ino mai, 'e 'ia hāmani 'ino mai, 'e 'ia pari ha'avare noa mai te ta'ata ia 'outou i te mau 'ino ato'a nō'u nei.
- 12 E 'oa'oa rahi ho'i 'outou, 'e e pōpou rahi ho'i 'outou ; e utu'a maita'i rahi ho'i tā 'outou i te ao ra ; i nā reira ho'i rātou i te hāmani 'ino i te mau peropheta nā mua ia 'outou.
- 13 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tē fa'ariro nei au ia 'outou 'ei miti nō te fenua nei ; 'āre'a 'ia mā'aro te miti ra, e aha ia te mea e tāmīthia ai te fenua nei ? 'Ua riro ia te miti i taua taime ra 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore, e fa'aru'ehia ia, 'e e ta'ata'ahihia ia e te 'āvae ta'ata.
- 14 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tē fa'ariro nei au ia 'outou 'ei māmarama nō teie nei feiā. Te hō'ē 'oire i fa'ati'ahia i ni'a i te 'āivi ra, e'ita ia e mo'e.
- 15 Inaha, e tūtu'i ānei te ta'ata nei i te lamepa 'a tu'u atu ai i raro a'e i te fāri'i ? 'Aita roa, i ni'a rā i te vaira'a, 'ia māmarama tō te fare pā'āto'a.
- 16 Nō reira, 'a vaiiho i tō 'outou māmarama 'ia 'ana'ana i mua i teie nei mau ta'ata, 'ia 'ite mai rātou i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa maita'i 'e 'ia fa'ahanahana atu i tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra.
- 17 'Eiaha e mana'o ē 'ua haere mai au nō te fa'a'ore i te ture 'e te mau peropheta. 'Aore au i haere mai nō te fa'a'ore, nō te fa'ati'a rā.
- 18 Nō te mea 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, te hō'ē iota 'e te hō'ē vāhi iti o te ture nei, 'aita ia i mou, 'ua hope roa rā i te tupu iā'u nei.
- 19 'E inaha, 'ua hōro'a atu vau i te ture 'e te mau fa'auera'a a tō'u Metua ia 'outou na, 'ia ti'aturi mai 'outou iā'u nei, 'e 'ia tātarahapa ho'i 'outou i tā 'outou mau hara, 'e 'ia haere mai ho'i iā'u nei ma te 'ā'au 'oto 'e te vārua tātarahapa. Inaha, tei mua te mau fa'auera'a ia 'outou na, 'e 'ua fa'ati'ahia te ture.
- 20 Nō reira, 'a haere mai 'outou iā'u nei, 'e 'ia fa'aorahia 'outou ; nō te mea 'oia mau tē parau atu nei ho'i au ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ore 'outou e ha'apa'o i tā'u ra mau fa'auera'a, 'o tā'u i fa'aue atu ia 'outou i teie taime, e 'ore roa 'outou e o i te bāsileia o te ao ra.

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

- 21 'Ua fa'aro'o ho'i 'outou ē i parauhia mai na e te feiā i tahito ra, 'e 'ua pāpa'i-ato'a-hia ho'i i mua ia 'outou ē, 'eiaha 'oe e taparahi i te ta'ata, 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē taparahi i te ta'ata ra, e au ia iāna te ha'avāra'a a te Atua.
- 22 'Āre'a rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, te ta'ata e riri noa atu i tōna ra taea'e, e au ato'a ia iāna tāna ra ha'avāra'a. 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē parau atu i tōna taea'e ē, e Raka, e au ia iāna te ha'avāra'a a te 'āpo'ora'a ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē parau atu ē, e ma'ama'a 'oe, e au ia iāna te auahi nō hade.
- 23 Nō reira, mai te mea e haere mai 'oe iā'u nei, 'e 'aore rā e hina'aro 'oe i te haere mai iā'u nei, 'e 'ua ha'amana'o ihora 'oe i reira ē e hara tā tō 'oe taea'e ia 'oe na—
- 24 'A haere atu i tō 'oe taea'e 'e 'a fa'a'āfaro nā mua ia 'oe 'e tō 'oe taea'e, 'e i muri iho 'a haere mai ai iā'u nei ma te 'ā'au hina'aro mau, 'e i reira vau e fāri'i ai ia 'oe.
- 25 'A fa'aau 'oi'oi i te parau i tō 'oe 'enemi 'a au ai 'oia ia 'oe na, 'o te roa'a ho'i 'oe iāna, 'e hurihia atu ra 'oe i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a.
- 26 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, 'eiaha roa 'oe e haere mai i rāpae i taua vāhi ra ē tae roa atu 'ua pe'e ia 'oe te senine tā'āto'a. 'E 'a tāpe'ahia ai 'oe i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'ua ti'a ānei ia 'oe 'ia 'aufau i te hō'ē a'e senine ? 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe na, 'Aita roa.
- 27 Inaha, i pāpa'ihia na e te feiā i tahito ra ē, 'eiaha 'oe e fa'aturi.
- 28 'Āre'a rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o 'oia 'o tē hi'o noa atu i te hō'ē vahine ma te fa'atupu i te hina'aro vi'ivi'i iāna ra, 'ua fa'aturi ia i roto i tōna ihora 'ā'au.
- 29 Inaha, tē hōro'a atu nei au i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ia 'outou na, 'eiaha roa 'outou e fa'ati'a i te hō'ē o teie mau mea 'ia ō mai i roto i tō 'outou nā 'ā'au.
- 30 'E mea maita'i a'e ho'i 'ia ha'apae 'outou i teie mau mea, 'e 'ia nā reira 'outou ra, tē rave ra ia 'outou i tō 'outou sātauro, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia hurihia atu i roto ia hade.
- 31 I pāpa'ihia na ho'i ē, 'o 'oia 'o tē ha'apae i tāna vahine, 'ia hōro'a atu 'oia i te parau pāpa'ihia nō te fa'ata'a-ē-ra'a iāna ra e ti'a ai.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorce-ment.

32 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o 'oia 'o tē ha'apae i tāna vahine e 'ere i tō te poreneia, 'ua fa'ariro ia 'oia iāna 'ei vahine fa'aturi ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'aipoipo i taua vahine ra i fa'ata'a-ē-hia 'ua fa'aturi ato'a ia.

33 'E i pāpa'i-fa'ahou-hia na ho'i ē, 'eiaha roa 'oe e tapu ha'avare, e fa'atupu rā 'oe i tā 'oe mau tapura'a i te Fatu ra.

34 'Āre'a rā 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'eiaha roa e tapu ; 'eiaha i mua i te ra'i ra, 'o tō te Atua ia terōno.

35 'Eiaha ato'a i te fenua, 'o tōna ia ta'ahira'a 'āvae.

36 'Eiaha ato'a 'oe e tapu i tō 'oe iho upo'o, nō te mea e'ita e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia fa'a'ereere 'e 'aore rā ia fa'ateatea i te hō'ē io rouru.

37 'Ia riro rā tā 'outou parau nō te 'oia 'ei 'oia, 'e te 'aita roa 'ei 'aita roa ; 'e 'ia hau atu ā te mau parau ra, nō roto ia i te 'ino.

38 'E inaha, i pāpa'ihia na ho'i ē, e mata ra, 'ei mata ia te utu'a, e niho ra, 'ei niho ia te utu'a.

39 'Āre'a rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'eiaha 'outou e tāho'o i te 'ino nō te 'ino, 'āre'a rā 'ia tūpa'i mai te hō'ē ta'ata i tō 'oe pāpāri'a 'atau, 'a fāriu ato'a atu i te tahi.

40 'E 'ia horo te hō'ē ta'ata ia 'oe i te ture 'e 'a rave atu ai i tō 'oe 'ahu 'ō'omo ra, 'a tu'u ato'a atu i tō 'oe perēue.

41 'E 'ia fa'aue mai te hō'ē ta'ata ia 'oe 'ia haere nō te hō'ē maile, 'a haere ato'a 'ōrua 'e 'ia piti noa atu.

42 'A hōro'a atu iāna 'o tei ani mai ia 'oe ra, 'e iāna 'o tei tīpe'e mai ia 'oe ra 'eiaha roa ia 'oe e fāriu 'ē atu.

43 'E inaha, i pāpa'i-ato'a-hia na ho'i ē, e here atu 'oe i tō 'oe ta'ata tupu, 'e e riri atu i tō 'oe 'enemi.

44 Inaha rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'a here atu i tō 'outou mau 'enemi ; 'a ha'amaita'i atu ia rātou 'o tei tuhi mai ia 'outou, 'a hāmani maita'i atu ia rātou 'o tei riri mai ia 'outou, 'e 'a pure atu nō rātou 'o tei parau 'ino mai 'e 'o tei hāmani 'ino mai ia 'outou.

45 'Ia riro 'outou 'ei mau tamari'i nā tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra ; tē fa'ahiti mai nei ho'i 'oia i tāna mahana i ni'a i te 'ino 'e te maita'i.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

46 Nō reira, taua mau mea ra i parauhia mai e te feiā tahito ra, 'o tei vai na i raro a'e i te ture, 'ua fa'ati'ahia ia.

47 'Ua fa'a'orehia te mau mea tahito ra, 'e 'ua riro te mau mea ato'a 'ei mea 'āpī.

48 Nō reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia maita'i roa 'outou mai iā'u nei 'e tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra e maita'i roa ra.

Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

Old things are done away, and all things have become new.

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

3 Nephi 13

- 1 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au, 'ua hina'aro vau 'ia hōro'a 'outou i te mau tao'a aroha nā te feiā veve ; 'a ara rā 'o te hōro'a 'outou i tā 'outou mau tao'a aroha i mua i te ta'ata, 'ia hi'ohia mai e rātou ; 'e 'ia nā reira 'outou ra, 'aore roa ia tā 'outou e utu'a maita'i nō 'ō mai i tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra.
- 2 Nō reira, 'ia hōro'a 'oe i tā 'oe tao'a aroha, 'eiaha e fa'a'oto i te pū i mua ia 'oe, mai tā te feiā ha'avare i nā reira i roto i te mau sunago 'e i roto i te mau aroā, 'ia ha'amaita'ihia rātou e te ta'ata nei. 'Oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua noa'a ia tā rātou utu'a.
- 3 'Āre'a rā, 'ia hōro'a 'oe i tā 'oe tao'a aroha, 'eiaha tō rima 'aui 'ia 'ite i tā tō rima 'atau e rave ra.
- 4 'Ia ravehia tā 'oe mau hōro'ara'a tao'a aroha nā roto i te mo'emo'e ; 'e nā tō Metua iho 'o tei 'ite mai i te reira nā roto i te mo'emo'e, e hōro'a fa'a'ite mai i tā 'oe utu'a.
- 5 'E 'ia pure 'oe ra, 'eiaha 'oe e rave mai tā te feiā ha'avare ra, e mea au ho'i nā rātou 'ia pure, ma te ti'a noa i roto i te mau sunago 'e i roto i te mau poro aroā ra, 'ia hi'ohia mai rātou 'e te mau ta'ata. 'Oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua noa'a ia tā rātou utu'a.
- 6 'Āre'a rā 'ia pure 'oe ra, 'a haere atu i roto i tō 'oe piha, 'e 'a 'ōpani māite i tō 'oe 'ōpani 'a pure atu ai i tō 'oe Metua i roto i te vāhi mo'emo'e ; 'e nā tō 'oe Metua 'o tē 'ite mai ra nā roto i te vāhi mo'emo'e e hōro'a fa'a'ite mai i tā 'oe utu'a.
- 7 'E 'ia pure 'outou ra, 'eiaha e fa'ahiti pinepine noa i te mau parau ri'i faufa'a 'ore, mai tā te feiā 'ētene ra ; 'o tei mana'o ē, e fa'aro'ohia mai rātou nā roto i te rahi o tā rātou mau parau.
- 8 'Eiaha roa 'outou 'ia riro mai ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i tō 'outou Metua i te mau mea e au ia 'outou, hou 'outou i ani atu ai iāna.
- 9 E nā 'o 'outou 'ia pure : E tō mātou Metua i te ao ra, 'ia ra'a tō 'oe i'oa.
- 10 'Ia ha'apa'ohia tō 'oe hina'aro i te fenua nei, mai tei te ao ato'a na.
- 11 E fa'a'ore mai i tā mātou hara, mai ia mātou ato'a e fa'a'ore i tei hara ia mātou nei.
- 12 'E 'eiaha e fa'aru'e ia mātou 'ia ro'o-noa-hia e te ati, e fa'aora rā ia mātou i te 'ino.

3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

13 Nō 'oe ho'i te hau, 'e te mana, 'e te hanahana, ē a muri noa atu. 'Āmene.

14 'E 'ia fa'a'ore ho'i 'outou i tā te mau ta'ata ra mau hapa, e fa'a'ore ato'a mai tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra i tā 'outou.

15 'Ia 'ore rā 'outou 'ia fa'a'ore i tā te mau ta'ata ra mau hapa, e 'ore ato'a tō 'outou Metua e fa'a'ore i tā 'outou mau hapa.

16 'Oia fa'ahou, 'ia ha'apae 'outou i te mā'a, 'eiaha mai tā te feiā ha'avare, e fa'arumaruma ra i te mata, 'e tei fa'ahuru 'ē i tō rātou mata 'ia 'ite te ta'ata ē tē ha'apae ra rātou i te mā'a. 'Oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua noa'a ia tā rātou utu'a.

17 'Āre'a rā 'ia ha'apae 'oe i te mā'a, 'a tāhinu i tō 'oe upo'o, 'e 'a horoi i tō 'oe mata.

18 'Ia 'ore tā 'oe ha'apaera'a mā'a 'ia 'itea e te ta'ata, e tō Metua rā i te vāhi mo'emo'e ; e nā tō Metua 'o tē 'ite mai ra nā te vāhi mo'emo'e e hōro'a fa'a'iete mai i tā 'oe utu'a.

19 'Eiaha e ha'apu'e noa i te tao'a nā 'outou i teie nei ao, i te vāhi e pau ai i te huhu 'e te pē, i te vāhi e tomohia ai 'e e 'eiāhia ai e te feiā 'eiā.

20 'A ha'apu'e rā i te tao'a nā 'outou i ni'a i te ra'i, i te vāhi e 'ore ai e pau i te huhu 'e te pē, e 'ore ho'i te feiā 'eiā e tomo i reira 'a 'eiā ai.

21 Te vāhi ho'i tei reira tā 'outou tao'a ra, tei reira ato'a ia tō 'outou 'ā'au.

22 Te māmarama o te tino ra 'o te mata ia ; nō reira, 'ia maita'i tō 'oe mata ra, e 'ī ia tō 'oe tino tā'āto'a i te māmarama.

23 'Āre'a rā 'ia vi'ivi'i tō 'oe mata ra, e 'ī ia tō 'oe tino tā'āto'a i te pōiri. Nō reira, 'ia riro taua māmarama ra i roto ia 'oe 'ei pōiri, e aha ia te rahi o taua pōiri ra !

24 'Aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia tāvini e piti fatu ; e riro 'oia i te au 'ore atu i te hō'ē 'e i te hina'aro atu i te tahi, 'e 'aore rā i te au atu i te hō'ē 'e i te fa'aru'e atu i te tahi. 'Aita roa ho'i e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tāvini i te Atua 'e ia Mamona.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

25 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i taua mau parau nei, 'ua hi'o atu ra 'oia i te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti i mā'itihia e ana ra, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou : 'A ha'amana'o i te mau parau tā'u i parau iho nei. Inaha ho'i, 'o 'outou nei tei mā'itihia e au 'ia tāvini i teie nei feiā. Nō reira tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'eiaha e tapitapi tō 'outou mana'o nō ni'a i tō 'outou orara'a, i tā 'outou e 'amu, 'e 'aore rā i tā 'outou e inu ; 'eiaha ato'a nō ni'a i tō 'outou tino, i te 'ahu 'o tā 'outou e 'ō'omo. E 'ere ānei 'ua hau atu te ora i te mā'a, 'e te tino i te 'ahu ?

26 'A hi'o na i te mau manu o te reva ; 'aore rātou e ueue, 'aore ho'i rātou e 'ō'oti, e 'aore ho'i a rātou fare ha'apu'era'a mā'a ; terā rā nā tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra i fa'a'amu ia rātou. 'aore ānei ia 'outou i fāna'o rahi atu ā ia rātou ?

27 'O vai ho'i tō 'outou e mana'o ra e ti'a iāna 'ia fa'aroa atu i tōna tino 'ia hō'ē a'e kubiti fa'ahou ?

28 'E nō te aha ho'i tō 'outou mana'o i tapitapi ai i te 'ahu ? 'A feruri na i te mau lili o te 'āua e mea nāhea tō rātou tupura'a ; 'aore ho'i rātou e 'ohipa ra, 'e 'aore ho'i rātou e nino ra.

29 'E terā rā tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mai ia Solomona, i roto i tōna hanahana tā'āto'a, 'aita roa ia tōna 'ahu i au i te nehenehe i tō te hō'ē o rātou nei.

30 Nō reira, mai te mea e nā reira te Atua i te fa'a'ahu i te matie o te 'āua, 'o tē vai nei i teie mahana, e ananahi ra 'a hurihia atu ai i roto i te umu, 'oia ato'a e nā reira 'oia i te fa'a'ahu ia 'outou, mai te mea e 'ere tō 'outou i te fa'aro'o iti.

31 Nō reira 'eiaha e tapitapi tō 'outou mana'o, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E aha tā mātou e 'amu ? 'e 'aore rā, E aha tā mātou e inu ? 'e 'aore rā, E aha tō mātou 'ahu 'ia 'ahu ?

32 'Ua 'ite ho'i tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra ē, 'ua ti'a roa 'ia noa'a teie mau mea ato'a ia 'outou.

33 'A 'imi na rā 'outou nā mua roa i te bāsileia o te Atua 'e te parauti'a nāna ; 'e e 'āmuihia mai teie mau mea ato'a ia 'outou na.

34 Nō reira 'eiaha e tapitapi tō 'outou mana'o i tō ananahi ra, nā ananahi ho'i e feruri i te mau mea nōna iho. 'Ua nava'i tō te hō'ē mahana iho fifi i te ha'ape'ape'a atu ā i te mea e tupu a muri iho.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

3 Nephi 14

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Iesu i te parau atu i teie mau parau, 'ua fāriu fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra tōna vaha ia rātou, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'eiaha e ha'avā atu, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ha'avāhia mai.
- 2 Nō te mea te ha'avāra'a tā 'outou e ha'avā atu ra, e ha'avāhia mai ia 'outou ; 'e te fāito tā 'outou e fāito atu ra, e fāito-ato'a-hia mai ia ia 'outou na.
- 3 'E nō te aha ho'i 'oe i hi'o ai i te pāpā'a iti i roto i te mata o tō 'oe ra taea'e, e 'aore ho'i 'oe i 'ite i te rā'au rahi i roto i tō 'oe iho mata ?
- 4 E nāhea ho'i e ti'a ai ia 'oe 'ia parau atu i tō taea'e : Hō mai nā'u e 'iriti i te pāpā'a i roto i tō mata na—e inaha, e rā'au rahi ho'i tei roto i tō 'oe iho mata ?
- 5 E tena nā mau ta'ata ha'avare ē, 'a 'iriti nā 'oe nā mua i te rā'au rahi i roto i tō 'oe iho mata ; 'ei reira 'oe e 'ite maita'i ai 'ia 'iriti i te pāpā'a iti i roto i te mata o tō taea'e.
- 6 'Eiaha te mea mo'a 'ia hōro'ahia atu nā te mau 'ūrī, 'eiaha ato'a tā 'outou mau poe 'ia paruhia atu nā te pua'a, 'e 'ia ta'ata'ahihia i raro a'e i tō rātou 'āvae, 'e 'a fāriu fa'ahou mai ai nō te hohonu ia 'outou.
- 7 'A ani, 'e e hōro'ahia mai tā 'outou ; 'a 'imi, 'e e 'itea ia 'outou ; 'a pātōtō, 'e e 'iritihia mai ia 'outou.
- 8 Nō te mea te ta'ata ato'a 'o tē ani ra, e fāri'i ia ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē 'imi ra, e 'itea ia ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē pātōtō ra, e 'iritihia mai ia.
- 9 'E 'o vai ia ta'ata i roto ia 'outou na 'o tē hōro'a atu i te 'ōfa'i nā tāna tamaiti 'ia ani mai 'oia i te faraoa ?
- 10 'E 'aore rā 'ia ani mai 'oia i te i'a, e hōro'a atu ānei 'oia i te 'ōphī nāna ?
- 11 'E mai te mea e ti'a ia 'outou na, 'o tei riro na 'ei mea parauti'a 'ore, 'ia 'ite nāhea 'ia hōro'a i te mau tao'a aroha maita'i nā tā 'outou mau tamari'i, e aha atu ia te rahira'a o te mau tao'a aroha maita'i tā tō 'outou Metua i te ao ra e ti'a 'ia hōro'a atu nā te feiā i ani atu iāna ra ?
- 12 Nō reira, te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou i hina'aro i te mau ta'ata 'ia nā reira mai ia 'outou ra, 'a nā reira ato'a atu ia 'outou ia rātou, 'o te ture teie 'e te mau peropheta.

3 Nephi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

- 13 'A tomo nā te 'ūputa piriha'o ; e mea 'ā'ano ho'i te 'ūputa, 'e e mea rarahi te 'ē'a e tae atu ai i te pohe ; 'e e rave rahi tē tomo atu nā reira. Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;
- 14 Nō te mea e mea piriha'o te 'ūputa, 'e e mea oaoa ho'i te 'ē'a e tae atu ai i te ora, e mea iti ho'i ia te feiā i 'ite atu i te reira. Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.
- 15 'A ara i te mau peropheta ha'avare, 'o tē haere mai ia 'outou ma te huru o te māmoē ra, 'āre'a rā i roto ra, e luko taehae ia. Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.
- 16 E 'ite ho'i 'outou ia rātou nā roto i tō rātou mau hotu ; e pāfa'i mai ānei te ta'ata i te vine nō ni'a mai i te tātarāmoa, 'e te suke nō ni'a mai i te mōtu'u ? Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?
- 17 'Oia ato'a e fa'ahotu mai te tumu rā'au maita'i tāta'itahi i te hotu maita'i, 'āre'a rā te tumu rā'au 'ino ra e fa'ahotu mai ia i te hotu 'ino. Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.
- 18 E 'ore ho'i e ti'a i te tumu rā'au maita'i 'ia fa'ahotu mai i te hotu 'ino, e 'ore ato'a ho'i e ti'a i te tumu rā'au 'ino 'ia fa'ahotu mai i te hotu maita'i. A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.
- 19 Te mau tumu rā'au ato'a 'o tē ore e fa'ahotu mai i te hotu maita'i ra, e tāpūhia ia i raro 'e e hurihia i roto i te auahi. Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.
- 20 Nō reira, nā roto i tō rātou mau hotu e 'ite ai 'outou ia rātou. Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.
- 21 'Aita te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tē parau mai iā'u ē : E te Fatu, e te Fatu, e o i roto i te bāsileia o te ao ra ; 'o te ta'ata rā i ha'apa'o i te hina'aro o tō'u Metua i te ao ra. Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.
- 22 E rave rahi tē parau mai iā'u 'ia tae i taua mahana ra : E te Fatu, e te Fatu, 'aore ānei mātou i tohu nā roto i tō 'oe na i'oa, 'e i ti'avaru i te mau diabolō nā roto i tō 'oe na i'oa, 'e i rave i te mau 'ohipa māere e rave rahi nā roto i tō 'oe na i'oa ? Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?
- 23 'E i reira vau e parau atu ai ia rātou : 'Aita roa vau i 'ite ia 'outou ; 'a haere 'ē atu 'outou, 'outou 'o tei rave i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino. And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.
- 24 Nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'aro'o mai i tā'u nei mau parau 'e 'o tē ha'apa'o i te reira, e fa'aau ia vau iāna i te hō'ē ta'ata pa'ari, 'o tei fa'ati'a i tōna fare i ni'a i te papa— Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—
- 25 'E 'ua ma'iri ihora te ua, 'e 'ua tahe ihora te mau pape pu'e, 'e 'ua tupu ihora te mata'i, 'e 'ua tae ihora i ni'a iho i taua fare ra ; 'e 'aore roa te reira i topa, nō te mea 'ua patuhia i ni'a iho i te papa. And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

26 'E te feiā ato'a 'o tei fa'aro'o mai i tā'u nei mau
parau e 'aore i ha'apa'o i te reira, e fa'aau ia vau iāna i
te hō'ē ta'ata ma'ama'a, 'o tei fa'ati'a i tōna fare i ni'a i
te one—

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine
and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish
man, who built his house upon the sand—

27 'E 'ua ma'iri ihora te ua, 'e 'ua tahe ihora te pape
pu'e, 'e 'ua tupu ihora te mata'i, 'e 'ua tae ihora i ni'a
iho i taua fare ra ; 'e 'ua topa ihora te reira, 'e e mea
huru rahi tōna topara'a.

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and
the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell,
and great was the fall of it.

3 Nephi 15

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Iesu i teie nei mau parau, 'ua nānā a'era tōna mata i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ē 'ati noa a'e iāna, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou : Inaha, 'ua fa'aro'o iho nei 'outou i te mau parau i ha'api'ihia e au nā mua vau i tae ai i ni'a i tō'u ra Metua ; nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē ha'amana'o i tā'u nei mau parau 'e 'o tē ha'apa'o i te reira, 'o 'oia ia tā'u e fa'ati'a i ni'a i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua 'ite ihora 'oia ē tē vai ra te tahi mau ta'ata i rotopū ia rātou 'o tē māere ra 'e 'o te 'ūmere ra e aha tāna i hina'aro ia rātou 'ia rave nō ni'a i te ture a Mose ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i māramarama i te parau 'o tē nā 'ō ra ē, 'ua ma'iri te mau mea tahito, 'e 'ua fa'a'āpīhia te mau mea ato'a ra.
- 3 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : 'Eiaha 'outou e māere i tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou ē, 'ua ma'iri te mau mea tahito, 'e 'ua fa'a'āpīhia te mau mea ato'a ra.
- 4 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'ua fa'ati'ahia te ture i hōro'ahia atu ia Mose ra.
- 5 Inaha, 'o vau teie tei hōro'a atu i te ture, 'e 'o vau tei fafau atu i tō'u ra nūna'a ia 'Īserā'ela ; nō reira, 'ua fa'ati'ahia te ture i roto iā'u nei, 'e 'ua haere mai ho'i au nō te fa'ati'a i te ture ; nō reira 'ua fa'aotihia ia.
- 6 Inaha, 'aita vau i fa'a'ore i tā te mau peropheta, 'o tei 'ore i fa'atupuhia nā roto iā'u nei, 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e fa'atupuhia ia te reira.
- 7 'E nō te mea ho'i 'ua parau atu vau ia 'outou na ē, 'ua ma'iri te mau mea tahito, 'aita vau i fa'a'ore i tei parahia nō ni'a i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.
- 8 Inaha ho'i, 'aita te fafaura'a 'o tā'u i fafau atu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata i tupu, te ture rā i hōro'ahia atu ia Mose ra, 'ua fa'a'orehia ia nā roto iā'u nei.
- 9 Inaha, 'o vau te ture, 'e te māramarama. Hi'o mai iā'u nei, 'e 'a tāmau ā ē tae noa atu i te hope'a, 'e e roa'a ia 'outou te ora ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē tāmau ā ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, 'o tā'u ia e hōro'a atu i te ora mure 'ore.
- 10 Inaha, 'ua hōro'a atu vau i te mau fa'auera'a ia 'outou ; nō reira, 'a ha'apa'o i tā'u ra mau fa'auera'a. 'E 'o teie ia te ture 'e te mau peropheta, 'e nā rātou ho'i i fa'a'ite pāpū mai nō ni'a iā'u.

3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

11 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu
 paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia i
 te tino 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'o tāna i mā'iti :

12 'O 'outou tā'u mau pipi ; 'e e māramarama 'outou
 nō teie nei feiā, 'oia ho'i te hō'ē toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o
 Iosepha.

13 'E inaha, teie te fenua nō tō 'outou 'āi'a ; 'e nā te
 Metua te reira i hōro'a atu ia 'outou.

14 'E 'aita roa te Metua i hōro'a noa mai a'e i te hō'ē
 fa'auera'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite i te reira i tō 'outou mau
 taea'e i Ierusalemā ra.

15 'Aita roa ato'a te Metua i hōro'a noa mai a'e i te
 hō'ē fa'auera'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite ia rātou nō ni'a i te tahi
 ato'a mau 'ōpū nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'o tā te
 Metua i arata'i 'ē atu i rāpae i te fenua.

16 'O teie ana'e rā tā te Metua i fa'aue mai iā'u 'ia
 fa'a'ite atu ia rātou :

17 E māmoē 'ē atu ā ta'u, e 'ere i tō teie nei 'āua ; e
 arata'i ato'a mai au ia rātou e ti'a ai, e fa'aro'o mai
 ho'i rātou i tō'u reo ; 'e 'ia hō'ē a'e nana, 'e 'ia hō'ē a'e
 tīa'i māmoē.

18 'E i teienei, nō tō rātou 'ā'au 'eta'eta 'e te ti'aturi
 'ore i 'ore ai rātou i māramarama ai i tā'u ra parau ;
 nō reira vau i fa'auehia ai 'eiaha roa e parau fa'ahou
 atu ia rātou i te parau nō te Metua nō ni'a i taua mea
 ra.

19 'Āre'a rā, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na,
 'ua fa'aue mai te Metua iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou ē,
 i fa'ata'a-'ē-hia na 'outou mai rotopū atu ia rātou nō
 tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Ī'ino ; nō reira nō tā rātou mau
 'ohipa 'Ī'ino, 'aita rātou i 'ite ia 'outou.

20 'E 'oia mau, tē parau fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'outou
 na, i fa'ata'a 'ē na te Metua i te tahi atu mau 'ōpū mai
 roto mai ia rātou ; 'e nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Ī'ino,
 'aore rātou i 'ite ia rātou.

21 'E 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o
 'outou ho'i teie 'o tā'u i parau na ē : E māmoē 'ē atu ā
 ta'u, e 'ere i tō teie nei 'āua, e arata'i ato'a mai au ia
 rātou e ti'a ai, e fa'aro'o mai ho'i rātou i tō'u reo ; 'e
 'ia hō'ē a'e nana, 'e 'ia hō'ē a'e ho'i tīa'i māmoē.

22 'E 'aita rātou i māramarama i tā'u ra parau, 'e i
 mana'o ho'i rātou ē, nō te mau 'Ētene taua parau ra ;
 'aita ho'i rātou i 'ite ē, e fa'afāriuhia mai te mau
 'Ētene nā roto i tā rātou ha'api'ira'a.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

23 'E 'aita ho'i rātou i māramarama i te aura'a nō tā'u ra parau ē, e fa'aro'o mai ho'i rātou i tō'u reo ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i māramarama i te aura'a nō tā'u ra parau ē, e 'ore roa atu te mau 'Ētene e fa'aro'o i tō'u reo—'e e 'ore roa ho'i au e fa'a'ite iā'u iho ia rātou, maori rā nā roto i te Vārua Maita'i.

24 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'aro'o mai 'outou 'e rātou ato'a i tō'u reo, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a mai ho'i iā'u ; 'e e māmoe 'outou nā'u, 'e 'ua tai'ohia 'outou i rotopū ia rātou 'o tā te Metua i hōro'a mai iā'u nei.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

3 Nephi 16

- 1 'E 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e māmoē 'ē atu ā tā'u nei, e 'ere i tō teie nei fenua, e 'ere ato'a i tō te fenua ra nō Ierusalemā, e 'ere ato'a i tō te tahi noa atu mau tufa'a o taua fenua 'o tā'u i haere atu nō te tāvini.
- 2 'E 'o rātou ho'i 'o tā'u e parau nei, 'o rātou ia 'o tei 'ore ā i fa'aro'o i tō'u nei reo ; 'aore ato'a ā vau i fa'a'ite iā'u iho nei ia rātou.
- 3 'Āre'a rā 'ua fāri'i au i te hō'ē fa'auera'a nō 'ō mai i te Metua 'ia haere atu vau ia rātou ra, 'e 'ia fa'aro'o mai ho'i rātou i tō'u nei reo, 'e 'ia tai'ohia ho'i i rotopū i tā'u nei mau māmoē, 'e 'ia hō'ē a'e nana 'e 'ia hō'ē a'e tīa'i māmoē ; nō reira tē haere nei au e fa'a'ite atu iā'u iho ia rātou ra.
- 4 'E tē fa'auē atu nei au ia 'outou 'ia pāpa'i 'outou i teie nei mau parau i muri iho i tō'u haerera'a atu, 'ia 'ore tō'u feiā i Ierusalemā 'o tei 'ite mata mai iā'u, 'e 'o tei pārahi na i pīha'i iho iā'u 'a tāvini ai au, 'ia ani atu i te Metua nā roto i tō'u ra i'oa 'ia roa'a tō rātou 'ite nō ni'a ia 'outou nā roto i te Vārua Maita'i, 'e nō ni'a ato'a i te tahi atu mau 'ōpū 'o tei 'ore i 'itehia na e rātou ra, 'ei reira 'ia fa'a'itehia atu teie mau parau 'o tā 'outou e pāpa'i 'e 'o tā 'outou e tāpe'a i te mau 'Ētene, 'e nā roto i te 'īra'a o te mau 'Ētene e roa'a ai i te toe'a o te hua'ai o tō'u ra feiā i ha'apurara-'ē-hia nā ni'a i te fenua nei nō tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore, te 'ite nō ni'a iā'u, tō rātou Tāra'ehara.
- 5 'E i reira e ha'aputupu ai au ia rātou mai nā tufa'a e maha o te ao nei ; 'e i reira e fa'atupu ai au i te fafaura'a 'o tā te Metua i fafau atu i te tā'āto'ara'a o te mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 6 E ao tō te mau 'Ētene nō tō rātou ti'aturi iā'u nei, nā roto i te Vārua Maita'i, 'o tei fa'a'ite pāpū atu ia rātou nō ni'a iā'u 'e i te Metua.
- 7 Inaha, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Metua, nō tō rātou ti'aturi iā'u, 'e nō tō 'outou ti'aturi 'ore, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'ia tae i te tau hope'a ra, e tae ai te parau mau i te mau 'Ētene ra, 'ia fa'a'itehia atu te 'īra'a nō teie mau mea nei ia rātou.

3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

- 8 Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Metua, 'auē ho'i te mau ta'ata ti'aturi 'ore o te mau 'Ētene ē—'e noa atu ā 'ua tae mai rātou i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'e 'ua ha'apurara 'ē i tō'u mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e tō'u mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela 'ua tīahi-'ē-hia atu ia rātou mai rotopū atu ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua ta'ata'ahi-noa-hia i raro a'e i tō rātou 'āvae.
- 9 'E nō te aroha o te Metua i te mau 'Ētene, 'e nō te mau ha'avāra'a ato'a ho'i a te Metua i tō'u mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia oti te reira ato'a ra, 'e 'ia oti ato'a iā'u te fa'ati'a ia tā'irihia tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'ia hāmani-'ino-hia, 'e 'ia taparahihia, 'e 'ia tīahi-'ē-hia atu mai rotopū atu ia rātou, 'e 'ia riro rātou 'ei feiā ririhia e rātou, 'e 'ia riro 'ei fa'a'inora'a 'e 'ei tau'āparaura'a i rotopū ia rātou.
- 10 'E nō reira 'ua fa'aue mai te Metua e mea ti'a roa iā'u 'ia parau atu ia 'outou ē : 'Ia tae i te tau e hara ai te mau 'Ētene i tā'u ra 'evanelia, 'e e pāto'i ai i te 'īra'a nō tā'u ra 'evanelia, 'e e fa'ateiteihia ai tō rātou 'ā'au te'ote'o i ni'a a'e i te mau nūna'a ato'a ra, 'e i ni'a a'e ho'i i te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a o te ao ato'a nei, 'e e fa'a'īhia ai i te mau huru ha'avare ato'a, 'e te mau parau huna, 'e te mau parau e ha'ape'ape'a ai, 'e te mau huru fa'ahua parauti'a, 'e te mau 'ohipa taparahi ta'ata, 'e te mau 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a, 'e te mau 'ohipa taiata, 'e te mau 'ohipa huna 'e te vi'ivi'i ra ; 'e 'ia rave rātou i taua mau mea ato'a ra, 'e 'ia pāto'i ho'i i te 'īra'a nō tā'u ra 'evanelia, inaha, te nā 'ō mai ra te Metua, e rave 'ē atu ai au i te 'īra'a nō tā'u 'evanelia mai rotopū atu ia rātou.
- 11 'E i reira, e ha'amana'o vau i tā'u fafaura'a 'o tā'u i fafau atu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'e e fa'atae atu vau i tā'u 'evanelia ia rātou.
- 12 'E e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'e 'aita roa tō te mau 'Ētene e mana i ni'a a'e ia 'outou na ; e ha'amana'o rā vau i tā'u fafaura'a ia 'outou na, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'e e fāri'i 'outou i te ite nō te 'īra'a o tā'u ra 'evanelia.
- 13 'Āre'a rā mai te mea e tātarahapa te mau 'Ētene 'e e fāriu mai ho'i iā'u nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Metua, inaha, e tai'ohia mai rātou i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

- 14 'E e 'ore roa vau e fa'ati'a i tō'u mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela 'ia haere i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ia ta'ata'ahi ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te Metua.
- 15 'Āre'a rā mai te mea ē 'aita rātou e fāriu mai iā'u nei, 'e e fa'aro'o mai i tō'u reo, e fa'ati'a ia vau ia rātou, 'oia ia, e fa'ati'a vau i tō'u mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'ia haere atu rātou i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ia ta'ata'ahi ia rātou, 'e e riro rātou mai te miti mā'aro ra, 'o tei riro 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore, e fa'aru'ehia ia, 'e e ta'ata'ahihia e te 'āvae o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.
- 16 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua nā reira te Metua i te fa'aue mai iā'u—'ia hōro'a atu vau i teie nei fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō teie nei feiā.
- 17 'E i reira e fa'atupuhia ai te mau parau a te peropheta Isaia 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē :
- 18 E fa'ateitei tō 'oe mau tīa'i i tō rātou reo ; 'e e 'āmui tāhō'ē tō rātou reo i te hīmenera'a ; 'e e 'ite rātou te mata 'e te mata 'ia fa'aho'i mai te Fatu ia Ziona.
- 19 'Ia puroro noa atu te 'oa'oa ; 'a hīmene 'āmui mai e te mau vāhi pararī nō Ierusalemā ; 'ua ha'amāhanahana ho'i te Fatu i tōna mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia Ierusalemā.
- 20 'Ua fa'a'ite mai ho'i te Fatu i tōna rima mo'a i mua i te mata o te mau nūna'a ato'a ; 'e e 'ite tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei i te fa'aorara'a a tō tātou Atua.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

3 Nephi 17

- 1 Inaha, i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Iesu i te parau atu i teie mau parau, 'ua hi'o fa'ahou a'era 'oia i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, 'ua fātata roa tō'u taime.
- 2 Tē 'ite nei au ē, 'ua paruparu 'outou, 'e 'aita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia māramarama i tā'u mau parau tā'āto'a, 'o tei fa'auehia mai iā'u e te Metua 'ia parau atu ia 'outou i teie taime.
- 3 Nō reira, 'a haere atu 'outou i tō 'outou mau 'utuāfare, 'e 'a feruri hōhonu i te mau mea 'o tā'u i parau atu, 'e 'a ani atu i te Metua, i tō'u ra i'oa, 'ia māramarama 'outou, 'e 'a fa'aineine i tō 'outou mau mana'o nō ananahi, 'e e ho'i fa'ahou mai au ia 'outou na.
- 4 I teienei rā, e haere atu vau i te Metua ra, 'e e fa'a'ite ato'a ho'i iā'u iho i te mau 'ōpū mo'e nō 'Īserā'ela ra, 'aita ho'i rātou i mo'e i te Metua, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia i te vāhi 'o tāna i 'āfa'i atu ia rātou.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu, 'ua hi'o fa'ahou a'era tōna mata i te mau ta'ata, 'e inaha, tē tahe ra tō rātou roimata, 'e tē hi'o māite mai ra rātou iāna mai te mea ra ē, 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia ani mai iāna 'ia pārahi ri'i mai ā i pīha'i iho ia rātou.
- 6 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, 'ua 'ī tō'u 'ā'au i te aroha ia 'outou.
- 7 Tē vai ra ānei te feiā ma'i i rotopū ia 'outou ? 'A hōpoi mai ia rātou i'ō nei. E piri'o'i ānei tō rotopū ia 'outou, e matapō ānei, e feiā paruparu ānei, e lēpera ānei, e feiā hāpepa ānei, e tari'a turi ānei, e feiā ro'ohia ānei i te tahi atu mau huru 'ati ? 'A hōpoi mai ia rātou i'ō nei, 'e e fa'aora vau ia rātou, e aroha ho'i tō'u ia 'outou na ; 'ua 'ī ho'i tō'u 'ā'au i te aroha.
- 8 'E tē 'ite nei ho'i au ē, 'ua hina'aro 'outou 'ia fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i tā'u i rave i tō 'outou mau taea'e i Ierusalem ra, 'e tē 'ite nei ho'i au ē, 'ua nava'i tō 'outou fa'aro'o 'ia fa'aora vau ia 'outou.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a atu, 'ua haere mai ra te mau ta'ata ato'a, ma te 'ā'au hō'ē, i te hōpoira'a mai i tō rātou feiā ma'i 'e tei ro'ohia i te 'ati ra, 'e tō rātou feiā piri'o'i, 'e tō rātou feiā matapō, 'e tō rātou feiā vāvā, 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a i ro'ohia i te mau huru 'ati ato'a ; 'e 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia rātou tāta'itahi 'a hōpoiha mai ai rātou iāna ra.

3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

- 10 'E 'ua nā reira rātou pā'āto'a, te feiā i fa'aorahia 'e te feiā tino maita'i, i te pi'ora'a ia rātou iho i raro i tōna pae 'āvae, 'e 'ua ha'amori atu ra iāna ; 'e te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'o tē ti'a 'ia ha'afātata mai iāna 'ua 'āpā ihora ia rātou i tōna 'āvae, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'arari a'era rātou i tōna 'āvae i tō rātou roimata.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia 'ia hōpoiha mai tā rātou mau tamari'i ri'i.
- 12 'E 'ua hōpoi mai ra rātou i tā rātou mau tamari'i ri'i 'e 'ua ha'apārahi ihora ia rātou i raro i te repo ra nā pīha'i iho iāna, 'e 'ua ti'a noa ihora Iesu i rōpū mau ; 'e 'ua 'ōtohe atu ra te mau ta'ata e tae roa atu 'ua hope te mau tamari'i pā'āto'a i te hōpoiha mai iāna ra.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope rātou pā'āto'a i te hōpoiha mai, 'ua ti'a noa ihora Iesu i rōpū mau, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata 'ia tūturi rātou i raro i te fenua ra.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era rātou i te tūturi i raro i te repo ra, 'ua 'ū'uru ihora Iesu i roto iāna iho, 'e 'ua nā 'ō a'era : E tō'u Metua, 'ua horuhoru vau nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 15 'E 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua tūturi ato'a ihora 'oia i raro i te repo ra ; 'e inaha, 'ua pure atu ra 'oia i te Metua, 'e te mau mea tāna i pure ra 'aita roa ia e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai te mau ta'ata ato'a i fa'aro'o iāna i te reira.
- 16 'E teie te huru o te mau mea tā rātou i fa'a'ite pāpū mai : 'Aita roa te hō'ē mata i hi'o na, 'e 'aita roa ato'a te hō'ē tari'a i fa'aro'o na, i te mātāmua, i te mau mea faufa'a rahi 'e te māere mai teie 'o tā rātou i hi'o 'e i fa'aro'o ia Iesu i te paraura'a atu i te Metua.
- 17 'E 'aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē vaha 'ia parau, 'e 'aita roa ato'a e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia pāpa'i, 'e 'aita roa ato'a ho'i e ti'a i te 'ā'au o te ta'ata 'ia 'ite i te mau mea faufa'a rahi 'e te māere 'o tā mātou i hi'o 'e i fa'aro'o ia Iesu i te paraura'a ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia 'ite i te 'oa'oa 'o tei fa'a'ī i tō mātou vārua i te taime 'a fa'aro'o ai mātou iāna i te purera'a atu i te Metua nō mātou.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Iesu i tāna pure i te Metua, 'ua ti'a a'era 'oia i ni'a ; 'āre'a rā nō te rahi o te 'oa'oa o te mau ta'ata 'ua putapū roa ihora rātou.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua paraparau atu ra Iesu ia rātou,
'e 'ua ani atu ra ia rātou 'ia ti'a mai i ni'a.

20 'E 'ua ti'a mai rātou i ni'a mai te repo mai ra, 'e 'ua
nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : E ao tō 'outou nō tō 'outou
fa'aro'o. 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua 'ī roa vau i te 'oa'oa.

21 'E 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a atu i teie mau parau,
'ua 'oto ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū atu te mau ta'ata i
te reira, 'e 'ua rave atu ra 'oia i tā rātou mau tamari'i
ri'i, te tahi i muri iho i te tahi, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i atu ra
ia rātou, 'e 'ua pure atu ra i te Metua nō rātou.

22 'E 'ia oti a'era 'oia i te nā-reira-ra'a, 'ua 'oto fa'ahou
ihora 'oia.

23 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua nā 'ō
atu ra ia rātou : 'A hi'o na i tā 'outou mau tamari'i ri'i.

24 'E 'a hi'o atu ai rātou, 'ua nānā a'era rātou i tō
rātou mata i ni'a i te ra'i, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra rātou i te mau
melahi i te poua'a mai nā te ra'i mai, mai te mea ra e
tei roto rātou i te auahi ; 'e 'ua pou mai ra rātou i
raro, 'e 'ua ha'a'ati a'era i taua mau tamari'i ri'i ra, 'e
'ua ha'a'ati-ato'a-hia rātou i te auahi ; 'e 'ua poihere
mai ra te mau melahi ia rātou.

25 'E 'ua hi'o atu te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua fa'aro'o 'e 'ua
fa'a'ite pāpū i te reira ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i rātou ē, e parau
mau tā rātou i fa'a'ite, nō te mea 'ua hi'o atu rātou
pā'āto'a, te ta'ata tāta'itahi, 'e 'ua fa'aro'o ho'i ; 'e e
piti tauatini 'e e pae hānere ta'ata ; e i roto i te reira tē
vai ra te mau tāne, te mau vahine, 'e te mau tamari'i.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them,
and bade them arise.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto
them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now
behold, my joy is full.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and
the multitude bare record of it, and he took their lit-
tle children, one by one, and blessed them, and
prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto
them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes
towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and
they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were
in the midst of fire; and they came down and encir-
cled those little ones about, and they were encircled
about with fire; and the angels did minister unto
them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear
record; and they know that their record is true for
they all of them did see and hear, every man for him-
self; and they were in number about two thousand
and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men,
women, and children.

3 Nephi 18

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aeue atu ra Iesu i tana mau pipi 'ia hōpoi mai i te pāne 'e te uaina iāna ra.
- 2 'E 'a haere atu ai rātou e ti'i i te pāne 'e te uaina, 'ua fa'aeue atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata 'ia pārahi i raro i ni'a iho i te fenua.
- 3 'E i te ho'ira'a mai te mau pipi ma te pāne 'e te uaina, 'ua rave ihora 'oia i te pāne 'e 'ua vāvāhi ihora 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ihora i te reira ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ra i te mau pipi 'e 'ua fa'aeue atu ra ia rātou 'ia 'amu.
- 4 'E 'ia 'amu ihora rātou 'e 'ia pa'ia a'era, 'ua fa'aeue atu ra 'oia 'ia hōro'a atu nā te mau ta'ata.
- 5 'E 'ia 'amu ihora te mau ta'ata 'e 'ia pa'ia a'era, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia i te mau pipi : Inaha, e fa'atōro'ahia te hō'ē i rotopū ia 'outou, e nā'u e hōro'a atu i te mana iāna 'ia vāvāhi 'oia i te pāne 'e 'ia ha'amaita'i ho'i 'e 'ia hōro'a atu ho'i i te mau ta'ata nō tā'u nei 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tē ti'aturi 'e 'o tē bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa.
- 6 'E 'ia nā reira noa ato'a 'outou i te rave-māite-ra'a, mai tā'u i rave iho nei, 'oia ho'i, mai tā'u i vāvāhi i te pāne 'e i ha'amaita'i i te reira 'e i hōro'a atu ia 'outou na.
- 7 'E 'ia nā reira 'outou i te rave 'ei ha'amana'ora'a i tō'u tino, mai tā'u i fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou na. 'E e riro ia 'ei fa'a'itera'a pāpū i te Metua, 'e e ha'amana'o noa 'outou iā'u. 'E mai te mea e ha'amana'o noa 'outou iā'u, e vai noa ia tō'u Vārua i roto ia 'outou.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tana paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua fa'aeue atu ra 'oia i tana mau pipi 'ia rave i te uaina i roto i te 'āu'a 'e 'ia inu i te reira, 'e 'ia hōro'a ato'a atu i te mau ta'ata 'ia inu rātou i te reira.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira rātou, 'e 'ua inu i te reira 'e 'i a'era ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua inu ihora rātou, 'e 'i a'era.
- 10 'E 'ia oti a'era te reira i te ravehia e te mau pipi, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Iesu ia rātou : E ao tō 'outou nō teie mea tā 'outou i rave iho nei, tē ha'apa'o ra ia i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, 'e nā te reira e fa'a'ite i te Metua ē, 'ua hina'aro mau 'outou 'ia rave i tā'u i fa'aeue atu ia 'outou na.

3 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

- 11 'E e nā reira noa 'outou i te rave i te feiā 'o tei tātarahapa 'e tei bāpetizohia ho'i i tō'u ra i'oa ; 'e e rave 'outou i te reira 'ei ha'amana'ora'a i tō'u ra toto, 'o tā'u i ha'amani'i nō 'outou, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite atu 'outou i te Metua ē, e ha'amana'o noa 'outou iā'u. 'E mai te mea e ha'amana'o noa 'outou iā'u, e vai noa tō'u Vārua i roto ia 'outou.
- 12 'E tē hōro'a atu nei au i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ia 'outou 'ia rave 'outou i teie mau mea. 'E 'ia nā reira noa 'outou i te rave i teie mau mea, e ao tō 'outou, nō te mea 'ua patuhia 'outou i ni'a iho i tā'u nei papa.
- 13 'E 'o 'oia i rotopū ia 'outou 'o tē rave ri'i noa i te reira, 'aore ia i patuhia i ni'a iho i tā'u ra papa, 'ua patuhia rā ia i ni'a iho i te niu one ; 'e 'ia ma'iri mai te ua, 'e 'ia tahe mai te pape pu'e, 'e 'ia puhipuhi mai te mata'i i ni'a iho ia rātou ra, e ma'iri ia rātou i raro, 'e 'ua vai matara noa te mau 'ūputa o hade nō te fāri'i mai ia rātou.
- 14 Nō reira, e ao tō 'outou 'ia ha'apa'o maita'i 'outou i tā'u mau fa'auera'a, 'o tā te Metua i fa'aue mai iā'u 'ia hōro'a atu ia 'outou na.
- 15 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia ara 'e 'ia pure tāmau noa, 'o te fa'ahemahia 'outou e te diabolō, 'e 'o te fa'atīhīa 'outou e ana.
- 16 'E mai tā'u i pure i rotopū ia 'outou na, e nā reira ato'a 'outou i te pure i roto i tā'u 'ekālesia, i rotopū i tō'u mau ta'ata i tātarahapa 'e i bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa. Inaha, 'o vau te māmarama ; i fa'a'ite atu na vau i te hi'ora'a nō 'outou.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau i tāna mau pipi, 'ua fāriu fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i ni'a i te mau ta'ata 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou :
- 18 Inaha, 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e ara 'e 'ia pure tāmau noa 'outou e ti'a ai ; 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ro'ohia i te fa'ahemara'a ; i hina'aro na ho'i Sātane ia 'outou, 'ia ueue 'oia ia 'outou mai te sītona ra.
- 19 Nō reira 'ia pure tāmau noa 'outou i te Metua nā roto i tō'u ra i'oa.
- 20 'E te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou e ani atu i te Metua i tō'u ra i'oa, 'oia ho'i te mea ti'a, ma te ti'aturi e fāri'i 'outou, inaha e hōro'ahia mai ia ia 'outou.
- 21 'A pure i roto i tō 'outou mau 'utuāfare i te Metua, nā roto noa i tō'u ra i'oa, 'ia ha'amaita'ihia tā 'outou mau vahine 'e tā 'outou mau tamari'i.

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

22 'E inaha, 'ia ha'aputuputu pinepine 'outou ; 'e 'eiaha roa 'outou e 'ōpani i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia haere mai ia 'outou na, 'a ha'aputuputu 'āmui ai 'outou, 'a fa'ati'a noa rā ia rātou 'ia haere mai ia 'outou na, 'e 'eiaha roa e 'ōpani atu ia rātou.

23 E pure rā 'outou nō rātou, 'e 'eiaha roa e ti'avaru atu ia rātou i rāpae ; 'e 'ia haere pinepine mai rātou ia 'outou na, 'a pure atu 'outou i te Metua nō rātou nā roto i tō'u ra i'oa.

24 Nō reira, 'a fa'ateitei i tō 'outou māmarama, 'ia 'ana'ana atu i tō te ao nei. Inaha, 'o vau nei te māmarama tā 'outou e fa'ateitei atu i ni'a—te mea tā 'outou i 'ite iā'u i te ravera'a. Inaha, 'ua 'ite 'outou ē 'ua pure atu vau i te Metua, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū 'outou i te reira.

25 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i 'outou ē 'ua fa'auē atu vau 'eiaha te hō'ē o 'outou 'ia haere 'ē atu, 'ua fa'auē atu rā vau 'ia haere mai 'outou iā'u nei, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fāfā mai 'e 'ia 'ite mata ho'i ; 'e 'ia nā reira ato'a 'outou i tō te ao nei ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ōfati i teie nei fa'auera'a, tē fa'ati'a ra ia 'oia iāna iho 'ia arata'ihia atu i roto i te fa'ahemara'a.

26 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua fāriu fa'ahou atu ra tōna mata i ni'a i te mau pipi 'o tāna i mā'iti, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou :

27 Inaha, 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, tē hōro'a atu nei au i te tahi fa'ahou fa'auera'a ia 'outou na, 'e i reira e mea ti'a iā'u 'ia haere atu i tō'u ra Metua, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'ati'a i te tahi atu ā mau fa'auera'a tāna i hōro'a mai iā'u ra.

28 'E i teienei, inaha, teie te fa'auera'a tā'u e hōro'a atu nei ia 'outou na, 'eiaha roa 'outou e fa'ati'a ma te 'ite i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia rave i tō'u tino 'e tō'u toto ma te ti'amā 'ore, 'a 'ōpere ai 'outou i te reira.

29 'O 'oia ho'i 'o tē 'amu i tō'u tino 'e 'o tē inu i tō'u toto ma te ti'amā 'ore, 'ua 'amu ia 'e 'ua inu i te pohe nō tōna vārua ; nō reira, 'ia 'ite 'outou e mea ti'amā 'ore te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia 'amu i tō'u tino 'e 'ia inu i tō'u toto, e 'ōpani ia 'outou iāna.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

30 Noa atu rā i te reira, 'eiaha roa 'outou e ti'avaru atu iāna i rāpae mai rotopū atu ia 'outou, e poihere rā 'outou iāna, 'e e pure ho'i nōna i te Metua, i tō'u ra i'oa ; 'e mai te mea e tātarahapa 'oia 'e 'ua bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa, 'ei reira iā 'outou e fāri'i mai iāna, 'e e hōro'a atu ai i tō'u tino 'e tō'u toto nāna.

31 'Ia 'ore rā 'oia e tātarahapa, e 'ore ato'a iā 'oia e tai'ohia i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'oia e ha'amou i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, inaha ho'i, 'ua 'ite au i tā'u mau māmoē, 'e 'ua oti rātou i te tai'ohia.

32 Noa atu rā i te reira, 'eiaha roa 'outou e ti'avaru atu iāna i rāpae i tō 'outou mau sunago, 'e 'aore i tō 'outou mau fare purera'a, e tāmau ā ho'i 'outou i te poihere i taua huru ta'ata ra ; 'aita ho'i 'outou i 'ite 'o te ho'i mai rātou 'e 'o te tātarahapa, 'e 'o te haere mai iā'u ma te 'ā'au hina'aro mau, 'e nā'u e fa'aora ia rātou, 'e 'ua riro 'outou 'ei rāve'a nō te hōpoi atu i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou.

33 Nō reira, 'a ha'apa'o i teie mau parau tā'u i fa'aue atu ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ore 'outou ia fa'ahapahia ; e pohe ho'i tō te ta'ata 'o tā te Metua i fa'ahapa ra.

34 'E tē hōro'a atu nei au i teie mau fa'auera'a nō te mau mārōra'a i tupu a'enei i rotopū ia 'outou na. E ao ho'i tō 'outou mai te mea ē 'aita e mārōra'a i rotopū ia 'outou na.

35 'E i teienei, e haere atu vau i te Metua, nō te mea e mea tītauhia iā'u 'ia haere atu i te Metua nō tō 'outou maita'i.

36 'E i teienei, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a i teie mau parau, 'ua tāpe'a atu ra tōna rima i te mau pipi tāta'itahi 'o tāna i mā'iti, ē tae noa atu 'ua hope iāna i te tāpe'a atu ia rātou pā'āto'a, 'e 'ua paraparau atu 'oia ia rātou 'a tāpe'a atu ai 'oia ia rātou.

37 'E 'aita roa te mau ta'ata i fa'aro'o i te mau parau 'o tāna i parau atu, nō reira 'aita roa i ti'a ia rātou i fa'a'ite pāpū i te reira ; 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū te mau pipi ē 'ua hōro'a mai 'oia i te mana ia rātou nō te hōro'a i te Vārua Maita'i. 'E e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i muri nei ē e parau mau tā rātou ra parau.

38 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu tāpe'ara'a atu ia rātou pā'āto'a, 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē ata 'e 'ua tāpo'i mai ra i te mau ta'ata 'e 'aore a'era i ti'a ia rātou 'ia 'ite atu ia Iesu.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

39 'E 'a tāpo'i-noa-hia ai rātou 'ua fa'aru'e mai ra 'oia
ia rātou, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i ni'a i te ra'i. 'E 'ua 'ite te
mau pipi 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū ho'i rātou ē, 'ua haere
fa'ahou atu 'oia i ni'a i te ra'i.

And while they were overshadowed he departed
from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disci-
ples saw and did bear record that he ascended again
into heaven.

3 Nephi 19

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i tō Iesu haerera'a atu i ni'a i te ra'i, 'ua purara haere atu ra te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua rave ihora te ta'ata tāta'itahi i tāna vahine 'e i tāna mau tamari'i 'e 'ua ho'i atu ra i tōna ihora fare.
- 2 'E 'ua parare 'oi'oi haere atu ra te parau 'āpī i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, nā mua a'e i te pō, 'oia ho'i 'ua 'ite mata te mau ta'ata ia Iesu, 'e 'ua poihere mai 'oia ia rātou, 'e e fa'a'ite fa'ahou mai 'oia iāna iho 'ia po'ipo'i a'e i te mau ta'ata.
- 3 'Oia ia, 'e i te pō tā'āto'a 'ua parare haere te parau 'āpī nō ni'a ia Iesu ; 'e 'ua tono a'era rātou i te tahi mau ve'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e nō reira ho'i e rave rahi, 'oia ia, e rave rahi ta'ata 'o tei rave pūai i te 'ohipa i taua pō tā'āto'a ra, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia tae mai i te vāhi tā Iesu e fa'a'ite mai iāna iho i te mau ta'ata.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ia ha'aputupu-āmui-hia mai te mau ta'ata, inaha, tei reira ato'a 'o Nephi 'e tōna taea'e o tāna i fa'ati'a mai, mai te pohe mai ra, 'o Tīmoteo tōna i'oa, 'e tāna tamaiti ato'a 'o Iona tōna i'oa, 'e 'o Matoni ato'a, 'e 'o Matoniha, tōna taea'e, 'e 'o Kumena, 'e 'o Kumenoni, 'e 'o Ieremia, 'e 'o Semenona, 'e 'o Iona, 'e 'o Zedekia, 'e 'o Isaia—'e 'o teie ho'i ia te i'oa o te mau pipi tā Iesu i mā'iti—'e i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou 'e 'ua ti'a atu ra i rotopū i te mau ta'ata.
- 5 'E inaha, 'ua rahi roa te mau ta'ata 'e nō reira 'ua fa'ata'ahia rātou i roto i te mau pupu hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti.
- 6 'E 'ua ha'api'i atu ra te tino 'ahuru 'e ma piti i te mau ta'ata ; 'e inaha, 'ua fa'aue atu ra rātou i te mau ta'ata 'ia tūturi i raro i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ia pure atu rātou i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu.
- 7 'E 'ua pure ato'a atu te mau pipi i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu. 'E i muri a'e, 'ua ti'a a'era rātou i ni'a, 'e 'ua tāvini atu ra i te mau ta'ata.
- 8 'E 'ia oti a'era rātou i te ha'api'i atu i taua iho mau parau ra tā Iesu i parau na—ma te fa'ahuru 'ē 'ore i te mau parau tā Iesu i parau na—inaha, 'ua tūturi fa'ahou ihora rātou i raro 'e 'ua pure atu ra i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu.

3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

9 'E 'ua pure atu rātou nō te mau mea tā rātou i hina'aro rahi ; 'e 'ua hina'aro rātou 'ia hōro'ahia mai te Vārua Maita'i ia rātou.

10 'E 'ia oti a'era rātou i te pure nō te reira, 'ua haere a'era rātou i raro i te hiti pape, 'e 'ua pe'e mai ra te mau ta'ata ia rātou.

11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Nephi i roto i te pape 'e 'ua bāpetizohia ihora.

12 'E 'ua haere mai ra 'oia i ni'a mai raro mai i te pape 'e 'ua ha'amata a'era i te bāpetizo i te ta'ata. 'E 'ua bāpetizo 'oia i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tā Iesu i mā'iti.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era rātou pā'āto'a i te bāpetizohia 'e 'ua haere mai rātou i ni'a mai raro mai i te pape, 'ua tae mai ra te Vārua Maita'i i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'i a'era rātou i te Vārua Maita'i 'e i te auahi.

14 'E inaha, 'ua ha'a'atihia rātou e te hō'ē mea mai te auahi ra te huru ; 'e nō te ra'i mai te reira i te poura'ā mai, 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū atu te mau ta'ata i te reira, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū ho'i rātou i te reira ; 'e 'ua pou mai te mau melahi nō te ra'i mai, 'e 'ua utuutu mai ra ia rātou.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'a ha'api'i noa ai te mau melahi i te mau pipi, inaha, 'ua haere mai ra Iesu 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra i rōpū 'e 'ua utuutu mai ra ia rātou.

16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua paraparau atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra ia rātou 'ia tūturi fa'ahou i raro i ni'a i te fenua, 'e i tāna ato'a mau pipi 'ia tūturi i raro i ni'a i te fenua.

17 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope rātou pā'āto'a i te tūturi i raro i ni'a i te fenua, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia i tāna mau pipi 'ia pure.

18 'E inaha, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te pure ; 'e 'ua pure atu ra rātou ia Iesu, ma te pi'i iāna 'ei Fatu 'e 'ei Atua nō rātou.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua reva atu ra Iesu mai roto atu ia rātou, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te ātea ri'i atu ia rātou 'e 'ua ha'api'o ihora iāna iho i raro i te fenua, 'e 'ua nā 'ō a'era :

20 E te Metua, tē ha'amāuruuru nei au ia 'oe, 'o 'oe i hōro'a mai i te Vārua Maita'i i teie mau ta'ata 'o tā'u i mā'iti ; 'e nō tō rātou fa'aro'o iā'u nei i mā'iti ai au ia rātou mai roto mai i tō teie nei ao.

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

- 21 E te Metua, tē pure atu nei au ia 'oe na, 'ia hōro'a mai i te Vārua Maita'i ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tā rātou ra mau parau.
- 22 E te Metua, 'ua hōro'a mai 'oe i te Vārua maita'i ia rātou, nō te mea 'ua ti'aturi rātou iā'u nei, 'e tē 'ite na 'oe ē, 'ua ti'aturi rātou iā'u nei, nō te mea 'ua fa'aro'o 'oe ia rātou, 'e tē pure mai nei rātou iā'u ; 'e tē pure mai nei rātou iā'u nō te mea tē pārahi nei au i 'ō rātou ra.
- 23 'E i teieni, e tō'u Metua, tē pure atu nei au ia 'oe nō rātou, 'e 'oia ato'a nō rātou pā'āto'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tā rātou mau parau, 'ia ti'aturi rātou iā'u, 'ia vai au i roto ia rātou mai ia 'oe, e te Metua, e vai nei i roto iā'u nei, 'ia riro tātou 'ei hō'ē.
- 24 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era Iesu i te pure atu i te Metua, 'ua haere mai ra 'oia i tāna ra mau pipi, 'e inaha, tē tāmau noa ra rātou i te pure atu iāna, ma te tu'utu'u 'ore ; 'e 'aita rātou i fa'arahi i te mau parau, nō te mea 'ua hōro'ahia mai ia rātou i te mea tā rātou e pure atu, 'e 'ua 'i roa rātou i te hina'aro.
- 25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amaita'i atu ra Iesu ia rātou 'a pure atu ai rātou iāna ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu ra 'oia i tōna hōho'a mata māuruuru ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ana'ana atu ra te māmarama o tōna mata i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'E inaha, 'ua teatea roa rātou mai te hōho'a mata 'e te mau 'ahu ato'a o Iesu ; 'e inaha, te teatea nō te reira, 'ua hau ia i te mau mea teatea ato'a, 'oia ia, 'aore roa e mea teatea i ni'a i te fenua nei 'o tei hau atu i te teatea mai te reira te huru.
- 26 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Iesu ia rātou : 'A tāmau noa i te pure, 'e 'aita roa ho'i rātou i fa'aea i te pure.
- 27 'E 'ua fāriu 'ē fa'ahou atu ra 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ua haere atu ra i te ātea ri'i, 'e 'ua ha'api'o ihora iāna iho i raro i te fenua ; 'e 'ua pure fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te Metua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē :
- 28 E tō'u Metua, tē ha'amāuruuru nei au ia 'oe na, i te mea ē 'ua tāmā 'oe ia rātou 'o tā'u i mā'iti, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e tē pure nei au nō rātou, 'e nō rātou ato'a ho'i 'o tē ti'aturi i tā rātou mau parau, 'ia tāmāhia rātou iā'u nei nā roto i te fa'aro'o i tā rātou mau parau, mai ia rātou nei ho'i i tāmāhia iā'u nei.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

29 E tō'u Metua, 'aore au e pure nei nō tō teie nei ao, nō rātou rā 'o tā 'oe i hōro'a mai iā'u nei nō roto mai i tō teie nei ao, nō tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'ia tāmāhia rātou iā'u nei, 'ia vai au i roto ia rātou, mai ia 'oe, e te Metua, e vai nei i roto iā'u, 'ia riro tātou 'ei hō'ē, 'ia fa'ahanahanahia vau i roto ia rātou.

30 'E 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra 'oia i tāna mau pipi; 'e inaha, tē pure māite ra rātou iāna, ma te tu'utu'u 'ore; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i tōna mata māuruuru ia rātou; 'e inaha 'ua teatea rātou, mai ia Iesu ra.

31 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te ātea ri'i, 'e 'ua pure atu ra i te Metua.

32 'E 'aita roa e ti'a i te vaha 'ia parau i te mau parau 'o tāna i pure, 'e 'aita ato'a e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia pāpa'i i te mau parau 'o tāna i pure.

33 'E 'ua fa'aro'o a'era te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū rātou i te reira; 'e 'ua mahora tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua māramarama tō rātou 'ā'au i te mau parau 'o tāna i pure.

34 Nō te rahi rā 'e te māere o te mau parau 'o tāna i pure ra, 'aita atu ra e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia, 'e 'aita ato'a e ti'a 'ia fa'ahitihia e te ta'ata nei.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Iesu i tāna ra purera'a, 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra 'oia i tāna ra mau pipi, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou: 'Aita ā vau i 'ite atu ra i te hō'ē fa'aro'o rahi i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda ato'a ra; nō reira, 'aita i ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te mau semeio rahi ia rātou, nō tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore.

36 'Oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'aita roa te hō'ē o rātou i 'ite i te mau mea rahi mai tā 'outou i 'ite na; 'e 'aita roa ato'a rātou i fa'aro'o i te mau mea rahi mai tā 'outou i fa'aro'o na.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;

And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

3 Nephi 20

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aeue atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata 'ia fa'aea i te pure, 'e 'ua nā reira ato'a atu 'oia i tāna mau pipi. 'E 'ua fa'aeue atu 'oia ia rātou 'eiaha rātou e fa'aea i te pure i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'aeue atu ra 'oia ia rātou 'ia ti'a mai i ni'a i tō rātou 'āvae. 'E 'ua ti'a a'era rātou i ni'a i tō rātou 'āvae.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua vāvāhi fa'ahou ihora 'oia i te pāne 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i ihora i te reira, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ra i te mau pipi 'ia 'amu rātou.
- 4 'E 'ia oti a'era rātou i te 'amu, 'ua fa'aeue atu ra 'oia ia rātou 'ia vāvāhi rātou i te pāne, 'e 'ia hōro'a atu nā te mau ta'ata.
- 5 'E 'ia oti a'era ia rātou i te hōro'a atu nā te mau ta'ata, 'ua hōro'a ato'a atu 'oia i te uaina ia rātou 'ia inu, 'e 'ua fa'aeue atu ra ia rātou 'ia hōro'a rātou i te reira nā te mau ta'ata.
- 6 I teienei, 'aita e pāne, 'aita ato'a e uaina i hōpoiha mai e te mau pipi, 'aita ato'a te mau ta'ata i hōpoi mai.
- 7 'Āre'a rā 'ua hōro'a mau atu 'oia i te pāne ia rātou 'ia 'amu 'e te uaina ato'a 'ia inu.
- 8 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : 'O 'oia 'o tē 'amu i teie nei pāne, 'ua 'amu ia i tō'u nei tino nā tōna vārua ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē inu i teie nei uaina, 'ua inu ia i tō'u nei toto nā tōna vārua, 'e e 'ore roa tōna vārua e po'ia 'e e po'ihā, e vai 'ī noa rā ia.
- 9 I teienei, 'ia fa'aoti a'era te mau ta'ata i te 'amu 'e i te inu, inaha, 'ua 'ī a'era rātou i te Vārua ; 'e 'ua pi'i māite mai ra rātou ma te reo hō'ē, 'e 'ua fa'ahanahana mai ra ia Iesu, 'o tā rātou i hi'o 'e i fa'aro'o ato'a ho'i.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ia hope roa a'era rātou i te fa'ahanahana atu ia Iesu, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, i teienei 'ua oti iā'u te fa'auera'a tā te Metua i fa'aeue mai iā'u nō ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'o te hō'ē toe'a ia rātou nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 11 Tē ha'amana'o na 'outou ē, i parau na vau ia 'outou nō te fa'atupura'ahia te mau parau a Isaia—inaha, 'ua pāpa'ihia te reira, 'e tei mua te reira ia 'outou na, nō reira 'a 'imi i te reira.

3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

12 'E 'oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia tupu te reira 'ei reira ato'a e tupu ai te fafau'ā'a tā te Metua i fafau atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.

13 'Ei reira te mau toe'a 'o tei ha'apurara-'ē-hia i te ātea i ni'a i te fenua nei, e ha'aputuputuhia ai mai te hiti'a o te rā mai 'e mai te tō'o'a o te rā mai, 'e mai te pae apato'a mai 'e mai te pae apato'erau mai ; 'e e fa'ataehia rātou i te 'ite i te Fatu tō rātou Atua, 'o tei fa'aora ia rātou.

14 'E 'ua fa'aue mai te Metua iā'u 'ia hōro'a atu vau i teie nei fenua nō 'outou, 'ei 'āi'a nō 'outou.

15 'E tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ore te mau 'Ētene e tātarahapa i muri a'e i te fāri'ira'a i te ha'amaita'ira'a e tae mai ia rātou ra, 'e i muri a'e ho'i i tō rātou ha'apurara-'ē-ra'a i tō'u mau ta'ata—

16 'Ei reira 'outou, e te toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, e haere atu ai i rotopū ia rātou ; e tae 'outou i rotopū ia rātou, 'e e mea rahi ho'i rātou ; 'e e riro'outou i rotopū ia rātou mai te liona i rotopū i te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri o te uru rā'au ra, 'e mai te liona 'āpī i rotopū i te mau nana māmoē, 'e 'ia haere ana'e 'oia nā roto ra 'ua ta'ata'ahi noa ia 'e 'ua hahae hu'ahu'a noa ia, 'e 'aore roa e ta'ata nō te fa'aora mai.

17 E fa'ataehia atu tō 'outou rima i ni'a i tō 'outou mau 'enemi, 'e e hope roa tō 'outou mau 'enemi i te tāpū-'ē-hia.

18 'E e ha'aputuputu 'āmui au i tō'u mau ta'ata mai te ta'ata e ha'aputuputu i te ruru sītona i ni'a i te tahua papa'ira'a.

19 E fa'ariro ho'i au i tō'u mau ta'ata 'o tā te Metua i fafau atu, 'oia ia, e fa'ariro vau i tō 'outou ra tara 'ei 'āuri, 'e e fa'ariro vau i tō 'outou ra mau mai'u'u 'āvae 'ei veo. 'E e fa'ahu'ahu'a 'outou i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi ; 'e e ha'amo'a atu vau i tā rātou faufa'a nā te Fatu, 'e tā rātou mau tao'a nā te Fatu o te mau fenua ato'a ra. 'E inaha, 'o vau nei ia te rave i te reira.

20 'E a muri a'era, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Metua, e tautau mai te 'o'e nō tā'u ra parauti'a i ni'a a'e ia rātou i taua mahana ra ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa, e ma'iri ia te reira i ni'a iho ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te Metua, 'oia ia, i ni'a iho i te mau nūna'a ato'a o te mau 'Ētene.

21 'E a muri a'era, e riro vau i te ha'amau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

22 'E inaha, e ha'amau vau i teie nei feiā i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'ia fa'atupuhia te fafaura'a tā'u i fafau atu i tō 'outou ra metua tāne ia Iakoba ; 'e e riro ia 'ei Ierusalema 'Āpī. 'E e tae mai te mau mana nō te ra'i mai i rotopū i teie nei feiā ; 'oia ia, e tae mai au i rotopū ia 'outou na.

23 Inaha, 'o vau teie tā Mose i parau na, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E fa'ati'a mai te Fatu tō 'outou Atua i te hō'ē peropheta ia 'outou na, nō roto mai i tō 'outou nā mau taea'e, mai iā'u nei te huru ; 'o 'oia tā 'outou e fa'aro'o atu i te mau parau ato'a tāna e parau mai ia 'outou na. 'E a muri a'era, te ta'ata ato'a 'o tē'ore e fa'aro'o i taua peropheta ra, e tāpū-'ē-hia atu ia mai rotopū atu i te mau ta'ata.

24 'Oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'oia ia, te mau peropheta pā'āto'a i parau mai mai ia Samuela mai ē tae roa mai i tō muri iho, 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai na ia i te parau nō ni'a iā'u nei.

25 'E inaha, 'o 'outou ho'i te mau tamari'i a te mau peropheta ; 'e nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ho'i 'outou ; 'e nō roto mai ho'i 'outou i te fafaura'a tā te Metua i fafau atu i tō 'outou ra mau metua, 'a nā 'ō tu ai 'oia ia Aberahama : E nā roto i tō 'oe ra hua'ai e ha'amaita'ihia ai te mau 'ōpū ato'a o te ao nei.

26 'Ua fa'ati'ahia vau i ni'a 'e 'ua tonohia mai na ho'i e te Metua ia 'outou na nā mua, 'e 'ua tonohia mai au nō te ha'amaita'ia 'outou i te fa'afāriu-'ē-ra'a atu ia 'outou tāta'itahi i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'Īno ; 'e te tumu nō te reira nō te mea e mau tamari'i 'outou nō te fafaura'a.

27 'E 'ia ha'amaita'ihia 'outou ra, 'ei reira te Metua e fa'atupu ai i te fafaura'a tāna i fafau atu ia Aberahama, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : Nā roto i tō 'oe ra hua'ai e ha'amaita'ihia ai te mau 'ōpū ato'a o te ao nei—ē tae noa atu i te nīni'ira'a mai i te Vārua Maita'i nā roto iā'u nei i ni'a i te mau 'Ētene, 'e nā taua ha'amaita'ira'a ra i ni'a iho i te mau 'Ētene e fa'ariro ia rātou 'ei mea pūai i ni'a a'e i te mau ta'ata ato'a, ē tae noa atu i te ha'apurarara'a i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela e.

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

28 'E e riro rātou 'ei tā'iri nō te mau ta'ata o teie nei fenua. 'Āre'a rā 'ia fāri'i rātou i te 'īra'a nō tā'u 'evanelia, 'e i muri iho mai te mea e fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au iā'u nei, e fa'aho'i atu vau i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i ni'a iho i tō rātou ra mau upo'o, tē nā reira mai ra te Metua.

29 'E i reira e ha'amana'o ai au i te fafaura'a tā'u i fafau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua fafau atu ho'i au ia rātou ē, e ha'aputupu'āmui mai au ia rātou i tō'u ihora tau mau ; 'e e hōro'a fa'ahou atu vau ia rātou te fenua o tō rātou ra mau metua 'ei 'āi'a nō rātou, 'oia ho'i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem, te fenua i fafauhia ra nō rātou ē a muri noa atu, tē nā reira mai ra te Metua.

30 'E a muri a'era, e tae mai te tau e porohia ai te 'īra'a nō tā'u ra 'evanelia ia rātou.

31 'E e ti'aturi rātou iā'u nei, 'e 'o vau 'o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, 'e e pure atu ho'i i te Metua i tō'u ra i'oa.

32 I reira e fa'ateitei tō rātou mau tīa'i i tō rātou reo, 'e e 'āmui tāhō'ē tō rātou reo i te hīmenera'a ; 'e e 'ite rātou te mata 'e te mata.

33 I reira e ha'aputupu'āmui fa'ahou mai ai te Metua ia rātou, 'e e hōro'a atu ai ia Ierusalem 'ei fenua 'āi'a nō rātou.

34 I reira e puroro noa atu ai te 'oa'oa—'A hīmene 'āmui mai, e te mau vāhi ano nō Ierusalem ; 'ua ha'amāhanahana ho'i te Metua i tōna mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aora 'oia ia Ierusalem.

35 'Ua fa'a'ite te Metua i tōna rima mo'a i mua i te mata o te mau nūna'a ato'a ; 'e e 'ite te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei i te fa'aorara'a a te Metua ; 'e te Metua 'e 'o vau nei hō'ē ia.

36 'E i reira e tupu ai tei pāpa'ihia, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē : 'A ara, 'a ara, 'e 'a 'ahu na i tō pūai, e Ziona ; 'a 'ahu na i tō mau 'ahu nehenehe, e Ierusalem, 'e te 'oire mo'a ē ; 'e mai teie taime atu 'eiaha roa te feiā peritome 'ore 'e te vi'ivi'i e tomo mai i roto ia 'oe na.

37 'A ueue na ia 'oe i te repo ra ; 'a ti'a i ni'a ; 'a pārahi i raro, e Ierusalem ; e tātara na ia 'oe i te mau tā'amu i ni'a i tō 'a'i na, e te tamāhine fa'atīhia nō Ziona ē.

38 Tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu : 'ua ho'o'outou ia 'outou iho i te aore ; 'e e ho'o-fa'ahou-hia mai ho'i 'outou ma te moni 'ore.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

- 39 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e 'ite tō'u ra mau ta'ata i tō'u nei i'oa ; 'oia ia, i taua mahana ra e 'ite rātou ē 'o vau ia te parau nei.
- 40 'E i reira, e parau atu ai rātou ē : 'Auē te nehenehe o te 'āvae o te ve'a i ni'a i te mau mou'a, 'o tei hōpoi mai i te mau parau maita'i ia rātou, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te parau hau ; 'o tei hōpoi mai i te mau parau maita'i ia rātou 'o tei maita'i, 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te fa'aorara'a ; 'o tei parau mai ia Ziona : Tē fa'atere ari'i nei tō 'oe Atua !
- 41 'E i reira e puroro noa atu ai te reo, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : 'A haere atu 'outou, 'a haere atu 'outou, 'a haere atu 'outou i rāpae mai reira atu ; 'eiaha roa e tāpe'a noa atu i te mea vi'ivi'i ; 'a haere atu 'outou i rāpae mai rotopū mai iāna ra ; 'ia mā 'outou 'o tē amo nei i te mau fāri'i a te Fatu ra.
- 42 'Eiaha roa ho'i 'outou e haere rū noa i rāpae 'e 'eiaha ho'i e horo 'ē atu ; e haere atu ho'i te Fatu nā mua ia 'outou, 'e nā te Atua nō 'Īserā'ela 'outou e pāruru i muri.
- 43 Inaha, e fa'atere 'aravihi maita'i tō'u tāvini ; e fa'ateiteihia 'oia 'e e fa'ahanahanahia 'e e teitei roa ho'i.
- 44 E rave rahi feiā tei māere ia 'oe—'ua fa'a'ino-roahia tōna hōho'a mata hau atu i tō te mau ta'ata ato'a ra, 'e tōna huru i te huru o te mau tamari'i tamāroa a te ta'ata ato'a nei—
- 45 'Oia ato'a te mau nūna'a e rave rahi, e pīpīhia ia e ana ; e māmū noa ho'i te vaha o te mau ari'i i mua iāna ; 'e e 'ite atu ho'i rātou i tei 'ore i fa'a'itehia atu ia rātou ra ; 'e e māmarama ho'i rātou i tei 'ore i fa'aro'ohia e rātou ra.
- 46 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e tupu mau teie mau mea ato'a, mai tā te Metua i fa'aue mai iā'u. 'E i reira, e fa'atupuhia ai teie fafaura'a 'o tā te Metua i fafau atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata ; 'e i reira Ierusalem e pārahi-fa'ahou-hia ai e tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e e riro te reira 'ei fenua 'āi'a nō rātou.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

3 Nephi 21

- 1 'E 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e hōro'a atu vau i te hō'ē tāpa'o ia 'outou, 'ia 'ite 'outou i te taimē e fātata ai teie mau mea i te tupu—'ia ha'aputuputu mai au i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'o tei ha'apurara-maoro-hia, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'e 'ia fa'ati'afa'ahou vau i tō'u ra Ziona i rotopū ia rātou.
- 2 'E inaha, teie te mea tā'u e hōro'a atu ia 'outou 'ei tāpa'o—nō te mea 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia tae i te tau e fa'a'itehia ai teie mau mea tā'u e fa'a'ite nei ia 'outou na, e tā'u iho e fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou a muri atu, i te mau 'Ētene, nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i tā te Metua e hōro'a atu ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ite rātou i te parau nō ni'a i teie nei feiā, 'oia ho'i te hō'ē toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, 'oia tō'u mau ta'ata tei ha'apurarahia e rātou ra.
- 3 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ia tae i te tau e fa'a'itehia ai teie mau mea e te Metua ia rātou ra, 'e 'ia tae i te tau e hōpoi mai ai te Metua i te reira mai roto mai ia rātou ia 'outou ra.
- 4 'Ua au ho'i i tō te Metua ra pa'ari, e mea ti'a roa ia rātou 'ia fa'anahonahohia i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'e 'ia riro rātou 'ei feiā ti'amā nā roto i te mana o te Metua ra, 'e 'ia tae mai teie mau mea mai ia rātou mai i te toe'a o tō 'outou hua'ai, 'ia tupu te fafaura'a a te Metua o tāna i fafau atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela e.
- 5 Nō reira, 'ia tae mai teie mau 'ohipa, 'e te mau 'ohipa ho'i 'o tē ravehia i rotopū ia 'outou a muri atu, mai roto mai i te mau 'Ētene i tō 'outou hua'ai 'o tē paruparu ra tō rātou fa'aro'o nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 6 Nō te mea 'ua ti'a roa i te Metua 'ia hōpoiha mai te reira mai roto mai i te mau 'Ētene, 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite atu i tōna mana i te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'o teie ho'i te tumu, mai te mea ē 'aita te mau 'Ētene e fa'a'eta'eta i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'ia tātarahapa rā, 'e 'ia haere mai iā'u, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa, 'e 'ia 'ite i te parau mau nō ni'a i te mau tufa'a nō tā'u mau ha'api'ira'a tumu, 'e 'ia tai'ohia i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.

3 Nephi 21

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

- 7 'E 'ia tupu mau teie mau mea, 'ia 'ite tō 'outou hua'ai i teie mau mea—e riro ia te reira 'ei tāpa'o ia rātou, 'ia 'ite rātou ē, 'ua ha'amatahia nā te 'ohipa a te Metua 'ia fa'atupuhia te fafaura'a tāna i fafau atu i te feiā nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 8 'E 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, 'e a muri a'era, e māmū noa ho'i te vaha o te mau ari'i ; 'e e 'ite atu ho'i rātou i tei 'ore i fa'a'itehia atu ia rātou ra ; 'e e māmarama ho'i rātou i tei 'ore i fa'aro'ohia e rātou ra.
- 9 Nō te mea i taua mahana ra, e 'ohipa ai te Metua i te hō'ē 'ohipa nō'u nei, 'e e riro te reira 'ei 'ohipa rahi 'e te māere i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e tē vai ra te tahi pae i rotopū ia rātou 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi i te reira, noa atu ā e parau-noa-hia atu te reira ia rātou e te hō'ē ta'ata.
- 10 Inaha rā, te ora o tō'u nei tāvini tei roto ia i tō'u nei rima ; nō reira e 'ore roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'amāuiui atu iāna, 'e noa atu e ha'aputahia 'oia nō rātou. Nā'u ra e fa'aora atu iāna, 'e e fa'a'ite atu ho'i au ia rātou ē, e mea rahi atu ā tō'u pa'ari i te rāve'a 'ino a te diabolō.
- 11 Nō reira, 'e a muri a'era, 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi i tā'u nei, 'oia 'o Iesu Mesia, mau parau, 'o tā te Metua e fa'a'ite atu nā roto iāna i te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'o tāna e hōro'a atu i te mana iāna nō te fa'a'ite atu i te reira i te mau 'Ētene, (e nā-reira-hia ia mai tā Mose i parau ra) e tāpū-ē-hia ia rātou mai rotopū atu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te fafaura'a.
- 12 'E tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'oia ho'i te toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, e tae ia rātou i rotopū i te mau 'Ētene, 'oia ia, i rotopū ia rātou mai te liona i rotopū i te mau 'ānimara o te uru rā'au ra, 'e mai te liona 'āpī i rotopū i te mau nana māmoe ; 'e 'ia haere ana'e 'oia nā roto ra, 'ua ta'ata'ahi ia, 'e 'ua hahae, e hu'ahu'a noa a'e, 'e 'aore roa e ta'ata nō te fa'aora mai.
- 13 E fa'ataehia atu tō rātou rima i ni'a i tō rātou mau 'enemi, 'e e hope roa tō rātou mau 'enemi i te tāpū-ē-hia.
- 14 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i te mau 'Ētene ē, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou ; ē a muri a'era, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Metua, e tu'u ai au i tā 'outou mau pua'ahorofenua i rotopū ia 'outou na, 'e e ha'amou vau i tā 'outou mau pere'o'o pua'ahorofenua.

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

15 'E e tāpū 'ē atu vau i te mau 'oire o tō 'outou fenua ; 'e e huri i te mau ha'apūra'a pa'ari i raro.

16 'E e tāpū 'ē atu vau i te mau 'ohipa diabolo mai roto mai i tō 'outou na fenua, 'e 'eiaha roa 'outou e rave i te feiā tahutahu.

17 E tāpū 'ē ato'a atu vau i tā 'outou mau hōho'a 'oti'otihia ra, 'e tā 'outou ho'i mau hōho'a i fa'ati'ahia i ni'a i rotopū ia 'outou ra ; 'e e 'ore roa 'outou e ha'amori fa'ahou i tei hāmanihia e tō 'outou ra rima.

18 'E e huti au i tā 'outou mau uru rā'au mai rotopū mai ia 'outou na ; nā reira ato'a e ha'amou vau i tō 'outou mau 'oire.

19 'E a muri a'era, e fa'a'orehia te mau ha'avare pā'āto'a, 'e te mau fa'ahemara'a, 'e te mau fe'i'ira'a, 'e te mau mārōra'a, 'e te mau 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a, 'e te mau 'ohipa tai'ata.

20 I te mea ho'i ē a muri a'era, tē nā 'ō mai ra te Metua, i taua mahana ra, 'o rātou 'o tē 'ore e tātarahapa 'e 'o tē 'ore e haere atu i tā'u ra Tamaiti here, 'o rātou ia tā'u e tāpū 'ē atu mai rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela e.

21 'E e fa'atae vau i te tāho'o 'e te riri 'ū'ana i ni'a ia rātou, 'e i ni'a ato'a i te feiā 'ētene mai tei 'ore ā i fa'aro'ohia e rātou.

22 'Ia tātarahapa rā rātou 'e 'ia fa'aro'o ho'i i tā'u ra mau parau, ma te fa'a'eta'eta 'ore i tō rātou 'ā'au, e fa'ati'a ia vau i tā'u 'ēkālesia i rotopū ia rātou, 'e e haere mai rātou i roto i te fafaura'a 'e e tai'ohia i rotopū i te toe'a nō Iakoba, 'o tā'u i hōro'a atu i teie nei fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō rātou.

23 'E nā rātou e tauturu i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, te toe'a nō Iakoba, 'e 'oia ato'a i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela 'o tē haere mai, 'ia patu rātou i te hō'ē 'oire, 'o tē parauhia, te Ierusalemā 'Āpī.

24 'E i reira rātou e tauturu ai i tō'u ra mau ta'ata i ha'apurarahia i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'era, 'ia ha'aputuputuhia rātou i roto i te Ierusalemā 'Āpī.

25 'E i reira te mana nō te ra'i e tae mai ai i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e e tae ato'a mai au i rotopū ia rātou.

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

- 26 'E i reira e ha'amatahia ai te 'ohipa a te Metua i taua mahana ra, 'e i taua ato'a ra mahana e porohia ai teie 'evanelia i rotopū i te toe'a o teie nei feiā. 'Oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, i taua mahana ra e ha'amatahia ai te 'ohipa a te Metua i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ato'a i ha'apurarahia ; 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu i te mau 'ōpū ato'a i mo'e na, 'o tā te Metua i arata'i 'ē atu i rāpae ia Ierusalem.
- 27 'Oia ia, e ha'amatahia te 'ohipa i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ato'a i ha'apurarahia, 'e nā te Metua e fa'aineine i te 'ē'a e ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia haere mai iā'u nei, 'e 'ia ti'aoro atu rātou i te Metua nā roto i tō'u nei i'oa.
- 28 'Oia ia, 'e i reira e ha'amatahia ai te 'ohipa i rotopū i te mau nūna'a ato'a ra, 'e nā te Metua e fa'aineine i te 'ē'a e ti'a ai i tōna mau ta'ata ato'a 'ia ha'aputuputuhia mai i te fenua nō tō rātou ra 'āi'a.
- 29 'E e haere atu rātou i rāpae i te mau nūna'a ato'a ra ; 'e 'aore rātou e haere rū noa i rāpae ; 'e 'aore ho'i rātou e horo 'ē atu, 'e e haere au nā mua ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra te Metua, 'e nā'u ho'i e pāruru ia rātou i muri.

And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

3 Nephi 22

- 1 'E i reira e tupu ai tei pāpa'ihia ra : 'A hīmene, e te vahine u'i, 'o 'oe tei 'ore i fānau ; 'a ha'apūai na i te hīmene, 'a pi'i ma te reo pūai, 'o 'oe 'o tei 'ore i māuiui fānau i te tamari'i ; nō te mea 'ua rahi atu ho'i tā te vahine u'i ra mau tamari'i i tā te vahine fa'aipoipohia ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.
- 2 'A fa'arahi i te vāhi nō tō 'oe ra ti'ahapa ; 'e 'a tu'u atu ia rātou 'ia ha'amāhorahora i te mau pāruru nō tō 'oe vāhi fa'aeara'a ; 'eiaha e fa'aherehere ; 'a fa'aroa i tā 'oe mau taura, 'e 'a ha'apa'ari i tā 'oe mau titi.
- 3 E tupu ho'i 'oe i te rahi, i te pae 'atau 'e i te pae 'auī, 'e e fatu tō 'oe ra hua'ai i te mau fenua o te mau 'Ētene, 'e e ta'atahia te mau 'oire pau ra ia rātou.
- 4 'Eiaha e mata'u ; e 'ore ho'i 'oe e ha'amā ; e 'ore ho'i 'oe e ha'amouhia ; e 'ore ho'i 'oe e fa'aha'amāhia ; e mo'e ho'i ia 'oe te ha'amāra'a nō tō 'oe 'āpīra'a, 'e e 'ore ho'i 'oe e ha'amana'o i te parau fa'a'ino nō tō 'oe 'āpīra'a, 'e e 'ore ho'i 'oe e ha'amana'o fa'ahou i te parau fa'a'ino nō tō 'oe huru vahine ivi.
- 5 'O tei hāmani ho'i ia 'oe ra, 'o tō tāne ia, 'o te Fatu Sabaota tōna i'oa ; 'e 'o tō 'oe Tāra'ehara, Tei Mo'a i 'Īserā'ela nei—o te Atua ia nō te mau fenua tā'āto'a nei tōna i'oa.
- 6 'Ua pi'i ho'i te Fatu ia 'oe mai te hō'ē vahine fa'aru'ehia ra, 'e 'ua 'oto noa tōna vārua, e mai te vahine i fa'aipoipo-'āpī-hia, 'a fa'aru'ehia ai 'oe ra, tē nā reira mai ra tō Atua.
- 7 Nō te hō'ē taime poto noa ho'i tō'u fa'aru'era'a ia 'oe ; e ha'aputuputu mai rā vau ia 'oe ma te aroha rahi.
- 8 Nō te riri 'ū'ana iti i huna ai au i tō'u mata ia 'oe nō te taime poto, nō te maita'i mure 'ore rā e fa'atae atu ai au i tō'u aroha i ni'a ia 'oe, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu tō 'oe Tāra'ehara.
- 9 Nō teie, mai te mau pape i te 'anotau ia Noa ra, 'e mai tā'u ho'i i tapu e 'ore roa te mau pape mai te tau ia Noa ra e tāpo'i fa'ahou i te fenua, 'e mai te reira ato'a tā'u nei tapura'a e 'ore roa vau e riri ia 'oe na.

3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

10 E ta'a 'ē atu ho'i te mau mou'a 'e e fa'anu'uhia ho'i te mau 'āivi, 'āre'a rā tō'u nei maita'i e 'ore roa ia e ta'a 'ē atu ia 'oe, e 'ore ato'a te fafaura'a nō tō'u nei hau e ta'a 'ē atu, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu 'o tei aroha mai ia 'oe.

11 E o 'oe tei ro'ohia e te 'ati e tei tā'irihia e te vero, 'e 'aita roa ho'i i tāmāhanahanahia ! Inaha, e ha'amau vau i tā 'oe ra mau 'ōfa'i i te pu'a 'una'una, 'e tō 'oe ra mau niu i te mau saphira.

12 'E e hāmani au i tō 'oe ra mau ha'amāramarama i te kadakada, 'e tō 'oe ra mau 'ūputa i te bereketa, 'e tō 'oe ra mau 'ōti'a ato'a i te mau 'ōfa'i maitata'i.

13 'E te mau tamari'i ato'a nā 'oe ra, e ha'api'ihia ia e te Fatu ; 'e e rahi te hau tō te mau tamari'i nā 'oe ra.

14 E ha'apāpūhia 'oe i te parauti'a ; e ātea 'ē roa 'oe i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a nō te mea e'ita 'oe e mata'u, 'e e ātea 'ē ho'i te mata'u rahi nō te mea e'ita te reira e fa'afātata mai ia 'oe.

15 Inaha, e ha'aputuputu tāhō'ē mai ho'i rātou nō te 'aro atu ia 'oe, 'eiaha rā nā roto i tō'u nei hina'aro ; 'e 'o rātou 'o tē ha'aputuputu tāhō'ē nō te 'aro atu ia 'oe ra, e hi'a ia 'ia maita'i 'oe.

16 Inaha, nā'u i hāmani i te ta'ata tūpa'i 'āuri 'o tei puhipuhi i te 'ārahu e 'ama a'era, 'e 'ua hāmani ihora 'oia i te hō'ē mauha'a nō tāna 'ohipa ; 'e nā'u ho'i i hāmani i te ta'ata ha'amāu'a nō te ha'amou.

17 'Aita roa te hō'ē mauha'a tama'i i hāmanihia nō te 'aro atu ia 'oe e manuia ; 'e te mau vaha ato'a e fa'a'ino mai ia 'oe nā roto i te ha'avāra'a, 'o tā 'oe ia e fa'ahapa atu. 'O te 'āi'a teie o te mau tāvini o te Fatu, 'e tō rātou parauti'a nō 'ō nei atu ia iā'u nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

3 Nephi 23

- 1 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia 'imi i teie mau mea. 'Oia ia, tē hōro'a atu nei au i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ia 'outou 'ia 'imi māite i teie mau mea ; e mea faufa'a rahi ho'i te mau parau a Isaia.
- 2 'E 'oia mau roa ho'i 'ua parau 'oia e rave rahi mau mea nō ni'a i tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; nō reira e mea ti'a 'ia parau ato'a 'oia i te mau 'Ētene.
- 3 'E te mau mea ato'a 'o tāna i parau, 'ua tupu ia 'e e tupu ato'a ia a muri atu, 'ia au i te mau parau 'o tāna i parau na.
- 4 Nō reira 'a ha'apa'o i tā'u mau parau ; 'a pāpa'i ho'i i te mau mea 'o tā'u i fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou na ; 'e 'ia au te tau 'e te hina'aro o te Atua e tae atu ai te reira i te mau 'Ētene.
- 5 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē ha'apa'o i tā'u ra mau parau 'e 'o tē tātarahapa 'e 'o tē bāpetizohia, e ora ia. 'A 'imi māite i tā te mau peropheta, e rave rahi ho'i tō rātou 'o tei fa'a'ite pāpū mai i taua mau mea nei.
- 6 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra 'oia ia rātou, i muri iho i tōna tātarara'a atu i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ato'a i noa'a ia rātou, 'ua nā ō 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, tē vai fa'ahou ra te tahi mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a 'o tā'u i hina'aro ia 'outou 'ia pāpa'i, 'e 'aore ho'i te reira ia 'outou na.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā ō atu ra 'oia ia Nephi : 'A hōpoi mai na i te pāpa'a parau 'o tā 'outou i pāpa'i na.
- 8 'E i tō Nephi hōpoira'a mai i te mau pāpa'a parau, 'e i te tu'ura'a mai i te reira i mua iāna, 'ua hi'o ihora 'oia i te reira, 'e 'ua nā ō atu ra :
- 9 'Oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, i fa'aue na vau i tō'u ra tāvini ia Samuela, te 'āti Lamana, 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū atu i teie nei feiā, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē, 'ia tae i te mahana e fa'ahanahana ai te Metua i tōna ra i'oa iā'u nei, e rave rahi te feiā mo'a e ti'a mai, mai te pohe mai, 'e 'a fā mai ai i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'a poihere atu ai ia rātou. 'E 'ua nā ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : 'Aita ānei te reira i tupu ?
- 10 'E 'ua pāhono mai ra tāna mau pipi iāna : 'Oia mau, e te Fatu, 'ua tohu mai Samuela mai te au i tā 'oe ra mau parau, 'e 'ua tupu pā'āto'a te reira.

3 Nephi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

11 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra Iesu ia rātou : Nō te aha ho'i 'aita 'outou i pāpa'i i taua mea nei ē, e rave rahi feiā mo'a i ti'a mai 'e 'ua fā mai i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'ua poihere mai ia rātou ?

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amana'o ihora Nephi ē, 'aita te reira i pāpa'ihia.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra Iesu 'ia pāpa'ihia te reira ; nō reira 'ua pāpa'ihia te reira mai tāna i fa'aue mai.

14 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu tātara'a atu i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a pā'āto'a 'ei hō'ē, 'e 'o tā rātou ho'i i pāpa'i, 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia ia rātou 'ia ha'api'i atu i te mau mea 'o tāna i tātara atu ia rātou.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

3 Nephi 24

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aeue atu ra 'oia ia rātou 'ia pāpa'i i te mau parau tā te Metua i hōro'a ia Malaki ra, 'o tāna e fa'a'ite ia rātou. 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era te reira i te pāpa'ihia, 'ua tātara atu ra 'oia i te reira. 'E teie te mau parau tāna i fa'a'ite ia rātou ra, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Metua ia Malaki—Inaha, e tono atu vau i tā'u ve'a, 'e nāna e fa'aineine i te 'ē'a i mua iā'u, 'e te Fatu tā'outou e 'imi ra, e tae vave mai ia i tōna ra hiero, te ve'a ho'i nō te fafaura'a, 'o tā 'outou i 'oa'oa na ; inaha, e tae mai 'oia, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 2 'O vai rā tē ti'a 'ia fa'a'oroma'i i te mahana nō tōna haerera'a mai, 'e 'o vai tē mau māite 'ia fā mai 'oia ? Nō te mea 'ua au ho'i 'oia i te auahi a te ta'ata tāmā moni ra, 'e mai te pu'a a te ta'ata tāmā 'ahu ra.
- 3 'E e pārahi mai 'oia mai te ta'ata tāmā moni 'e te ta'ata tāmā 'ārio ra ; 'e nāna e tāmā i te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Levi, 'e e tāmā ia rātou mai te 'auro 'e te 'ārio ra, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia pūpū mai i te mau ō i te Fatu nā roto i te parauti'a.
- 4 I reira e riro ai te ō a Iuda 'e tā Ierusalemā 'ei mea māuruuru nā te Fatu, mai te au i te 'anotau tahito ra, 'e mai te au i te mau matahiti i muta'a ihora.
- 5 'E e ha'afātata atu vau nō te ha'avā ia 'outou ; 'e e riro vau 'ei 'ite 'oi'oi i te feiā tahutahu, 'e i te feiā fa'aturi, 'e i te feiā tapu ha'avare, 'e i te feiā i fa'aiti roa i te 'aufau i tei tārahuhia ra, i te vahine 'ivi 'e te 'ōtare, 'e i tei fa'aru'e 'ē atu i te ta'ata 'ē, 'e 'aore i mata'u mai iā'u, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 6 'O vau ho'i te Fatu, 'aita roa vau e tau i ; nō reira ho'i 'aita roa 'outou 'e te mau tamaiti a Iakoba i ha'amouhia.
- 7 Mai te mau mahana mai ā o tō 'outou mau metua tō 'outou fāriu-'ē-ra'a atu i tā'u ra mau 'ōro'a, 'e 'aore i ha'apa'o i te reira. 'A fāriu mai iā'u nei, 'e e fāriu atu vau ia 'outou na, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra. 'Āre'a rā te parau mai nei 'outou ē : E fāriu atu mātou i te aha ?
- 8 E 'eiā ānei te ta'ata nei i tā te Atua ? 'Ua 'eiā ho'i 'outou i tā'u nei. 'Āre'a rā te parau mai nei 'outou ē : I 'eiā mātou i tā 'oe i te aha ? I te 'ahuru o te tao'a 'e te mau ō.

3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

- 9 'Ua 'anatemahia 'outou i te hō'ē 'anatemara'a, nō te mea 'ua 'eiā 'outou, tō teie nūna'a tā'āto'a, i tā'u nei.
- 10 Hōpoi mai na 'outou i te 'ahuru ato'a o te mau tao'a i roto i te fare vaira'a tao'a, 'ia mā'ahia tō'u nei fare ; 'e 'a tāmata mai ai iā'u nei, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra, 'e 'aita ānei au e 'īriti atu i te mau ha'amāramarama o te ao ra, 'e 'a nīnī'i atu ai i te hō'ē ha'amaita'ira'a 'e 'aita roa e nava'i te vaira'a nō te fāri'i mai i te reira.
- 11 'E nō 'outou e 'avau atu ai au i tei ha'amou ra, 'e e 'ore roa 'oia e ha'amou i te mau mā'a nō tō 'outou ra fenua ; 'e e 'ore ho'i tā 'outou vine nō te 'āua e aupārahia, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 12 'E e parauhia 'outou e tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'o te maita'i, 'e e riro 'outou 'ei feiā nehenehe, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 13 Tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, e mea teiaha tā 'outou parau i ni'a iā'u nei. Tē parau nei ho'i 'outou ē : E aha tā mātou i parau nō te fa'ahapa ia 'oe na ?
- 14 'Ua parau ho'i 'outou ē : E mea faufa'a 'ore 'ia ha'amori i te Atua, 'e e aha tā tātou faufa'a 'ia ha'apa'o i tāna mau 'ōro'a 'e 'ua haere noa ho'i tātou ma te 'oto i mua i te Fatu Sabaota ra ?
- 15 'E i teienei, tē parau ra tātou i te feiā te'ote'o 'ei mea 'oa'oa ; 'oia ia, 'e te feiā i rave i te 'ohipa 'ī'ino ra 'ei mea manuia ; 'oia ia, 'e te feiā i fa'ahapa i te Atua ra 'ei mea fa'aorahia.
- 16 'E 'o rātou 'o tei mata'u i te Fatu ra, 'ua paraparau pinepine ia i te tahi 'e i te tahi ; 'e 'ua ha'apa'o mai 'e 'ua fa'aro'o mai te Fatu ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia ihora te tahi buka ha'amana'ora'a i mua iāna, nō te feiā i mata'u i te Fatu, 'e 'o tei mana'o i tōna ra i'oa.
- 17 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu Sabaota, e riro rātou nā'u, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra 'a rave ai au i tā'u mau tao'a faufa'a rahi roa ; 'e e fa'aherehere au ia rātou mai te ta'ata e fa'aherehere i tāna iho tamaiti 'o tei tāvini mai iāna.
- 18 'Ei reira 'outou e fāriu ai 'e e hāro'aro'a ai i te huru-'ē-ra'a i roto i te feiā parauti'a 'e te feiā parauti'a 'ore, i roto i te ta'ata i tāvini i te Atua 'e te ta'ata 'aore i tāvini iāna.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

3 Nephi 25

- 1 Inaha ho'i, tē fātata mai ra te mahana mai te umu ra i te 'amara'a ; 'e te feiā te'ote'o ato'a ra, 'oia ia, 'e 'o rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei rave i te parauti'a 'ore ra, e riro ia 'ei 'aihere ; e 'ama rātou 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra ; e 'ore roa e fa'atoehia tō rātou a'a 'e e 'ore ato'a te 'āma'a.
- 2 'O 'outou rā 'o tei mata'u mai i tō'u nei i'oa, e fā mai ia te Tamaiti o te Parautia ia 'outou ma te ora i raro a'e i tōna ra pererau ; 'e e haere ho'i 'outou i rāpae, 'e e tupu ho'i 'outou mai te mau fanau'a pua'atoro fa'a'amu i roto i te 'ōpiha ra.
- 3 'E nā 'outou ho'i e ta'ata'ahi i te feiā parauti'a 'ore ; nō te mea e riro rātou mai te rehu auahi i raro a'e i te 'apu o tō 'outou 'āvae 'ia tae i te mahana e rave ai au i te reira, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu Sabaota ra.
- 4 'A ha'amana'o 'outou i te ture a tō'u tāvini ra 'o Mose, 'o tā'u i hōro'a atu 'ei fa'auera'a iāna i Horeba ra nā tō 'Iserā'ela tā'āto'a, ē tae noa atu i te mau ture 'e te mau parau.
- 5 Inaha, e tonono atu vau i te peropheta ra ia Eliaha ia 'outou na, hou te taera'a mai o te mahana rahi 'e te mata'u o te Fatu ;
- 6 'Ia fa'afāriu 'oia i te 'ā'au o te mau metua i te mau tamari'i, 'e te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i i tō rātou mau metua, 'o te haere mai ho'i au e tā'iri i te fenua nei i te 'anatemara'a.

3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

3 Nephi 26

- 1 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu fa'a'itera'a atu i teie mau mea, 'ua ha'amāramarama atu ra 'oia i te reira i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua ha'amāramarama atu 'oia i te mau mea ato'a ia rātou, te mau mea rahi 'e te mau mea iti ato'a ho'i.
- 2 'E 'ua parau atu ra 'oia : 'Ua fa'aue mai te Metua iā'u 'ia hōro'a atu i teie mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ia 'outou, 'e 'ia au i tōna ra pa'ari, e mea ti'a roa i te reira 'ia hōro'ahia atu i te mau u'i a muri atu.
- 3 'E 'ua ha'amāramarama atu 'oia i teie mau mea ato'a, 'e 'oia mau mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ē tae roa atu i te taime 'oia e haere mai ai i roto i tōna ra hanahana—'oia ia, 'e 'oia mau i te mau mea ato'a 'o tē tae mai i ni'a i te fenua nei, ē tae noa atu 'ua tahe te mau mea ri'i tumu i te ve'ave'a rahi, 'e e 'ōtarohia ho'i te fenua mai te parau e 'ōtarohia ra, 'e e mou te mau ra'i 'e te fenua.
- 4 Ē tae noa atu i te mahana rahi 'e te hope'a ra, te mahana e ti'a atu ai te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e te mau 'ōpū ato'a, 'e te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e tō te mau reo ato'a i mua i te Atua, 'ia ha'avāhia nō tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa, mai te mea e mea maita'i te reira 'e 'aore rā mai te mea e mea 'ino te reira—
- 5 Mai te mea e mea maita'i te reira, e roa'a ia rātou te ti'afa'ahoura'a nō te ora mure 'ore ; 'e mai te mea e mea 'ino e roa'a ia rātou te ti'afa'ahoura'a nō te fa'ahapara'a ; 'ia tuea noa te hō'ē i te tahi pae, 'e te tahi pae i te tahi atu pae, mai te au i te aroha, 'e te parauti'a, 'e te mo'ara'a i roto i te Mesia ra, 'o tei ora na nā mua roa i te ha'amatarā'a o te ao nei.
- 6 'E i teienei, 'aita roa e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia i roto i teie nei buka te hānerera'a nō te tufa'a o te mau mea tā Iesu i ha'api'i atu i te mau ta'ata.
- 7 Inaha rā, tei roto i te mau 'api a Nephi te tufa'a rahi nō te mau mea tāna i ha'api'i atu i te mau ta'ata.
- 8 'E 'o teie mau mea tā'u i pāpa'i, e tufa'a iti a'e ia te reira nō te mau mea tāna i ha'api'i atu i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua pāpa'i au i te reira nō tō'u hina'aro 'ia fa'a'itefa'ahou-hia mai te reira, mai te mau 'Ētene mai i teie mau ta'ata, mai te au i te mau parau tā Iesu i parau mai ra.

3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

9 'E 'ia fāri'i rātou i teie mau mea, e mea ti'a roa ho'i 'ia nā mua rātou i te fāri'i i teie mau mea 'ia tāmatahia tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e 'ia ti'aturi rātou i teie mau mea, 'ei reira ia e fa'a'itehia mai ai te mau mea huru rahi a'e ia rātou.

10 'E 'ia 'ore rātou e ti'aturi i teie mau mea, 'ei reira ia e tāpe'ahia atu ai te mau mea huru rahi a'e ia rātou, nō te fa'ahapara'a ia rātou.

11 Inaha, tē fātata ra vau i te pāpa'i i te reira, 'e i 'ō'otihia te tā'āto'ara'a nō te reira i ni'a iho i te mau 'api a Nephi, 'ua tāpe'ahia rā vau e te Fatu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E tāmata vau i te fa'aro'o o tō'u ra mau ta'ata.

12 Nō reira, tē pāpa'i nei au, 'o Moromona, i te mau mea i fa'auehia mai iā'u e te Fatu. 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au, 'o Moromona, i tā'u ra mau parau, 'e tē pāpa'i nei au i te mau mea i fa'auehia mai iā'u.

13 Nō reira, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, 'ua ha'api'i te Fatu i te mau ta'ata, nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro ; 'e i muri iho i te reira 'ua fa'a'ite pinepine mai 'oia iāna iho ia rātou, 'e 'ua vāvāhi pinepine 'oia i te pāne, 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i i te reira, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu i te reira nā rātou.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'api'i atu ra 'e 'ua tauturu atu ra 'oia i te mau tamari'i a te mau ta'ata 'o tāna i parau a'enei, 'e 'ua ha'amatarā atu ra 'oia i tō rātou arero, 'e 'ua parau atu ra rātou i tō rātou mau metua i te mau mea rahi 'e te māere, 'oia i te mau mea rahi a'e i tei fa'a'itehia mai i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua ha'amatarā 'oia i tō rātou arero 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia paraparau.

15 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tōna haerera'a atu i ni'a i te ra'i—teie te piti o te taime 'oia i fa'a'ite mai ai iāna iho ia rātou, 'e i haere atu ai i te Metua ra, i muri iho i tōna fa'aorara'a i tō rātou feiā ma'i, 'e te piri'o'i, 'e te matapō, 'e te tari'a turi, 'e i muri iho i tāna mau huru fa'aorara'a ato'a i te mau ta'ata i rotopū ia rātou, 'e te fa'ati'ara'a i te hō'ē ta'ata mai te pohe mai, 'e te fa'a'itera'a i tōna mana ia rātou, 'e te haerera'a i ni'a i te Metua—

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

- 16 Inaha, i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu
'āmui mai ra te mau ta'ata i te vāhi hō'ē, 'e 'ua 'ite atu
'e 'ua fa'aro'o ho'i rātou i teie mau tamari'i ; 'oia mau
ia, 'ua hāmama mai te mau aiū i tō rātou vaha, 'e 'ua
fa'ahiti mai i te mau mea māere ; 'e te mau mea tā
rātou i fa'ahiti mai 'ua 'ōpanihia 'eiaha roa te hō'ē
noa atu ta'ata 'ia pāpa'i i te reira.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, mai taua taime mai ra 'ua ha'amata
ihora te mau pipi i mā'itihia e Iesu i te bāpetizo 'e i te
ha'api'i i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'o tei haere mai ia
rātou ra ; 'e te mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'o tei bāpetizohia
nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, 'ua fa'a'ihia ia rātou i te Vārua
Maita'i.
- 18 'E e rave rahi tō rātou 'o tei 'ite atu 'e 'o tei fa'aro'o
ho'i i te mau mea 'aore e ti'a 'ia fa'ahiti-fa'ahou-hia,
'e 'aore ho'i e fa'ati'ahia 'ia pāpa'ihia.
- 19 'E 'ua ha'api'i rātou 'e 'ua poihere ho'i i te tahi 'e i
te tahi ; 'e 'ua 'āmui-tāhō'ē-hia tā rātou mau mea
ato'a i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua rave te ta'ata tāta'itahi i
te 'ohipa parauti'a te tahi i te tahi.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave rātou i te mau mea ato'a
mai tā Iesu i fa'ae mai ia rātou ra.
- 21 'E 'o rātou 'o tei bāpetizohia nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu
ra, 'ua parauhia ia rātou i te 'ēkālesia a te Mesia.

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the
multitude gathered themselves together, and they
both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes
did open their mouths and utter marvelous things;
and the things which they did utter were forbidden
that there should not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus
had chosen began from that time forth to baptize
and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as
many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were
filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable
things, which are not lawful to be written.

And they taught, and did minister one to another;
and they had all things common among them, every
man dealing justly, one with another.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even
as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus
were called the church of Christ.

3 Nephi 27

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'a haere atu ai 'e 'a poro haere ai te mau pipi a Iesu i te mau mea tā rātou i fa'aro'o 'e i hi'o, 'e 'a bāpetizo ai nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputuputuhia mai ra te mau pipi 'e 'ua tāhō'ēhia rātou nā roto i te pure 'ū'ana 'e te ha'apaera'a mā'a.
- 2 'E 'ua fa'a'ite fa'ahou atu ra Iesu iāna iho ia rātou, 'e tē pure ra rātou i te Metua nā roto i tōna ra i'oa ; 'e 'ua fā atu ra Iesu 'e 'ua ti'a atu ra i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou : E aha tā 'outou e hina'aro iā'u 'ia hōro'a atu ia 'outou ?
- 3 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra rātou iāna : E te Fatu, tē hina'aro nei mātou 'ia fa'a'ite mai 'oe i te i'oa tā mātou e pi'i i teie nei 'ēkālesia ; tē vai nei ho'i te mau mārōra'a i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nō ni'a i taua vāhi ra.
- 4 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra te Fatu ia rātou : 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, nō te aha te mau ta'ata e amuamu ai 'e e mārō ai nō teie nei mea ?
- 5 'Aita ānei rātou i tai'o i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a, 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia rave i te i'oa o te Mesia, 'oia ho'i, i tō'u nei i'oa i ni'a iho ia 'outou ? 'E 'o teie ho'i te i'oa e pi'ihia i ni'a iho ia 'outou i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 6 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē rave i tō'u nei i'oa i ni'a iho iāna 'e 'o tē fa'aitoito tāmau noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, 'o 'oia ia te fa'aorahia i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 7 Nō reira, te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou e rave, e rave ia 'outou i te reira nā roto i tō'u nei i'oa ; nō reira e pi'i 'outou i te 'ēkālesia i tō'u nei i'oa ; 'e e pure atu 'outou i te Metua nā roto i tō'u nei i'oa, 'ia ha'amaita'i 'oia i te 'ēkālesia nō'u ra.
- 8 'E nāhea te reira e riro ai 'ei 'ēkālesia nā'u, maori rā 'ia pi'ihia i tō'u nei i'oa ? Mai te mea ho'i e pi'ihia te hō'ē 'ēkālesia i te i'oa nō Mose ra, e 'ēkālesia ia nā Mose ; 'e 'aore rā 'ia pi'ihia te reira i te i'oa nō te hō'ē ta'ata ra, e 'ēkālesia ia nā taua ta'ata ra ; 'ia pi'ihia rā te reira i tō'u nei i'oa, e 'ēkālesia ia nā'u, mai te mea 'ua patuhia te reira i ni'a i tā'u ra 'evanelia.

3 Nephi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

- 9 'Oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'ua patuhia 'outou i ni'a iho i tā'u nei 'evanelia ; nō reira 'a fa'ahiti mai i te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou e fa'ahiti mai nā roto i tō'u nei i'oa ; nō reira 'ia ti'aoro 'outou i te Metua, nō te maita'i o te 'ēkālesia, nā roto i tō'u nei i'oa, e fa'aro'o mai te Metua ia 'outou.
- 10 'E mai te mea 'ua patuhia te 'ēkālesia i ni'a iho i tā'u nei 'evanelia, i reira e fa'a'ite mai te Metua i tāna iho mau 'ohipa i roto i te reira.
- 11 'Āre'a rā 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia patuhia i ni'a iho i tā'u nei 'evanelia, 'e 'ia patuhia te reira i ni'a iho i te mau 'ohipa a te ta'ata nei, 'e 'aore rā i ni'a iho i te mau 'ohipa a te diabolō, 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e 'oa'oa tō rātou i roto tā rātou mau 'ohipa nō te hō'ē noa tau, 'e 'aita e maoro e tae mai te hope'a, 'e i reira e tāpūhia rātou i raro 'e e hurihia atu i roto i te auahi, 'e mai reira mai e 'ore roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia riro fa'ahou mai tō rātou huru mātāmua.
- 12 E pe'ehia atu ho'i rātou e tā rātou mau 'ohipa, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa ho'i i tāpūhia ai rātou i raro ; nō reira, 'a ha'amana'o i te mau mea tā'u i fa'a'ite atu ia 'outou na.
- 13 Inaha, 'ua hōro'a atu vau i tā'u 'evanelia ia 'outou, 'e 'o teie te 'evanelia tā'u i hōro'a atu ia 'outou—'oia ho'i, 'ua haere mai au i roto i te ao nei nō te rave i te hina'aro o te Metua, nō te mea 'ua tonō mai tō'u Metua iā'u.
- 14 'E 'ua tonō mai tō'u Metua iā'u 'ia fa'ateiteihia vau i ni'a i te sātāuro ; 'e i muri iho i tō'u fa'ateiteira'ahia i ni'a i te sātāuro, 'ia ti'a iā'u 'ia 'ume mai i te mau ta'ata ato'a iā'u nei ; 'e mai iā'u i fa'ateiteihia i ni'a e te mau ta'ata, 'oia ato'a ia e fa'ateiteihia te mau ta'ata i ni'a e te Metua, 'ia ti'a mai i mua iā'u, 'ia ha'avāhia nō tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa, mai te mea e mea maita'i te reira 'e 'aore rā mai te mea e mea 'ino te reira—
- 15 'E teie ia te tumu i fa'ateiteihia ai au ; nō reira, 'ia au i te mana o te Metua, e 'ume mai au i te mau ta'ata ato'a iā'u nei, 'ia ha'avāhia rātou mai te au i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa.
- 16 'E a muri a'era, 'o 'oia 'o tē tātarahapa 'e tē bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa, e fa'a'ihia ia ; 'e 'ia fa'aitoito tāmau noa 'oia ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, inaha, e fa'ariro vau iāna 'ei mea hapa 'ore i mua i tō'u ra Metua i taua mahana ra e ti'a atu ai au nō te ha'avā i tō te ao nei.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

- 17 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e fa'aitoito tāmāu noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, 'o 'oia ia tē tāpūhia i raro 'e 'o tē huri-ato'a-hia i roto i te auahi, 'e mai reira mai e 'ore roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia riro fa'ahou mai tō rātou huru mātāmua, nō te mea 'o te reira ia te huru parauti'a o te Metua.
- 18 'E 'o teie ia te parau 'o tāna i hōro'a mai i te mau tamarī'i a te ta'ata nei. 'E nō te reira ho'i 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te mau parau 'o tāna i hōro'a mai, 'e 'aita roa 'oia e ha'avare, e fa'atupu rā 'oia i tāna mau parau ato'a.
- 19 'E 'aita roa te hō'ē mea vi'ivi'i e o i roto i tōna bāsileia ; nō reira 'aita roa te hō'ē mea e o atu i roto i tōna fa'aeara'a, maori rā 'o rātou 'o tei tāmā i tō rātou mau 'ahu i roto i tō'u ra toto, 'e nō tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e te tātarahapara'a i tā rātou mau hara ato'a, 'e tō rātou ha'apa'o maita'i ē tae noa atu i te hope'a.
- 20 I teienei, 'o teie te fa'auera'a : 'A tātarahapa, 'outou pā'āto'a e te mau hope'a o te fenua nei, 'e 'a haere mai iā'u nei 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u nei i'oa, 'ia ha'amo'ahia 'outou nā roto i te fāri'ira'a i te Vārua Maita'i, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ti'a mai ma te pōra'o 'ore i mua iā'u i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 21 'Oia mau, 'oia mau, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o tā'u 'evanelia teie ; 'e 'ua 'ite 'outou i te mau mea i tūtauhia ia 'outou 'ia rave i roto i tā'u nei 'ēkālesia ; 'e te mau 'ohipa tā 'outou i 'ite iā'u i te ravera'a 'o tā 'outou ato'a ia e rave ; 'e te mau mea tā 'outou i 'ite iā'u i te ravera'a 'o tā 'outou ia e rave.
- 22 Nō reira, mai te mea e rave 'outou i teie mau mea, e ao ia tō 'outou, nō te mea e fa'ateitehia 'outou i te mahana hope'a.
- 23 'A pāpa'i i te mau mea tā 'outou i 'ite na 'e i fa'aro'o na, maori rā i te mau mea 'o tei 'ōpanihia.
- 24 'A pāpa'i i te mau 'ohipa a teie nei feiā, 'o tē tupu a muri atu, mai tei pāpa'ihia, nō te mau mea i tupu na.
- 25 Inaha ho'i, nā roto mai i te mau buka i pāpa'ihia ra, 'e 'o te pāpa'ihia ho'i a muri atu, e ha'avāhia ai teie nei feiā, nā roto i te reira e 'itehia ai tā rātou mau 'ohipa i te ta'ata nei.
- 26 'E inaha, 'ua pāpa'ihia te mau mea ato'a e te Metua ; nō reira nā roto mai i te mau buka 'o tē pāpa'ihia e ha'avāhia ai tō te ao nei.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

- 27 'E 'ua 'ite ānei 'outou ē, e riro 'outou 'ei mau ha'avā nō teie nei feiā, mai te au i te ha'avāra'a 'o tā'u e hōro'a atu ia 'outou ; 'o tē riro ho'i 'ei mea tia. Nō reira, e aha tō 'outou huru e au ai ? 'Oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, mai iā'u nei ia.
- 28 'E i teienei, tē haere nei au i te Metua. 'E 'oia mau tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou e ani atu i te Metua i tō'u nei i'oa, e hōro'ahia mai ia ia 'outou.
- 29 Nō reira, 'a ani, 'e e fāri'i 'outou ; 'a pātōtō, 'e e 'iritihia mai ia ia 'outou ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē ani, e fāri'i ia ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē pātōtō, e 'iritihia mai ia.
- 30 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua rahi tō'u 'oa'oa, ē tae roa atu i te 'ira'a, nō 'outou, 'e nō teie nei u'i ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'e tē 'oa'oa nei ho'i te Metua 'e te mau melahi mo'a ato'a ho'i, nō 'outou 'e nō teie nei u'i ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i te hō'ē nō rātou i mo'e.
- 31 Inaha, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite pāpū 'outou ; tē parau nei au nō rātou 'o tē ora nei i teie nei, i roto i teie u'i ; 'e 'aita te hō'ē o rātou e mo'e ; 'e nā roto ia rātou i fāri'i ai au i te 'ira'a nō te 'oa'oa.
- 32 Inaha rā, tē 'oto nei au nō te maha o te u'i mai teie atu u'i, nō te mea 'ua arata'i-tī-tī-hia rātou e ana 'oia ho'i mai te tamaiti o te pohe ; 'e e ho'o atu ho'i rātou iā'u nō te 'ārio 'e te 'auro, 'e nō taua mea ra e pau i te huhu 'e 'o tē tomohia 'e 'o te 'eiāhia e te feiā 'eiā. 'E i taua mahana ra e fa'autu'a ai au ia rātou, ē tae noa atu ho'i i te fa'afāriura'a i tā rātou mau 'ohipa i ni'a iho i tō rātou iho upo'o.
- 33 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Iesu i teie mau parau, 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia i tāna ra mau pipi : 'A tomo 'outou nā te 'ūputa piriha'o ; e mea piriha'o ho'i te 'ūputa, 'e e mea oaoa ho'i te 'ē'a e tae atu ai i te ora, e mea iti ho'i 'o tē 'ite atu i te reira ; 'āre'a rā e mea 'ā'ano te 'ūputa, 'e e mea ateatea te 'ē'a e tae atu ai i te pohe, 'e e rave rahi ho'i te nā reira i te haere, 'e 'ia tae mai te pō, 'aore atu ra e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia rave i te 'ohipa.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fullness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

3 Nephi 28

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā Iesu paraura'a atu i teie mau parau, 'ua parau atu ra 'oia i tāna mau pipi, te tahi i te tahi, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ia rātou : E aha tā 'outou i hina'aro iā'u nei, 'ia tae atu vau i te Metua ?
- 2 'E 'ua parau mai ra rātou pā'āto'a, maori rā e to'otoru, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : Tē hina'aro nei mātou 'ia tae i te matahiti pa'ari o te ta'ata nei, 'e 'ia fa'aotihia tā mātou nei 'ohipa i parauhia ai mātou e 'oe ra, 'ia tae vave atu mātou ia 'oe i roto i tō 'oe ra bāsileia.
- 3 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : E ao tō 'outou nō te mea 'ua hina'aro 'outou i taua mea nei iā'u ; nō reira, 'ia tae'ahia tō 'outou matahiti i te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma piti, e tae mai 'outou iā'u nei i roto i tō'u bāsileia ; 'e iā'u nei e fāri'i ai 'outou i te hau.
- 4 'E 'ia oti a'era tāna paraura'a atu ia rātou, 'ua fāriu atu ra 'oia i ni'a i te to'otoru ra, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra ia rātou : E aha tā 'outou i hina'aro iā'u 'ia rave nō 'outou 'ia tae atu vau i te Metua ?
- 5 'E 'ua 'oto ihora tō rātou 'ā'au, nō te mea 'ua mata'u rātou 'ia parau atu iāna i te mea tā rātou i hina'aro.
- 6 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia ia rātou : Inaha, 'ua 'ite au i tō 'outou mau mana'o, 'e i hina'aro na ho'i 'outou i te mea tā Ioane, tā'u pipi here, i hina'aro iā'u nei, 'e i fa'aea na 'oia i pīha'i iho iā'u 'a tāvini ai au, hou vau i fa'ateiteihia ai 'e te mau 'āti Iuda.
- 7 Nō reira, 'ia ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia atu ā 'outou, 'e e 'ore roa ho'i 'outou e 'ite i te pohe ; 'āre'a rā e ora noa 'outou nō te 'ite atu i te mau 'ohipa ato'a a te Metua i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, ē tae noa atu ho'i 'ua fa'atupuhia te mau mea ato'a mai te au i te hina'aro o te Metua, i te taime au e tae mai ai i roto i tō'u ra hanahana ma te mau mana nō te ra'i mai.
- 8 'E e 'ore roa 'outou e 'ite i te mau māuiui nō te pohe ; 'ia tae mai rā vau i roto i tō'u ra hanahana, e fa'ahuru-'ē-hia 'outou mai te amora'a mata, mai te tino tāhuti noa 'ia riro 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore ; 'e i reira 'outou e ha'amaita'ihia ai i roto i te bāsileia o tō'u ra Metua.

3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

- 9 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e 'ore roa 'outou e 'ite i te māuiui 'a pārahi ai 'outou i te tino nei, e 'ore ato'a i te 'oto, maori rā nō te mau hara a tō te ao nei; 'e teie mau mea ato'a 'o tā'u ia e rave, nō te mea 'ua hina'aro mai 'outou i te reira iā'u nei, 'e i hina'aro na ho'i 'outou 'ia 'āfa'i mai i te mau vārua o te ta'ata iā'u nei, 'a vai a'e ai te ao nei.
- 10 'E nō te reira ho'i e fāri'i 'outou i te 'ira'a nō te 'oa'oa; 'e e pārahi ho'i 'outou i raro i roto i te bāsileia o tō'u ra Metua; 'oia ia, e 'i 'outou i te 'oa'oa, mai tā te Metua i hōro'a mai iā'u i te 'ira'a nō te 'oa'oa; 'e e riro mau ho'i 'outou mai iā'u nei te huru, 'e 'o vau nei ho'i mai te Metua ra; 'e te Metua 'e 'o vau nei hō'ē ā ia.
- 11 'E tē fa'a'ite pāpū nei te Vārua Maita'i nō ni'a i te Metua 'e iā'u nei; 'e te hōro'a mai ra te Metua i te Vārua Maita'i i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, nō'u nei.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia fa'aoti a'era Iesu i te parau i teie mau parau, 'ua tāpe'a atu ra 'oia ia rātou tāta'itahi i tōna rima, maori rā i nā pipi e to'otoru 'o tē pārahi mai, 'e 'ua reva atu ra 'oia.
- 13 'E inaha, 'ua vētea a'era te mau ra'i, 'e 'ua hōpoihiā atu ra rātou i ni'a i te ra'i, 'e 'ua hi'o atu ra 'e 'ua fa'aro'o atu ra ho'i i te mau mea 'aore e au i te ta'ata 'ia parau.
- 14 'E 'ua 'ōpanihia rātou 'ia fa'ahiti; 'e 'aita roa ho'i i hōro'ahia te mana ia rātou 'ia fa'ahiti i te mau mea tā rātou i 'ite 'e i fa'aro'o.
- 15 'E tei roto ānei rātou i te tino 'e 'aore tei rāpae ānei i te tino, 'aita rātou i 'ite; 'e mai te mea ra ho'i ia rātou ē, 'ua fa'ahuru-'ē-hia rātou, 'oia ho'i 'ua fa'ahuru-'ē-hia mai teie tino 'i'o 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia 'ite atu i te mau 'ohipa a te Atua.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave fa'ahou rātou i te 'ohipa i ni'a i te fenua nei; 'aita rā rātou i fa'a'ite i te mau mea tā rātou i fa'aro'o 'e i hi'o, nō te fa'auera'a i hōro'ahia mai ia rātou i ni'a i te ra'i.
- 17 'E i teienei, e tino tāhuti ānei 'e 'aore rā e tino tāhuti 'ore ānei tō rātou mai te mahana mai nō tō rātou fa'ahuru-'ē-ra'a-hia, 'aita vau i 'ite.

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

18 'Āre'a rā teie tā'u i 'ite, mai te au i te pāpa'a parau i pāpa'ihia—'ua hāhaere rātou nā ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e 'ua tāvini atu ra i te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a, ma te tāhō'ē mai ia rātou e rave rahi 'o tei ti'aturi i tā rātou parau i te 'ēkālesia; 'e ma te bāpetizo ia rātou; 'e 'ua fāri'i rātou e rave rahi 'o tei bāpetizohia i te Vārua Maita'i.

19 'E 'ua hurihia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a e te mau ta'ata e 'ere nō te 'ēkālesia. 'E 'aita atu ra i ti'a i te mau fare tāpe'ara'a 'ia tāpe'a ia rātou, nō te mea 'ua pararī te reira nā te 'āfara'a.

20 'E 'ua hurihia rātou i roto i te fenua; 'āre'a rā 'ua tā'iri rātou i te fenua i te parau a te Atua, 'e nō reira ho'i nā tōna mana i fa'aora mai ia rātou mai roto mai i te mau 'āpo'o hōhonu o te fenua; 'e nō reira 'aita i ti'a i taua feiā ra 'ia 'ō i te mau 'āpo'o hōhonu nō te tāpe'a noa ia rātou.

21 E toru taime tō rātou hurira'ahia i roto i te umu auahi 'e 'aita roa rātou i fāri'i i te hō'ē pēpē.

22 E piti taime tō rātou hurira'ahia i roto i te 'āpo'o rahi o te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri ra; 'e inaha 'ua ha'uti noa rātou i te mau 'ānimara mai te tamari'i e ha'uti noa ra i te fanau'a māmoe ra, 'e 'aita roa i fāri'i i te hō'ē pēpē.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a o Nephi, 'e 'ua poro haere atu ra i te 'evanelia a te Mesia i te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a i te fenua; 'e 'ua fa'afāriuhia mai rātou i te Fatu, 'e 'ua tāhō'ēhia mai i te 'ēkālesia a te Mesia, 'e 'ua nā reira te mau ta'ata nō taua u'i ra i te ha'amaita'ihia, mai te au i te parau a Iesu.

24 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au, 'o Moromona, i te parau i teie mau mea i teie nei taime.

25 Inaha, 'ua fātata roa vau i te pāpa'i i te mau i'oa o te mau ta'ata 'o tē 'ore e tāota i te pohe, 'āre'a rā 'ua 'ōpani te Fatu iā'u, nō reira 'aita vau e pāpa'i i te reira, 'e 'ua hunahia ho'i te reira i tō te ao nei.

26 Inaha rā, i 'ite na vau ia rātou, 'e i tāvini mai na ho'i rātou iā'u.

27 'E inaha, e tae atu rātou i rotopū i te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'aita roa ho'i te mau 'Ētene e 'ite ē 'o vai rātou.

28 E tae ato'a atu rātou i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda, 'e 'aita roa ho'i te mau 'āti Iuda e 'ite ē 'o vai rātou.

But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

- 29 'E a muri a'era, 'ia tae i te tau e au i tā te Fatu 'ōpuara'a pa'ari, 'e e riro rātou i te tāvini i tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a nō 'Iserā'ela i ha'apurarahia, 'e i tō te mau nūna'a ato'a, tō te mau 'ōpū ato'a, tō te mau reo ato'a 'e te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e nā rātou e arata'i mai mai roto ia rātou ra i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi ia Iesu, 'ia fa'ati'ahia tō rātou ra hina'aro, 'e 'oia ato'a nō te mana o te Atua i roto ia rātou ra e ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū atu i te ta'ata.
- 30 'E 'ua riro rātou mai te mau melahi a te Atua ra, 'e 'ia pure atu rātou i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, e ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'ite atu ia rātou iho i te ta'ata mai te au i tō rātou ra mana'o.
- 31 Nō reira, e mau 'ohipa rahi 'e te māere tē ravehia e rātou hou te mahana rahi e tae mai ai, 'e e ti'a māite atu ai te mau ta'ata ato'a i mua i te vāhi ha'avāra'a a te Mesia.
- 32 'Oia ia 'e i rotopū ho'i i te mau 'Ētene e 'ohipa rahi 'e te māere tē ravehia e rātou, hou taua mahana ha'avāra'a ra.
- 33 'E 'āhiri tei ia 'outou ra te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ato'a 'o tē fa'a'ite ra i te 'ā'amu nō te mau 'ohipa māere ato'a a te Mesia, e 'ite ia 'outou, 'ia au i te mau parau a te Mesia ē, e tupu mau teie mau mea.
- 34 'E 'auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē ore e ha'apa'o i te mau parau a Iesu, 'e 'ia rātou ato'a 'o tāna i mā'iti 'e i tono atu i rotopū ia rātou ra ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e fāri'i i te mau parau a Iesu 'e i te mau parau a te feiā 'o tāna i tono mai ra, e 'ore ato'a ia rātou e fāri'i iāna ; 'e nō reira, e 'ore ato'a 'oia e fāri'i iāna 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 35 E mea huru maita'i a'e 'āhiri 'aita rātou i fānauhia mai. Tē mana'o ra ānei ho'i 'outou ē, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'a'ore i te fa'au'ara'a a te Atua 'o tei fa'aririhia 'ia tae mai i ni'a iho ia 'outou, 'e 'o tei ta'ata'ahihia e te 'āvae ta'ata, e noa'a ai te fa'aorara'a i te ta'ata ?
- 36 'E i teienei, inaha, i parau na vau nō ni'a ia rātou 'o tei mā'itihia e te Fatu, 'oia ia, i te to'otoru i hōpoi-roahia i ni'a i roto i te mau ra'i, 'e 'aita vau i 'ite ē 'āhiri 'ua tāmāhia ānei tō rātou tino tāhuti 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore—

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

37 Inaha rā, mai te taime au i pāpa'i ai i te reira, 'ua ui atu vau i te Fatu, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oia iā'u ē, e mea ti'a roa 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia tō rātou mau tino, 'e 'ia 'ore rā e mea ti'a roa ia ia rātou 'ia tāota i te pohe.

38 Nō reira, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tāota i te pohe, e mea ti'a roa 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia tō rātou mau tino, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia fāri'i i te māuiui 'e te 'oto, maori rā nō te mau hara a tō te ao nei.

39 I teienei, 'aita teie fa'ahuru-'ē-ra'a i 'aifāito i te fa'ahuru-'ē-ra'a 'o tē tupu i te mahana hope'a ; 'āre'a rā 'ua tupu te hō'ē fa'ahuru-'ē-ra'a i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita roa tō Sātane e mana i ni'a ia rātou, e ti'a ai iāna 'ia fa'ahema ia rātou ; 'e 'ua ha'amo'ahia rātou i te tino, 'e e mea mo'a rātou, 'e 'aita roa e ti'a i te mau mana nō te fenua nei 'ia tāpe'a ia rātou.

40 'E e vai noa rātou mai te reira te huru ē tae noa atu i te mahana ha'avāra'a a te Mesia ; 'e i taua mahana ra e fāri'i ai rātou i te fa'ahuru-'ē-ra'a rahi a'e, 'e e fāri'ihia ai i roto i te bāsileia o te Metua 'e e 'ore roa e haere fa'ahou i rāpae, e pārahi rā i pīha'i iho i te Atua ē a muri noa atu i roto i te mau ra'i.

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

3 Nephi 29

- 1 'E i teienei, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'ia tae i te tau e au i tō te Fatu pa'ari, e tae teie mau parau i te mau 'Ētene, mai te au i tāna parau, 'ei reira 'outou e 'ite ai ē, 'ua ha'amata a'ena te fafaura'a tā te Metua i fafau i te mau tamari'i o 'Īserā'ela i te tupu, nō ni'a i tō rātou fa'aho'ira'ahia i tō rātou mau fenua 'āi'a.
- 2 'E e 'ite 'outou ē, e tupu iho ā te mau parau a te Fatu 'o tei parauhia na e te mau peropheta mo'a ra ; 'e 'eiaha roa ho'i 'outou 'ia parau ē, tē fa'atāere ra te Fatu i te mahana nō tōna haerera'a mai i te mau tamari'i o 'Īserā'ela.
- 3 'E 'eiaha ho'i 'outou 'ia mana'o i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au ē, e mea faufa'a 'ore te mau parau i parauhia na, inaha ho'i, e ha'amana'o te Fatu i tāna fafaura'a 'o tāna i fafau atu i tōna ra mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 4 'E 'ia 'ite 'outou i teie nei mau parau i te tupura'a i rotopū ia 'outou, 'eiaha 'outou e vahavaha i te mau ravera'a a te Fatu, 'e tei tōna rima 'atau ho'i tāna 'o'e nō tāna ha'avāra'a parauti'a ; 'e inaha, i taua mahana ra, 'ia vahavaha atu 'outou i tāna ra mau ravera'a, e ro'ohia ia 'outou i te reira.
- 5 'Auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē vahavaha atu i te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu ; 'oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē huna i te Mesia 'e i tāna mau 'ohipa !
- 6 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē huna i te mau heheura'a a te Fatu, 'e 'o tē parau ē, 'aita te Fatu e fa'atupu fa'ahou ra i tāna mau 'ohipa nā roto i te heheura'a, 'e 'aore rā nā roto i te tohu, 'e 'aore rā nā roto i te mau hōro'ara'a, 'e 'aore rā nā roto i te parau i te mau reo 'e'e, 'e 'aore rā nā roto i te mau fa'aorara'a i te feiā ma'i, 'e 'aore rā nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i !
- 7 'Oia ia, 'auē ho'i 'oia 'o tē parau i taua mahana ra ē, nā roto i te hina'aro 'ia faufa'ahia 'oia, e'ita roa e ti'a ia Iesu Mesia 'ia rave i te hō'ē semeio ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē nā reira e riro ia mai te tamaiti o te pohe, 'e nōna ra 'aita roa ia e aroha e vai ra, 'ia au i te parau a te Mesia !

3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

8 'Oia iā, 'eiaha roa 'outou e fa'a'ino fa'ahou ā, 'eiaha ato'a e vahavaha atu, 'eiaha ato'a e tāhitohito atu i te mau 'āti Iuda, 'eiaha ato'a i te tahi noa atu toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; inaha ho'i, tē ha'amana'o ra te Fatu i tāna fafaura'a ia rātou, 'e e nā reira 'oia ia rātou 'ia au i tāna i tapu.

9 Nō reira, 'eiaha roa 'outou e mana'o ē, e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia huri i te rima 'atau o te Fatu i te pae 'aui, 'ia 'ore 'oia e fa'atae mai i te ha'avāra'a nō te fa'atupu i te fafaura'a 'o tāna i fafau i te 'utuāfare nō 'Īserā'ela.

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

3 Nephi 30

- 1 'A fa'aro'o mai na, e te mau 'Ētene, 'e 'a ha'apa'o na i te mau parau a Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua ora, 'o tāna i fa'aue mai iā'u 'ia parau atu nō ni'a ia 'outou na, inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'aue mai 'oia iā'u 'ia pāpa'i, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :
- 2 'A fāriu mai, e te mau 'Ētene, mai tō 'outou mau haere'a parauti'a 'ore, 'e 'a tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'Ī'ino, 'e tā 'outou mau ha'avare 'e mau fa'ahemara'a, 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa tai'ata, 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa huna 'e te vi'ivi'i, 'e tā 'outou mau ha'amorira'a 'īdolo, 'e tā 'outou mau taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa ha'avare a te mau tahu'a, 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa fe'i'i, 'e tā 'outou mau mārōra'a, 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'Ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, 'e 'ia haere mai iā'u, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u nei i'oa, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fāri'i i te ha'amatarara'a nō tā 'outou ra mau hara, 'e 'ia fa'a'īhia i te Vārua Maita'i, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tai'ohia i rotopū i tō'u ra mau ta'ata nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.

3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

Maha Nephi

Te Buka a Nephi

te Tamaiti a Nephi—Te Hō'ē o te
Mau pipi a Iesu Mesia

*Te 'ā'amu nō te mau ta'ata o Nephi, mai te au i tāna
pāpa'a parau.*

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri ihora te toru 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti, 'e 'oia ato'a te toru 'ahuru 'e ma pae, 'e inaha, 'ua fa'ati'a te mau pipi a Iesu i te 'ēkālesia a te Mesia i roto i te mau fenua pā'āto'a ē 'ati noa a'e. 'E 'o rātou e rave rahi 'o tei haere mai ia rātou ma te tātarahapa mau i tā rātou mau hara, 'ua bāpetizohia ia nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu ; 'e 'ua fāri'i ato'a ho'i rātou i te Vārua Maita'i.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'ua fa'afāriuhia te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a i ni'a i te fenua i te Fatu, te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'aita roa te mau mārōra'a 'e te mau tama'ira'a i tupu i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua rave te ta'ata tāta'itahi i te mea ti'a te tahi i te tahi.
- 3 'E 'ua 'āmui-tāhō'ē-hia tā rātou mau mea ato'a i rotopū ia rātou ; nō reira 'aita e feiā tao'a 'e te veve, 'aita e feiā tīti 'e te ti'amā, 'āre'a rā 'ua riro rātou pā'āto'a 'ei feiā ti'amā, 'e 'ei feiā 'o tē fāri'i i te hōro'ara'a nō 'ō mai i te ra'i ra.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ma'iri ato'a ihora te toru 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, 'e tē vai noa ra te hau i ni'a i te fenua.
- 5 'E 'ua ravehia te mau 'ohipa rahi 'e te māere e te mau pipi a Iesu, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'aora rātou i te feiā ma'i, 'ua fa'ati'a mai i te feiā pohe, 'ua fa'aora i te feiā piri'o'i 'ia haere, 'e te feiā matapō 'ia 'ite, 'e te feiā tari'a turi 'ia fa'aro'o ; 'e 'ua rave rātou i te mau huru semeio ato'a i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'aita roa rātou i rave i te hō'ē a'e semeio maori rā 'ua ravehia te reira nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu.

Fourth Nephi

The Book of Nephi

Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of
the Disciples of Jesus Christ

*An account of the people of Nephi, according to his
record.*

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

- 6 'E 'ua ma'iri ihora te toru 'ahuru 'e ma va'u o te matahiti, 'e mai te reira ato'a te toru 'ahuru 'e ma iva, 'e te maha 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē, 'e te maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti, 'oia ia, 'e 'ua ma'iri ato'a ihora te maha 'ahuru 'e ma iva, 'e 'oia ato'a te pae 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē, 'e te pae 'ahuru 'e ma piti ; 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu 'ua ma'iri ato'a te pae 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te mau matahiti.
- 7 'E 'ua ha'amanuia rahi te Fatu ia rātou i ni'a i te fenua ; 'oia ia, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua patu fa'ahou rātou i te mau 'oire i te vāhi nō te mau 'oire i pa'apa'a i te auahi.
- 8 'Oia ia, 'ua patu fa'ahou rātou i taua 'oire rahi ra nō Zarahemela.
- 9 'Āre'a rā e rave rahi te mau 'oire i tomo, 'e 'ua haere mai ra te mau pape i ni'a 'e 'ua tāpo'ihia i te reira ; nō reira, 'aita roa i ti'a i teie mau 'oire 'ia fa'a'āpīhia.
- 10 'E i teienei, inaha, i muri a'era, 'ua tupu rahi te pūai o te mau ta'ata o Nephi, 'e 'ua tupu 'oi'oi rahi rātou 'e 'ua roa mai ho'i 'ei feiā nehenehe 'e te auhia.
- 11 'E tē fa'aipoipohia ra rātou, 'e te hōro'ahia ra 'ia fa'aipoipohia, 'e tē ha'amaita'ihia ra mai te au i te rahi o te mau fafaura'a 'o tā te Fatu i fafau atu ia rātou.
- 12 'E 'aita rātou i pe'e atu i te mau 'ohipa 'e te 'ōro'a nō te ture a Mose ; 'āre'a rā 'ua pe'e atu rātou i te mau fa'auera'a tei fāri'ihia e rātou nō 'ō mai i tō rātou Fatu 'e tō rātou Atua, ma te tāmāu noa i te ha'apae i te mā'a 'e i te pure, 'e i te ha'aputupu pinepine nō te pure 'e nō te fa'aro'o i te parau a te Fatu.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa te mārōra'a i tupu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a i te fenua ato'a ; 'āre'a rā 'ua ravehia te mau semeio rahi i rotopū i te mau pipi a Iesu.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ma'iri ihora te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti, 'e 'oia ato'a te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti ; 'oia ia, i te pae hope'a, ē tae noa atu 'ua ma'iri te hitu 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti ; 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu 'ua ma'iri hō'ē hānere matahiti, 'e 'ua hope roa te mau pipi a Iesu, 'o tāna i mā'iti ra, i te haere atu i te pāradaiso o te Atua, maori rā nā pipi e to'otoru 'o tē pārahi ra ; 'e tē vai ra te tahi atu ā mau pipi i fa'atōro'ahia 'ei mono nō rātou ; 'e e rave rahi ato'a tō taua u'i ra tei pohe.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightful people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'aita te mārōra'a i tupu i ni'a i te fenua, nō te mea 'ua vai te aroha o te Atua i roto i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata.
- 16 'E 'aita ho'i te nounou i tupu, 'aita te mārōra'a, 'aita te ti'arepu, 'aita te tai'ata, 'aita te ha'avare, 'aita te taparahi ta'ata, 'e 'aita te mau huru 'ohipa hā'iri'iri ato'a ; 'e 'oia mau roa 'aita ho'i e mau ta'ata i 'oa'oa roa atu i rotopū i te mau ta'ata i hāmanihia e te rima o te Atua.
- 17 'Aita e feiā 'eiā haru, 'aita e ta'ata taparahi ta'ata, 'aita ato'a e mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'aita ato'a e mau pupu ta'ata ta'a 'ē ; 'ua riro rā rātou 'ei hō'ē, e mau tamari'i nā te Mesia ; 'e e feiā 'āi'a i te bāsileia o te Atua.
- 18 'E e ao ho'i tō rātou ! Nō te mea 'ua ha'amaita'i te Fatu ia rātou i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa ato'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua ha'amaita'ihia 'e 'ua ha'amanuiahia rātou ē tae noa atu 'ua ma'iri hō'ē hānere 'e hō'ē 'ahuru matahiti ; 'e 'ua mou te u'i mātāmua i muri a'e i te Mesia, 'e 'aita e mārōra'a i ni'a te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ihora 'o Nephi, 'o tei pāpa'i i teie nei pāpa'a parau, (e 'ua pāpa'i 'oia i te reira i ni'a i te mau 'api a Nephi ra) 'e 'ua riro ihora tāna tamaiti ra 'o Amosa 'ei mono nōna i te pāpa'ira'a i te reira ; 'e 'ua pāpa'i ato'a 'oia i ni'a i te mau 'api a Nephi ra.
- 20 'E 'ua pāpa'i 'oia i te reira e va'u 'ahuru 'e ma maha matahiti, 'e 'ua vai noa te hau i ni'a i te fenua, maori rā te tahi noa pae iti o te mau ta'ata 'o tei tāiva i te 'ēkālesia 'e 'o tei rave i te i'oa o te mau 'āti Lamana i ni'a iho ia rātou ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou te mau 'āti Lamana i te tupu i ni'a i te fenua.
- 21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ato'a ihora 'o Amosa, (hō'ē ia hānere e iva 'ahuru 'e ma maha matahiti i muri a'e i te taera'a mai o te Mesia) 'e 'ua riro ihora tāna tamaiti ra 'o Amosa 'ei mono nōna i te pāpa'ira'a i te pāpa'a parau ; 'e 'ua pāpa'i ato'a ho'i 'oia i ni'a i te mau 'api a Nephi ra ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia ia i roto i te buka a Nephi, 'oia ho'i teie nei buka.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ma'iri ihora te piti hānere o te matahiti ; 'e 'ua mou pā'āto'a te piti o te u'i, maori rā te hō'ē pae iti noa.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

- 23 'E i teienei, tē hina'aro nei au, 'o Moromona, 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, 'ua fānau rahi te mau ta'ata, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua purara rātou nā ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e 'ua riro ho'i rātou 'ei feiā tao'a rahi, nō tō rātou manuia i roto i te Mesia ra.
- 24 'E i teienei, 'ia tae a'era i te piti hānere 'e ma hō'ē matahiti, 'ua ha'amata ihora te tahi pae i rotopū ia rātou i te fa'ateihia i roto i te te'ote'o, mai te 'ō'omora'a i te mau 'ahu moni rahi, 'e te tāmaura'a i te mau poe nehenehe, 'e te mau mea nehenehe o teie nei ao.
- 25 'E mai te reira mai taime 'aita tā rātou mau faufa'a 'e tā rātou mau tao'a i 'āmui-tāhō'ē-hia i rotopū ia rātou.
- 26 'E 'ua ha'amata rātou i te fa'ata'a 'ē ia rātou i roto e rave rahi mau huru pupu ; 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te patu i te mau 'ēkālesia nā rātou iho 'ia roa'a tā rātou faufa'a, 'e 'ua ha'amata ho'i i te fa'aru'e i te 'ēkālesia mau a te Mesia.
- 27 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri a'era te piti hānere 'e hō'ē 'ahuru matahiti, 'ua tupu mai e rave rahi mau 'ēkālesia i ni'a i te fenua ; 'oia ia, e rave rahi te mau 'ēkālesia tei parau ē 'ua 'itea ia rātou te Mesia, 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'aru'e rātou i te mau tufa'a rahi nō tāna 'evanelia, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fāri'i rātou i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a, 'e 'ua hōro'a atu rātou i te mea mo'a i te ta'ata i 'ōpanihia nō tōna ti'amā 'ore.
- 28 'E 'ua tupu rahi roa taua 'ēkālesia nei nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e nō te mana o Sātane tei haru i tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 29 'E 'oia ato'a, tē vai fa'ahou ra te tahi 'ēkālesia tei huna i te Mesia ; 'e 'ua hāmani 'ino rātou i tō te 'ēkālesia mau a te Mesia, nō tō rātou ha'eha'a 'e nō tō rātou ti'aturi i te Mesia ; 'e 'ua vahavaha mai ho'i ia rātou nō te mau semeio e rave rahi i ravehia i rotopū ia rātou ra.
- 30 Nō reira 'ua fa'a'ohipa rātou i te mana 'e te ha'amanara'a i ni'a i te mau pipi a Iesu, 'o tei pārahi i rotopū i tō te 'ēkālesia, 'e 'ua huri atu ia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'āre'a rā nā roto i te mana nō te parau a te Atua tei vai na i roto ia rātou ra, 'ua pararī ihora te fare tāpe'ara'a nā te 'āfara'a, 'e 'ua haere atu ra rātou ma te rave i te mau semeio rahi i rotopū ia rātou.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

31 Terā rā, noa atu ā teie mau semeio ato'a i ravehia, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta noa te mau ta'ata i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua tītau 'ia taparahi mai ia rātou, mai tā te mau 'āti Iuda i Ieruselema i tītau 'ia taparahi ia Iesu, mai te au i tāna parau.

32 'E 'ua huri ia rātou i roto i te mau umu auahi, 'e 'ua haere mai rātou i rāpae 'e 'aita roa i fāri'i i te hō'ē pēpē.

33 'E 'ua huri ato'a ia rātou i roto i te mau ana o te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri, 'e 'ua ha'uti noa ihora rātou i te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri mai te hō'ē tamari'i e ha'uti ra i te fanau'a māmoē; 'e 'ua haere mai rātou i rāpae mai rotopū mai ia rātou, 'e 'aita roa i fāri'i i te hō'ē pēpē.

34 'Ua fa'a'eta'eta rā te mau ta'ata i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'ua arata'ihia ho'i rātou e te mau tahu'a ha'avare e rave rahi 'e te mau peropheta ha'avare e rave rahi nō te patu i te mau 'ēkālesia e rave rahi, 'e nō te rave ho'i i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a. 'E 'ua tūpa'i mai rātou i te mau ta'ata o Iesu; 'aita rā te mau ta'ata o Iesu i tūpa'i fa'ahou atu. 'E nō reira 'ua paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o 'e 'ua rave i te parauti'a 'ore, i terā matahiti 'e i terā matahiti, ē tae roa atu 'ua ma'iri e piti hānere 'e toru 'ahuru matahiti.

35 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i teie matahiti, 'oia ia, i te piti hānere 'e toru 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti, 'ua tupu te 'āmahamahara'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata.

36 'E i muri a'era, i teie matahiti 'ua 'itehia te tahi mau ta'ata 'o tei ma'irihia te i'oa te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua roto rātou 'ei feiā fa'aro'o mau i te Mesia; 'e i rotopū ia rātou tē vai ato'a ra te tahi mau ta'ata 'o tei ma'irihia te i'oa te mau 'āti Lamana—te mau 'āti Iakoba, 'e te mau 'āti Iosepha, 'e te mau 'āti Zorama.

37 Nō reira 'ua ma'irihia te i'oa o te feiā ti'aturi mau i te Mesia, 'e tei ha'amori mau i te Mesia, ('e tei rotopū ia rātou nā pipi to'otoru a Iesu 'o tē pārahi ra) 'o te mau 'āti Nephi ia, 'e te mau 'āti Iakoba, 'e te mau 'āti Iosepha, 'e te mau 'āti Zorama.

38 'E i muri a'era, 'o rātou 'o tei pāto'i i te 'evanelia 'ua pi'ihia rātou e mau 'āti Lamana, e mau 'āti Lemuela, e mau 'āti Isema'ela; 'e 'aita tō rātou fa'aro'o i paruparu, 'āre'a rā 'ua pāto'i mau rātou i te 'evanelia a te Mesia; 'e 'ua ha'api'i rātou i tā rātou mau tamari'i 'eiaha roa e ti'aturi i te reira, mai tō rātou mau metua te huru 'o tei paruparu i te mātāmua roa.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

39 'E 'ua tupu te reira nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i a tō rātou mau metua, mai tō te mātāmua roa mai ā. 'E 'ua ha'api'ihia rātou 'ia 'ino'ino atu i te mau tamari'i a te Atua, mai te mau 'āti Lamana i ha'api'ihia 'ia 'ino'ino atu i te mau tamari'i a Nephi mai te mātāmua mai ā.

40 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ma'iri te piti hānere 'e maha 'ahuru 'e ma maha matahiti, 'e 'o te reira ia te huru o te mau 'ohipa a taua feiā ra. 'E 'ua tupu te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te rahi, 'e 'ua hau roa atu rātou i te rahi i te mau ta'ata o te Atua.

41 'E 'ua tāmāu noa rātou i te patu i te mau fare purera'a nō rātou iho, 'e 'ua fa'a'una'una i te reira i te mau huru tao'a rahi ato'a. 'E i reira 'ua ma'iri ihora te piti hānere e pae 'ahuru matahiti 'e te piti hānere 'e ono 'ahuru matahiti.

42 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora te mau ta'ata parauti'a 'ore o taua feiā ra i te fa'ati'a i te mau tapura'a huna 'e te mau pupu 'ohipa huna a Gadianetona ra.

43 'E 'ua ha'amata ato'a te mau ta'ata i parauhia te mau ta'ata o Nephi, i te fa'atupu i te te'ote'o i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au, nō tā rātou mau tao'a rahi, 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā te'ote'o mai tō rātou mau taea'e, mai te mau 'āti Lamana.

44 'E mai taua tau atu ra 'ua ha'amata te mau pipi i te 'oto nō te mau hara a tō te ao nei.

45 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri te toru hānere matahiti, 'ua riro te mau ta'ata o Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana 'ei feiā parauti'a 'ore roa, 'e 'ua riro tō te tahi huru mai tō te tahi.

46 'E i muri a'era, 'ua purara te feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona nā ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a ; 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē a'e ta'ata parauti'a e vai ra, maori rā te mau pipi a Iesu. 'E 'ua ha'apu'e rahi rātou i te 'auro 'e te 'ārio, 'e 'ua ho'o atu 'e 'ua ho'o mai rātou i roto i te mau huru tapihoora'a ato'a.

47 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri te toru hānere 'e pae matahiti, (tē vai noa ra te mau ta'ata i roto i te parauti'a 'ore) 'ua pohe ihora Amosa ; 'e nā tōna taea'e, 'o Amaronā, i ha'apa'o i te pāpa'a parau 'ei mono nōna.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

48 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri te toru hānere 'e piti 'ahuru matahiti, 'ua fa'ahepohia ihora Amaronā e te Vārua Maita'i 'ia huna i te mau pāpa'a parau mo'a—'oia ia, i te mau pāpa'a parau mo'a ato'a i tu'uhia mai mai terā u'i i terā u'i, 'o tei riro 'ei mea mo'a—ē tae noa atu i te toru hānere 'e piti 'ahuru matahiti i muri a'e i te taera'a mai o te Mesia.

49 'E 'ua huna 'oia i te reira i te Fatu ra, 'ia tae fa'ahou mai te reira i te toe'a o te 'utuāfare o Iakoba, mai te au i te mau parau tohu 'e te mau fafaura'a a te Fatu. 'E 'o te hope'a teie nō te pāpa'a parau tuatāpapa a Amaronā.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

Te Buka a Moromona

Moromona 1

- 1 'E i teienei, tē pāpa'i nei au, 'o Moromona, i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau nō te mau mea tā'u i 'ite 'e tā'u ato'a ho'i i fa'aro'o, 'e tē ma'iri nei au i tō te reira i'oa te Buka a Moromona.
- 2 'E i te taime i huna ai Amarona i te mau pāpa'a parau i te Fatu ra, 'ua haere mai ra 'oia iā'u nei, ('ua fātata tō'u matahiti i te hō'ē 'ahuru 'e 'ua ha'amata vau i te ha'api'ihia 'ia au i te 'ite o tō'u ra mau ta'ata) 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra Amarona iā'u : 'Ua 'ite au ē, e tamari'i ha'apa'o maita'i 'oe 'e te 'oi'oi i te 'ite.
- 3 Nō reira, 'ia tae tō 'oe ra matahiti i te piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha, 'ua hina'aro vau ia 'oe 'ia ha'amana'o i te mau mea tā 'oe i ha'api'i mai nō ni'a i teie nei feiā ; 'e 'ia taeahia tō 'oe matahiti, 'a haere atu i te fenua ra nō Anituma, ē tae roa atu i te hō'ē 'āivi i parauhia 'o Sima ; 'e i reira tō'u vaihōra'a atu i te Fatu i te mau 'ō'otira'a mo'a ato'a nō ni'a i teie nei feiā.
- 4 'E inaha, e rave atu 'oe i te mau 'api a Nephi ia 'oe ra, 'e te toe'a ra e vaiho noa ia 'oe i tō rātou iho vāhi ; 'e e 'ō'oti 'oe i te mau mea ato'a tā 'oe i ha'api'i mai nō ni'a i teie nei feiā i ni'a i te mau 'api a Nephi.
- 5 'E 'o vau nei, 'o Moromona, e hua'ai au nō Nephi, ('e te i'oa o tō'u ra metua tāne 'o Moromona ato'a ia) 'e 'ua ha'amana'o vau i te mau mea tā Amarona i fa'aue mai iā'u.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era tō'u matahiti i te 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē, 'ua hōpoihiā atu ra vau e tō'u metua tāne i te fenua i te pae apato'a, 'oia i te fenua nō Zarahemela ra.
- 7 'Ua 'ī te fenua tā'āto'a i te mau fare, 'e 'ua rahi roa ato'a te ta'ata, mai te one tahatai ra.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra 'ua tupu te 'arora'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie, 'oia ho'i, te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e te mau 'āti Iakoba, 'e te mau 'āti Iosepha, 'e te mau 'āti Zorama ; 'e teie 'arora'a tei rotopū ia i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e te mau 'āti Lemuela, 'e te mau 'āti Isema'ela.

The Book of Mormon

Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

- 9 I teienei 'ua parauhia te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e te mau 'āti Lemuela, 'e te mau 'āti Isema'ela e mau 'āti Lamana, 'e teie nā pupu e piti 'ua parauhia ia, te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amatahia taua 'arora'a ra i te mau 'ōti'a nō Zarahemela, i pīha'i iho i te mau pape nō Sidona.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui mai te mau 'āti Nephi i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, 'e 'ua hau atu te reira i te toru 'ahuru tauatini. 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra 'ua tupu te mau 'arora'a e rave rahi, 'e 'ua pau te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua taparahi pohe rātou e rave rahi.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'ore te mau 'āti Lamana i tā rātou 'ōpuara'a, 'e 'ua tae mai te hau i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua vai noa atu ra te hau nō te ārea e maha matahiti te maoro, 'e 'aita roa te ha'amani'ira'a toto i tupu.
- 13 'Āre'a rā 'ua vai noa te parauti'a 'ore i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua rave 'ē atu te Fatu i tāna mau pipi herehia, 'e i 'ore ai te 'ohipa nō te mau semeio 'e nō te fa'aorara'a nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino a te mau ta'ata.
- 14 'E 'aita a'era te mau hōro'ara'a i tae mai nō 'ō mai i te Fatu ra, 'e 'aita ho'i te Vārua Maita'i i tae mai i ni'a ia rātou nō tō rātou parauti'a 'ore 'e te ti'aturi 'ore.
- 15 'E 'ua tae a'era tō'u matahiti i te 'ahuru 'e ma pae e nō tō'u ho'i 'ā'au ha'apa'o maita'i, nō reira 'ua haere mai ra te Fatu e fārerei iā'u, 'e 'ua ta'a ihora vau ē 'ua 'ite ihora ho'i i te maita'i o Iesu.
- 16 'E 'ua fa'aitoito ihora vau 'ia a'o atu i teie nei feiā, 'āre'a rā 'ua tāpirihia tō'u vaha, 'e 'ua 'ōpanihia vau 'ia a'o atu ia rātou ; inaha ho'i, 'ua hina'aro mau rātou 'ia pāto'i atu i tō rātou Atua ; 'e 'ua 'āfa'i-'ē-hia atu te mau pipi herehia i rāpae i te fenua nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 17 'Āre'a rā 'ua pārahi noa vau i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'ōpanihia ho'i au 'ia a'o atu ia rātou, nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou ra 'ā'au ; 'e nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au 'ua 'anatemahia te fenua nō rātou.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

18 'E nā teie feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona, 'o tei fa'aea na i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, i fa'a'ino i te fenua, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'amata te mau ta'ata i te huna i tā rātou mau tao'a i raro i te repo ; 'e 'ua riro atu ra te reira 'ei mea mo'e 'ōhie, nō te mea 'ua 'anatema te Fatu i te fenua, i 'ore ai i ti'a ia rātou 'ia tāpe'a noa 'e 'ia rave fa'ahou mai i te reira.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu a'era te mau 'ohipa tahutahu, te mau 'ohipa diablo, 'e te mau 'ohipa hi'ohi'o ; 'e 'ua tae mai ra te mana o taua vārua 'ino ra i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e 'ua tupu mau atu ra te mau parau ato'a a Abinadi, 'e tā Samuela te 'āti Lamana ato'a.

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

Moromona 2

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra, 'ua tupu te 'arora'a i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E noa atu ā ia tō'u nei 'āpī, e tino huru rahi rā to'u ; nō reira 'ua mā'iti te mau ta'ata o Nephi iā'u 'ia riro 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō rātou, 'e 'aore rā 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau.
- 2 Nō reira, i muri a'era, i te 'ahuru 'e ma ono o tō'u matahiti 'ua haere atu vau 'ei ra'atira nō te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ; nō reira 'ua mā'iri ihora te toru hānere e piti 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, i te toru hānere e piti 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro ia mātou ma te pūai rahi, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua fa'ari'ari'a rātou i tō'u ra mau nu'u fa'ehau ; nō reira 'aita a'era rātou i 'aro atu ; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te 'ōtohe atu i te mau fenua i te pae apato'erau ra.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae atu ra mātou i te 'oire ra nō Anagola, 'e 'ua rave mai mātou i taua 'oire ra, 'e 'ua fa'a'ineine ihora 'ia pūruru atu ia mātou iho i te mau 'āti Lamana. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'apa'ari a'era mātou i te 'oire ma tō mātou pūai ato'a ; 'e noa atu ā te rahi o tā mātou mau pā 'ua tae mai iho ā te mau 'āti Lamana nō te 'aro mai ia mātou, 'e 'ua tīahi ia mātou i rāpae i te 'oire.
- 5 'E 'ua tīahi ato'a rātou ia mātou i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Davida.
- 6 'E 'ua haere atu ra mātou e tae atu ra i te fenua ra nō Iosua, i te hiti i te pae tō'o'a o te rā nā te pae tahatai ra.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu'oi'oi ihora mātou i tō mātou mau ta'ata, 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia tāhō'ē mai ia rātou i te vāhi hō'ē.
- 8 Inaha rā, 'ua 'i roa te fenua i te mau ta'ata 'eiā haru 'e i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e noa atu ā te ha'amoura'a rahi i tae mai i ni'a i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'aita roa rātou i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; nō reira 'ua tupu te ha'amani'ira'a toto 'e te taparahira'a ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi 'e i rotopū ato'a i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e 'ua tupu noa atu ra te 'ōrurera'a hau i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e.

Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

9 'E i teienei, e ari'i tō te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'o Aaronā tōna i'oa ; 'e 'ua haere mai 'oia 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau e maha 'ahuru 'e ma maha tauatini ta'ata nō te 'aro ia mātou. 'E inaha, 'ua 'aro atu vau iāna i tō'u mau ta'ata e maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti tauatini ta'ata. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pau ihora 'oia iā'u 'e i tō'u ra nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra 'oia mai mua atu iā'u. 'E inaha, 'ua tupu teie mau mea ato'a, 'e 'ua hope ihora te toru hānere 'e toru 'ahuru o te matahiti.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau 'āti Nephi i te tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te amuamu rahi mai tei tohuhia e te peropheta ra 'e Samuela ; inaha ho'i, 'aita i ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia tāpe'a noa i tāna ihora, nō te mea tē vai ra te feiā 'eiā, 'e te feiā 'eiā haru, 'e te feiā taparahi ta'ata, 'e te 'ohipa tahutahu, 'e te 'ohipa diabolo i ni'a i te fenua.

11 'Oia ia 'ua tupu ihora te 'oto 'e te autā i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e nō taua mau mea nei, 'e i rotopū iho ā rā i te mau 'āti Nephi.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ia 'ite a'era vau, 'o Moromona, i tō rātou autā 'e tō rātou 'oto 'e te māuiui i mua i te Fatu, 'ua ha'amata ihora tō'u 'ā'au i te 'oa'oa i roto iā'u, nō te 'itera'a i te aroha 'e te fa'a'oroma'i o te Fatu, nō reira 'ua mana'o ihora vau ē, e riro 'oia i te aroha atu ia rātou, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia riro fa'ahou 'ei feiā parauti'a.

13 Inaha rā, e mea faufa'a 'ore taua 'oa'oa nō'u ra, 'aita ho'i tō rātou māuiui i fa'atupu i te tātarahapa nō te maita'i o te Atua ; nō te māuiui rā i fāri'ihia e te feiā i 'anatemahia, nō te mea 'aita roa te Fatu e fa'ati'a ia rātou 'ia 'oa'oa i roto i te hara.

14 'E 'aita ho'i rātou i haere ia Iesu ma te 'ā'au 'oto 'e te vārua tātarahapa, 'āre'a rā 'ua fa'a'ino rātou i te Atua, ma te hina'aro 'ia pohe. Noa atu i te reira 'ua 'aro atu rātou ma te fa'a'ohipa i tā rātou 'o'e nō te pāruru i tō rātou ora.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ho'i fa'ahou mai ra tō'u 'oto iā'u, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra vau ē 'ua ma'iri te mahana nō te maita'i ia rātou, i tō te pae tino 'e tō te pae vārua ato'a ho'i ; 'e 'ua 'ite atu ho'i au ia rātou e rave rahi tauatini 'o tei taparahihia 'e 'ua ma'iri i raro 'a pāto'i atu ai rātou i tō rātou Atua, 'e 'ua ha'apu'ehia te reira mai te para i ni'a i te fenua. 'E i reira 'ua ma'iri ihora te toru hānere 'e maha 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

16 'E i muri a'era, i te toru hānere 'e maha 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti 'ua horo atu ra te mau 'āti Nephi mai mua atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua tāpapahia atu rātou ē tae roa atu 'ua tae rātou i te fenua ra nō Iasona, 'aita a'era i ti'a 'ia tāpe'a i tō rātou horora'a.

17 'E i teienei, e mea fātata te 'oire ra nō Iasona i te fenua tā Amaronā i huna i te mau pāpa'a parau i te Fatu ra, 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia ha'amouhia. 'E inaha, 'ua haere atu vau 'ia au i te parau a Amaronā, 'e 'ua rave atu i te mau 'api a Nephi, 'e 'ua pāpa'i ihora i te hō'ē pāpa'a parau mai te au i te mau parau a Amaronā.

18 'E i ni'a iho i te mau 'api a Nephi 'ua pāpa'i au i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ā'amu nō te mau 'ohipa 'Tino ato'a 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a ; 'āre'a rā i ni'a iho i teie mau 'api 'aita vau i pāpa'i i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ā'amu nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino 'e nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i, inaha ho'i, 'ua vai tāmau noa taua mau 'ohipa 'Tino ra 'e taua mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ra i mua i tō'u mata mai te tau mai au i 'ite ai i te mau haere'a o te ta'ata nei.

19 'E 'auē ho'i au nei ē, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino ; 'ua 'i roa ho'i tō'u nei 'ā'au i te 'oto nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'Tino, i te mau mahana ato'a nō tō'u nei orara'a ; 'āre'a rā 'ua 'ite pāpū vau ē, e fa'ateiteihia vau i te mahana hope'a ra.

20 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti nei, 'ua a'ua'u-fa'ahou-hia 'e 'ua tīahi-fa'ahou-hia te mau 'āti Nephi. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tīahihia mātou ē tae roa 'ua tae atu mātou i te pae apato'erau, i te fenua i parauhia ra o Sema.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua patu ha'apa'ari ihora mātou i te 'oire ra nō Sema, 'e 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra mātou i tō mātou mau ta'ata mai te au i te vāhi e ti'a 'ia nā reira, penei a'e 'o te fa'aora mātou ia rātou 'ia 'ore 'ia ha'amouhia.

22 'E i muri a'era, i te toru hānere 'e maha 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra rātou e 'aro ia mātou.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau atu ra vau i tō'u mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'aitoito ho'i au ia rātou ma te pūai rahi, 'ia ti'a atu rātou ma te mata'u 'ore i mua i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e 'ia 'aro atu nō tā rātou mau vahine, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i, 'e tō rātou mau fare, 'e tō rātou mau 'utuāfare.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

24 'E 'ua fa'aitoito pūai ho'i tā'u ra mau parau ia rātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aita rātou i horo 'ē atu mai mua atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'āre'a rā 'ua ti'a atu rātou ma te mata'u 'ore nō te 'aro atu ia rātou.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro atu ra tō mātou nu'u fa'ehau, e toru 'ahuru tauatini ta'ata, i te nu'u fa'ehau e pae 'ahuru tauatini ta'ata. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a atu mātou i mua ia rātou ma te 'aro pūai 'e 'ua horo atu rātou mai mua atu ia mātou.

26 'E i muri a'era, i tō rātou horora'a atu, 'ua tāpapa atu ra mātou ia rātou 'e tō mātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua 'aro fa'ahou atu ra ia rātou, 'e 'ua pau rātou ; 'aita rā te pūai o te Fatu i vai i rotopū ia mātou ; 'oia ia, 'ua vaiiho-noa-hia mātou 'ia fa'a'ohipa i tō mātou iho pūai, 'e 'aita te Vārua o te Fatu i pīha'i iho ia mātou ; nō reira, 'ua paruparu mātou mai tō mātou mau taea'e te huru.

27 'E 'ua 'oto tō'u 'ā'au nō teie 'ati rahi o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i. Inaha rā, 'ua haere atu mātou e 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona, ē tae roa atu 'ua roa'a fa'ahou mai ia mātou tō mātou mau fenua 'āi'a.

28 'E 'ua ma'iri ihora te toru hānere 'e maha 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti. 'E i te toru hānere 'e pae 'ahuru o te matahiti, 'ua fa'aau mātou i te parau i te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te feiā 'eiā haru o Gadianetona, 'e nā roto i te reira 'ua tātufa'ahia tō mātou mau fenua 'āi'a.

29 'E 'ua hōro'a mai te mau 'āti Lamana i te fenua i te pae apato'erau nō mātou, 'oia ia, ē tae atu ai i te fenua 'oa'oa e haere ti'a atu ai i te fenua i te pae apato'a. 'E 'ua hōro'a atu mātou i te fenua tā'āto'a i te pae apato'a nō te mau 'āti Lamana.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianon, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianon, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Moromona 3

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'aita te mau 'āti Lamana i haere fa'ahou mai e 'aro ia rātou ē tae noa atu 'ua ma'iri fa'ahou hō'ē 'ahuru matahiti. 'E inaha, 'ua fa'a'ohipa vau i tō'u mau ta'ata, 'oia ho'i i te mau 'āti Nephi, nō te fa'aineine i tō rātou mau fenua 'e tā rātou mau mauha'a tama'i nō te taime e tupu mai ai te tama'i.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u : 'A a'o atu i teie nei mau ta'ata—'A tātarahapa 'outou 'e 'a haere mai iā'u nei, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia 'outou 'e 'a fa'atupu rahi fa'ahou i tā'u nei 'ēkālesia, 'e e fa'ahereherehia 'outou.
- 3 'E 'ua a'o atu vau i teie mau ta'ata, 'āre'a rā 'ua faufa'a-'ore-hia ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i 'ite pāpū ē, nā te Fatu i fa'aherehere ia rātou, 'e i hōro'a atu i te fāna'o ia rātou 'ia tātarahapa. 'E inaha, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i te Fatu i tō rātou ra Atua.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ma'iri te 'ahuru o te matahiti, 'oia ho'i, i roto i te tā'āto'ara'a, e toru hānere e ono 'ahuru matahiti mai te taera'a mai o te Mesia, 'ua fa'atae mai te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te hō'ē 'episetole iā'u, nō te fa'a'ite pāpū mai iā'u ē, tē fa'aineine ra rātou nō te haere fa'ahou mai e 'aro ia mātou.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tītau atu ra vau i tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'ia ha'aputupu 'āmui mai rātou i te fenua ra nō Ano, i te hō'ē 'oire tei te mau hiti i fātata i taua 'ē'a oaoa ra ē tae atu ai i te fenua i te pae apato'a.
- 6 'E i reira 'ua fa'anahonaho mātou i tō mātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia tāpe'a i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haru i te hō'ē a'e o tō mātou mau fenua ; nō reira 'ua ha'apa'ari mātou ia mātou nō te 'aro atu ia rātou ma tō mātou pūai ato'a.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, i te toru hānere 'e ono 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē o te matahiti, 'ua pou mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'oire ra nō Ano nō te 'aro mai ia mātou ; 'e i muri a'era, i taua matahiti ra 'ua pau rātou ia mātou, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ho'i fa'ahou atu rātou i tō rātou iho mau fenua.
- 8 'E i te toru hānere 'e ono 'ahuru 'e ma piti o te matahiti, 'ua pou fa'ahou mai ra rātou nō te 'aro. 'E 'ua pau fa'ahou rātou ia mātou, 'e 'ua taparahi mātou ia rātou e rave rahi, 'e 'ua hurihia tō rātou feiā pohe i roto i te miti.

Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

- 9 'E i teienei, nō teie mea rahi i ravehia e tō'u ra mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te fa'ate'ote'o i tō rātou iho pūai, 'e 'ua tapu ihora rātou i mua i te mau ra'i ē, e tāho'o atu rātou i te toto o tō rātou mau taea'e i ha'amani'ihia e tō rātou mau ra mau 'enemi.
- 10 'E 'ua tapu a'era rātou i mua i te mau ra'i, 'e 'oia ato'a i mua i te terōno o te Atua ē, e haere atu rātou i ni'a nō te 'aro i tō rātou mau 'enemi, 'e e ha'amou roa ia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāto'i roa atu ra vau, 'o Moromona, mai teie taime atu 'ia riro 'ei tōmānā 'e 'ei ta'ata fa'atere nō teie mau ta'ata, nō tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.
- 12 Inaha, i arata'i na ho'i au ia rātou, noa atu ā tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i arata'i na ho'i au ia rātou e rave rahi taime nō te 'aro atu, 'e 'ua here au ia rātou ma tō'u 'ā'au ato'a, mai te au i te here o te Atua i roto iā'u nei ; 'e 'ua pure māite atu tō'u vārua i te Atua i te tā'āto'ara'a o te mahana nō rātou ; 'āre'a rā 'ua faufa'a 'ore te reira, nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 13 E toru ho'i taime tō'u fa'aorara'a ia rātou i te rima o tō rātou mau 'enemi, 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau hara.
- 14 'E 'ia oti a'era rātou i te tapu i te mau mea ato'a i 'ōpanihia e tō tātou Fatu 'e Fa'aora o Iesu Mesia, 'ia haere atu rātou i ni'a nō te 'aro i tō rātou mau 'enemi, 'e nō te tāho'o atu ho'i i te toto o tō rātou mau taea'e, inaha, 'ua tae mai ra te reo o te Fatu iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 15 Tei iā'u nei te tāho'ora'a, 'e nā'u ho'i e tāho'o atu ; 'e nō te mea 'aita teie mau ta'ata i tātarahapa i muri a'e i tō'u fa'aorara'a ia rātou, inaha, e ha'amouhia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāto'i roa vau 'ia haere atu e 'aro atu i tō'u ra mau 'enemi ; 'e 'ua rave ho'i au mai tā te Fatu i fa'aue mai iā'u ra ; 'e 'ua ti'a noa a'era vau 'ei 'ite ma te 'ohipa 'ore, nō te fa'a'ite atu i tō te ao nei i te mau mea tā'u i 'ite 'e i fa'aro'o, mai te au i te mau fa'a'itera'a a te Vārua 'o tei fa'a'ite mai i te mau mea e tupu a muri atu.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

17 Nō reira tē pāpa'i atu nei au ia 'outou, e te mau 'Ētene, 'e ia 'outou ato'a, e te 'utuāfare nō 'Īserā'ela, 'ia 'ite 'outou 'e 'ia ha'amata-ana'e-hia te 'ohipa ra, tē fātata ra 'ia 'outou i te fa'aîneine 'ia ho'i atu i tō 'outou fenua 'āi'a.

18 'Oia ia, inaha, tē pāpa'i atu nei au i tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei; 'oia ia, 'ia 'outou e te mau 'ōpū tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti nō 'Īserā'ela, 'o tē ha'avāhia mai te au i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa e te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'o tā Iesu i mā'iti 'ei mau pipi nāna i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem.

19 'E tē pāpa'i ato'a atu nei au i te toe'a o teie nei feiā, 'o tē ha'avā-ato'a-hia e te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'o tā Iesu i mā'iti i teie nei fenua; 'e e ha'avāhia ia rātou e te tahi atu tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'o tā Iesu i mā'iti i te fenua ra nō Ierusalem.

20 'E nā te Vārua i fa'a'ite mai i taua mau mea nei iā'u; nō reira tē pāpa'i atu nei au i te reira ia 'outou pā'āto'a. 'E teie te tumu vau i pāpa'i atu ai ia 'outou na, 'ia 'ite 'outou ē, e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou pā'āto'a 'ia ti'a atu i mua i te vāhi ha'avāra'a a te Mesia, 'oia ia, te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a nō te 'utuāfare tā'āto'a o Adamu ra; 'e e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia ha'avāhia nō tā 'outou ra mau 'ohipa, mai te mea e mea maita'i ānei te reira 'e 'aore rā e mea 'ino.

21 'E 'ia ti'aturi ato'a ho'i 'outou i te 'evanelia a Iesu Mesia, 'o tē tae mai i rotopū ia 'outou na; 'e 'ia fāri'i ato'a te mau 'āti Iuda, te feiā i fafau atu i te Fatu, i te tahi atu ā 'ite, ta'a 'ē atu iāna 'o tā rātou i hi'o atu 'e i fa'aro'o ho'i, 'o Iesu 'o tei taparahihia e rātou ra, 'o te Mesia mau iho ā ia 'e te Atua mau iho ā ho'i.

22 'E 'ua hina'aro roa vau 'ia fa'afāriu mai i tō te mau hope'a tā'āto'a o te ao nei 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia fa'aîneine nō te ti'a atu i mua i te vāhi ha'avāra'a a te Mesia.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Moromona 4

- 1 'E i muri a'era, i te toru hānere 'e ono 'ahuru 'e ma toru o te matahiti, 'ua haere atu te mau 'āti Nephi 'e tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau i ni'a nō te 'aro atu 'e nō te tīahi atu i te mau 'āti Lamana i rāpae i te fenua ra nō Ano.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tūra'i-fa'ahou-hia atu ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi i te fenua ra nō Ano. 'E 'a vai noa ai rātou i roto i te rohirohi, 'ua tae mai ra te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau 'āpī o te mau 'āti Lamana nō te 'aro ia rātou ; 'e 'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē tama'i rahi, 'e nō reira ho'i, 'ua haru ihora te mau 'āti Lamana i te 'oire ra nō Ano, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora i te mau 'āti Nephi e rave rahi, 'e 'ua haru atu ho'i e rave rahi 'ei feiā mau-'āuri.
- 3 'E 'ua horo atu te toe'a 'e 'ua 'āmui atu ia rātou i te mau ta'ata nō te 'oire ra nō Teanekuma. 'E taua 'oire ra nō Teanekuma, tei te mau hiti ia nō te pae tahatai ; 'e e mea fātata ato'a ia i te 'oire ra nō Ano.
- 4 'E nō te mea 'ua haere atu te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Nephi i ni'a nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana i taparahihia ai rātou ; 'e 'āhiri 'aita rātou i nā reira, 'aita ato'a ia tō te mau 'āti Lamana e mana i ni'a a'e ia rātou.
- 5 'Āre'a rā, inaha, e ro'ohia te feiā parauti'a 'ore i te mau ha'avāra'a a te Atua ; 'e nā roto i te feiā parauti'a 'ore te feiā parauti'a 'ore e fa'autu'ahia ai ; 'e nā te feiā parauti'a 'ore ho'i e fa'ati'arepu nei i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei 'ia ha'amani'i i te toto.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aineine te mau 'āti Lamana nō te haere mai e 'aro i te 'oire ra nō Teanekuma.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, i te toru hānere 'e ono 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti, 'ua tae mai te mau 'āti Lamana nō te 'aro i te 'oire ra nō Teanekuma, penei a'e 'o te roa'a ato'a ia rātou taua 'oire ra nō Teanekuma.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tīahihia atu rātou 'e 'ua tūra'ihia atu i muri e te mau 'āti Nephi. 'E 'ia 'ite a'era te mau 'āti Nephi ē, 'ua tīahi atu rātou i te mau 'āti Lamana i muri, 'ua fa'ate'ote'o fa'ahou ihora rātou nō tō rātou iho pūai ; 'e 'ua haere atu ra rātou ma tō rātou ihora pūai, 'e 'ua haru fa'ahou ihora rātou i te 'oire ra nō Ano.

Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

- 9 'E i teienei, 'ia oti teie mau mea ato'a i te ravehia, e rave rahi tauatini ta'ata i pohe i nā pae e piti ato'a ra, tō te mau 'āti Nephi 'e tō te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a ho'i.
- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te toru hānere 'e ono 'ahuru 'e ma ono o te matahiti, 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i te mau 'āti Nephi i tātarahapa i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino i rave, 'ua tāmāu noa rā rātou i roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino.
- 11 'E 'aita roa e ti'a i te vaha 'ia fa'a'ite i te reira, 'e 'aore rā i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia pāpa'i pāpū maita'i i te mea ri'ari'a rahi i tupu nō te ha'amani'ira'a toto 'e te taparahira'a ta'ata i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, tō te mau 'āti Nephi 'e tō te mau 'āti Lamana ato'a ho'i ; 'e 'ua 'eta'eta roa tō rātou 'ā'au ē hope roa a'e, i au roa ai rātou i te ha'amani'i i te toto.
- 12 'E 'aita roa e mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino rahi mai teie te huru i tupu i rotopū i te mau tamari'i ato'a a Lehi, 'e 'aita ato'a i rotopū i te mau 'utuāfare ato'a o 'Īserā'ela, mai teie i tupu i rotopū i teie mau ta'ata, mai te au i te mau parau a te Fatu.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua roa'a i te mau 'āti Lamana te 'oire ra nō Ano, nō te mea 'ua rahi atu tō rātou mau ta'ata i tō te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 14 'E 'ua haere atu ra rātou e 'aro i te 'oire ra nō Teanekuma, 'e 'ua tīahi atu ra i te mau ta'ata i rāpae i taua 'oire ra, 'e 'ua rave ihora i te feiā mau-'āuri e rave rahi, i te mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i, 'e 'ua pūpū atu ra ia rātou 'ei mau tusia i tō rātou ra mau atua 'idolo.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te toru hānere 'e ono 'ahuru 'e ma hitu o te matahiti, nō te riri o te mau 'āti Nephi i te mea 'ua pūpūhia tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i 'ei tusia, 'ua haere atu ra rātou e 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana ma te riri rahi roa, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua pau fa'ahou ihora te mau 'āti Lamana ia rātou, 'e 'ua tīahi atu ra ia rātou i rāpae i tō rātou mau fenua.
- 16 'E 'aita atu ra te mau 'āti Lamana i haere fa'ahou mai e 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi ē tae noa atu i te toru hānere 'e hitu 'ahuru 'e ma pae o te matahiti.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

17 'E i taua matahiti nei, 'ua haere mai rātou i raro nō te 'aro i te mau 'āti Nephi ma tō rātou pūai ato'a ; 'e 'aīta i tai'ohia tō rātou rahira'a nō te rahi o tō rātou mau ta'ata.

18 'E mai teie taime atu, 'aīta roa te mau 'āti Nephi i fāri'i i te mana i ni'a a'e i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua ha'amouhia rātou e te mau 'āti Lamana, mai te hupe e mou i mua i te mahana.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana i raro nō te 'aro i te 'oire ra nō Ano ; 'e 'ua tupu te hō'ē 'arora'a rahi roa i te fenua ra nō Ano, 'e 'ua taparahi rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi.

20 'E 'ua horo fa'ahou atu ra te mau 'āti Nephi mai mua atu ia rātou, 'e tae atu ra i te 'oire ra nō Boaza ; 'e i reira 'ua ti'a atu rātou nō te 'aro atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e nō reira ho'i 'aīta te mau 'āti Lamana i manuia nō te taparahi ia rātou ē tae roa atu 'ua ho'i mai rātou i te piti o te taime.

21 'E i tō rātou haerera'a mai i te piti o te taime, 'ua tīahihia 'e 'ua taparahihia te mau 'āti Nephi 'e 'ua rahi roa tei taparahihia ; 'e 'ua pūpū-fa'ahou-hia atu ra tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i 'ei tusia i te mau 'īdolo.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo fa'ahou atu ra te mau 'āti Nephi mai mua atu ia rātou, ma te rave atu i te mau ta'ata ato'a nā muri ia rātou, tō te mau 'oire rahi 'e te mau 'oire ri'i.

23 'E i teienei, 'ia 'ite a'era vau, 'o Moromona ē, 'ua fātata te fenua i te pau i te mau 'āti Lamana, nō reira, 'ua haere atu ra vau i ni'a i te 'āivi ra o Sima, 'e 'ua rave atu ra i te mau pāpa'a parau ato'a tā Amarona i huna i te Fatu ra.

And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, in-somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Moromona 5

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra vau i rotopū i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e 'ua tātarahapa ihora vau i te tapu 'o tā'u i tapu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē, e 'ore roa vau e tauturu ia rātou ; 'e 'ua mā'iti fa'ahou ihora rātou iā'u 'ia arata'i i tō rātou mau nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua mana'o ho'i rātou ē, e ti'a iā'u 'ia fa'aora ia rātou i tō rātou mau 'ati.
- 2 Inaha rā, 'aita roa vau i ti'aturi, nō te mea 'ua 'ite au i te mau ha'avāra'a a te Fatu 'o tē tae mai i ni'a iho ia rātou ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'ua 'aro atu rā rātou nō te pāroru i tō rātou ora, ma te ti'aoro 'ore atu i Tei Hamani ia rātou ra.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro ia mātou, 'e 'ua horo atu mātou i te 'oire ra nō Ioridana ; inaha rā, 'ua tūra'ihia atu rātou i muri 'e 'aita rātou i haru i te 'oire i taua taime ra.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra rātou e 'aro ia mātou, 'e 'ua pāroru mātou i te 'oire. 'E tē vai ra te tahi atu ā mau 'oire i pāroruhia e te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e nō te pa'ari o te mau ha'apūra'a 'ua fifi ihora rātou 'e 'aita atu ra i ti'a ia rātou 'ia haere mai i te fenua i mua ia mātou, nō te ha'amou i te mau ta'ata o tō mātou ra fenua.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, te mau fenua ato'a tā mātou i haere atu, 'e 'aita tō reira mau ta'ata i ha'aputuputuhia, 'ua ha'amouhia iā rātou 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua tāninhia tō rātou mau 'oire rarahi 'e te mau 'oire ri'i i te auahi ; 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora te toru hānere 'e hitu 'ahuru 'e ma iva o te matahiti.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era i te toru hānere 'e va'u 'ahuru o te matahiti, 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana e 'aro ia mātou, 'e 'ua ti'a atu mātou nō te 'aro ia rātou ma te mata'u 'ore ; 'āre'a rā 'ua riro te reira 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore, 'e nō te rahi o tō rātou mau ta'ata i ta'ata'ahi noa ai rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi i raro a'e i tō rātou ra 'āvae.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua horo fa'ahou atu ra mātou, 'e te feiā 'oi'oi a'e i te horo i te mau 'āti Lamana ra, 'ua ora atu iā, 'e te feiā tāere iho i te horo i te mau 'āti Lamana ra 'ua taparahihia iā 'e 'ua ha'amou-roa-hia.

Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

- 8 'E i teienei, inaha, 'aita vau, 'o Moromona, i hina'aro 'ia fa'aahoaho i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata nā roto i te fa'a'itera'a atu ia rātou i te rī'ari'a rahi nō te ha'amani'ira'a toto 'e te taparahira'a ta'ata i fa'a'itehia mai i mua i tō'u nei mata ; 'āre'a rā 'ua 'ite au ē, e mea ti'a i taua mau mea nei 'ia fa'a'itehia atu, 'e e mea ti'a ato'a ho'i i te mau mea ato'a i hunahia 'ia fa'a'ite-pāpū-hia i ni'a i te mau tāpo'i fare e ti'a ai—
- 9 'E e mea ti'a roa ato'a i te 'ite nō teie mau mea 'ia fa'ataehia atu i te toe'a o teie nei feiā, 'e i te mau 'Ētene ato'a ho'i, 'o tā te Fatu i parau ē, e ha'apurara rātou i teie nei feiā, 'e e fa'arirohia teie nei feiā 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore i rotopū ia rātou—no reira tē pāpa'i nei au i teie nei parau rī'i ha'apotohia, ma te mata'u i te pāpa'i i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ā'amu nō te mau mea i 'itehia e au ra, nō te mea tē vai ra te fa'auera'a 'o tā'u i fāri'i, 'e 'ia 'ore ato'a 'outou 'ia 'oto rahi nō te parauti'a 'ore o teie nei feiā.
- 10 'E i teienei, inaha, teie tā'u e parau atu nei i tō rātou hua'ai, 'e i te mau 'Ētene ato'a ho'i 'o tei fa'aherehere i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'o tei māmaramama 'e 'o tei 'ite nō hea mai tō rātou mau ha'amaita'ira'a.
- 11 'Ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e 'oto rātou nō te 'ati rahi o te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'oia ia, e 'oto rātou nō te ha'amoura'ahia teie nei feiā ; e 'oto rātou nō te mea 'aita teie nei feiā i tātarahapa 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'ahereherehia i roto i te rima o Iesu.
- 12 I teienei, 'ua pāpa'ihia teie nei mau mea i te toe'a o te 'utuāfare o Iakoba ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia te reira mai teie te huru, nō te mea 'ua 'ite te Atua ē, e 'ore roa te parauti'a 'ore e fa'atae mai i te reira ia rātou ; 'e e mea ti'a ho'i i te reira 'ia hunahia i te Fatu ra, 'e 'ia fa'ataehia mai i tōna ra tau mau.
- 13 'E 'o teie ia te fa'auera'a tā'u i fāri'i ; 'e inaha, e tae mai te reira mai te au i te fa'auera'a a te Fatu, i te tau e au iāna, i roto i tōna ra pa'ari.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

14 'E inaha, e fa'ataehia atu te reira i te feiā ti'aturi 'ore o te mau 'āti Iuda ; 'e teie ho'i te tumu e fa'ataehia atu ai te reira—'ia fa'a'ite-pāpū-hia rātou ē, 'o Iesu te Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua ora ; 'ia ti'a i te Metua 'ia fa'atupu i tāna 'ōpuara'a rahi 'e te mure 'ore, nā roto i tāna Tamaiti here rahi, te fa'aho'ira'a mai i te mau 'āti Iuda 'e 'aore rā i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o 'Īserā'ela, i tō rātou fenua 'āi'a, 'o tā te Fatu tō rātou Atua i hōro'a atu ia rātou, nō te fa'atupu i tāna ra fafaura'a.

15 'E 'ia ti'aturi rahi ato'a atu ā te hua'ai o teie nei feiā i tāna 'evanelia, 'o tē tae atu ia rātou nā roto mai i te mau 'Ētene ; 'e e ha'apurarahia ho'i teie nei feiā, 'e e riro rātou 'ei mea huru 'ere'ere, 'ei feiā vi'ivi'i 'e te peu hā'iri'iri, 'o tei hau atu i te 'ino i te tahi atu feiā i ora na i rotopū ia mātou i te mātāmua, 'oia ia, 'e i te feiā 'o tei ora na i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana, e nō tō rātou ti'aturi 'ore 'e te ha'amori 'īdolo i tupu ai te reira.

16 Inaha ho'i, 'ua fa'aea te Vārua o te Fatu i te tāparu noa i tō rātou mau metua, 'e 'aita te Mesia 'e te Atua i pīha'i iho ia rātou i roto i te ao nei ; 'e 'ua ha'apurara-noa-hia rātou mai te ota i mua i te mata'i ra.

17 I riro na ho'i rātou i te mātāmua ra 'ei feiā nehenehe, 'e i riro na ho'i te Mesia 'ei tīa'i māmoe nō rātou ; 'oia ia, i arata'ihia na ho'i rātou e te Atua te Metua.

18 I teienei rā, inaha, tē arata'ihia nei rātou e Sātane, mai te ota e pe'e i mua i te mata'i ra, 'e 'aore rā mai te hō'ē pahī e tāhurihuri noa i ni'a i te mau 'are miti, 'aore e 'ie 'e 'aore ato'a e tūtau, 'e 'aore ato'a ho'i e hoe nō te fa'atere i te pahī ; 'e mai taua pahī ra, 'oia ato'a ia rātou.

19 'E inaha, 'ua tāpe'a mai te Fatu i tō rātou mau ha'amaita'ira'a, 'o tē ti'a ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i ni'a i te fenua nei, nō te mau 'Ētene 'o tē fāri'i i te fenua.

20 Inaha rā, a muri a'era, e tīahihia 'e e ha'apurarahia ho'i rātou e te mau 'Ētene ; 'e i muri a'e i tō rātou tīahira'ahia 'e te ha'apurarara'ahia e te mau 'Ētene ra, inaha, 'ei reira te Fatu e ha'amana'o ai i tāna ra fafaura'a 'o tāna i fafau atu ia Aberahama 'e i te 'utuāfare pā'āto'a o 'Īserā'ela.

21 'E 'oia ato'a e ha'amana'o te Fatu i te mau pure a te feiā parauti'a, 'o tei purehia atu iāna nō rātou ra.

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

22 'E i reira, e te mau 'Ētene ē, nāhea e ti'a ai ia 'outou
'ia ti'a atu i mua i te mana o te Atua, maori rā 'ia
tātarahapa 'outou 'e 'ia fāriu 'ē atu i tō 'outou ra mau
haere'a vi'ivi'i ?

23 'Aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, tei roto 'outou i te rima o
te Atua ? 'Aita ānei 'outou i 'ite ē, tei iāna te mana
tā'āto'a, 'e nā roto i tāna ra parau mana rahi e
'ōtaro-'āmui-hia te fenua nei mai te parau 'ōtarohia
ra ?

24 Nō reira, 'a tātarahapa 'outou, 'e 'a fa'aha'eha'a ia
'outou iho i mua iāna, 'o te fa'atae mai 'oia i tāna
ha'avāra'a parauti'a i ni'a ia 'outou na—'o te haere
ti'a atu te hō'ē toe'a nō te hua'ai o Iakoba i rotopū ia
'outou na mai te liona ra, 'e 'a hahae fa'ahu'ahu'a ai
ia 'outou 'e 'aore te hō'ē noa atu e ti'a 'ia fa'aora.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before
the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn
from your evil ways?

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God?
Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great
command the earth shall be rolled together as a
scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves be-
fore him, lest he shall come out in justice against
you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go
forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces,
and there is none to deliver.

Moromona 6

- 1 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au i tā'u pāpa'a parau nō ni'a i te ha'amoura'ahia o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'oia ho'i, te mau 'āti Nephi. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere ti'a atu ra mātou i mua i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 2 'E 'ua pāpa'i au, 'o Moromona, i te hō'ē 'episetole i te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana, ma te ani atu iāna 'ia fa'ati'a mai 'oia ia mātou 'ia ha'aputupu'āmui i tō mātou mau ta'ata i te fenua ra nō Kumora, i pīha'i iho i te hō'ē 'āivi i parauhia 'o Kumora, 'e i reira e ti'a ai ia mātou 'ia 'aro atu ia rātou.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a mai te ari'i o te mau 'āti Lamana i te mea 'o tā'u i hina'aro.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra mātou i te fenua ra nō Kumora, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ihora i tō mātou mau ti'ahapa ē 'ati noa a'e te 'āivi ra o Kumora ; 'e e fenua ho'i teie tei reira e rave rahi mau pape, mau 'ānāvai pape, e mau pape piha'a ; 'e i teie vāhi 'ua ti'aturi mātou 'ia upo'oti'a i ni'a a'e i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 5 'E 'ia ma'iri a'era te toru hānere 'e va'u 'ahuru 'e ma maha o te matahiti, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui mātou i te toe'a o tō mātou mau ta'ata ato'a i te fenua ra nō Kumora.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tō mātou mau ta'ata i te ha'aputupu'āmui mai i te vāhi hō'ē i te fenua ra nō Kumora, inaha, 'ua ruhiruhiā vau, 'o Moromona ; 'e nō te mea 'ua 'ite au ē, 'o te tama'i hope'a teie a tō'u nūna'a, 'e nō te mea ho'i 'ua fa'auehia mai au e te Fatu 'eiaha vau e fa'ati'a i te mau pāpa'a parau mo'a i vaiihohia mai e tō mātou mau metua 'ia topa atu i roto i te rima o te mau 'āti Lamana, (nō te mea e ha'amou te mau 'āti Lamana i te reira) nō reira 'ua 'ō'oti au i teie nei pāpa'a parau nō roto mai i te mau 'api a Nephi ra, 'e 'ua huna ihora i te mau pāpa'a parau ato'a i vaiihohia mai iā'u e te rima o te Fatu i roto i te 'āivi ra o Kumora, maori rā 'o teie mau 'api ri'i 'o tā'u i hōro'a atu i tā'u tamaiti ra ia Moroni.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite atu ra tō'u mau ta'ata, 'e tā rātou mau vahine, 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana i te haere-tia-ra'a mai ia rātou ra, 'e 'ua tīa'i noa atu ra ia rātou ma te mata'u rahi i te pohe 'o tei fa'a'i i te 'ōuma o teie feiā parauti'a 'ore.

Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra rātou e 'aro ia mātou, 'e 'ua 'ī roa a'era te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mata'u rahi nō te rahi o tō rātou ra mau ta'ata.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro mai ra rātou i tō'u ra mau ta'ata ma te fa'a'ohipa i te 'o'e, 'e te fana, 'e te te'a, 'e te 'ōpahi, 'e te mau huru mauha'a tama'i ato'a ra.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua taparahihia tō'u mau ta'ata 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora rātou i raro, 'oia ia, tō'u mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini i pīha'i iho iā'u, 'e 'ua puta ato'a vau 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e 'ua haere mai ra te mau 'āti Lamana nā pīha'i iho iā'u, 'aita rā rātou i ha'apohe roa iā'u.

11 'E hope a'era tō'u ra mau ta'ata pā'āto'a i te taparahihia e rātou, maori rā te piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha tō mātou i toe mai, ('e tei rotopū ato'a i taua mau ta'ata ra tā'u tamaiti o Moroni) 'ua 'ite atu ra mātou 'o tei ora na mai rotopū mai i tō mātou mau ta'ata i pohe, i te po'ipo'i a'e 'a ho'i atu ai te mau 'āti Lamana i tō rātou mau pūhapara'a, i te 'ahuru tauatini o tō'u ra mau ta'ata 'o tā'u i arata'i i mua roa, 'e 'ua 'ite atu vau i te reira mai ni'a mai i te 'āivi ra o Kumora.

12 'E 'ua 'ite ato'a atu mātou i te mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini 'o tei arata'ihia e tā'u ra tamaiti 'o Moroni.

13 'E inaha, 'ua taparahihia te mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini a Gidigidona, 'e 'o 'oia ato'a i pīha'i iho ia rātou.

14 'E 'ua taparahihia Lama i pīha'i iho i tōna mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini ; 'e 'ua taparahihia Gilagala i pīha'i iho i tōna mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini, 'e 'ua taparahihia Limaha i pīha'i iho i tōna mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini ; 'e 'ua taparahihia Ieneuma i pīha'i iho i tōna mau ta'ata hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini, 'e 'ua taparahihia Kumeniha, 'e Moroniha, 'e Anetionuma, 'e Sibeloma, 'e Sema 'e Iosa, i pīha'i iho i tō rātou mau pupu ta'ata tāta'itahi hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

15 'E i muri a'era, tē vai ra hō'ē 'ahuru fa'ahou ta'ata tei pohe i te 'o'e, 'e tā rātou ato'a mau pupu ta'ata tāta'itahi hō'ē 'ahuru tauatini ; 'oia ia, 'ua pohe ato'a tō'u mau ta'ata tā'āto'a, maori rā te mau ta'ata e piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha i pīha'i iho iā'u ra, 'e te tahi atu ā pae i horo atu i te mau fenua i te pae apato'a ra, 'e te tahi pae i 'āmui atu i te mau 'āti Lamana ra, 'e 'ua vai noa tō rātou 'i'o, 'e te mau ivi, 'e te toto i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e 'ua vaiihoa mai teie mau mea e te rima o te feiā i taparahi ia rātou ra, 'ia pē i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ia ho'i atu i te repo nō reira mai rātou ra.

16 'E 'ua 'oto roa tō'u nei vārua i te māuiui rahi nō tō'u mau ta'ata i taparahihia, 'e 'ua 'auē a'era vau i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē :

17 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te mau ta'ata nehenehe ē, e aha ho'i 'outou i haere 'ē atu ai i te mau 'ē'a o te Fatu ! 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te mau ta'ata nehenehe ē, e aha ho'i 'outou i pāto'i ai ia Iesu, 'o tē ti'a ra ma te rima fa'atoro-noa-hia nō te fāri'i mai ia 'outou !

18 Inaha, 'āhiri 'aita 'outou i nā reira, 'aita roa ia 'outou i ma'iri i raro. Inaha rā, 'ua ma'iri 'outou i raro 'e tē 'oto nei au nō tō 'outou feiā i pohe.

19 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te mau tamāroa nehenehe ē 'e te mau tamāhine nehenehe ē, 'e 'outou e te mau metua 'e te metua vahine ē, 'e 'outou e te mau tāne 'e te vahine ē, 'e 'outou e te mau ta'ata nehenehe ē, e aha ho'i 'outou i ma'iri ai i raro !

20 Inaha rā, 'ua reva 'ē atu 'outou, e 'ore roa e ti'a i tā'u mau 'oto 'ia fa'aho'i mai ia 'outou na.

21 'E e tae vave mai te mahana e riro ai tō 'outou tino tāhuti 'ei tino tāhuti 'ore ; 'e teie mau tino pohe noa e pē nei, e riro 'oi'oi ia 'ei mau tino pohe 'ore ; 'e i reira e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia ti'a atu i mua i te vāhi ha'avāra'a a te Mesia, 'ia ha'avāhia mai te au i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa ; 'e mai te mea e mea parauti'a 'outou ra, e ha'amaita'ihia ia 'outou e tō 'outou mau metua ato'a i reva 'ē atu nā mua roa ia 'outou.

22 'Āhiri ho'i 'outou i tātarahapa, 'aore ia teie pohe rahi i tae mai i ni'a iho ia 'outou. Inaha rā, 'ua reva 'ē atu 'outou, 'e 'ua 'itea ho'i tō 'outou huru i te Metua, 'oia ia, te Metua mure 'ore i te ao ra ; 'e e ravehia 'outou e ana mai te au i tāna ra parauti'a 'e te aroha.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

Moromona 7

- 1 'E i teieni, inaha, e parau atu vau i te tahi mau parau ri'i i te toe'a o teie feiā 'o tei fa'aora-noa-hia, 'āhiri ē 'ua ti'a i te Atua 'ia hōro'a atu i tā'u nei mau parau ia rātou ra, 'ia 'ite rātou i te mau mea nō ni'a i tō rātou ra mau metua ; 'oia ia, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e te toe'a nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e teie te mau parau tā'u e parau atu nei :
- 2 'Ia 'ite 'outou ē, nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela 'outou.
- 3 'Ia 'ite 'outou ē, e mea ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tātarahapa, 'e mai te mea 'aita ra, 'aita ia 'outou e fa'aorahia.
- 4 'Ia 'ite 'outou ē, e mea ti'a roa ia 'outou 'ia ha'apae i tā 'outou mau mauha'a tama'i, 'e 'eiaha e 'oa'oa fa'ahou i te ha'amani'i i te toto, 'e 'eiaha e rave fa'ahou i te mauha'a tama'i, maori rā 'ia fa'aue mai te Atua ia 'outou.
- 5 'Ia 'ite 'outou ē, e mea ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fāri'i i te 'ite nō ni'a i tō 'outou mau metua, 'e 'ia tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau hara ato'a 'e tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'Īino ato'a, 'e 'ia ti'aturi ia Iesu Mesia, 'e e Tamaiti 'oia nā te Atua, 'e 'ua taparahihia 'oia e te mau 'āti Iuda, 'e nā roto i te mana o te Atua 'ua ti'afa'ahou mai 'oia, 'e nā roto i te reira 'ua noa'a iāna te rē i ni'a a'e i te pohe ; 'e nā roto ho'i iāna 'ua horomi'ihia te tara nō te pohe.
- 6 'E 'ua fa'atae mai 'oia i te ti'afa'ahoura'a o te feiā pohe ra, 'ia ti'a i te ta'ata 'ia ti'a atu i mua i tāna ra vāhi ha'avāra'a.
- 7 'E 'ua fa'atae mai 'oia i te fa'aorara'a i tō teie nei ao, 'e nā roto i te reira e fa'ati'ahia ai te ta'ata hapa 'ore 'o tē ti'a atu i mua iāna i te mahana ha'avāra'a, 'ia pārahi ma te 'oa'oa hope 'ore i mua i te aro o te Atua i roto i tōna bāsileia, 'e ma te hīmene tu'utu'u 'ore 'e te mau pupu hīmene i te mau 'āruera'a i te Metua, 'e i te Tamaiti, 'e i te Vārua Maita'i, e Atua hō'ē ho'i rātou.
- 8 Nō reira, 'a tātarahapa, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, 'e 'a tāpe'a mai i te 'evanelia a te Mesia, 'o tē fa'a'itehia atu i mua ia 'outou, 'eiaha i roto i teie ana'e iho pāpa'a parau, i roto ato'a rā i te pāpa'a parau e tae atu i te mau 'Ētene no 'ō mai i te mau 'āti Iuda ra, 'e e tae mai taua pāpa'a parau ra mai te mau 'Ētene mai ia 'outou na.

Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

9 Inaha ho'i, 'ua pāpa'ihia teie nō te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a 'ia ti'aturi 'outou i te reira ; 'e 'ia ti'aturi 'outou i te reira, e ti'aturi ato'a 'outou i teie ; 'e 'ia ti'aturi 'outou i teie, e 'ite ato'a ia 'outou i te mau mea nō ni'a i tō 'outou mau metua 'e te mau 'ohipa māere i ravehia nā roto i te mana o te Atua i rotopū ia rātou ra.

10 'E e 'ite ato'a 'outou ē, e toe'a 'outou nō te hua'ai o Iakoba ; nō reira 'ua tai'ohia 'outou i rotopū i te feiā nō te fafaura'a mātāmua ra ; 'e mai te mea tē ti'aturi nei 'outou i te Mesia, 'e 'ua bāpetizohia nā mua i te pape, 'e i te auahi 'e i te Vārua Maita'i ato'a ho'i, ma te pe'e atu i te hi'ora'a o tō tātou Fa'aora, mai te au i tāna i fa'aue mai ia tātou ra, e maita'i roa ia 'outou i te mahana ha'avāra'a. 'Āmene.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.

Moromona 8

- 1 Inaha, tē fa'aoti nei au, 'o Moroni, i te pāpa'a parau a tō'u ra metua tāne, 'o Moromona. Inaha, e mau parau ri'i tā'u e pāpa'i, 'e 'ua fa'auehia mai au e tō'u metua tāne 'ia pāpa'i i te reira.
- 2 'E i teienei, i muri a'era, i muri iho i te 'arora'a rahi 'e te ri'ari'a i Kumora ra, inaha, 'ua a'ua'u haere te mau 'āti Lamana i te mau 'āti Nephi i horo atu i te fenua i te pae apato'a, ē tae noa atu 'ua ha'amouhia rātou pā'āto'a.
- 3 'E 'ua taparahi-ato'a-hia tō'u metua tāne e rātou, 'e 'o vau ana'e tei toe mai nō te pāpa'i i te 'ā'amu 'oto nō te ha'amoura'ahia tō'u ra mau ta'ata. Inaha rā, 'ua mou rātou, 'e tē fa'aoti nei au i te fa'auera'a a tō'u ra metua tāne. 'E 'aita vau i 'ite e taparahi ānei rātou iā'u.
- 4 Nō reira, e pāpa'i 'e e huna vau i te mau pāpa'a parau i raro i te repo ; 'e te vāhi tā'u e haere atu, 'aita ia e pe'ape'a.
- 5 Inaha, 'ua pāpa'ihia teie nei pāpa'a parau e tō'u ra metua tāne, 'e 'ua pāpa'i ho'i 'oia i te tumu nō te reira. 'E inaha, 'ua hina'aro ato'a vau 'ia pāpa'i i te reira, 'āhiri tē vai ra te vāhi toe i ni'a i te mau 'api ; 'aita rā e vāhi toe ; 'e 'aita ho'i tā'u e 'ōfa'i metalo, 'e 'o vau ana'e ho'i teie i toe mai. 'Ua taparahihia tō'u metua tāne 'e tō'u mau fēti'i pā'āto'a i roto i te 'arora'a, 'e 'aita tō'u e hoa 'e 'aita ho'i e vāhi nō te haere atu ; 'e te maorora'a tā te Fatu e fa'ati'a iā'u 'ia ora, 'aita vau i 'ite.
- 6 Inaha, 'ua ma'iri e maha hānere matahiti mai te tau i tae mai ai tō tātou Fatu e Fa'aora.
- 7 'E inaha, 'ua a'ua'u haere te mau 'āti Lamana i tō'u ra mau ta'ata, i te mau 'āti Nephi, i terā 'oire 'e i terā 'oire, i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, ē tae noa atu 'ua mou roa rātou ; 'e 'ua rahi roa tō rātou pau ; 'oia ia, e mea rahi 'e te ha'amāere te pau o tō'u ra mau ta'ata, te mau 'āti Nephi.
- 8 'E inaha, nā te rima o te Fatu i rave i te reira. 'E inaha ato'a ho'i, tē 'aro noa ra te mau 'āti Lamana te tahi i te tahi ; 'e 'ua 'i roa ho'i te fenua i te taparahira'a ta'ata 'e te ha'amani'ira'a toto ; 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē ta'ata i 'ite i te hope'a nō teie nei 'arora'a.

Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

- 9 'E i teienei, inaha, 'aita vau e parau fa'ahou nō ni'a ia rātou, nō te mea 'aita te hō'ē e toe ra i ni'a i te fenua nei, maori rā te mau 'āti Lamana 'e te feiā 'eiā haru.
- 10 'E 'aore ho'i e ta'ata i 'ite i te huru o te Atua mau, maori rā te mau pipi a Iesu, 'o tei pārahi i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e nō te rahi o te parauti'a 'ore o te mau ta'ata 'aita atu ra te Fatu i fa'ati'a ia rātou 'ia pārahi noa i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'aita roa e ta'ata i 'ite ē tei ni'a ānei rātou i te fenua nei 'e 'aore rā tei hea roa.
- 11 Inaha rā, 'ua 'ite mata vau 'e tō'u metua tāne ia rātou, 'e 'ua tāvini mai rātou ia māua.
- 12 'E te ta'ata 'o tei fāri'i i teie nei pāpa'a parau, 'e 'o tē 'ore e fa'ahapa i te reira nō te mau hapehape i roto ra, e fāri'i ia 'oia i te mau mea hau atu i teie nei mau mea. Inaha, 'o vau nei 'o Moroni ia ; 'e 'āhiri e ti'a, e fa'a'ite atu ia vau ia 'outou i te mau mea ato'a ra.
- 13 Inaha, tē fa'aoti nei au i te parau atu nō ni'a i teie nei mau ta'ata. E tamaiti au nā Moromona, 'e e hua'ai tō'u metua tāne nō Nephi.
- 14 'E 'o vau iho teie 'o tei huna atu i teie nei pāpa'a parau i te Fatu ra ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i tō te mau 'api iho e faufa'a rahi, te tumu nō te fa'auera'a a te Fatu. 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ho'i 'oia ē, e 'ore roa teie mau 'api e noa'a i te hō'ē ta'ata nō te 'imi i te faufa'a ; 'āre'a rā te parau i roto ra e mea faufa'a rahi roa ia ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē ha'amāramarama mai i te reira ra, 'o 'oia ia tā te Fatu e ha'amaita'i.
- 15 'Aita roa ho'i tō te hō'ē ta'ata e mana nō te ha'amāramarama mai i te reira, maori rā 'ua hōro'ahia te reira iāna e te Atua ; 'e 'ua hina'aro ho'i te Atua 'ia ravehia taua 'ohipa ra ma te mata rōtahi i tōna ra hanahana, 'e 'aore rā nō te maita'i o te feiā i fafau atu i te Fatu i te 'anotau tahito 'e 'o tei ha'apurara-maoro-hia.
- 16 'E e ao ho'i tōna 'o tē fa'atae i teie nei parau i te māmaramama ra ; 'e e fa'ataehia mai ho'i te reira mai roto mai i te pōiri i roto i te māmaramama, mai te au i te parau a te Atua ; 'oia ia, e 'iritihia mai te reira nā roto mai i te repo, 'e e 'ana'ana mai te reira mai roto mai i te pōiri ra, 'e e roa'a i te mau ta'ata te 'ite nō teie mau ta'ata ; 'e e ravehia te reira nā roto i te mana o te Atua.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

- 17 'E mai te mea tē vai ra te mau hape e mau hape ia nā te ta'ata. Inaha rā, 'aita mātou i 'ite i te hō'ē hape ; 'ua 'ite rā te Atua i te mau mea ato'a ; nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'ahapa ra, 'ia ara 'oia 'o te ro'ohia 'oia i te 'ati nō te auahi o hade ra.
- 18 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē parau mai ē : 'A fa'a'ite mai iā'u nei, 'o te ro'ohia 'oe i te ati—'ia ara 'oia 'o te fa'aue 'oia i tei 'ōpanihia e te Fatu ra.
- 19 Inaha ho'i, 'o 'oia 'o tē parau i te parau fa'ahapa ma te rū noa, e roa'a ato'a iāna te parau fa'ahapa rū noa ra ; 'e e fāri'i ho'i 'oia i tāna mau utu'a mai te au i tāna ra mau 'ohipa ; nō reira 'o 'oia 'o tē tūpa'i atu, e tūpa'i-ato'a-hia mai ia 'oia e te Fatu.
- 20 'A hi'o na i tā te pāpa'ira'a mo'a i parau mai—'Eiaha roa te ta'ata e tūpa'i i te ta'ata, 'eiaha ato'a 'oia e ha'avā ; tei iā'u nei ho'i te ha'avāra'a, tē nā reira mai ra te Fatu, 'e tei iā'u ato'a nei ho'i te tāho'ora'a, 'e nā'u ia e tāho'o.
- 21 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'atupu i te riri 'ū'ana 'e te mau mārōra'a i te 'ohipa a te Fatu, 'e i te feiā i fafau atu i te Fatu, nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e 'o tē nā 'ō mai ē : E ha'amou mātou i te 'ohipa a te Fatu, 'e e'ita te Fatu e ha'amana'o i te fafaura'a tāna i fafau atu i te 'utuāfare nō 'Īserā'ela—tei roto ia 'oia i te 'ati, 'ia tā'irihia i raro 'a hurihia atu ai i roto i te auahi.
- 22 E haere noa ho'i te mau 'ōpuara'a mure 'ore a te Fatu i mua, ē tae noa atu 'ua tupu tāna mau 'ōpuara'a ato'a.
- 23 Hi'opo'a i te mau parau tohu a Isaia. Inaha, 'aita e ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te reira. 'Oia ia, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, e riro te feiā mo'a 'o tei pohe nā mua roa iā'u, 'e 'o tei fatu na i teie nei fenua, i te pi'i mai, 'oia ia, i te pi'i mai i te Fatu mai raro mai i te repo ; 'e mai te Fatu e ora ra e ha'amana'o 'oia i te fafaura'a tāna i fafau atu ia rātou.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

- 24 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia i tā rātou ra mau pure, 'ia ha'amaita'ihia tō rātou ra mau taea'e. 'E 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia i tō rātou fa'aro'o ; 'e nā roto i tōna ra i'oa 'ua ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'anuu i te mau mou'a ; 'e nā roto i tōna ra i'oa 'ua ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'āueue i te fenua ; 'e nā roto i te mana o tāna ra parau 'ua ti'a ia rātou 'ia ha'ama'iri i te mau fare tāpe'ara'a i raro i te repo ; 'oia ia, 'e 'aita roa i ti'a i te umu auahi, 'e 'aita ato'a i ti'a i te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri 'e i te mau 'ōphī ta'ero, 'ia ha'amāuiui ia rātou, nō te mana o tāna ra parau.
- 25 'E inaha, 'ua pure ato'a rātou 'ia ha'amaita'ihia te ta'ata 'o tā te Fatu e fa'ati'a 'ia fa'atae mai i teie nei mau mea.
- 26 'Aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia parau ē, e'ita teie mau mea e tupu, e tupu mau iho ā te reira nō te mea nā te Fatu i parau mai i te reira ; 'e nā raro mai ho'i i te repo te reira e tae mai ai, nā roto mai i te rima o te Fatu, 'e 'aita roa e ti'a i te hō'ē noa atu ta'ata 'ia tāpe'a i te reira ; 'e e tae mai te reira i te mahana e parauhia ai ē, 'ua fa'a'orehia te mau semeio ; 'e e tae ato'a mai te reira mai te mea ra ē, tē parau mai nei te hō'ē mai te pohe mai.
- 27 'E e tae mai te reira i te mahana e ti'aoro atu ai te toto o te feiā mo'a i te Fatu, nō te mea tē vai ra te mau pupu 'ohipa huna 'e te mau 'ohipa pōiri.
- 28 'Oia ia, e tae mai te reira i te mahana e hunahia ai te mana o te Atua, e ha'avi'ivi'ihia ai te mau 'ēkālesia 'e e fa'ateiteihia ai ho'i i roto i te te'ote'o o tō rātou 'ā'au ; 'oia ia, 'e i te mahana ho'i e fa'atupu ai te feiā fa'atere 'e te mau 'orometua nō te mau 'ēkālesia i te te'ote'o i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au.
- 29 'Oia ia, e tae mai te reira i te mahana e fa'aro'ohia ai te parau nō te mau auahi, te mau vero, 'e te mau māhu au auahi i te mau fenua 'ē ra.
- 30 'E e fa'aro'o-ato'a-hia te mau tama'i, 'e te parau nō te tama'i, 'e te mau 'āueuera'a fenua i te mau vāhi e rave rahi.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

31 'Oia ia, e tae mai te reira i te mahana e tupu ai te mau mea vi'ivi'i rahi i ni'a i te fenua nei ; e tupu ho'i te mau 'ohipa taparahira'a ta'ata, 'e te 'ohipa 'eiā haru, 'e te ha'avare, 'e te mau fa'ahemara'a, 'e te mau 'ohipa tai'ata, 'e te mau huru 'ohipa vi'ivi'i ato'a ; 'ei reira e rave rahi 'o tē parau mai ē, 'A rave i teie, 'e 'aore rā 'a rave i terā, 'aore ia e pe'ape'a nō te mea e fa'ati'a te Fatu i te reira i te mahana hope'a ra. 'Auē rā ho'i te mau ta'ata mai te reira te huru, nō te mea tei roto rātou i te au 'ava'ava 'e i te mau ru'uru'ura'a nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ra.

32 'Oia ia, e tae mai te mahana e patuhia ai te tahi mau 'ēkālesia 'o tē parau mai ē : 'A haere mai iā'u nei, 'e nō tā 'outou moni e fa'a'orehia ai tā 'outou mau hara.

33 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te feiā parauti'a 'ore 'e te ha'api'o 'e te 'ā'au 'eta'eta ē, nō te aha ho'i 'outou i fa'atupu ai i te mau 'ēkālesia 'ia roa'a mai te faufa'a ia 'outou na ? Nō te aha ho'i 'outou i fa'ahuru 'ē ai i te parau mo'a a te Atua nō te fa'atae mai i te pohe i tō 'outou ra mau vārua ? Inaha, 'a hi'o na 'outou i te mau heheura'a a te Atua ; inaha ho'i, 'ia tae i taua mahana ra, e tupu ia teie nei mau mea.

34 Inaha, 'ua fa'a'ite mai te Fatu iā'u i te mau mea rahi 'e te ha'amāere nō ni'a i te mau mea e tupu i muri noa iho i te mahana e tae mai ai teie mau mea i rotopū ia 'outou na.

35 Inaha, tē parau nei au mai te mea ra ē, tei 'ō nei ato'a 'outou, 'aita roa rā. Inaha rā, 'ua fa'a'ite mai Iesu Mesia ia 'outou iā'u nei, 'e 'ua 'ite au i tā 'outou ra mau 'ohipa.

36 'E 'ua 'ite au ē, te haere ra 'outou ma te 'ā'au te'ote'o ; 'e e mea iti roa tō 'outou 'o tei 'ore i fa'ateitei i tō rātou 'ā'au i roto i te te'ote'o, i te fa'a'ahura'a ia rātou iho i te mau 'ahu nehenehe roa, i te fe'i'i, i te mārō, i te tāiroiro, i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a, 'e i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a ; 'e tā 'outou mau 'ēkālesia, 'ua vi'ivi'i rātou ē hope roa a'e nō te te'ote'o o tō 'outou 'ā'au.

37 Inaha ho'i, tē nounou ra 'outou i te moni, 'e tā 'outou mau tao'a, 'e te 'ahu nehenehe, 'e te fa'a'una'unara'a i tā 'outou mau fare purera'a, 'e 'ua hau tō 'outou nounou i te reira mau mea i tō 'outou aroha i te feiā veve 'e te nava'i 'ore, te feiā ma'i 'e tei ro'ohia i te 'ati ra.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

38 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te feiā vi'ivi'i ē, 'outou e te feiā fa'ahua paieti ē, 'outou e te mau 'orometua ē, 'o tē ho'o ra ia 'outou iho nō te mea pē noa, nō te aha ho'i 'outou i ha'avi'ivi'i ai i te 'ēkālesia mo'a a te Atua ? Nō te aha ho'i 'outou i ha'amā ai 'ia rave i te 'oa o te Mesia i ni'a iho ia 'outou na ? Nō te aha ho'i 'aita 'outou i feruri ē, 'ua hau atu te faufa'a nō te 'oa'oa hope 'ore i te mamae 'o tē 'ore e mou—nō te 'āruera'a a teie nei ao ?

39 Nō te aha ho'i 'outou i fa'a'una'una ai ia 'outou iho i te mea ora 'ore, 'e 'a vaiiho noa atu ai i te feiā po'ia, 'e te feiā nava'i 'ore, 'e te feiā taha'a noa, 'e te feiā ma'i 'e tei ro'ohia i te 'ati 'ia haere noa nā pīha'i iho ia 'outou ma te tauturu 'ore atu ?

40 'Oia iā, nō te aha ho'i 'outou i fa'atupu ai i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa huna 'e te vi'ivi'i 'ia roa'a te faufa'a, 'e i fa'atupu ai i te 'ohipa ia 'oto te mau vahine 'ivi i mua i te Fatu, 'e te mau 'ōtare ato'a 'ia 'oto i mua i te Fatu, 'e 'oia ato'a 'ia ti'aoro atu te toto o tō rātou mau metua 'e tā rātou mau tāne i te Fatu mai te repo mai, nō te tāho'ora'a 'ia tae mai i ni'a iho i tō 'outou upo'o ?

41 Inaha, tē tautau ra te 'o'e nō te tāho'ora'a i ni'a a'e ia 'outou ; 'e tē fātata mai ra te taime e tāho'o ai 'oia i te toto o te feiā mo'a i ni'a ia 'outou, 'e 'aita roa ho'i e ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'oroma'i noa ā i tā rātou mau ti'aorora'a iāna.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Moromona 9

- 1 'E i teieni, tē parau ato'a atu nei au nō ni'a i te feiā 'aita i ti'aturi i te Mesia.
- 2 Inaha, e ti'aturi ānei 'outou i te mahana e fa'autu'ahia ai 'outou—inaha, i te mahana e tae mai ai te Fatu, 'oia ia, i taua mahana rahi ra e 'ōtarohia ai te fenua mai te parau 'ōtarohia ra, 'e e tahe ai te mau mea tumu i te ve'ave'a rahi ra ; 'oia ia, i taua mahana rahi ra e arata'ihia mai ai 'outou i mua i te 'Ārenio a te Atua ra—'ei reira e parau ānei 'outou ē, 'aita e Atua ?
- 3 'Ei reira, e huna noa ānei 'outou i te Mesia, 'e 'aore rā e ti'a ānei ia 'outou 'ia hi'o atu i te 'Ārenio a te Atua ? Tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, e pārahi 'outou i pīha'i iho iāna 'a 'ite noa ai 'outou i tā 'outou 'ohipa hape ? Tē mana'o ra ānei 'outou ē, e 'oa'oa 'outou 'ia pārahi i pīha'i iho i taua ta'ata Mo'a ra, 'a ha'amāuiuihia ai tō 'outou vārua 'ia ha'amana'o i te hape ē 'ua 'ōfati noa 'outou i tāna ra mau ture ?
- 4 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, e hau atu tō 'outou māuiui 'ia pārahi i pīha'i iho i te hō'ē Atua mo'a 'e te parauti'a, 'a ha'amana'o noa ai 'outou i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i mua iāna, i te pārahi i pīha'i iho i te mau vārua fa'ahapahia i hade ra.
- 5 Inaha ho'i, 'ia 'ite 'outou i tō 'outou vai-taha'a-ra'a i mua i te Atua, 'e i te hanahana ato'a o te Atua, 'e te mo'ara'a o Iesu Mesia ra, e fa'aama te reira i te auahi 'ama ma te pohe 'ore i ni'a ia 'outou.
- 6 'Auē ho'i 'outou e te feiā ti'aturi 'ore ē, 'a fāriu mai na i te Fatu ; 'a ti'aoro māite atu i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, penei a'e 'o te 'itehia 'outou i mua iāna i taua mahana rahi 'e te hope'a ma te pōra'o 'ore, 'e te mā, te nehenehe, 'e te teatea, 'e ma te tāmāhia nā roto i te toto o te 'Ārenio ra.
- 7 E parau fa'ahou atu vau ia 'outou, 'o tei huna i te mau heheura'a a te Atua 'e 'o tei parau ē, 'ua fa'a'orehia te reira, 'e 'aita e heheura'a fa'ahou, 'e 'aita e parau tohu, 'e 'aita e hōro'ara'a, 'e 'aita e fa'aorara'a ma'i, 'e 'aita e parau 'e'ē 'e te 'iritira'a i te parau 'e'ē.
- 8 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o 'oia 'o tei huna i teie mau mea, 'aita ia 'oia i 'ite i te 'evanelia a te Mesia ; 'oia ia, 'aita 'oia i tai'o i te mau pāpa'ira'a mo'a ; 'e mai te mea i tai'o ra, 'aita ia 'oia i māmarama i te reira.

Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

9 'Aita ānei ho'i tātou i tai'o ē, hō'ē ā tō te Atua huru i nanahi ra, i teie nei mahana, ē a muri noa atu ; 'e 'aita roa 'oia e tauī, 'aita roa te tahi vāhi iti nō tōna huru e tauī ?

10 'E i teienei, mai te mea e feruri 'outou e atua tauī noa tō 'outou, 'e e tauī ho'i te tahi vāhi iti nō tōna huru, 'ei reira 'ua feruri ia 'outou i tā 'outou iho atua, 'e e 'ere ho'i 'oia i te Atua nō te mau semeio.

11 Inaha rā, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i te Atua nō te mau semeio, 'oia te Atua nō Aberahama, 'e te Atua nō Isaaka, 'e te Atua nō Iakoba ; 'e 'o teie iho ā ia taua Atua ra 'o tei hāmani i te mau ra'i 'e te fenua, 'e te mau mea ato'a i roto i te reira.

12 Inaha, nāna i hāmani ia Adamu, 'e nā roto ia Adamu 'ua tae mai te hi'ara'a i ni'a i te ta'ata nei. 'E nō te hi'ara'a o te ta'ata nei i haere mai ai Iesu Mesia, 'o 'oia ho'i te Metua 'e te Tamaiti ; 'e nō Iesu Mesia i tae mai ai te fa'aorara'a o te ta'ata nei.

13 'E nō te mea 'ua tae mai te fa'aorara'a i te ta'ata nei nā roto ia Iesu Mesia, 'ua fa'aho'ihia atu ia rātou i mua i te aro o te Fatu ; 'oia ia, nā roto ho'i i te reira te mau ta'ata ato'a i te fa'aorahia, nō te mea 'ua fa'atae mai te pohe o te Mesia i te ti'afa'ahoura'a, 'o tei fa'aora i te ta'ata nei i te ta'oto hope 'ore, 'e e fa'aarahia ho'i te mau ta'ata ato'a e te mana o te Atua i taua ta'oto ra i te taima e fa'a'otohia ai te pū ; 'e e ti'a mai rātou, te ta'ata ri'i 'e te feiā rarahi, 'e e ti'a mai rātou pā'āto'a i mua i tāna ra ha'avāra'a, ma te fa'aorahia 'e ma te fa'ata'a-'ē-hia i te tāpe'a mure 'ore nō te pohe, 'oia te pohe pae tino.

14 'E i reira e tae mai ai te ha'avāra'a a Tei Mo'a i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e i reira ho'i e tae mai ai te tau e riro ai te ta'ata vi'ivi'i i te vai vi'ivi'i noa ; 'e te ta'ata parauti'a i te vai parauti'a noa ; 'e te ta'ata 'oa'oa i te vai 'oa'oa noa ; 'e te ta'ata 'oa'oa 'ore i te vai 'oa'oa 'ore noa.

15 'E i teienei, 'o 'outou pā'āto'a 'o tei feruri nō ni'a i te atua semeio 'ore, tē ani atu nei au ia 'outou, 'ua ma'iri ānei taua mau mea tā'u i parau ra ? 'Ua tae mai ānei te hope'a ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'Aita ; 'aita roa te Atua i fa'aea i te riro 'ei Atua nō te mau semeio.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variable-ness neither shadow of changing?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

16 Inaha, 'aita ānei te mau mea tā te Atua i rave i fa'atupu i te mea māere i mua i tō tātou mata ? 'Oia ia, 'o vai tei 'ite māite i te mau 'ohipa māere a te Atua ?

17 'O vai tē parau ē, e 'ere te reira i te semeio, 'oia ho'i nā roto i tāna parau 'ua tupu mai te ra'i 'e te fenua ; 'e nā roto i te mana nō tāna parau 'ua hāmanihia te ta'ata nei i te repo fenua ra ; 'e nā roto i te mana o tāna parau 'ua fa'atupuhia te mau semeio ?

18 'E 'o vai tē parau ē, 'aita Iesu Mesia i rave i te mau semeio rarahi e rave rahi ? 'E e rave rahi ho'i mau semeio rarahi i ravehia e te rima o te mau 'āpōsetolo ra.

19 'E mai te mea 'ua ravehia te mau semeio i taua tau ra, nō te aha ia 'aita te Atua i riro 'ei Atua nō te mau semeio, 'e 'a vai noa ai 'ei Atua tau'i ore ? 'E inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'aore roa 'oia e tau'i ; 'āhiri e tau'i 'oia, 'aita ia 'oia e riro 'ei Atua ; 'aita roa ho'i 'oia e fa'aea 'ia riro 'ei Atua, 'e e Atua ho'i 'oia nō te mau semeio.

20 'E te tumu 'ua fa'aea 'oia i te rave i te mau semeio i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, nō te mea ia 'ua paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e 'ua fa'aru'e i te 'ē'a ti'a, 'e 'aita rātou i 'ite i te Atua 'o tā rātou e ti'aturi ra.

21 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na, 'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi i te Mesia, ma te fē'a 'ore, e hōro'ahia mai ia iāna te mau mea ato'a 'o tāna e ani atu i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o te Mesia ; 'e 'ua hōro'ahia mai teie fafaura'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, ē tae noa atu i te mau hope'a o te ao nei.

22 Inaha ho'i, tē nā 'ō mai ra Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, i tāna nā pipi 'o tē pārahi ra ; 'oia ia, 'e i tāna ato'a mau pipi pā'āto'a i mua i te mau ta'ata : E haere 'outou ē 'ati noa a'e te mau fenua ato'a, e fa'a'ite haere i te 'evanelia i te ta'ata ato'a.

23 'O 'oia 'o tei ti'aturi 'e 'ua bāpetizohia, e ora ia ; 'āre'a rā iāna 'o tei 'ore i ti'aturi ra e fa'ahapahia ia.

24 'E e pe'e atu teie mau tāpa'o nā muri ia rātou 'o tei ti'aturi—nā roto i tō'u nei i'oa e ti'avaru atu rātou i te mau diabolō ; e parau ho'i rātou i te mau reo 'āpī ; e rave noa ho'i rātou i te mau 'ōphī ; 'e 'ia inu rātou i te mea ta'ero 'aita te reira e ha'afifi ia rātou ; e tu'u rātou i tō rātou rima i ni'a i te ta'ata ma'i 'e e fa'aorahia rātou.

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

- 25 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi i tō'u nei i'oa, ma te fē'a'a 'ore, e fa'atupu ia vau i tā'u mau parau ato'a nōna, ē tae noa atu i te mau hope'a o te ao nei.
- 26 'E i teienei, inaha, 'o vai tē ti'a 'ia pāto'i atu i te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu ? 'O vai tē ti'a 'ia huna i tāna mau parau ? 'O vai tē pāto'i atu i te mana rahi o te Fatu ? 'O vai tē vahavaha atu i te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu ? 'O vai tē au 'ore atu i te mau tamari'i a te Mesia ? Inaha, 'o 'outou pā'ato'a ia 'o tei fa'a'ino mai i te mau 'ohipa a te Fatu, e riro ho'i 'outou i te māere 'e i te pohe roa.
- 27 Nō reira, 'eiaha roa e fa'a'ino, 'eiaha ho'i e māere, 'a ha'apa'o rā i te mau parau a te Fatu, 'e 'a ani atu ho'i i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu i te mau mea tā 'outou i hina'aro. 'Eiaha e fē'a'a, 'a ti'aturi rā, 'e 'a ha'amata mai te feiā tahito ra, 'e 'a haere mai i te Fatu ma tō 'outou 'ā'au ato'a, 'e 'a rave pāpū i te 'ohipa nō tō 'outou iho fa'aorara'a ma te mata'u 'e te rurutaina i mua iāna.
- 28 'Ia 'aravihi 'outou i te mau mahana o te orara'a nei ; 'a fa'aru'e 'outou i te mea vi'ivi'i ato'a ; 'eiaha e ani i te hō'ē mea 'o tē fa'atupu i tō 'outou hina'aro vi'ivi'i, e ani rā ma te mana'o 'āueue 'ore 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia topa i roto i te fa'ahemara'a, 'ia tāvini rā 'outou i te Atua ora mau.
- 29 'A ha'apa'o maita'i 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia bāpetizohia ma te ti'amā 'ore ; 'a ha'apa'o maita'i 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia rave noa atu i te 'ōro'a ma te ti'amā 'ore ; 'ia rave rā 'outou i te mau mea ato'a ma te ti'amā, 'e 'ia rave ho'i i te reira nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua ora ; 'e mai te mea e nā reira 'outou ma te fa'aitoito noa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra, e 'ore roa ia 'outou e hurihia i rāpae.
- 30 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na mai te mea ra ē, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou mai te pohe mai ; 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e roa'a ia 'outou tā'u nei mau parau.
- 31 'Eiaha e fa'ahapa mai iā'u nei nō tō'u nei mau hape ; 'eiaha ato'a i tō'u metua tāne nō tōna mau hape ; 'eiaha ato'a ho'i i te feiā i pāpa'i nā mua atu iāna ; a ha'amāuruuru rā i te Atua 'oia i fa'a'ite atu i tō mātou ra mau hape ia 'outou, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia ha'api'i 'ia riro 'ei mea pa'ari atu ā ia mātou nei.

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

- 32 'E i teienei, inaha, 'ua pāpa'i mātou i teie nei pāpa'a parau mai te au i tō mātou 'ite i te mau pāpa'ira'a i parauhia e mātou, te pāpa'ira'a 'Aiphiti fa'a'āpīhia, 'o tei hōro'ahia mai i terā u'i 'e i terā u'i ē tae roa mai ia mātou nei, 'e 'o tei fa'ahuru-'ē-hia e mātou 'ia au maita'i i tō mātou reo.
- 33 'E 'āhiri e mea rarahi maita'i tā mātou mau 'api, 'ua pāpa'i ia mātou i te reira i te pāpa'ira'a Hebera ; 'e 'ua fa'ahuru 'ē ato'a ho'i ia mātou i te pāpa'ira'a Hebera ; 'e 'āhiri 'ua ti'a ia mātou 'ia pāpa'i i te pāpa'ira'a Hebera ra, inaha, 'aita roa ia e hapehape e 'itehia e 'outou i roto i tā mātou pāpa'a parau.
- 34 'Ua 'ite rā te Fatu i te mau mea tā mātou i pāpa'i, 'e 'ua 'ite ato'a ho'i 'oia ē, 'aita roa e nūna'a 'ē atu i 'ite i tō mātou reo, 'e nō te mea 'aita roa e nūna'a 'ē atu i 'ite i tō mātou reo, nō reira, 'ua fa'aineine 'oia i te hō'ē rāve'a nō te 'iritira'a i te reira.
- 35 'E 'ua pāpa'ihia teie nei mau mea 'ia ti'a ia mātou 'ia tāmā i tō mātou mau 'ahu i te toto o tō mātou mau taea'e, 'o tei paruparu tō rātou fa'aro'o.
- 36 'E inaha, teie te mau mea tā mātou i hina'aro i tō mātou mau taea'e, 'oia ia, ē tae noa atu i te fa'aho'ira'ahia te 'ite ia rātou nō ni'a i te Mesia, 'ia au i te mau pure a te feiā mo'a ato'a i pārahi na i te fenua nei.
- 37 'E 'ia fa'ati'a mai te Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia i tā rātou mau pure mai te au i tō rātou ra fa'aro'o ; 'e 'ia ha'amana'o mai ho'i te Atua te Metua i te fafaura'a tāna i fafau atu i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ; 'e 'ia ha'amaita'i mai 'oia ia rātou ē a muri noa atu, nā roto i te fa'aro'o i te i'oa o Iesu Mesia. 'Āmene.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

Te Buka a Etera

Te pāpa'a parau a te mau 'ati Iareda, ravebia nō roto mai i te mau 'api e piti 'aburu 'e ma maba 'o tei 'itebia e te mau ta'ata o Limebi i te mau mahana o te ari'i ra 'o Mosia.

Etera 1

- 1 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i au, 'o Moroni, i te hō'ē 'ā'amu nō te mau ta'ata i te 'anotau tahito i ha'amouhia e te rima o te Fatu i ni'a i te fenua i te pae apato'erau.
- 2 'E tē 'iriti nei au i teie 'ā'amu nō roto mai i te mau 'api e piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha 'o tei 'itehia e te mau ta'ata o Limehi, 'e 'o tei parauhia te Buka a Etera.
- 3 'E tē mana'o nei au ē, i vai na te tufa'a mātāmua nō teie pāpa'a parau i rotopū i te mau 'āti Iuda, 'e tē parau nei te reira nō ni'a i te hāmanira'a o te ao nei, 'e o Adamu ho'i, 'e te 'ā'amu mai taua taime ra ē tae roa mai i te pare rahi, 'e te mau mea ho'i i tupu i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata ē tae roa atu i taua taime ra—
- 4 Nō reira, 'aita vau e pāpa'i i te mau mea i tupu mai te mau mahana mai o Adamu ē tae roa atu i taua taime ra ; 'ua pāpa'ihia rā te reira i ni'a iho i taua mau 'api ra ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ite i te reira e roa'a ia iāna te mana nō te fāri'i i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te 'ā'amu.
- 5 Inaha rā, 'aita vau e hōro'a atu i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te 'ā'amu, e hōro'a atu rā vau i te tahi noa tufa'a nō te 'ā'amu, mai te tau o te pare ē tae roa atu i tō rātou ha'amoura'ahia.
- 6 E fa'a'ite atu vau i te 'ā'amu mai teie te huru. Te ta'ata i pāpa'i i teie pāpa'a parau, 'o Etera ia, 'e e hua'ai 'oia nō Korianetora.
- 7 E tamaiti Korianetora nā Morona.
- 8 'E e tamaiti Morona nā Etema.
- 9 'E e tamaiti Etema nā Ahaha.
- 10 'E e tamaiti Ahaha nā Seta.
- 11 'E e tamaiti Seta nā Sibelona.
- 12 'E e tamaiti Sibelona nā Koma.
- 13 'E e tamaiti Koma nā Korianetuma.
- 14 'E e tamaiti Korianetuma nā Amenigada.
- 15 'E e tamaiti Amenigada nā Aarona.

The Book of Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limbi in the days of King Mosiab.

Ether 1

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblōn.

And Shiblōn was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

16 'E e hua'ai Aarona nā Heta, te tamaiti a
Hearetoma.

17 'E e tamaiti Hearetoma nā Liba.

18 'E e tamaiti Liba nā Kisa.

19 'E e tamaiti Kisa nā Koroma.

20 'E e tamaiti Koroma nā Levi.

21 'E e tamaiti Levi nā Kima.

22 'E e tamaiti Kima nā Morianetona.

23 'E e hua'ai Morianetona nā Ripelakisa.

24 'E e tamaiti Ripelakisa nā Seza.

25 'E e tamaiti Seza nā Heta.

26 'E e tamaiti Heta nā Koma.

27 'E e tamaiti Koma nā Korianetuma.

28 'E e tamaiti Korianetuma nā Emera.

29 'E e tamaiti Emera nā Omera.

30 'E e tamaiti Omera nā Sule.

31 'E e tamaiti Sule nā Kiba.

32 'E e tamaiti Kiba nā Oriha, te tamaiti a Iareda.

33 I tae mai ho'i Iareda 'e tōna taea'e 'e tō rāua
'utuāfare, 'e te tahi atu mau ta'ata 'e tō rātou mau
'utuāfare, mai te pare rahi mai ra, i te taime te Fatu i
fa'ahuru 'ē ai i te reo o te mau ta'ata, 'e i tapu ai i roto
i tōna ra riri 'ū'ana e ha'apurara-'ē-hia rātou nā roto i
te ao ato'a nei ; 'e mai te au i te parau a te Fatu ra 'ua
ha'apurara-'ē-hia atu ra te mau ta'ata.

34 E ta'ata rahi 'e te pūai te taea'e o Iareda, 'e e ta'ata
au-roa-hia ho'i e te Fatu ; 'e 'ua parau mai ra ho'i
Iareda, tōna taea'e, iāna nā 'ō mai ra : 'A ti'aoro atu i
te Fatu 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia fa'ahuru 'ē i tō tātou reo, e 'ore
ho'i tātou e māramarama i tā tātou mau parau.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra te taea'e o Iareda i
te Fatu, 'e 'ua aroha mai ra te Fatu ia Iareda ; nō reira,
'aita atu ra 'oia i fa'ahuru 'ē i te reo o Iareda ; 'e 'aita
a'era te reo o Iareda 'e tō tōna taea'e i fa'ahuru-'ē-hia.

36 I muri iho i te reira 'ua parau atu ra Iareda i tōna
taea'e : 'A ti'aoro fa'ahou atu i te Fatu, penei a'e 'o te
fāriu 'ē atu tōna riri ia rātou, i tō taua mau hoa, 'e
'aita 'oia e fa'ahuru 'ē i tō rātou reo.

And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the
son of Hearthom.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

And Lib was the son of Kish.

And Kish was the son of Corom.

And Corom was the son of Levi.

And Levi was the son of Kim.

And Kim was the son of Morianton.

And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.

And Riplakish was the son of Shez.

And Shez was the son of Heth.

And Heth was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Emer.

And Emer was the son of Omer.

And Omer was the son of Shule.

And Shule was the son of Kib.

And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son
of Jared;

Which Jared came forth with his brother and their
families, with some others and their families, from
the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the
language of the people, and swore in his wrath that
they should be scattered upon all the face of the
earth; and according to the word of the Lord the peo-
ple were scattered.

And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty
man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared,
his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that
he will not confound us that we may not understand
our words.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did
cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion
upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the lan-
guage of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not
confounded.

Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto
the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his
anger from them who are our friends, that he con-
found not their language.

37 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra te taea'e o Iareda i te Fatu, 'e 'ua aroha mai ra te Fatu i tō rātou mau hoa 'e tō rātou ato'a mau 'utuāfare, 'e 'aita atu ra tō rātou reo i fa'ahuru-'ē-hia.

38 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau fa'ahou atu ra Iareda i tōna taea'e, nā 'ō atu ra : 'A haere atu e ani i te Fatu e ti'avaru ānei 'oia ia tātou i rāpae i teie nei fenua, 'e mai te mea e ti'avaru 'oia ia tātou i rāpae i teie nei fenua, 'a ani atu iāna e haere tātou i hea. 'E 'o vai ho'i tei 'ite e hōpoi ānei te Fatu ia tātou i te hō'ē fenua maita'i roa a'e i te mau fenua o te ao nei ? 'E mai te mea e nā reira 'oia, 'ia ha'apa'o maita'i iā tātou i te hina'aro o te Fatu, 'ia roa'a ia tātou te reira 'ei 'āi'a nō tātou.

39 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra te taea'e o Iareda i te Fatu mai te au i te parau i parauhia mai i te vaha o Iareda ra.

40 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aro'o mai ra te Fatu i te parau a te taea'e o Iareda, 'e 'ua aroha mai ra iāna, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra iāna :

41 'A haere 'e 'a ha'aputupu 'āmui mai i tā 'oe mau nana, te oni 'e te ufa, nō te mau huru 'ānimara ato'a ; 'e te mau huru huero ato'a o te fenua ; 'e tō 'oe ra mau 'utuāfare ; 'e tō 'oe ato'a ra taea'e 'o Iareda 'e tōna 'utuāfare ; 'e tō 'oe ato'a ra mau hoa 'e tō rātou mau 'utuāfare ; 'e te mau hoa o Iareda 'e tō rātou ra mau 'utuāfare.

42 'E 'ia oti teie mau mea ia 'oe i te ravehia, e haere atu 'oe nā mua roa nō te arata'i ia rātou i raro i te peho i te pae apato'erau. 'E i reira e fārerei ai au ia 'oe, 'e e haere atu vau nā mua ia 'oe i te hō'ē fenua maita'i roa a'e i te mau fenua ato'a o te ao nei.

43 'E i reira e ha'amaita'i ai au ia 'oe 'e tō 'oe ra hua'ai, 'e e fa'atupu ai au i te hō'ē nūna'a rahi nō'u nō roto mai i tō 'oe hua'ai, 'e te hua'ai ho'i o tō 'oe ra taea'e, 'e nō roto mai ho'i i te hua'ai o te feiā e pe'e atu ia 'oe ra. 'E 'aita roa e nūna'a rahi atu i te nūna'a 'o tā'u e fa'atupu nō roto mai i tō 'oe hua'ai i ni'a i te fenua nei. 'E e nā reira ho'i au ia 'oe nō te mea e mea maoro tō 'oe ti'aorora'a mai iā'u nei.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

Etera 2

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra Iareda 'e tōna taea'e, 'e tō rāua nā 'utuāfare, 'e te mau hoa o Iareda 'e tō tōna taea'e, 'e tō rātou mau 'utuāfare i raro i te peho i te pae apato'erau, ('e te i'oa o taua peho ra 'o Nimeroda ia, 'oia te i'oa o te ta'ata a'ua'u 'ānimara rahi) 'e tā rātou mau nana 'o tā rātou i ha'aputupu'āmu'i ra, te oni 'e te ufa nō te mau huru 'ānimara ato'a ra.
- 2 'E 'ua tu'u ato'a rātou i te mau mārei 'e 'ua noa'a te mau manu o te reva, 'e 'ua hāmani rātou i te hō'ē fāri'i nō te hōpoi nā muri ia rātou i te mau i'a nō roto mai i te mau pape.
- 3 'E 'ua hōpoi ato'a rātou nā muri iho ia rātou i te desereta, tōna aura'a 'ia 'iritihia, e manu hāmani meli ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te hōpoi atu i te mau manu hāmani meli, 'e te mau huru mea ato'a i ni'a i te fenua nei, 'e te mau huru huero ato'a.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ia tae a'era rātou i raro i te peho ra o Nimeroda, 'ua pou mai ra te Fatu 'e 'ua paraparau mai ra i te taea'e o Iareda ; 'e tei roto ho'i 'oia i te hō'ē ata, 'e 'aita te taea'e o Iareda i 'ite atu iāna.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue mai ra te Fatu ia rātou 'ia haere atu i roto i te mēdēbara, 'oia ia, i te vāhi 'aore roa i taehia na e te ta'ata. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu te Fatu nā mua ia rātou, 'e 'ua paraparau mai 'oia ia rātou 'a ti'a noa ai 'oia i roto i te hō'ē ata, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai ia rātou i te vāhi tā rātou e haere atu.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou i roto i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua hāmani ihora i te mau pahī, 'e 'ua tere atu nā ni'a i te mau pape e rave rahi, ma te arata'i-tāmau-hia e te rima o te Fatu.
- 7 'E 'aita te Fatu i fa'ati'a ia rātou 'ia tāpe'a i te tahi atu pae o te miti i roto i te mēdēbara, 'ua hina'aro rā 'oia 'ia haere roa atu rātou i te fenua i fafauhia ra, 'o tei hau atu i te maita'i i te tahi atu mau fenua ato'a, 'e 'o tei fa'ahereherehia e te Fatu te Atua nō te hō'ē nūna'a parauti'a.
- 8 'E 'ua tapu ho'i 'oia i te taea'e o Iareda i roto i tōna riri 'ū'ana ē, e mea ti'a roa i te mau ta'ata 'o tē fāri'i i teie nei fenua fafauhia, 'ia tāvini iāna, te Atua hō'ē roa 'e te parau mau, mai taua taime ra ē a muri noa atu, 'e mai te mea 'aita ra, e tāpū-'ē-hia atu ia rātou i te taime e tae mai ai te 'ira'a nō tōna riri 'ū'ana i ni'a iho ia rātou.

Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

9 'E i teienei, tē 'ite nei tātou i te mau fa'auera'a mana a te Atua nō ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'oia ho'i e fenua fafauhia ; 'e e mea ti'a roa i te nūna'a 'o tē pārahi i ni'a i teie nei fenua 'ia tāvini i te Atua, 'e mai te mea 'aita ra, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia rātou i te taime e tae mai ai te 'ira'a nō tōna riri 'ū'ana i ni'a iho ia rātou. 'E e tae mai te 'ira'a nō tōna riri 'ū'ana i ni'a ia rātou i te taime 'ua 'ī roa rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'Tino.

10 Inaha ho'i, 'ua hau atu teie fenua i te maita'i i te tahi atu mau fenua ato'a ; nō reira 'o 'oia 'o tē pārahi i ni'a i teie fenua e mea ti'a roa iāna 'ia tāvini i te Atua, 'e mai te mea 'aita ra, e tāpū-'ē-hia ia 'oia ; e fa'auera'a mana mure 'ore teie nā te Atua. 'E 'aita rātou e tāpū-'ē-hia ē tae roa 'ua 'ī roa te mau 'ohipa 'Tino i rotopū i te mau tamari'i o te fenua nei.

11 'E e tae mai teie nei parau ia 'outou, e te mau 'Ētene ē, 'ia 'ite 'outou i te mau fa'auera'a mana a te Atua—'ia tātarahapa 'outou, 'e 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia tāmau noa i roto i tā 'outou mau 'ohipa 'Tino ē tae noa atu i te 'ira'a nō te reira, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia fa'atae mai i te 'ira'a nō te riri 'ū'ana o te Atua i ni'a iho ia 'outou, mai tā te feiā o te fenua i te 'anotau i ma'iri i nā reira.

12 Inaha, e fenua maita'i roa teie, 'e te nūna'a e pārahi i ni'a i teie nei fenua, e riro rātou 'ei feiā ti'amā i te tāvinira'a, 'e i te fa'atūtira'a, 'e i te mau nūna'a ato'a i raro a'e i te ra'i, mai te mea e tāvini rātou i te Atua o te fenua, 'oia ho'i 'o Iesu Mesia, 'o tei fa'a'itehia mai nā roto i te mau mea tā mātou i pāpa'i.

13 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i ā vau i tā'u nei pāpa'a parau ; inaha ho'i, i muri a'era, 'ua arata'i mai te Fatu ia Iareda 'e tōna ra mau taea'e i te miti rahi i fa'ata'a 'ē i nā fenua ra. 'E 'ia tae a'era rātou i te miti rahi ra, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa ; 'e 'ua ma'irihia ihora rātou i te i'oa o taua vāhi ra 'o Morianekumera ; 'e 'ua pārahi noa ihora rātou i roto i te mau ti'ahapa, 'e 'ua pārahi noa rātou i roto i te mau ti'ahapa i tahatai nō te ārea e maha matahiti te maoro.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

14 'E i muri a'era, i te hope'a nō nā matahiti e maha ra, 'ua fā fa'ahou mai ra te Fatu i te taea'e o Iareda, 'e 'ua ti'a noa mai ra 'oia i roto i te hō'ē ata 'e 'ua paraparau mai ra iāna. 'E nō te ārea e toru hora te maoro 'ua paraparau noa mai te Fatu i te taea'e o Iareda, 'e 'ua 'avau mai ra iāna nō te mea 'aore 'oia i ha'amana'o 'ia ti'aoro atu i te i'oa o te Fatu.

15 'E 'ua tātarahapa ihora te taea'e o Iareda i te 'ohipa 'ino tāna i rave, 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra i te i'oa o te Fatu nō tōna ra mau taea'e i pīha'i iho iāna ra. 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iāna : E fa'a'ore au i tā 'oe ra mau hara 'e i te mau hara a tō 'oe ra mau taea'e ; 'eiaha rā 'outou e hara fa'ahou, 'a ha'amana'o ho'i 'outou ē, e 'ore roa tō'u Vārua e tūtava noa 'e te ta'ata nei ē a muri noa atu ; nō reira, 'ia rave 'outou i te hara ē tae noa atu 'ua 'i roa 'outou i te reira, e tātū-ē-hia iā 'outou i te aro o te Fatu ra. 'E teie tō'u mau mana'o nō ni'a i te fenua 'o tā'u e hōro'a atu 'ei 'āi'a nō 'outou ; 'e e riro ho'i te reira 'ei fenua hau roa i te maita'i i te tahi atu mau fenua ato'a.

16 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu : 'A haere 'outou 'e 'a hāmani i te tahi mau pahī mai tā 'outou i hāmani na. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te taea'e o Iareda nō te rave i te 'ohipa, 'e tōna mau taea'e ato'a, 'e 'ua hāmani ihora rātou i te mau pahī mai te au i tā rātou i hāmani na, mai te au ho'i i tā te Fatu ra mau ha'api'ira'a. 'E e mea hu'a te reira, 'e e mea huru māmā ho'i i ni'a i te pape, mai te māmā o te manu pererau i ni'a iho i te pape ra.

17 'E 'ua hāmanihia te reira 'ei mea piri maita'i roa, 'e 'ia fāri'i ho'i i te pape mai te 'āu'a ra te huru ; 'e te rarora'a ra e mea piri iā mai te 'āu'a ra te huru ; 'e nā pae ra e mea piri ato'a iā mai te 'āu'a ra te huru ; 'e nā hope'a ra e mea huru 'oe'oe iā ; 'e te tahua i ni'a ra e mea piri iā mai te 'āu'a ra te huru ; 'e te roara'a ra e au iā i te roara'a o te hō'ē tumu rā'au ; 'e te 'ōpani ra 'ia 'ōpanihia ra, e mea piri iā mai te 'āu'a ra te huru.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'aoro atu ra te taea'e o Iareda i te Fatu, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē : E te Fatu, 'ua rave au i te 'ohipa tā 'oe i fa'aue mai, 'e 'ua hāmani au i te mau pahī mai tā 'oe i parau mai iā'u ra.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

19 'E inaha, e te Fatu, 'aita e mōrī tō roto i teie mau pahī, e nāhea mātou i te fa'atere? 'E e pohe ho'i mātou nō te mea 'aita e ti'a ia mātou 'ia huti i te aho, maori rā i te mata'i ana'e i roto i te mau pahī, nō reira e pohe roa mātou.

20 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu i te taea'e o Iareda : Inaha, e hāmani 'oe i te hō'ē 'āpo'o i te tahua i ni'a o te pahī, 'e i te rarora'a ato'a, 'e 'ia pau tō 'oe aho e 'iriti 'oe i te 'ōrei o te 'āpo'o 'ia roa'a mai te mata'i. 'E mai te mea e tahe mai te pape i ni'a ia 'oe, inaha, e 'ōrei 'oe i te 'āpo'o, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia pohe i roto i te miti ra.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira ihora te taea'e o Iareda, mai tā te Fatu i fa'ae mai ra.

22 'E 'ua ti'aoro fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te Fatu, i te nā-ō-ra'a ē : E te Fatu, inaha, 'ua rave au mai tā 'oe i fa'ae mai iā'u ra ; 'e 'ua fa'aineine au i te mau pahī nō tō'u ra mau ta'ata, 'e inaha, 'aita e māramarama tō roto i te mau pahī. Inaha, e te Fatu, e vaiho ānei 'oe ia mātou 'ia haere i terā pae mai i teie pape rahi i roto i te pōiri ?

23 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu i te taea'e o Iareda : E aha tā 'oe i hina'aro iā'u 'ia rave 'ia roa'a mai te māramarama i roto i tō 'outou mau pahī ? Inaha ho'i, 'aita e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia hāmani i te mau ha'amāramarama, e hu'ahu'a roa ho'i te reira ; 'eiaha ato'a 'outou e 'āfa'i i te auahi nā muri ia 'outou, e'ita ho'i 'outou e haere ma te māramarama o te auahi.

24 Inaha ho'i, e riro tō 'outou mau pahī mai te tohorā i raro i te moana ra ; 'e e fati pūai mai ho'i te mau 'are miti mai te mou'a te teitei i ni'a iho ia 'outou na. 'Āre'a rā, e 'āfa'i fa'ahou mai au ia 'outou i ni'a mai raro mai i te mau vāhi hōhonu o te moana ra ; 'e 'ua reva atu ho'i te mau mata'i nō roto atu i tō'u nei vaha, 'e 'ua tu'u atu vau i te mau ua 'e te mau pape pu'e ra.

25 'E inaha, tē fa'aineine nei au ia 'outou nō taua mau mea nei ; 'e 'aita roa e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia haere atu i terā pae mai o teie nei pape rahi, maori rā 'ia pāruru vau ia 'outou i te mau 'are o te miti ra, 'e i te mau mata'i i reva atu na, 'e i te mau pape pu'e 'o tē haere mai ra. Nō reira, e aha tā 'oe e hina'aro iā'u 'ia rave nō te fa'aineine ia 'outou 'ia roa'a mai te māramarama i te taime 'outou e horomi'ihia ai i roto i te mau vāhi hōhonu o te moana rā ?

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

Etera 3

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra te taea'e o Iareda (i teieni tē vai ra e va'u pahī i fa'aîneinehia) i ni'a i te mou'a 'o tā rātou i topa i te i'oa 'o Selema, nō tōna ra teitei rahi, 'e 'ua fa'atahe ihora 'oia i te mau 'ōfa'i ri'i e hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma ono nō roto mai i te mato ; e mea 'uo'uo 'e te ateate, 'oia ho'i e mea ateate mai te hi'o ra ; 'e 'ua hōpoi atu 'oia i te reira i roto i tōna rima i ni'a i te tupua'i mou'a ra, 'e 'ua ti'aoro fa'ahou atu ra i te Fatu, nā 'ō atu ra :
- 2 E te Fatu, 'ua parau a'enei 'oe ē, e ha'a'atihia mātou i te pape pu'e ra. I teieni, inaha, e te Fatu, 'eiaha 'oe e riri i tō tāvini nei nō tōna paruparu i mua ia 'oe na ; 'e 'ua 'ite pāpū ho'i mātou ē, e mea mo'a 'oe 'e tē pārahi nei 'oe i roto i te mau ra'i, 'e e mea ti'amā 'ore mātou i mua ia 'oe na ; nō te hi'ara'a 'ua vai 'ino noa ā tō mātou mau huru, 'āre'a rā e te Fatu, 'ua hōro'a mai 'oe i te hō'ē fa'auera'a ia mātou nei 'ia ti'aoro atu ia 'oe e ti'a ai, 'e nā roto ia 'oe e fāri'i ai mātou mai te au i tō mātou mau hina'aro.
- 3 Inaha, e te Fatu, 'ua tā'iri mai 'oe ia mātou nō tā mātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'e 'ua tīahi haere noa 'oe ia mātou, 'e 'ua pārahi noa mātou i teie mau matahiti e rave rahi i roto i te mēdēbara ; 'āre'a rā 'ua aroha mai 'oe ia mātou. E te Fatu, 'a hi'o mai na 'oe iā'u nei ma te aroha, 'e 'a fa'afāriu 'ē atu i tō 'oe riri i tō 'oe nei mau ta'ata, 'e 'eiaha 'oe e vaiho noa ia rātou 'ia haere atu i terā pae mai i teie nei moana ri'ari'a i roto i te pōiri ; 'a hi'o mai rā 'oe i teie nei mau mea 'o tā'u i fa'atahe nō roto mai i te mato.
- 4 'E 'ua 'ite au, e te Fatu, tei ia 'oe na te mana pā'āto'a, 'e e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a 'o tā 'oe e hina'aro nō te maita'i o te ta'ata nei ; nō reira, 'a tāpe'a mai na 'oe i teie nei mau 'ōfa'i, e te Fatu, i tō 'oe manimani rima, 'e 'a fa'ariro i te reira 'ei mea 'ana'ana i roto i te pōiri ; 'ia 'ana'ana mai te reira i ni'a ia mātou i roto i te mau pahī 'o tā mātou i hāmani, 'ia roa'a ia mātou te māramarama 'a haere ai mātou nā ni'a i te moana.
- 5 Inaha, e te Fatu, e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia rave i te reira. 'Ua 'ite mātou e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia fa'a'ite mai i te mana rahi, 'āre'a rā e au ra ē e mea faufa'a 'ore te reira i te mana'o o te ta'ata nei.

Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era tā te taea'e o Iareda paraura'a i teie mau parau, inaha, 'ua fa'atoro mai ra te Fatu i tōna rima, 'e 'ua tāpe'a tāta'ihō'ē ihora i te mau 'ōfa'i i tōna manimani rima. 'E 'ua rave-'ē-hia atu ra te pāruru i te mata o te taea'e o Iareda, 'e 'ua 'ite atu ra 'oia i te manimani rima o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua au te reira i te manimani rima o te hō'ē ta'ata, te hō'ē ta'ata tino 'i'o 'e te toto ; 'e 'ua ma'iri ihora te taea'e o Iareda i raro i mua i te Fatu, nō te mea 'ua ro'ohia ho'i 'oia i te mata'u.

7 'E 'ua 'ite a'era te Fatu ē 'ua ma'iri te taea'e o Iareda i raro, i ni'a i te repo, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu iāna : 'A ti'a mai i ni'a, nō te aha ho'i 'oe i ma'iri ai i raro ?

8 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra 'oia i te Fatu : 'Ua 'ite au i te manimani rima o te Fatu, 'e 'ua mata'u ihora vau 'o te tā'iri mai 'oia iā'u ; 'e 'aita ho'i au i 'ite ē e tino 'i'o 'e te toto tō te Fatu.

9 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu iāna : Nō tō 'oe fa'aro'o i 'ite ai 'oe ē, e rave mai au i te tino 'i'o 'e te toto nō'u iho ; 'e 'aore roa e ta'ata i haere mai i mua iā'u ma te fa'aro'o rahi e au i tō 'oe na ; 'e 'āhiri 'aita te reira, 'aita ato'a 'oe e 'ite i tō'u manimani rima. 'Ua rahi atu ānei tō 'oe 'ite i teie ?

10 'E 'ua pāhono atu ra 'oia : 'Aita roa ; e te Fatu, 'a fa'a'ite mai na ia 'oe iho iā'u nei.

11 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu iāna : E ti'aturi ānei 'oe i te mau parau 'o tā'u e parau atu ?

12 'E 'ua pāhono atu ra 'oia : 'Ē, e te Fatu, 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, tē parau nei 'oe i te parau mau, nō te mea e Atua 'oe nō te parau mau, 'e 'aita e ti'a ia 'oe 'ia ha'avare.

13 'E 'ia fa'aoti a'era 'oia i te parau atu i teie mau parau, inaha, 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra te Fatu iāna iho iāna ra, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra : Nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oe i teie nei mau mea, 'ua fa'aorahia ia 'oe i te hi'ara'a ; nō reira 'ua fa'aho'i-fa'ahou-hia mai 'oe i mua i tō'u aro ; nō reira tē fa'a'ite atu nei au iā'u iho ia 'oe na.

14 Inaha, 'o vau nei teie 'o tei fa'aineinehia mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei nō te fa'aora i tō'u ra mau ta'ata. Inaha, 'o vau 'o Iesu Mesia. 'O vau te Metua 'e te Tamaiti. Nā roto iā'u nei e fāri'i ai te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'oia ho'i, te feiā ato'a 'o tē ti'aturi i tō'u nei 'oia, i te ora, 'o tē vai noa ē a muri noa atu, 'e e riro ho'i rātou 'ei mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e 'ei mau tamari'i tamāhine nā'u.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

15 'E 'aita ā vau i fa'a'ite atu ra iā'u iho i te ta'ata 'o tā'u i hāmani, nō te mea 'aita roa ā e ta'ata i ti'aturi iā'u nei mai tā 'oe i nā reira. Tē 'ite ra ānei 'oe ē, 'ua hāmanihia 'oe mai te au i tō'u iho hōho'a ? 'Oia ia, 'ua hāmanihia te mau ta'ata ato'a i te mātāmua roa 'ia au i tō'u iho hōho'a.

16 Inaha, teie nei tino tā 'oe e hi'o nei, 'o te tino ia o tō'u vārua ; 'e 'ua hāmani au i te ta'ata 'ia au i te huru o te tino o tō'u ra vārua ; 'e mai te au i te huru 'o tā'u e fā mai nei i mua ia 'oe i te tino vārua, e fā ato'a atu vau i tō'u ra feiā mai te reira te huru i te tino 'i'o.

17 'E i teienei, mai tā'u 'o Moroni i parau atu, 'aita roa e ti'a iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te tā'āto'ara'a o te 'ā'amu nō teie mau mea i pāpa'ihia, nō reira, 'ua nava'i noa iā'u 'ia parau atu ē, 'ua fa'a'ite mai Iesu iāna iho i teie nei ta'ata i roto i te vārua, mai te au i te huru 'e te hōho'a o taua iho tino ra, mai tāna i fa'a'ite mai iāna iho i te mau 'āti Nephi.

18 'E 'ua tauturu mai 'oia iāna mai tāna i tauturu mai i te mau 'āti Nephi ; 'e 'ua nā reira 'oia 'ia 'ite teie nei ta'ata ē, 'o te Atua ia 'oia, nō te mau 'ohipa ta'a 'ē e rave rahi tā te Fatu i fa'a'ite mai iāna ra.

19 'E nō tō teie nei ta'ata 'ite, 'aita roa ia 'oia e ti'a 'ia tāpe'ahia 'ia 'ore 'ia 'ite atu i te tahi pae mai o te pāruru ; 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia i te manimani rima o Iesu, 'e i tōna 'itera'a atu, 'ua ma'iri ihora 'oia i raro ma te mata'u ; nō te mea 'ua 'ite 'oia ē, 'o te manimani rima teie o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua 'ore a'era tōna fa'aro'o, nō te mea 'ua 'ite mau 'oia, ma te fē'a'a 'ore.

20 Nō reira, nā roto i te fāri'ira'a i teie 'ite pāpū roa nō ni'a i te Atua, 'aita roa ia 'oia e ti'a 'ia tāpe'ahia i te tahi pae mai o te pāruru ; nō reira 'ua hi'o 'oia ia Iesu, 'e 'ua tauturu mai 'oia iāna.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu i te taea'e o Iareda : Inaha, 'eiaha 'oe e fa'ati'a i teie mau mea tā 'oe i hi'o 'e i fa'aro'o 'ia tae atu i tō te ao nei, ē tae noa atu i te taime e fa'ahanahana ai au i tō'u i'oa i te tino ra ; nō reira, e tāpe'a māite 'oe i teie nei mau mea tā 'oe i hi'o 'e i fa'aro'o ra, 'e 'eiaha roa e fa'a'ite atu i te hō'ē noa atu ta'ata.

22 'E inaha, 'ia haere mai 'oe i mua iā'u, e pāpa'i 'oe i te reira 'e e tāpiri ho'i i te reira, 'ia 'ore e ti'a i te hō'ē noa atu ta'ata 'ia 'iriti i te reira ; 'e e pāpa'i ho'i 'oe i te reira i te hō'ē reo 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia tai'ohia.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

- 23 'E inaha, e hōro'a atu vau i teie nā 'ōfa'i e piti ia 'oe na, 'e e tāpiri ato'a 'oe i te reira 'e te mau mea tā 'oe e pāpa'i.
- 24 Inaha ho'i, te reo tā 'oe e pāpa'i, 'ua fa'ahuru-'ē-hia ia e au ; nō reira, i tō'u iho tau mau, e fa'ariro vau i teie nei nā 'ōfa'i e piti 'ei ha'amāramarama i te mata o te ta'ata i teie mau mea tā 'oe e pāpa'i.
- 25 'E 'ia oti a'era tā te Fatu paraura'a atu i teie nei mau parau, 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra 'oia i te taea'e o Iareda i te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a o te ao nei, 'o tei vai na, 'e 'o tē vai ato'a a muri atu ; 'e 'aita roa 'oia i tāpe'a i te reira 'ia 'ore tōna mata 'ia 'ite, ē tae noa atu i tō te mau hope'a o te ao nei.
- 26 I parau na ho'i 'oia iāna i te mau taime nā mua atu, 'e mai te mea e ti'aturi 'oia iāna, 'e e ti'a iāna 'ia fa'a'ite mai i te mau mea ato'a iāna—e fa'a'itehia ia iāna ; nō reira, e'ita roa te Fatu e tāpe'a i te hō'ē mea 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia 'ite atu, 'e 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oia ē, e ti'a i te Fatu 'ia fa'a'ite mai i te mau mea ato'a iāna ra.
- 27 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu iāna : 'A pāpa'i i teie nei mau mea 'e 'a tāpiri māite i te reira ; 'e e fa'a'ite atu vau i te reira i tō'u iho tau mau i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue mai ra te Fatu iāna 'ia tāpiri 'oia i nā 'ōfa'i e piti o tāna i fāri'i, 'e 'eiaha roa e fa'a'ite noa atu, ē tae noa atu i te tau e fa'a'ite mai ai te Fatu i te reira i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

Etera 4

- 1 'E 'ua fa'aue mai ra te Fatu i te taea'e o Iareda 'ia pou atu i raro i te mou'a mai mua atu i te aro o te Fatu, 'e 'ia pāpa'i i te mau mea tāna i hi'o na ; 'e 'ua 'ōpanihia te reira 'ia fa'ataehia atu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, e tae roa atu i muri iho i te tau e fa'ateiteihia ai 'oia i ni'a i te sātauro ; 'e 'o te reira ho'i te tumu i tāpe'a noa ai te ari'i ra o Mosia i te reira, 'ia 'ore te reira 'ia tae i tō te ao ē tae noa atu i te tau e fa'a'ite mai ai te Mesia iāna iho i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 2 'E i muri iho i tō te Mesia fa'a'itera'a mai iāna iho i tōna ra mau ta'ata, 'ua fa'aue mai 'oia 'ia fa'a'itehia atu te reira.
- 3 'E i teienei, i muri a'e i te reira, 'ua paruparu tō rātou ato'a fa'aro'o ; 'e 'aore roa e ta'ata toe, maori rā te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'ua pāto'i rātou i te 'evanelia a te Mesia ; nō reira 'ua fa'auehia vau 'ia huna fa'ahou i te reira i raro i te fenua.
- 4 Inaha, 'ua pāpa'i au i ni'a i teie mau 'api i taua iho mau mea tā te taea'e o Iareda i hi'o ra ; 'e mai te mātāmua mai ā 'aita atu e mau mea i fa'a'itehia mai 'o tei hau atu i te rahi i te reira 'o tei fa'a'itehia mai i te taea'e o Iareda.
- 5 Nō reira 'ua fa'aue mai te Fatu iā'u 'ia pāpa'i i te reira ; 'e 'ua pāpa'i au i te reira. 'E 'ua fa'aue mai 'oia iā'u 'ia tāpiri i te reira ; 'e 'ua fa'aue ato'a mai 'oia iā'u 'ia tāpiri i te 'iritira'a nō te reira ; nō reira 'ua tāpiri vau i te mau 'iriti parau ; mai te au i te fa'auera'a a te Fatu.
- 6 'Ua parau mai ho'i te Fatu iā'u : E 'ore roa te reira e tae i te mau 'Ētene ē tae noa atu i te mahana e tātarahapa ai rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'e e riro ai 'ei feiā mā i mua i te Fatu.
- 7 'E tē nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu, 'ei taua mahana ra 'a ti'aturi mai ai rātou iā'u nei, mai te taea'e o Iareda i ti'aturi mai iā'u ra, 'ia riro rātou 'ei feiā ha'amo'ahia i roto iā'u nei, 'ei reira vau e fa'a'ite atu ai ia rātou i te mau mea tā te taea'e o Iareda i 'ite, ē tae noa atu i te tātarara'a atu i tā'u mau heheura'a ato'a ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra ho'i Iesu Mesia, te Tamaiti a te Atua, te Metua o te mau ra'i 'e te fenua nei, 'e te mau mea ato'a i roto ra.

Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

- 8 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē mārō atu i te parau a te Fatu ra, 'ia 'anatemahia 'oia ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē huna i teie nei mau mea ra, 'ia 'anatemahia 'oia ; 'e e ore ho'i au e fa'a'ite atu i te mau mea rahi a'e ia rātou, tē nā reira mai ra Iesu Mesia ; 'e 'o vau ho'i ia teie e parau nei.
- 9 'E nā roto i tā'u nei parau, 'ua vētea a'era te mau ra'i 'e 'ua tāmauhia ; 'e nā roto i tā'u nei parau e 'āueue te fenua ; 'e nā roto i tā'u nei parau e ha'amouhia te mau ta'ata o te fenua nei, mai te mea ra ē, nā roto i te auahi.
- 10 'E 'o 'oia 'o tei 'ore i ti'aturi i tā'u nei mau parau, 'aita ato'a ia 'oia i ti'aturi i tā'u mau pipi ; 'e mai te mea 'o vau iho ānei teie e parau nei, nā 'outou iho ia e hi'o ; 'e e 'ite ho'i 'outou ē, 'o vau iho teie i parau atu, 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 11 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi i te mau mea tā'u i parau ra, e tauturu ia vau iāna nā roto i te mau fa'a'itera'a a tō'u ra Vārua, 'e e 'ite 'oia 'e e fa'a'ite atu ho'i 'oia. Nō tō'u ho'i Vārua 'oia e 'ite ai ē, e parau mau teie nei mau mea ; 'e nā te reira e fa'a'itoito i te ta'ata 'ia rave i te 'ohipa maita'i.
- 12 'E te mau mea 'o tē arata'i i te ta'ata 'ia rave i te 'ohipa maita'i, nō roto atu ia iā'u nei ; 'aore ho'i te maita'i e tae mai nā roto i te hō'ē noa atu ta'ata, maori rā nā roto atu iā'u nei. 'O vau nei ho'i 'o tē arata'i nei i te mau ta'ata i te mau mea maita'i ato'a ; 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi i tā'u nei mau parau, e 'ore ato'a ia 'oia e ti'aturi iā'u nei—'oia ho'i, tē vai mau nei au ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi iā'u nei, e 'ore ato'a ia 'oia e ti'aturi i te Metua 'o tei tono mai iā'u nei. Inaha ho'i, 'o vau te Metua, 'o vau te māramarama, 'e te ora, 'e te parau mau o te ao nei.
- 13 'A haere mai iā'u nei, e te mau 'Ētene ē, 'e e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i te tahi mau mea rahi a'e, te 'ite 'o tei hunahia nō te ti'aturi 'ore.
- 14 'A haere mai iā'u nei, 'e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē, 'e e fa'a'itehia atu ia 'outou te mau mea rarahi tā te Metua i fa'aineine mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei nō 'outou ; 'e 'aita te reira i tae mai ia 'outou nō te ti'aturi 'ore.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

- 15 Inaha, 'ia pāhae atu 'outou i te pāroru nō te ti'aturi 'ore 'o tei tāpe'a noa ia 'outou i roto i tō 'outou ti'ara'a ri'ari'a nō te 'ohipa 'ī'ino, 'e te 'ā'au 'eta'eta, 'e te mana'o pōiri, 'ei reira 'outou e 'ite ai i te mau mea rarahi 'e te māere i hunahia ia 'outou mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei—'oia ia, 'ia ti'aoro atu 'outou i te Metua i tō'u ra i'oa ma te 'ā'au 'oto e te vārua tātarahapa, 'ei reira 'outou e 'ite ai ē 'ua ha'amana'o te Metua i te fafaura'a tāna i fafau i tō 'outou ra mau metua, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.
- 16 'E i reira tā'u mau heheura'a, 'o tā'u i fa'ae atu i tō'u tāvini ra ia Ioane 'ia pāpā'i, e hōhorahia atu ai i mua i te mata o te mau ta'ata ato'a. 'A ha'amana'o, 'ia 'ite ana'e 'outou i teie nei mau mea, 'ei reira 'outou e 'ite ai ē, 'ua fātata te tau e fa'a'ite-mau-hia ai te reira.
- 17 Nō reira, 'ia fāri'i 'outou i teie nei pāpā'a parau 'ei reira 'outou e 'ite ai ē, 'ua ha'amata te 'ohipa a te Metua i ni'a i te fenua nei.
- 18 Nō reira, 'a tātarahapa, e tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei, 'e 'a haere mai iā'u nei, 'e 'a ti'aturi i tā'u nei 'evanelia, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi 'e 'ua bāpetizohia e fa'aorahia ia; 'āre'a rā 'o 'oia 'o tē 'ore e ti'aturi e fa'ahapahia ia; 'e e pe'e atu te mau tāpā'o nā muri ia rātou 'o tē ti'aturi i tō'u ra i'oa.
- 19 'E e ao tōna 'o tei 'itea tōna ha'apa'o maita'i i te mahana hope'a ra, e fa'ateiteihia ho'i 'oia 'ia pārahi i roto i te bāsileia i fa'aineinehia nōna mai te ha'amatarā'a mai ā o te ao nei. 'E inaha, 'o vau ho'i tei parau na i te reira. 'Āmene.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

Etera 5

- 1 'E i teienei, 'ua pāpa'i au, 'o Moroni, i te mau parau tei fa'auehia mai iā'u, mai te au i tā'u i ha'amana'ora ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'oe i te mau mea 'o tā'u i tāpiri ; nō reira 'eiaha 'oe e rave noa atu i te reira 'ia ti'a ia 'oe 'ia 'iriti, nō te mea 'ua 'ōpanihia 'oe 'ia rave i te reira, maori rā i te tau noa atu e ti'a ai i te pa'ari o te Atua.
- 2 'E inaha, e fa'ati'ahia paha 'oe 'ia fa'a'ite atu i te mau 'api ia rātou 'o tē tauturu ia 'oe i te ravera'a i teie nei 'ohipa.
- 3 'E e fa'a'itehia te reira i nā ta'ata to'otoru e te mana o te Atua ; nō reira e 'ite pāpū rātou ē, e parau mau teie nei mau mea.
- 4 'E nā roto i te vaha o nā 'ite to'otoru e fa'atupuhia ai teie nei mau mea ; 'e nā roto i te 'itera'a pāpū o nā 'ite to'otoru, 'e teie nei 'ohipa e fa'a'itehia mai ai te mana o te Atua 'e tō tāna ato'a ho'i parau, 'o tā te Metua, 'e tā te Tamaiti, 'e tā te Vārua Maita'i e fa'a'ite pāpū mai—'e e ti'a atu teie mau mea ato'a 'ei 'itera'a pāpū nō te fa'ahapa i tō te ao nei i te mahana hope'a ra.
- 5 'E mai te mea e tātarahapa rātou 'e e haere mai i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu, e fāri'ihia ia rātou i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ra.
- 6 'E i teienei, nā 'outou iho e feruri ē, 'aita ānei tō'u ha'amanara'a nō ni'a iho i teie nei mau mea, 'e e 'ite ho'i 'outou ē tē vai nei tō'u ha'amanara'a 'ia 'ite mai 'outou iā'u nei, 'e e ti'a atu tātou i mua i te Atua i te mahana hope'a ra. 'Āmene.

Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

Etera 6

- 1 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i au, 'o Moroni, i te pāpa'a parau o Iareda 'e tōna ra taea'e.
- 2 I te mea ē, i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era te Fatu i te fa'aineine i te mau 'ōfa'i tā te taea'e o Iareda i hōpoi i ni'a i te mou'a ra, 'ua pou mai ra te taea'e o Iareda i raro mai te mou'a mai ra, 'e 'ua tu'u atu ra 'oia i te mau 'ōfa'i i roto i te mau pahī i hāmanihia, hō'ē 'ōfa'i i nā pae hope'a o te reira ; 'e inaha, 'ua ha'amāramarama mai ra te reira i te mau pahī.
- 3 'E 'ua nā reira te Fatu i te rave i te mau 'ōfa'i 'ia 'ana'ana i roto i te pōiri, 'ia roa'a te māmarama i te mau tāne, 'e te mau vahine, 'e te mau tamari'i, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia haere i te tahi pae mai i te mau pape rahi nā roto i te pōiri.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō rātou fa'aineinera'a i te mau huru mā'a ato'a, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ora noa i ni'a i te miti, 'e te mā'a ato'a nā tā rātou mau nana māmoe 'e mau nana pua'atoro, 'e te mau pua'a, 'e te mau 'ānimara, 'e te mau manu pererau tā rātou e hōpoi nā muri ia rātou—'e i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era teie mau mea ato'a i te ravehia, 'ua haere atu ra rātou i roto i tō rātou mau pahī, 'e 'ua fano atu ra nā ni'a i te moana, 'e 'ua tu'u a'era rātou ia rātou iho i te Fatu tō rātou Atua.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'afarara mai ra te Fatu te Atua i te hō'ē mata'i rahi roa i ni'a iho i te miti, ma te haere ti'a atu i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te tere tāhurihuri noa i ni'a i te mau 'are miti i mua i te mata'i.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi taime 'ua hutihia rātou i raro i te mau vāhi hōhonu o te moana, nō te mau 'are miti teitei mai te mou'a tei fati mai i ni'a iho ia rātou ra, 'e nō te mau vero rahi 'e te ri'ari'a ho'i tei fa'atupuhia e te mata'i pūai rahi.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, i tō rātou hutira'ahia i roto i te hōhonu o te moana, 'aita te miti i ha'ape'ape'a ia rātou, nō te mea 'ua piri maita'i tō rātou mau pahī mai te 'āu'a ra, 'e 'oia ato'a 'ua piri maita'i ho'i te reira mai te pahī o Noa ra ; nō reira 'ia ha'a'atihia rātou e te moana rahi, 'ua ti'aoro atu rātou i te Fatu, 'e 'ua fa'aho'i mai 'oia ia rātou i ni'a roa a'e i te mau pape.

Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

8 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa te mata'i i fa'aea i te puhupuhi noa e tae atu i te fenua i fafauhia ra, 'a vai noa ai rātou i ni'a i te moana ; 'e 'ua nā reira rātou i te tūra'ihia i mua i te mata'i.

9 'E 'ua hīmene noa rātou i te mau hīmene 'āruē i te Fatu ; 'oia ia, 'ua hīmene te taea'e o Iareda i te hīmene 'āruē i te Fatu, 'e 'ua ha'amāuruuru atu ra 'oia i te Fatu i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te mahana, 'e 'ia tae mai te pō ra, 'aita rātou i fa'aea i te 'āruē atu i te Fatu.

10 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te tūra'i-noa-hia ; 'e 'aita roa e ti'a i te mau mea taehae o te moana 'ia ha'apararī ia rātou, 'e 'aita ato'a e ti'a i te tohorā ia ha'ape'ape'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua māramarama noa rātou, nā ni'a ānei rātou i te moana 'e 'aore rā nā raro i te moana.

11 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te tūra'i-noa-hia e toru hānere 'e maha 'ahuru 'e ma maha mahana i ni'a i te moana.

12 'E 'ua tāpae atu ra rātou i tahatai i te fenua i fafauhia ra. 'E 'ia ta'ahi a'era tō rātou 'āvae i tahatai i ni'a i te fenua i fafauhia ra, 'ua pi'o ihora rātou i raro i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'aha'eha'a atu ra ia rātou iho i mua i te Fatu, 'e 'ua tahe ihora tō rātou roimata nō te 'oa'oa i mua i te Fatu, nō te rahi o tōna ra aroha ia rātou.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra rātou i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata a'era i te fa'a'apu i te fenua.

14 E to'omaha tamari'i tamāroa tā Iareda, 'e 'ua ma'irihia tō rātou i'oa 'o Iakoma, Giliga, Maha, 'e Oriha.

15 'E 'ua fānau ato'a te taea'e o Iareda i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine.

16 E piti 'ahuru 'e ma piti hoa tō Iareda 'e tō tōna taea'e ; 'e 'ua fānau ato'a rātou i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine, hou rātou i tae mai ai i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; 'e nō reira 'ua rahi roa a'era rātou.

17 'E 'ua ha'api'ihia rātou 'ia haere ma te ha'eha'a i mua i te Fatu ; 'e 'ua ha'api'i-ato'a-hia rātou mai ni'a mai.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua purara a'era rātou i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e 'ua fānau rahi rātou i te tamari'i, 'e 'ua fa'a'apu rātou i te fenua ; 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā pūai i ni'a i te fenua.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

19 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora te taea'e o Iareda i te ruhiruhiā, 'e 'ua 'ite a'era 'oia ē 'ua fātata roa 'oia i te pohe ; nō reira 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia Iareda : 'Ia ha'aputupu'āmui mai tāua i tō tāua mau ta'ata 'ia ti'a ia tāua 'ia tai'o ia rātou, 'e 'ia 'ite tāua i tā rātou i hina'aro ia tāua nā mua tāua e pohe atu ai.

20 'E 'ia au i te reira 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui-hia mai te mau ta'ata. I teieni te rahi o te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine a te taea'e o Iareda e piti 'ahuru 'e ma piti ia ta'ata ; 'e te rahi o te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine a Iareda hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti ia, 'e e maha ho'i tāna tamari'i tamāroa.

21 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tai'o rāua i tō rāua mau ta'ata ; 'e i muri iho i tō rāua tai'ora'a ia rātou, 'ua ui atu ra rāua ia rātou i te mau mea tā rātou i hina'aro ia rāua 'ia rave nō rātou hou rāua e pohe atu ai.

22 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ani mai ra taua feiā ra ia rāua 'ia fa'atāhinuhia te hō'ē o tā rāua mau tamari'i tamāroa 'ei ari'i nō rātou.

23 'E i teieni inaha, e mea 'oto roa te reira ia rāua. 'E 'ua parau atu ra te taea'e o Iareda ia rātou : 'Oia mau, nā teie mea e arata'i ia 'outou i roto i te fa'atūira'a.

24 'Āre'a rā 'ua parau mai ra Iareda i tōna taea'e : 'A vaiiho noa ia rātou 'ia mā'iti i te hō'ē ari'i. 'E nō reira 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : 'A mā'iti 'outou i te hō'ē ari'i nō rotopū atu i tā māua nei mau tamari'i tamāroa, mai te au i tō 'outou na hina'aro.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua mā'iti ihora rātou i te matahiapo a te taea'e o Iareda ; 'e tōna i'oa 'o Pagaga. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāto'i 'oia 'e 'aita 'oia i hina'aro 'ia riro 'ei ari'i nō rātou. 'E 'ua tītau mai ra te mau ta'ata i tōna metua tāne 'ia fa'ahopo iāna 'ia riro 'ei ari'i nō rātou ; 'aita rā tōna metua tāne i hina'aro 'ia nā reira ; 'e 'ua fa'aue atu ra 'oia ia rātou 'eiaha roa rātou e fa'ahopo i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ia riro 'ei ari'i nō rātou.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua mā'iti a'era rātou i te mau taea'e ato'a o Pagaga, 'e 'aita roa rātou i hina'aro.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'aita ato'a te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Iareda i hina'aro, maori rā te hō'ē ana'e ; 'e 'ua fa'atāhinuhia a'era Oriha 'ei ari'i nō te mau ta'ata.

28 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te fa'atere, 'e 'ua manuia rahi ihora te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā tao'a rahi roa.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the first-born of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ihora Iareda, 'e tōna taea'e
ato'a ho'i.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere Oriha ma te ha'eha'a i
mua i te Fatu, 'e 'ua ha'amana'o māite ihora 'oia i te
mau mea rahi tā te Fatu i rave nō tōna ra metua tāne,
'e 'ua ha'api'i ato'a ho'i 'oia i tōna mau ta'ata i te mau
mea rahi tā te Fatu i rave nō tō rātou mau metua.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his
brother also.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly
before the Lord, and did remember how great things
the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his
people how great things the Lord had done for their
fathers.

Etera 7

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atere Oriha i te ha'avāra'a ma te parauti'a i ni'a i te fenua ē hope roa a'e tōna pu'e mahana, 'e e mea maoro tōna ra pu'e mahana.
- 2 'E 'ua fānau ho'i 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine ; 'oia ia, 'ua fānau 'oia e toru 'ahuru 'e ma hō'ē, 'e i rotopū ia rātou tē vai ra e piti 'ahuru 'e ma toru mau tamari'i tamāroa.
- 3 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau fa'ahou ihora tāna 'o Kiba i tōna ruhiruhiāra'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atere ihora 'o Kiba 'ei mono nōna ; 'e 'ua fānau a'era tā Kiba 'o Korihora.
- 4 'E 'ia tae a'era tō Korihora matahiti i te toru 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'ua 'ōrurehau ihora 'oia i tōna metua tāne, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua pārahi ihora i te fenua ra nō Nehora ; 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine ; 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei mea nehenehe roa ; nō reira 'ua arata'i 'ē atu ra Korihora i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi nā muri iāna.
- 5 'E i muri iho i tōna ha'aputuputura'a mai i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau, 'ua haere mai ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Morona, tei reira te ari'i i te fa'aeara'a, 'e 'ua arata'i atu ra 'oia iāna 'ei tītī, 'e 'ua tupu mau atu ra te parau a te taea'e o Iareda, 'oia ho'i e arata'ihia rātou i roto i te fa'atītira'a.
- 6 I teieni e mea fātata te fenua ra nō Morona, te fenua i pārahi te ari'i, i te fenua i parauhia e te mau 'āti Nephi 'o Ano.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ora noa a'era Kiba 'e tōna ra mau ta'ata i roto i te fa'atītira'a i raro a'e i te fa'aterera'a a tāna ra tamaiti 'o Korihora, ē tae noa atu 'ua rū'au roa 'oia ; noa atu rā 'ua fānau mai Kiba ia Sule i tōna ra ruhiruhiāra'a, 'a ora noa ai 'oia i roto i te fa'atītira'a.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri a'era Sule i tōna ra taea'e, 'e 'ua tupu a'era 'oia i te rahi 'e 'ua riro atu ra 'ei ta'ata pūai i te pūai o te ta'ata ra ; 'e 'ua riro ato'a a'era 'oia 'ei ta'ata pūai i te ha'avā.

Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

- 9 Nō reira, 'ua haere mai ra 'oia i te 'āivi ra o Epheraima, 'e 'ua hāmani ihora 'oia i te mau 'o'e i te 'āuri i fa'atarapapehia mai roto mai i te 'āivi ra, nā te feiā e pe'e mai iāna ra ; 'e i muri iho i tōna hāmanira'a i te 'o'e nā rātou 'ua ho'i mai ra rātou i te 'oire ra nō Nehora, 'e 'ua 'aro atu ra i tōna tua'ana ra ia Korihora, 'e 'ua haru mai ra i te bāsileia 'e 'ua fa'aho'i atu ra i te reira i tōna ra metua tāne ia Kiba.
- 10 'E i teieni, nō te mea tā Sule i rave, 'ua hōro'a atu ra tōna metua tāne i te bāsileia nōna ; nō reira 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te fa'atere 'ei mono i tōna ra metua tāne.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave a'era 'oia i te 'ohipa ha'avāra'a ma te parauti'a ; 'e 'ua fa'arahi 'oia i tōna bāsileia i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e 'ua rahi roa te mau ta'ata.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau ato'a ihora Sule i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine e rave rahi.
- 13 'E 'ua tātarahapa ihora Korihora i te mau mea 'i'ino e rave rahi tāna i rave ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a atu ra Sule i te hō'ē mana iāna i roto i tōna ra bāsileia.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tā Korihora tamari'i tamāroa 'e tamari'i tamāhine. 'E i rotopū i te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Korihora tē vai ra te hō'ē 'o Noa tōna i'oa.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ōrurehau a'era Noa i te ari'i ra ia Sule, 'e i tōna metua tāne ato'a ra ia Korihora, 'e 'ua arata'i 'ē atu ra i tōna taea'e ra ia Kohora, 'e tōna mau taea'e ato'a, 'e te tahi mau ta'ata e rave rahi 'ia pe'e mai iāna.
- 16 'E 'ua 'aro atu ra rātou i te ari'i ra ia Sule, 'e 'ua roa'a ihora iāna tō rātou fenua 'āi'a mātāmua ; 'e 'ua riro ihora 'oia 'ei ari'i i taua tufa'a fenua ra.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro fa'ahou atu ra 'oia i te ari'i ra ia Sule ; 'e 'ua rave a'era 'oia i te ari'i ra ia Sule, 'e 'ua hōpoi tītī atu ra iāna i Morona.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'a fātata ai 'oia i te taparahi iāna, 'ua ne'e mai ra te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Sule i roto i te fare o Noa i te pō 'e 'ua taparahi ihora iāna, 'e 'ua vāvāhi ihora i te 'ōpani o te fare tāpe'ara'a 'e 'ua rave mai ra i tō rātou metua tāne, 'e 'ua tu'u ihora rātou iāna i ni'a iho i te terōno o tōna ihora bāsileia.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

19 Nō reira, 'ua riro ihora te tamaiti a Noa 'ei mono nōna i te patura'a i tōna ra bāsileia ; noa atu rā i te reira 'aita rātou i fāri'i i te mana hau atu i ni'a i te ari'i ra ia Sule ; 'e te feiā i raro a'e i te fa'aterera'a a te ari'i ra 'o Sule, 'ua manuia rahi ia rātou 'e 'ua tupu atu ra i te rahi.

20 'E 'ua 'āmahamaha ihora tō te fenua ; 'e 'ua tupu ihora e piti bāsileia, 'o te bāsileia o Sule, 'e te bāsileia o Kohora, te tamaiti a Noa.

21 'E 'ua fa'atupu ihora Kohora, te tamaiti a Noa, i te hina'aro i roto i tōna mau ta'ata 'ia 'aro atu ia Sule, 'e 'ua pau rātou ia Sule, 'e 'ua taparahi 'oia ia Kohora.

22 'E i teienei e tamaiti tā Kohora 'o tei parauhia 'o Nimeroda ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu ra Nimeroda i te bāsileia o Kohora ia Sule, 'e 'ua herehia a'era 'oia e Sule ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a atu ra Sule i te tahi mau mea maitata'i nāna, 'e 'ua rave noa atu ra 'oia i tōna iho hina'aro i roto i te bāsileia o Sule.

23 'E i te taime ato'a nō te fa'aterera'a a te ari'i ra 'o Sule 'ua tae mai ra te mau peropheta i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua tonohia mai ho'i rātou e te Fatu, ma te tohura'a ē, tē fa'atae mai ra te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e te ha'amorira'a 'īdolo a te mau ta'ata i te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho i te fenua, 'e e ha'amouhia ho'i rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'ino atu ra te mau ta'ata i te mau peropheta, 'e 'ua vahavaha atu ra ia rātou. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'avā ihora Sule ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei fa'a'ino i te mau peropheta.

25 'E 'ua fa'aoti ihora 'oia i te hō'ē ture i ni'a i te fenua ē 'ati noa a'e, 'e nā te reira i hōro'a i te mana i te mau peropheta 'ia haere noa i te mau vāhi tā rātou e hina'aro ; 'e nā te reira i fa'atupu i te tātarahapa i roto i te mau ta'ata.

26 'E nō te mea 'ua tātarahapa te mau ta'ata i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tā rātou mau ha'amorira'a 'īdolo 'ua fa'aora te Fatu ia rātou, 'e 'ua ha'amata rātou i te manuia fa'ahou i ni'a i te fenua. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau a'era Sule i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine i tōna ruhiruhiāra'a.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

27 'E 'aita te mau tama'ira'a i tupu fa'ahou i te mau mahana o Sule ; 'e 'ua ha'amana'o noa 'oia i te mau mea rahi tā te Fatu i rave nō tōna mau metua, i te 'āfa'ira'a mai ia rātou nā ni'a i te moana hōhonu rahi i te fenua i fafauhia ra ; nō reira 'ua fa'atupu 'oia i te 'ohipa ha'avāra'a ma te parauti'a i te tā'āto'ara'a o tōna ra mau mahana.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

Etera 8

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau a'era tāna 'o Omera, 'e 'ua fa'atere a'era 'o Omera 'ei mono nōna. 'E 'ua fānau ihora tā Omera 'o Iareda ; 'e 'ua fānau a'era Iareda i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine.
- 2 'E 'ua 'ōrurehau mai ra Iareda i tōna metua tāne, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te fenua ra nō Heta e pārahi ai. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'avarevare atu ra 'oia i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi, nā roto i tāna mau parau tāvaimanino, ē tae noa atu 'ua roa'a iāna te 'āfara'a o te bāsileia.
- 3 'E te roa'ara'a iāna te 'āfara'a o te bāsileia, 'ua 'aro atu ra 'oia i tōna metua tāne, 'e 'ua hōpoi atu 'oia i tōna metua tāne i roto i te fa'atītira'a, 'e 'ua fa'a'ohipa 'oia iāna i roto i te fa'atītira'a.
- 4 'E i teienei, i te mau mahana nō te fa'aterera'a a Omera, 'ua vai noa 'oia i roto i te fa'atītira'a i te 'āfara'a o tōna ra mau mahana. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau ihora 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine, 'e i rotopū i taua mau tamari'i ra tē vai ra o Eseroma 'e Korianetumera.
- 5 'E 'ua riri roa a'era rāua nō te mau mea tā tō rāua taea'e o Iareda i rave, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua ha'aputupu a'era rāua i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau, 'e 'ua 'aro atu ra ia Iareda. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro atu rāua iāna i te pō.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pau te nu'u fa'ehau o Iareda ia rāua, 'e 'ua fātata ato'a rāua i te taparahi iāna ; 'e 'ua tāparu atu 'oia ia rāua 'eiaha e taparahi iāna, 'e e hōro'a atu 'oia i te bāsileia i tōna ra metua tāne. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a rāua iāna 'ia ora noa.
- 7 'E i teienei 'ua 'oto roa Iareda i te mea 'ua riro te bāsileia, nō te mea i tītau na tōna 'ā'au i te bāsileia 'e i te hanahana nō teie nei ao.
- 8 I teienei, nō te 'aravihi o te tamāhine a Iareda, 'e nō tōna 'itera'a i te 'oto o tōna ra metua tāne, 'ua 'ōpua ihora 'oia 'ia fa'anahonaho i te hō'ē 'ōpuara'a 'ia tī'a iāna 'ia fa'aho'i mai i te bāsileia i tōna ra metua tāne.

Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

9 I teienei, e mea nehenehe roa te tamāhine a Iareda. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua parau mai ra 'oia i tōna metua tāne, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai ra iāna : Nō te aha ho'i 'oe e tō'u metua tāne i 'oto ai ? 'Aita ānei 'oe i tai'o i te pāpa'a parau tā tō tātou mau metua i hōpoi mai nā ni'a i te moana hōhonu rahi ra ? Inaha, 'aita ānei e 'ā'amu i roto i te reira nō ni'a i te mau ta'ata i te 'anotau tahito ra, 'o tei fāri'i i te mau bāsileia 'e te hanahana rahi nā roto i tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a huna ?

10 'E i teienei, nō reira, 'ia ti'i tō'u metua tāne ia Akisa, te tamaiti a Kimenora ; 'e inaha, e mea nehenehe au, 'e e ori atu vau i mua iāna, 'e e fa'a'oa'oa vau iāna, 'e e riro 'oia i te hina'aro mai iā'u 'ei vahine nāna ; nō reira 'ia ani mai 'oia ia 'oe 'ia hōro'a atu iā'u 'ei vahine nāna, 'ei reira e parau atu 'oe iāna ē : E hōro'a atu vau iāna, mai te mea e hōpoi mai 'oe iā'u i te upo'o o tō'u ra metua tāne, te ari'i.

11 'E i teienei, e hoa ho'i Omera nō Akisa ; nō reira, i tō Iareda tītaura'a atu ia Akisa 'ia haere mai, 'ua 'ori atu ra te tamāhine a Iareda i mua iāna, 'e 'ua fa'a'oa'oa maita'i atu 'oia iāna, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua hina'aro atu ra 'oia iāna 'ei vahine nāna. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia ia Iareda : 'A hōro'a mai iāna 'ei vahine nā'u.

12 'E 'ua parau atu ra Iareda iāna : E hōro'a atu vau iāna nā 'oe, mai te mea e hōpoi mai 'oe iā'u i te upo'o o tō'u ra metua tāne, te ari'i.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu mai ra Akisa i tōna mau fēti'i ato'a i roto i te fare o Iareda, 'e 'ua parau atu ra 'oia ia rātou : E tapu mai ānei 'outou iā'u ē, e ha'apa'o maita'i 'outou i te mea tā'u e hina'aro ia 'outou na ?

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tapu ihora rātou ato'a iāna, i te Atua nō te ra'i, 'e i te mau ra'i ato'a, 'e i te fenua ato'a ho'i, 'e i tō rātou upo'o ē, 'o 'oia 'o tē hape i te tauturu mai ia Akisa i te mea tāna i hina'aro ra, e tāpūhia ia tōna upo'o ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tē fa'a'ite noa atu i te hō'ē mea tā Akisa e fa'a'ite mai ia rātou ra, e ha'apohe-ato'a-hia ia 'oia.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'aau atu i te parau ia Akisa. 'E 'ua hōro'a mai ra Akisa i te mau tapura'a tei hōro'ahia mai e rātou o tō tahito ra 'o tei tītau ato'a i te mana, 'e 'ua hōro'ahia mai teie mau tapura'a mai te 'anotau mai o Kaina, 'o tei riro na 'ei ta'ata taparahi ta'ata mai te mātāmua roa mai.
- 16 'E 'ua vai noa te reira mau tapura'a nā roto i te mana o te diabolo nō te fa'atere noa i teie mau tapura'a i te mau ta'ata, nō te tāpe'a noa ia rātou i roto i te pōiri, nō te turu i tei tītau i te mana 'ia fāri'i i te mana, 'e nō te taparahi i te ta'ata, 'e nō te rave i te 'ohipa 'eiā haru, 'e nō te ha'avare, 'e nō te rave i te mau huru 'ohipa 'īino ato'a ra 'e te tai'ata.
- 17 'E nā te tamāhine a Iareda i tu'u atu i te reira i roto i tōna 'ā'au 'ia rave i teie mau mea nō te tau tahito ra; 'e 'ua tu'u atu Iareda i te reira i roto i te 'ā'au o Akisa; nō reira, 'ua hōro'a atu Akisa i te reira i tōna ra mau fēti'i 'e mau hoa, ma te arata'i 'ē atu ia rātou nā roto i te mau parau fa'aau 'e te fa'anavenave, 'ia rave i te mau mea mai tāna i hina'aro.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atupu a'era rātou i te hō'ē pupu 'ohipa huna, mai tō tahito ra; 'e 'ua riro taua pupu ra 'ei pupu 'ohipa vi'ivi'i roa 'e te parauti'a 'ore roa i te mau mea ato'a i mua i te hi'ora'a o te Atua.
- 19 'Aita roa ho'i te Fatu e rave nei i te 'ohipa nā roto i te mau pupu 'ohipa huna, 'e 'aita ato'a 'oia i hina'aro 'ia ha'amani'i te ta'ata i te toto, 'e 'ua 'ōpani 'oia i te reira mai te ha'amatarā'a mai o te ta'ata nei.
- 20 'E i teienei, 'aita vau, 'o Moroni, e pāpa'i i te huru o tā rātou mau tapura'a 'e tā rātou mau pupu 'ohipa huna, 'e 'aita ho'i te reira i fa'a'itehia mai iā'u 'e 'ua tupu te reira mau mea i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a, 'e 'ua 'itehia rā te reira i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 21 'E 'ua fa'atupu te reira i te ha'amoura'a o teie nei feiā tā'u e parau nei i teienei, 'e i te ha'amoura'a ato'a ho'i o te feiā o Nephi.
- 22 'E te nūna'a 'o tē turu i teie mau pupu 'ohipa huna mai te reira te huru, nō te tītau i te mana 'e te tao'a, ē tae noa atu 'ua purara rātou nā roto i te nūna'a, inaha, e ha'amouhia rātou; e'ita roa ho'i te Fatu e fa'ati'a 'ia pi'i noa mai te toto o te feiā mo'a 'o tē ha'amani'ihia e rātou mai te repo mai ē a muri noa atu, 'ia fa'ataehia te tāho'ora'a i ni'a ia rātou, 'e 'aita ā ho'i 'oia i tāho'o ia rātou.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

23 Nō reira, 'e te mau 'Ētene ē, tei roto i te Atua te pa'ari 'ia fa'a'itehia teie mau mea ia 'outou, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia tātarahapa i tā 'outou mau hara, 'e 'ia 'ore 'ia fa'ati'a i teie mau pupu taparahi ta'ata, 'o tei fa'ati'ahia nō te haru i te mana 'e te tao'a, 'ia tae mai i ni'a ia 'outou—'e te 'ohipa, 'oia ia, te 'ohipa nō te ha'amoura'a 'ia tae ato'a mai i ni'a ia 'outou, 'oia ia, 'e te 'o'e nō te parauti'a a te Atua mure 'ore 'ia ma'iri mai i ni'a iho ia 'outou, nō te ha'apau 'e nō te ha'amou ia 'outou mai te mea e fa'ati'a 'outou i te reira 'ia tupu.

24 Nō reira, tē fa'aue atu nei te Fatu ia 'outou ē, 'ia 'ite noa atu 'outou i teie mau mea i te taera'a mai i rotopū ia 'outou na, 'ia ara māite 'outou 'ia 'ite i tō 'outou ti'ara'a fifi rahi, nō teie pupu 'ohipa huna 'o tē tae mai i rotopū ia 'outou na ; 'e 'aore rā 'auē ho'i te reira, nō te toto o te feiā i taparahihia ra ; tē pi'i mai ra ho'i rātou mai te repo mai ra 'ia tae mai te tāho'ora'a i ni'a i te reira, 'e i ni'a ato'a i te feiā 'o tei fa'atupu i taua mau pupu 'ohipa huna ra.

25 I te mea ē i muri a'era, 'o 'oia 'o tei fa'atupu i te reira, tē 'imi ra ia 'oia 'ia fa'a'ore i te ti'amāra'a o te mau fenua ato'a, o te mau nūna'a ato'a, 'e o te mau vāhi ato'a ; 'e e fa'atae mai te reira i te ha'amoura'a i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ato'a, nō te mea 'ua patuhia te reira i ni'a i te diablo, te metua o te mau ha'avare ato'a ; 'oia mau, taua ta'ata ha'avare ra 'o tei ha'avare i tō tātou nā metua mātāmua ; 'oia ia, taua ta'ata ha'avare ra 'o tei fa'atupu i te hina'aro i roto i te ta'ata 'ia taparahi i te ta'ata mai te mātāmua mai ā ; 'o tei fa'a'eta'eta i te 'ā'au o te ta'ata, i taparahi ai rātou i te mau peropheta, 'e i pēhi atu ai ia rātou i te 'ōfa'i, 'e i fa'aru'e 'ē atu ai ia rātou mai te mātāmua mai ā.

26 Nō reira, 'ua fa'auehia vau, 'o Moroni, 'ia pāpa'i i teie nei mau mea 'ia fa'a'orehia te 'ino, 'e 'ia tae mai te tau e 'ere roa ai Sātane i te mana i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'āre'a rā 'ia a'ohia rātou 'ia rave tāmāu noa i te maīta'i, e tae atu ai rātou i te vai piha'a nō te mau parauti'a ato'a 'e 'ia fa'aorahia.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

Etera 9

- 1 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i ā vau, 'o Moroni, i tā'u nei pāpa'a parau. Nō reira, inaha, i muri a'era, nō te mau pupu 'ohipa huna a Akisa 'e tōna ra mau hoa, inaha, 'ua haru rātou i te bāsileia o Omera.
- 2 Noa atu i te reira, 'ua aroha mai te Fatu ia Omera, 'e i tāna ato'a mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e mau tamari'i tamāhine 'o tei 'ore i tītau i tāna ha'amoura'a.
- 3 'E 'ua fa'aara mai ra te Fatu ia Omera i roto i te hō'ē moemoeā 'ia haere atu 'oia i rāpae i taua fenua ra ; nō reira 'ua haere atu ra Omera 'e tōna 'utuāfare i rāpae i taua fenua ra, 'e 'ua haere rātou e rave rahi mahana, 'e 'ua ma'iri mai ra te 'āivi ra o Sima ia rātou, 'e 'ua tae atu ra rātou i te vāhi i pau ai te mau 'āti Nephi, 'e mai reira 'ua haere atu ra rātou i te pae i te hiti'a o te rā 'e tae atu ra i te vāhi i ma'irihia te i'oa 'o Abaloma, i te pae tahatai, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ihora 'oia i tōna ti'ahapa i reira, 'e tāna ato'a mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e mau tamari'i tamāhine, 'e tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a, maori rā 'o Iareda 'e tōna ra 'utuāfare.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atāhinuhia ihora Iareda 'ei ari'i nō te mau ta'ata e te rima o te feiā parauti'a 'ore ; 'e 'ua hōro'a atu 'oia i tāna ra tamāhine 'ei vahine nā Akisa.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tītau ihora Akisa 'ia taparahi i tōna metua ho'ovai tāne ; 'e 'ua tītau atu ra 'oia ia rātou 'o tei tapu i te tapura'a a tō tahito ra, 'e 'ua roa'a mai ra ia rātou te upo'o o tōna ra metua ho'ovai tāne, 'a pārahi ai 'oia i ni'a i tōna ra terōno 'e 'a fa'atere ai 'oia i tōna ra mau ta'ata.
- 6 'Ua rahi roa ho'i te tupura'a o teie nei pupu parauti'a 'ore 'e te 'ohipa huna 'e 'ua ha'avi'ivi'i te reira i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata pā'āto'a ; nō reira 'ua taparahihia Iareda i ni'a i tōna ra terōno, 'e 'ua fa'atere mai ra 'o Akisa 'ei mono nōna.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'amata ihora Akisa i te fe'i'i i tāna tamaiti, nō reira 'ua tāpe'a ihora 'oia iāna i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a, 'e 'ua iti roa te mā'a i hōro'ahia nāna 'e i te tahi mau taime 'aita roa e mā'a ē tae noa atu 'ua pohe roa 'oia.
- 8 'E i teienei, 'ua riri ihora te taea'e o taua ta'ata i ha'apohehia i tōna metua tāne ('e 'o Nimera tōna i'oa), i te mea tā tōna metua tāne i rave i tōna ra taea'e.

Ether 9

And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu a'era Nimerā i te tahi mau ta'ata ri'i, 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou i rāpae i te fenua, 'e tae atu ra ia Omera ra, pārahi ihora i reira.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau a'era Akisa i te tahi mau tamari'i tamāroa, 'e 'ua roa'a ia rātou te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata, noa atu 'ua tapu rātou iāna 'ia rave i te mau huru 'ohipa 'ī'ino ato'a mai tāna i hina'aro.

11 I teienei, 'ua nounou te mau ta'ata o Akisa i te tao'a mai ia Akisa i nounou i te mana ; nō reira 'ua hōro'a te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Akisa i te moni ia rātou, 'e nā roto i taua rāve'a ra 'ua 'ume mai rātou i te tahi pae rahi o te mau ta'ata nā muri ia rātou.

12 'E 'ua tupu ihora te 'arora'a i rotopū i te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Akisa ia Akisa, 'e 'ua tupu noa te reira e rave rahi matahiti te maoro ; 'oia iā, ē tae noa atu 'ua fātata roa te tā'āto'ara'a o te mau ta'ata nō te bāsileia i te pau, maori rā te mau ta'ata e toru 'ahuru ana'e, 'e 'o rātou 'o tei horo 'ē atu i te 'utuāfare o Omera.

13 Nō reira, 'ua fa'aho'i-fa'ahou-hia Omera i tōna fenua 'āi'a.

14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ruhiruhiā a'era Omera ; 'e noa atu i te reira, 'ua fānau ihora tāna 'o Emera i tōna ruhiruhiāra'a ; 'e 'ua fa'atāhinu ihora 'oia ia Emera 'ei ari'i nō te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna.

15 'E i muri a'e i tōna fa'atāhinura'a ia Emera 'ei ari'i, 'ua 'ite 'oia i te hau i ni'a i te fenua nō te ārea e piti matahiti te maoro, 'e 'ua pohe ihora 'oia, ma te 'ite i te mau mahana e rave rahi 'o tei 'i i te 'oto. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atere Emera 'ei mono nōna, 'e 'ua haere noa a'era 'oia i te haere'a o tōna ra metua tāne.

16 'E 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou ihora te Fatu i te rave 'ē atu i te 'anatemara'a mai ni'a atu i te fenua, 'e 'ua manuia rahi fa'ahou ihora te 'utuāfare o Emera i raro a'e i te fa'aterera'a a Emera ; 'e i roto i te ārea e ono 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti, 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā pūai, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua rahi roa tā rātou tao'a—

17 'Ua rau te huru o te mā'a hotu, 'e o te huero sītona, 'e o te mau tiritā, 'e o te 'ahu paruai maita'i, 'e o te 'auro, 'e o te 'ārio, 'e o te mau tao'a maitata'i.

18 'E 'ua rau ato'a te huru o te pua'atoro, 'e o te pua'atoro oni, 'e o te pua'atoro ufa, 'e o te māmoe, 'e 'o te pua'a mā'ohi, 'e o te pua'aniho, 'e o te tahi atu mau huru 'ānimara 'ei mā'a maita'i nā te ta'ata.

And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

19 'E tē vai ato'a ra tā rātou mau pua'ahorofenua, 'e te mau 'āsini, 'e te mau elephani 'e te mau kureloma 'e te mau kumoma ; 'e e mea faufa'a pā'āto'a te reira i te ta'ata nei, 'e 'ua hau rā te faufa'a o te mau elephani 'e te mau kureloma 'e te mau kumoma.

20 'E 'ua nā reira te Fatu i te nīni'i mai i tāna mau ha'amaita'ira'a i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'o te fenua ia i hau i te maita'i i te mau fenua ato'a ; 'e 'ua parau mai ho'i 'oia ē, e mea ti'a roa i te mau ta'ata 'o tē pārahi i ni'a i teie nei fenua, 'ia ha'apa'o i te reira nō te Fatu, 'e mai te mea ē 'aita ra e ha'amouhia ia rātou 'ia tae i te tau e 'i roa ai rātou i te mau 'ohipa 'T'ino ; tē nā 'ō mai ra ho'i te Fatu : E nīni'i atu vau i te 'ira'a nō tō'u ra riri 'ū'ana i ni'a i te reira huru ta'ata.

21 'E 'ua fa'atere Emera i te 'ohipa ha'avāra'a ma te parauti'a i tōna ra mau mahana ato'a, 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia e rave rahi mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e mau tamari'i tamāhine ; 'e 'ua fānau mai 'oia ia Korianetuma, 'e 'ua fa'atāhinu ihora 'oia ia Korianetuma nō te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna.

22 'E i muri a'e i tōna fa'atāhinura'a ia Korianetuma nō te fa'atere 'ei mono nōna, 'ua ora 'oia e maha matahiti te maoro, 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia i te hau i ni'a i te fenua ; 'oia ia, 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia i te Tamaiti nō te parauti'a, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa 'e 'ua fa'ahanahana i tōna ra mahana ; 'e 'ua pohe ihora 'oia ma te hau.

23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pe'e Korianetuma i te haere'a o tōna metua tāne, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a a'era 'oia i te mau 'oire rarahi e rave rahi, 'e 'ua rave i te mau mea maita'i nō tōna ra mau ta'ata ē hope roa a'e tōna ra mau mahana. 'E i muri a'era, 'aita tāna e tamari'i ē tae noa atu 'ua ruhiruhiā roa 'oia.

24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ihora tāna vahine, i te hō'ē hānere 'e ma piti o tōna ra matahiti. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aipoipo a'era Korianetuma i te hō'ē vahine 'āpī i tōna ra ruhiruhiāra'a, 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine ; nō reira 'ua ora noa 'oia ē tae noa atu i te hō'ē hānere e maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti.

25 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau ihora tāna 'o Koma, 'e 'ua fa'atere ihora 'o Koma 'ei mono nōna ; 'e 'ua fa'atere noa 'oia e maha 'ahuru 'e ma iva matahiti, 'e 'ua fānau ihora tāna 'o Heta ; 'e 'ua fānau ato'a 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

26 'E 'ua purara 'ē atu ra te mau ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a ; 'e 'ua tupu fa'ahou ihora te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora Heta i te rave fa'ahou i te mau 'ohipa huna a tō tahito ra, nō te ha'apohe i tōna ra metua tāne.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haru 'oia i te terōno o tōna metua tāne, 'e 'ua taparahi 'oia iāna i tāna iho 'o'e ; 'e 'ua fa'atere ihora 'oia 'ei mono nōna.

28 'E 'ua tae fa'ahou mai ra te mau peropheta i te fenua, ma te poro haere i te parau nō te tātarahapara'a ia rātou—'e e mea ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'aaineine i te 'ē'a o te Fatu, 'e mai te mea ē 'aita, e tae mai ia te 'anatemara'a i ni'a iho i te fenua ; 'oia ia, e tupu ato'a te hō'ē o'e rahi, 'e e ha'amouhia rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa.

29 'Aita rā te mau ta'ata i ti'aturi i te mau parau a te mau peropheta, 'ua ti'avaru rā ia rātou i rāpae ; 'e 'ua tu'u i te tahi pae o rātou i roto i te mau 'āpo'o, 'e 'ua vaiiho ia rātou 'ia pohe i reira. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave rātou i teie mau mea mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te ari'i ra 'o Heta.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu a'era te o'e rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata te mau ta'ata i te pohe 'oi'oi rahi nō te o'e, 'e 'aita roa ho'i e ūa i ni'a i te fenua nei.

31 'E 'ua tae mai ra ho'i te mau 'ōphī ta'ero i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua fa'ata'ero a'era i te mau ta'ata e rave rahi. 'E i muri a'era, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau nana i te horo 'ē atu mai mua atu i te mau 'ōphī ta'ero i te fenua i te pae apato'a, 'o tei ma'irihia te i'oa e te mau 'āti Nephi 'o Zarahemela.

32 'E i muri a'era, e rave rahi tō rātou i pohe nā te pae 'ē'a ; noa atu i te reira tē vai ra te tahi pae 'o tei horo atu i te fenua i te pae apato'a.

33 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāpe'a ihora te Fatu i te mau 'ōphī 'ia 'ore 'ia a'ua'u atu ia rātou, 'ia pārunu rā rātou i te 'ē'a 'ia 'ore te mau ta'ata 'ia nā reira atu i te haere, 'e te ta'ata 'o tē tāmata i te haere nā reira, e pohe roa ato'a rātou i te 'ōphī ta'ero.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

34 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pe'e atu ra te mau ta'ata i te horora'a o te mau 'ānimara, 'e 'ua 'amu a'era rātou i te mau tino 'ānimara pohe 'o tei ma'iri nā te pae 'ē'a ra, ē pau roa noa atu te reira. I teieni, 'ia 'ite a'era te mau ta'ata ē, 'ua fātata roa rātou i te pohe roa, 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e 'ua ti'aoro atu ra i te Fatu.

35 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti a'era rātou i te fa'aha'eha'a maita'i ia rātou i mua i te Fatu, 'ua ha'ama'iri mai ra 'oia i te ua i ni'a i te fenua nei; 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata i te oraora fa'ahou mai, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau mā'a hotu i te tupu i te fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e i te mau fenua ē 'ati noa a'e. 'E 'ua fa'a'ite mai ra te Fatu i tōna ra mana ia rātou nā roto i te fa'aorara'a ia rātou i taua o'e ra.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

Etera 10

- 1 'E i muri a'era, e hua'ai 'o Seza nō Heta—'e 'ua pohe ihora Heta i te tupura'a te o'e, 'e tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a, maori rā 'o Seza—nō reira, 'ua ha'amata ihora Seza i te ha'apūai fa'ahou i taua feiā ra i topa i roto i te 'ati.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, tē ha'amana'o ra Seza i te ha'amoura'ahia tōna mau metua, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a 'oia i te hō'ē bāsileia parauti'a ; nō te mea 'ua ha'amana'o 'oia i tā te Fatu i rave nō te 'āfa'ira'a mai ia Iareda 'e tōna taea'e nā ni'a i te moana hōhonu ; 'e 'ua pe'e 'oia i te mau 'ē'a o te Fatu, 'e 'ua fānau mai 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine.
- 3 'E 'ua 'ōrurehau mai tāna tamaiti matahiapo iāna, 'o Seza tōna i'oa ; 'āre'a rā 'ua taparahihia Seza e te rima o te hō'ē ta'ata 'eiā haru, nō tāna mau tao'a rahi, i tupu fa'ahou ai te hau o tōna ra metua tāne.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua patu tōna metua tāne i te mau 'oire rarahi e rave rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ua ha'amata fa'ahou te mau ta'ata i te purara haere i ni'a i te fenua. 'E 'ua ora a'era Seza ē tae noa atu 'ua rū'au roa 'oia ; 'e 'ua fānau ihora tāna 'o Ripelakisa. 'E 'ua pohe ihora 'oia, 'e 'ua fa'atere mai ra Ripelakisa 'ei mono nōna.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'aita roa Ripelakisa i rave i te mea tano i mua i te aro o te Fatu, 'e 'ua rave ho'i 'oia e rave rahi mau vahine 'e te mau vahine tāvini, 'e 'ua tu'u 'oia i te mea teiaha roa i ni'a iho i te taponu o te ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'ua tute 'oia ia rātou i te tute teiaha roa ; 'e nā roto i taua mau tute ra 'ua patu 'oia i te mau fare rarahi e rave rahi.
- 6 'E 'ua hāmani ihora 'oia i te hō'ē terōno nehenehe roa nōna, 'e 'ua patu ihora i te mau fare tāpe'ara'a e rave rahi, 'e te feiā 'o tē 'ore e 'aufau i tā rātou mau tute 'ua huri 'oia ia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e te feiā 'o tē 'ore e ti'a 'ia 'aufau i tā rātou mau tute, 'ua huri 'oia ia rātou i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia rave noa rātou i te 'ohipa nō te pāturu ia rātou ; 'e te feiā 'o tei pāto'i 'ia rave i te 'ohipa, 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia ha'apohe-roa-hia rātou.

Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

7 Nō reira 'ua roa'a iāna te tā'āto'ara'a nō tāna mau 'ohipa maitata'i roa ; 'oia ia, tāna 'auro maita'i 'o tāna i fa'aue 'ia tāmāhia i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a ; 'e 'ua fa'aue 'oia 'ia ravehia te mau huru 'ohipa maitata'i ato'a i roto i te fare tāpe'ara'a. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atae 'oia i te 'ati i ni'a i te mau ta'ata nā roto i tāna mau 'ohipa tai'ata 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i.

8 'E 'ia ma'iri te ārea nō te maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti te maoro nō tāna fa'aterera'a, 'ua 'ōrurehau a'era te mau ta'ata iāna ; 'e 'ua tupu fa'ahou ihora te 'arora'a i ni'a i te fenua, 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua taparahihia ihora Ripelakisa, 'e 'ua ti'avaruhia atu ra tōna hua'ai i rāpae i te fenua.

9 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i te ārea nō te mau matahiti e rave rahi te maoro, 'ua ha'aputupu 'āmui ihora Morianetona (e hua'ai ho'i 'oia nō Ripelakisa) i te hō'ē nu'u fa'ehau nō roto mai i taua feiā i ti'avaruhia ra, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua 'aro atu ra i te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua roa'a a'era iāna te mana i ni'a i te mau 'oire e rave rahi ; 'e 'ua tupu a'era te 'arora'a i te rahi roa, 'e 'ua tupu te reira e rave rahi matahiti te maoro ; 'e 'ua roa'a a'era te mana iāna i ni'a i te mau fenua ato'a, 'e 'ua fa'ariro 'oia iāna iho 'ei ari'i i ni'a i te mau fenua ato'a.

10 'E i muri iho i tōna fa'arirora'a iāna 'ei ari'i, 'ua ha'amāmā ihora 'oia i te hōpoi'a i ni'a i te mau ta'ata, 'e nō reira 'ua herehia 'oia e te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua fa'atāhinu a'era rātou iāna 'ei ari'i nō rātou.

11 'E 'ua rave 'oia i te 'ohipa tano i ni'a i te mau ta'ata, 'aita rā 'oia i nā reira iāna iho, nō te mea tē rave rahi ra 'oia i te mau 'ohipa tai'ata ; nō reira 'ua tāpū-'ē-hia 'oia i te aro o te Fatu.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua patu ihora Morianetona i te mau 'oire e rave rahi, 'e 'ua riro te mau ta'ata 'ei feiā tao'a rahi i raro a'e i tāna fa'aterera'a, i te pae nō te mau fare, 'e te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te fa'a'apu sītona, 'e te mau nana māmoe, 'e te mau nana pua'atoro, 'e te mau mea i fa'aho'ihia mai ia rātou ra.

13 'E 'ua ora noa Morianetona ē tae noa atu 'ua rū'au roa 'oia, 'ei reira 'ua fānau mai ra tāna 'o Kima ; 'e 'ua fa'atere ihora Kima 'ei mono i tōna metua tāne ; 'e 'ua fa'atere noa 'oia e va'u matahiti 'e 'ua pohe ihora tōna metua tāne. 'E i muri a'era 'aita Kima i fa'atere ma te parauti'a, nō reira 'aita 'oia i auhia mai e te Fatu.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

14 'E 'ua 'ōrurehau mai ra tōna taea'e iāna, 'e nā roto i te reira 'ua tu'u 'oia iāna i roto i te fa'atītira'a ; 'e 'ua vai noa 'oia i raro a'e i te fa'atītira'a i te tā'āto'ara'a nō tōna mau mahana ; 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine 'a vai noa ai 'oia i raro a'e i te fa'atītira'a ; 'e i tōna ruhiruhiāra'a 'ua fānau mai 'oia ia Levi, 'e pohe atu ra 'oia.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāvini noa Levi i roto i te fa'atītira'a i muri iho i te pohera'a o tōna metua tāne, nō te ārea e maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti te maoro. 'E 'ua 'aro atu 'oia i te ari'i o te fenua, 'e 'ua roa'a a'era iāna te bāsileia.

16 'E i muri iho i te roa'ara'a mai te bāsileia iāna, 'ua rave 'oia i te mea tano i mua i te aro o te Fatu ; 'e 'ua manuia te mau ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua ora noa 'oia ē tae noa atu i te ruhiruhiā-roa-ra'a, 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine ; 'e 'ua fānau ato'a a'era 'oia ia Koroma, 'o tāna i fa'atāhinu 'ei ari'i 'ei mono nōna.

17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave Koroma i te mea maīta'i i mua i te aro o te Fatu i te tā'āto'ara'a o tōna ra mau mahana ; 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine e rave rahi ; 'e 'ia 'ite a'era 'oia i te mau mahana e rave rahi, 'ua pohe atu ra 'oia, mai tō te ao ato'a nei ; 'e 'ua fa'atere a'era Kisa 'ei mono nōna.

18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pohe ato'a ihora Kisa, 'e 'ua fa'atere mai ra Liba 'ei mono nōna.

19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave ato'a Liba i te mea maīta'i i mua i te aro o te Fatu. 'E i te mau mahana o Liba 'ua ha'amouhia taua mau 'ōphī ta'ero ra. Nō reira 'ua haere atu ra rātou i te fenua i te pae apato'a nō te taparahi haere i te 'ānimara 'ei mā'a nā te mau ta'ata o te fenua, nō te mea 'ua 'ī roa te fenua i te mau 'ānimara nō te uru rā'au. 'E 'ua riro ato'a atu ra Liba 'ei ta'ata 'aravihi i te 'ohipa taparahi 'ānimara.

20 'E 'ua patu ihora rātou i te hō'ē 'oire rahi i te fenua oaoa, i te vāhi e fa'ata'a 'ē te moana i te fenua.

21 'E 'ua fa'aherehere noa ihora rātou i te fenua i te pae apato'a 'ei mēdēbara, 'ia roa'a mai te 'ānimara 'ōviri. 'E te fenua i te pae apato'erau ra, 'ua 'ī roa ia i te ta'ata.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

22 'E 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā itoito i te rave i te 'ohipa, 'e te ho'o mai ra 'e te ho'o atu ra rātou, 'e te tauī noa ho'i te tahi i te tahi, 'ia roa'a ia rātou te faufa'a.

23 'E 'ua 'ohipa rātou i te mau huru 'ōfa'i metalo ato'a, 'e 'ua roa'a ia rātou te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te 'āuri, 'e te veo, 'e te mau huru metalo ato'a ; 'ua 'ō mai rātou i te reira nō roto mai i te fenua ; nō reira, 'ua ha'apu'e teitei rātou i te repo 'ia roa'a te 'ōfa'i metalo, tei roto te 'auro, 'e te 'ārio, 'e te 'āuri, 'e te kapa. 'E 'ua rave rātou i te mau huru 'ohipa maitata'i ato'a.

24 'E tē vai ra tā rātou mau tiritā, 'e te 'ahu paruai maita'i roa ; 'e 'ua hāmani rātou i te mau huru 'ahu ato'a, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'ahu ia rātou iho i tō rātou vai-taha'a-ra'a.

25 'E 'ua hāmani rātou i te mau huru mauha'a rave 'ohipa ato'a nō te fa'a'apu i te fenua, nō te 'ārote i te fenua 'e nō te ueue i te huero, nō te 'ō'oti 'e nō te 'ūtaru, 'e nō te papa'i ato'a ho'i i te huero sītona.

26 'E 'ua hāmani rātou i te mau huru mauha'a rave 'ohipa ato'a nō te fa'a'ohipa i tā rātou mau 'ānimara.

27 'E 'ua hāmani rātou i te mau huru mauha'a tama'i ato'a. 'E 'ua hāmani ato'a rātou i te mau huru 'ohipa ta'a 'ē roa.

28 'E 'aita atu e feiā i ha'amaita'i-rahi-hia atu mai ia rātou te huru, 'e 'o tei ha'amanuia-rahi-hia atu e te rima o te Fatu. 'E tē pārahi ra rātou i te fenua tei hau atu i te maita'i i te mau fenua ato'a, 'e nā te Fatu ho'i i parau mai i te reira.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ora noa Liba e rave rahi matahiti, 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia i te mau tamari'i tamāroa 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine ; 'e 'ua fānau ato'a mai 'oia ia Hearetoma.

30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atere a'era 'o Hearetoma 'ei mono nō tōna ra metua tāne. 'E 'ia ma'iri te piti 'ahuru 'e ma maha matahiti nō te fa'aterera'a a Hearetoma, inaha, 'ua rave-'ē-hia atu te bāsileia mai iāna atu. 'E 'ua tāvini noa 'oia e rave rahi matahiti i roto i te fa'atitira'a ; 'oia ia, ē hope roa a'e tōna ra pu'e mahana.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

31 'E 'ua fānau a'era 'oia ia Heta, 'e 'ua ora noa Heta i roto i te fa'atītira'a i te tā'āto'ara'a nō tōna ra pu'e mahana. 'E 'ua fānau a'era Heta ia Aarona, 'e 'ua ora noa Aarona i roto i te fa'atītira'a i te tā'āto'ara'a nō tōna ra pu'e mahana ; 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia ia Amenigada, 'e 'ua ora noa ato'a Amenigada i roto i te fa'atītira'a i te tā'āto'ara'a nō tōna ra pu'e mahana 'e 'ua fānau a'era 'oia ia Korianetuma, 'e 'ua ora noa Korianetuma i roto i te fa'atītira'a i te tā'āto'ara'a nō tōna ra pu'e mahana 'e 'ua fānau ihora 'oia ia Koma.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua rave atu Koma i te hō'ē 'āfara'a o te bāsileia nō te pe'e atu iāna. 'E 'ua fa'atere a'era 'oia i ni'a i taua 'āfara'a nō te bāsileia ra e maha 'ahuru 'e ma piti matahiti ; 'e 'ua haere atu 'oia e 'aro i te ari'i ra ia Amigida, 'e 'ua 'aro noa rātou nō te ārea e rave rahi matahiti te maoro, 'e i taua taime ra 'ua roa'a ia Koma te mana i ni'a ia Amigida, 'e 'ua roa'a ato'a te mana iāna i ni'a i te toe'a o te bāsileia.

33 'E i te mau mahana o Koma 'ua tupu fa'ahou ihora te mau 'ohipa 'eiā haru i ni'a i te fenua ; 'e 'ua fa'a'ohipa rātou i te mau 'ōpuara'a tahito, 'e 'ua fa'atere i te mau tapura'a mai tō tahito ra, 'e 'ua tītau fa'ahou a'era 'ia ha'amou i te bāsileia.

34 I teienei 'ua 'aro rahi atu Koma ia rātou ; noa atu i te reira, 'aita 'oia i manuia i ni'a ia rātou.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

Etera 11

- 1 'E 'ua tae mai e rave rahi peropheta i te mau mahana o Koma, 'e 'ua tohu rātou e ha'amouhia taua feiā rahi ra, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou, 'e 'ia fāriu mai i te Fatu, 'e 'ia vaiiho i tā rātou mau 'ohipa taparahi ta'ata 'e te mau 'ohipa 'I'ino.
- 2 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāto'i te mau ta'ata i te mau peropheta, 'e 'ua horo atu ra rātou ia Koma ra nō te pārurura'a ; nō te mea 'ua tītau te mau ta'ata 'ia ha'apohe ia rātou.
- 3 'E 'ua tohu a'era rātou i te mau mea e rave rahi ia Koma ; 'e 'ua ha'amaita'ihia 'oia i te tā'āto'ara'a nō te toe'a o tōna ra mau mahana.
- 4 'E 'ua ora noa 'oia ē tae noa atu i tōna ruhiruhiāra'a, 'e 'ua fānau mai 'oia ia Sibeloma ; 'e 'ua fa'atere 'o Sibeloma 'ei mono nōna. 'E 'ua 'ōrurehau mai ra te taea'e o Sibeloma iāna, 'e 'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē 'arora'a rahi roa i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'aue atu ra te taea'e o Sibeloma 'ia taparahihia te mau peropheta ato'a 'o tei tohu nō ni'a i te ha'amoura'a o te mau ta'ata.
- 6 'E 'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē 'ati rahi i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite pāpū mai ho'i rātou ē e tae mai te hō'ē 'anatemara'a rahi i ni'a i te fenua, 'e i ni'a ato'a i te mau ta'ata, 'e e tupu te hō'ē ha'amoura'a rahi i rotopū ia rātou, te hō'ē 'o tei 'ore ā i 'itehia i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'e e roho ho'i tō rātou mau ivi mai te mau ha'apu'era'a repo i ni'a i te fenua, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino.
- 7 'E 'aita rātou i ha'apa'o atu i te parau a te Fatu, nō tā rātou mau pupu 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore ; nō reira 'ua tupu noa te mau 'arora'a 'e te mau mārōra'a i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, ē tae noa atu e rave rahi mau o'e 'e te mau ma'i ; 'e nō reira ho'i 'ua tupu te pau rahi mai tei 'ore i 'itea na i ni'a i te fenua nei ; 'e 'ua tupu teie mau mea ato'a i te mau mahana o Sibeloma.
- 8 'E 'ua ha'amata ihora te mau ta'ata i te tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino ; 'e 'ia nā reira rātou, 'ua aroha mai te Fatu ia rātou.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua taparahihia ihora Sibeloma, 'e 'ua fa'atūhia a'era Seta, 'e 'ua ora noa 'oia i roto i te fa'atūira'a i te mau mahana ato'a nō tōna orara'a.

Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, inasmuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua roa'a ihora te bāsileia i tāna tamaiti ra ia Aha ; 'e 'ua fa'atere a'era 'oia i ni'a i te mau ta'ata ē hope roa a'e tōna ra mau mahana. 'E 'ua rave noa ho'i 'oia i te mau huru 'ohipa 'I'ino ato'a i tōna ra mau mahana, 'e nā roto i te reira 'ua ha'amani'i rahi 'oia i te toto ; 'e e mea iti roa ho'i tōna ra pu'e mahana.
- 11 'E 'ua roa'a te bāsileia ia Etema, 'e e hua'ai ho'i 'oia nō Aha ; 'e 'ua rave ato'a ho'i 'oia i te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore i tōna ra mau mahana.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tae mai ra te mau peropheta e rave rahi i te mau mahana o Etema, 'e 'ua tohu fa'ahou mai rātou i te mau ta'ata ; 'oia ia, 'ua tohu rātou ē, e ha'amou roa te Fatu ia rātou mai ni'a atu i te fenua nei, maori rā 'ia tātarahapa rātou i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'I'ino.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta atu te mau ta'ata i tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e 'aita rātou i ha'apa'o atu i tā rātou parau ; 'e 'ua 'oto ihora te mau peropheta 'e 'ua fa'aātea 'ē atu ra ia rātou mai rotopū atu i te mau ta'ata.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atere a'era Etema i te 'ohipa ha'avāra'a ma te parauti'a 'ore ē hope roa a'e tōna ra mau mahana ; 'e 'ua fānau mai ra 'oia ia Morona. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'atere a'era 'o Morona 'ei mono nōna ; 'e 'ua rave Morona i te mau 'ohipa 'I'ino i mua i te Fatu.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tupu a'era te 'ōrurera'a hau i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, nō te mea tē vai ra taua pupu 'ohipa huna 'o tei fa'ati'ahia 'ia roa'a te mana 'e te tao'a ; 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra te hō'ē ta'ata pūai i te rave i te mau 'ohipa 'I'ino i rotopū ia rātou, 'e 'ua 'aro atu ra 'oia ia Morona, 'e nā roto i te reira 'ua ha'avī ihora 'oia i te 'āfara'a o te bāsileia ; 'e 'ua tāpe'a noa atu ra 'oia i te 'āfara'a o te bāsileia nō te mau matahiti e rave rahi.
- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'avīhia a'era 'oia e Morona, 'e 'ua roa'a fa'ahou mai te bāsileia iāna.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a mai ra te tahi ta'ata pūai ; 'e e hua'ai 'oia nō te taea'e o Iareda.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua vī ihora Morona iāna, 'e 'ua roa'a a'era te bāsileia iāna ; nō reira, 'ua ora noa ihora Morona i roto i te fa'atītira'a i te toe'a o tōna ra mau mahana ; e fānau ihora 'oia ia Korianetora.

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ora noa ihora Korianetora i roto i te fa'atitira'a ē hope roa a'e tōna ra mau mahana.
- 20 'E i te mau mahana o Korianetora 'ua tae fa'ahou mai ra te tahi mau peropheta e rave rahi, 'e 'ua tohu mai ra i te tahi mau mea rahi 'e te māere, 'e 'ua a'o mai ra i te parau nō te tātarahapa i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa, e fa'atae atu te Fatu te Atua i te ha'avāra'a i ni'a ia rātou ē tae noa atu i tō rātou ha'amoura'a.
- 21 'E e tono mai 'e 'aore rā e fa'atae mai te Fatu te Atua nā roto i tōna ra mana i te tahi atu nūna'a nō te fatu i te fenua, mai te au i te huru nō tāna arata'ira'a mai i tō rātou mau metua.
- 22 'E 'ua pāto'i atu rātou i te mau parau ato'a a te mau peropheta, nō tā rātou pupu 'ohipa huna 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i roa.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fānau a'era tā Korianetora 'o Etera, 'e 'ua pohe a'era 'oia, 'e i ora noa ra ho'i 'oia i roto i te fa'atitira'a i tōna ra mau pu'e mahana ato'a.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

Etera 12

- 1 'E i muri a'era, tē ora ra Etera i te mau mahana o Korianetumera ; 'e e ari'i ho'i Korianetumera i ni'a i te mau fenua ato'a i reira.
- 2 'E e peropheta Etera nā te Fatu ; nō reira 'ua haere mai Etera i te mau mahana o Korianetumera 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora i te tohu atu i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'aita roa e ti'a iāna 'ia tāpe'ahia, nō te mea tei roto te Vārua o te Fatu iāna.
- 3 'Ua a'o atu ho'i 'oia mai te po'ipo'i ē tae noa atu i te ma'irira'a o te mahana, ma te fa'aue atu i te mau ta'ata 'ia ti'aturi i te Atua e tae atu ai i te tātarahapara'a, 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia ha'amouhia, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ia rātou ē, nā roto i te fa'aro'o e tupu mai ai te mau mea ato'a—
- 4 Nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tē ti'aturi i te Atua, e riro ato'a 'oia i te ti'aturi ē tē vai ra te hō'ē ao maīta'i roa, 'oia ia, te hō'ē vāhi i te rima 'atau o te Atua, 'e e tae mai ho'i taua ti'aturira'a ra nā roto i te fa'aro'o, 'e e riro ho'i te reira 'ei tūtau nō te vārua o te ta'ata nei, nō te ha'apūai 'e nō te tāpe'a māite ia rātou, 'ia tāmāu noa i roto i te mau 'ohipa maitata'i, 'e 'ia arata'ihia nō te fa'ahanahana i te Atua.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tohu atu ra Etera i te mau mea rarahi 'e te māerehia i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'aita rātou i ti'aturi, nō te mea 'aita rātou i 'ite mata atu i te reira.
- 6 'E i teienei, e parau ri'i atu vau, 'o Moroni, nō ni'a i teie nei mau mea ; e fa'a'ite atu vau i tō te ao nei ē, te fa'aro'o 'o te ti'aturira'a ia i te mau mea 'aore i hi'ohia ; nō reira, 'eiaha 'outou e mārō nō te mea 'aore 'outou i 'ite atu ; e 'ore ho'i 'outou e fāri'i i te 'ite pāpū ē tae noa atu i te hope'ara'a nō te tāmātara'a o tō 'outou fa'aro'o.
- 7 Nō te fa'aro'o ho'i i fa'a'ite mai ai te Mesia iāna iho i tō tātou ra mau metua, i muri a'e i tōna ti'afa'ahoura'a mai te pohe mai ; 'e 'aita ho'i 'oia i fa'a'ite mai iāna iho ia rātou, ē tae roa atu 'ua vai tō rātou fa'aro'o iāna ; nō reira, e mea ti'a roa 'ia vai tō te tahi mau ta'ata fa'aro'o iāna, nō te mea 'aita 'oia e fa'a'ite mai iāna iho i tō te ao nei.

Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

- 8 'E nō te fa'aro'o ho'i o te ta'ata nei i fa'a'ite mai ai 'oia iāna iho i tō te ao nei, 'e i fa'ahanahana ai i te i'oa o te Metua ; 'e i fa'a'ineine ai ho'i i te 'ē'a 'ia ti'a ia vetahi 'ē 'ia fāri'i i te hōro'a nō te ra'i mai, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia ti'aturi i taua mau mea tei 'ore i hi'ohia e rātou ra.
- 9 Nō reira, e fāri'i ato'a 'outou i te ti'aturira'a, 'e i te hōro'a, mai te mea e fa'aro'o tō 'outou.
- 10 Inaha, nō te fa'aro'o ho'i i pi'ihia ai tō tahito ra 'ia au i te fa'anahora'a mo'a a te Atua.
- 11 Nō reira, nō te fa'aro'o i hōro'ahia mai ai te ture a Mose. 'Āre'a rā nā roto i te hōro'ara'a i tāna iho Tamaiti, 'ua fa'a'ineine te Atua i te hō'ē rāve'a maita'i a'e ; 'e nā roto ho'i i te fa'aro'o i fa'atupuhia ai te reira.
- 12 Mai te mea ho'i 'aore e fa'aro'o i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, 'aore ato'a ia e ti'a i te Atua 'ia rave i te semeio i rotopū ia rātou ; nō reira, 'aita roa 'oia i fa'a'ite mai iāna iho ia rātou ē tae noa atu 'ua tupu tō rātou fa'aro'o.
- 13 Inaha, nō te fa'aro'o o Alama 'e Amuleka i ha'apararīhia ai te fare tāpe'ara'a 'ia topa i ni'a i te fenua.
- 14 Inaha, nō te fa'aro'o o Nephi 'e Lehi i fa'ahuru-'ē-hia ai te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e nō reira 'ua bāpetizohia rātou i te auahi 'e te Vārua Maita'i.
- 15 Inaha, nō te fa'aro'o o Amona 'e tōna mau taea'e i tupu ai te hō'ē semeio rahi i rotopū i te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 16 'Oia ia, 'e 'o rātou ato'a 'o tei fa'atupu i te mau semeio, 'ua fa'atupu ia rātou i te reira nā roto i te fa'aro'o, 'oia ia, te feiā nā mua atu i te Mesia 'e te feiā ato'a i muri mai.
- 17 'E nō te fa'aro'o ho'i i roa'a ai i nā pipi to'otoru te fafaura'a ē e 'ore roa rātou e 'ite i te pohe ; 'e 'aita roa rātou i fāri'i i te fafaura'a ē tae noa atu 'ua tupu tō rātou fa'aro'o.
- 18 'E i te mau tau ato'a 'aore roa te ta'ata i rave i te mau semeio ē tae noa atu 'ua tupu tō rātou fa'aro'o ; nō reira, 'ua ti'aturi rātou nā mua roa i te Tamaiti a te Atua.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

- 19 'E hou te Mesia i tae mai ai, tē vai ra e rave rahi tei roto ia rātou te fa'aro'o rahi roa, 'e nō reira 'aore roa e ti'a ia rātou 'ia tāpe'ahia 'ia 'ore 'ia 'ite i te tahi pae mai o te pāruru, 'ua 'ite mau rā tō rātou mata i te mau mea tei hi'ohia e te mata nō te fa'aro'o, 'e 'ua 'oa'oa atu ra rātou.
- 20 'E inaha, 'ua 'itea ia tātou i roto i teie nei pāpa'a parau ē, te hō'ē o rātou, 'o te taea'e ia o Iareda ; 'e nō te rahi o tōna fa'aro'o i te Atua, i te fa'atorora'a mai te Atua i tōna manimani rima, 'aita roa e ti'a iāna 'ia huna i te reira i te mata o te taea'e o Iareda, nō tāna ho'i parau i parauhia e ana iāna ra, e parau ho'i tei roa'a iāna nā roto i te fa'aro'o.
- 21 'E i muri iho i tō te taea'e o Iareda 'itera'a i te manimani rima o te Fatu, nō te fafaura'a i roa'a i te taea'e o Iareda nā roto i te fa'aro'o, 'aita roa i ti'a i te Fatu 'ia tāpe'a i te hō'ē mea mai mua atu i tōna mata ; nō reira 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oia i te mau mea ato'a iāna, 'e 'aore roa ho'i i ti'a iāna 'ia tāpe'ahia i rāpae mai i te pāruru.
- 22 'E nā roto i te fa'aro'o i roa'a ai i tō'u ra mau metua te fafaura'a ē, e tae teie nei mau mea i tō rātou mau taea'e nā roto i te mau 'Ētene ; nō reira 'ua fa'aue mai te Fatu iā'u, 'oia 'o Iesu Mesia.
- 23 'E 'ua nā 'ō atu ra vau iāna : E te Fatu, e vahavaha mai te mau 'Ētene i teie nei mau mea nō tō mātou paruparu i te pāpa'i ; 'e 'ua fa'ariro ho'i 'oe ia mātou 'ei mea pūai i te parau nā roto i te fa'aro'o, 'aita rā 'oe i fa'ariro ia mātou 'ei mea pūai i te pāpa'i i te parau ; 'e 'ua fa'ariro ho'i 'oe i teie nei feiā ato'a 'ia rahi tā rātou parau vaha, nō te Vārua Maita'i tā 'oe i hōro'a mai ia rātou ra.
- 24 'E 'ua fa'ariro 'oe ia mātou 'ei mea 'ite ri'i i te pāpa'i, nō te huru au 'ore o tō mātou rima. Inaha, 'aita 'oe i fa'ariro ia mātou 'ei feiā pūai i te pāpa'i mai te taea'e o Iareda ra ; 'e 'ua fa'ariro ho'i 'oe i te mau mea tāna i pāpa'i 'ei mea pūai rahi mai ia 'oe ra, 'e hina'aro roa atu ra te ta'ata e tai'o i te reira.
- 25 'Ua fa'ariro ato'a ho'i 'oe i tā mātou parau 'ei mea pūai 'e te rahi, 'e 'aore e ti'a ia mātou 'ia pāpa'i i te reira ; nō reira, 'ia pāpa'i mātou i te reira, 'ua 'ite mātou i tō mātou paruparu, 'e 'ua turori atu ra i te tu'ura'a i tā mātou mau parau ; 'e tē mata'u nei au 'o te vahavaha mai te mau 'Ētene i tā mātou mau parau.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

- 26 'E 'ia oti a'era tā'u paraura'a i te reira ra, 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu iā'u, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : E vahavaha te feiā ma'ama'a, e 'oto rā rātou ; e nava'i ho'i tō'u maita'i nō te feiā ha'eha'a, 'ia 'ore rātou e faufa'ahia i tō 'outou paruparu.
- 27 'E 'ia haere mai te ta'ata iā'u nei, e fa'a'ite atu vau ia rātou i tō rātou paruparu. Tē hōro'a nei au i te paruparu i te ta'ata nei 'ia tupu tō rātou ha'eha'a ; 'e e nava'i ho'i tō'u maita'i nō te feiā ato'a i fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho i mua iā'u nei ; 'e 'ia fa'aha'eha'a rātou ia rātou iho i mua iā'u nei, 'e 'ia vai ho'i tō rātou fa'aro'o iā'u nei, 'ei reira vau e fa'ariro ai i te mau mea paruparu 'ei mea pūai nō rātou.
- 28 Inaha, e fa'a'ite atu vau i te mau 'Ētene i tō rātou paruparu, 'e e fa'a'ite atu vau ia rātou ē, e fa'atae mai te fa'aro'o, te ti'aturi, 'e te here, i te ta'ata iā'u nei—te vai pīha'a o te mau parauti'a ato'a ra.
- 29 'E 'ia fa'aro'o a'era vau, 'o Moroni, i teie mau parau, 'ua tupu ihora te hau i roto iā'u, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra vau : E te Fatu, 'ia tupu tō 'oe na hina'aro parauti'a, 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, tē rave noa na 'oe i tā 'oe 'ohipa i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei mai te au i tō rātou ra fa'aro'o.
- 30 'Ua parau atu ho'i te taea'e o Iareda i te mou'a ra o Zerina, 'A fa'anuu 'ē atu—'e 'ua fa'anuu-'ē-hia atu ra. 'E 'āhiri 'aita tōna e fa'aro'o, 'aita ia e fa'anuu-'ē-hia atu ; nō reira 'ia vai te fa'aro'o o te ta'ata, 'ei reira 'oe e rave ai i te 'ohipa.
- 31 'Ua nā reira ho'i 'oe i te fa'a'ite mai ia 'oe iho i tā 'oe ra mau pipi ; inaha i muri iho i te tupura'a tō rātou fa'aro'o, 'e i te paraura'a nā roto i tō 'oe ra i'oa, 'ei reira 'oe i fa'a'ite mai ai ia 'oe iho ia rātou ma te mana rahi.
- 32 'E tē ha'amana'o ato'a nei ho'i au ē, i parau na 'oe ē, 'ua fa'aineine 'oe i te hō'ē fare nō te ta'ata nei ; 'oia ia, i rotopū i te mau aora'i o tō 'oe ra Metua, 'ei reira e tupu ai tō te ta'ata ti'aturira'a rahi a'e ; nō reira 'ia ti'aturi te ta'ata e ti'a ai, 'e mai te mea 'aita, 'aita ia 'oia e fāri'i i te 'āi'a i te vāhi tā 'oe i fa'aineine.
- 33 'E teie fa'ahou ā, tē ha'amana'o nei au ē, i parau na 'oe ē, 'ua aroha 'oe i tō te ao nei, 'e 'ua tae roa i te tu'ura'a i tō 'oe ora i raro nō tō te ao nei, nō te rave fa'ahou mai i te reira, nō te fa'aineine i te hō'ē vāhi nō te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

34 'E i teienei, tē 'ite nei au ē, teie aroha tō 'oe nō te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei 'o te aroha mau ia ; nō reira, 'ia 'ore te aroha mau 'ia vai i roto i te ta'ata nei, e 'ore ato'a ia e roa'a ia rātou taua vāhi ra 'o tā 'oe i fa'aîneine i roto i te mau aora'i o tō 'oe ra Metua.

35 Nō reira, 'ua 'ite au nā roto i teie mea 'o tā 'oe i parau iho nei ē, mai te mea 'aita te aroha mau e vai i roto i te mau 'Ētene, nō tō mātou paruparu, e riro 'oe i te tāmata ia rātou, 'e i te rave 'ē atu i tā rātou tāreni, 'oia ia, 'e tae noa atu i te mea tā rātou i fāri'i na, 'e 'a hōro'a atu ai nā te feiā 'o tē fāri'i rahi atu ā.

36 'E i muri a'era 'ua pure atu ra vau i te Fatu 'ia hōro'a mai i te maita'i i te mau 'Ētene, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fāri'i i te aroha mau.

37 'E i muri a'era 'ua nā 'ō mai ra te Fatu iā'u : Mai te mea ē 'aita te aroha mau i roto ia rātou 'aita ia tō te reira e faufa'a ia 'oe na, 'ua ha'apa'o maita'i ho'i 'oe ; nō reira e tāmāhia tō 'oe na mau 'ahu. 'E nō te mea ho'i 'ua 'ite 'oe i tō 'oe paruparu, e fa'arirohia ia 'oe 'ei mea pūai, ē tae noa atu i te pārahira'a i te vāhi 'o tā'u i fa'aîneine i roto i te mau aora'i o tō'u ra Metua.

38 'E i teienei, te parau nei au, 'o Moroni, i te mau 'Ētene, 'a pārahi, 'oia ia, 'e tae noa atu ho'i i tō'u mau taea'e 'o tā'u i here, ē tae noa atu 'ua fārerēi fa'ahou tātou i mua i te vāhi ha'avāra'a a te Mesia, 'e i reira te mau ta'ata ato'a e 'ite ai ē, 'aita tō'u mau 'ahu i pōra'o i tō 'outou ra toto.

39 'E i reira 'outou e 'ite ai ē, 'ua 'ite mata vau ia Iesu, 'e 'ua paraparau mai 'oia iā'u, te mata 'e te mata, 'e 'ua fa'a'ite mai 'oia iā'u ma te ha'eha'a mau, mai tā te hō'ē ta'ata e fa'a'ite atu i te tahi atu i roto i tō'u iho reo, i teie nei mau mea.

40 'E e mea iti roa tā'u i pāpa'i, nō tō'u paruparu i te pāpa'i.

41 'E i teienei, tē fa'auē atu nei au ia 'outou 'ia 'imi i teie nei Iesu 'o tā te mau peropheta 'e te mau 'āpōsetolo i pāpa'i ra, 'ia vai te maita'i o te Atua te Metua, 'e tō te Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia, 'e tō te Vārua Maita'i i roto ia 'outou na ē a muri noa atu, nō te fa'a'ite pāpū i te reira ia 'outou na. 'Āmene.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

Etera 13

- 1 'E i teienei, tē fa'aoti nei au, 'o Moroni, i tā'u pāpa'a parau nō ni'a i te ha'amoura'ahia te feiā 'o tā'u i pāpa'i ra.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, 'ua pāto'i rātou i te mau parau a Etera ; inaha 'ua fa'a'ite mau 'oia ia rātou i te mau mea ato'a i tupu mai te ha'amatarā'a mai o te ta'ata nei ; 'e i muri iho i te pāhe'era'a te mau pape mai ni'a atu i teie nei fenua, 'ua riro ihora teie nei fenua 'ei fenua maita'i roa a'e i te mau fenua ato'a, 'ei fenua i mā'itihia e te Fatu ; nō reira 'ua hina'aro te Fatu i te mau ta'ata ato'a e pārahi ra i ni'a i teie fenua nei 'ia tāvini atu iāna.
- 3 'E e vāhi teie nō te Ierusalemā 'Āpī, 'o tē tae mai i raro nei nō te ra'i mai, 'e e vāhi mo'a nō te Fatu.
- 4 Inaha, 'ua 'ite Etera i te mau mahana o te Mesia, 'e 'ua parau 'oia nō ni'a i te hō'ē Ierusalemā 'Āpī i ni'a iho i teie nei fenua.
- 5 'E 'ua parau ato'a ho'i 'oia nō ni'a i te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela, 'e te Ierusalemā e mea nā reira mai Lehi i te haere mai—'e i muri iho i tō te reira ha'amoura'ahia, e patu-fa'ahou-hia te reira 'ei 'oire mo'a i te Fatu ; nō reira, 'aita te reira e ti'a 'ia parauhia e Ierusalemā 'Āpī nō te mea i vai na te reira i te 'anotau tahito ra ; 'āre'a rā e patu-fa'ahou-hia te reira, 'e e riro 'ei 'oire mo'a nō te Fatu ; 'e e mea ti'a i te reira 'ia patuhia nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela—
- 6 'E e fa'ati'ahia te hō'ē Ierusalemā 'Āpī i ni'a i teie nei fenua, nō te toe'a o te hua'ai o Iosepha, e taipe ho'i tō te reira mau mea.
- 7 Mai tā Iosepha ho'i i hōpoi mai i tōna metua tāne i raro i te fenua ra nō 'Aiphiti, 'e i reira ho'i 'oia i te pohera'a ; nō reira 'ua hōpoi ato'a mai ra te Fatu i te hō'ē toe'a nō te hua'ai o Iosepha i rāpae mai te fenua mai ra o Ierusalemā, 'ia aroha mai 'oia i te hua'ai o Iosepha 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia mou, mai tāna i aroha mai i te metua tāne o Iosepha 'ia 'ore 'oia 'ia pohe.
- 8 Nō reira, e fa'ati'ahia te toe'a nō te hua'ai o Iosepha i ni'a i teie nei fenua ; 'e e riro te reira 'ei fenua 'āi'a nō rātou ; 'e e riro ho'i rātou i te fa'ati'a i te hō'ē 'oire mo'a i te Fatu, mai te au i te Ierusalemā i tahito ra ; 'e e 'ore roa rātou e 'āno'i-haere-hia, ē tae noa atu i te hope'a, i te taimē te fenua nei e ha'amouhia ai.

Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

- 9 'E e vai mai te hō'ē ra'i 'āpī 'e te hō'ē fenua 'āpī ; 'e e au te reira i te mea tahito, maori rā 'ua mou te mea tahito 'e 'ua fa'a'āpīhia te mau mea ato'a.
- 10 'E i reira e tae mai ai te Ieruselema 'Āpī ; 'e e ha'amaita'ihia rātou 'o tē pārahi i reira, 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie 'o tei teatea tō rātou mau 'ahu i te toto o te 'Ārenio ; 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie 'o tei tai'ohia i rotopū i te toe'a o te hua'ai o Iosepha, nō te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela.
- 11 'E i reira ato'a e tae mai te Ieruselema tahito ; 'e e ha'amaita'ihia te mau ta'ata nō te reira, nō te mea 'ua horoihia rātou i te toto o te 'Ārenio ra ; 'e 'o rātou ho'i teie 'o tei ha'apurarahia 'e 'o tei ha'aputuputuhia mai ho'i mai nā tufa'a e maha o te fenua nei, 'e mai te mau fenua i te pae apato'erau, 'e 'o tē fa'atupu i te fafaura'a 'o tā te Atua i fafau atu i tō rātou metua tāne ra ia Aberahama.
- 12 'E 'ia tupu teie nei mau mea, e tupu ia te pāpa'ira'a mo'a 'o tei nā 'ō mai ē, tē vai ra vetahi nō mua roa, 'o tē riro 'ei hope'a ; 'e tē vai ra vetahi i muri roa, 'o tē riro nō mua roa.
- 13 'E 'ua fātata vau i te pāpa'i fa'ahou atu ā, 'ua 'ōpanihia rā vau ; 'āre'a rā e mea rahi 'e te māere ho'i te mau parau tohu a Etera, 'ua fa'ariro rā rātou iāna 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore, 'e 'ua ti'avaru atu rātou iāna i rāpae ; 'e 'ua tāpuni ihora 'oia iāna iho i roto i te ana mato i te ao, 'e i te pō 'ua haere atu 'oia e māta'ita'i haere i te mau mea 'o tē tupu i ni'a i te mau ta'ata.
- 14 'E 'a pārahi ai 'oia i roto i taua ana mato ra, 'ua pāpa'i 'oia i te toe'a o teie nei pāpa'a parau, 'a māta'ita'i ai 'oia i te pō i te mau ha'amoura'a i tae mai i ni'a i te mau ta'ata.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, i taua iho matahiti ra 'a ti'avaruhia atu ai 'oia i rāpae mai rotopū atu i te mau ta'ata, 'ua tupu te hō'ē 'arora'a rahi i rotopū i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ti'a mai ra ho'i e rave rahi mau ta'ata pūai i ni'a, 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia taparahi ia Korianetumera nā roto i tā rātou mau 'ōpuara'a huna nō te mau 'ohipa parauti'a 'ore, 'o tei parauhia na.
- 16 'E i teienei, 'ua ha'api'i Korianetumera iāna iho i te mau huru 'ohipa ato'a nō te 'arora'a 'e te mau huru ha'avare ato'a a tō teie nei ao, nō reira 'ua 'aro atu 'oia i te feiā i tītau 'ia taparahi mai iāna.

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

- 17 'Aita rā 'oia i tātarahapa, 'aita ato'a tāna ra mau tamari'i tamāroa nehenehe 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine nehenehe ; 'aita ato'a te mau tamari'i tamāroa nehenehe 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine nehenehe a Kohora ; 'aita ato'a te mau tamari'i tamāroa nehenehe 'e te tamari'i tamāhine nehenehe a Korihora ; 'e 'oia mau, 'aita roa ato'a te hō'ē a'e o te mau tamari'i tamāroa nehenehe 'e te mau tamari'i tamāhine nehenehe i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a i tātarahapa i tā rātou ra mau hara.
- 18 Nō reira, i muri a'era, i te matahiti mātāmua 'a pārahi ai Etera i roto i te ana mato ra, e rave rahi ta'ata i taparahihia i te 'o'e a te mau pupu 'ohipa huna, tei 'aro atu ia Korianetumera 'ia roa'a ia rātou te bāsileia.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tama'i pinepine a'era te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Korianetumera, 'e 'ua tahe rahi tō rātou toto.
- 20 'E i te piti o te matahiti, 'ua tae mai ra te parau a te Fatu ia Etera, 'ia haere atu 'oia 'e 'ia tohu atu ia Korianetumera, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē, mai te mea e tātarahapa 'oia 'e tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a, e hōro'a mai ia te Fatu i tōna bāsileia iāna ra, 'e e fa'aora noa 'oia i te mau ta'ata—
- 21 'E 'ia 'ore rātou e nā reira, e ha'amouhia rātou tōna 'utuāfare pā'āto'a, maori rā 'o 'oia ana'e. 'E e ora noa 'oia nō te 'ite atu i te tupura'a o te mau parau tohu i parauhia na nō ni'a i te tahi atu nūna'a 'o tē roa'a ia rātou te fenua 'ei 'āi'a nō rātou ; 'e e tanuhia ho'i Korianetumera e rātou ; 'e e riro te mau ta'ata ato'a i te ha'amouhia, maori rā 'o Korianetumera ana'e.
- 22 'E i muri a'era, 'aita Korianetumera i tātarahapa, 'aita ato'a tōna ra 'utuāfare, 'aita ato'a te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'aita ho'i te mau tama'i i fa'aea ; 'e 'ua tītau rātou 'ia taparahi ia Etera, 'āre'a rā 'ua horo 'ē atu ra 'oia mai mua atu ia rātou 'e 'ua tāpuni fa'ahou ihora i roto i te ana mato ra.
- 23 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ti'a mai ra Sareda, 'e 'ua 'aro ato'a atu ra ia Korianetumera ; 'e 'ua upo'oti'a 'oia i ni'a iāna, 'e nō reira ho'i i te toru o te matahiti 'ua 'āfa'i mai 'oia iāna i roto i te fa'atūtira'a.
- 24 'E 'ua upo'oti'a te mau tamari'i tamāroa a Korianetumera, i te maha o te matahiti, i ni'a a'e ia Sareda, 'e 'ua roa'a fa'ahou ihora te bāsileia ia rātou nō tō rātou metua tāne.

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

25 I tei enei, 'ua tupu ihora te hō'ē 'arora'a i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a, 'e tē tama'i ra te mau ta'ata tāta'itahi 'e tāna iho pupu ta'ata, 'ia roa'a tāna e hina'aro ra.

26 'E tē vai ra te mau ta'ata 'eiā haru, 'e 'oia mau, te mau huru 'ohipa 'īino ato'a i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua riri roa a'era Korianetumera ia Sareda, 'e 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau e 'aro iāna ; 'e 'ua 'aro a'era rāua ma te riri rahi, 'e 'ua 'aro rāua i roto i te peho ra o Gilagala ; 'e 'ua rahi roa te 'arora'a.

28 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro mai ra Sareda iāna nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro, 'e i muri a'era, 'ua pau a'era 'oia ia Korianetumera, 'e 'ua a'ua'uhia atu ra 'oia ē tae roa atu i te mau fenua pāpū nō Heselona ra.

29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro fa'ahou mai ra Sareda iāna i ni'a i te mau fenua pāpū ; 'e inaha, 'ua pau a'era Korianetumera iāna, 'e 'ua tūra'i fa'ahou atu ra iāna i muri ē tae roa atu i te peho ra o Gilagala.

30 'E 'ua 'aro fa'ahou atu ra Korianetumera ia Sareda i te peho ra o Gilagala, 'e 'ua pau a'era Sareda iāna, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora iāna.

31 'E 'ua puta ihora te huha o Korianetumera ia Sareda, 'e nō reira 'aita 'oia i haere fa'ahou atu e 'aro iāna nō te ārea e piti matahiti te maoro, 'e i taua taime ra tē ha'amani'i ra te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a i te fenua nei i te toto, 'e 'aita roa e ta'ata nō te tāpe'a ia rātou.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

Etera 14

- 1 'E i teienei, 'ua tupu te hō'ē 'anatemara'a rahi i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a nō te mau 'ohipa 'Tino a te mau ta'ata ; 'e nō te reira 'ia vaiiho te hō'ē ta'ata i tāna mauha'a rave 'ohipa 'e 'aore rā i tāna 'o'e i ni'a iho i tāna 'iri vaira'a, 'e 'aore rā i te vāhi i ha'apa'ohia nō te reira, inaha, 'ia ao a'e, 'aita iā te reira e 'itehia iāna, nō te rahi o te 'anatemara'a i ni'a i te fenua.
- 2 Nō reira 'ua mau māite te ta'ata tāta'itahi i tāna ihora i tōna rima, e 'aore 'oia e tīpe'e e 'aore ato'a e hōro'a ia tīpe'ehia ; 'e e tāpe'a noa te ta'ata tāta'itahi i te tāpe'ara'a o tāna 'o'e i tōna rima atau, nō te pāruru i tāna tao'a e i tōna iho ora, e tō tāna ra mau vahine e tō tāna ra mau tamari'i.
- 3 'E i teienei, i muri iho i te ārea nō te piti matahiti, 'e i muri iho i te pohera'a o Sareda, inaha, 'ua ti'a mai ra te taea'e o Sareda 'e 'ua 'aro mai ra ia Korianetumera, 'e 'ua pau ihora 'oia ia Korianetumera, 'e 'ua a'ua'u atu ra 'oia iāna ē tae atu ra i te mēdēbara ra i Akisa.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro mai ra te taea'e o Sareda iāna i roto i te mēdēbara i Akisa ; 'e 'ua pūai roa te 'arora'a, 'e 'ua pohe e rave rahi tauatini i te 'o'e.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pārahi ha'a'ati a'era Korianetumera i te mēdēbara ra, 'e i te pō 'ua haere mai ra te taea'e o Sareda i rāpae i te mēdēbara, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora 'oia i te hō'ē pae o te nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera, 'a ta'ero ai rātou i te 'ava.
- 6 'E 'ua haere a'era 'oia i te fenua ra nō Morona, 'e 'ua tu'u ihora 'oia iāna iho i ni'a i te terōno o Korianetumera.
- 7 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pārahi ihora Korianetumera 'e tōna nu'u fa'ehau i roto i te mēdēbara nō te ārea e piti matahiti te maoro, 'e 'ua tupu ihora tōna nu'u fa'ehau i te rahi.
- 8 I teienei, 'ua tupu ato'a a'era ho'i te nu'u fa'ehau o te taea'e o Sareda i te rahi, 'o Gileada tōna i'oa, nō te mea tē vai ra te mau pupu 'ohipa huna.
- 9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua taparahi ihora tōna tahu'a rahi iāna 'a pārahi ai 'oia i ni'a iho i tōna ra terōno.

Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

- 10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua taparahihia ihora 'oia e te hō'ē o te mau pupu 'ohipa huna i roto i te hō'ē 'ē'a 'ite-'ore-hia, 'e 'ua roa'a mai ra te bāsileia iāna ; 'e tōna i'oa 'o Liba ia ; 'e e ta'ata tino rahi roa 'o Liba, hau atu i te rahi i te tahi atu ta'ata i rotopū i te mau ta'ata ato'a.
- 11 'E i muri a'era, i te matahiti mātāmua nō tā Liba fa'aterera'a, 'ua tae mai ra Korianetumera i te fenua ra nō Morona, 'e 'ua 'aro mai ra ia Liba.
- 12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro mai ra 'oia ia Liba, 'e 'ua tā'iri ihora Liba i tōna rima, 'e 'ua puta ihora ; noa atu rā i te reira, 'ua 'aro noa te nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera ia Liba, 'e 'ua horo atu ra 'oia i te mau hiti nō te pae tahatai.
- 13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra Korianetumera iāna ; 'e 'ua 'aro mai ra Liba iāna i te pae tahatai.
- 14 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tā'iri ihora Liba i te nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera, 'e 'ua horo fa'ahou atu ra rātou i roto i te mēdēbara o Akisa.
- 15 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra Liba iāna e tae atu ra i te mau fenua pāpū nō Agosa. 'E 'ua rave atu Korianetumera i te mau ta'ata ato'a nā muri iho iāna 'a horo atu ai 'oia mai mua atu ia Liba i te vāhi tāna i horo atu.
- 16 'E 'a tae atu ai 'oia i te mau fenua pāpū o Agosa ra, 'ua 'aro atu ra 'oia ia Liba, 'e 'ua tā'iri noa ihora 'oia iāna ē tae roa atu 'ua pohe roa 'oia ; noa atu rā i te reira, 'ua haere mai te taea'e o Liba 'ei mono iāna nō te 'aro ia Korianetumera, 'e 'ua pūai roa te 'arora'a, 'e 'ua horo 'ē fa'ahou atu ra Korianetumera mai mua atu i te nu'u fa'ehau o te taea'e o Liba.
- 17 I teienei, te i'oa o te taea'e o Liba 'o Siza ia. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra Siza ia Korianetumera 'e 'ua ha'amou 'oia i te mau 'oire e rave rahi, 'e 'ua taparahi i te mau vahine 'e te mau tamari'i, 'e 'ua tūtu'i ihora 'oia i te mau 'oire i te auahi.
- 18 'E 'ua tupu a'era te mata'u nō ni'a ia Siza i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a ; 'oia ia, 'ua tae atu te parau nā ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a—'O vai tē ti'a 'ia ti'a atu i mua i te nu'u fa'ehau o Siza ? Inaha, te pau ra tō te fenua i mua iāna.
- 19 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ta'iruru 'āmui ihora te mau ta'ata i roto i te mau nu'u fa'ehau, i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

20 'E 'ua 'āmahamaha a'era rātou ; 'e 'ua horo atu ra te hō'ē pae i roto i te nu'u fa'ehau o Siza, 'e 'ua horo a'era te tahi pae i roto i te nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera.

21 'E nō te rahi 'e te maoro o taua 'arora'a ra, 'e nō te maoro o te ha'amani'ira'a toto 'e te taparahira'a ta'ata, i 'i roa ai te fenua tā'āto'a i te mau tino pohe ra.

22 'E nō te rū 'e te 'oi'oi o taua 'arora'a ra, 'aita e ta'ata toe nō te tanu i te feiā pohe, 'e 'ua haere ti'a rā rātou mai te ha'amani'ira'a toto i te ha'amani'ira'a toto, ma te vaiiho noa i te mau tino pohe o te mau tāne 'e te mau vahine, 'e tō te mau tamari'i i ni'a i te fenua, 'ei mā'a nā te mau tu'a o te tino nei.

23 'E 'ua haere te hau'a 'ino nā ni'a i te fenua, 'oia ia i ni'a i te fenua tā'āto'a ; nō reira 'ua pe'ape'a roa te mau ta'ata i te ao 'e te pō, nō taua hau'a 'ino ra.

24 Noa atu rā i te reira, 'aita roa 'o Siza i fa'aea i te a'ua'u atu ia Korianetumera ; nō te mea 'ua tapu 'oia 'ia tāho'o atu ia Korianetumera nō te toto o tōna taea'e i taparahihia, 'e 'ia fa'ahapa ho'i i te parau a te Fatu i tae mai ia Etera, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē, e 'ore roa Korianetumera e pohe i te 'o'e.

25 'E nō reira tē 'ite nei tātou ē, 'ua tae mai iho ā te Fatu i rotopū ia rātou nā roto i te 'ira'a o tōna ra riri 'ū'ana, 'e nā tā rātou mau 'ohīpa 'i'ino 'e tā rātou mau 'ohīpa vi'ivi'i i fa'aineine i te 'ē'a nō tō rātou pohe mure 'ore.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua a'ua'u atu ra Siza ia Korianetumera i te pae i te hiti'a o te rā ra, ē tae noa atu i te mau hiti i tahatai ra, 'e i reira 'ua 'aro mai ra 'oia ia Siza nō te ārea e toru mahana te maoro.

27 'E e mea ri'ari'a roa te pau i rotopū i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Siza, 'e nō reira 'ua tupu ihora te mata'u o te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora rātou i te horo atu mai mua atu i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera ; 'e 'ua horo atu ra rātou i te fenua ra nō Korihora, 'e 'ua taparahi ihora i te mau ta'ata i mua ia rātou, 'ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tē 'ore e 'āmui mai ia rātou.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

- 28 'E 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i te peho ra o Korihora. 'E 'ua fa'ati'a a'era Korianetumera i tōna ra mau ti'ahapa i te peho ra o Sura. I teienei, e mea fātata te peho ra o Sura i te 'āivi ra o Kominora ; nō reira, 'ua ha'aputuputu 'āmuī mai ra Korianetumera i tōna mau nu'u fa'ehau i ni'a i te 'āivi ra o Kominora, 'e 'ua fa'a'oto a'era 'oia i te pū i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Siza, nō te tūtau atu ia rātou 'ia haere mai e 'aro.
- 29 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere mai ra rātou, 'e 'ua tūra'i-fa'ahou-hia rātou i muri ; 'e 'ua haere fa'ahou mai rātou i te piti o te taime, 'e 'ua tūra'i-fa'ahou-hia rātou i muri i te piti o te taime. 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou mai ra rātou i te toru o te taime, 'e 'ua pūai roa te 'arora'a.
- 30 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tā'iri ihora Siza ia Korianetumera, 'e 'ua rahi roa ihora tōna mau puta hōhonu ; 'e nō te rahi o tōna toto i pau, 'ua matapōirihia ihora Korianetumera, 'e 'ua hōpoi-ē-hia atu ra 'oia mai te mea ra ē, 'ua pohe roa 'oia.
- 31 I teienei, 'ua rahi roa te mau tāne, 'e te mau vahine, 'e te mau tamari'i i pau i nā pae e piti ato'a ra, nō reira 'ua fa'aue ihora Siza i tōna mau ta'ata 'eiaha rātou e a'ua'u atu i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera ; nō reira, 'ua ho'i mai ra rātou i tō rātou ra pūhapara'a.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

Etera 15

- 1 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ora mai Korianetumera i tōna ra mau puta, 'ua ha'amana'o a'era 'oia i te mau parau tā Etera i parau mai iāna ra.
- 2 'Ua 'ite a'era 'oia 'e 'ua fātata roa i te piti milioni o tōna mau ta'ata i pohe i te 'o'e, 'e 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te 'oto i roto i tōna 'ā'au ; 'oia ia, 'ua pohe te mau ta'ata 'aito e piti milioni, 'e tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i ato'a ho'i.
- 3 'Ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te tātarahapa i te 'ino tāna i rave ; 'ua ha'amata ihora 'oia i te ha'amana'o i te mau parau i parauhia mai e te vaha o te mau peropheta ato'a, 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia ē i tupu mau a'enei te reira, 'aita te hō'ē vāhi iti a'e i 'ore i tupu ; 'e 'ua 'oto ihora tōna vārua 'e 'ua pāto'i 'oia 'ia tāmāhanahanahia.
- 4 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāpa'i ihora 'oia i te hō'ē 'episetole ia Siza ma te hina'aro 'ia fa'aora noa 'oia i te mau ta'ata, 'e i reira e hōro'a atu 'oia i te bāsileia 'ia ora noa te mau ta'ata.
- 5 'E i muri a'era, i tō Siza fāri'ira'a i taua 'episetole ra 'ua pāpa'i ihora 'oia i te hō'ē 'episetole ia Korianetumera, i te nā-'ō-ra'a ē, mai te mea e tu'u mai 'oia iāna iho 'ia taparahihia 'oia i tāna iho 'o'e, i reira e fa'aora noa ia 'oia i te mau ta'ata.
- 6 'E i muri a'era, 'aita te mau ta'ata i tātarahapa i tā rātou mau 'ohipa 'i'ino ; 'e 'ua tupu a'era te riri rahi o te mau ta'ata o Korianetumera i te mau ta'ata o Siza ; 'e 'ua tupu ato'a a'era te riri rahi o te mau ta'ata o Siza i te mau ta'ata o Korianetumera ; nō reira, 'ua 'aro mai ra te mau ta'ata o Siza i te mau ta'ata o Korianetumera.
- 7 'E 'ite a'era Korianetumera 'e 'ua fātata roa 'oia i te pau, 'ua horo 'ē fa'ahou atu ra 'oia mai mua atu i te mau ta'ata o Siza.
- 8 'E i muri a'era, 'ua haere atu ra 'oia i te mau pape ra o Ripilianekuma, tōna aura'a 'ia 'iritihia, 'oia ho'i, rahi 'e 'aore rā hau atu i te mau mea ato'a ; nō reira, i tō rātou taera'a mai i taua mau pape ra, 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa ; 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ato'a ihora Siza i tōna mau ti'ahapa fātata mai ia rātou ; e nō reira, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua 'aro ihora rātou.

Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

9 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro ihora rātou i te 'arora'a pūai, 'e 'ua puta fa'ahou ihora Korianetumera, 'e 'ua matapōirihia ihora 'oia nō te rahi o tōna toto i pau.

10 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'aro pūai atu ra te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera i te mau nu'u fa'ehau o Siza 'e 'ua pau ihora rātou, 'e 'ua tītau ihora rātou ia rātou 'ia horo 'ē atu mai mua atu ia rātou ; 'e 'ua horo 'ē atu ra rātou i te pae apato'a, 'e 'ua fa'ati'a ihora rātou i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i te hō'ē vāhi i parauhia 'o Ogata.

11 'E i muri a'era, 'ua fa'ati'a ato'a ihora te nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera i tō rātou mau ti'ahapa i te pae i pīha'i iho i te 'āivi ra 'o Rama ; 'e 'o teie ato'a te 'āivi tā tō'u metua tāne ra 'o Moromona i hunā i te mau pāpa'a parau i te Fatu ra, 'e e mea mo'a ho'i te reira.

12 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui mai ra rātou i te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a i te mau fenua tā'āto'a, 'o tei 'ore i taparahihia, maori rā 'o Etera ana'e.

13 'E i muri a'era, 'ua 'ite ihora Etera i te mau mea ato'a i ravehia e te mau ta'ata ; 'e 'ua 'ite 'oia 'e 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui mai te mau ta'ata o Korianetumera i roto i te nu'u fa'ehau o Korianetumera ; 'e te mau ta'ata o Siza 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui ato'a rātou ia rātou i roto i te nu'u fa'ehau o Siza.

14 Nō reira, i roto i te ārea nō te maha matahiti te maoro 'ua ha'aputupu'āmui rātou i te mau ta'ata, 'ia roa'a ia rātou te mau ta'ata ato'a i ni'a i te fenua, 'e 'ia roa'a ho'i ia rātou te pūai rahi roa 'o tē ti'a 'ia roa'a mai ia rātou ra.

15 'E i muri a'era, 'ia oti rātou pā'āto'a i te ha'aputupu'āmui mai, te ta'ata tāta'itahi i roto i te nu'u fa'ehau 'o tāna i hina'aro, 'e tā rātou mau vahine 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i—'e 'ua fāri'i te mau tāne, 'e te mau vahine, 'e te mau tamari'i ato'a ho'i i te mau mauha'a tama'i, i te mau pāroru tama'i, 'e te mau pāroru 'ōuma, 'e te mau pāroru upo'o, 'e 'ua fa'a'ahuhia rātou mai te au i te huru nō te 'arora'a—'e i reira 'ua haere atu rātou e 'aro te tahi i te tahi ; 'e 'ua tama'i rātou i taua mahana tā'āto'a ra, 'e 'aita roa te hō'ē pae i vī.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and headplates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

- 16 'E i muri a'era, 'ia pō ihora, 'ua rohirohi rātou, 'e 'ua ho'i atu ra i tō rātou mau pūhapara'a ; 'e 'ia tae a'era rātou i tō rātou mau pūhapara'a, 'ua tupu te 'auēra'a 'e te 'oto nō tō rātou mau ta'ata i pohe i te taparahihia ; 'e nō te rahi o tā rātou mau ta'i, 'e tā rātou mau auēra'a, 'e te mau 'oto, i mahae roa ai te reva nei.
- 17 'E i muri a'era, 'ia ao a'era, 'ua haere fa'ahou atu ra rātou nō te 'aro, 'e e mahana rahi 'e te ri'ari'a te reira ; noa atu rā i te reira, 'aita roa rātou i vī, 'e 'ia tae mai te pō, 'ua hahae fa'ahou rātou i te reva i tā rātou mau ta'i, 'e tā rātou mau 'auēra'a, 'e tā rātou mau 'otora'a, nō tō rātou mau ta'ata i pohe i te taparahihia.
- 18 'E i muri a'era, 'ua pāpa'i fa'ahou ihora Korianetumera i te hō'ē 'episetole ia Siza, ma te tītau iāna, 'eiaha 'oia e haere fa'ahou mai nō te 'aro, 'ia rave atu rā 'oia i te bāsileia 'e 'ia fa'aora noa i te mau ta'ata.
- 19 Inaha rā, 'ua fa'aea te Vārua o te Fatu i te tūtava 'e 'o rātou, 'e 'ua rahi roa tō Sātane mana i ni'a i te 'ā'au o te mau ta'ata, i vaiihohia ai te mau ta'ata i te 'eta'eta o tō rātou iho 'ā'au 'e i te pōiri o tō rātou mau mana'o 'ia ha'amouhia rātou ; nō reira 'ua haere fa'ahou atu rātou nō te 'aro.
- 20 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tama'i rātou i taua mahana tā'āto'a ra, 'e 'ia tae mai te pō, 'ua ta'oto ihora rātou i ni'a iho i tā rātou mau 'o'e.
- 21 'E 'ia po'ipo'i a'era, 'ua tama'i noa rātou ē tae noa atu i te pō.
- 22 'E 'ia tae mai te pō 'ua ta'ero roa rātou i te riri, mai te hō'ē ta'ata i ta'ero i te uaina ra ; 'e 'ua ta'oto fa'ahou ihora rātou i ni'a iho i tā rātou mau 'o'e.
- 23 'E 'ia po'ipo'i a'era, 'ua tama'i fa'ahou atu ra rātou ; 'e 'ia tae mai te pō, 'ua pau roa rātou ato'a i te 'o'e, maori rā te mau ta'ata e pae 'ahuru 'e ma piti o Korianetumera, 'e te mau ta'ata e ono 'ahuru 'e ma iiva o Siza.
- 24 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ta'oto ihora rātou i ni'a iho i tā rātou mau 'o'e i taua pō ra, 'e 'ia po'ipo'i a'era, 'ua tama'i fa'ahou atu ra rātou, 'e 'ua tama'i rātou ma tō rātou pūai 'e ma te fa'a'ohipa i tā rātou mau 'o'e 'e tā rātou mau pāruu tama'i i taua mahana tā'āto'a ra.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

25 'E 'ia tae mai te pō, 'ua toe mai tō Siza 'e toru
 'ahuru 'e ma piti mau ta'ata, 'e tō Korianetumera e
 piti 'ahuru 'e ma hitu mau ta'ata.

26 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tāmā'a ihora rātou 'e 'ua ta'oto
 ihora, 'e 'ua fa'aineine ia rātou iho nō te pohe 'ia
 po'ipo'i a'e. E mau ta'ata rarahi rātou 'e te 'aito mai te
 pūai o te ta'ata nei.

27 'E i muri a'era, 'ua tama'i atu ra rātou nō te ārea e
 toru hora te maoro, 'e 'ua matapōirihia rātou nō te
 rahi o te toto i pau i te tahe.

28 'E i muri a'era, i te roa'ara'a i te mau ta'ata o
 Korianetumera te pūai e ti'a ai ia rātou 'ia haere, 'e
 'ua fātata ho'i rātou i te horo nō te pāruru i tō rātou
 iho ora, inaha rā, 'ua ti'a mai ra Siza 'e tōna ra mau
 ta'ata i ni'a, 'e 'ua tapu ihora 'oia i roto i tōna riri
 'ū'ana ē e taparahi 'oia ia Korianetumera, 'e 'aore rā e
 pohe roa 'oia i te 'o'e.

29 Nō reira, 'ua a'ua'u 'oia ia rātou, 'e 'ia po'ipo'i
 a'era, 'ua ro'ohia ihora rātou iāna ; 'e 'ua tama'i
 fa'ahou ihora rātou i te 'o'e. 'E i muri a'era, 'ia pau
 a'era rātou pā'āto'a i te 'o'e, maori rā 'o
 Korianetumera rāua 'o Siza ana'e, 'e inaha, 'ua
 matapōirihia 'o Siza nō te pau rahi o te toto i te tahe.

30 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tō Korianetumera
 tūru'ira'a i ni'a i tāna 'o'e 'ia maha ri'i te rohirohi, 'ua
 tāpū fa'ata'a 'ē ihora 'oia i te upo'o o Siza.

31 'E i muri a'era, i muri iho i tōna tāpū-fa'ata'a-'ē-
 ra'a i te upo'o o Siza, 'ua ti'a ri'i a'era Siza i ni'a i tōna
 nā rima 'e 'ua topa ihora ; 'e i muri iho i tōna
 tāmatara'a 'ia roa'a te aho, 'ua pohe ihora 'oia.

32 'E i muri a'era, 'ua ma'iri ihora Korianetumera i
 raro i te repo, 'e 'ua riro ihora 'oia mai te mea ra ē,
 'aore tōna e ora.

33 'E 'ua parau mai ra te Fatu ia Etera, 'e 'ua nā 'ō mai
 ra iāna : 'A haere atu. 'E 'ua haere atu ra 'oia 'e 'ua 'ite
 a'era 'oia ē, 'ua tupu mau tā te Fatu ra mau parau ; 'e
 'ua fa'aoti a'era 'oia i tāna ra pāpa'a parau ; ('e 'aita
 vau i pāpa'i i te hō'ē a'e tufa'a nō te hānerera'a) 'e 'ua
 hunā ihora 'oia i te reira i te vāhi e 'itehia ai e te mau
 ta'ata o Limehi ra.

And when the night came there were thirty and
 two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of
 the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and
 prepared for death on the morrow. And they were
 large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space
 of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of
 blood.

And it came to pass that when the men of
 Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that
 they could walk, they were about to flee for their
 lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and
 he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr
 or he would perish by the sword.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the mor-
 row he did overtake them; and they fought again
 with the sword. And it came to pass that when they
 had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr
 and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of
 blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had
 leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he
 smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off
 the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands
 and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath,
 he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the
 earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto
 him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that
 the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he
 finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have
 not written) and he hid them in a manner that the
 people of Limhi did find them.

34 I teienei, teie te mau parau hope'a i pāpa'ihia e Etera : Mai te mea noa atu ē tē hina'aro ra te Fatu 'ia fa'ahuru-'ē-hia vau, 'e 'aore rā tē hina'aro ra 'oia 'ia pohe au i te tino nei, 'aita e pe'ape'a nō te reira, 'ia fa'aorahia ra vau i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ra. 'Āmene.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

Te Buka a Moroni

Moroni 1

- 1 I teienei, 'ia oti tā'u, 'o Moroni, ha'apotorā'a i te 'ā'amu o te mau ta'ata o Iareda, 'ua mana'o ihora vau 'eiaha paha vau e pāpa'i fa'ahou atu ā i te parau, 'āre'a rā 'aita ā vau i pohe atu ra ; 'e 'aita ho'i au i haere atu e fa'a'ite atu iā'u i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'o te taparahi mai rātou iā'u.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, e mea ri'ari'a rahi tā rātou mau 'arora'a i rotopū ia rātou iho ; 'e nō tō rātou 'ino'ino rahi 'ua taparahi rātou i te mau 'āti Nephi ato'a 'o tē 'ore e huna i te Mesia.
- 3 'E e'ita roa vau, 'o Moroni, e huna i te Mesia ; nō reira, 'ua hāhaere noa vau i terā vāhi 'e i terā vāhi, nō te pāroru i tō'u iho ora.
- 4 Nō reira, e pāpa'i ā ho'i au i te tahi atu ā mau mea, tei 'ore i 'ōpuahia e au ra ; 'e 'ua mana'o ho'i au ē, e 'ore roa paha vau e pāpa'i fa'ahou ā i te parau ; e pāpa'i rā vau i te tahi fa'ahou mau mea iti noa, penei a'e 'o te faufa'ahia tō'u ra mau taea'e, te mau 'āti Lamana, i te tahi mau mahana i mua nei, mai te au i te hina'aro o te Fatu.

The Book of Moroni

Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

Moroni 2

- 1 Te mau parau a te Mesia, 'o tāna i parau atu i tāna ra mau pipi, te tino hō'ē 'ahuru 'e ma piti 'o tāna i mā'iti, 'a tu'u atu ai 'oia i tōna nā rima i ni'a iho ia rātou ra—
- 2 'E 'ua pi'i atu 'oia i tō rātou mau i'oa, i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē : E ti'aoro atu 'outou i te Metua i tō'u nei i'oa ma te pure 'ū'ana atu iāna ; 'e i muri iho i tō 'outou nā-reira-ra'a, e fāri'i 'outou i te mana, 'e 'o 'oia 'o tā 'outou e tu'u atu i tō 'outou rima i ni'a iho ra, e hōro'a atu ia 'outou i te Vārua Maita'i ; 'e nā roto ho'i i tō'u ra i'oa e hōro'a atu ai 'outou i te reira, 'e 'ua nā reira ato'a ho'i tā'u ra mau 'āpōsetolo.
- 3 I teienei, 'ua parau atu te Mesia i teie mau parau ia rātou i te taime nō tōna fā-mātāmua-ra'a mai ia rātou ; 'e 'aita ho'i te mau ta'ata i fa'aro'o atu i te reira, 'ua fa'aro'o rā te mau pipi i te reira ; 'e 'ua ma'iri mai te Vārua Maita'i i ni'a iho ia rātou e rave rahi 'o tā rātou i tu'u atu i tō rātou rima i ni'a iho.

Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

Moroni 3

- 1 Te huru nō tā te mau pipi, 'o tei pi'ihia 'ei mau peresibutero nō te 'ēkālesia, fa'atōro'ara'a i te mau tahu'a 'e te mau 'orometua—
- 2 I muri iho i tō rātou purera'a atu i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o te Mesia, 'ua tu'u atu ra rātou i tō rātou rima i ni'a iho i te mau ta'ata, 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra :
- 3 Nā roto i te i'oa o Iesu Mesia tē fa'atōro'a nei au ia 'oe 'ei tahu'a, ('e mai te mea e ha'api'i 'oia, tē fa'atōro'a nei au ia 'oe 'ei ha'api'i) nō te a'o atu i te parau nō te tātarahapa 'e te ha'amatarara'a i te mau hara nā roto ia Iesu Mesia, nā roto i te fa'aro'o tāmāu i tōna ra i'oa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a ra. 'Āmene.
- 4 'E 'ua nā reira rātou i te fa'atōro'a i te mau ta'ata 'ei mau tahu'a 'e 'ei mau hapi'i, mai te au i te mau hōro'a 'e te mau pi'ira'a a te Atua nō te ta'ata nei ; 'e 'ua fa'atōro'a rātou ia rātou nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i, i roto ia rātou ra.

Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

Moroni 4

- 1 Te huru ravera'a a te mau peresibutero 'e te mau tahu'a 'ia ha'amaita'i i te 'i'o 'e te toto o te Mesia nā tō te 'ēkālesia ; 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i rātou i te reira mai te au i te mau fa'auera'a a te Mesia ; nō reira 'ua 'ite mātou ē 'o te huru mau ia ; 'e 'ua ha'amaita'i te peresibutero 'e te tahu'a i te reira—
- 2 'E 'ua tu'u rātou i tō rātou turi i raro 'e tō te 'ēkālesia ato'a ho'i, 'e 'ua pure atu ra i te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o te Mesia i te nā-'ō-ra'a atu ē :
- 3 E te Atua, te Metua mure 'ore, tē ani atu nei mātou ia 'oe nā roto i te i'oa o tō Tamaiti, 'o Iesu Mesia, e ha'amaita'i mai 'e e ha'amo'a mai i teie nei pāne nā te mau vārua o te feiā ato'a 'o tē rave mai nei, 'ia 'amu rātou i te reira ma te ha'amana'o i te tino o tō Tamaiti, 'e 'ia fa'a'ite rātou ia 'oe, e te Atua, te Metua mure 'ore, e ti'a ia rātou i te rave i te i'oa o tō Tamaiti i ni'a iho ia rātou, 'e i te ha'amana'o ā iāna ē a muri noa atu, ma te ha'apa'o maita'i i tāna mau fa'aue tāna i hōro'a mai ia rātou ra ; 'ia vai noa tōna Vārua i roto ia rātou ē a muri noa atu. 'Āmene.

Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moroni 5

- 1 Te huru nō te ha'amaita'ira'a i te uaina—Inaha, 'ua rave rātou i te au'a 'e 'ua nā 'ō atu ra :
- 2 E te Atua, te Metua mure 'ore, tē ani atu nei mātou ia 'oe nā roto i te i'oa o tō Tamaiti, 'o Iesu Mesia, e ha'amaita'i mai 'e e ha'amo'a mai i teie nei uaina nā te mau vārua o te feiā ato'a 'o tē inu mai nei, 'ia inu rātou i te reira ma te ha'amana'o i te toto o tō Tamaiti i ha'amani'ihia nō rātou ra ; 'ia fa'a'ite rātou ia 'oe, e te Atua, te Metua mure 'ore, e ha'amana'o ā rātou iāna ē a muri noa atu, 'ia vai noa tōna Vārua i roto ia rātou. 'Āmene.

Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moroni 6

- 1 'E i teieni, e parau atu vau nō ni'a i te bāpetizora'a. Inaha, 'ua bāpetizohia te mau peresibutero, te mau tahu'a, 'e te mau ha'api'i ; 'e 'aore roa rātou i bāpetizohia maori rā 'ua fa'a'ite mai rātou i te hotu au e ti'amā ai rātou nō te fāri'i i te reira.
- 2 'Aita ato'a ho'i rātou i fāri'i i te ta'ata 'ia bāpetizohia, maori rā 'ua haere mai rātou ma te 'ā'au 'oto 'e te vārua tātarahapa, ma te fa'a'ite pāpū mai i te 'ēkālesia ē, 'ua tātarahapa mau rātou i tā rātou mau hara ato'a.
- 3 'E 'aita ato'a te ta'ata i fāri'ihia 'ia bāpetizohia, maori rā 'ua rave rātou i te 'i'oa o te Mesia i ni'a iho ia rātou, ma te 'ōpuara'a pāpū ē, e tāvini rātou iāna ē tae noa atu i te hope'a.
- 4 'E i muri iho i tō rātou bāpetizora'ahia, 'e te fa'aitoitōra'ahia 'e te tāmāra'ahia nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i, 'ua tai'ohia rātou i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te 'ēkālesia a te Mesia ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia tō rātou mau i'oa, 'ia ha'amana'ohia 'e 'ia fa'a'amuhia rātou i te parau maita'i a te Atua, nō te tāpe'a ia rātou i ni'a i te 'ē'a ti'a, 'e nō te fa'aitoitō ia rātou 'ia pure tāmāu noa, ma te ti'aturi noa i te mau maita'i rahi o te Mesia, 'oia ho'i te tumu 'e te fa'aotira'a nō tō rātou fa'aro'o.
- 5 'E 'ua ha'aputupu pinepine tō te 'ēkālesia nō te ha'apae i te mā'a 'e nō te pure, 'e nō te paraparau i te tahi 'e i te tahi nō ni'a i te maita'i o tō rātou ra mau vārua.
- 6 'E 'ua ha'aputupu pinepine rātou nō te rave i te pāne 'e te uaina, 'ei ha'amana'ora'a i te Fatu ra ia Iesu.
- 7 'E 'ua ha'apa'o māite rātou 'ia 'ore te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'ia vai i rotopū ia rātou ; 'e 'o 'oia 'o tei 'itehia i te ravera'a i te 'ohipa 'ī'ino 'e tei fa'ahapahia mai ho'i e nā 'ite to'otoru nō te 'ēkālesia i mua i te aro o te mau peresibutero ra ; 'e 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia fā'i ho'i i te hara, 'ua paraihia ia tō rātou mau i'oa, 'e 'aita atu ra rātou i tai'ohia mai i rotopū i te mau ta'ata o te Mesia ra.
- 8 'Āre'a rā mai te mea ē 'ua tātarahapa pinepine rātou 'e 'ua tītau i te fa'a'orera'a hara, ma te hina'aro mau, 'ua fa'a'orehia ia te hara.

Moroni 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

9 'E 'ua fa'aterehia tā rātou mau purera'a e te 'ēkālesia mai te au i te mau fa'aurura'a a te Vārua, 'e nā roto ho'i i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i ra ; inaha 'ia arata'ihia ho'i rātou e te mana o te Vārua Maita'i ra 'ia a'o, 'e 'ia fa'aitoito, 'e 'ia pure, 'e 'ia ani, 'e 'ia hīmene, 'ua nā-reira-hia ĩa.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

Moroni 7

- 1 'E i teienei, e pāpa'i au, 'o Moroni, i te tahi mau parau ri'i a tō'u metua tāne ra 'o Moromona, 'o tāna i parau nō ni'a i te fa'aro'o, te ti'aturi, 'e te here ; i parau mai na ho'i 'oia mai teie te huru i te mau ta'ata, 'a ha'api'i mai ai 'oia ia rātou i roto i te sunago, 'o tā rātou i patu 'ei vāhi ha'amorira'a.
- 2 'E i teienei, tē parau atu nei au 'o Moromona ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e here ; 'e maoti te maita'i o te Atua te Metua, 'e tō tātou Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia, 'e tōna ra hina'aro mo'a, nō te hōro'a o tāna pi'ira'a i fa'atae mai iā'u nei, i fa'ati'ahia ai au 'ia a'o atu ia 'outou i teie nei taime.
- 3 Nō reira, e a'o atu vau ia 'outou tō roto i te 'ēkālesia, 'outou te mau ta'ata i pe'e atu i te Mesia ma te hau, 'e tei roa'a ia 'outou te ti'aturira'a tano nō te tomo atu i roto i te fa'aeara'a o te Fatu, mai teie nei atu taime ē tae roa atu ai 'ua fa'aea 'outou i pīha'i iho iāna i te ao ra.
- 4 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, tē parau nei au i teie mau mea nō ni'a ia 'outou nō te mea e mea hau tō 'outou haerera'a i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 5 Tē ha'amana'o nei ho'i au i te parau a te Atua 'o tē nā 'ō mai ra ē, e 'ite 'outou ia rātou nā roto i tā rātou mau 'ohipa ; 'e 'ia maita'i tā rātou ra mau 'ohipa, 'ua maita'i ato'a iā rātou.
- 6 Inaha ho'i, i nā 'ō na ho'i te Atua ē, e 'ore roa e ti'a i te hō'ē ta'ata 'ino 'ia rave i te mea maita'i ; 'ia hōpoi mai ho'i 'oia i te tao'a hōro'a noa ra, 'e 'ia pure atu ho'i 'oia i te Atua ma te mana'o 'ore ra, e 'ore roa iā e faufa'ahia i te hō'ē vāhi iti a'e.
- 7 Inaha ho'i, 'aita iā te reira i fa'arirohia 'ei mea parauti'a nāna ra.
- 8 Inaha ho'i, 'ia hōro'a mai te ta'ata 'ino i te hō'ē tao'a hōro'a ra, 'ua nā reira mai iā 'oia ma te nounou ; nō reira 'ua fa'arirohia atu ra iā te reira iāna mai te mea ra ē, 'ua tāpe'a noa 'oia i te tao'a hōro'a ; nō reira 'ua fa'arirohia atu ra iā taua ta'ata ra 'ei mea 'ino i mua i te Atua.

Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

- 9 'E 'oia ato'a ia 'ua fa'arirohia te reira 'ei mea 'ino i te ta'ata mai te mea 'ua pure 'oia ma te hina'aro 'ore i roto i tōna 'ā'au ; 'oia ia, 'aore ato'a ia 'oia e faufa'ahia i te reira ; 'e 'aita ho'i te Atua e 'ite i te ta'ata mai te reira te huru.
- 10 Nō reira, e'ita e ti'a i te ta'ata 'ino 'ia rave i te mea maita'i ; e 'ore ato'a 'oia e hōro'a i te tao'a hōro'a maita'i.
- 11 Inaha ho'i, e'ita e ti'a i te pape piha'a maramara 'ia hōro'a mai i te pape maita'i ; 'aita ato'a ho'i e ti'a i te pape piha'a maita'i 'ia hōro'a mai i te pape maramara ; nō reira, e'ita e ti'a i te ta'ata tāvini i te diabolō 'ia pe'e mai i te Mesia ; 'e mai te mea e pe'e mai 'oia i te Mesia, 'aita ia e ti'a iāna 'ia riro 'ei tāvini nō te diabolō.
- 12 Nō reira, nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ; 'e te mau mea 'ino ra, nō 'ō mai ia i te diabolō ra ; 'e e 'enemi ho'i te diabolō i te Atua, 'e tē tama'i tāmau noa mai ra ia 'oia iāna, 'e tē tītau ra ia 'e tē fa'aitoito ra ia 'ia rave i te hara, 'e 'ia rave tāmau noa ato'a i te mea 'ino.
- 13 Inaha rā, te mau mea nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra, tē tītau ra ia 'e tē fa'aitoito ra ia 'ia rave tāmau noa i te mea maita'i ; nō reira, te mau mea ato'a 'o tē tītau mai 'e 'o tē fa'aitoito mai 'ia rave i te maita'i, 'e 'ia here i te Atua, 'e 'ia tāvini iāna, e mea fa'auruhia ia e te Atua.
- 14 Nō reira, 'a ara māite, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia mana'o ē nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra te mea 'ino, 'e 'ia 'ore ho'i 'outou 'ia mana'o i te mea maita'i 'e te mea nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra mai te mea ra ē nō 'ō mai ia i te diabolō ra.
- 15 Inaha ho'i, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ua hōro'ahia mai ia 'outou te mana 'ia ha'avā, 'ia ti'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'ata'a 'ē i te maita'i 'e te 'ino ; 'e e mea pāpū roa ho'i te rāve'a nō te ha'avā, 'ia 'ite pāpū maita'i 'outou ē, e au ia i te huru nō te fa'ata'ara'a i te māramarama mahana 'e te pō pōiri ra.
- 16 Inaha ho'i, 'ua hōro'ahia mai te Vārua o te Mesia i te ta'ata tāta'itahi 'ia ti'a iāna 'ia fa'ata'a 'ē i te maita'i 'e te 'ino ; nō reira, tē fa'a'ite atu nei au ia 'outou i te rāve'a nō te fa'ata'a i te reira ; te mau mea ato'a 'o tē tītau 'ia rave i te maita'i 'e 'o tē fa'aitoito ho'i 'ia ti'aturi i te Mesia, 'ua fa'ataehia mai ia e te mana 'e te hōro'ara'a a te Mesia ; nō reira e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia 'ite pāpū roa ē, nō 'ō mai ia i te Atua ra.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

- 17 'Āre'a rā te mau mea ato'a 'o tē tītau i te ta'ata 'ia rave i te mea 'ino, 'e 'ia 'ore e tī'aturi i te Mesia, 'e 'ia huna iāna, 'e 'ia 'ore e tāvini i te Atua, 'ei reira iā 'outou e 'ite pāpū roa ai ē, nā te diabolō te reira ; 'ua nā reira ho'i te diabolō i te rave i te 'ohipa, 'aita roa ho'i 'oia i tītau 'ia rave te hō'ē ta'ata i te maita'i, 'aita, 'e 'aita roa atu ; 'aita ato'a tāna ra mau melahi ; 'aita ato'a rātou 'o tei auraro atu iāna.
- 18 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, nō te mea tē 'ite nei 'outou i te māmarama, 'oia ho'i te māmarama o te Mesia, e tī'a ai ia 'outou 'ia ha'avā atu, 'a ha'apa'o maita'i iā 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia ha'avā hape atu ; nō te mea o taua ha'avāra'a 'o tā 'outou e ha'avā atu e ha'avā-ato'a-hia mai ai 'outou i te reira.
- 19 Nō reira, tē ani atu nei au ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'ia tītau māite 'outou i te māmarama o te Mesia ma te tu'utu'u 'ore, 'ia tī'a ia 'outou 'ia fa'ata'a 'ē i te maita'i 'e te 'ino ; 'e mai te mea e tāpe'a mai 'outou i te mau mea maitata'i ato'a, ma te fa'ahapa 'ore atu i te reira, 'ua riro mau iā 'outou 'ei tamari'i nā te Mesia ra.
- 20 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e, e nāhea ho'i e tī'a ai ia 'outou 'ia tāpe'a i te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ra ?
- 21 'E i teienei e haere mai au i ni'a i taua fa'aro'o ra 'o tā'u i parau ē e paraparau atu vau ; 'e e fa'a'ite atu vau ia 'outou i te rāve'a e tī'a ai ia 'outou 'ia tāpe'a i te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ra.
- 22 Inaha ho'i, 'ua 'itea i te Atua te mau mea ato'a, 'e i vai na ho'i 'oia mai te tau mure 'ore ē tae atu i te tau mure 'ore, inaha, 'ua tonō mai 'oia i tāna ra mau melahi nō te tauturu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, nō te fa'a'ite pāpū mai i te taera'a mai o te Mesia ra ; 'e nā roto i te Mesia e tae mai ai te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ra.
- 23 'E 'ua fa'a'ite ato'a mai te Atua i te mau peropheta, nā roto i tōna ihora vaha ē, e tae mai te Mesia.
- 24 'E inaha, e mau rāve'a rau i fa'a'ite mai ai 'oia i te mau mea maitata'i i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ra, nō 'ō mai iā i te Mesia ra ; 'āhiri ē 'aita ra 'ua hi'a iā te ta'ata nei, 'e 'aita iā e tī'a i te hō'ē mea maita'i 'ia tae mai iā rātou ra.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

- 25 Nō reira, nā roto i te utuutura'a a te mau melahi ra, 'e nā roto i te mau parau ato'a nō roto mai i te vaha o te Atua ra, i ha'amata ai te ta'ata nei i te fa'atupu i te fa'aro'o i te Mesia ; 'e nā roto ho'i i te fa'aro'o i ha'apā ai rātou i te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ra ; 'e i nā-reira-hia ia ē tae noa atu i te taera'a mai o te Mesia ra.
- 26 'E i muri a'e i tōna ra taera'a mai, 'ua fa'aora-ato'a-hia te ta'ata nā roto i te fa'aro'o i tōna ra i'oa ; 'e nā roto i te fa'aro'o i riro ai rātou 'ei mau tamaiti nā te Atua. 'E mai te Mesia e ora ra, 'ua parau mai 'oia i teie mau parau i tō tātou ra mau metua, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē : 'E te mau mea ato'a tā 'outou e ani ma te fa'aro'o i te Metua nā roto i tō'u ra i'oa, 'o tei riro 'ei mea maita'i, ma te ti'aturi e roa'a te reira ia 'outou, inaha, e nā-reira-hia ia ia 'outou na.
- 27 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua fa'a'orehia ānei te mau semeio nō te mea 'ua reva atu te Mesia i ni'a i te ra'i, 'e 'ua pārahi i raro i te rima 'atau o te Atua, nō te tītau atu i te Metua ra i tōna mau ti'ara'a nō te aroha 'o tē vai ra i roto iāna nō te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ?
- 28 'Ua pāhono mai ho'i 'oia i tei tītauhia e te ture ra ; 'e tē tītau nei 'oia ia rātou pā'āto'a tei ti'aturi iāna ra ; 'e 'o rātou 'o tei ti'aturi iāna ra, e mau ia rātou i te mau mea maitata'i ato'a ra ; nō reira 'ua riro ia 'oia 'ei ti'a nō te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ; 'e tē pārahi ra 'oia i roto i te mau ra'i ē a muri noa atu.
- 29 'E nō te mea i rave na 'oia i te reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ua fa'a'orehia ānei ia te mau semeio ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei ua ia 'outou na ē, 'Aita roa ; 'aita ato'a ho'i te mau melahi i fa'aea i te utuutu mai i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.
- 30 Inaha ho'i, tei raro a'e rātou iāna, nō te utuutu mai te au i te parau nō tāna ra fa'auera'a, ma te fa'a'ite mai ia rātou iho i te feiā fa'aro'o pūai 'e te mana'o 'āueue 'ore i roto i te mau mea ato'a nō te huru paieti ra.
- 31 'E te tōro'a o tā rātou tāvinira'a 'o te pi'ira'a ia i te mau ta'ata 'ia tātarahapa, 'e 'o te fa'atupura'a 'e te ravera'a ho'i i te 'ohipa nō te mau fafaura'a a te Metua, 'o tāna i fafau mai i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, nō te fa'a'ineine i te 'ē'a i rotopū i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, nā roto i te fa'a'itera'a atu i te parau a te Mesia i te mau fāri'i mā'itihia a te Fatu, 'ia ti'a ia rātou 'ia fa'a'ite pāpū nō ni'a iāna.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

32 'E nā roto i te reira, 'ua fa'aîneine te Fatu te Atua i te rāve'a e tupu ai te fa'aro'o i te Mesia i roto i te toe'a o te mau ta'ata, 'e roa'a ai tō te Vārua Maita'i vāhi i roto i tō rātou 'ā'au, mai te au i te mana nō te reira ; 'e nā reira ho'i te Metua i te fa'atupu i te mau fafaura'a o tāna i fafau atu i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

33 'E i parau na ho'i te Mesia ē : Mai te mea e fa'aro'o tō 'outou iā'u nei, e roa'a ia ia 'outou te mana nō te rave i te mau mea ato'a tei au iā'u nei.

34 'E i parau na ho'i 'oia ē : 'A tātarahapa 'outou pā'āto'a e tō te mau hope'a o te fenua nei, 'e 'a haere mai iā'u nei, 'e 'ia bāpetizohia i tō'u ra i'oa, 'e 'ia ti'aturi mai iā'u nei, 'ia fa'aorahia 'outou.

35 'E i teienei, e tō'u mau taea'e here, mai te mea ē 'o teie iho ā te huru, 'oia ho'i e parau mau teie mau mea 'o tā'u i parau atu ia 'outou na, 'e e fa'a'ite atu ho'i te Atua ia 'outou na, ma te mana 'e te hanahana rahi i te mahana hope'a ra ē, e parau mau iho ā te reira, 'e mai te mea e parau mau te reira, 'ua hope ānei ia te mahana nō te mau semeio ?

36 'E 'aore rā 'ua fa'aea ānei te mau melahi i te fā mai i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei ? 'E 'aore rā 'ua tāpe'a mai ānei 'oia i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i mai ia rātou ra ? 'E 'aore rā e nā reira ānei 'oia 'a vai noa ai te tau, 'e 'aore rā 'a mau ai te fenua, 'e 'aore rā 'a pārahi noa ai te hō'ē a'e ta'ata i ni'a i te fenua 'ia fa'aorahia 'oia ?

37 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'Aita roa ; nō te fa'aro'o ho'i i tupu ai te mau semeio ; 'e nō te fa'aro'o ho'i i fā mai ai te mau melahi 'e i utuutu mai ai i te ta'ata nei ; nō reira, 'āhiri 'ua hope teie nei mau mea, 'auē ho'i ia te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, nō te ti'aturi 'ore ho'i ia te reira, 'e 'ua faufa'a 'ore te mau mea ato'a.

38 'Aore roa ho'i ta'ata e fa'aorahia, 'ia au i te mau parau a te Mesia, maori rā 'ia ti'aturi rātou i tōna ra i'oa ; nō reira, 'āhiri ē 'ua 'ore teie mau mea, 'ua 'ore ato'a ia te fa'aro'o ; 'e 'ua riro tō te ta'ata nei huru 'ei mea ahoaho, 'e e au ra ho'i ia ē, 'aita te 'ohipa nō te fa'aorara'a i ravehia.

39 Inaha rā, e tō'u mau taea'e here, tē parau nei au i teie mau mea maita'i a'e nō ni'a ia 'outou, nō te mea tē 'ite nei au ē, e fa'aro'o tō 'outou i te Mesia nō tō 'outou marū ; 'e 'āhiri ho'i 'aita tō 'outou e fa'aro'o iāna, 'aita ia 'outou e au 'ia tai'ohia mai i rotopū i te mau ta'ata nō tāna ra 'ēkālesia.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

40 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e tō'u mau taea'e here, e parau atu vau ia 'outou nō ni'a i te ti'aturi. E nāhea ho'i e ti'a ai ia 'outou 'ia fāri'i i te fa'aro'o, maori rā 'ia vai tō 'outou ti'aturira'a ?

41 'E e aha ia tā 'outou e ti'aturi atu ? Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou, 'ia vai tō 'outou ti'aturira'a i te tāra'ehara a te Mesia 'e i te mana nō tōna ti'afa'ahoura'a, 'ia fa'ati'ahia nō te fāri'i i te ora mure 'ore, 'e te tumu nō te reira nō tō 'outou ia fa'aro'o iāna mai te au i tei parauhia mai ra.

42 Nō reira, mai te mea e fa'aro'o tō te ta'ata, 'ia vai ato'a ia tōna ti'aturira'a ; 'ia 'ore te fa'aro'o 'aita ato'a ia e ti'aturira'a.

43 'E teie fa'ahou ā, inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou na ē, 'aita roa e ti'a iāna 'ia fāri'i i te fa'aro'o 'e te ti'aturira'a, maori rā 'ia vai te marū 'e te 'ā'au ha'eha'a i roto iāna.

44 'Āhiri ē 'aita, 'ua riro ia tōna fa'aro'o 'e tōna ti'aturira'a 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore, 'e 'aore roa ho'i ia te ta'ata e 'itehia i mua i te Atua, maori rā te feiā marū 'e te 'ā'au ha'eha'a ; 'e mai te mea tē vai ra te ta'ata marū 'e te 'ā'au ha'eha'a, 'o tē fā'i nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i ē, 'o Iesu te Mesia, 'ia vai ato'a ia te aroha mau i roto iāna e ti'a ai ; 'e mai te mea 'aita te aroha mau i roto iāna e mea faufa'a 'ore ia 'oia ; nō reira e mea ti'a roa 'ia vai te aroha mau i roto iāna.

45 E fa'a'oroma'ira'a roa tō te aroha mau 'e te hāmani maita'i, e 'ore roa e fe'i'i, e 'ore ho'i e fa'arahi, e'ita e 'imi i te maita'i nōna iho, e'ita e riri vave, e'ita e mana'o 'ino, e'ita e 'oa'oa i te mau 'ohipa 'ino, e 'oa'oa rā i te parau mau, e mea fa'ahapa 'ore i te mau mea ato'a, e ti'aturi i te mau mea ato'a, e tīa'i i te mau mea ato'a, e fa'a'oroma'i i te mau mea ato'a.

46 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, mai te mea 'aita te aroha mau i roto ia 'outou na, 'ua riro ia 'outou 'ei mea faufa'a 'ore, nō te mea e 'ore roa te aroha mau e mou. Nō reira, 'a mau māite i te aroha mau, 'o tei hau i te mau mea ato'a ra, e mou ho'i te mau mea ato'a ra—

47 Te aroha mau rā, 'o te here ateate ia o te Mesia, 'e e vai noa te reira ē a muri noa atu ; 'e 'o 'oia tē vai ra te reira 'ia tae i te mahana hope'a ra, e maita'i ia tōna.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

48 Nō reira, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'a pure atu i te Metua ma te pūai hope roa o te 'ā'au 'ia 'i 'outou i teie nei here, 'o tāna i hōro'a mai i te mau ta'ata ato'a 'o tei pe'e mau i tāna Tamaiti ia Iesu Mesia, 'ia riro 'outou 'ei mau tamari'i nā te Atua ; 'e 'ia fā mai 'oia ra, e riro ia tātou mai iāna ra te huru ; inaha e 'ite ho'i tātou iāna i tōna ra huru mau ; 'ia vai māite ā teie nei ti'aturira'a i roto ia tātou ; 'ia tāmāhia ho'i tātou ato'a mai iāna i mā ra. 'Āmene.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

Moroni 8

- 1 Te hō'ē 'episetole tei pāpa'ihia e tō'u metua tāne ra 'o Moromona iā'u nei, 'ia Moroni ; 'e 'ua pāpa'ihia te reira iā'u nei i muri noa iho i tō'u pī'ira'ahia nō te 'ohipa tāvinira'a. 'E 'ua nā 'ō mai ra 'oia i te pāpa'ira'a mai iā'u :
- 2 E tā'u tamaiti here, e Moroni, e 'oa'oa rahi tō'u i te mea 'ua ha'amana'o te Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia ia 'oe, 'e 'ua pī'i ho'i ia 'oe nō te tāvini iāna, 'e nō tāna ra 'ohipa mo'a.
- 3 Tē ha'amana'o noa nei au ia 'oe i roto i tā'u ra mau pure, ma te pure tu'utu'u 'ore i te Atua te Metua nā roto i te i'oa o tāna ra Tamaiti Mo'a, 'o Iesu, 'ia ti'a iāna i roto i tōna maita'i fāito 'ore 'e tōna aroha fāito 'ore, 'ia ti'a i ia 'oe nā roto i te fa'aro'o tāmau māite i tōna ra i'oa ē tae noa atu i te hope'a.
- 4 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe nō ni'a i te hō'ē mea i 'oto roa ai au ra ; tē 'oto nei ho'i au nō te mau mārōra'a e tupu i rotopū ia 'outou na.
- 5 'E mai te mea e parau mau tei fa'a'itehia mai iā'u ra, 'ua tupu a'enei ho'i te mau mārōra'a i rotopū ia 'outou nō ni'a i te bāpetizora'a i tā 'outou mau tamari'i rī'i.
- 6 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, tē hina'aro nei au 'ia fa'aitoito noa 'outou, 'e 'ia 'iriti-'ē-hia teie hape rahi mai rotopū atu ia 'outou ; 'e 'o teie ho'i te tumu vau i pāpa'i atu ai i teie nei 'episetole.
- 7 I muri noa iho ho'i i tō'u 'itera'a i teie nei mau mea nō 'ō mai ia 'oe na, 'ua ui atu ra vau i te Fatu nō ni'a i taua mea ra. 'E 'ua tae mai te parau a te Fatu iā'u nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i, i te nā-'ō-ra'a mai ē :
- 8 'A fa'aro'o mai i te mau parau a te Mesia, tō 'oe Tāra'ehara, tō 'oe Fatu 'e tō 'oe Atua. Inaha, 'ua haere mai au i te ao nei, 'eiaha nō te pī'i atu i te feiā parauti'a 'ia tātarahapa, i te feiā hara rā ; e 'ere ho'i te feiā tino maita'i tei hina'aro i te taote, 'o te feiā ma'i rā ; nō reira, e mea hara 'ore te mau tamari'i, 'e 'aita ho'i e ti'a ia rātou 'ia rave i te hara ; nō reira 'ua rave-'ē-hia atu te 'anatemara'a a Adamu mai ni'a atu ia rātou nā roto iā'u nei, 'e 'aita roa tō te reira e mana i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e te ture nō te peritome ra 'ua fa'a'orehia ia nā roto iā'u nei.

Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

- 9 'E i nā reira mai te Vārua Maita'i i te fa'a'ite mai i te parau a te Atua iā'u ; nō reira, e tā'u tamaiti here, tē 'ite nei au ē, 'ua riro tā 'outou bāpetizora'a i te mau tamari'i rī'i 'ei vahavahara'a rahi i mua i te Atua.
- 10 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'o teie ia te mea tā 'outou e ha'api'i—te tātarahapara'a 'e te bāpetizora'a i te feiā 'o tei 'ite i te ha'apa'ora'a 'e 'o tē ti'a 'ia rave i te hara ; 'oia ia, 'a ha'api'i i te mau metua 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia bāpetizohia, 'e 'ia fa'aha'eha'a ia rātou iho mai tā rātou mau tamari'i rī'i e ti'a ai, 'ei reira e fa'aorahia rātou pā'āto'a 'e tā rātou mau tamari'i rī'i.
- 11 'E 'aita ho'i e au te tātarahapara'a i tā rātou mau tamari'i rī'i, 'aita ato'a te bāpetizora'a. Inaha, 'ua ha'apa'ohia te bāpetizora'a nō te tātarahapara'a nō te fa'atupura'a i te mau fa'auera'a nō te ha'amatarara'a hara.
- 12 'Āre'a rā 'ua ora te mau tamari'i rī'i i te Mesia, mai te ha'amatarara'a mai ā o te ao nei ; 'āhiri 'aita ra, 'ua riro ia te Atua 'ei Atua fa'ati'a pae tahi, 'e 'ei Atua tauiu, 'e i te ha'apa'o i te huru o te mau ta'ata ; 'e e hia ho'i rahira'a tamari'i rī'i i pohe 'aore i bāpetizohia !
- 13 Nō reira, 'āhiri 'aita te mau tamari'i rī'i bāpetizo-'ore-hia e fa'aorahia, 'ua haere 'ē nā ia rātou i te hade hope 'ore ra.
- 14 Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ia 'oe, 'o 'oia 'o tē mana'o e mea ti'a i te mau tamari'i rī'i 'ia bāpetizohia, tei roto ia 'oia i te au 'ava'ava 'e i te mau ru'uru'ura'a ho'i nō te mau 'ohipa 'ī'ino ra ; 'e 'aita ho'i te fa'aro'o, te ti'aturi, 'e te aroha mau i roto iāna ; nō reira 'ia tāpū-'ē-hia atu 'oia 'a vai ai taua mana'o ra i roto iāna, 'ia tae ia 'oia i raro i hade e ti'a ai.
- 15 E mea 'ino roa ho'i 'ia mana'o ē, e fa'aora te Atua i te hō'ē tamari'i rī'i nō tōna bāpetizora'ahia, 'e e ha'apohe i te tahi iho nō tōna bāpetizo-ore-ra'a-hia.
- 16 'Auē ho'i rātou 'o tē ha'api'o i te mau 'ē'a o te Fatu mai teie te huru, 'e e pohe ho'i rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa. Inaha, tē parau atu nei au ma te mata'u 'ore, 'e ma te ha'amanara'a ho'i nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra ; 'e 'aore roa ho'i au e mata'u i tā te ta'ata e rave mai iā'u nei ; inaha ho'i e 'īriti 'ē atu te here ti'a mau i te mata'u.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

- 17 'E 'ua 'ī roa vau i te aroha mau, 'o te here mure 'ore ho'i ; nō reira 'ua 'aifāito te mau tamari'i ato'a iā'u nei ; nō reira, 'ua here au i te mau tamari'i ri'i ma te here ti'a mau ; 'e 'ua 'aifāito rātou pā'āto'a 'e e roa'a ia rātou pā'āto'a te fa'aorara'a.
- 18 Tē 'ite nei ho'i au ē, e 'ere te Atua i te Atua ha'apa'o pae tahi, e 'ere ho'i i te ta'ata tauiuu ; e mea tauiuu 'ore rā, mai te tau mure 'ore ato'a i te tau mure 'ore ato'a.
- 19 'Aita roa e ti'a i te mau tamari'i ri'i 'ia tātarahapa ; nō reira, e mea 'ino roa 'ia huna i te mau aroha ti'a mau o te Atua ia rātou, 'ua ora ho'i rātou tā'āto'a iāna nō tōna aroha.
- 20 'E 'o 'oia 'o tē parau mai ē, e mea ti'a i te mau tamari'i ri'i 'ia bāpetizohia, tē huna ra 'ia 'oia i te mau aroha o te Mesia, 'e tē ha'afaufa'a 'ore ho'i ia i tāna tāra'ehara 'e te mana nō tāna ra fa'aorara'a.
- 21 'Auē ho'i te ta'ata mai te reira te huru, 'ua fātata ho'i rātou i roto i te 'ati nō te pohe, nō hade, 'e nō te māuiui hope 'ore. Tē parau nei au ma te mata'u 'ore ; nā te Atua ho'i i fa'aue mai iā'u. 'A fa'aro'o mai i te reira 'e 'a ha'apa'o, 'e 'ia 'ore rā, e fa'ahapahia 'ia 'outou i te reira 'ia tae i te vāhi ha'avāra'a a te Mesia ra.
- 22 Inaha ho'i, 'ua ora te mau tamari'i ri'i ato'a i te Mesia, 'e rātou ato'a tei 'ore i 'ite i te ture. E tae mai ho'i te mana nō te fa'aorara'a i ni'a ia rātou pā'āto'a 'o tei 'ore i fāri'i i te ture ; nō reira, 'o 'oia 'o tei 'ore i fa'ahapahia 'e 'aore rā 'o 'oia tei 'ore i raro a'e i te fa'ahapara'a, 'aita ia e ti'a iāna 'ia tātarahapa ; 'e 'aita ho'i te bāpetizora'a i te mea faufa'a nōna—
- 23 'Ua riro rā 'ei vahavahara'a i mua i te Atua, 'e 'ei hunara'a ho'i i te mau aroha o te Mesia, 'e i te mana nō tōna Vārua Mo'a, 'e 'ua riro 'ei ti'aturira'a ia i te mau 'ohipa pohe.
- 24 Inaha, e ta'u tamaiti, 'aita roa teie nei mea i tano ; inaha te tātarahapara'a nō te feiā ia i raro a'e i te fa'ahapara'a 'e i raro a'e i te 'anatemara'a nō te ture i 'ōfatihia.
- 25 'E te mau hotu mātāmua nō te tātarahapara'a 'o te bāpetizora'a ia ; e tae mai ho'i te bāpetizora'a nā roto i te fa'aro'o e tae atu ai i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a ; 'e nā roto i te ha'apa'ora'a i te mau fa'auera'a e tae mai ai te ha'amatarara'a hara.

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

- 26 'E nā te ha'amatarara'a hara e fa'atupu i te marū 'e te 'ā'au ha'eha'a, 'e nō te marū 'e te 'ā'au ha'eha'a e tae mai ai te Vārua Maita'i, 'o te Fa'aa'o ho'i e fa'a'i mai i te ti'aturi 'e te here ti'a mau ra, 'o te here ho'i e vai noa nā roto i te ha'apa'o maita'i i te pure, ē tae noa atu i te hope'a, 'a pārahi ai te feiā mo'a ato'a i pīha'i iho i te Atua ra.
- 27 Inaha, e ta'u tamaiti, e pāpa'i fa'ahou atu ā vau ia 'oe na 'ia 'ore au e haere vave atu e 'aro i te mau 'āti Lamana. Inaha, te te'ote'o nō teie nei nūna'a, 'oia ho'i te mau 'āti Nephi, 'ua fa'atupu ia i tō rātou pohe, maori rā 'ua tātarahapa rātou.
- 28 'A pure nō rātou, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ia tae mai te 'ā'au tātarahapa ia rātou. Inaha rā, tē huru mata'u nei au 'o te fa'aea te Vārua i te tūtava 'e 'o rātou ; 'e i roto i teie tufa'a nō te fenua tē tūtau ato'a ra rātou 'ia tu'u i raro i te mana ato'a 'e te ha'amanara'a nō 'ō mai i te Atua ra ; 'e tē huna ra rātou i te Vārua Maita'i.
- 29 'E i muri iho i tō rātou pāto'ira'a i te 'ite rahi, e tā'u tamaiti, 'ia pohe vave rātou e ti'a ai, 'ia tupu te mau tohu i parauhia mai e te mau peropheta, 'e te mau parau ato'a ho'i a tō tātou Fa'aora iho.
- 30 'A pārahi, e tā'u tamaiti, ē tae noa atu i te taime e pāpa'i atu ai au ia 'oe na, 'e 'aore rā e fārerei fa'ahou ai ia 'oe. 'Āmene.

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

Moroni 9

- 1 E tā'u tamaiti here, tē pāpa'i fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'oe na, 'ia 'ite 'oe ē, tē ora noa nei ā vau ; tē pāpa'i atu nei rā vau i te mea huru 'oto.
- 2 Inaha ho'i, i 'aro iho nei au i te hō'ē 'arora'a rahi 'e te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e 'aita ho'i mātou i upo'oti'a i ni'a ia rātou ; 'e 'ua ma'iri ho'i 'o Arakeanetusa i te 'o'e, ē tae noa atu ho'i ia Lurama 'e Emerona ; 'oia ia, 'ua pau ato'a tō mātou e rave rahi mau ta'ata maita'i roa.
- 3 'E i teienei, inaha, e tā'u tamaiti, tē mata'u nei au 'o te ha'amou te mau 'āti Lamana i teie nei feiā ; 'e 'aita ho'i rātou e tātarahapa, 'e tē fa'ati'arepu noa nei ho'i Sātane ia rātou 'ia riri i te tahi 'e i te tahi.
- 4 Inaha, tē ha'a tāmāu noa nei au i pīha'i iho ia rātou ; 'e 'ia parau atu vau i te parau a te Atua ia rātou ma te 'ū'ana, 'ua rurutaina ia rātou 'e 'ua riri mai ho'i iā'u nei ; 'e 'ia 'ore au 'ia parau ma te 'ū'ana, 'ua fa'a'eta'eta ia rātou i tō rātou 'ā'au i mua i te reira ; nō reira, tē mata'u nei au 'o te fa'aea te Vārua o te Fatu i te tūtava 'e 'o rātou.
- 5 Nō tō rātou ho'i riri rahi roa, e au atu ra iā'u ē, 'aita tō rātou e mata'u nō te pohe ; 'e 'ua 'ore ato'a tō rātou aroha te tahi i te tahi ; 'e te hia'ai noa ra rātou i te toto 'e te tāho'o.
- 6 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti here, noa atu ā tō rātou 'eta'eta, 'a rave itoito tāua i te 'ohipa ; inaha 'ia fa'aea tāua i te rave i te 'ohipa, e fa'ahapahia ia tāua ; tē vai nei ho'i tā tāua 'ohipa nō te rave 'a pārahi ai tāua i roto i te ti'ahapa 'araea nei, 'ia vī te 'enemi nō te mau parauti'a ato'a ia tāua, 'e 'ia roa'a te fa'aeara'a nō tō tāua vārua i te bāsileia o te Atua ra.
- 7 'E i teienei, tē pāpa'i nei au i te hō'ē parau ri'i nō ni'a i te mau pohe o teie nei mau ta'ata. Mai te au ho'i i te 'ite i roa'a mai iā'u nō 'ō mai ia Amorona ra, inaha, e rave rahi tā te mau 'āti Lamana feiā mau 'āuri, 'o tā rātou i haru mai i te pare nō Seriza ra ; 'e tē vai ra te mau tāne, 'e te mau vahine, 'e te mau tamari'i.

Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

8 'E te mau tāne a teie mau vahine, 'e te mau metua tāne o teie mau tamari'i, 'ua taparahihia ia e rātou ; 'e 'ua fa'a'amu rātou i te mau vahine i te 'i'o o tā rātou mau tāne, 'e te mau tamari'i i te 'i'o o tō rātou mau metua tāne ; 'e 'aita rea e pape tā rātou i hōro'a atu ia rātou.

9 'E noa atu ā teie mau 'ohipa 'ino rahi a te mau 'āti Lamana, 'aita ia te reira i hau atu i tā tō tātou mau ta'ata i Morianetuma ra. Inaha ho'i, e rave rahi tamāhine a te mau 'āti Lamana tā rātou i rave atu 'ei feiā mau 'āuri ; 'e i muri iho i tō rātou fa'a'erera'a i te mea faufa'a rahi roa atu i roto i te mau mea ato'a, 'oia ho'i, te vi'ivi'i 'ore 'e te orara'a mā—

10 'E i muri iho i tō rātou ravera'a i teie mau mea, 'ua taparahi rātou i teie mau tamāhine ma te 'ino rahi, ma te ha'amāmae i tō rātou mau tino ē tae noa atu 'ua pohe roa ; 'e i muri iho i tō rātou ravera'a i te reira, 'ua 'amu rātou i tō rātou 'i'o mai te au i te mau 'ānimara 'ōviri, nō te 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au ; 'e 'ua rave rātou i te reira 'ei fa'a'itera'a i tō rātou mata'u 'ore.

11 E tā'u tamaiti here ē, e nāhea ho'i te feiā mai teie te huru, 'o tē vai 'ētene noa—

12 ('E e mea iti roa ho'i te matahiti i ma'iri a'enei, 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā māramarama 'e te au maita'i)

13 'Āre'a rā, e tā'u tamaiti ē, e nāhea ho'i te feiā mai teie te huru, tei roto tō rātou 'oa'oa i te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i rahi—

14 Nāhea ho'i e ti'a ai ia tātou 'ia mana'o ē, e tāpe'a te Atua i tōna rima ha'avā ia tātou ?

15 Inaha, tē pi'i noa nei tō'u 'ā'au ē : E 'ati tō teie nei feiā. 'A haere mai ma te fa'atae mai i te ha'avāra'a, e te Atua, 'e 'a huna i tā rātou mau hara, 'e te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino, 'e te mau 'ohipa vi'ivi'i i mua i tō 'oe nā aro !

16 'E teie fa'ahou ā, e tā'u tamaiti, tē vai nei e rave rahi vahine 'ivi 'e tā rātou mau tamāhine 'o tē fa'aea nei i Seriza ; e taua tufa'a mā'a ra 'aore i 'āfa'ihia atu te mau 'āti Lamana ra, inaha, 'ua 'āfa'ihia atu ia e te nu'u fa'ehau o Zenephi ra ; 'e 'ua vaihohia rātou 'ia 'ōvere haere nō te 'imi i te mā'a ; 'e 'ua matapōirihia te mau vahine rū'au e rave rahi nā te pae 'ē'a 'e 'ua pohe roa.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

- 17 'E te nu'u fa'ehau iā'u nei ra e mea paruparu ia ; 'e te mau nu'u fa'ehau o te mau 'āti Lamana ra tei rōpū ia ia Seriza 'e iā'u nei ; 'e te mau ta'ata e rave rahi tei horo atu i roto i te nu'u fa'ehau a Aarona ra, 'ua pohe ia rātou i te hāmani-'ino-ra'a 'ōviri a te mau 'āti Lamana.
- 18 'Auē ho'i te 'ino rahi o tō'u nei mau ta'ata ē ! 'Aita tō rātou e fa'anahora'a 'e 'aita ato'a e aroha. Inaha, e ta'ata noa vau, 'e e pūai ta'ata noa ho'i tō'u nei, 'e 'aita roa ho'i e ti'a iā'u 'ia tu'u atu i tā'u mau fa'auera'a.
- 19 'E 'ua pūai roa rātou i roto i tā rātou 'ohipa pi'o ; 'e 'ua riro rātou 'ei feiā 'ōviri, 'e 'aita rātou e fa'aherehere i te ta'ata, 'aita i te feiā rū'au, 'aita ato'a i te feiā 'āpī ; 'e 'ua 'oa'oa rātou 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a, maori rā i te mea maita'i ; 'e te 'ati i fāri'ihia e tā mātou mau vahine 'e tā mātou mau tamari'i i ni'a i te tā'āto'ara'a nō teie nei fenua, 'ua hau roa ia i te mau mea ato'a ra ; 'oia ia, 'aita roa e ti'a i te vaha 'ia fa'a'ite, 'aita ato'a e ti'a 'ia pāpa'ihia.
- 20 'E i teienei, e tā'u tamaiti, 'aita vau i hina'aro 'ia fa'ahiti fa'ahou i teie huru 'ohipa 'ino rahi. Inaha, 'ua 'ite 'oe i te 'ohipa 'ī'ino a teie nei feiā ; 'ua 'ite ho'i 'oe ē, 'aore a rātou e parauti'a, 'aita ato'a e mana'o aroha ; 'e 'ua hau atu tā rātou 'ohipa 'ī'ino i tā te mau 'āti Lamana ra.
- 21 Inaha, e tā'u tamaiti, e'ita e ti'a iā'u 'ia parau fa'ahiahia ia rātou i mua i te Atua, 'o te tā'iri mai 'oia iā'u nei.
- 22 Inaha rā, e tā'u tamaiti, tē parau fa'ahiahia nei au ia 'oe i mua i te Atua, 'e tē ti'aturi nei au i te Mesia ē, e fa'aorahia 'oe ; 'e tē pure nei au i te Atua 'ia fa'aherehere 'oia ia 'oe, 'ia 'ite 'oe i te fāriura'a mai o tōna ra mau ta'ata iāna ra, 'e 'aore rā i te tā'āto'ara'a nō tō rātou ha'amoura'a ; inaha 'ua 'ite ho'i au ē, e pohe rātou 'ia 'ore rātou 'ia tātarahapa 'e 'ia fāriu mai iāna.
- 23 'E 'ia pohe rātou ra, e riro ia mai tō te mau 'āti Iareda ra te huru, nō te hina'aro 'eta'eta o tō rātou 'ā'au, 'e te tītura'a 'ia ha'amani'i i te toto 'e 'ia tāho'o.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

24 'E mai te mea e pohe rātou ra, tē 'ite nei tāua ē, e rave rahi tō tāua mau taea'e i tāiva 'ē atu nō te 'āmui atu i te mau 'āti Lamana, 'e e rave rahi fa'ahou ā te tāiva 'ē atu nō te 'āmui atu ia rātou ra ; nō reira, 'a pāpa'i 'oe i te tahi mau parau ri'i, mai te mea e ora noa 'oe 'e e pohe au ma te 'ite 'ore atu ia 'oe ; 'āre'a rā tē ti'aturi nei au ē, e 'ite vave au ia 'oe na ; 'e tei iā'u nei te tahi mau pāpa'a parau mo'a 'o tā'u e hina'aro 'ia hōro'a atu ia 'oe na.

25 E tā'u tamaiti, 'a ha'apa'o maita'i i tā te Mesia ra ; 'e 'eiaha e vaiiho i te mau mea tā'u i pāpa'i atu 'ia fa'atupu i tō 'oe 'oto, nō te 'ume ia 'oe i raro i te pohe ; 'ia fa'ateitei rā te Mesia ia 'oe i ni'a, 'e 'ia vai noa te mana'ona'ora'a i tōna mau mamae, 'e tōna pohera'a, 'e tāna fa'a'itera'a mai i tōna tino i tō tātou mau metua, 'e tōna aroha 'e te fa'a'oroma'ira'a roa, 'e te ti'aturira'a i tōna hanahana 'e te ora mure 'ore, i roto i tō 'oe ferurira'a ē a muri noa atu.

26 'Ei ia 'oe ho'i te maita'i o te Atua te Metua, 'e tei roto ho'i tōna ra terōno i te mau ra'i teitei, 'ei ia 'oe ato'a ho'i te maita'i o tō tātou Fatu ra 'o Iesu Mesia, 'o tē pārahi nei i te rima 'atau o tōna ra mana, ē tae noa atu 'ua auraro te mau mea ato'a iāna, 'ei ia 'oe te reira i te vaira'a ē a muri noa atu. 'Āmene.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

Moroni 10

- 1 I teienei, tē pāpa'i nei au, 'o Moroni, i tei mana'ohia e au e mea maita'i ; 'e tē pāpa'i nei au i tō'u mau taea'e ra i te mau 'āti Lamana ; 'e tē hina'aro nei au 'ia 'ite rātou ē, 'ua ma'iri te mau matahiti e maha hānere 'e piti 'ahuru ti'ahapa i muri iho i te fa'a'itera'ahia mai te tāpa'o nō te taera'a mai o te Mesia.
- 2 'E tē tāpiri nei au i teie nei mau pāpa'a parau 'ia oti ana'e tā'u a'ora'a atu i te tahi mau parau ri'i ia 'outou na.
- 3 Inaha, tē a'o atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'ia tai'o 'outou i teie nei mau mea, mai te mea 'ua ti'a i te pa'ari o te Atua 'ia tai'o 'outou i te reira, 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou i tō te Fatu aroha i te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, mai te hāmanira'ahia mai o Adamu ē tae roa mai i te tau e fāri'i ai 'outou i teie nei mau mea, 'e 'ia feruri hōhonu i te reira i roto i tō 'outou 'ā'au.
- 4 'E 'ia fāri'i 'outou i teie mau mea, tē a'o atu nei au ia 'outou 'ia ani atu 'outou i te Atua, i te Metua mure 'ore, nā roto i te i'oa o te Mesia, e 'ere ānei teie mau mea i te parau mau ; 'e mai te mea e ani atu 'outou ma te 'ā'au hina'aro mau, ma te mana'o pāpū, 'e ma te fa'aro'o i te Mesia, e fa'a'ite mai ia 'oia i te parau mau nō te reira ia 'outou, nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i.
- 5 'E nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i e 'ite ai 'outou i te parau mau o te mau mea ato'a ra.
- 6 'E 'ua riro te mau mea maita'i 'ei mea parauti'a 'e te parau mau ; nō reira 'aita roa te hō'ē mea maita'i e huna i te Mesia, e fa'a'ite pāpū rā te reira ē, tē vai mau ra 'oia.
- 7 'E e 'ite 'outou ē, tē vai mau ra 'oia, nā roto i te mana o te Vārua Maita'i ; nō reira tē a'o atu nei au ia 'outou ē, 'eiaha roa 'outou e huna i te mana o te Atua ; tē rave ra ho'i 'oia i te 'ohipa ma te mana, mai te au i te fa'aro'o o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei, hō'ē ā huru i teie nei mahana, e ananahi, ē a muri noa atu.

Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

8 'E tē a'o fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e, 'eiaha roa 'outou e huna i te mau hōro'a a te Atua, e rave rahi ho'i te reira ; 'e nō 'ō mai ho'i te reira i taua iho Atua ra. 'E tē vai nei e rave rahi mau rāve'a ta'a 'ē nō te hōro'ara'a mai i teie mau hōro'a ; 'āre'a rā nā taua iho Atua ra 'o tē 'ohipa nei i te mau mea ato'a i roto i te mau mea ato'a ; 'e 'ua hōro'ahia te reira nā roto i te mau fa'a'itera'a a te Vārua o te Atua i te ta'ata nei, 'ia faufa'ahia rātou.

9 Inaha ho'i, 'ua hōro'ahia mai e te Vārua o te Atua tā te tahi, 'ia ha'api'i 'oia i te parau pa'ari.

10 'E tā te tahi atu, 'ia ha'api'i atu 'oia i te parau nō te 'ite nā roto i taua iho Vārua ra.

11 'E tā te tahi atu, 'o te fa'aro'o rahi roa ia ; 'e tā te tahi atu, 'o te mau hōro'a ia nō te fa'aorara'a i te feiā ma'i, nā roto i taua iho Vārua ra.

12 'E tā te tahi fa'ahou ra, 'ia rave 'oia i te mau semeio rahi.

13 'E tā te tahi fa'ahou ra, 'ia tohu 'oia nō ni'a i te mau mea ato'a ra.

14 'E tā te tahi fa'ahou ra, te 'itera'a ia i te mau melahi 'e i te mau vārua tāvini.

15 'E tā te tahi fa'ahou ra, 'o te paraura'a ia i te mau huru reo 'e'e ato'a.

16 'E tā te tahi fa'ahou ra, 'o te auvahara'a ia i te mau reo 'e'e 'e te mau parau 'e'e.

17 'E 'ua tae mai teie mau hōro'a ato'a nā roto i te Vārua o te Mesia ; 'e 'ua tae mai te reira i te ta'ata tāta'itahi, mai te au i tōna ra hina'aro.

18 'E tē a'o atu nei au ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē nō 'ō mai te mau hōro'a maita'i tāta'itahi i te Mesia ra.

19 'E tē a'o atu nei ho'i au ia 'outou, e tō'u mau taea'e here, 'ia ha'amana'o 'outou ē, hō'ē ā tōna huru i nanahi ra, i teie nei mahana, ē a muri noa atu, 'e teie mau hōro'a ato'a 'o tā'u i parau iho nei, nō te pae vārua ia, 'e e 'ore roa ia e fa'a'orehia, 'a vai noa ai te fenua nei, maori rā nō te ti'aturi 'ore o te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei.

20 Nō reira, 'ia vai te fa'aro'o e ti'a ai ; 'e 'ia vai te fa'aro'o e ti'a ai, 'ia vai ato'a ia te ti'aturira'a e ti'a ai ; 'e 'ia vai te ti'aturira'a e ti'a ai, 'ia vai ato'a ia te aroha mau e ti'a ai.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, to-day, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

- 21 E mai te mea 'aita te aroha mau i roto ia 'outou, 'aita roa ia 'outou e fa'aorahia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ; 'e 'aita ato'a 'outou e fa'aorahia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua mai te mea 'aita tō 'outou e fa'aro'o ; 'e 'aita ato'a 'outou e fa'aorahia mai te mea 'aita tō 'outou e ti'aturira'a.
- 22 'E mai te mea 'aita tō 'outou e ti'aturira'a, e vai noa ia 'outou i roto i te ahoaho ; 'e nō roto mai ho'i te ahoaho i te mau 'ohipa 'i'ino.
- 23 'E 'ua parau mai iho ā te Mesia i tō tātou mau metua ē : E fa'aro'o tō 'outou ra, e ti'a ia ia 'outou 'ia rave i te mau mea ato'a e au iā'u ra.
- 24 'E i teieni, tē parau atu nei au i tō te mau hope'a ato'a o te fenua nei—'oia ho'i, mai te mea e tae mai te mahana e fa'a'orehia ai te mana 'e te mau hōro'a a te Atua i rotopū ia 'outou na, 'ua nā-reira-hia ia nō tō 'outou ti'aturi 'ore.
- 25 'E e 'ati ho'i tō te mau tamari'i a te ta'ata nei mai te mea 'o te reira te huru ; inaha ho'i 'aita roa ia te hō'ē i rotopū ia 'outou e rave ra i te maita'i, 'aita roa, 'aita hō'ē a'e. Mai te mea ho'i ē tē vai ra te hō'ē i rotopū ia 'outou 'o tē rave i te maita'i, e rave ia 'oia i te reira nā roto i te mana 'e te mau hōro'a a te Atua.
- 26 'E e 'ati ho'i tō rātou 'o tē fa'a'ore i teie mau mea 'a pohe ai, nō te mea e pohe rātou i roto i tā rātou mau hara, 'e 'aita roa rātou e ti'a 'ia fa'aorahia i roto i te bāsileia o te Atua ; 'e tē parau nei ho'i au i te reira mai te au i te mau parau a te Mesia ra ; 'e 'aita roa ho'i au e ha'avare nei.
- 27 'E tē a'o atu nei au ia 'outou 'ia ha'amana'o i teie nei mau mea ; 'e 'ua fātata roa ho'i te tau e 'ite ai 'outou ē 'aita roa vau e ha'avare nei, 'e e 'ite ho'i 'outou iā'u i te ha'avāra'a a te Atua ra ; 'e e parau atu ho'i te Fatu te Atua ia 'outou ē : 'Aita ānei au i fa'a'ite atu i tā'u mau parau ia 'outou na, 'o tei pāpa'ihia e teie nei ta'ata, mai te hō'ē ta'ata 'o tē pi'i mai ra mai te pohe mai, 'oia ia, mai te hō'ē ta'ata 'o tē parau mai ra mai raro mai i te repo ?
- 28 Tē fa'a'ite atu nei au i teie mau mea ia 'outou 'ia tupu te mau parau i tohuhia ra. 'E inaha, e riro te reira i te fa'a'itehia mai nā roto i te vaha o te Atua mure 'ore ; 'e e hiohio noa tāna parau i terā u'i 'e i terā u'i.
- 29 'E e riro te Atua i te fa'a'ite mai ia 'outou ē, e parau mau tā'u i pāpa'i ra.

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

- 30 'E tē a'o fa'ahou atu nei au ia 'outou 'ia haere mai 'outou i te Mesia, 'e 'ia tāpe'a i te mau hōro'a maitata'i ato'a, 'e 'eiaha roa e tāpe'a noa atu i te hōro'a 'ino, 'eiaha ato'a i te mea vi'ivi'i ra.
- 31 'E 'a ara, 'e 'a ti'a mai i ni'a mai te repo mai ra, e Ierusalemā ē ; 'oia ia, 'e 'a 'ahu na i tō mau 'ahu nehenehe, 'e te tamāhine o Ziona ; 'e 'a ha'apa'ari i tā 'oe mau titi 'e 'a fa'arahi i tō 'oe mau 'ōti'a ē a muri noa atu, 'ia 'ore 'outou 'ia 'āno'i-haere-fa'ahou-hia, 'e 'ia tupu te mau fafaura'a tā te Metua mure 'ore i fafau atu ia 'outou, e te 'utuāfare o 'Īserā'ela ē.
- 32 'Oia ia, 'a haere mai i te Mesia, 'e 'ia maita'i roa 'outou iāna, 'e 'a ha'apae 'outou i te mau mea paieti 'ore ra ; 'e mai te mea e ha'apae 'outou i te mau mea paieti 'ore ra, 'e 'a here atu ai i te Atua ma tō 'outou mana ato'a, tō 'outou mana'o ato'a 'e te pūai ato'a, 'ei reira e nava'i ai tōna ra maita'i nō 'outou, 'e nā roto i tōna maita'i e riro ai 'outou 'ei mea maita'i roa i te Mesia ra ; 'e mai te mea ho'i e nā roto i te maita'i o te Atua e maita'i roa ai 'outou i te Mesia, e'ita roa ia e ti'a ia 'outou 'ia huna i te mana o te Atua.
- 33 'E fa'ahou ā, mai te mea ē nā roto i te maita'i o te Atua ra e riro ai 'outou 'ei mea maita'i roa i te Mesia ra, e 'aore atu ra 'outou e huna i tōna ra mana, 'ei reira 'ua ha'amo'ahia ia 'outou i te Mesia nā roto i te maita'i o te Atua, nā roto ho'i i te ha'amani'ira'a toto o te Mesia ra, 'oia ho'i te fafaura'a a te Metua nō te ha'amatarara'a i tā 'outou mau hara, 'ia riro 'outou 'ei feiā mo'a, ma te pōra'o 'ore.
- 34 'E i teieni, tē parau atu nei au ia 'outou pā'āto'a, 'a pārahi. 'Ua fātata vau i te haere atu e fa'aea i roto i te pāradaiso o te Atua, ē tae noa atu 'ua 'āmui-fa'ahou-hia tō'u vārua 'e tō'u ho'i tino, 'e 'ua 'āfa'ihia vau ma te upo'otī'a nā roto i te reva, 'ia fārerei atu ia 'outou i mua i te ha'avāra'a au maita'i a Iehova rahi, te Ha'avā mure 'ore nō te feiā ora 'e te feiā pohe. 'Āmene.

Tē hope'a

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

The End